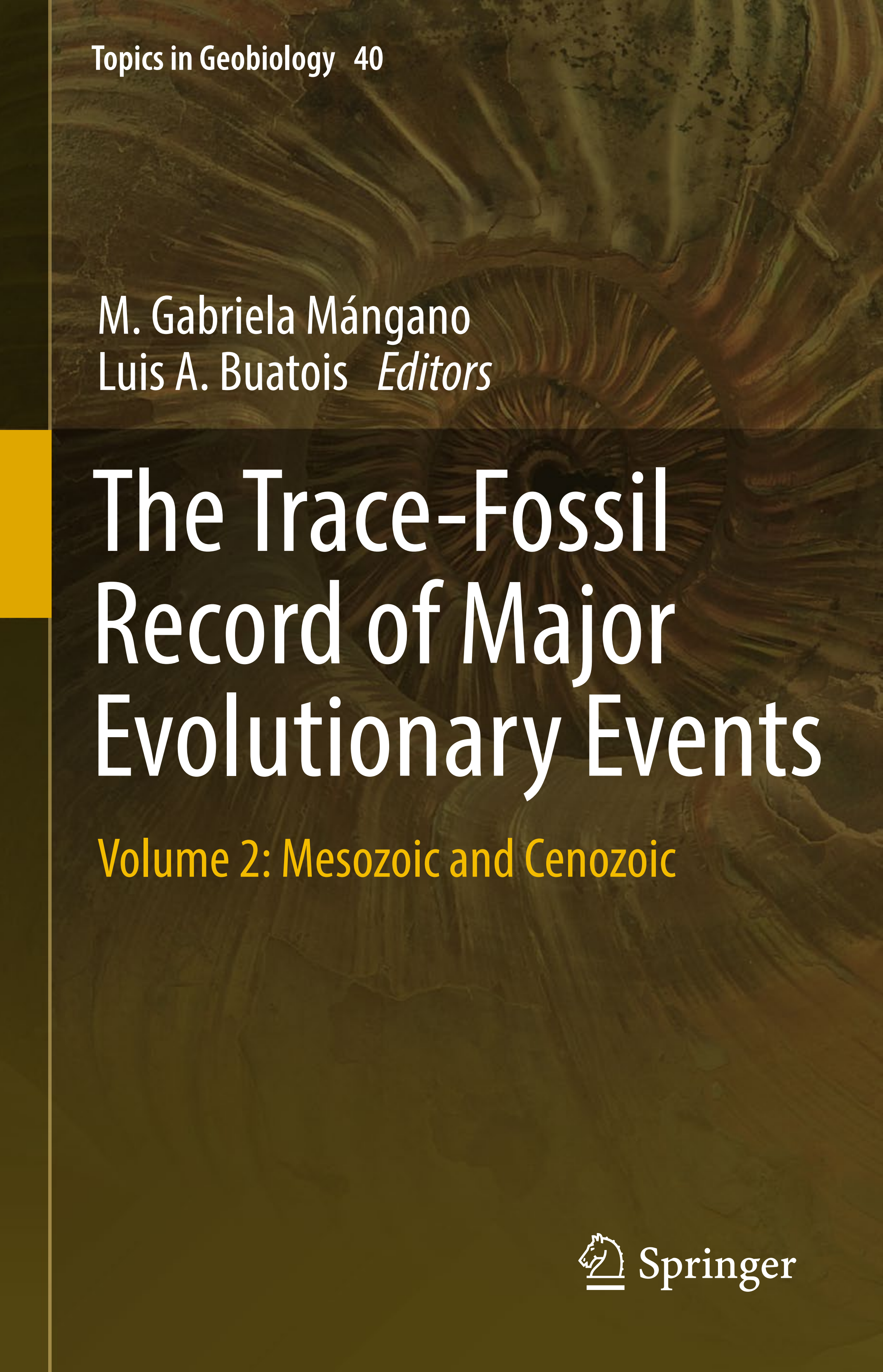


Topics in Geobiology 40

M. Gabriela Mángano
Luis A. Buatois *Editors*

The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events

Volume 2: Mesozoic and Cenozoic

Springer

Topics in Geobiology

Volume 40

The **Topics in Geobiology** series covers the broad discipline of geobiology that is devoted to documenting life history of the Earth. A critical theme inherent in addressing this issue and one that is at the heart of the series is the interplay between the history of life and the changing environment. The series aims for high quality, scholarly volumes of original research as well as broad reviews.

Geobiology remains a vibrant as well as a rapidly advancing and dynamic field. Given this field's multidiscipline nature, it treats a broad spectrum of geologic, biologic, and geochemical themes all focused on documenting and understanding the fossil record and what it reveals about the evolutionary history of life. The Topics in Geobiology series was initiated to delve into how these numerous facets have influenced and controlled life on Earth.

Recent volumes have showcased specific taxonomic groups, major themes in the discipline, as well as approaches to improving our understanding of how life has evolved.

Taxonomic volumes focus on the biology and paleobiology of organisms – their ecology and mode of life – and, in addition, the fossil record – their phylogeny and evolutionary patterns – as well as their distribution in time and space.

Theme-based volumes, such as predator-prey relationships, biomineralization, paleobiogeography, and approaches to high-resolution stratigraphy, cover specific topics and how important elements are manifested in a wide range of organisms and how those dynamics have changed through the evolutionary history of life. Comments or suggestions for future volumes are welcomed.

Series Editors
Neil H. Landman
American Museum of Natural History, New York, USA

Peter J. Harries
Tampa, Florida, USA

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/6623

M. Gabriela Mángano • Luis A. Buatois
Editors

The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events

Volume 2: Mesozoic and Cenozoic

Springer

Editors
M. Gabriela Mángano
Department of Geological Sciences
University of Saskatchewan
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada

Luis A. Buatois
Department of Geological Sciences
University of Saskatchewan
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada

ISSN 0275-0120
Topics in Geobiology
ISBN 978-94-017-9596-8 ISBN 978-94-017-9597-5 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5

Library of Congress Control Number: 2016951934

Printed on acid-free paper

This Springer imprint is published by Springer Nature
The registered company is Springer Science+Business Media B.V. Dordrecht

To Dolf Seilacher, who, as usual, thought about these issues long before us.

Foreword

Imagine a world much like our own: an oxygen-rich atmosphere, dynamic tectonic activity, and a rich and diverse biota of plants, animals, and teeming associations of microbes. Indeed a world just like ours, with a similarly deep history of life, but with one slight difference: no body fossils. No shark teeth eroding from cliffs, no trilobites, no dinosaur bones cluttering up museums and the dreams of impressionable 5-year-olds (and Hollywood moguls). Worst of all, of course, we would be missing the remarkable schnozzle of *Opabinia*. Much of the rich morphological detail provided by body fossils would be irretrievably lost, but how much of the history and diversity of life could we recover? Would we be able to identify the explosive evolutionary dynamism of the Cambrian diversification? Would the paleontologists of this imaginary world be able to chart changing patterns of animal diversity and morphological disparity? Identify the invasion of land or the great mass extinctions? Chronicle advances in behavioral patterns? Would changing climate patterns be evident, or the rise of great plodding vertebrates?

If we stipulate that tracks, trails, and burrows were preserved in all the detail documented in the chapters of this volume and the richly informative photographs and diagrams, then a remarkable detailed view of animal diversity, morphological disparity, and behavior emerges. For those not intimately acquainted with the extensive strides made over the past couple of decades of research in ichnology, this volume illustrates the range of information which can be recovered from the primary record of organismal behavior to analysis of changing patterns of diversity and disparity.

As a graduate student during the early 1980s the focus of ichnology seemed to be on describing new structures and providing them (mystifyingly to those of us who did not study trace fossils) Latin binomials. Yet ichnology was already undergoing a conceptual shift in concert with changes within the broader field of paleobiology. As facies concepts spread through sedimentology, the concept of ichnofacies was adopted. The increased emphasis on taphonomy, preservation, and the quality of the fossil record beginning in the 1980s found a similar expression in ichnology in the recognition that the same animal could produce very different structures depending on the environment and the nature of the sediment, and that tracks can look very different depending on what level one examines within their stratigraphy. One result of such studies has been considerable revision in the diversity of ichnotaxa. As described in Chap. 2 of this volume, many fossils that we happily accepted as burrows in the mid-1990s have now been recognized as components of a diverse assemblage of latest Ediacaran tubes, and not trace fossils at all. Restudy of Ediacaran traces has drastically reduced the number of accepted ichnogenera.

To a non-ichnologist, what is particularly striking about this book is how faithfully the general outlines of evolutionary dynamics are visible with trace fossils alone. As illustrated by Chaps. 2 and 3, the integration of trace fossils has long been standard for studies of the Ediacaran and Cambrian diversification. It is not just that the base of the Cambrian is currently defined by the first occurrence of the ichnotaxon *Treptichnus pedum*, rather it is hard to imagine any survey of the Ediacaran–Cambrian diversification *not* including a discussion of the trace-fossil record. Data from ichnological studies has been essential to revealing patterns of morphological novelty and innovation, which is why several generations of workers, from Dolf Seilacher and Peter Crimes to Mary Droser, Soren Jensen and the editors of this volume, have played critical roles in expanding our integrated understanding of this interval. Indeed, Chap. 3 notes that in important ways the trace-fossil record may provide a more reliable picture of the diversity dynamics during the Fortunian, the first stage of the Cambrian, than do other fossils.

The pattern continues with later chapters. The Ordovician biodiversification event reveals breakthroughs in paleoecology including movement into infaunal habitats with increased tiering, increased bioturbation, and colonization of new environments (Chap. 4). Unlike the Cambrian, the Ordovician increase in the diversity of ichnotaxa was not accompanied by an increase in ichnodisparity. Indeed a thread throughout the chapters is the frequency of “early burst” patterns of diversification. The exploration and exploitation of new habitats is a consistent theme throughout this volume. The invasion of land, discussed in Chap. 5, reveals a pattern of colonization, a rapid exploration of new behaviors and architectural designs, followed by variation on the established themes. Other episodes that are addressed are the expansion of terrestrial ecosystems, the Mesozoic marine revolution, and lacustrine revolutions. Chapter 14, on the Cenozoic mammalian radiation, suggests that the tracks of this episode, like the traces of the Cambrian, may provide a richer record of evolutionary change than does skeletal elements, and in addition provides unique information on locomotion, body size, and ecology. I must confess that I had never considered the nature of trace fossils associated with soils, but Chap. 15 illuminates the unexpected complexity in the evolutionary exploitation of paleosols. Chapter 16 provides an insightful analysis of patterns of ecospace occupation through the Phanerozoic, advances in ecosystem engineering, and patterns of ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity. I was particularly struck by the proposal that a space of all possible “ichno-structures” that was explored relatively early by marine invertebrate clades, with similar architectures subsequently discovered independently by different clades. Not surprisingly, this pattern matches studies of ecospace by Bambach and colleagues, and of morphological disparity by many writers.

But of course the diversity and disparity of these structures varied with events in the history of life, as demonstrated by ichnological studies associated with the end-Permian, end-Triassic, and end-Cretaceous mass extinctions, as discussed in Chaps. 7, 8, and 12. The early Triassic aftermath of the end-Permian mass extinction reveals as complicated a pattern of ichnofaunal re-emergence as has been found looking just at body fossils. Returning to the counterfactual musings with which I began this foreword, the evidence presented in Chap. 7 makes it clear that we would be able to recover much of the complexity of the biotic recovery from the trace-fossil record alone. (I must confess to a certain pleasure in Chap. 7 as a proposal I made in 1993 which had been discarded by later workers is resurrected therein.)

Sadly of course, the trace-fossil record on my mythical, alternate Earth would be no more complete than the record we possess today. Trace fossils might hint at morphologies not found among extant animals, but phylogenetic analysis, to take one example, would be greatly hampered by a loss of character information from the early history of many clades: the origins of turtles might forever remain a mystery. There would be many questions accessible with our extant fossil record that would be unanswerable. But of course this is just the strength of the fossil record that we possess. The trace and body fossil records each have their strength, and their weaknesses. This volume wonderfully elucidates the power of the ichnofossil record, properly interpreted, to reveal much of the ecological and evolutionary dynamics of life on this Earth. As students read this volume (and I hope many do), the chapters here should provide a plethora of questions to pursue. While I am sure that this book will attract many students to ichnology, in some ways the most significant impact of the book would be to convince paleontologists to more fully integrate ichnological data and analyses into projects on evolutionary diversifications and radiations, mass extinctions, and paleoecological dynamics.

Douglas H. Erwin
Department of Paleobiology
National Museum of Natural History
Washington, DC, USA

Contents

Prologue

"A beginning has been made and the discipline has been advanced to the point where some of the highlights in the history of life may be examined from a paleoecological perspective"

(Valentine 1973, Evolutionary Paleoecology
of the Marine Biosphere)

In a remarkable book on the meaning of geologic time, Stephen Jay Gould explored the dichotomy between time's arrow and time's cycle (Gould 1987). According to this view, time's arrow encompasses history as an irreversible sequence of unrepeatable events, whereas time's cycle refers to a nondirectional time characterized by repetition according to a recurrent pattern. As we have emphasized elsewhere (e.g., Mángano and Buatois 2012, 2015), ichnology can be viewed as an expression of the tension between these two faces of geologic time.

The remarkable success of ichnology to solve problems in facies analysis, paleoenvironmental reconstruction, and sequence stratigraphy is clearly an expression of the emphasis on recurrence. In fact, the very same definition of archetypal ichnofacies, as trace-fossil suites that record responses of benthic organisms to a given set of environmental conditions and that recur through geologic time, epitomizes time's cycle. In this view, regardless of the age of the unit animals should respond to ecological parameters in a similar way, reflecting their adaptation to the environment they inhabit. This nomothetic program for ichnology, with its power as a predictive conceptual tool, is the reason that sedimentary geologists now typically include trace fossils in their toolkit to scrutinize the stratigraphic record.

However, this success when dealing with practical issues, often of economic importance, should not prevent us from the realization that ichnology has much to contribute to our understanding of the changing ecology of the past by recovering a time's arrow perspective. While working on a previous book (Buatois and Mángano 2011), it became increasingly obvious to us that this other face of ichnology has received far less attention. However, even a cursory review of the recent paleobiologic literature shows that there is an increased awareness of the importance of bioturbation and bioerosion as driving forces in the history of life, playing major roles as a connecting players between biotic and abiotic factors involved in complex feedback loops that result in evolutionary change (e.g., Erwin and Tweedt 2012).

There are two strategies to bring back the time's arrow perspective of ichnology. One would be to assess the trace-fossil record of the colonization of specific depositional settings, being the main focus on the reconstruction of major trends in global ichnodiversity. In fact, this approach has a relatively long history, starting with the colonization of the deep sea through geologic time due to pioneer papers by Seilacher (1974, 1977) and Crimes (1974), continuing with more recent studies on the same topic (Orr 2001; Uchman 2003, 2004), as well as on the colonization of continental environments (Buatois and Mángano 1993; Buatois et al. 1998), estuaries (Buatois et al. 2005), and tidal flats (Mángano and Buatois 2015). Another approach would be to evaluate how the interactions between animals and substrates were shaped by major macroevolutionary events, such as the Cambrian explosion and the Permian mass extinction. These changes are analyzed from an ecological perspective. For this book we have decided to follow this later approach.

In its essence, this book reflects the growing interest within the ichnologic community in expanding the potential of ichnology to contribute to evolutionary paleoecology. The authors of the different chapters are eclectic in their perspectives and methodologies. However, there are some common themes and conceptual tools, such as ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity, ecospace utilization, environmental expansion, innovation associated to major radiation events, and the re-organizations of ecological units, in particular communities and ecosystems, after mass extinctions. What emerges is a wealth of information and the idea that the history of life can be accurately reconstructed looking through the ichnologic glass.

The first volume opens with Chap. 1, where Minter et al. briefly revise the conceptual and methodological tools of ichnology, with the aim of providing the reader with the basic information necessary to explore the rest of the book. The approach is eclectic with brief summaries of the basic principles and concepts in the field, as well as revisions of the ichnofacies model and the ichnofabric approach. The chapter also introduces a number of concepts and methods that are used in subsequent chapters, including the notion of ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity as a novel approach to unlock the potential of ichnofaunas to provide insights into mode of life, ecospace colonization, and ecosystem engineering.

Chapter 2, by Buatois and Mángano, starts our journey through time by evaluating the highly controversial trace-fossil record of the Ediacaran. The chapter can be understood as an attempt to revisit from an ichnologic perspective the so-called Darwin's dilemma on the supposed absence of evidence of life in the Precambrian by critically searching for the roots of animal life in the Ediacaran. In addition, ichnologic data is used to reveal the nature of Ediacaran ecosystems and the complexities involved in the transition to the Phanerozoic world.

In Chap. 3, Mángano and Buatois look at the other side of the great divide, by exploring the trace-fossil record of the Cambrian explosion. The chapter emphasizes the importance of trace-fossil data to calibrate the Cambrian diversification event. Also, the profound changes that took place at ecosystem scale are analyzed in detail, emphasizing the role of bioturbation as an agent of evolutionary change. The chapter closes with an evaluation of the paleoenvironmental breadth of the Cambrian explosion, the significance of the ichnofaunas associated with Burgess shale-type deposits, and the dual nature of the Fortunian from an evolutionary standpoint.

Chapter 4, by Mángano et al., examines the following evolutionary radiation, the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event. This chapter analyzes ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity trajectories through the Ordovician, comparing patterns in different depositional environments and paleocontinents. The contrasting nature of diversification in soft-bottom and hardground communities is emphasized by showing that innovation in macrobioerosion was significantly delayed when compared with bioturbation.

Minter et al. explore the initial steps of life on land in Chap. 5 focusing on the Ediacaran–Ordovician timespan. The chapter traces the early stages of animal expansion from fully marine settings into marginal-marine coastal environments and ultimately truly continental settings by the Late Ordovician. This prelude to terrestrialization involves the gradual colonization of new environments followed by rapid filling of ecospace, the establishment of new architectural designs, and diversification within the framework of these new behavioral programs. Links between these evolutionary innovations, and the incipient establishment of a land flora and changes in fluvial styles are discussed.

In Chap. 6, Minter et al. continue with the analysis of terrestrialization by examining the trace-fossil record of marginal-marine and continental environments during the remainder of the Paleozoic. Following the protracted prelude reviewed in the previous chapter, the Silurian to the Permian was characterized by an explosion of diversity and expansion into newly colonized environments, such as river channels, overbanks, deserts, and lakes, coupled with increasing exploitation of the infaunal ecospace. The chapter underscores how colonization of continental settings by benthic organisms parallels changes in vegetation and fluvial styles.

Hofmann closes the first volume with Chap. 7, addressing the trace-fossil record of the end-Permian mass extinction. By carefully evaluating ichnologic data, he provides insights into the extinction event and the subsequent recovery. The impact of burrowing organisms on geochemical conditions of the marine sediment is emphasized, providing a critical evaluation of previous ideas regarding the role of oxygen-depleted conditions as a cause of delayed recovery. It is argued that bioturbation was strongly reduced as a result of the end-Permian mass extinction, leading to the collapse of the mixed layer. The large-scale consequences of such collapse are evaluated in detail.

Volume 2 marks the passage to the post-Paleozoic world, opening with Chap. 8, where Barras and Twitchett analyze the end-Triassic mass extinction. The authors revised the ichnologic record of both terrestrial and marine environments through the Triassic-Jurassic transition, outlining how the benthic faunas responded to the mass extinction. Their review suggests that climatic and environmental change were main factors controlling benthic communities on land and in the sea.

In Chap. 9, Buatois et al. take the reader to the new world arisen from the Mesozoic Marine Revolution. The main group of bioturbators and bioeroders are reviewed, and the trace-fossil record of Mesozoic and Cenozoic marine environments is revised to track evolutionary innovations, discussing the timing of Mesozoic Marine Revolution. The environmental breadth of this major event is evaluated by summarizing evolutionary innovations not only in shallow-marine environments but also in marginal-marine and deep-marine settings. It is argued that infaunalization predated an increase of predation pressures by approximately 50 Myr, pointing towards a complex set of feedback mechanisms between the two.

In Chap. 10, Bernardi et al. explore the vertebrate radiation during the Mesozoic. By revising in detail available ichnologic data, they show how the trackway record yields insights into several issues, such as locomotor mechanics and behavior, therefore providing information that typically is not revealed by the body-fossil record. In turn, biases inherent to the trace-fossil record are discussed, arguing that the integration between the trackway and the skeletal record is essential to provide a more holistic picture of the evolutionary changes underwent by terrestrial vertebrates during the Mesozoic.

Chapter 11, by Buatois et al., discusses another series of evolutionary breakthroughs that took place in continental settings: those resulting from the Mesozoic lacustrine revolution. Lakes are evaluated from an ichnologic perspective, contrasting lacustrine ecosystems prior to this evolutionary event with those that arose after the Mesozoic lacustrine revolution. Aspects discussed in this chapter include ichnodiversity changes through time, the establishment of modern lacustrine food webs, and the role of behavioral convergence on both sides of the salinity divide.

In Chap. 12, Labandeira et al. shift our attention to another extinction event: the end-Cretaceous mass extinction. These authors evaluate both the record of plant–arthropod interactions on land and that of invertebrate trace fossils in the sea, therefore providing a comprehensive picture of the extinction event and its aftermath. A number of methodological, empirical, and theoretical advances resulting from the use of ichnologic data are outlined, including application of innovative methods to quantify ichnologic information, access to novel ecologic data, and evaluation of catastrophic vs. gradualistic scenarios based on the analysis of bioturbated sediment, among many others.

Chapter 13, by Genise et al., represents a general departure to the overall structure of the book in that it does not address a specific evolutionary event, but instead traces a series of dramatic changes in paleosols covering most of, if not all, the Phanerozoic. In doing so, they provide an in-depth characterization of four revolutions in paleosol ichnofaunas. In addition, this chapter provides an interesting twist to the concept of ichnofacies by showing that their establishment in terrestrial settings is fully linked to a series of evolutionary innovations by soil-burrowing organisms.

In Chap. 14, Krapovickas and Vizcaino explore the evolution of mammals based on their footprint record. Although this chapter summarizes the Mesozoic and Cenozoic record of tracks attributed to mammals worldwide, emphasis is on changes in South American mammals during the Cenozoic. The authors show that Eocene-Oligocene trackway assemblages mostly consist of forms of uncertain affinity, whereas later assemblages consist of trackways of both native South American and North American mammals that arrived during the Great American Biotic Interchange. This chapter emphasizes the strong provincialism of mammal faunas, representing a starting point towards a more global examination of their ichnologic record.

Chapter 15, by Lockley et al., deals with the trackway record of hominin evolution. Starting with the famous 3.6 Ma tracks from Laetoli, the reader is taken through a journey that explores the expansion of our ancestors from Africa to Eurasia, the New World, and Australasia. References to footprints on the Moon and tracks of robotic vehicles on Mars add another dimension to the trip. Along the way, the authors discuss various controversies, including the alternative interpretations of the Laetoli trackways and the differences between early hominin footprints and those from modern humans.

The book closes with Chap. 16, where Buatois and Mángano take the challenge of trying to summarize possible recurrent trends revealed by the trace-fossil record that may provide insights into the underlying dynamics of animal–substrate interactions through geologic time. In particular, the chapter discusses organism–substrate interactions during evolutionary radiations, benthic fauna response to mass extinctions, patterns of ecospace colonization, and environmental shifts through time. In contrast to the other chapters, which by reviewing individual evolutionary events are anchored in an idiographic approach, this last chapter takes on a more nomothetic perspective by trying to find recurrent patterns and processes in evolutionary paleoecology.

In the process of planning this book, it became clear that, although there is an explicit attempt to bring a picture of the state of the art in the contributions of ichnology to the understanding of evolution at the macroevolutionary scale, our book does not offer a comprehensive treatment or a closure on the topic. In fact, during this process, we have identified numerous areas of interest where there is limited ichnologic information to the point that it was not possible to include chapters on these issues. For example, the end-Ordovician and Late Devonian mass extinctions have received significantly less treatment than any of the other so-called Big Five. Also, some of the chapters provide fresh approaches to our exploration of the colonization of infaunal ecospace and the impact of ecosystem engineers by using ichnologic data in an innovative fashion. This may serve as inspiration for applying new numerical and conceptual tools to a wider spectrum of paleobiologic issues. This book is a tangible testimony that ichnology counts with a solid theoretical framework and sufficient methodological tools to tackle evolutionary questions and offer crucial pieces in the reconstruction of the puzzle of the history of life. Our ambition with this book echoes the Gouldian aim, paraphrased in Chap. 10, of sitting Ichnology at the High Table of Macroevolution and Paleobiology.

We would like to thank the reviewers of the many chapters, who did a great job of providing valuable feedback. These are: Andrea Baucon, Zain Belaústegui, Angela Buscalioni, Karen Chin, Matthew Clapham, Darin Croft, Phillip Currie, Bill DiMichele, Tony Ekdale, Russell Garwood, Sören Jensen, Dirk Knaust, Conrad Labandeira, Spencer Lucas, Ken McNamara, Christian Meyer, Nic Minter, Guy Narbonne, Eduardo Olivero, Paul Olsen, Roy Plotnick, Gustavo Politis, Charles

Savrda, Thomas Servais, Alfred Uchman, Jean Vannier, Sally Walker, Mark Wilson, and Anna Żylińska. Also we thank Doug Erwin for writing the Foreword.

Finally, as with almost all things ichnologic, Dolf Seilacher has been there before. He should be recognized as the scientist who started to think along this line of evidence, putting forward the idea that trace fossils represent the "other" fossil record, underexplored and immensely valuable. Not necessarily an alternative archive for the history of life, but more of an essential companion that should be integrated to the other lines of evidence to decipher the complex evolutionary pathways in the history of life. Needless to say, Dolf's influence has been huge in the field of ichnology and the same can be said of his influence in our personal careers. It all started long time ago when we were Geology students and he planted some "seed ideas" during a Trace Fossil course that he taught at the Argentinean Paleontological Association (APA). Sadly, he passed away during the completion of this book. We would like to dedicate this book to his memory.

M. Gabriela Mángano
Luis A. Buatois

References

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (1993) Ecospace utilization, paleoenvironmental trends and the evolution of early nonmarine biotas. Geology 21: 595–598

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2011) Ichnology: organism-substrate interactions in space and time. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

Buatois LA et al. (1998) The ichnologic record of the invertebrate invasion of nonmarine ecosystems: evolutionary trends in ecospace utilization, environmental expansion, and behavioral complexity. Palaios 13: 217–240

Buatois LA et al. (2005) Colonization of brackish-water systems through time: evidence from the trace-fossil record. Palaios 20: 321–347

Erwin DH, Tweedt SM (2012) Ecological drivers of the Ediacaran-Cambrian diversification of Metazoa. Evol Ecol 26: 417–433

Gould SJ (1987) Time's arrows time's cycle. Cambridge MA: Harvard University Press. pp 222

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2012) A multifaceted approach to ichnology. Ichnos 19: 121-126

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2015) The trace-fossil record of tidal flats through the Phanerozoic: evolutionary innovations and faunal turnover. In: McIlroy D (ed) Ichnology: Papers from ICHNIA III. Geol Assoc Canada Misc Pub 9: 157–177

Orr PJ (2001) Colonization of the deep-marine environment during the early Phanerozoic: the ichnofaunal record. Geol J 36: 265–278

Seilacher A (1974) Flysch trace fossils: evolution of behavioural diversity in the deep-sea. Neues Jahrb Geol Palaont Monat 1974: 233–245

Seilacher A (1977) Evolution of trace fossil communities. In: Hallam A (ed) Patterns of evolution as illustrated by the fossil record. Dev Paleontol Stratigraphy, Vol. 5. Amsterdam, Elsevier

Uchman A (2003) Trends in diversity, frequency and complexity of graphoglyptid trace fossils: evolutionary and palaeoenvironmental aspects. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 192: 123–142

Uchman A (2004) Phanerozoic history of deep-sea trace fossils. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Spec Pub 228

Chapter 8
The Late Triassic Mass Extinction Event

Colin Barras and Richard J. Twitchett

8.1 Introduction

The end of the Triassic (~200 Ma) was identified by Newell (1963) as marking one of the five largest extinction episodes of the Phanerozoic. From the perspective of ecologic impact on the biosphere, it ranks third (McGhee et al. 2004). In the marine realm some 23 % of families and 50 % of genera were lost (Sepkoski 1981, 1993) with ammonites, bivalves, radiolarians, and coral reefs suffering most (McElwain et al. 2007; Keissling and Simpson 2011). On land, plant biodiversity declined at genus and species levels in the latest Triassic, as shown by local palynologic studies and analyses of macrofossils (e.g., in East Greenland; McElwain et al. 2007; McElwain et al. 2009; Mander et al. 2010). Widespread floral change would have affected other terrestrial groups such as vertebrates, which suffered a 45 % decline at the family level in eastern North America during the final stages of the Triassic (Olsen et al. 1987). Some common archosaurs disappeared at this time, although the theropod dinosaurs appear to have increased in abundance and size across the Triassic–Jurassic (T–J) boundary (Olsen et al. 2002).

For decades this event was relatively poorly studied, but a concerted effort in recent years, especially following formal designation of the Global Stratotype Section and Point (GSSP) for the base of the Jurassic (Hillebrandt et al. 2007), has led to a clearer picture of the sequence of events and likely contributing factors. Competing scenarios included sea level change (Hallam and Wignall 1997), a bolide impact (Olsen et al. 2002), and the dissociation of gas hydrates (Beerling and Berner 2002). However, it

---

C. Barras (✉)
511 Taylor Lane, Chelsea, MI 48118, USA
e-mail: colinbarras@me.com

R.J. Twitchett
Department of Earth Sciences, The Natural History Museum,
London SW7 5BD, United Kingdom

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_8

now appears likely that the principal kill mechanism was concomitant changes in climate, atmosphere, and oceans associated with the formation of the Central Atlantic Magmatic Province (CAMP), a large igneous province stretching roughly 5000 km in a north–south direction and 2000 km in an east–west direction, and covering areas of northwest Europe, West Africa, eastern North America, and Brazil (McHone 2000; Fig. 8.8.1). CAMP is among the largest of all continental large igneous provinces (Marzoli et al. 1999), and the extinctions in marine and terrestrial realms coincide with the onset and early phases of volcanic activity in the latest Triassic (Marzoli et al. 2004; Knight et al. 2004; Deenen et al. 2010; Mander et al. 2013).

At around the time of emplacement of the earliest CAMP lavas there is good evidence that the level of atmospheric carbon dioxide rose rapidly. Studies of fossil leaf stomatal density (McElwain et al. 1999; Retallack 2001; Beerling 2002; Steinthorsdottir et al. 2011) and soil carbonates (Schaller et al. 2011) suggest a rise in atmospheric CO_2 across the extinction interval from 600–1000 ppm to 2000–2500 ppm or from 1000 ppm to 2000–3000 ppm, depending on the respective proxy. Disruption to the global carbon system is recorded by negative carbon isotope

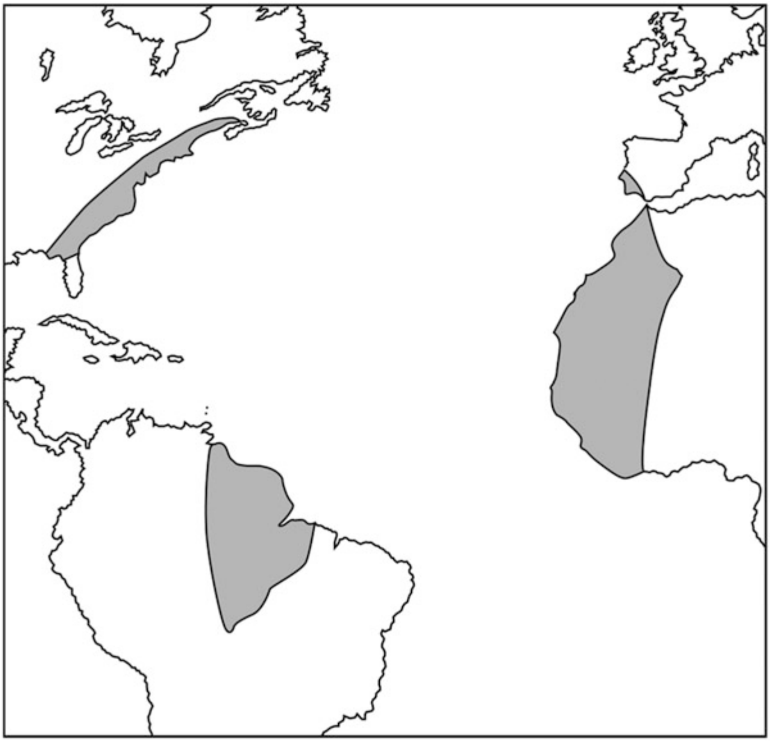


Fig. 8.1 Approximate extent of the Central Atlantic Magmatic Province, after Wignall (2001a), showing the two locations studied specifically for the effects of the end-Triassic extinction on the trace-fossil record

excursions from a number of localities worldwide, including among others example in Austria (Ruhl et al. 2009), Nevada, USA (Guex et al. 2004), the Newark Basin of eastern USA (Whiteside et al. 2010), East Greenland (McElwain et al. 1999), British Columbia, Canada (Ward et al. 2004; Williford et al. 2006), Italy (Galli et al. 2005), and England (Hesselbo et al. 2002; Whiteside et al. 2010).

Such a rapid increase in pCO_2 would have led to global warming, with dramatic effects on terrestrial climate zones, the global hydrologic cycle, and the circulation and dissolved oxygen content of the world's oceans (e.g., Kidder and Worsley 2010). Some authors have suggested that elevated CO_2 would have lowered the pH of surface waters, leading to ocean acidification that would have had detrimental effects for calcareous organisms (Hautmann 2004; Schootbrugge et al. 2007; Kiessling and Simpson 2011). Modern experiments suggest, however, that the responses to lowered pH vary dramatically between different marine taxa (Findlay et al. 2011), and there is evidence from the fossil record that calcification of some bivalves actually increased at this time (Mander et al. 2008).

Some have questioned whether extinction near the end of the Triassic was abrupt, or more gradual in nature (Hallam 2002; Cuny 1995; Tanner et al. 2004). Reported faunal changes often coincide with facies changes that might give a false impression of sudden extinction (Hallam 2002). For bivalves, at least, it appears that changes in facies, preservation, and other rock record biases have not significantly affected the extinction interval but may have led to the under-representation of some groups, such as aragonitic, deeper infaunal taxa, in the immediate aftermath (Mander and Twitchett 2008). Recent assessment of the fossil-plant record from East Greenland (McElwain et al. 2009) demonstrates that biodiversity decline was relatively abrupt and began around the time of initial CAMP volcanism. Furthermore, analysis of the palynologic records of East Greenland and St Audrie's Bay, UK, demonstrate that terrestrial ecosystems were affected at the same time as those in the sea, and the extinctions occurred during the steep rise in atmospheric CO_2 (Mander et al. 2013).

8.2 Trace-Fossil Record Across the T–J Boundary

While the body-fossil record across the T–J boundary has been relatively well studied, the trace-fossil record remains less well known. However, while trace fossils cannot usually be tied readily to the trace maker their study can still contribute to a better understanding of the nature of faunal turnover during extinction events such as the Late Triassic extinction, making the few studies that have been conducted important.

In terrestrial settings, such as the Newark Basin of eastern North America, which contains one of the best temporally constrained nonmarine vertebrate records through the extinction interval, skeletal remains are much less common than footprints making study of the footprints particularly useful for elucidating the nature of the vertebrate faunal response (Olsen et al. 2002) (Fig. 8.8.2). In the marine realm, trace fossils are important because most marine ecosystems are dominated by

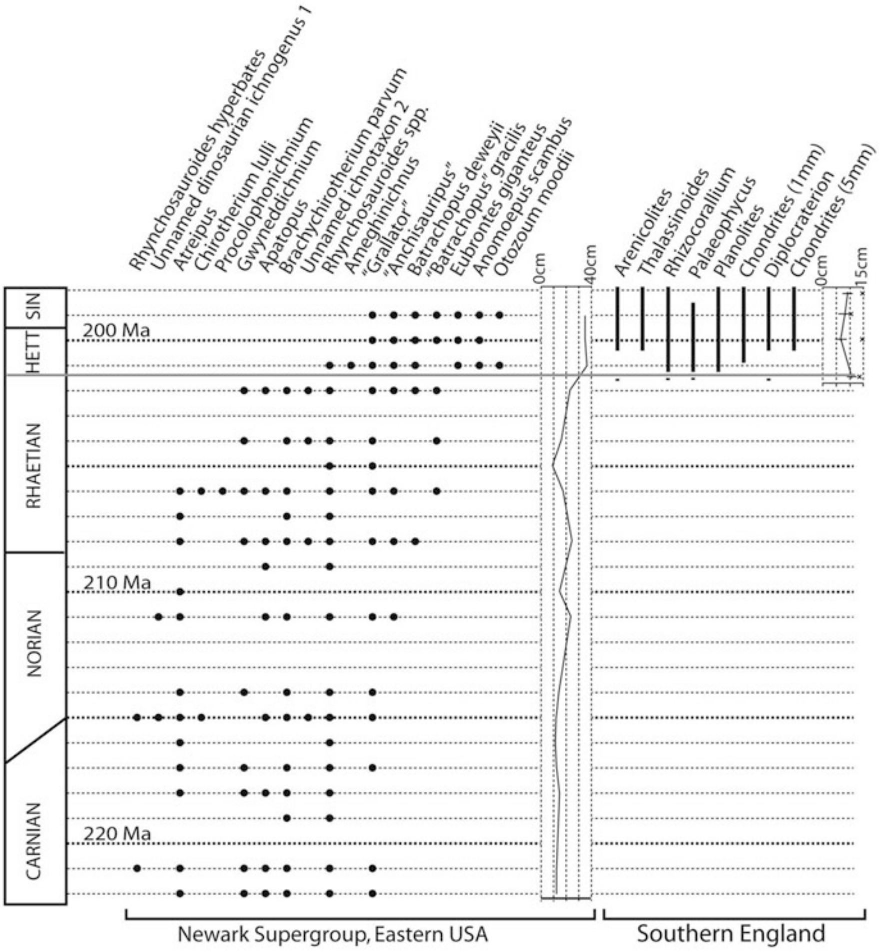


Fig. 8.2 Terrestrial ichnotaxonomic trends through the Triassic–Jurassic interval of the Eastern USA and shallow marine ichnotaxonomic trends of Southern England. *Gray horizontal line* shows approximate location of the initial carbon isotope excursion that marks the extinction interval. Graphs show trend in maximum length of theropod tracks in the Eastern USA, and trend in average diameter of *Diplocraterion* in southern England (X's mark the maximum diameter of *Diplocraterion*). H. = Hettangian. Sin. = Sinemurian. T–J = Triassic–Jurassic boundary. After Olsen et al. (2002) and Barras and Twitchett (2007)

nonmineralized taxa, which rarely fossilize (Allison and Briggs 1991). The traces that they leave may be more readily preserved, which makes the marine trace-fossil record the best, and sometimes only, window into the responses of these dominant, soft-bodied organisms to catastrophic extinction (Twitchett and Barras 2004). Finally, in both marine and terrestrial regimes, the trace-fossil record is spared from such taphonomic effects as transport or reworking (Barras and Twitchett 2007), making its study potentially less ambiguous than some body fossil studies.

8.2.1 Terrestrial Record

Terrestrial trace-fossil studies around the T–J boundary often focus on specific short sequences within either the Triassic or Jurassic, rather than longer successions that span the boundary and the extinction event itself. Low-diversity invertebrate trace-fossil assemblages associated with lake margins have been reported for both the Late Triassic (Lucas and Lerner 2006) and Early Jurassic (Lucas et al. 2006b) of the western United States, the Triassic of Greenland (Bromley and Asgaard 1979) and the Late Triassic of Germany (Schlirf et al. 2001).

Elsewhere in northern Europe the terrestrial record of invertebrate trace fossils is more extensive. In southern Sweden, for example, Late Triassic and Early Jurassic fluvio-deltaic deposits with some evidence of brackish marine influence preserve a moderately diverse ichnofauna, including horizontal (*Cochlichnus*, *Palaeophycus*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Teichichnus*) and vertical (*Diplocraterion*, *Monocraterion*, *Skolithos*) burrows and grazing traces, as well as arthropod trackways (*Diplichnites*), and the bivalve resting trace *Lockeia* (Pieńkowski 1991a,b; Gierliński and Ahlberg 1994; Ahlberg 1994; Ahlberg and Arndorff 1994).

Further south, in Poland, exposures of Early Jurassic rocks formed in lacustrine and fluvial environments with some subaerial exposure contain a diverse ichnofauna. Finds here include *Lockeia*, arthropod resting traces (*Rusophycus*), arthropod trackways, burrows and borings (*Cruziana*, *Diplichnites*, *Linckichnus*, *Spongeliomorpha*, *Xylonichnus*) equilibrichnia formed by freshwater bivalves (*Calceoformites*, *Scalichnus*), and horizontal or vertical burrows (*Cochlichnus*, *Helminthoidichnites*, *Scoyenia*, *Planolites*, *Palaeophycus*). There are also possible arthropod nest structures. In brackish marine influenced deposits, the limulid trackway *Kouphichnium* also occurs (Pieńkowski 2004; Pieńkowski and Niedźwiedzki 2008).

Lacustrine assemblages associated with Triassic deltas in Argentina have been studied for their trace fossils (Melchor 2004). Ichnofaunas typically include horizontal or vertical burrows and grazing traces (e.g., *Palaeophycus*, *Skolithos*, *Planolites*, *Helminthoidichnites*, *Helminthopsis*, *Treptichnus*) and backfilled burrows (e.g., *Scoyenia*, *Taenidium*) with rare arthropod walking traces, such as *Diplichnites* (e.g., Lucas et al. 2006b). However, the invertebrate trace-fossil record is too sparse to reveal ichnotaxonomic trends, should they exist, through the extinction interval itself.

Likewise, most studies of the terrestrial vertebrate footprint fossil record often have as their focus particular formations within the Late Triassic or Early Jurassic. Nevertheless, there is evidence from the trace-fossil record that dinosaurs increased in abundance, diversity, and size through the Late Triassic and into the Early Jurassic. Hunt and Lucas (2007) summarized the record of Late Triassic tetrapod trackways of the western United States. The Revueltian (early to mid Norian) reveals a moderately diverse ichnofauna. *Rhynchosauroides*, considered by Hunt and Lucas (2007) to represent the tracks of a sphenodontian, is found in Arizona, New Mexico, and Utah. *Apatopus*, long considered the track of a phytosoaur (e.g., Foster et al. 2000), is found in Utah. Other ichnotaxa present in the region suggest the presence of dinosaurs: *Barrancapus*, possibly representative of a prosauropod trackway (Hunt et al. 2001), is found in New Mexico and Arizona; another prosauropod ichnotaxon (*Evazoum*) is found in Utah; and *Grallator*, interpreted as the tracks left by a small theropod, is also found in Utah.

The overlying Apachean (late Norian to Rhaetian) contains a diverse ichnofauna across several states, including a more diverse dinosaurian ichnofauna (Hunt and Lucas 2007). The possible sphenodontian track *Rhynchosauroides* is found in Colorado and New Mexico; carnivorous archosaur trackways (*Apatopus*) are found in New Mexico, while possibly herbivorous archosaur trackways (*Brachychirotherium*) are known from Utah, Colorado, New Mexico, and Oklahoma (Lucas and Tanner 2007). *Gwyneddichnium*, unambiguously linked to the Late Triassic reptile *Tanytrachelos*, is found in Utah and Colorado. There is also evidence of synapsid trackways (e.g., *Brasilichnium*) in Colorado. The dinosaurs, represented by three ichnotaxa in the preceding Revueltian, are more diverse and widespread in the Apachean. The small theropod trackway *Grallator* is abundant in Utah, and is also found in Wyoming, Colorado, Arizona, New Mexico, and Oklahoma. A larger theropod probably left *Anchisauripus* tracks in Utah and New Mexico, and *Eubrontes* is known from rocks that may date to the uppermost Triassic (Fig. 8.8.3e). Herbivorous saurischian dinosaurs are represented by the prosauropod trackway *Evazoum* in Utah, Colorado, and New Mexico, *Eosauropus* in Utah, Colorado, Arizona, and New Mexico, and sauropodomorph trackways *Pseudotetrasauropus* and *Tetrasauropus* in Arizona, Utah and Colorado (Lucas and Tanner 2007). *Atreipus*, found in Utah, may have been produced by an ornithischian (Olsen and Baird 1986).

In the lowermost Jurassic of Utah, Arizona and Colorado, large theropod tracks (*Eubrontes*) dominate, although smaller theropod tracks (*Grallator*) and sauropodomorph tracks (*Otozoum*; Fig. 8.8.3c) are also present. All three are also found in dinosaur-dominated trace-fossil assemblages dating to the Sinemurian (Fig. 8.8.3d), together with the tracks of ornithischian (*Anomoepus*) and prosauropod (*Otozoum*) dinosaurs, synapsids (*Brasilichnium*) and crocodilians (*Batrachopus*; Lucas and Tanner 2007).

More evidence for the rise of the dinosaurs through the T–J interval comes from Olsen et al. (2002), one of the few studies that consider the terrestrial trace-fossil record specifically from the perspective of the Late Triassic extinction (Fig. 8.8.2). The focus of the study is the Newark Supergroup, preserved in New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania in the eastern United States. The increase in dinosaur (ichno)taxonomic diversity that is apparent in the western United States is found here as well; Olsen et al. (2002) also reported a concomitant increase in the size of individual tracks, suggesting an increase in dinosaur body size in the latest Triassic.

Nondinosaurian ichnodiversity increases through the Norian and Rhaetian in the Newark Supergroup too, with *Rhynchosauroides* and *Gwyneddichnium* common. The probable silesaurian ichnogenus *Atreipus* is the most common member of the dinosauriform clade of dinosauromorphs (as opposed to dinosaur: Irmis et al. 2007) until the middle Rhaetian. Trackways attributed to theropods include *Grallator*, which occurs throughout the Carnian, Norian, and Rhaetian, and *Anchisauripus*, which first appears in the Norian.

In the Newark Basin, the Late Triassic extinction is marked by a facies change indicating wetter conditions, a coal bed, an apparent iridium anomaly, and a fern spore spike (Olsen et al. 2002). This horizon is correlated with the earliest phase of CAMP activity,

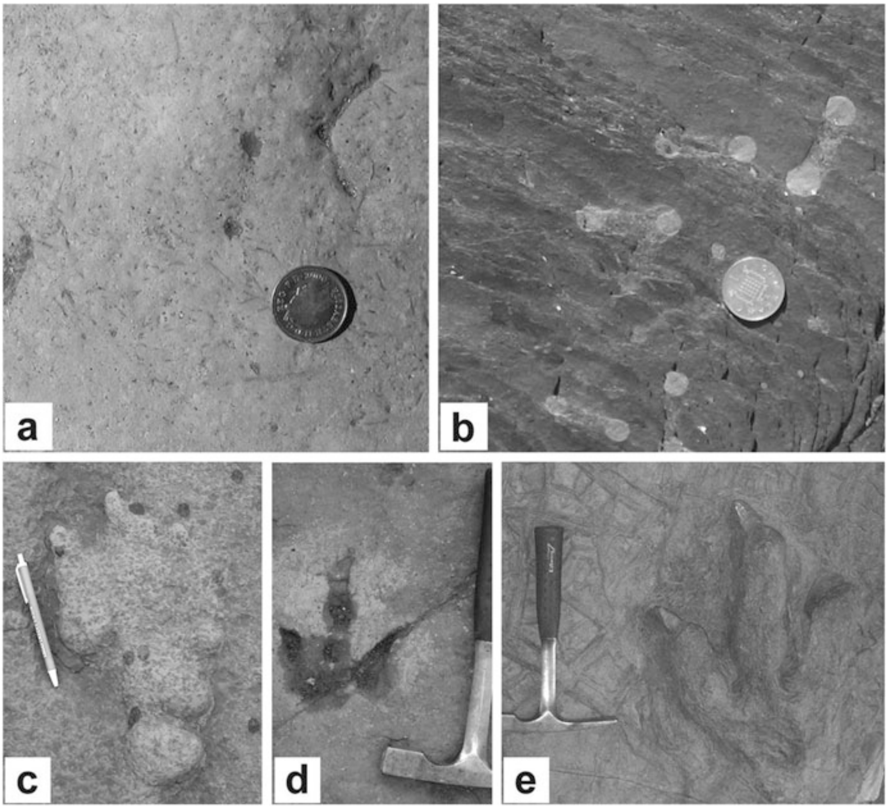


Fig. 8.3 Marine and terrestrial trace fossils of the Triassic–Jurassic interval. (**a**) Small *Diplocraterion* burrows in the *angulata* Zone (Hettangian) of Pinhay Bay, Dorset, UK; (**b**) Large *Diplocraterion* in the *semicostatum* Zone (Sinemurian) of Helwell Bay, Somerset, UK; (**c**) Track of a prosauropod dinosaur (*Otozoum*) in Wingate Sandstone (?Hettangian) of Gateway, Colorado; (**d**) Footprint of a theropod dinosaur (*Grallator*) in Kayenta Formation (Sinemurian to Pliensbachian) of St. George, Utah; (**e**) Footprint of a large theropod dinosaur (*Eubrontes*) in upper part of Dinosaur Canyon Member of Moenave Formation (?Late Triassic) of St. George, Utah. Images (**c**), (**d**), and (**e**) reproduced with permission of Spencer G. Lucas, New Mexico Museum of Natural History and Science, Albuquerque

recorded in Morocco, and the marine extinction event (Deenen et al. 2010; Mander et al. 2013). It marks a decline in the diversity of nondinosaurian tracks and an increase in both diversity and size of dinosaurian tracks (Olsen et al. 2002). The nondinosaurian ichnotaxa *Gwyneddichnium*, *Apatopus*, and *Brachychirotherium parvum* disappear, whereas *Rhynchosauroides* and *Batrachopus* span the extinction, the latter left by a crocodylomorph. Theropod dinosaurs survived the extinction, as evidenced by the records of *Grallator* and *Anchisauripus*, with new ichnotaxa such as *Eubrontes* appearing afterwards. Slightly higher in the section—an estimated >100 ky after the extinction—tracks belonging to prosauropods (*Otozoum*) and ornithischians (*Anomoepus*) appear. The prosauropod tracks increase in frequency, and the ornithischian tracks increase in size, through the remaining succession.

The Late Triassic extinction level also marks the first appearance of much larger theropod tracks (>25 cm in length) belonging to the ichnospecies *Eubrontes giganteus*, considered by some to be simply larger representatives of *Grallator* (e.g., Lucas et al. 2006a), despite differences in relative elongation of members of the two ichnogenera (e.g., Olsen 1980). *Eubrontes* may have been left by a ceratosaur such as *Dilophosaurus* (Lucas et al. 2006a), although some (Weems 2003) have argued the trackmaker was a *Plateosaurus*-like prosauropod.

Olsen et al. (2002) suggested that the increase in size of theropod tracks may represent either dispersal from an unknown location or indicate an evolutionary response to reduced competitive pressure and ecologic release in the aftermath of extinction. Lucas et al. (2006a) rejected this ecologic release hypothesis on the basis that the ichnogenus *Eubrontes* has been recorded from as far back as the Carnian. However, they failed to demonstrate that large-sized examples of the specific ichnospecies *Eubrontes giganteus* are known from preextinction strata, or that there is no size change through the extinction event, which would be a better test of the Olsen et al. (2002) hypothesis.

The vertebrate footprint record from Europe is broadly consistent with the North American picture. The theropod ichnotaxon *Grallator* has been reported from the Rhaetian of southern Sweden (Gierliński and Ahlberg 1994). Otherwise, Late Triassic vertebrate footprints are rare in Europe, although nondinosaurian tracks (possibly *Rhynchosauroides*) are seen in a Late Triassic lagoon in southwest England that evidently experienced occasional periods of emergence (Allington-Jones et al. 2010).

As in North America, *Grallator* is also found in Lower Jurassic European deposits—in Poland and southern Sweden—indicating that theropod dinosaurs in the region survived the extinction interval (Ahlberg 1994; Gierliński and Ahlberg 1994; Gierliński and Pieńkowski 1999). Indeed, the Early Jurassic (Hettangian) of Poland preserves a diverse dinosaur ichnofauna (Gierliński and Pieńkowski 1999; Pieńkowski 2004). Here, sauropod tracks (*Parabrontopodus*) and medium to large theropod footprints (*Anchisauripus* and *Kayentapus*) are found in rocks formed in an inland environment. A shoreline environment preserves ornithischians (*Anomoepus*, *Atreipus* and *Moyenisauropus*) and theropods (*Megalosauripus*, *Grallator*, and *Anchisauripus*), while *Plesiornis*, a possible protoavian track, is found in rocks formed under fluvial influence (Gierliński and Pieńkowski 1999; Pieńkowski 2004; Gierliński et al. 2010). Early mammalian prints also occur within Poland's nonmarine Lower Jurassic deposits (Pieńkowski 2004; Gierliński et al. 2010).

The Polish record, like that of North America, contains its first large theropod dinosaur footprints after the Late Triassic extinction. *Eubrontes* footprints (>34 cm in length) occur in the Hettangian, together with a single, unusually large (55 cm in length) footprint that may be *Megalosauripus* (Gierliński et al. 2010). Large sauropods are present too; some of the *Parabrontopodus* tracks found in the Early Jurassic of Poland are to 42 cm in length (Gierliński et al. 2010).

8.2.2 Marine Record

8.2.2.1 Deep-sea Ichnofauna Across the T–J Boundary

Nearly 30 ichnogenera inhabited the deep-sea in the Carboniferous, before a halving of ichnotaxonomic diversity in the Permian (Uchman 2004). Numbers remained low through the Triassic and Jurassic, rising again to Carboniferous levels only in the Cretaceous. However, a recent analysis of Upper Triassic deep-sea fan deposits in the Al Ayn Formation of Oman suggested ichnofaunal diversity was abundant at this time. Wetzel et al. (2007) recorded 32 ichnogenera, making this the most diverse deep-sea ichnofauna known until the Early Cretaceous. The ichnofauna includes predepositional forms that are cast by turbidites (*Belorhaphe*, *Circulichnis*, *Desmograpton*, *Glockerichnus*, *Gordia*, *Helminthopsis*, *Lorenzinia*, *Megagrapton*, *Paleodictyon*, *Strobiloraphe*, and *Treptichnus*) and postdepositional forms that penetrate the turbidites (*Arenicolites*, *Protovirgularia*, *Zoophycos*, *Thalassinoides*, and *Ophiomorpha*).

The deep-sea ichnofauna may have reduced in diversity in response to Permo-Carboniferous glaciation (Uchman 2004)—deep-sea ichnotaxonomic diversity also fell during episodes of glaciation in the Quaternary (Cronin and Raymo 1997). Warmer deep-sea conditions in the Late Triassic may then have contributed to an increase in ichnotaxonomic diversity. However, there is too little data as yet to search for any effects of the end-Triassic extinction on the deep-sea ichnofauna.

8.2.2.2 Shallow-Marine Ichnofauna Across the T–J Boundary

As with the terrestrial record, a number of studies have described shallow marine trace fossils from Upper Triassic or Lower Jurassic strata (e.g., Swift and Duffin 1999; Moghadam and Paul 2000), but few have studied ichnologic change through the extinction event.

A Late Triassic (Rhaetian) to Early Jurassic (Sinemurian) near-shore marine succession in southern Poland contains a moderately diverse ichnofauna including arthropod traces (*Cruziana*, *Thalassinoides*), asterozoan traces (*Asteriacites*), horizontal burrows (*Planolites*, *Palaeophycus*), and vertically branching *Chondrites* burrows (Uchman 1991).

Lower Jurassic lagoonal deposits in southern Sweden contain the bivalve traces *Lockeia* and *Protovirgularia* (Ahlberg 1994). Elsewhere in the region, the Early Jurassic is characterized by muds deposited in a tidally influenced environment. Horizontal and vertical burrows (*Cylindrichnus*, *Diplocraterion*, *Monocraterion*, *Phycodes*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Skolithos*, *Teichichnus*, *Thalassinoides)*, bivalve traces (*Lockeia*), and arthropod traces (*Kouphichnium*, *Merostomichnites*) are found here (Pieńkowski 1991a; Ahlberg 1994). In deposits dating to the Sinemurian, the ichnofauna comprises *Diplocraterion*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, and *Teichichnus* (Pieńkowski 1991a). Shales deposited in relatively deep and often dysaerobic conditions contain common *Chondrites*, with rare *Rhizocorallium* indicating occasional oxygenation (Pieńkowski 1991a). Hettangian to Sinemurian marine storm deposits in southern Sweden contain a burrow-dominated ichnofauna of *Teichichnus*, *Thalassinoides*, *Rhizocorallium*, and rare *Diplocraterion* (Pieńkowski 1991a). Storm-influenced shallow marine successions from the Early Jurassic (Sinemurian) of Poland are rich in *Diplocraterion* (Pieńkowski 1991b).

The T–J shallow-marine trace-fossil records of the UK, Austria, and Nevada, USA, have been examined by Twitchett and Barras (2004), with a more detailed analysis of the trace-fossil record in England by Barras and Twitchett (2007; Fig. 8.8.2). A key section is at St Audrie's Bay, Somerset, UK, which had been considered as a candidate for the Global Stratotype Section and Point for the base of the Jurassic (e.g., Warrington et al. 1994). Although the first appearance of the ammonite *Psiloceras spelae* in the Kuhjoch section of Austria was ultimately chosen as the GSSP (Hillebrandt et al. 2007), the St Audrie's Bay section remains critical for correlating the marine and terrestrial records (Deenen et al. 2010; Mander et al. 2013).

The Late Triassic extinction event correlates with an isotopic excursion in the middle of the Lilstock Formation in St Audrie's Bay, just prior to the boundary between the Cotham and Langport members (Hesselbo et al. 2004; Mander et al. 2013). Trace fossils formed prior to and possibly during the extinction event, in the Rhaetian Westbury and Lilstock formations, have been documented by a number of researchers (Wang 1993; Swift and Duffin 1999; Barras and Twitchett 2007; Allington-Jones et al. 2010). To the east of St Audrie's Bay, at Westbury-on-Severn, the Westbury Formation begins with siltstones formed in relatively oxygenated shallow marine conditions. These contain vertical burrows (*Diplocraterion* and *Skolithos*; Wang 1993). Above these marine siltstones, conditions become more restricted and indicative of a shallow lagoonal setting with lower oxygen. Bioturbation in discrete horizons here probably records storm events that brought in animals, sediment, and oxygen to the restricted environment (Wang 1993; Allington-Jones et al. 2010). Some trace fossils here (*Cruziana*, *Rusophycus*, and *Selenichnites*) probably show the activity of xiphosurids (Wang 1993). Allington-Jones et al (2010) report a diverse ichnofauna within these storm layers, including burrows (*Chondrites*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Taenidium*, *Thalassinoides*), bivalve *(Lockeia*, *Protovirgularia)*, and arthropod (*Merostomichnites*, *Monomorphichnus*, *Oniscoidichnus*) traces, and a previously undescribed grazing trail, *Radichnus*. At St Audrie's Bay, the Rhaetian Westbury Formation is mostly thoroughly bioturbated, although few discrete trace fossils are preserved in the mudstone facies (Swift and Duffin 1999). Elsewhere in the region, shallower, sandier facies preserve a suite of trace fossils such, as *Arenicolites*, *Diplocraterion*, *Kouphichnium*, *Lockeia Palaeophycus*, and *Planolites* (Swift and Duffin 1999).

Following the extinction event, the Langport Member of the Lilstock Formation is well laminated and devoid of trace fossils at St Audrie's Bay, but elsewhere a low diversity, small-sized assemblage may be recorded. At Long Itchington, Warwickshire, for example, the Langport Member is moderately bioturbated with the beds measuring 2–3 on Droser and Bottjer's (1986) ichnofabric index for vertical sections (vii), while bedding planes assessed using Miller and Smail's (1997) ichnofabric index for horizontal exposures (hii) measure 2–4 (Barras and Twitchett 2007). Rare examples of *Arenicolites*, *Diplocraterion*, *Palaeophycus*, and

Rhizocorallium are found, although these are small in size; *Arenicolites* burrow diameter is generally 1–2 mm. Larger diameter *Diplocraterion* are locally abundant at the boundary between the Langport Member and the overlying Blue Lias Formation at Pinhay Bay in Dorset (Barras and Twitchett 2007).

The boundary between the Lilstock Formation and overlying Blue Lias Formation represents a significant deepening of the marine environment, probably linked to sea level rise during global warming, which needs to be borne in mind when comparing the ichnofaunas of the two formations. The lowermost beds of the Blue Lias Formation are termed the "Pre-Planorbis Beds," and were deposited during peak global warming around the T–J boundary. They are unbioturbated (vii1) in their lower part, but by the upper "Pre-Planorbis Beds" extensive bioturbation (vii4-5) is recorded. Milankovitch-scale lithologic cyclicity is evident in the Blue Lias Formation, and throughout the formation there is a small-scale alternation of laminated and bioturbated beds (Moghadam and Paul 2000). From the base of the *planorbis* Zone upwards, however, the latter are all well bioturbated (vii4-6) through to at least the Sinemurian *bucklandi* Zone (Barras and Twitchett 2007).

The lowest recorded ichnotaxa in the Blue Lias Formation are *Arenicolites* and *Thalassinoides* from the upper Pre-Planorbis Beds of Pinhay Bay. During the overlying Hettangian there is a stepwise increase in ichnotaxonomic diversity, which shows a similar trend at Pinhay Bay and St Audrie's Bay (Twitchett and Barras 2004; Barras and Twitchett 2007). At other locations, the rock record may be less complete but the trends are similar. At Long Itchington, for example, the ichnofauna of the Rugby Limestone Member is similar to that recorded in limestones of the same age (i.e. upper *angulata* and *bucklandi* zones) at Pinhay Bay and St Audrie's Bay. At its most diverse, in the upper *angulata* Zone and above, the Blue Lias Formation ichnofauna includes *Arenicolites*, *Chondrites*, *Diplocraterion*, *Palaeophycus*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, and *Thalassinoides*. It is only within and above the *angulata* Zone that the four ichnotaxa recorded in the Triassic Lilstock Formation co-occur again (Barras and Twitchett 2007).

When they first (re)appear in the *angulata* Zone, *Diplocraterion* burrows are significantly ($p>0.95$) smaller than are similar burrows in the Langport Member at Pinhay Bay. Both *Diplocraterion* and *Arenicolites* significantly ($p>0.95$) increase in size from the *angulata* Zone through to the *bucklandi* Zone (Barras and Twitchett 2007; Fig. 8.8.3a, b).

As burrow size is correlated to body size (Savrda and Bottjer 1986), Barras and Twitchett (2007) inferred that the soft-bodied trace-making infauna was small in the "Pre-Planorbis Beds," the *planorbis* and *liasicus* zones, and increased in size from the later Blue Lias Formation. Given the link between small body size and low oxygen concentration (e.g., Rhoads and Morse 1971), and evidence of anoxic and euxinic conditions in the shales of the lower "Pre-Planorbis Beds" (e.g., Wignall 2001b), Barras and Twitchett (2007) further suggested that the ichnofauna records a gradual return to oxygen rich conditions following a period of anoxia in the "Pre-Planorbis Beds."

The ichnofaunal record in Austria and Nevada is less extensive than that in England, and has been little studied (Hallam and Wignall 2000, Twitchett and Barras 2004). Limestones belonging to the Rhaetian-aged Kössen Formation, exposed at Gaissau and Kendelbach Formation in Central Austria, are well bioturbated (vii3–4) and contain *Diplocraterion*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Skolithos*, and *Zoophycos*. These ichnotaxa are absent from the uppermost beds of the Kössen Formation, and from the overlying Kendelbach Formation—a roughly 10-m-thick succession of limestones thought to encompass the Hettangian (Twitchett and Barras 2004). However, the shelly fossil record suggests any extinction here was followed by swift recovery before the first appearance of *Psiloceras* in the Kendelbach Formation (Hallam 1990).

In the New York Canyon area of the Gabbs Valley Ranges, Nevada, there is a modestly diverse ichnofauna in the Rhaetian-aged Mount Hyatt Member of the Gabbs Formation. *Arenicolites*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Skolithos*, and *Thalassinoides* are found in the limestone-dominated succession, although the rocks are relatively poorly bioturbated (vii2; Twitchett and Barras 2004). Within the lower reaches of the overlying Muller Canyon Member of the Gabbs Formation, Guex et al. (2004) found evidence of a negative carbon excursion that they related to emplacement of CAMP. Locally intense bioturbation and thoroughly mottled horizons with the horizontal trace *Helminthoida* (now *Nereites irregularis*) have been reported (Hallam and Wignall 2000), but these were not located during a later study and in general trace fossils are rare within this member (Twitchett and Barras 2004).

The Ferguson Hill Member of the Sunrise Formation lies above and is dated as late Hettangian to early Sinemurian (Taylor et al. 1983). *Arenicolites*, *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Skolithos*, and *Thalassinoides* all reappear in the Ferguson Hill Member of the Sunrise Formation, and *Chondrites* and *Diplocraterion* are also reported (Twitchett and Barras 2004). The reappearance of an abundant ichnofauna is associated with, and possibly the result of, facies and palaeoenvironmental changes; the Ferguson Hill Member is limestone dominated, and similar in appearance to the Mount Hyatt Member.

In summary, there are clear local changes in marine ichnofaunas through the T–J boundary interval in England, Austria, and Nevada that may relate to CAMP-induced warming-related environmental changes. While there is no evidence for extinction of trace makers in the Late Triassic, unlike the terrestrial record, there are clear ecologic changes in terms of burrow size, depth, and diversity during this interval. Locally, it appears that diverse Late Triassic ichnofaunas, representing a healthy benthic ecosystem, disappear around the extinction level and only reappear from the latest Hettangian onwards (Twitchett and Barras 2004). In between, although there are local differences, it appears that shallow marine ichnofaunas are typically of relatively low diversity, with small-sized and shallow penetrating burrows.

8.3 Discussion

It now seems likely that the Late Triassic extinction was largely a result of global warming and related environmental effects, associated with the widespread volcanism that led to the formation of CAMP. Furthermore, recent correlations (e.g., Mander et al. 2013) imply that atmospheric CO_2 remained high through the T–J boundary before declining to preextinction levels sometime in the later Hettangian, following cessation of CAMP activity. Although the data are currently sparse, and there is a clear need for more high resolution analyses from other localities worldwide, current evidence suggest that CAMP-related environmental changes and the associated Late Triassic extinction event are both reflected in the T–J trace-fossil record.

On land, the onset of CAMP-related volcanism is associated with the extinction of several groups of terrestrial vertebrate, as recorded in the disappearance of their footprints (Olsen et al. 2002). This warming-related event led to a dramatic increase in the dominance of dinosaur taxa and an associated increase in footprint, and therefore body, size during the Hettangian. While it is possible that the increase in maximum body size is simply a consequence of increased diversity and variance (Gould 1988), Olsen et al. (2002) suggested that it may be due to ecologic release following extinction of competing taxa. It is therefore intriguing that during the Hettangian a similar size trend is recorded in marine infaunal invertebrates, as evidenced by an increase in burrow diameter (Twitchett and Barras 2004; Barras and Twitchett 2007). The diameter of marine trace fossils reached a minimum during the peak warming interval spanning the T–J boundary, probably because of the combined stresses of elevated temperatures and an expansion in hypoxic or euxinic conditions at that time (Kidder and Worsley 2010). Although more data are required, it is possible that size increase in animals, on land and in the sea, is a response to the decline in atmospheric CO_2 back to preextinction levels coupled with a rise in atmospheric oxygen levels.

In the marine realm, the trace-fossil show as presently known does not show evidence of extinction of any tracemakers, but does indicate that there were significant ecologic changes to the marine benthic ecosystem. Apart from a reduction in burrow diameter, a reduction in diversity and maximum burrow depth is also recorded during peak global warming following the extinction event. Although this is an expected consequence of the associated environmental changes, such as reduced ocean circulation and expanding anoxia, these changes also have implications for ecosystem functioning. The depth and size of infaunal organisms affects the amount of bioturbation and a number of key nutrient cycles (Solan et al. 2004). The lower levels of bioturbation during peak global warming would have reduced efficient nutrient cycling, with consequences for the entire marine ecosystem.

The T–J interval was a time of major crisis, related to emplacement of a large igneous province and associated global warming. As a greater number of sedimentary successions across the T–J boundary are studied for their trace fossils, the impact of these major environmental changes on the marine and terrestrial realms should become clearer, providing a more complete picture of the degree to which Late Triassic global warming affected Earth's biosphere.

8.4 Conclusion

The trace-fossil record across the T–J boundary appears to preserve evidence of ecological and taxonomic change associated with the Late Triassic extinction event. There are well-documented changes in trace-fossil size and diversity through the interval—both in terrestrial and in shallow marine environments. Such findings are consistent with the current understanding that the Late Triassic extinction event was triggered by global warming and related effects of the emplacement of CAMP.

However, while there is evidence of (ichno)taxonomic extinction in the terrestrial realm, studies to date have yet to find evidence of extinction in the marine trace-fossil record. This might be more a reflection of a lack of study rather than a lack of evidence, because few trace-fossil studies have been conducted specifically from the perspective of documenting and understanding the extinction event.

Acknowledgments The constructive comments of Alfred Uchman and Paul Olsen helped to improve an earlier draft of this text.

References

Ahlberg A (1994) Facies analysis of alluvial and deltaic environments in the Hettangian of NW Skåne, southern Sweden. In: Ahlberg A (ed) Deposition and diagenesis of the Rhaetian–Hettangian succession (Triassic–Jurassic) in southern Sweden, pp 53. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Lund University, Sweden

Ahlberg A and Arndorff L (1994) Pedogenesis and sedimentology of alluvial Upper Triassic (middle Rhaetian) strata of Bjuv Member (Höganäs Formation), NW Skåne, southern Sweden. In: Ahlberg A (ed) Deposition and diagenesis of the Rhaetian–Hettangian succession (Triassic–Jurassic) in southern Sweden, 53 pp. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Lund University, Sweden

Allington-Jones L, Braddy SJ, Trueman CN (2010) Palaeoenvironmental implications of the ichnology and geochemistry of the Westbury Formation (Rhaetian), Westbury-on-Severn, southwest England. Palaeontology 53:491–506

Allison PA, Briggs DEG (1991) Taphonomy of nonmineralised tissues. In: Alison PA, Briggs DEG (eds) Taphonomy: releasing the data locked in the fossil record. Plenum Press, New York

Barras CG, Twitchett RJ (2007) Response of the marine infauna to Triassic-Jurassic environmental change: ichnological data from southern England. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 244:223–241

Beerling DJ (2002) CO2 and the end-Triassic mass extinction. Nature 415:386–387

Beerling DJ, Berner RA (2002) Biogeochemical constraints on the Triassic-Jurassic boundary carbon cycle event. Glob Biogeochem Cycles 16:10-1–10-13

Bromley R, Asgaard U (1979) Triassic freshwater ichnocoenoses from Carlsberg Fjord, East Greenland. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 28:39–80

Cronin TM, Raymo ME (1997) Orbital forcing of deep-sea benthic species diversity. Nature 385:624–627

Cuny G (1995) French vertebrate faunas and the Triassic-Jurassic boundary. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 119:343–358

Deenen MHL, Ruhl M, Bonis NR, Krijgsman W, Kuerschner WM, Reitsma M, van Bergen MJ (2010) A new chronology for the end-Triassic mass extinction. Earth Planet Sci Lett 291:113–125

Droser M, Bottjer DJ (1986) A semi-quantitative field classification of ichnofabrics. J Sediment Petrol 56:558–559

Findlay HS, Wood HL, Kendall MA, Spicer JI, Twitchett RJ, Widdicombe S (2011) Comparing the impact of high CO_2 on calcium carbonate structures in different marine organisms. Mar Biol Res 7:565–575

Foster JR, Hamblin AH, Lockley GM (2000) The oldest evidence of a sauropod dinosaur in the western United States and other important vertebrate trackways from Grand Staircase Escalante national monument, Utah. Ichnos 7:169–181

Galli MT, Jadoul F, Bernasconi SM, Weissert H (2005) Anomalies in global carbon cycling and extinction at the Triassic/Jurassic boundary: evidence from a marine C-isotope record. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 216:203–214

Gierliński G, Ahlberg A (1994) Late Triassic and early Jurassic dinosaur footprints in the Höganäs Formation of southern Sweden. Ichnos 3:99–105

Gierliński G, Pieńkowski G (1999) Dinosaur track assemblages from the Hettangian of Poland. Geol Quart 43:329–346

Gierliński G, Pieńkowski G, Niedźwiedzki G (2010) Tetrapod track assemblage in the Hettangian of Sołtyków, Poland, and its paleoenvironmental background. Ichnos 11:195–213

Gould SJ (1988) Trends as changes in variance: a new slant on progress and directionality in evolution. J Paleont 63:319–329

Guex J, Bartolini A, Atudorei V, Taylor D (2004) High-resolution ammonite and carbon isotope stratigraphy across the Triassic-Jurassic boundary at New York Canyon (Nevada). Earth Planet Sci Lett 225:29–41

Hallam A (1990) Correlation of the Triassic-Jurassic boundary in England and Austria. J Geol Soc Lond 147:421–424

Hallam A (2002) How catastrophic was the end-Triassic mass extinction? Lethaia 35:147–157

Hallam A, Wignall PB (1997) Mass extinction and sea level change. Earth-Sci Rev 48:217–258

Hallam A, Wignall PB (2000) Facies changes across the Triassic-Jurassic boundary in Nevada, USA. J Geol Soc Lond 157:49–54

Hautmann M (2004) Effect of end-Triassic CO_2 maximum on carbonate sedimentation and marine mass extinction. Facies 50:257–261

Hesselbo SP, Robinson SA, Surlyk F, Piasecki S (2002) Terrestrial and marine extinction at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary synchronized with major carbon-cycle perturbation: a link to initiation of massive volcanism? Geology 30:251–254

Hesselbo SP, Robinson SA, Surlyk F (2004) Sea-level change and facies development across potential Triassic-Jurassic boundary horizons, SW Britain. J Geol Soc Lond 161:365–379

Hillebrandt K, Krystyn L, Kürschner WM (2007) A candidate GSSP for the base of the Jurassic in the Northern Calcareous Alps (Kuhjoch section, Karwendel Mountains, Tyrol, Austria). Int Subcomm Jurassic Strat 34:2–20

Hunt AP, Lucas SG, Hecket AB (2001) Does the enigmatic tetrapod ichnotaxon *Barrancapus cresapi* from the upper Triassic Bull Canyon Formation of east-central New Mexico represent the oldest prosauropod trackway? N M Geol 23:63

Hunt AP, Lucas SG (2007) Late Triassic tetrapod tracks of western North America. In: Lucas SG, Spielmann JA (eds) Triassic of the American West, vol 40, New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull., pp 215–230

Irmis RB, Nesbitt SJ, Padian K, Smith ND, Turner AH, Woody D, Downs A (2007) A Late Triassic dinosauromorph assemblage from New Mexico and the rise of dinosaurs. Science 317:358–361

Kiessling W, Simpson C (2011) On the potential for ocean acidification to be a general cause of ancient reef crises. Glob Change Biol 17:56–67

Kidder DL, Worsley TR (2010) Phanerozoic Large Igneous Provinces (LIPs), HEATT (Haline Euxinic Acidic Thermal Transgression) episodes, and mass extinctions. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 295:162–191

Knight KB, Nomade S, Renne PR, Marzoli A, Bertrand H, Youbi N (2004) The central Atlantic magmatic province at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary: paleomagnetic and 40Ar/39Ar evidence from Morocco for brief, episodic volcanism. Earth Planet Sci Lett 228:143–160

Lucas SG, Lerner AJ (2006) Invertebrate ichnofossil assemblages of the upper Triassic Redonda Formation at Mesa Redonda, east-central New Mexico. In: Harris JD, Lucas SG, Spielmann JA, Lockley MG, Milner ARC, Kirkland JI (eds) The Triassic-Jurassic terrestrial transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:122–127

Lucas SG, Tanner LH (2007) Tetrapod biostratigraphy and biochronology of the Triassic–Jurassic transition on the southern Colorado Plateau, USA. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 244:242–256

Lucas SG, Klein H, Lockley MG et al (2006a) Triassic-Jurassic stratigraphic distribution of the theropod footprint ichnogenus *Eubrontes*. In: Harris JD, Lucas SG, Spielmann JA, Lockley MG, Milner ARC, Kirkland JI (eds) The Triassic-Jurassic terrestrial transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:86–93

Lucas SG, Lerner AJ, Milner AR, Lockley MG (2006b) Lower Jurassic ichnofossils from a clastic lake margin, Johnson Farm, southwestern Utah. In: Harris JD, Lucas SG, Spielmann JA, Lockley MG, Milner ARC, Kirkland JI (eds) The Triassic-Jurassic terrestrial transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:128–136

Mander L, Twitchett RJ (2008) Quality of the Triassic-Jurassic bivalve fossil record in northwest Europe. Palaeontology 51:1213–1223

Mander L, Twitchett RJ, Benton MJ (2008) Palaeoecology of the Late Triassic extinction event in the SW UK. J Geol Soc Lond 165:319–332

Mander L, Kürschner WM, McElwain JC (2010) An explanation for conflicting records of Triassic–Jurassic plant diversity. PNAS 107:15351–15356

Mander L, Kürschner WM, McElwain JC (2013) Palynostratigraphy and vegetation history of the Triassic–Jurassic transition in East Greenland. J Geol Soc Lond 170:37–46

Marzoli A, Renne PR, Piccirillo EM, Ernesto M, Bellieni G, De Min A (1999) Extensive 200 Ma continental flood basalts of the central Atlantic magmatic province. Science 284:616–618

Marzoli A, Bertrand H, Knight KB, Cirilli S, Buratti N, Vérati C, Nomade S, Renne PR, Youbi N, Martini R, Allenbach K, Neuwerth R, Rapaille C, Zaninetti L, Bellieni G (2004) Synchrony of the Central Atlantic magmatic province and the Triassic- Jurassic boundary climatic and biotic crisis. Geology 32:973–976

McElwain JC, Beerling DJ, Woodward FL (1999) Fossil plants and global warming at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary. Science 285:1386–1390

McElwain JC, Popa ME, Hesselbo SP, Haworth M, Surlyk F (2007) Macroecological responses of terrestrial vegetation to climatic and atmospheric change across the Triassic/Jurassic boundary in east Greenland. Paleobiology 33:547–573

McElwain JC, Wagner PJ, Hesselbo SP (2009) Fossil plant relative abundances indicate sudden loss of late Triassic biodiversity in east Greenland. Science 324:1554–1556

McGhee GR, Sheehan PM, Bottjer DJ, Droser ML (2004) Ecological ranking of Phanerozoic biodiversity crises: ecological and taxonomic severities decoupled. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 211:289–297

McHone JG (2000) Non-plume magmatism and rifting during the opening of the central Atlantic Ocean. Tectonophysics 316:287–296

Melchor RN (2004) Trace fossil distribution in lacustrine deltas: examples from the Triassic rift lakes of the Ischigualasto-Villa Unión Basin, Argentina. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Lond Spec Pub 228:335–354

Miller MF, Smail SE (1997) A semiquantitative field method for evaluating bioturbation on bedding planes. Palaios 12:391–396

Moghadam HV, Paul CRC (2000) Trace fossils of the Jurassic, Blue Lias, Lyme Regis, southern England. Ichnos 7:283–306

Newell ND (1963) Crises in the history of life. Sci Am 208:76–92

Olsen PE (1980) Fossil great lakes of the Newark Supergroup in New Jersey. In: Manspeizer, W (ed) Field Studies in New Jersey Geology and Guide to Field Trips, 52nd Ann. Mtg. New York State Geol. Assoc., Newark College of Arts and Sciences, Newark, Rutgers University, pp 352–398

Olsen PE, Baird D (1986) The ichnogenus *Atreipus* and its significance for Triassic biostratigraphy. In: Padian K (ed) The beginning of the age of the dinosaurs. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 261–287

Olsen PE, Shubin NH, Anders MH (1987) New early Jurassic tetrapod assemblages constrain Triassic-Jurassic tetrapod extinction event. Science 237:1025–1029

Olsen PE, Kent DV, Sues HD, Koeberl C, Huber H, Montanari A, Rainforth EC, Fowell SJ, Szajna MJ, Hartline BW (2002) Ascent of dinosaurs linked to an iridium anomaly at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary. Science 296:1305–1307

Pieńkowski G (1991a) Liassic sedimentation in Scania, southern Sweden: Hettangian–Sinemurian of the Helsingborg area. Facies 24:39–86

Pieńkowski G (1991b) Eustatically-controlled sedimentation in the Hettangian–Sinemurian (Early Jurassic) of Poland and Sweden. Sedimentology 38:503–518

Pieńkowski G (2004) Sołtyków, Poland—an unique palaeoecological record of the Early Jurassic continental deposits. Vol Jurassica 2:1–16

Pieńkowski G, Niedźwiedzki G (2008) Invertebrate trace fossil assemblages from the Lower Hettangian of Sołtyków, Holy Cross Mountains, Poland. Vol Jurassica 6:109–131

Retallack GJ (2001) A 300-million-year record of atmospheric carbon dioxide from fossil plant cuticles. Nature 411:287–290

Rhoads DC, Morse JW (1971) Evolutionary and ecologic significance of oxygen-deficient marine basins. Lethaia 4:413–428

Ruhl M, Kürschner WM, Krystyn L (2009) Triassic–Jurassic organic carbon isotope stratigraphy of key sections in the western Tethys realm (Austria). Earth Plan Sci Lett 281:169–187

Savrda CE, Bottjer DJ (1986) Trace-fossil model for reconstruction of paleo-oxygenation in bottom waters. Geology 14:3–6

Schaller MF, Wright JD, Kent DV (2011) Atmospheric $p\mathrm{CO}_2$ perturbations associated with the Central Atlantic Magmatic Province. Science 331:1404–1409

Schlirf M, Uchman A, Kümmel M (2001) Upper Triassic (Keuper) nonmarine trace fossils from the Haßberge region (Franconia, southern Germany). Paläontol Zeitsch 75:71–96

Schootbrugge B, Tremolada F, Rosenthal Y et al (2007) End-Triassic calcification crisis and blooms of organic-walled 'disaster species'. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 244:126–141

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1981) A factor analytic description of the Phanerozoic marine fossil record. Paleobiology 7:36–53

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1993) 10 years in the library: new data confirm paleontological patterns. Paleobiology 19:43–51

Solan M, Cardinale BJ, Downing AL, Engelhardt KAM, Ruesink JL, Srivastava DS (2004) Extinction and ecosystem function in the marine benthos. Science 306:1177–1180

Steinthorsdottir M, Jeram AJ, McElwain JC (2011) Extremely elevated CO2 concentrations at the Triassic/Jurassic boundary. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 308:418–432

Swift A and Duffin CJ (1999) Trace fossils. In: Swift A, Martill DM (eds) Fossils of the Rhaetian Penarth Group. Palaeontolog. Assoc. Field Guide to Fossils 9, London, pp 239–250

Tanner LH, Lucas SG, Chapman MG (2004) Assessing the record and causes of Late Triassic extinctions. Earth Sci Rev 65:103–139

Taylor DG, Smith PL, Laws RA, Guex J (1983) The stratigraphy and biofacies trends of the lower Mesozoic Gabbs and Sunrise formations, west-central Nevada. Can J Earth Sci 20:1598–1608

Twitchett RJ, Barras CG (2004) Trace fossils in the aftermath of mass extinction events. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Lond Spec Pub 228:397–418

Uchman A (1991) *Isopodichnus* and other trace fossils from marine Kopieniec Formation (Rhaetian–Sinemurian) in the Tatra Mts., Poland. Geol Carpathica 42:117–121

Uchman A (2004) Phanerozoic history of deep-sea trace fossils. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Lond Spec Pub 228:125–140

Wang G (1993) Xiphosurid trace fossils from the Westbury Formation (Rhaetian) of southwest Britain. Palaeontology 36:111–122

Ward PD, Haggart JW, Carter ES, Wilbur D, Tipper HW, Evans T (2004) Sudden productivity collapse associated with the Triassic-Jurassic boundary mass extinction. Science 292:1148–1151

Warrington G, Cope JCW, Ivimey-Cook HC (1994) St Audrie's Bay, Somerset, England: a candidate Global Stratotype Section and Point for the base of the Jurassic system. Geol Mag 131:191–200

Weems RE (2003) *Plateosaurus* foot structure suggests a single trackmaker for *Eubrontes* and *Gigandipus* footprints. In: LeTourneau PM, Olsen PE (eds) The great rift valleys of Pangea in eastern North America, vol 2. Columbia University Press, New York, pp 293–313

Wetzel A, Blechschmidt I, Uchman A, Matter A (2007) A highly diverse ichnofauna in late Triassic deep-sea fan deposits of Oman. Palaios 22:567–576

Whiteside JH, Olsen PE, Eglinton T, Brookfield ME, Sambrotto RN (2010) Compound-specific carbon isotopes from Earth's largest flood basalt eruptions directly linked to the end-Triassic mass extinction. PNAS 107:6721–6725

Wignall PB (2001a) Large igneous provinces and mass extinctions. Earth-Sci Rev 53:1–33

Wignall PB (2001b) Sedimentology of the Triassic-Jurassic boundary beds in Pinhay Bay (Devon, SW England). Proc Geol Assoc 112:349–360

Williford KH, Ward PD, Garrison GH, Buick R (2006) An extended organic carbon-isotope record across the Triassic–Jurassic boundary in the Queen Charlotte Islands, British Columbia, Canada. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 244:290–296

Chapter 9
The Mesozoic Marine Revolution

Luis A. Buatois, Noelia B. Carmona, H. Allen Curran, Renata G. Netto, M. Gabriela Mángano, and Andreas Wetzel

9.1 Introduction

Modern-marine ecosystems are the result of numerous evolutionary innovations that took place during the Mesozoic, commonly referred to as the Mesozoic Marine Revolution (MMR; Vermeij 1977, 1987). This major evolutionary episode was responsible for the large-scale restructuring of shallow-marine benthic communities, including increases in the energy budgets of marine ecosystems (Finnegan et al. 2011) and predation levels, the latter resulting in a number of coevolutionary developments (Vermeij 1987). In particular, the intensification of grazing and the diversification of durophagous predators were conducive to increases in prey sturdiness and frequency of shell repair (Vermeij 1987; Kelley and Hansen 2001).

The MMR also signaled the rise to dominance of the Modern Evolutionary Fauna (MEF). The MEF actually had its origins in the early Paleozoic, but true displacement of Paleozoic faunas was not complete until after the end-Permian mass extinction

---

L.A. Buatois (✉) • M.G. Mángano
Department of Geological Sciences, University of Saskatchewan,
114 Science Place, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

N.B. Carmona
CONICET-UNRN, Instituto de Investigación en Paleobiología y Geología, Universidad
Nacional de Río Negro, Isidro Lobo y Belgrano, 8332 Roca, Río Negro, Argentina

H.A. Curran
Department of Geosciences, Smith College, Northampton, MA 01063, USA

R.G. Netto
UNISINOS, PPGeo, Av. Unisinos, 950, 93022-000 São Leopoldo, RS, Brazil

A. Wetzel
Geologisch-Paläontologisches Institut, Universität Basel,
Bernoullistrasse 32, CH-4056 Basel, Switzerland

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_9

(Sepkoski and Sheehan 1983; Sepkoski and Miller 1985; see Chap. 7). This shift from the Paleozoic Evolutionary Fauna (PEF) to the MEF involved the transition from sedentary epifaunal suspension feeders to mobile, energetic (high-metabolism) infaunal suspension feeders, deposit feeders, and predators (Wagner et al. 2006; Leighton et al. 2013). These changes included the appearance of ecologic guilds not represented within the Cambrian Evolutionary Fauna (CEF) and PEF (Thayer 1983; Bambach 1983). The number of utilized modes of life increased to present levels by the late Cenozoic, with all 20 Bambachian megaguilds being filled (Sheehan 2001; Bambach et al. 2007). At this point, marine paleocommunities had a much greater representation of infaunal organisms and a higher proportion of motile animals than mid-Paleozoic communities (Bush et al. 2007).

Not surprisingly, the majority of studies published on the MMR have been based on the body-fossil record. However, the trace-fossil record provides valuable additional evidence of the profound nature of this episode, particularly with respect to the degree of infaunalization, complexity of infaunal tiering structures, and predation intensity (e.g., Bertling 1999; Harper 2003; Bromley 2004; Glaub and Vogel 2004; Wilson 2007; Knaust 2007; Carmona et al. 2008; Buatois and Mángano 2011). In this chapter, the ichnologic record of the MMR is reviewed. The chapter is divided into three parts: first, the main groups of tracemakers involved in the rise of the MEF are analyzed; second, the trace-fossil record of post-Paleozoic shallow-marine environments is reviewed in order to provide insights into the timing of this evolutionary event; and, third, the ichnologic record is discussed with respect to how it can illuminate our knowledge of the MMR by assessing aspects, such as its environmental breadth, evolution of behavior, evolution of the mixed layer, potential paleogeographic patterns, and secular changes in infaunalization.

9.2 The Cast of Characters

9.2.1 The Main Groups of Burrowers

The MEF is dominated by bivalves, gastropods, echinoids, crustaceans, and marine vertebrates; other invertebrate groups, including gymnolaemate bryozoans, demosponges, corals and ammonites, were also members of this fauna (Sepkoski 1981). Of these groups, bivalves, echinoids, and crustaceans were important tracemakers during the MMR, and identification of their trace fossil “fingerprints” is relatively straightforward to detect in bioturbation structures, based on neoichnological observations and functional morphology analysis. Various types of worm-like organisms should be added to this list, as many are active bioturbators, although establishing a direct link between a given trace fossil and its producer(s) commonly is tenuous at best. If necessary, alternative interpretations are offered. In this section, some of the most important trace fossils produced by these groups of organisms are described (Table 9.1). Although not all of these ichnotaxa occurred for the first time during the MMR, most of them are particularly abundant in post-Paleozoic marine deposits.

Table 9.1 Common bioturbation ichnogenera in shallow-marine post-Paleozoic deposits (see main text for references). For explanation of modes of sediment interaction, see Chap. 1

Ichnogenera	Stratigraphic range	Potential producer	Ethology	Trophic type	Mode of sediment interaction
Arachnostega	Cambrian–Recent	Errant polychaetes	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Biodiffusive
Arcichnus	Devonian–Recent	Echinoderms (Ophiuroids)	Repichnia	Deposit-feeding/suspension feeding/predation	Biodiffusive
Arenicolites	Cambrian–Recent	Worm-like organisms (polychaetes)	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Artichnus	Eocene–Recent	Echinoderms (Holothurians)	Domichnia	Deposit-feeding/suspension feeding	Conveyor
Asteriacites	Cambrian–Recent	Echinoderms (Asterozoans)	Cubichnia	Deposit-feeding/suspension feeding/predation	Biodiffusive
Asterosoma	Cambrian–Recent	Worm-like organisms (probably polychaetes)	Fodinichnia	Deposit-/detritus-feeding	Conveyor
Balanoglossites	Ordovician–Recent	Enteropneusts or polychaetes	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Bichordites	Eocene–Recent	Echinoderms	Pascichnia	Deposit-feeding	Conveyor
Cardioichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Echinoderms	Cubichnia	Deposit-feeding	Biodiffusive
Chondrites	Ordovician–Recent	Sipunculids, polychaetes	Fodinichnia	Detritus feeding/chemosymbionts	Gallery biodiffusive
Coenobichnus	Oligocene–Recent	Crustaceans (hermit crabs)	Repichnia	Scavenging	Biodiffusive
Curvolithus	Cambrian–Recent	Plathelminthes, nemerteans, gastropods	Repichnia	Predation	Biodiffusive
Cylindrichnus	Cambrian–Recent	Polychaetes	Domichnia	Deposit-/detritus-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Diplocraterion	Cambrian–Recent	Polychaetes	Equilibrichnia	Suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Ereipichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Worm-like organisms	Pascichnia	Deposit-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive/ conveyor
Euflabella	Cretaceous–Recent	Worm-like organisms	Fodinichnia	Deposit-/detritus-feeding	Conveyor
Foersterichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Brachyuran crustaceans	Repichnia	Omnivory	Biodiffusive
Gastrochaenolites	Ordovician–Recent	Bivalves	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Glyphichnus	Jurassic–Recent	Crustaceans	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Regenerator

(continued)

Table 9.1 (continued)

Ichnogenera	Stratigraphic range	Potential producer	Ethology	Trophic type	Mode of sediment interaction
Gyrochorte	Ordovician–Recent	Worm-like organisms	Fodinichnia	Detritus-feeding	Conveyor
Gyrolithes	Cambrian–Recent	Crustaceans	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding/gardening.	Gallery biodiffusive
Haentzschelinia	Jurassic–Recent	Worm-like organisms	Fodinichnia	Detritus/deposit feeding	Conveyor
Helicodromites	Devonian–Recent	Worm-like organisms	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Hillichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Bivalves	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding/chemosymbiosis	Biodiffusive/conveyor
Korymbichnus	Jurassic–Recent	Polychaetes	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Biodiffusive
Lapispira	Jurassic–Recent	Crustaceans or worm-like organisms, probably enteropneusts	Domichnia/ Fodinichnia	Deposit feeding/gardening/ omnivory	Gallery biodiffusive
Lockeia	Cambrian–Recent	Bivalves	Cubichnia/ Domichnia	Deposit feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Lophoctenium	Devonian–Recent	Bivalve	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Macanopsis	Jurassic–Recent	Brachyuran crustaceans	Domichnia	Omnivory	Regenerator
Macaronichnus	Permian–Recent	Polychaetes (opheliids)	Pascichnia	Deposit-feeding	Conveyor
Maiakarichnus	Miocene–Recent	Crustaceans	Calichnia	Suspension-/detritus-feeding	Regenerator
Nereites	Cambrian–Recent	Worm-like organisms, probably enteropneusts	Pascichnia	Deposit feeding	Conveyor
Ophioichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Echinoderms (Ophiuroids)	Repichnia	Deposit-feeding/suspension feeding/predation	Biodiffusive
Ophiomorpha	Triassic–Recent	Crustaceans	Domichnia	Detritus-feeding	Regenerator
Palaeophycus	Ediacaran–Recent	Glycerid and nereid polychaetes	Domichnia	Predation/suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Parmaichnus	Pleistocene–Recent	Crustaceans	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Regenerator
Patagonichnus	Miocene–Recent	Polychaetes (e.g., maldanids and capitellids)	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding/predation/ omnivory	Gallery biodiffusive
Pentichnus	Carboniferous–Recent	Echinoderms	Domichnia	Predation/suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive

Phoebichnus	Jurassic-Pleistocene	Worm-like organisms, crustaceans	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Pholeus	Triassic–Recent	Crustaceans	Domichnia	Suspension-/detritus-feeding	Regenerator
Phycosiphon	Ordovician–Recent	Worm-like organisms	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Conveyor
Planolites	Cambrian–Recent	Worm-like organisms (probably polychaetes)	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Conveyor
Polykladichnus	Devonian–Recent	Worm-like organisms (probably polychaetes), and anemones	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Protovirgularia	Ordovician– Recent	Bivalves	Repichnia	Deposit-feeding	Biodiffusive
Psilonichnus	Late Jurassic onward	Crustaceans	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Regenerator
Rhizocorallium	Cambrian–Recent	Worm-like organisms/ crustaceans	Fodinichnia	Suspension-feeding/ deposit-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Rosselia	Cambrian–Recent	Polychaetes	Domichnia	Deposit-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Saronichnus	Pleistocene–Recent	Bivalves	Fodinichnia	Chemosymbiosis	Gallery biodiffusive
Scalichnus	Pliocene–Recent	Bivalves	Equilibrichnia	Suspension-feeding	Biodiffusive
Schaubcylindrichnus	Carboniferous–Recent	Polychaetes	Domichnia	Deposit-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Scolicia	Jurassic–Recent	Echinoderms	Pascichnia	Deposit-feeding	Conveyor
Sinusichnus	Cretaceous-Pliocene	Crustaceans	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding/farming	Regenerator
Siphonichnus	Carboniferous–Recent	Bivalves	Equilibrichnia	Suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Skolithos	Cambrian–Recent	Worm-like organisms (e.g., phoronids, polychaetes)	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding	Gallery biodiffusive
Solemyatuba	Ordovician–Recent	Bivalves	Domichnia	Farming	Gallery biodiffusive
Spongeliomorpha	Triassic–Recent	Crustaceans	Domichnia	Suspension-feeding/farming	Regenerator
Taenidium	Cambrian–Recent	Worm-like organisms	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Conveyor
Teichichnus	Cambrian–Recent	Polychaetes, sipunculan worms, arthropods	Fodinichnia	Deposit-feeding	Conveyor
Thalassinoides	Cambrian–Recent	Crustaceans	Fodinichnia	Detritus-feeding	Regenerator
Tubotomaculum	Cretaceous–Recent	Crustaceans	Fodinichnia	Detritus-feeding/farming	Regenerator
Zoophycos	Cambrian–Recent	Sipunculids, echiuran worms	Fodinichnia	Detritus feeding/food cache/farming	Conveyor

9.2.1.1 Crustaceans

Crustaceans of the Order Decapoda (Superclass Crustacea, Class Malacostraca) are among the most important burrowers in the modern marine realm, constructing distinctive structures (Fig. 9.1a–g) that commonly extend to considerable depth within the substratum and occurring in abundance in the fossil record (e.g., Fürsich 1973; Schlirf 2000; Carmona et al. 2004). Seilacher (2007) described such branching decapod burrows with the general name "ophiomorphids" to comprise those structures that, although heterogeneous in taxonomy, share features such as having shaft and tunnel systems that tend to branch, forming a boxwork at depth, with enlargements at turning points and having preferential preservation due to their emplacement in deeper tiers than other burrows. Such burrows occur from supratidal to deep-marine settings. Most "thalassinidean" species (now gebiideans and axiideans, following De Grave et al. 2009) dwell in shallow-marine sediments, and especially for callianassids and upogebiids, the great majority live in water depths of less than 20 m at tropical to subtropical latitudes (Dworschak 2000, 2005; Dworschak et al. 2012). Less abundant in the fossil record are trackways attributed to crustaceans, such as *Coenobichnus* (Walker et al. 2003) and *Foersterichnus* (Pirrie et al. 2004). Other relatively common ichnotaxa, most notably *Rhizocorallium*, may have been produced by crustaceans (e.g., Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2012), although worms cannot be disregarded in many cases (Knaust 2013). The same disagreement persists regarding *Phoebichnus*, traditionally regarded as produced by worms (Bromley and Asgaard 1972), but recently attributed to crustaceans (Evans and McIlroy 2016).

Integration of paleoecological data provided by trace fossils with information inferred from the body-fossil record (e.g., origin, radiation, and extinction patterns) is important for macroevolutionary analysis of these organisms, which have relatively poor preservation potential (especially for decapods that have weakly calcified exoskeletons). However, due to the presence of hard appendages, some decapods can excavate burrows in compacted mud, producing open tunnels as permanent domiciles. In looser sediments, some decapods also reinforce their burrow walls with characteristic linings. There are a number of distinctive trace fossils produced by decapods (Figs. 9.2a–k, 9.3a–f, 9.4a–f, 9.5a–e). Forms common in the ichnologic record are discussed below, approximately in order of most common occurrence.

Thalassinoides consists of large burrow systems comprising horizontal and vertical components, lacking a lining, and with characteristic "Y" or "T" branching patterns (Frey and Howard 1985; Figs. 9.2b and 9.3a–f). Such burrows usually are interpreted as dwelling or feeding structures of selective detritus-feeding crustaceans (Ekdale 1992), occurring commonly in fine-grained sediments of marginal- and shallow-marine environments, and also in deeper-marine settings. In a few instances, *Thalassinoides* has been reported from continental environments (e.g., Kim et al. 2002, 2005), but in this case a completely different set of producers was involved. *Thalassinoides* is known since the Cambrian (Myrow 1995), although a decapod origin is most likely only for post-Paleozoic occurrences (Carmona et al. 2004).

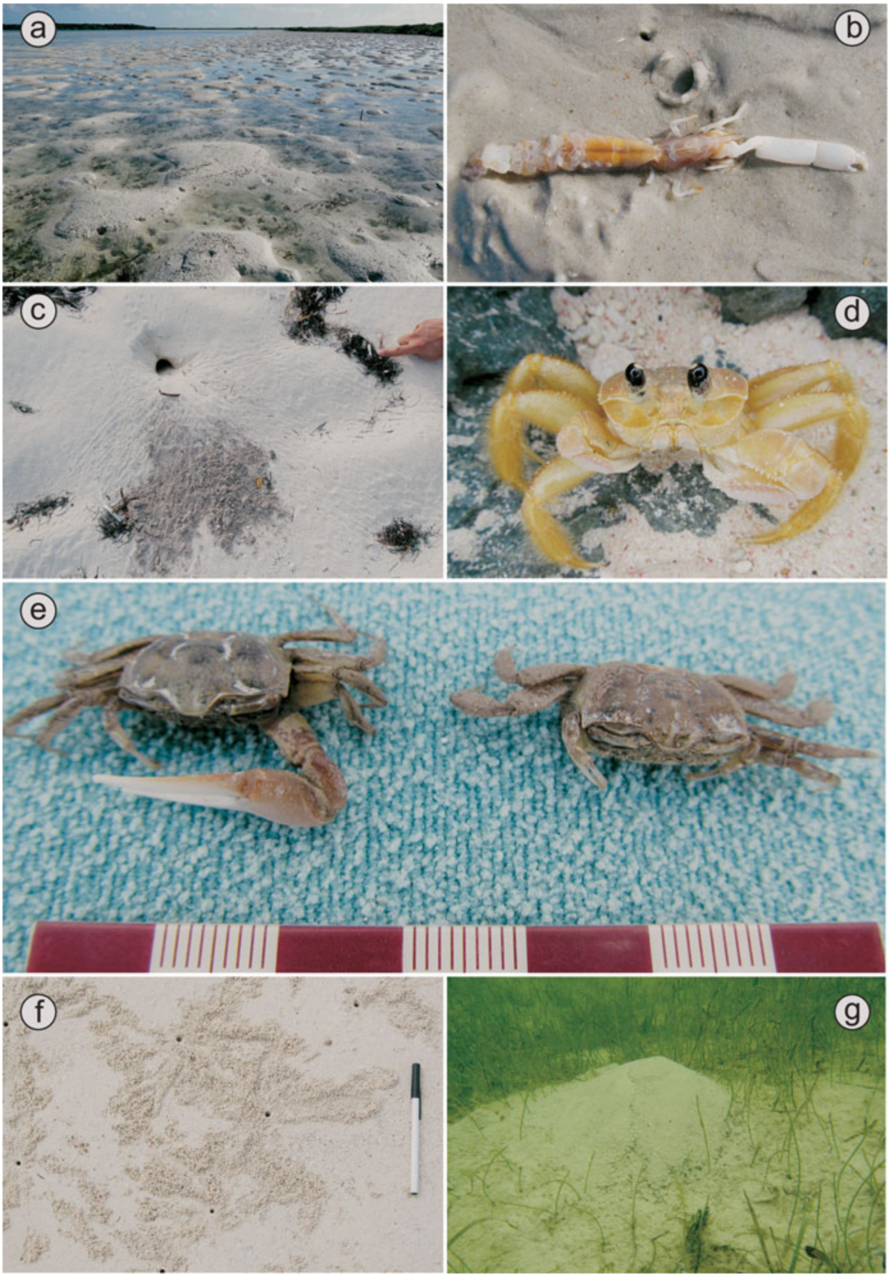


Fig. 9.1 Examples of typical decapod crustaceans and the structures they produce in modern shallow-marine environments. (**a**) Intertidal carbonate-sand flat completely re-engineered by callianassid burrowing, Pigeon Creek lagoon, San Salvador Island, Bahamas; (**b**) *Callichirus major* from the clastic northern Atlantic coast of Florida, USA, shrimp is 15 cm in length; (**c**) Ghost crab burrow in a Bahamian beach, opening is 4 cm in diameter; (**d**) The ghost crab *Ocypode quadrata*, on a Bahamian beach, Lee Stocking Island, front of carapace about 5 cm in length; (**e**) Male and female fiddler crabs, *Uca speciosa*, Pigeon Creek margin; (**f**) Fiddler crab burrows with radiate pattern of feeding pellets, sandy inlet area, Cockburn Town fossil reef quarry, San Salvador, pen is 15 cm in length; (**g**) Subtidal callianassid mound, Pigeon Creek lagoon, about 1 m in diameter

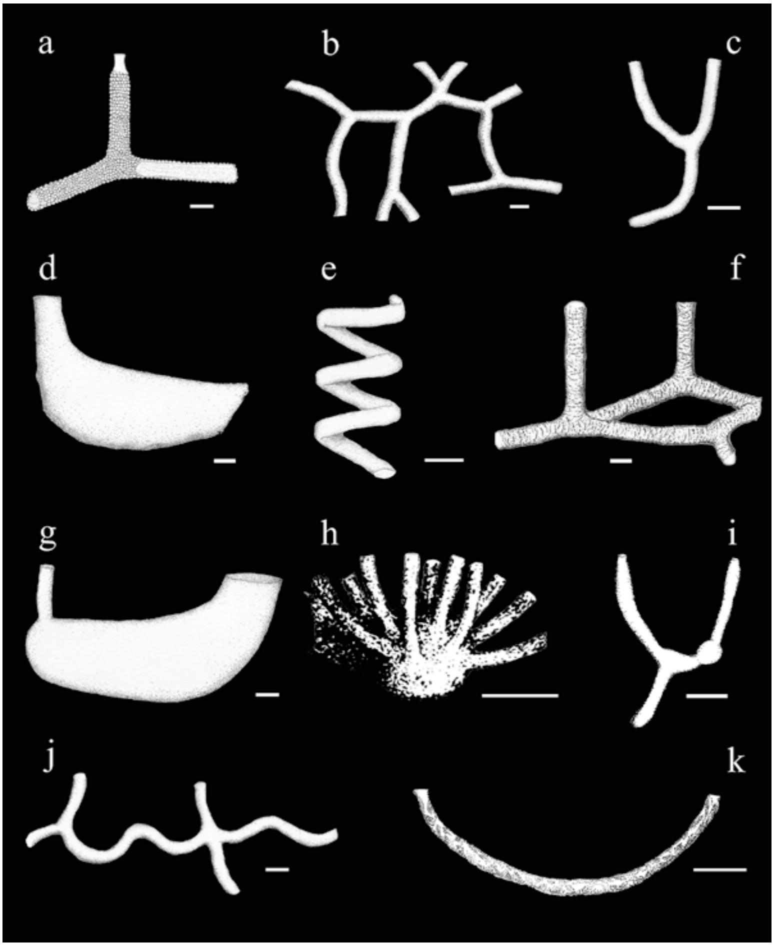


Fig. 9.2 Schematic reconstructions of burrow architecture of decapod ichnogenera. (**a**) *Ophiomorpha*; (**b**) *Thalassinoides*; (**c**) *Psilonichnus*; (**d**) *Macanopsis*; (**e**) *Gyrolithes*; (**f**) *Spongeliomorpha*; (**g**) *Pholeus*; (**h**) *Maiakarichnus*; (**i**) *Parmaichnus*; (**j**) *Sinusichnus*; (**k**) *Glyphichnus*. Scale bars in (**a**, **b**, **d**, **f** and **j**) are 5 cm; scale(s) in (**c**) is 10 cm; in (**e**) and (**h**) are 3 cm; in (**g**) is 2 cm; in (**i**) is 4 cm and in (**k**) is 20 cm

Ophiomorpha refers to simple to complex, branching burrows with distinctive, thick walls formed of agglutinated-sediment pellets, with the walls mamillated on the exterior and smooth on the interior (Figs. 9.2a and 9.4a–f). These structures represent the dwelling burrows of primarily selective detritus-feeding decapods, such as modern callianassids (Dworschak 2000; Dworschak et al. 2012, and references therein). The reinforcement of burrows in order to prevent substratum collapse is an adaptation to living in energetic commonly sandy sedimentary environments. *Ophiomorpha* occurs in both siliciclastic and carbonate deposits, typically attributed to shallow-marine, high-energy environments (Frey et al. 1978; Curran 2007) and also in deep-marine settings (Uchman 2009 and references

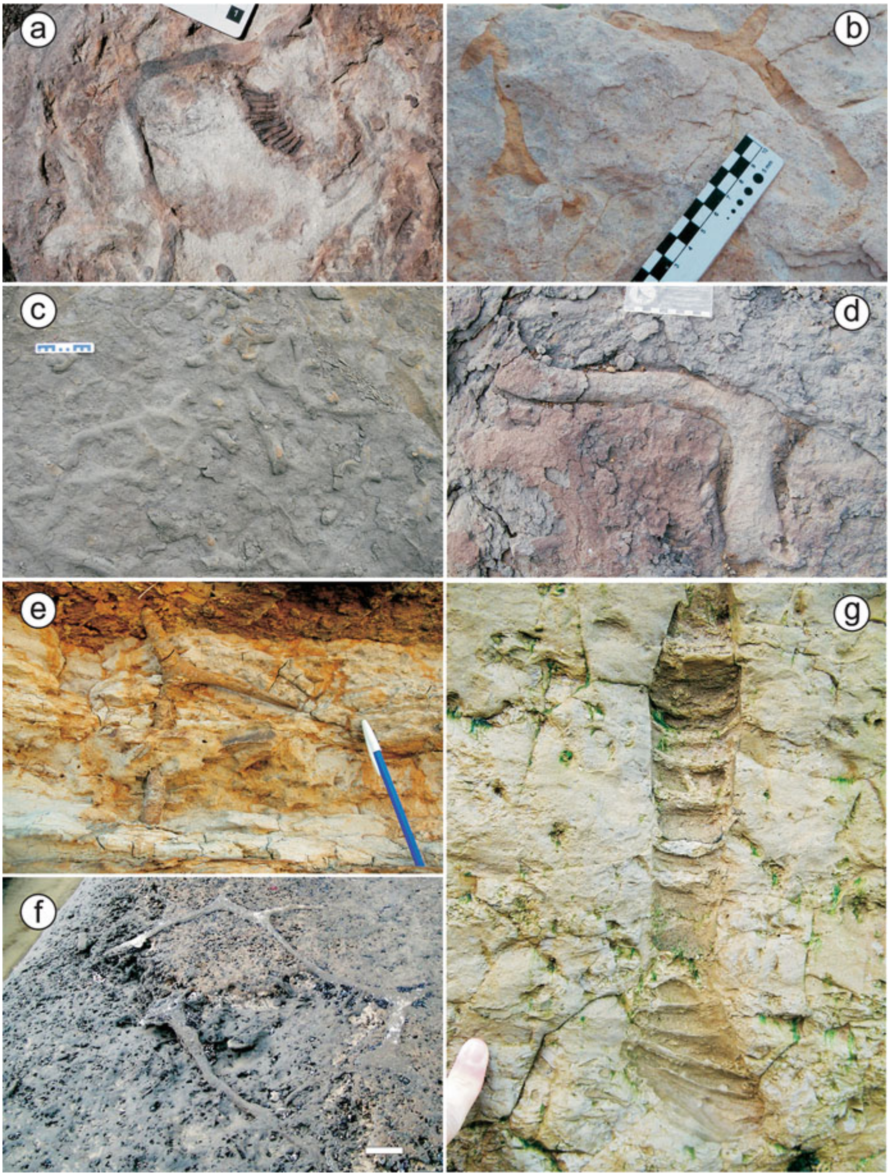


Fig. 9.3 Examples of *Thalassinoides* in Mesozoic–Cenozoic shallow-marine deposits. (**a**) Vaca Muerta Formation, Jurassic, Neuquén Basin, Argentina; (**b**) Quintuco Formation, Jurassic–Cretaceous, Neuquén Basin, Argentina; (**c**) Mulichinco Formation, Cretaceous, Neuquén Basin, Argentina; (**d**) Río Turbio Formation, Eocene, Austral Basin, Argentina; (**e**) Urumaco Formation, Miocene, Venezuela, scale is 20 cm; (**f**) Monte León Formation, Miocene, Austral Basin, Argentina, scale bar is 25 cm; (**g**) *Thalassinoides* isp. with tidal fill, Río Negro Formation, Miocene-Pliocene, Argentina

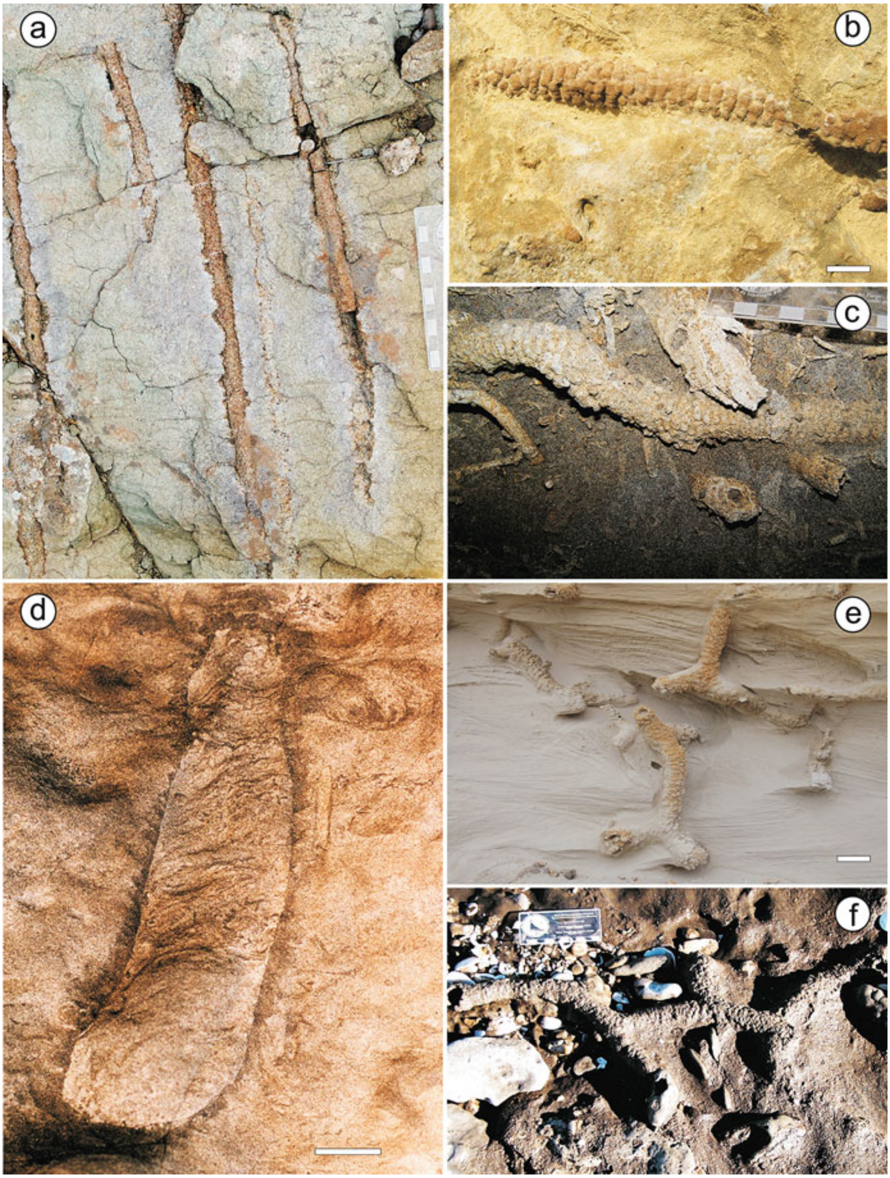


Fig. 9.4 Examples of *Ophiomorpha* in Mesozoic–Cenozoic shallow-marine deposits. (**a**) Lajas Formation, Jurassic, Neuquén Basin, Argentina; (**b**) La Vela Formation, Upper Miocene-Lower Miocene, Venezuela, scale bar is 1 cm; (**c**) Monte León Formation, Miocene, Argentina; (**d**) Chenque Formation, Lower Miocene, San Jorge Basin, Argentina, scale bar is 4 cm; (**e**) Chuí Formation, Pleistocene, Brazil, scale bar is 7 cm; (**f**) Upper Pleistocene, Pehuen-Co, Argentina

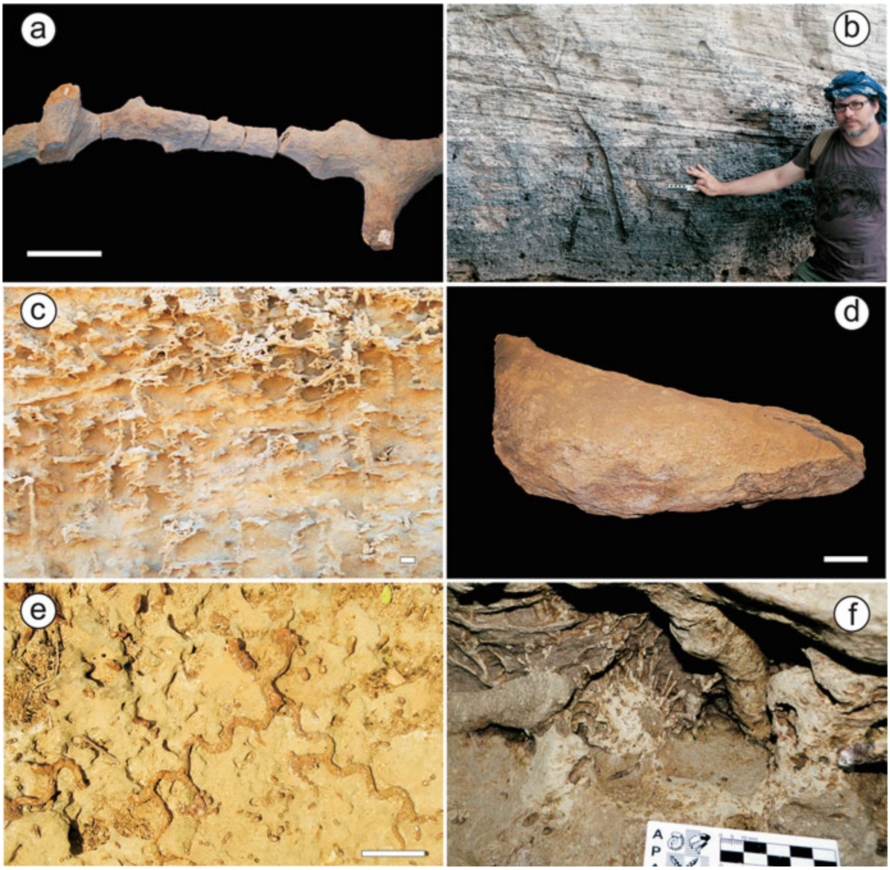


Fig. 9.5 Various decapod ichnotaxa in Mesozoic–Cenozoic shallow-marine deposits. All photos are from siliciclastic deposits with the exception of **b**, which is from carbonates. (**a**) *Spongeliomorpha* isp., Middle Miocene, Vallès-Penedès Basin, Spain, scale bar is 10 cm; (**b**) *Psilonichnus upsilon*, Holocene, San Salvador, Bahamas; (**c**) *Gyrolithes* isp., Pliocene, Araya Peninsula, Venezuela, scale bar is 3 cm; (**d**) *Macanopsis plataniformis*, lower Cretaceous, La Tejería de Josa, Spain, scale bar is 3 cm; (**e**) *Sinusichnus sinuosus*, Middle Miocene, Socorro Formation, Venezuela, scale bar is 11 cm; (**f**) *Maiakarichnus* isp., Miocene-Pliocene, Río Negro Formation, Argentina

therein). Although Paleozoic examples have been recorded since the Carboniferous (Driese and Dott 1984; Buatois et al. 2002), uncontroversial occurrences are in post-Paleozoic strata.

Spongeliomorpha consists of unlined, branching burrow systems with distinctive scratch marks (bioglyphs) on the walls (Figs. 9.2f and 9.5a). These burrows have been interpreted as domiciles produced by suspension-feeding decapods (Asgaard et al. 1997) and also as structures for gardening or breeding (D'Alessandro and Bromley 1995). *Spongeliomorpha* occurs in shallow- and deep-marine environments (Uchman 1998; Muñiz and Mayoral 2001a). There also are some records from non-marine deposits (Melchor et al. 2009). The presence of bioglyphs on the walls indicates that the tracemakers used a hard appendage (e.g., a chela) to excavate these burrows and that the sediment was firm at the time of construction. This ichnogenus is known since the Triassic (MacNaughton and Zonneveld 2010); specimens reported from the Permian (Carey 1979) do not display the diagnostic features (e.g., striated walls) of this ichnogenus.

Psilonichnus comprises predominantly vertical, cylindrical, unlined, J-, Y-, or U-shaped burrows, with passive fill, commonly interpreted as dwelling structures of upogebiid shrimp or ocypodid crabs (see Nesbitt and Campbell 2002, 2006; and Figs. 9.1c–d, 9.2c, and 9.5b herein). These burrows occur most typically in uppermost foreshore and backshore environments (Frey et al. 1984; Curran and White 1991; Netto and Grangeiro 2009; Seike and Curran 2014), and also in outer-estuarine and bay-mouth settings (Campbell and Nesbitt 2000; Nesbitt and Campbell 2002). This ichnogenus is present from the Late Jurassic onward (Fürsich 1981).

Gyrolithes consists of vertical, coiled burrows, forming a regular spiral, unlined to indistinctly lined, with bioglyphs and/or pellets (Figs. 9.2e and 9.5c) and, in some Mesozoic and younger examples, connecting to *Ophiomorpha* or *Thalassinoides* burrow forms. *Gyrolithes* is known from the Cambrian (e.g., Fritz 1980; Fedonkin 1981, 1983; Liñán 1984; Crimes and Anderson 1985; Hein et al. 1991; Jensen 1997; Jensen and Grant 1998; Stanley and Feldmann 1998) to the Recent (Dworschak and de Rodrigues 1997). However, worm producers have been indicated for the Paleozoic occurrences, particularly for the typical Cambrian ichnospecies (see Carmona et al. 2004; Netto et al. 2007). The robust forms of *Gyrolithes* from Mesozoic and younger deposits have been interpreted as resulting from a specific feeding strategy of decapods having a combined function of deposit feeding and possibly gardening (Mayoral and Muñiz 1993; Netto et al. 2007). Today, incipient *Gyrolithes*-like burrows made by axiidean shrimps are known to occur in modern mangrove and estuarine areas (Dworschak and de Rodrigues 1997; Wetzel et al. 2010).

Macanopsis refers to subhorizontal to horizontal, elongated, slightly curved burrow chambers, unbranched, and with a subvertical shaft (Fig. 9.2g); bioglyphs may be present. This ichnogenus has been interpreted as a dwelling structure constructed by decapods (probably brachyurans) and is known to occur in both shallow-marine and fluvial settings (Muñiz and Mayoral 2001b) since the Late Jurassic (Neto de Carvalho et al. 2010).

Pholeus consists of single or complex U-shaped, lined burrows with a longitudinal axis parallel to bedding, generally leading into an oblique shaft toward the surface and in the opposite direction with a smaller, rising vertical to oblique shaft (modified from Knaust 2002; Figs. 9.2d and 9.5d). These structures are interpreted as dwelling burrows of suspension- and detritus-feeding decapods ("thalassinidean" shrimps and lobsters), with the function of the small shaft related to ventilation of the burrow (Knaust 2002). This ichnogenus is typically associated with shallow-marine to lagoonal (intertidal to shallow subtidal) paleoenvironments and is known since the Middle Triassic (Knaust 2002).

Tubotomaculum consists of spindle-shaped burrows, displaying a spreite and containing ellipsoidal pellets (García-Ramos et al. 1984, 2014). This ichnogenus is interpreted as a feeding structure produced to store pellets that are subsequently used as a bacteria-enriched resource during times of limited food supply (García-Ramos et al. 2014). The presence of bifid bioglyphs on the basal and lateral surfaces of the structure suggests production by crustaceans (García-Ramos et al. 2014). *Tubotomaculum* is known from deep-marine environments, ranging in age from the Cretaceous to Miocene (García-Ramos et al. 1984, 2014).

Sinusichnus comprises distinctive burrow systems consisting of horizontal and regularly sinuous branches (Gibert 1996; Figs. 9.2j and 9.5e). Shafts and oblique burrow segments are rare, short, and tend to occur on top of the branching points. Walls are smooth and unlined, and vertical retrusive spreite are locally present. There are several interpretations for the function of these structures (e.g., burrows produced by selective deposit-feeding decapods; open burrows built to act as traps for meiofauna, and/or to induce microbial growth, i.e., combined feeding strategies (fodinichnion/agrichnion). These burrows occur in shallow-marine (mainly stressed settings) and deep-marine environments (as doomed-pioneers), and are known from the Late Cretaceous (Buatois et al. 2009) to early Pliocene (Belaústegui et al. 2013).

Maiakarichnus consists of subspherical chambers, with or without a clay-rich lining, preserved in full relief, with numerous shafts radiating in an upward direction (mainly from the chamber upper hemisphere; Figs. 9.2h and 9.5f). Usually, this form intergrades or connects to *Ophiomorpha* or *Thalassinoides* tunnels. *Maiakarichnus* has been interpreted as callianassid brood structures (Curran 1976; Verde and Martinez 2004) or fossil pantries (Nesbitt 2006). This form occurs in marginal-marine to shallow-marine deposits and is known since the Miocene (Verde and Martinez 2004).

Parmaichnus refers to vertical to oblique tubular burrows, composed of a U-shaped upper part and a basal shaft (Fig. 9.2i). Distinctive swellings or turn-around chambers are present in the upper part of the burrow and are considered a diagnostic character for this ichnogenus. *Parmaichnus* is interpreted as the burrow of suspension- and filter-feeding decapods, with the presence of turning chambers being typical for modern upogebiid burrows (Pervesler and Uchman 2009). This trace fossil occurs in nearshore deposits from early Pleistocene to Recent (Pervesler and Uchman 2009).

Glyphichnus consists of arcuate, vertical, and probably U-shaped burrows with deeply incised bioglyphs in fan-like groups, subparallel to burrow length (Bromley and Goldring 1992; Fig. 9.2k); rarely, apertural necks have been observed (Goldring et al. 2002). These structures are interpreted as produced by suspension-feeding decapods. The presence of apertural necks is common in structures used for suspension feeding and serves to inhibit intruders. This ichnogenus occurs in firm substrates in both shallow- and deep-marine settings from the late Mesozoic to Recent (Goldring et al. 2002; Wetzel et al. 2008).

Coenobichnus comprises asymmetrical trackways having left tracks larger than the right tracks, both being crescent-shaped, with the interior of the crescent pointing toward the interior of the trackway. This ichnogenus has been attributed to land hermit crabs (Walker et al. 2003). *Coenobichnus* occurs in coastal dune settings, from the Oligocene to Recent (Walker et al. 2003; Zonneveld et al. 2012).

Foersterichnus is a trackway comprising straight, or slightly curving, paired rows of elongate to tear-shaped impressions, parallel or subparallel to its long axis. This ichnogenus has been attributed to brachyurans and is only known from Cretaceous shallow-marine deposits (Pirrie et al. 2004).

As stated previously, burrow systems produced by decapods are among the most important components of post-Paleozoic shallow-marine ichnofaunas, reflecting the dominance of the Modern Evolutionary Fauna. In a study documenting the trace-fossil record of decapod-like gallery systems, Carmona et al. (2004) constructed a database of all occurrences through the Phanerozoic to analyze changes in abundance and ichnodiversity. During the Paleozoic, there are, in general, a low number of "decapod-like" burrow systems, and the identity of their tracemakers is uncertain, most likely reflecting behavioral convergence by groups other than decapod crustaceans. The scenario changed significantly with increase in the number of burrows attributed to decapods during the Mesozoic. This probably reflects an increasing pace of decapod radiation, as it is also indicated by the Mesozoic body-fossil record (Förster 1985; Schweitzer and Feldmann 2015; Klompmaker et al. 2015).

However, Triassic trace-fossil first occurrences are only slightly higher than those recorded in the late Paleozoic (Carmona et al. 2004). This is also confirmed by the body-fossil record, which indicates that decapod diversity was low in the Triassic (Klompmaker et al. 2013; Schweitzer and Feldmann 2015). In any case, there were changes in decapod ichnodiversity with *Thalassinoides* and *Ophiomorpha* being the most common ichnotaxa, along with *Gyrolithes* (resembling modern records) and *Pholeus* added to the list. *Spongeliomorpha* was also well established in shallow-marine environments. This suggests the overall expansion of behavioral modes through the Triassic.

During the Jurassic, decapod trace-fossil occurrences show a slight increase with respect to previous periods (Carmona et al. 2004). This is clearly related to the appearance of the body fossils of callianassids in the Late Jurassic (Glaessner 1969; Förster 1985; Schweitzer and Feldmann 2015). Interestingly, the basic ethological program recorded by these dwelling systems seems not to have changed significantly since the Jurassic.

The abundance of decapod trace-fossil forms underwent a major increase toward the end of the Mesozoic (Carmona et al. 2004). Crustacean dominance in the marine realm during the Cretaceous is indicated by the great diversity of body fossils, as well as by the abundance of decapod burrowing activity recorded in shallow-marine deposits. A decapod origin is supported by the preservation of claws within some of these burrows (e.g., Mángano and Buatois 1991; Swen et al. 2001) and by the presence of diagnostic features, such as pelleted walls, bioglyphs reflecting the use of hard appendage parts, and enlargements at burrow turnaround points. Decapod excavations are particularly abundant in middle- and lower-shoreface clastic environments, as well as in shallow-marine carbonate settings. The increase in the number of decapod trace-fossil occurrences accelerated by the end-Cretaceous, including addition of the oldest examples of *Sinusichnus* in Cretaceous deposits (Buatois et al. 2009).

Interestingly, Klompmaker et al. (2013) found that during the Mesozoic there was a long-term shift in diversity of the different crustacean groups based on the body-fossil record, with dominance of lobsters and shrimps during the Paleozoic and Triassic, whereas during the Jurassic onward, anomurans and brachyurans underwent rapid diversification. In particular, their study showed that the Late Jurassic decapod radiation was associated with the expansion of reef ecosystems, with a high percentage of generic origination of reef-dwelling brachyurans and anomurans (Klompmaker et al. 2013). This is in agreement with the trace-fossil record, confirming that the Mesozoic was a highly important time in the evolution of decapods (Schweitzer and Feldmann 2015).

During the Paleogene, the numbers of individual decapod trace fossils appear to be considerably reduced compared with that found in similar environmental settings in the Cretaceous (Carmona et al. 2004). This could be related to the end-Cretaceous mass extinction. However, the effect of this extinction on decapods (mostly of the Southern Hemisphere) was probably not so severe (Feldmann and Schweitzer 2006). In the same vein, Swen et al. (2001) analyzed the demise of the subfamily Protocallianassinae and the rise of other subfamilies (among them Callianassinae) in nearshore deposits, which occurred below the K–Pg boundary. They postulated that the demise of Protocallianassinae and the rise of Callianassinae were related to the worldwide emergence of seagrasses at the end of the Cretaceous and to the strong competition that took place globally in shallow-marine settings. These authors also thought that seagrasses may have favored the rise of families dominated by detritus-feeding shrimp (such as *Corallianassa*) over those of suspension feeders (e.g., *Protocallianassa*). The abundance of individual decapod trace fossils during the Eocene is apparently higher than for the other epochs of the Paleogene. The Eocene was a time of evolutionary radiation for decapods, and this appears to be reflected in the trace-fossil record.

Finally, during the Neogene, the abundance of decapod trace fossils underwent another major increase, probably reaching the highest level of the entire Phanerozoic (Carmona et al. 2004). Body-fossil data conform to the Neogene trace-fossil record, which shows primacy of decapod burrows in shallow-marine environments, with *Maiakarichnus* occurring for the first time in the Miocene. Interestingly, the summary study of Schweitzer (2001) indicated that the Miocene was a time of high origination rates within the decapod fauna, with first appearance of the modern genera that dominate the present seas.

Decapod burrows are widespread in modern coastal settings, being preferentially distributed in tropical and temperate shallow-marine and marginal-marine settings. The similarity between the modern callianassid burrows formed by *Sergio mirim* in the lower foreshore of Cassino Beach (Rio Grande do Sul State, southernmost Brazil) and *Ophiomorpha nodosa* specimens preserved in Pleistocene deposits of the Chuí Formation (Gibert et al. 2006), which represent an ancient beach line on the Rio Grande do Sul Coastal Plain, suggests that these faunas were not impacted by Quaternary glaciation, at least in the Southern Hemisphere. The presence of large *Ophiomorpha* specimens in Pleistocene shallow-marine deposits from Pehuen-Có, Argentina, further supports this interpretation (Mouzo et al. 1989).

9.2.1.2 Mollusks

Mollusks have a long evolutionary history and include several groups, with gastropods and bivalves being the most numerous, diverse, and common bioturbators from the early Paleozoic onward. The development of key external features, such as the shell, foot, and radula, helped mollusks acquire diverse ecological preferences. This section focuses on trace fossils attributed to gastropods and bivalves.

Gastropods and Polyplacophorans

Locomotion and feeding structures produced by gastropods and chitons can be observed in modern settings. Almost all gastropods and chitons use their foot during locomotion. Typically, the sole of the foot is flat and broad, ciliated and with abundant secretory glands, allowing gastropods to move over a variety of substrates (Ruppert et al. 2004). These glands produce mucus that forms a mucus trail. Most gastropods living on stable substrates move by pedal waves with the aid of the mucus trail (glide crawling, Schäfer 1962, 1972; see also Buatois and Mángano 2011). Gastropods are mostly microphagous browsers that feed on microscopic algae and scrape the substrate with their radula (a flexible longitudinal ribbon having rows of small and transverse chitinous teeth; Ruppert et al. 2004). The combined actions of the foot and radula generate distinctive patterns on the substrate, which have also been recognized in the fossil record, although some uncertainty persists regarding the attribution of these structures to gastropods. For example, the Cambrian ichnogenus *Climactichnites* is interpreted as having been produced by an elongate, dorso-ventrally flattened organism with a soft foot, which may have been a primitive gastropod, although other possibilities exist (Abel 1935; Getty and Hagadorn 2008, 2009; see Chap. 3). In modern intertidal environments, structures slightly similar to this trace fossil can be found, although their preservation potential is very low (except in settings with microbial mats; Carmona et al. 2010).

Other trace fossils (e.g., *Psammichnites*) have been interpreted as locomotion structures of gastropods, but other producers cannot be discarded (see discussions in Mángano et al. 2002a). In any case, neither *Climactichnites* nor *Psammichnites* are recorded in post-Paleozoic rocks, probably due to increased levels of bioturbation and obliteration of shallow-tier traces or extinction of their producers. The much simpler trail *Archaeonassa*, ranging from the Cambrian to the Recent, has been attributed to gastropods as well (Fenton and Fenton 1937), but there is no agreement in this regard (Buckman 1994; Yochelson and Fedonkin 1997). Therefore, the fossil record of bioturbation structures produced by gastropods remains uncertain.

Bivalves

Along with gastropods, bivalves constitute an important and extremely diverse molluscan class, with species living in both marine and freshwater environments. Within this group, a pronounced post-Paleozoic increase in infaunal representatives, also exhibited by several other major groups (e.g., echinoids), is widely recognized (Stanley 1970). The evolutionary diversification of most bivalve shells is related to different styles of burrowing in soft sediment and of boring in hard substrates, which provide escape from predators (Stanley 1970; Seilacher 1998). This tendency is not only reflected by the hard part anatomy, but also by the soft parts of bivalves, which show corresponding trends in the development of a lateral flat burrowing foot, fused mantle edges, and pallial siphons (Stanley 1970; Seilacher 1998; Kelley and Hansen 2003; Ruppert et al. 2004 and references therein). The replacement of epifaunal and semi-infaunal taxa by infaunal forms from the Cretaceous onward is well recognized (Vermeij 1977, 1987).

In contrast to crustacean ichnotaxa, which for the most part are represented by dwelling structures, the ichnogenera most commonly assigned to bivalve tracemakers comprise various ethologies (Fig. 9.6a–i), such as locomotion (*Protovirgularia, Ptychoplasma, Oravaichnium*), resting/dwelling (*Lockeia*), dwelling (*Solemyatuba*), feeding (*Lophoctenium, Saronichnus*), equilibrium (*Siphonichnus, Scalichnus*), and a complex combination of behaviors (*Hillichnus*), all in soft sediments (Figs. 9.7a–d and 9.8a–h). The dwelling ichnogenus *Gastrochaenolites* may occur in both hard and firm substrates (Fig. 9.8h) and will be addressed under bioerosion.

Protovirgularia comprises horizontal to inclined structures characterized by the presence of V-shaped or U-shaped sediment pads transverse to a longitudinal axis (Figs. 9.6a and 9.7a–d). This ichnogenus has been interpreted as formed by locomotion of protobranch bivalves, moving through the sediment by means of a split foot that employs a push-and-pull mechanism (Trueman 1966, 1975; Stanley 1970; Seilacher and Seilacher 1994; Mángano et al. 1998). In addition, Seilacher and Seilacher (1994) suggested that *Protovirgularia* can also be produced by scaphopods (another molluscan group with a cleft-foot), especially if the structures are not related to the resting trace *Lockeia* (Mángano et al. 1998). This trace fossil, recorded in marginal-, shallow-, and deep-marine environments, ranges from Ordovician to Recent (Seilacher and Seilacher 1994; Uchman 1998).

Ptychoplasma consists of irregularly meandering, looping, winding or straight, discontinuous or continuous, hypichnial crests having an amygdaloid, carinate, or blocky cross-section, with poorly developed or absent chevronate structure. This ichnogenus has been interpreted as a locomotion trace of wedge-foot bivalves (Pieńkowski and Uchman 2009; Uchman et al. 2011). Recorded from non-marine, marginal-, shallow-, and deep-marine environments, this ichnogenus ranges from Ordovician to Recent (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2014).

Oravaichnium consists of irregularly meandering, looping or winding, continuous, hypichnial crests having a box-like (non-carinate) cross-section. As with *Ptychoplasma*, this ichnogenus is regarded as a locomotion trace of wedge-foot bivalves (Uchman et al. 2011). In contrast to *Ptychoplasma*, however, *Oravaichnium* is less understood, having been recorded only from Eocene deep-marine deposits (Plička and Uhrová 1990; Uchman et al. 2011).

Lockeia commonly comprises oval- to almond-shaped structures, typically tapering at one end and being more rounded on the opposite end (Mángano et al. 1998; Figs. 9.6a and 9.8a). *Lockeia* is interpreted as a resting structure of bivalves, although

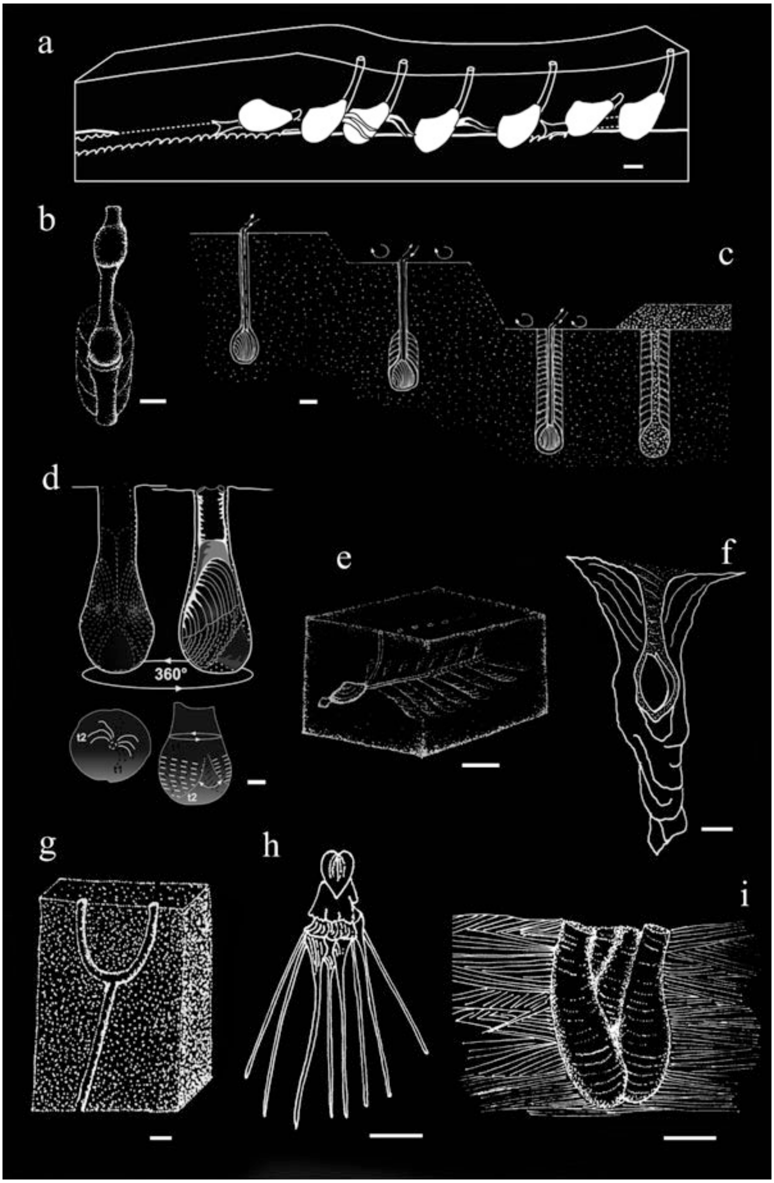


Fig. 9.6 Schematic reconstructions of bivalve-produced ichnogenera. (**a**) Reconstruction of the locomotion activity of a cleft-foot bivalve, producing *Protovirgularia* and *Lockeia* (modified from Ekdale and Bromley 2001a), *scale bar* is 5 cm; (**b**) Reconstruction of *Ptychoplasma* (redrawn from Uchman et al. 2011), *scale bar* is 1 cm; (**c**) Interpretation of *Siphonichnus* (modified from Stanistreet et al. 1980), *scale bar* is 5 cm; (**d**) Schematic representation of the pholadids during excavation and production of *Gastrochaenolites* (see Carmona et al. 2007), *scale bar* is 2 cm; (**e**) Interpretation of the complex behavior of a deposit-feeding bivalve illustrated by *Hillichnus* (modified from Bromley et al. 2003), *scale bar* is 5 cm; (**f**) Reconstruction of Scalichnus (modified from Hanken et al. 2001), *scale bar* is 5 cm; (**g**) Reconstruction of *Solemyatuba* (based on Seilacher 1990a), *scale bar* is 5 cm; (**h**) Reconstruction of *Saronichnus* (modified from Pervesler and Zuschin 2004), *scale bar* is 5 cm; (**i**) Reconstruction of *Teredolites* (based on Bromley et al. 1984), *scale bar* is 5 cm

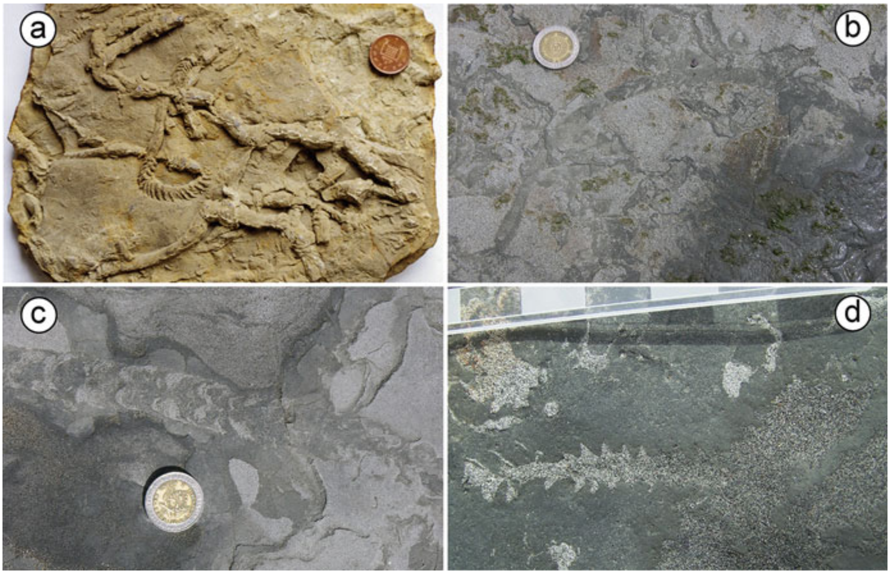


Fig. 9.7 Preservational variants of *Protovirgularia* in Mesozoic–Cenozoic shallow-marine deposits. (**a**) Forest Marble Formation, Jurassic, England, coin is 1.65 cm; (**b–d**) Chenque Formation, Lower Miocene, Argentina. Coins in (**b**) and (**c**) are 2.2 cm

some specimens can represent semipermanent domiciles (Seilacher 1953; Rindsberg 1994; Mángano et al. 1998). This ichnogenus has been reported from marginal-, shallow-, and deep-marine settings since the late Cambrian/Early Ordovician (Mángano et al. 2002b and references therein). In contrast to most bivalve ichnotaxa*,* *Lockeia* is also known from freshwater settings.

Solemyatuba consists of endichnial, vertically oriented, U-shaped burrows, elliptical in cross-section and with a lower extension tube in one of its ichnospecies (Seilacher 1990a; Mángano and Buatois 2003; Figs. 9.6g and 9.8d). *Solemyatuba* has been interpreted as the dwelling trace of a farming bivalve (Seilacher 1990a). This form can be found in shallow-marine deposits since the Ordovician (Seilacher 1990a; Mángano and Buatois 2003).

Lophoctenium is not generally assigned to the activity of bivalves. However, Ekdale and Bromley (2001a) interpreted Carboniferous specimens of this trace fossil as a feeding structure produced by the repetitive lateral probing of the labial palps of a protobranch along an organic-rich sediment deposit. This structure consists of coarse horizontal spreite formed by a series of closely spaced, curved ridges (Ekdale and Bromley 2001a). In particular, the specimen studied by these authors represents a compound trace fossil with three different ichnotaxa in combination (*Protovirgularia*, *Lockeia,* and "*Lophoctenium*"; see Ekdale and Bromley 2001a).

Saronichnus consists of a system of vertical or inclined tubular to blade-shaped probes diverging from a central area of broom- or star-like form (Pervesler and Zuschin 2004; Figs. 9.6h and 9.8f). This ichnotaxon has been found in direct connection with *Thyasira* shells, indicating formation by lucinoid bivalves. It is most likely a

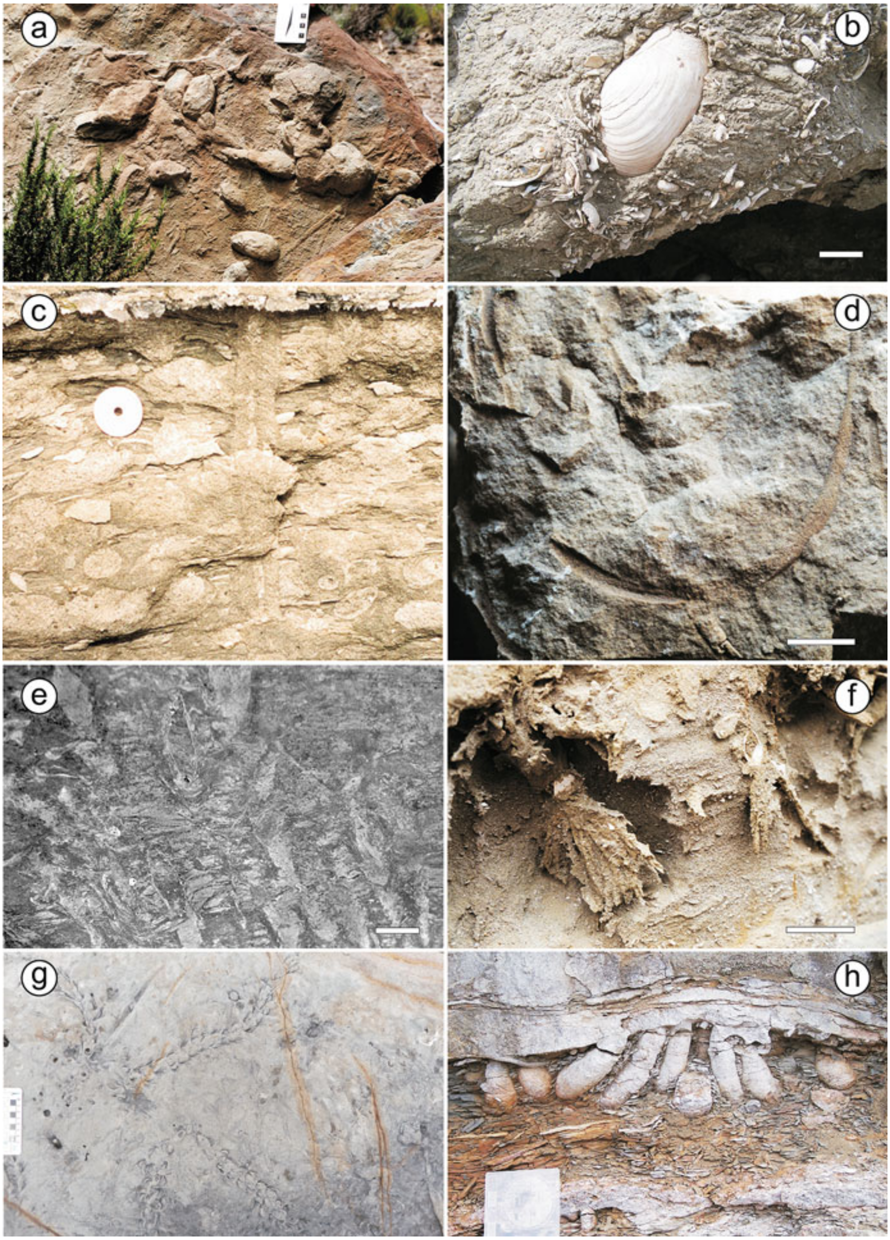


Fig. 9.8 Various bivalve ichnotaxa in Mesozoic–Cenozoic shallow-marine deposits. (**a**) Several specimens of *Lockeia siliquaria*, Mulichinco Formation, Cretaceous, Argentina; (**b**) *Scalichnus phiale*, Monte León Formation, Lower Miocene, Argentina, scale bar is 5 cm; (**c**) *Siphonichnus eccacensis*, Chenque Formation, Lower Miocene, Argentina, coin is 1.8 cm; (**d**) *Solemyatuba ypsilon*, Rhaetian Sandstone, Olgahain, Upper Triassic, southern Germany, scale bar is 1 cm; (**e**) Equilibrium traces of byssate bivalves, scale bar is 4 cm; (**f**) *Saronichnus abeli*, Grund Formation, Miocene, Austria, photograph courtesy of Peter Pervesler; (**g**) *Hillichnus lobosensis*, Carmelo Formation, Paleocene, Point Lobos, California, United States, photograph courtesy of Nic Minter; (**h**) *Gastrochaenolites* isp., Río Turbio Formation, Eocene, Argentina

feeding structure produced as a result of a chemosymbiotic life strategy. At present, it has only been recorded from Pleistocene shallow-marine strata (Pervesler and Zuschin 2004).

Siphonichnus comprises vertical structures containing a backfill of concave-downward menisci (Stanistreet et al. 1980; Figs. 9.6c and 9.8c). The laminae forming the backfill are cut through centrally by a vertical tube, filled with pale, massive sediment. The authors of this ichnogenus postulated that siphon length of a given bivalve tracemaker should be equal to the length of backfill laminae. *Siphonichnus* occurs since the Carboniferous in marginal- to shallow-marine settings (Stanistreet et al. 1980; Carmona et al. 2008; see also discussion in Zonneveld and Gingras 2013 and Knaust 2015).

Scalichnus includes large, vertically oriented, bottle-shaped structures, formed during retrusive and protrusive movements of the bivalve *Panopea* (Hanken et al. 2001; Figs. 9.6f and 9.8b). *Scalichnus* is regarded as an equilibrichnial trace fossil having a general sack-like morphology and a thick lining. This structure is common in Cenozoic marginal- to shallow-marine settings (Hanken et al. 2001; Nara and Kondo 2012; see also discussion in Zonneveld and Gingras 2013).

Hillichnus was defined to include morphologically complex structures interpreted as the work of subsurface deposit-feeding tellinacean bivalves (Bromley et al. 2003; Figs. 9.6e and 9.8g). This structure comprises several parts or levels: a segmented component with a basal tube within, from which lateral feather-like structures arise, alternating on either side, and vertical sand- and mud-lined tubes that also rise from the basal structure. According to the ichnogenus authors, the movement of the bivalve's inhalant siphon produced the feather-like structures on either side of the basal tube, and the siphonal excursions to the sediment surface produced the vertical tubes. The length of these tubes suggests that feeding activity of these bivalves occurred well below the oxygenated sediment layer, probably 20 cm or more beneath the surface, suggesting that in addition to deposit feeding, chemosymbiosis may have taken place. *Hillichnus* is known from the Cretaceous and Paleogene, in both shallow- and deep-marine environments (Bromley et al. 2003; Pazos and Fernández 2010).

Finally, it is possible that other ichnotaxa may have been produced by bivalves, but tracemaker origins cannot always be confirmed. An example would be *Paradictyodora*, which comprises vertical spreite structures that consist of subvertical folded laminae produced by the migration of a subvertical J-shaped tube (Olivero et al. 2004). This structure has been interpreted as the feeding trace of worms or tellinid bivalves (D'Alessandro and Fürsich 2005; Serpagli et al. 2008). This ichnogenus occurs from Late Cretaceous to Pleistocene (Olivero et al. 2004; D'Alessandro and Fürsich 2005).

Although bivalves were key players during the MMR, the trace-fossil record shows that some of the most representative ichnotaxa, such as *Protovirgularia* and *Lockeia*, have been present since the early Paleozoic, albeit becoming particularly abundant since the late Paleozoic. However, other bivalve ichnotaxa (e.g., *Hillichnus*) seem to be directly associated with the MMR, whereas the stratigraphic ranges of other ichnotaxa (e.g., *Scalichnus*, *Saronichnus*) are still poorly known due to sparse occurrence. *Hillichnus* reflects a level of behavioral complexity unknown in older bivalve-produced ichnotaxa (Bromley et al. 2003). Particularly, the proposed producers of this ichnogenus, the tellinid bivalves, originated in inner shelf environments during the Middle Triassic and then commenced significant radiation (Jablonski and Bottjer 1990). Interestingly, it seems that the earliest tellinaceans were suspension feeders, whereas deposit-feeding tellinids appeared during the Early Cretaceous (Bottjer and Jablonski 1988). Although lucinids originated in the Silurian, they experienced an evolutionary radiation near the end of the Cretaceous, coincident with the appearance of seagrasses and mangroves (Stanley 2014). It has been hypothesized that lucinids may have exploited the dysaerobic sediments below roots and rhizomes, acquiring sulfides for their endosymbiotic bacteria (Stanley 2014). *Saronichnus*, the only ichnogenus attributed confidently to lucinids, is only known from its type locality, so using ichnologic data to track evolutionary trends is still not possible.

9.2.1.3 Echinoderms

The Phylum Echinodermata is one of the most important and characteristic components of modern-marine benthic communities (Smith 1984). Echinoderms comprise very diverse marine groups, such as sea stars, brittle stars, sea urchins, sand dollars, sea cucumbers, and sea lilies, with the majority being bottom dwellers (Ruppert et al. 2004).

The Class Echinoidea consists of diverse and successful groups comprising approximately 950 living species (Smith 1984; Ruppert et al. 2004). Echinoids adapted to live in a variety of marine environments and present different life habits (Smith 1984). This part of the chapter focuses mostly on irregular echinoids, whose stratigraphic range covers the Early Jurassic to Holocene, with approximately 410 genera (Parma 2008).

Irregular echinoids are detritus- or deposit-feeding organisms that ingest material selected by their podia. This particulate material is covered by mucus and then moved to the mouth. Some irregular echinoid species burrow deeply into the substrate and build a vertical channel to provide oxygenated water from the sediment surface. They also construct sanitary channels or drains to remove fecal material mixed with seawater. Within irregular echinoids, the spatangoid heart urchins constitute the most diverse group in modern oceans, being found in all latitudes and at all depths, and contributing significantly to collective bioturbation of the surrounding sediments (Villier and Navarro 2004). In addition, the infaunal activities of these organisms stimulate bacterial production within the substrate via transport of organic matter to deeper sediment layers (Osinga et al. 1997). In turn, deep-burrowing irregular echinoids can induce a back-flow of organic matter in the form of dissolved nutrients returned to the sea (Lohrer et al. 2004).

The abundance of spatangoids increased rapidly during the Cretaceous and has remained stable since then, although other groups of irregular echinoids show a concurrent decline in diversity. This has been interpreted as due to the acquisition of

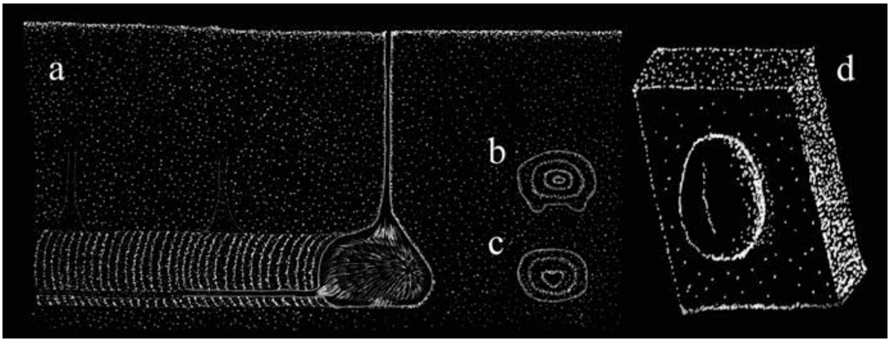


Fig. 9.9 Schematic reconstructions of trace fossils produced by irregular echinoids. (**a**) Reconstruction of the locomotion activity of *Echinocardium cordatum* producing *Scolicia*, scale is 1 cm; (**b**) Cross-sectional view of *Scolicia*; (**c**) Cross section view of *Bichordites*; (**d**) Basal view of *Cardioichnus* (based on Smith and Crimes 1983), scale is 1 cm. (**a–c**) modified from Bromley (1996)

a burrowing life mode, which allowed spatangoids to access new food resources and avoid predation (Smith 1984; Villier and Navarro 2004). Three ichnogenera (e.g., *Bichordites, Scolicia*, and *Cardioichnus*) are attributed to the activity of irregular echinoids (Figs. 9.9a–d and 9.10a–e; see Belaústegui et al. 2015a for a review).

Scolicia comprises horizontal to inclined trace fossils characterized by the presence of menisci (Figs. 9.9a–b and 9.10a–b). In cross-section and in hypichnial preservation, two parallel canals, functioning as drains for used respiratory water, are observed at the base of these structures. This ichnogenus ranges from the Jurassic onward (Uchman 1995).

Bichordites also consists of meniscate, horizontal structures, but with only one middle channel crossing the menisci (Figs. 9.9c and 9.10c–d). *Bichordites* ranges from the Eocene onward (Bernardi et al. 2010; Demírcan and Uchman 2012; Villegas-Martín et al. 2014).

Cardioichnus consists of heart-shaped structures having an axial depression (Figs. 9.9d and 9.10e). It is interpreted as the resting trace of irregular echinoids (Smith and Crimes 1983) and usually is found in association with locomotion traces. This ichnotaxon ranges from the Late Cretaceous onward (Smith and Crimes 1983).

In modern environments, two principal groups of irregular echinoids are known to excavate sediment: the *Spatangus* group, which produces meniscate structures with two basal drain canals (modern analogues for *Scolicia*), and the *Echinocardium* group, which produces structures with only one canal, resembling the ichnogenus *Bichordites* (Bromley and Asgaard 1975; Kanazawa 1995). Although Smith and Crimes (1983) postulated that irregular echinoids fully developed their capacity to excavate during the Early Cretaceous, when the *Spatangus* group first appeared, ichnologic evidence (i.e., the presence of *Scolicia* in Jurassic strata) suggests an earlier origin.

During the Paleozoic, epifaunal echinoderm taxa (mostly suspension- and detritus-feeders) were abundant (Dornbos 2008; Schneider 2008). Several reasons have been

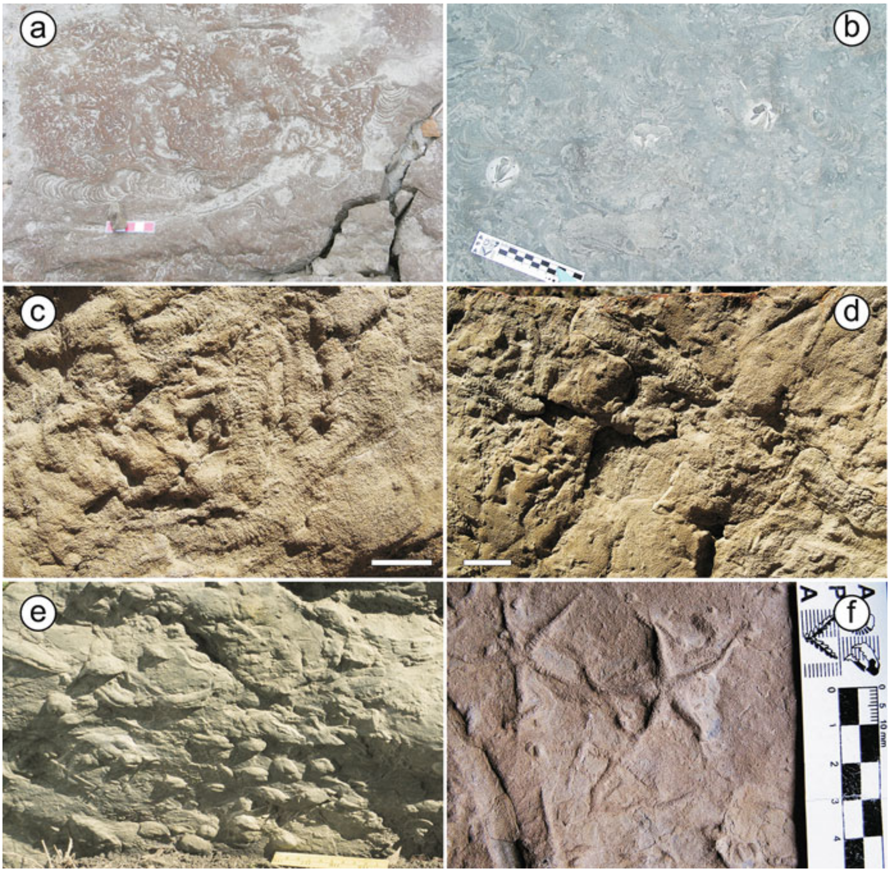


Fig. 9.10 Trace fossils produced by irregular echinoids. (**a**) *Scolicia* isp., López de Bertodano Formation, Upper Cretaceous, Antarctica; (**b**) *Scolicia* isp. with their producers, Chenque Formation, Lower Miocene, Argentina; (**c–d**) *Bichordites kuzunensis,* Mezardere Formation, Early Oligocene, Turkey, scale bar is 1 cm; (**e**) *Cardioichnus* isp., Upper Marine Molasse, Lower Miocene, Switzerland; (**f**) *Asteriacites lumbricalis*, Neill Klinter Formation, Lower Jurassic, Greenland

proposed for this abundance: high productivity of the seas during the early Paleozoic, low abundance of deep-infaunal organisms, and the absence of efficient predators (Sprinkle and Kier 1987; Parma 2008). This situation changed dramatically after the Paleozoic, when echinoderms developed infaunal detritus-feeding and predation strategies (Sprinkle and Kier 1987). Obviously, this change is also reflected in the trace-fossil record. Interestingly, Smith (2005) analyzed the growth and form of Paleozoic and post-Paleozoic echinoids and recognized that there was a distinct variation in the nature of disparity between these two groups, with an important diversification of shapes in those from post-Paleozoic times (see also Hopkins and Smith 2015). In particular, he found that there was a significant evolutionary innovation for echinoids with regard to specification of the final positions of plates during early stages of ontogeny. This early fixation of plate position favored the appearance of other evolutionary innovations, especially in the Atelostomata (e.g., spatangoids) and Clypeasteroida clades (Hopkins and Smith 2015). For example, the early fixation of plates allowed diverse regions of the test to differentiate both in structure and function. This involved also the morphological and functional differentiation of spines, especially for the spatangoids during the Cretaceous and Cenozoic, which poses important implications for acquisition of the ability to burrow. The early fixation of plate position also allowed for development of bands of spines called fascioles, which serve to create water currents and mucus streams. Fascioles are particularly important for burrowing in spatangoids, and their appearance permitted this group to diversify ecologically (Smith 2005). In addition to these innovations, the presence of an intestinal caecum enclosing sulfide-oxidizing bacteria in some spatangoid species allows them to burrow deeply within the substrate, well below the redox boundary, to ingest sulfide-rich and anoxic sediment (Bromley et al. 1995). Therefore, echinoids are able to avoid predation and reduce competition both for food and space, occupying a deep tier within the substrate (Bromley et al. 1995).

There are other trace fossils interpreted as produced by echinoderms. Among them, the most common is the resting trace *Asteriacites* (Fig. 9.10f–h), interpreted as produced by asterozoans (both asteroids and ophiuroids, but more commonly the latter; Seilacher 1953; Mángano et al. 1999). Although it has been suggested that *Asteriacites* is a *nomen dubium* (Schlirf 2012), the rediscovery of the type material justifies keeping the original name (Knaust & Neumann 2016; see also Gurav et al. 2014). *Asteriacites* is present in marginal- to shallow-marine settings since the Cambrian (Mikuláš 1992a), being particularly abundant in the Triassic and Jurassic (e.g., Dam 1990a; Wilson and Rigby 2000). There are also records from deep-marine facies (Crimes and Crossley 1991).

Some other ichnotaxa are also attributed to asterozoans, namely, *Pentichnus*, *Arcichnus*, and *Ophioichnus*. *Pentichnus* is a plug-shaped structure with pentameral symmetry interpreted as a dwelling burrow of ophiuroids. This ichnotaxon has been described from the Carboniferous (Maerz et al. 1976; Seilacher 1983, 1990b; Rindsberg 1994; Mángano et al. 2002b). *Arcichnus* is interpreted as the trackway of ophiuroids, and consists of a series of horseshoe-shaped impressions produced by the anterior arms. This trace fossil was described from the Devonian (Sutcliffe 1997). *Ophioichnus* consists of imprints interpreted as produced by the arms of ophiuroids and has been recorded in the Early Cretaceous (Bell 2004). Recently, incipient *Ophioichnus* were recognized on the modern sea floor (Schatz et al. 2013). Synonymization of *Ophioichnus* with *Biformites* has been recently suggested (Knaust and Neumann 2016).

The ichnologic record of holothurids is restricted to the ichnogenus *Artichnus*, which consists of a wide, J-shaped structure with a narrow, upward tapering shaft and the distal end tapering to a blind termination (Zhang et al. 2008). An irregular spreite structure surrounds the burrow lumen. This ichnogenus is known since the Eocene (Zhang et al. 2008; Ayranci and Dashtgard 2013; Ayranci et al. 2014; Belaústegui and Domènech 2014). A comparison with modern structures suggests that potential holothurid trace fossils may occur in Carboniferous rocks (Smilek and Hembree 2012). In fact, burrows attributed to holothurians have been recorded in the early Permian (Netto 1994; 2000). Further work is needed to assess the relationship between *Artichnus* and the previously defined ichnogenus *Naviculichnium* (Książkiewicz 1977) in order to evaluate more completely the record of trace fossils generated by holothurians.

In sum, the trace-fossil record matches closely body-fossil information, as indicated by the stratigraphic ranges of ichnotaxa attributed to irregular echinoids, such as *Scolicia*, *Bichordites,* and *Cardioichnus*, which are typical structures of the Modern Evolutionary Fauna. In contrast, structures commonly attributed to ophiuroids have a much longer stratigraphic range (*Asteriacites*, *Arcichnus*) or are still poorly known (*Ophioichnus*). Further occurrences of structures produced by holothurids in the fossil record are needed in order to establish potential trends.

9.2.1.4 Worms

Many ichnogenera have been attributed to the activity of "worms," without clear distinction regarding which group of worms might have been responsible. In fact, worm-like animals constitute a particularly important group of bioturbators in marine environments, including principally vermiform nemerteans, polychaetes, and hemichordates, all groups that are diverse and abundant. According to Seilacher (2007), when worms are mentioned, the term serves to designate "all long, soft and usually cylindrical animals belonging to many different phyla," which have evolved a peristaltic mode of locomotion for life in soft substrates, but other locomotion strategies may be employed, such as undulation and bolting (Schäfer 1972; Buatois and Mángano 2011). The objective of this section is to discuss the most common trace fossils attributed to worm-like organisms, while relating them to the evolutionary history of some of their likely producers wherever possible.

Polychaetes are annelids having a pair of parapodia and associated chaetae in each body segment. Most polychaetes (e.g., terebellids, maldanids, glycerids, ophelids) are burrowers, although some bore into shells and rocks, secrete tubes, move over surfaces, and even swim (Ruppert et al. 2004). Nutrition habits of polychaetes are closely related to their mode of life; deposit feeders are mostly burrowers and sedentary worms living in burrows/tubes; suspension feeders are sedentary organisms living in tubes in the sediment or are attached to organic or inorganic hard substrates; and scavengers, carnivores, and herbivores are typically errant worms (although some live in tubes or are active burrowers) (Ruppert et al. 2004). Groups with ichnologic importance include members of the clades Scolecida and Palpata (Gingras et al. 2008). Scolecids are deposit-feeding burrowers, similar to the presumed ancestor of annelids, without head appendages, and palpates have head appendages and more diversified life habits (Ruppert et al. 2004). In particular, ophelids (scolecids) include burrowers with an eversible bulbous pharynx with which they ingest sediment in high-energy areas such as the foreshore, producing *Macaronichnus*-like structures (Clifton and Thompson 1978; Ruppert et al. 2004).

Nemerteans include several species of long, slender worms resembling annelids, although lacking their segmentation. They have a characteristic proboscis apparatus with which they capture prey and burrow (Ruppert et al. 2004). Species that burrow (e.g., *Carinoma*) commonly have a muscular body wall that they use to produce peristaltic movement (Ruppert et al. 2004).

Echiurans (or spoon worms) comprise coelomate marine organisms that lack segmentation. Echiurans have two main body regions: an anterior cylindrical part, called the prostomium or proboscis, and a trunk, which commonly has three-layered musculature used to produce peristaltic movements to ventilate their burrows. Most echiurans are deposit-feeders, although some are suspension-feeders. Many species live in U-shaped burrows built in sand and mud in shallow-marine settings, although some occupy deep-marine sediments (Ruppert et al. 2004).

Sipunculids are a group of worms sharing some characters with echiurans (e.g., both lack segmentation). These organisms are suspension- or deposit-feeders, collecting their food with ciliated tentacles present in the oral disc. Sipunculids are bottom-dwelling organisms, with most living in shallow-marine settings, where they burrow into the sediment or bore into coralline rocks or wood (Ruppert et al. 2004). Although the fossil record of this group is sparse, Huang et al. (2004) reported three species from the early Cambrian.

Priapulids are benthic marine worms characterized by an extendable, eversible proboscis (i.e., introvert). These organisms excavate using a push-and-pull mechanism, with the trunk acting as a penetration anchor and the introvert as a terminal anchor. They live in sandy and muddy sediments in shallow- and deep-marine settings (Ruppert et al. 2004). Based on their fossil record, priapulids were important components of Cambrian marine communities (Huang et al. 2007), and it has been convincingly argued that priapulids may have been the producers of *Treptichnus pedum* (Vannier et al. 2010).

Enteropneusts are benthic worms that have a body divided into three regions: proboscis (protosome), collar (mesosome), and trunk (metasome), and thus are tricoelomate animals. Generally, they use their anterior region to burrow by retrograde peristaltic contractions, with most being deposit-feeders (Ruppert et al. 2004). They mostly live in shallow-marine environments, and their fossil record extends back to the Cambrian (Caron et al. 2013).

Trace fossils attributed to worms are diverse and comprise structures that are morphologically simple, such as vertical or U-shaped burrows, to those that are more complex, displaying sophisticated spreiten (Fig. 9.11a-i). In this section, a brief description of most of the ichnogenera attributed to “worms” is alphabetically presented.

Ancorichnus comprises a cylindrical meniscate burrow fill surrounded by a structureless tubular mantle (Heinberg 1974; Dam 1990a). This ichnogenus has been interpreted as a locomotion trace (repichnion) of a soft-bodied organism (Heinberg 1974), most likely a worm. Dam (1990a) noted transitions with *Jamesonichnites*, suggesting that *Ancorichnus* represents the axial burrow from which *Jamesonichnites* probes were made. *Ancorichnus* occurs in shallow-marine environments and ranges from the Jurassic to the Cretaceous (Heinberg 1974); older and younger records require critical re-evaluation (e.g., Singh et al. 2010).

Arachnostega consists of irregular, elongate, and net-like burrows in sediment fills of shells and visible on the surfaces of internal molds. This ichnotaxon is attributed to errant polychaetes, but crustaceans cannot be ruled out as producers. Bertling (1992) considered the diameter and course of the burrows to reflect an opportunistic polychaete larval infestation in recently sediment-filled bivalve borings. *Arachnostega* is known since the Cambrian (Rodrigues et al. 2005), although its presence is more common from the Jurassic onward in shallow-marine settings.

Arenicolites is a vertical U-tube without spreite. It is interpreted as a dwelling structure. Although it has been attributed to worm-like organisms such as polychaetes (Goldring 1962; Fürsich 1974); crustaceans (Goldring 1962) and holothurians (Seilacher 1990a; Bromley 1996) have been suggested as well. *Arenicolites* is present in a broad variety of shallow- to deep-marine and even continental environments, being most common in nearshore high-energy settings since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Asterosoma consists of elongate, bulbous segments having a terminal or eccentrical, laminated fill; segments are oriented (sub)horizontally and are arranged around a central vertical, somewhat twisted axis (Schlirf 2000; Fig. 9.11a). This ichnotaxon is a feeding trace produced by deposit or detritus feeders. Its intergradation with *Rosselia* suggests terebellid polychaetes as possible producers, but some authors (e.g., Neto de Carvalho and Rodrigues 2007) have proposed crustaceans as well. *Asterosoma* occurs most commonly in shallow-marine settings since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Balanoglossites consists of connected, U-shaped burrows that occur in shallow-marine environments, especially intertidal settings and carbonate ramps (Knaust 1998 and references therein; Fig. 9.11b). This trace fossil is interpreted as the domicile of enteropneusts or polychaetes (Mägdefrau 1932; Kaźmierczak and Pszczōłkowski 1969). Although this ichnogenus occurs since the Ordovician (Knaust and Dronov 2013), it mostly has been recorded since the Triassic (Knaust 2004, 2010; Carmona et al. 2008; Desai and Saklani 2012; Knaust and Costamagna 2012).

Bornichnus comprises clusters of small, lined, contorted, branched tubes (Bromley and Uchman 2003). These authors interpreted *Bornichnus* as an open burrow probably produced by farming organisms and noted that similar systems are produced by capitellid polychaetes in modern deposits. *Bornichnus* has only been reported from its type locality in the Lower to Middle Jurassic of Denmark (Bromley and Uchman 2003).

Chondrites comprise a tree-like system of tunnels that branch downward, with the angle of branching commonly less than 45° (Fig. 9.11c). The color of the sediment fills is invariably different from the host-rock color. This ichnotaxon has been interpreted as the burrow of infaunal detritus feeders or chemosymbiotic organisms (Fu 1991). Although worms, such as sipunculids and polychaetes, produce similar structures today, bivalves cannot be completely ruled out (Kotake 1991 and references therein). This ichnogenus is known since the Ordovician, and it is a facies-crossing form, from offshore to abyssal environments (Mángano et al. 2002b and references therein).

Cylindrichnus consists of broad U- or bow-shaped, concentrically laminated burrows (Fig. 9.11d). According to Belaústegui and de Gibert (2013), the morphologic characteristics of this ichnogenus display important similarities with burrows of some terebellid polychaetes. The ichnogenus *Cylindrichnus* occurs since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014), and Belaústegui and de Gibert (2013) reported that *Cylindrichnus concentricus* ichnofabrics occur commonly in Mesozoic and Cenozoic offshore to shoreface settings.

Curvolithus comprises ribbon-like, flattened, endostratal trace fossils (Fig. 9.11e). Three rounded lobes are present on the upper surface (Buatois et al. 1998).

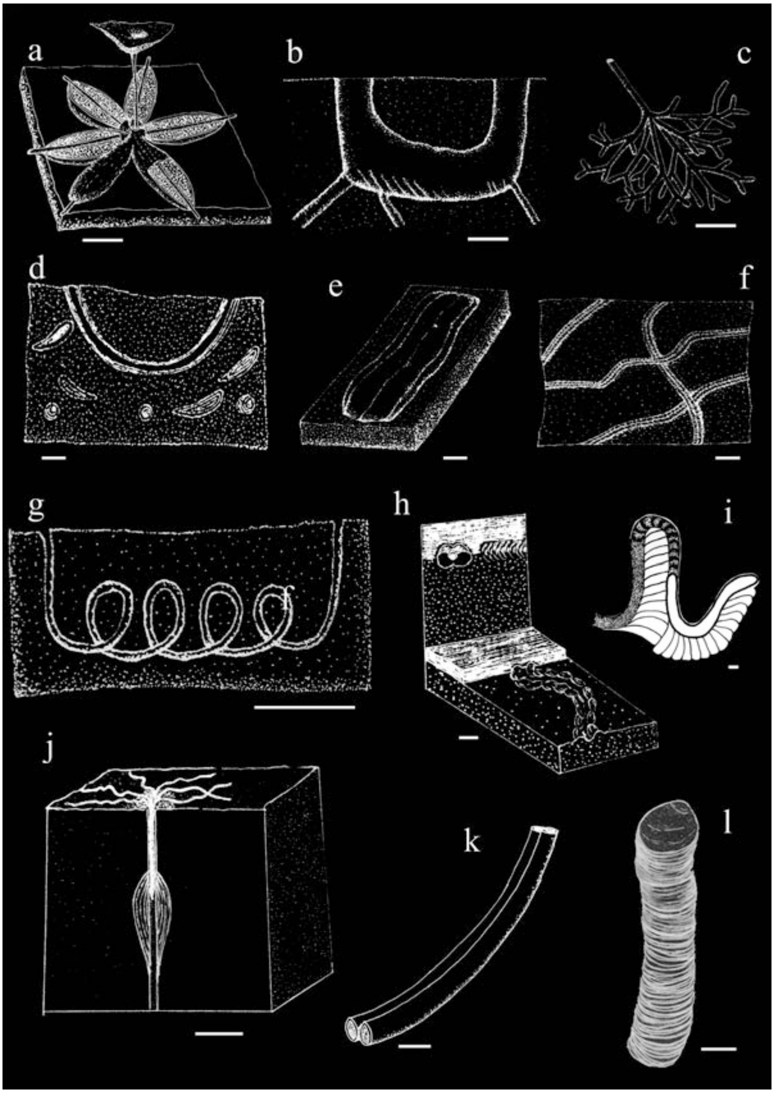


Fig. 9.11 Ichnogenera produced by worms. (**a**) *Asterosoma*, scale bar is 5 cm; (**b**) *Balanoglossites*, scale bar is 5 cm; (**c**) *Chondrites*, scale bar is 1 cm; (**d**) *Cylindrichnus* (modified from Belaústegui and de Gibert 2009), scale bar is 1 cm; (**e**) *Curvolithus*, scale bar is 1 cm; (**f**) *Gyrochorte*, scale bar is 1 cm; (**g**) *Helicodromites*, scale bar is 10 cm; (**h**) *Nereites* (modified from Seilacher 2007), scale bar is 1 cm; (**i**) *Phycosiphon* (modified from Bromley 1996), scale bar is 0.2 cm; (**j**) *Rosselia* (modified from Nara 1995), scale bar is 8 cm; (**k**) *Schaubcylindrichnus*, scale bar is 1 cm; (**l**) *Teichichnus* (transverse vertical section, modified from Nara 1995), scale bar is 1 cm

This ichnogenus is interpreted as the locomotion trace of infaunal predators, such as flatworms or nemerteans, but gastropods cannot be completely ruled out as producers (Buatois et al. 1998, see also Knaust 2010). It is known since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Diplocraterion is a U-shaped, vertical burrow with protrusive (common) or retrusive (seldom) spreite. Openings to the seafloor are commonly funnel-shaped. *Diplocraterion* is interpreted as a dwelling structure and an equilibrium structure (Goldring 1962; Cornish 1986; Ekdale and Lewis 1991; Bromley 1996). Polychaetes have been suggested as tracemakers (Arkell 1939), although crustaceans have been indicated as well (Bromley 1996). *Diplocraterion* occurs in a wide variety of shallow- to deep-marine and even continental environments. However, it is more common in nearshore high-energy settings and is known since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Euflabella is a morphologically complex ichnogenus that comprises burrows with single or multiple spreite bodies arranged in linear or radial patterns (Olivero and López-Cabrera 2013). This trace fossil is interpreted as most likely produced by an elongated worm-like organism and has been recognized only in Upper Cretaceous and Paleogene shallow-marine settings (Olivero and López-Cabrera 2013).

Gyrochorte consists of curved to meandering, vertically penetrating burrows, with a bilobate epichnial ridge and an underlying hypichnial groove, both with transverse striae (de Gibert and Ekdale 2002; Fig. 9.11f). This ichnogenus is interpreted as produced by detritus-feeding worms, most likely annelids (de Gibert and Benner 2002). It is known since the Early Ordovician, although most recorded occurrences are from the Jurassic (de Gibert and Benner 2002 and references therein).

Haentzschelinia is a vertical, radial spreite trace, having a central shaft (Fürsich and Bromley 1985). This structure is interpreted as produced by worm-like organisms with a proboscis used for reworking the sediment from a central shaft (Fürsich and Bromley 1985; de Gibert et al. 1995; Uchman and Pervesler 2007). Such structures have been commonly referred to as *Dactyloidites*, but this name should be reserved for more simple radial forms particularly common in early Paleozoic deposits (see Belaústegui et al. 2015b). Although it has been mentioned from the Triassic (Beatty et al. 2008), the oldest illustrated occurrences have been documented in the Jurassic (Agirrezabala and de Gibert 2004).

Helicodromites comprises horizontal spiral burrows, with pale fill contrasting with the host rock (Fig. 9.11g). These trace fossils are interpreted as feeding burrows constructed by vermiform organisms (probably capitellid polychaetes or enteropneusts; Poschmann 2015). *Helicodromites* is common in both deep- and shallow-marine deposits, especially in low-energy settings (Baldwin and McCave 1999). It occurs from the Devonian onward (Baldwin and McCave 1999; Poschmann 2015).

Jamesonichnites consists of cylindrical tunnels with meniscate infill and well-defined surrounding mantle (Dam 1990a). According to this author, *Jamesonichnites* is transitional with *Ancorichnus* and it represents a feeding trace (fodinichnion) of a soft-bodied organism. However, its possible occurrence in transition with *Hillichnus* (Pazos and Fernández 2010) would be consistent with a bivalve producer. It is present in shallow-marine settings, ranging from the Jurassic (Dam 1990a; Desai and Saklani 2014) perhaps to the Cretaceous (Pazos and Fernández 2010).

Korymbichnus is similar to *Arachnostega*, although it is distinguished by filiform, dichotomous branches that fan out distally (Damborenea and Manceñido 1996). This structure is interpreted as produced by small deposit-feeding polychaetes that fed at the interface between a shell and its internal mold. *Korymbichnus* is known only from within mollusks molds from the Middle Jurassic of the Neuquén Basin, Argentina (Damborenea and Manceñido 1996).

Lapispira consists of double helicoidal, concentrically arranged burrows with coiling axes perpendicular to the bedding plane (Lanés et al. 2007; Pagani et al. 2012). This ichnogenus is interpreted as a feeding burrow, but its producer is uncertain, with worms, such as polychaetes and enteropneusts, but also thalassinidean crustaceans, as the most likely candidates (Lanés et al. 2007). It is only known from Early Jurassic shallow-marine settings. Another possible recording of *Lapispira* has been documented from the Miocene. It was attributed to crustaceans and most likely represents a new ichnotaxon (de Gibert et al. 2012).

Macaronichnus is a mostly horizontal to sub-horizontal trace fossil with a fill characteristically lighter than the host rock. It tends to occur in high densities. Modern polychaetes (opheliids) produce structures similar to this ichnogenus by ingesting sand to consume bacteria and organic material attached to the grains and excreting the clean sand that fills the core of the burrow (Pemberton et al. 2001). This form is commonly present in upper-shoreface and foreshore deposits (Pemberton et al. 2001; Seike 2009) and occurs since the Permian (Quiroz et al. 2010).

Nereites is a predominantly horizontal, winding to meandering trace fossil with a central tunnel filled with relatively dark sediment and lateral lobes of reworked, paler sediment (Fig. 9.11h). Interpreted as the structure of vermiform deposit-feeders, probably enteropneusts (Uchman 1995 and references therein), *Nereites* is commonly reported in both shallow- and deep-marine environments since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Palaeophycus is a straight to slightly curved, inclined to horizontal burrow, with smooth, ornamented, or annulated walls and with infill identical to the host rock. This ichnogenus has been interpreted as the dwelling burrow of a predaceous or suspension-feeding organism. Glycerid and nereid polychaetes form similar structures in modern environments (Pemberton and Frey 1982), but *Palaeophycus* is a very simple structure that in fact can be produced by many different groups of phylogenetically unrelated organisms. It is a eurybathic trace fossil recorded from shallow-marine, deep-marine, brackish, and continental paleoenvironments since the Ediacaran (Mángano et al. 2002b and references therein).

Patagonichnus comprises a morphologically variable and complex burrow system consisting of vertically and horizontally branched, lined tubes, with cylindrically laminated structures surrounding the main tubes (Olivero and López-Cabrera 2005). These authors suggested that *Patagonichnus* was most likely produced by polychaetes, such as maldanids and capitellids. This ichnogenus is known since the Miocene (Olivero and López-Cabrera 2005).

Phoebichnus comprises a central shaft consisting of stacked disc-shaped layers from which several radial burrows emerged; these radial burrows display a lamination inclined toward the shaft and an annulated mantle with annuli concave toward the shaft (Bromley and Asgaard 1972; Dam 1990a; Evans and McIlroy 2016). *Phoebichnus* is a feeding trace (fodinichnion) of a worm-like organism (Bromley and Asgaard 1972). However, a crustacean producer has been suggested recently (Evans and McIlroy 2016). This ichnogenus is particularly common in shallow-marine settings, ranging from the Jurassic to the Pleistocene (Bromley and Asgaard 1972; Kotake 2003).

Phycosiphon is a spreite trace fossil formed by recurving U-lobes in bedding planes and having a dark core and a pale halo. This ichnogenus has been interpreted as a feeding structure of vermiform organisms, probably polychaetes (Wetzel and Bromley 1994), and it occurs in shallow- and deep-marine settings since the Ordovician (Mángano et al. 2002b and references therein).

Planolites is an unlined, straight to slightly curved, smooth trace fossil, with striae or annulations, being predominantly horizontal and with an infill contrasting in texture with the host rock. It is interpreted as a feeding trace of deposit-feeder organisms, probably polychaetes (Pemberton and Frey 1982). Documented as a eurybathic trace fossil recorded in shallow-marine, deep-marine, brackish-water, and continental paleoenvironments, *Planolites* is known since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Polykladichnus comprises vertical to steeply oblique tubes, lined or unlined, with single or multiple U or Y shapes. The tubes are usually connected to the surface, and slight enlargements can be seen at junctions. Probable producers for marine *Polykladichnus* are polychaetes (Schlirf and Uchman 2005) and nemerteans (Knaust 2010), although cerianthid anemones (Schlirf and Uchman 2005) have been suggested as well. This ichnogenus is known since the Devonian (Schlirf and Uchman 2005).

Rosselia is a vertical to inclined funnel-shaped burrow with a central tube filled with sandy sediment and surrounded by concentric muddy laminae (Fig. 9.11j). Specimens commonly exhibit erosional truncations. *Rosselia* is interpreted as the dwelling structure of deposit-feeders, such as terebellid or trichobranchid polychaetes (Nara 1995). This ichnotaxon is common in shallow-marine environments, with normal-marine or brackish-water conditions, although it has also been reported from deep-marine environments in a few cases (Mángano et al. 2002b and references therein). *Rosselia* is known since the Cambrian (Jensen 1997).

Schaubcylindrichnus consists of oblique to horizontal bundles of congruent, lined, circular, and pale-colored tubes (Fig. 9.11k). Some specimens show cross-cutting relationships between successive tubes. This ichnogenus is usually interpreted as a dwelling structure produced by tubicolous deposit-feeders, similar to modern maldanid polychaetes (Pemberton et al. 2001). Löwemark and Hong (2006) considered the *Schaubcylindrichnus* tracemaker to be a suspension-feeding organism with the ability to construct closely spaced tubes sequentially within the sediment. This ichnogenus occurs in shoreface and upper-offshore sediments deposited under normal salinity conditions (Pemberton et al. 2001). Although known from the Carboniferous, it is much more common in post-Paleozoic rocks (Buckman 1997; Löwemark and Hong 2006; Löwemark and Nara 2013).

Skolithos is a simple, vertical burrow that can be lined or unlined. In marine environments, it is interpreted as the domicile of vermiform organisms (e.g., phoronids and/or polychaetes; Schlirf and Uchman 2005). *Skolithos* occurs across a broad range of shallow- to deep-marine and even continental environments, being most common in nearshore high-energy settings since the Cambrian (Howard and Frey 1975; Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Taenidium is a cylindrical and unlined, sinuous trace fossil, with fill that consists of meniscate segments alternately composed of fine- and coarse-grained sediment. This ichnogenus is interpreted as a grazing or feeding structure produced by vermiform, deposit-feeding invertebrates that fed while moving through the sediment (Keighley and Pickerill 1994). It occurs since the Cambrian in various marine environments (e.g., marginal-marine, shallow- and deep-marine) and also in continental settings (Buatois et al. 2007; Netto 2007).

Teichichnus is a horizontal to slightly inclined, unlined, simple structure, with retrusive spreite (Fig. 9.11l). It is interpreted as the feeding structure of deposit-feeding organisms, with each spreite formed during sediment mining, or an equilibrium structure with the spreite being in response to sea floor aggradation (Seilacher 1955; Corner and Fjalstad 1993). Probable tracemakers are polychaetes and sipunculan worms, but some arthropods may produce similar structures (Mángano et al. 2002b and references therein). This is a eurybathic form, being common in marginal-, shallow-, and deep-marine environments since the Cambrian (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Zoophycos is a complex trace fossil with a wide range of morphological variability (Olivero and Gaillard 2007; Fig. 9.11i). This ichnogenus ranges from simple and isolated lobes with spreite to commonly large and very complex structures with spiral morphology (Bromley and Hanken 2003). It is known since the Cambrian (Olivero 2003). Various ethologic models have been invoked to explain the origin of this structure, including strip mining, detritus feeding, refuse-dump, food cache, and gardening (Bromley 1991; Löwemark 2015). Morphologic analysis suggests it is the work of sipunculid or echiuran worms (Wetzel and Werner 1981; Kotake 1992; Olivero and Gaillard 2007). Olivero and Gaillard (2007) noted that the oldest *Zoophycos* are usually unlobed, in contrast to more recent forms that show well developed lobes (see also Seilacher 1986; Bottjer et al. 1988) (see Sect. 9.6).

Considering the evolutionary history of the above-mentioned groups of worms, most of the major clades appeared during the early Paleozoic, although their body-fossil record is patchy due to their low preservation potential. For example, unquestionable polychaetes had certainly appeared by the middle Cambrian (Glasby et al. 2000). Fauchald (1984) suggested that by the end of the Paleozoic, most of the polychaete orders were already present, with groups such as opheliids (Scolecida) recorded since the Devonian (Thompson 1979). Interestingly, some groups of polychaetes became extinct by the end of the Paleozoic, and many groups recognized today appeared during the Triassic (Glasby et al. 2000). In this regard, Vermeij (1987) observed that lugworms (Arenicolidae), which intensely bioturbate sediments by excavating very deep burrows in modern settings, are known from the Triassic onward. Similarly, Ippolitov (2010) studied the diversification patterns of serpulids (calcareous tube-dwelling polychaetes) during the Mesozoic, recording an important increase in the total biodiversity of this group during the Middle to Late Jurassic. Knaust (2010) documented exceptionally preserved soft-bodied organisms together with their trace fossils in a Middle Triassic mud flat. He recorded structures produced by flatworms, nemerteans, nematodes, annelids, arthropods, and mollusks, and concluded that these different taxa were already established in the early Mesozoic (Knaust 2010).

Although the vast majority of the ichnotaxa attributed to worm-like organisms is known since the early Paleozoic (e.g., *Planolites*, *Palaeophycus*, *Cylindrichnus*), other more complex forms seem to have resulted from behavioral innovations associated with the MMR (e.g., *Bornichnus*, *Euflabella*, *Haentzschelinia*, *Lapispira*, *Patagonichnus, Phoebichnus*). Also, some ichnotaxa, albeit known from the Paleozoic, are much more common in post-Paleozoic rocks (e.g., *Macaronichnus*, *Schaubcylindrichnus*). In addition, some ichnogenera are represented by a few ichnospecies in the Paleozoic and then experienced marked increase in morphologic variability, resulting in diversifications at ichnospecific rank. In addition, post-Paleozoic ichnospecies tend to display deeper-tier positions and are morphologically more complex than Paleozoic ones. Good examples include *Asterosoma* and *Teichichnus*. The ichnospecies *A. radiciformis*, *A. ludwigae*, and *A. coxii* are known since the Devonian-Carboniferous, but the Jurassic shows the addition of *A. surlyki*, *A. striata*, and an unnamed ichnospecies referred to by Seilacher (2007) as Tatzelwurm (for discussion on these forms see Chamberlain 1971; Schlirf 2000; Bromley and Uchman 2003, and Seilacher 2007). The ichnospecies *Teichichnus rectus, T. nodosus, T. flexuosus*, and (probably) *T. zigzag* originated in the Paleozoic, whereas *T. sigmoidalis*, *T. spiralis*, and *T. patens* have their earliest representatives in the Mesozoic (for further discussion of these ichnospecies, see Schlirf 2000 and Seilacher 2007).

9.2.2 The Main Groups of Bioeroders

Bioerosion was central to the MMR (Vermeij 1977; Bertling 1999; Perry and Bertling 2000; Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004; Wilson 2007). Of particular significance is the role of sponges, gastropods, bivalves, chitons, echinoids, and worms as bioeroders (Wilson 2007). Bryozoans and crustaceans were also important bioerosion players in the MMR. Brachiopods, which typically produce etching structures, were already established bioeroders in the Paleozoic and, therefore, are not treated here. Algae, fungi, and foraminiferans, and cyanobacteria significantly contribute to microbioerosion (Glaub and Vogel 2004; Bromley 2004; Taylor et al. 2015), but the majority of their ichnogenera have a Paleozoic origin (Glaub and Vogel 2004; Bromley 2004). Vertebrates, such as fish and sharks, also were important bioeroders during the MMR, as recorded by bite marks. However, in most cases, these traces have not received ichnotaxonomic treatment. As with burrows, the degree of precision in attribution of individual ichnotaxa to specific bioeroders is variable, with endolithic algae, cyanobacteria, and bryozoans typically leaving distinctive fingerprints and worm-generated structures having a higher level of uncertainty (Bromley 2004). In this section, the most important bioerosion structures produced by these groups of organisms are described (Table 9.2).

Table 9.2 Common bioerosion ichnogenera in shallow-marine post-Paleozoic deposits (see main text for references)

Ichnogenera	Stratigraphic range	Potential producers	Ethology	Trophic type
Belichnus	Oligocene–Recent	Stomatopods	Praedichnia	Predation
Caulostrepsis	Devonian–Recent	Spionid (polydorid) polychaetes	Domichnia	Suspension feeding/predation
Cavernula	Ordovician–Recent	Algae	Domichnia	Photoautotrophy
Centrichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Anomiid bivalves, balanid cirripeds	Fixichnia	Suspension feeding
Circolites	Jurassic–Recent	Regular echinoids	Domichnia	Grazing
Entobia	Devonian–Recent	Sponges (mostly clionaids)	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Finichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Cheilostome bryozoans	Fixichnia	Suspension feeding
Gastrochaenolites	Ordovician–Recent	Bivalves	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Gnathichnus	Triassic–Recent	Regular echinoids	Pascichnia	Grazing
Helicotaphrichnus	Eocene–Recent	Spionid polychaetes	Domichnia	Commensalism
Meandropolydora	Jurassic–Cretaceous	Spionid polychaetes	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Oichnus	Ediacaran–Recent	Gastropods (also octopods)	Praedichnia	Predation
Palaeosabella	Ordovician–Recent	Sipunculids and polychaetes	Domichnia	Commensalism
Pennatichnus	Miocene–Recent	Ctenostome bryozoans	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Petroxestes	Ordovician-Miocene	Mytilid bivalves	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Radulichnus	Jurassic–Recent	Gastropods and polyplacophorans	Pascichnia	Herbivory
Renichnus	Cretaceous–Recent	Vermetid gastropods	Fixichnia	Suspension feeding
Rhopalia	Carboniferous–Recent	Algae	Domichnia	Photoautotrophy
Rogerella	Devonian–Recent	Acrothoracican cirripeds	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Ropalonaria	Ordovician–Recent	Ctenostome bryozoans	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Saccomorpha	Carboniferous–Recent	Fungi or algae	Domichnia	
Spirichnus	Jurassic	Worms	Domichnia	
Stellichnus	Pliocene	Ctenostome bryozoans	Domichnia	Suspension feeding
Talpina	Devonian–Recent	Phoronid pseudocolonies	Domichnia	
Teredolites	Jurassic–Recent	Wood-boring bivalves	Fodinichnia	Herbivory (wood consumption)
Trypanites	Cambrian–Recent	Polychaetes and sipunculids	Domichnia	Suspension feeding/predation

9.2.2.1 Sponges

Sponge borings typically consist of anastomosing channel networks generally forming rounded chambers and commonly displaying diagnostic bioglyphs on the walls (Bromley 1992, 2004). The most common boring produced by sponges is *Entobia*, although other ichnotaxa (e.g., *Clionolithes*, *Clionoides*, *Cicatricula*) have been attributed to the activity of sponges, albeit with variable degrees of certainty (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004; Wilson 2007).

Entobia consists of multi-apertured and multi-chambered borings (Fig. 9.12b, d). It is mostly produced by clionaid sponges, although other groups of modern endolithic sponges, such as those in the Family Adociidae, produce similar structures (Bromley 2004). Traditionally, *Entobia* was thought to range from the Jurassic to Recent (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004), occurring in both shallow- and deep-marine settings, although displaying higher ichnospecies richness in the former (Bromley and D'Alessandro 1990). However, subsequent taxonomic revisions by Tapanila (2006) regarded the Devonian boring *Topsentopsis* as a junior synonym

Fig. 9.12 Bioerosion structures associated with the MMR. (**a**) Cliff conglomerate clast containing deep *Gastrochaenolites* isp., Middle Miocene, Skotniki Quarry, Holy Cross Mountains, Poland; (**b**) *Entobia cracoviensis*, a large chambered sponge boring formed in a Late Cretaceous abrasion platform cut into Upper Jurassic limestone. Upper Cretaceous, Bonarka Quarry, Cracow, Poland; (**c**) *Teredolites clavatus*, Horseshoe Canyon Formation, Upper Cretaceous, near Drumheller, Canada, scale bar is 2 cm; (**d**) *Gastrochaenolites* isp. and *Entobia* isp. preserved as casts on a shell, Rio Negro Formation, Miocene-Pliocene, Argentina

of *Entobia*. Therefore, the ichnospecies *Entobia devonica* is an early representative of this ichnogenus, which reached a peak in ichnospecific diversity as a result of the MMR.

9.2.2.2 Mollusks

Mollusks are well suited for the exploitation of hard substrates, producing both dwelling and grazing structures. The focus here is on bioerosion structures attributed to gastropods and bivalves, although chitons are also known to produce grazing raspings and can collectively be a major source of bioerosion (Bromley et al. 1990; Radley 2010).

Gastropods

Gastropods typically produced predatory borings, such as *Oichnus* (Wisshak et al. 2015) and radulation marks, primarily assigned to *Radulichnus* (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004; Wilson 2007). In addition, they may produce structures that are intermediate between borings and surface scars, representing fixation/anchoring traces or Fixichnia (de Gibert et al. 2004), as illustrated by the ichnogenus *Renichnus*. Gastropods also produce a wide variety of etched and rasped pits and scars on shells, but such marks have not yet received ichnotaxonomic treatment (Bromley 2004; Walker 2007). An extensive analysis of predatory gastropods and their associated structures, most of them still unnamed, is provided by Walker (2007).

Oichnus comprises circular or subcircular borings generated during predation by gastropods (but also octopods; Bromley 1981, 1993; Nielsen and Nielsen 2001; Taylor and Wilson 2003; Wilson 2007; Wisshak et al. 2015). This ichnotaxon is known from the Ediacaran to Recent (Hua et al. 2003; Taylor and Wilson 2003), occurring in both shallow- and deep-marine settings (Bromley 2005).

Radulichnus consists of a series of parallel sets of straight to curving scrape marks produced by the radula of gastropods and chitons (Taylor and Wilson 2003). This ichnogenus is known in shallow-marine settings since the Jurassic (Voigt 1977; Kase et al. 1998).

Renichnus consists of etchings comprising a series of kidney-shaped depressions produced by vermetid gastropods spiraling at an angle to the substrate surface (Mayoral 1987a). It is known in shallow-marine settings from the Pliocene to the Recent (Mayoral 1987a).

Bivalves

As well as being major bioturbators during the MMR, bivalves were also important bioeroders. They produced dwelling structures not only in hardgrounds but also in woodgrounds, as recorded by the ichnogenera *Gastrochaenolites* and *Teredolites*, respectively.

Gastrochaenolites comprises clavate or drop-like trace fossils that are circular to heart-shaped in cross-section, with a narrowed, neck-like upper part in most ichnospecies (Kelly and Bromley 1984; Figs. 9.6d, 9.12a, d). It is interpreted as a dwelling structure produced by suspension-feeding bivalves that commonly bore into rockgrounds, hardgrounds, and corals of shallow-marine environments (especially intertidal to shallow subtidal environments), although they also can occur in firm substrates (Kelly and Bromley 1984; Carmona et al. 2006, 2008). This ichnogenus has been recorded in deposits ranging from the Ordovician to Recent (Pemberton and Frey 1985; Ekdale and Bromley 2001b), but the earliest example confidently attributed to bivalves is from the late Carboniferous (Wilson and Palmer 1998; Taylor and Wilson 2003).

Teredolites consists of straight to clavate-shaped, gregarious, closely spaced borings in wood (Kelly and Bromley 1984; Figs. 9.6i and 9.12c). It is a dwelling structure produced by wood-boring bivalves (Kelly 1988). This ichnogenus ranges from the Jurassic to Recent (Villegas-Martín et al. 2012) and has been described from marginal-marine coal seams and woodgrounds, as well as from transported logs in shallow- and deep-marine environments (Bromley et al. 1984; Buatois and Mángano 1992; Savrda and King 1993).

In addition, the ichnogenus *Petroxestes*, a boring with elongate outline and rounded base, known from the Ordovician (Wilson and Palmer 1988) and the Silurian (Tapanila and Cooper 2002), has been attributed to mytilids. This ichnogenus represents an early example of bivalve bioerosion, significantly predating the MMR and having been recorded also in the Cretaceous (Jagt et al. 2009) and Miocene (Pickerill et al. 2001). The ichnospecies *Centrichnus eccentricus*, an Upper Cretaceous to Recent ichnotaxon, consists of etching scars produced by anomiid bivalves (Bromley 1999).

9.2.2.3 Echinoids

Echinoids also produce bioerosion structures, known from Mesozoic and Cenozoic shells and hardgrounds. Most of these structures consist of a pattern of five radiating grooves that are interpreted as tooth scratches produced by regular echinoids (Bromley 1975).

Gnathichnus is a penta-radiate scrape mark produced by regular echinoids (Bromley 1975, 2004; Taylor and Wilson 2003; Wilson 2007). *Gnathichnus* likely reflects development of the jaw apparatus of regular echinoids (Bromley 1975). It is known from the Triassic to Recent (Bromley 1975; Michalík 1977), occurring in both shallow- and deep-marine settings (Bromley 2005).

Circolites comprises hemispherical pits that have been attributed to regular echinoids (Mikuláš 1992b; Bromley 2004). This ichnogenus ranges from the Jurassic to Recent, occurring in shallow-marine settings (de Gibert et al. 1998a; Bromley 2004).

Ericichnus consists of series of deep and sinuous grooves and has been attributed to regular echinoids (Santos et al. 2015). It is known from a rocky shoreline of the Miocene (Santos et al. 2015).

9.2.2.4 Worms

Several bioerosion structures have been assigned to the activity of "worms," especially borings attributed to polychaetes and sipunculids (Tapanila and Hutchings 2012). They include a wide variety of morphologies from simple borings to branching and spiraled structures. Some of these structures are known since the Paleozoic (e.g., *Caulostrepsis*, *Palaeosabella*, *Trypanites*), whereas others appear to be a product of the MMR (e.g., *Maeandropolydora*) and others appear even later (e.g., *Helicotaphrichnus*). A number of ichnotaxa (e.g., *Lapispecus, Ramosulcichnus*) may be associated with the MMR, but they are only known from their type localities, precluding further inferences; these structures are not discussed here. In addition, the status of some worm ichnotaxa is a matter of debate (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004; Wilson 2007). Finally, some of the ichnotaxa (e.g., *Caulosptrepsis*, *Talpina*) that have their first occurrence in the Paleozoic but only achieve common occurrence from the Mesozoic onward (Bromley 2004; Wilson 2007).

Trypanites consists of unbranched, cylindrical borings (Mägdefrau 1932). Examples from the Ordovician contain scolecodonts within, suggesting that the producers were polychaetes (Kobluk and Nemcsok 1982). Also, short and fat *Trypanites* are known to be made today by sipunculids (Bromley 1978). *Trypanites* occurs since the Cambrian, typically in shallow-marine environments (Taylor and Wilson 2003).

Maeandropolydora consists of sinuous to contorted galleries, having two or more apertures (Voigt 1965; Bromley and D'Alessandro 1983; Taylor and Wilson 2003) and was probably produced by spionid polychaetes (Santos et al. 2003a). It is known since the Cretaceous (Taylor and Wilson 2003), occurring in both shallow- and deep-marine settings (Bromley 2005).

Caulostrepsis consists of a vertical gallery slightly bent to a U-shaped tube, constituting an overall pouch- or ear-shaped structure, which can be even more complex by the development of lobes (Bromley and D'Alessandro 1983). It has been attributed to the activity of spionid (polydorid) polychaetes and is known since the Devonian (Taylor and Wilson 2003), occurring in both shallow- and deep-marine settings (Bromley 2005).

Palaeosabella comprises long, tubular borings that expand distally (Bromley 2004). This structure is attributed to sipunculids, which make similar bioerosion structures today (Rice 1969). *Palaeosabella* has been regarded as a junior synonym of *Clionoides* (Furlong and McRoberts 2014). However, *Palaeosabella* is mostly an unbranched boring, whereas *Clionoides* is branched, forming complex three-dimensional networks (Wilson 2007). This ichnotaxon is known since the Ordovician (Bromley 2004), occurring in both shallow- and deep-marine settings (Bromley 2005).

Talpina consists of curved and branching tunnels produced by phoronid pseudocolonies (Voigt 1972, 1978). It ranges from the Devonian to Recent (Rodrigues and Gutschick 1970), occurring in both shallow- and deep-marine settings (Bromley 2005).

Helicotaphrichnus is a helicoidal boring made in the columella of gastropod shells occupied by hermit crabs (Kern et al. 1974). This ichnogenus is attributed to spionid worms living in a commensal relationship with hermit crabs (Walker 1992). It occurs in shallow-marine settings and ranges from the Eocene to the Recent (Walker 1992).

Spirichnus is a cylindrical spiral boring that branches at regular intervals (Fürsich et al. 1994). Although attributed to worms (Bromley 2004), no further details regarding its affinities are known. It has only been recorded in Jurassic shallow-marine settings (Fürsich et al. 1994; Bertling and Insalaco 1998).

Cunctichnus is a cylindrical boring with tapering side branches that occurs on shells (Fürsich et al. 1994; Donovan et al. 2015). It has been attributed to sipunculids (Fürsich et al. 1994). *Cunctichnus* is present in shallow-marine settings and ranges from the Jurassic to the Cretaceous (Donovan et al. 2015). However, doubts persist regarding its taxonomic validity, and some authors have argued in favor of synonymization with *Vermiforichnus*, which is known since the Devonian (Taylor and Wilson 2003).

9.2.2.5 Bryozoans

Bryozoans are important bioeroders, although taxonomic issues (e.g., the fact that some bryozoan biotaxa are erected based on their borings) complicate further evaluation of their significance as players during the MMR (Bromley 2004; Wilson 2007). *Finichnus* (a senior synonym of *Leptichnus*; Taylor et al. 2013), arguably the most widespread bryozoan ichnotaxon linked to the MMR, comprises surficial etchings produced by cheilostome bryozoans (Taylor et al. 1999; Rosso 2008). It ranges from the Cretaceous to Recent. *Stellichnus* and *Pennatichnus* have been attributed to ctenostome bryozoans, but these forms have only been reported from the Pliocene (Mayoral 1987b, 1988; Mayoral and Reguant 1995). *Ropalonaria*, ramifying tunnels that may have been produced by ctenostome bryozoans, is known since the Ordovician, although some of its ichnospecies may have originated during the late Mesozoic (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004).

9.2.2.6 Crustaceans

Crustaceans, major bioturbators of the MMR, are also important bioeroders. Bioerosion structures are produced by acrothoracican and ascothoracican cirripeds, brachyuran crabs, stomatopods, and thalassinideans (Seilacher 1969; Radwański 1977; Walker 1992; Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004). Verrucid cirripeds produce etching scars (Bromley and Martinell 1991). These are represented by the ichnospecies *Centrichnus concentricus*, which is known from the Miocene to Recent (Radwański 1977; Bromley and Martinell 1991). *Rogerella*, a pouch-shaped boring produced by acrothoracican barnacles, is known from the Devonian, but is definitely more abundant since the Mesozoic (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004). Ascothoracican borings are known since the Cretaceous, but have not received proper ichnotaxonomic treatment (Bromley 2004). Shell chipping and peeling are commonly performed by decapod crustaceans, particularly brachyuran crabs (Alexander and Dietl 2003). Although chipping and peeling have been known to occur prior to the MMR, these activities are particularly common since the late Mesozoic and are an innovation of the MMR (Huntley and Kowalewski 2007). Some of the resulting structures have been recently included in the new ichnogenus *Caedichnus* (Stafford et al. 2015). Brachyuran crabs experienced a rapid diversification during the Late Jurassic (Klompmaker et al. 2013). Branching borings in corals produced by thalassinideans are common, but have not received ichnotaxonomic treatment yet (Bromley 2004). *Belichnus*, representing predatory holes produced by blows struck by stomatopods, is known since the Oligocene (David 1997). However, the finding that similar structures may be produced by sea gulls provides a cautionary note (Cadée and de Wolf 2013)

9.2.2.7 Algae

Endolithic, photoautotrophic organisms, such as algae, are responsible for a wide variety of microbioerosion ichnotaxa, but most of them are known since the Paleozoic (Bromley 2004; Glaub and Vogel 2004; Wisshak 2012). One exception is *Eurygonum*, interpreted as produced by chlorophytes, which is known since the Triassic (Wisshak et al 2005).

9.2.2.8 Fungi

A few microbioerosion ichnotaxa have been attributed to fungi. In particular, the ichnogenera *Saccomorpha* and *Orthogonum* seem to be relatively abundant (Schmidt 1992; Wisshak 2012). Although the possibility of an algal producer cannot be disregarded for *Saccomorpha* (Glaub and Vogel 2004), recent detailed analysis reinforces the idea of a fungal origin (Golubic et al. 2014). In any case, the earliest representatives of these ichnogenera are Ordovician, whereas some ichnospecies (e.g., *S. sphaerula*) seem to have originated in the Cenozoic (Wisshak 2012).

9.2.2.9 Foraminifera

Foraminifera are known to produce borings of various morphologies, such as horseshoe-shapes or rosettes (Bromley 2004; Bromley et al. 2007). Rosetted and fan-shaped microbioerosion structures have been included in the Ichnofamily Dendrinidae by Bromley et al. (2007). Of these, the ichnogenus *Semidendrina* has been attributed to foraminifera and ranges in age from the Carboniferous to the

Recent (Bromley et al. 2007). However, this ichnogenus is most likely a junior synonym of *Nododendrina* (M. Wisshak, written communication 2015). At present, any connection between bioeroding foraminiferans and the MMR is unclear.

9.3 Ichnofaunal Composition, Infaunalization, and Tiering Structure: Patterns Developed During the Mesozoic Marine Revolution

The MMR strongly shaped the nature of animal–substrate interactions in the post-Paleozoic world. Because trace fossils provide direct evidence of colonization of infaunal ecospace, they represent useful tools to evaluate the degree of infaunalization and complexity of tiering structure manifested during the MMR. In this regard, comparing tiering structure and ichnoguilds through the Mesozoic and Cenozoic may help to answer the question of whether or not the exploitation of deep infaunal ecospace that characterizes the MMR was an abrupt or a protracted event (Thayer 1983; Bambach 1983). Within the bioturbated zone of soft sediments, two different intervals are distinguished. The mixed layer occurs just beneath the sediment surface and has a homogeneous appearance, whereas distinct burrows (trace fossils) are formed within the transitional layer that lies below (Berger et al. 1979). Benthic faunas from marginal-marine, brackish-water environments are affected by a number of stress factors (e.g., dilution of normal-marine salinities) and, therefore, their ichnologic record may reflect departures from that of the archetypal, fully marine ichnofaunas (Pemberton and Wightman 1992; MacEachern and Pemberton 1994; MacEachern et al. 2007; Buatois and Mángano 2011) and will be addressed elsewhere (see Sect. 9.5). In this section, the focus is on innovations involving trace-making organisms and trace fossils that took place in open, shallow- and normal-marine environments.

The timing of the MMR is a controversial issue. Central to this evolutionary breakthrough is the replacement of brachiopod-dominated faunas to those dominated by mollusks, which involved a change from primarily sedentary, epifaunal suspension feeding to mobile suspension feeding and deposit feeding, with increased predation (Wagner et al. 2006; Leighton et al. 2013). Certainly, this faunal turnover started by the late Paleozoic when many groups of bivalves and gastropods, which were previously dominant in nearshore settings, moved seaward to become part of mixed brachiopod-mollusk communities in offshore environments (Sepkoski and Miller 1985; Jablonski and Bottjer 1990; Olszewski and Patzkowsky 2001). However, other major players in the MMR, such as decapod crustaceans and irregular echinoids, became dominant or appeared for the first time during the Jurassic. From the perspective of bioerosion structures, an increase in diversity for macroborings occurred by the Devonian (Wilson 2007). Some bioerosion ichnotaxa that appeared for the first time by the middle Paleozoic, such as *Rogerella*, *Caulostrepsis,* and *Talpina*, became dominant later in the Phanerozoic (Bromley 2004; Wilson

2007). Signor and Brett (1984) noted that a rapid radiation of durophagous predators also took place during the Devonian, and they considered this diversification event as a precursor of the MMR. However, the middle Paleozoic diversification of bioeroders seems to be a distinct episode, whose link with the subsequent MMR is tenuous at best.

9.3.1 The Triassic: Setting the Stage for the Mesozoic Marine Revolution

The Triassic seems to represent a pivotal point in the ecology of shallow-marine environments, being bracketed by two major mass extinctions. Unsurprisingly, ichnologic information from the Triassic is biased toward the aftermath of the end-Permian mass extinction and subsequent marine fauna recovery (see Chap. 7). To a lesser extent, other ichnologic studies have focused on the end-Triassic mass extinction (see Chap. 8). Ichnofaunas from the lowermost Triassic, reflecting benthic conditions during the immediate post-extinction aftermath, are typically monospecific and consist of trace-fossil specimens that are smaller than normal and attributed to opportunistic tracemaker organisms. During the rest of the Early Triassic, there is evidence of recovery, as suggested by an increase in ichnodiversity, burrow size, and depth of bioturbation (Twitchett and Barras 2004; see Chap. 7).

From an ichnologic perspective, some of the most thoroughly studied Middle to Upper Triassic units are the Muschelkalk and Keuper of Europe (e.g., Pérez-López 1997; Knaust 1998, 2002, 2007, 2008; Knaust and Costamagna 2012; Chrząstek 2013). These studies offer a glimpse of animal–substrate interactions between the two mass extinction events and, therefore, need to be treated in detail. In particular, a comprehensive study by Knaust (2007) provided detailed documentation of the ichnology of Muschelkalk carbonates in Germany. Forty ichnospecies (and 24 ichnogenera) were identified and described, pointing to a high-diversity community. This is particularly remarkable given the restricted environmental conditions that controlled deposition of the Muschelkalk carbonates. Both bioturbation and bioerosion structures are present. The former are dominated by trace fossils produced by decapod crustaceans (e.g., *Pholeus*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Thalassinoides*), worm-like organisms (possibly *Balanoglossites*, *Arachnostega*, and *Zoophycos*), actinarians (*Bergaueria*), and bivalves (*Lockeia*, *Protovirgularia*), among other groups. The presence of trace fossils interpreted as being produced by meiobenthos also was indicated (*Cochlichnus*, *Helminthopsis*, *Helminthoidichnites*). Among the bioerosion structures (*Caulostrepsis*, *Maeandropolydora*, *Palaeosabella*, *Trypanites*), polychaetes or sipunculans are the most likely tracemakers, although bivalve borings (*Gastrochaenolites*) also have been recognized.

Tiering structure remained quite simple, but it is unclear if this was due to evolutionary or environmental constraints. A remarkably similar ichnofauna to that of the Muschelkalk in Germany has been recently documented for coeval strata in Poland, which is thought to have been deposited in a shallow, storm-affected carbonate ramp setting that is located within the same basin, but closer to the gateway to the Tethys Ocean (Chrząstek 2013). The Polish ichnofauna consists of *Archaeonassa*, *Balanoglossites*, *Gastrochaenolites*, *Lockeia*, *Palaeophycus, Planolites*, *Protovirgularia*, *Rhizocorallium, Skolithos*, *Thalassinoides*, and *Trypanites* (Chrząstek 2013). A similar ichnofauna to those of Germany and Poland, albeit with lower diversities, also has been recorded from Middle to Upper Triassic carbonates of Sardinia (Knaust and Costamagna 2012).

With respect to Triassic shallow-marine clastics, a detailed study on the ichnology of a transgressive–regressive deltaic succession of the Bravaisberget Formation in Svalbard (Mørk and Bromley 2008) provided valuable information to compare with the emerging picture based on carbonate ichnology. The tiering structure consists essentially of three levels: a shallow tier dominated by *Taenidium* and *Rhizocorallium*, a middle tier consisting of *Thalassinoides*, and a deeper tier represented by *Chondrites*, which may occur as reburrowing of *Thalassinoides* fills; *Polykladichnus* seems to have been associated with a late colonization event. Overall ichnodiversity levels are moderate, and the tiering structure is quite simple. As in the case of the Muschelkalk, discriminating between environmental constraints (e.g., salinity dilution, oxygen fluctuations) and evolutionary factors is not straightforward. The fact that the tiers are interpreted as representing a succession of community replacements caused by an unstable environmental regime, rather than a single stable community (Mørk and Bromley 2008), supports the former possibility.

Despite some caveats, the emerging picture for the end-Triassic mass extinction is also one of decreasing ichnodiversity, degree of bioturbation, and burrow size (see Chap. 8). For example, the lower "Pre-*Planorbis* Beds" (uppermost Triassic) of the Blue Lias Formation record low ichnotaxonomic diversity, low bioturbation intensity, small burrow diameters, and an absence of deep-tier bioturbation, reflecting the impact of the end-Triassic mass extinction (Barras and Twitchett 2007).

With regard to bioerosion, the bioeroders typical of modern reefs, such as endolithic bivalves or clionaid sponges, were uncommon to absent prior to the Late Triassic (Bertling 1999). By the Late Triassic, boring bivalves exhibited increased size and abundance, accompanied by an increased importance of sponges (Perry and Bertling 2000; Tapanila and Hutchings 2012). Although the Triassic witnessed the appearance of some ichnotaxa (e.g., *Gnathichnus*) that were destined to become dominant later, these ichnotaxa were relatively uncommon prior to the onset of the MMR (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Bromley 2004).

Regarding microborings, although earlier studies suggested an early Mesozoic radiation (Glaub and Vogel 2004), the subsequent finding of a superbly preserved Carboniferous ichnocoenosis indicates that Carboniferous microendolith communities were "modern" in aspect (Wisshak et al. 2006). In fact, Mesozoic ichnodiversity levels are similar to those of the Carboniferous (Wisshak et al. 2006).

Many Paleozoic predators became extinct by the end of the Permian, with few groups surviving; however, some predators rebounded rapidly after the end-Permian mass extinction (Walker and Brett 2002). According to these authors, during the Middle Triassic, a number of new predator guilds appeared; these include lobsters having appendages indicative of durophagy. However, an increase in diversity of predator decapods took place later in the Late Cretaceous (Schweitzer and Feldmann 2010). Also, some durophagous marine reptiles, boney fish, and sharks may have been active predators since the Triassic (Cuny and Benton 1999; Neenan et al. 2013; Brachaniec et al. 2015). In contrast, the sparse record of shell boreholes may indicate that drilling predation was limited during the Triassic (Kowalewski et al. 1998; Walker and Brett 2002). Also, the overall frequency of shell repair is quite low during the Triassic (Vermeij et al. 1981; Walker and Brett 2002; Alexander and Dietl 2003).

Overall, sparse ichnologic information from the Triassic precludes generalizations. However, data from the Muschelkalk seem to suggest that by the Middle Triassic, full recovery from the end-Permian mass extinction had taken place in equatorial carbonate settings, particularly with respect to diversity levels (Knaust 2007), although refugia may have been present (Wetzel et al. 2007). Nonetheless, Triassic ichnofaunas show limited infaunalization and relatively simple tiering structure, particularly in clastic environments (e.g., Mørk and Bromley 2008). Accordingly, the evidence from bioturbation and macrobioerosion structures reviewed here seem to suggest that the Triassic is better regarded as a prelude to the MMR, rather than part of this evolutionary breakthrough. However, ichnologic information indicates that a few of the key players of this major evolutionary event, particularly decapod crustaceans, were already dominant in carbonate settings by the Middle to Late Triassic.

9.3.2 The Jurassic: Onset of the Mesozoic Marine Revolution

Recovery from the end-Triassic mass extinction is characterized by a gradual increase in burrow size and the reappearance of deep-tier trace fossils, suggesting the return to “normal” environmental conditions by the end of the Hettangian (see Chap. 8; Barras and Twitchett 2007). In fact, an 8 % increase in global ichnodiversity has been recorded in marine environments for the Early Jurassic (see Chap. 16). The Lower to Middle Jurassic Plover Formation of the northwest Australia shelf is a critical stratigraphic unit for assessing the degree of infaunalization and tiering complexity at the onset of the MMR because it contains intensely bioturbated marine deposits (Buatois et al. 2013; Burns et al. 2013). In particular, shelf, offshore, and shoreface deposits of Sinemurian to Aalenian age reveal quite complex tiering patterns along the depositional profile (Fig. 9.13). For example, upper-offshore mudstones of this unit are typically intensely bioturbated (BI 5–6), with some intervals locally showing moderate levels of reworking (BI 3–4). The upper-offshore ichnofauna consists of very shallow-tier *Planolites montanus,* shallow-tier *Asterosoma* isp., mid-tier *Thalassinoides* isp., *Palaeophycus tubularis*, *P. heberti*, *Cylindrichnus concentricus*, *Rosselia socialis*, *Schaubcylindrichnus*

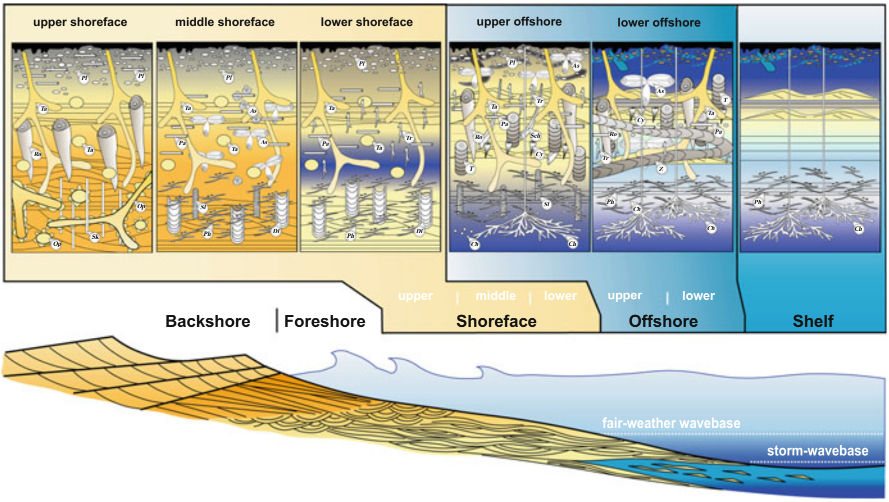


Fig. 9.13 Tiering structure along the depositional profile of a Lower to Middle Jurassic wave-dominated shallow-marine platform, Plover Formation of the northwest Australia shelf

coronus, Teichichnus rectus, and *Siphonichnus eccacensis*, and deep-tier *Chondrites* isp. and *Phycosiphon incertum* (Fig. 9.14a–f). From an ichnoguild perspective, seven are recognized: the *Planolites* ichnoguild (vagile, deposit-feeding, very shallow tier), the *Asterosoma* ichnoguild (semi-vagile, deposit-feeding, shallow tier), the *Cylindrichnus-Rosselia* ichnoguild (semi-vagile, deposit- to detritus-feeding, mid-tier), the *Palaeophycus-Schaubcylindrichnus* ichnoguild (vagile, suspension- to deposit-feeding, mid-tier), the *Teichichnus* ichnoguild (vagile, deposit-feeding, mid-tier), the *Siphonichnus* ichnoguild (permanent, suspension-feeding, mid-tier), and the *Phycosiphon-Chondrites* ichnoguild (vagile, deposit-feeding to chemosymbiont, deep-tier).

The Sinemurian-Toarcian Neill Klinter Formation of Greenland is another important unit to evaluate the onset of the MMR. Although no tiering analysis is available from this unit, ichnologic studies by Dam (1990a, b) showed relatively high-diversity assemblages in upper-offshore deposits, including dwelling (*Arenicolites* isp., *Diplocraterion parallelum, Ophiomorpha nodosa, Palaeophycus* isp., *Thalassinoides* isp.), locomotion (*Cruziana* isp., *Curvolithus simplex, Gyrochorte comosa*), and feeding (*Planolites beverleyensis, Rhizocorallium irregulare, Taenidium serpentinum*) structures. Similar ichnofaunas are known in shallow-marine storm-affected deposits of the Lower to Middle Jurassic Bardas Blancas Formation of Argentina (Bressan and Palma 2009).

Middle Jurassic shallow-marine ichnofaunas are particularly abundant in India, where a number of studies have been made (e.g., Chiplonkar and Badve 1970; Chiplonkar and Ghare 1975; Badve and Ghare 1978; Badve 1987; Fürsich 1998; Sudan et al. 2000; Patel et al. 2008, 2014; Desai et al. 2008; Srivastava et al. 2010;

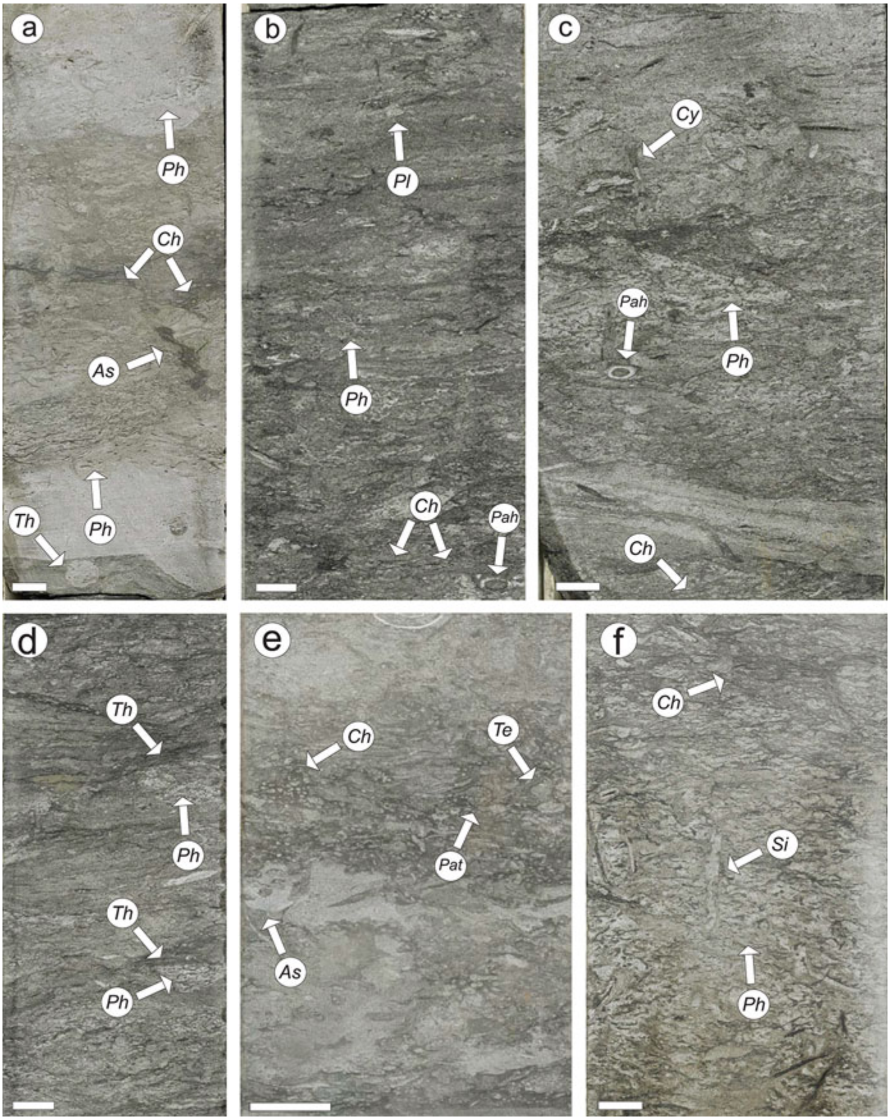


Fig. 9.14 Ichnofaunas from upper-offshore deposits of the Lower to Middle Jurassic Plover Formation of the northwest Australia shelf. (**a**) Shallow-tier *Asterosoma* isp. (*As*), mid-tier *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*), and deep-tier *Chondrites* isp. (*Ch*) and *Phycosiphon incertum (Ph)*; (**b**) very shallow-tier *Planolites montanus* (*Pl*)*,* mid-tier *Palaeophycus heberti* (*Pah*), and deep-tier *Chondrites* isp. (*Ch*) and *Phycosiphon incertum (Ph)*; (**c**) mid-tier *Palaeophycus heberti* (*Pah*) and *Cylindrichnus concentricus (Cy*), and deep-tier *Chondrites* isp. (*Ch*) and *Phycosiphon incertum (Ph)*; (**d**) mid-tier *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*) reworked by deep-tier *Phycosiphon incertum (Ph)*; (**e**) Shallow-tier *Asterosoma* isp. (*As*), mid-tier *Palaeophycus heberti* (*Pah*) and *Teichichnus rectus*, and deep-tier *Chondrites* isp.; (**f**) mid-tier *Siphonichnus eccacensis* (*Si*), and deep-tier *Chondrites* isp. (*Ch*) and *Phycosiphon incertum (Ph)*. All scale bars are 1 cm

Joseph et al 2012; Gurav et al. 2014). With the exception of Desai et al. (2008), these studies have focused on the broader characteristics of these ichnofaunas, rather than tiering analysis. In any case, the available ichnologic information indicates high diversity levels in fully marine environments, suggesting a continuation of the trends displayed in the Early Jurassic. High-diversity levels also have been noted for the Middle Jurassic Vardekløft Formation of Greenland (Heinberg and Birkelund 1984; Fig. 9.15a–d). Relatively diverse ichnofaunas are also known from the deltaic deposits of the Middle Jurassic Lajas Formation of Argentina (McIlroy 2007 and Fig. 9.16a–d herein). In particular, offshore deposits were intensely bioturbated, but lack of lithologic contrast prevented recognition of discrete trace fossils (McIlroy 2007). These deposits pass upward into delta-front deposits containing various ichnotaxa. The ichnogenus *Haentzschelinia* (Fig. 9.16c) is present in some of these deposits together with crustacean burrows (*Ophiomorpha*, *Thalassinoides*), among other forms, such as *Asteriacites* (Fig. 9.16a), *Phycosiphon* (Fig. 9.16b), and *Rhizocorallium* (Fig. 9.16d) (McIlroy 2007; Canale et al. 2015). Although the unit has been interpreted as having been deposited in a tide-dominated delta (McIlroy 2007), recent observations indicate a greater fluvial dominance than previously recognized (Canale et al. 2015).

Another Middle Jurassic unit interpreted as having formed in a tide-dominated delta is the Ile Formation of offshore Norway (McIlroy 2004). Moderate ichnodiver-

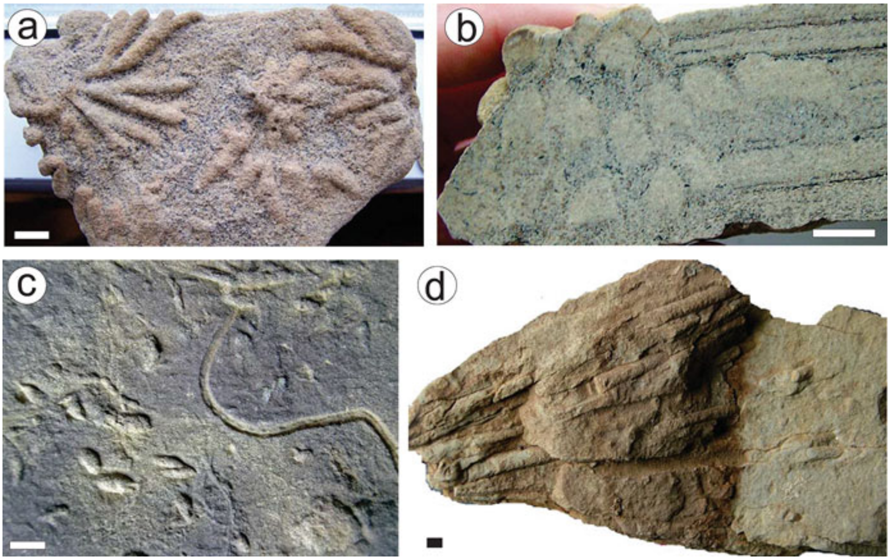


Fig. 9.15 Characteristic trace fossils from Lower to Middle Jurassic shallow-marine deposits of Greenland. (**a**) *Haentzschelinia ottoi* in bedding-plane view, unknown unit; (**b**) *Haentzschelinia ottoi* in cross-section view, unknown unit; (**c**) *Gyrochorte comosa* and *Lockeia amygdaloides*, Middle Jurassic, Vardekløft Formation, Jameson Land; (**d**) *Phoebichnus trochoides*, Lower Jurassic, Neill Klinter Formation, Jameson Land. All scale bars are 1 cm

Fig. 9.16 Characteristic trace fossils from the Middle Jurassic Lajas Formation of Argentina. (**a**) *Asteriacites lumbricalis* in cross section view, scale bar is 1 cm; (**b**) *Phycosiphon incertum* in cross-section view, scale bar is 1 cm; (**c**) *Haentzschelinia ottoi* in bedding-plane view; (**d**) *Rhizocorallium* isp. in bedding-plane view

sity was recorded in the associated offshore facies, where *Phycosiphon*, *Phoebichnus*, *Schaubcylindrichnus*, *Palaeophycus,* and *Thalassinoides* are present. *Gyrochorte*, otherwise a common ichnogenus in the Jurassic, is only abundant in the mouth-bar facies, whereas archetypal crustacean burrows, such as *Thalassinoides* and *Ophiomorpha,* occur in a wider spectrum of subenvironments (McIlroy 2004).

Available information indicates that by the Early to Middle Jurassic, shallow-marine settings were host to diverse infaunal communities displaying complex tiering patterns. Tiering and ichnoguild analysis reveals colonization of shallow-, mid-, and deep-tiers by detritus, deposit and suspension feeders, as well as predators and chemosymbionts. However, ichnodiversity per tier may be regarded as moderate. Intensity of bioturbation commonly was conducive to total reworking of fine-grained sediments, indicating the presence of efficient bioturbators.

The trends established during the Early to Middle Jurassic continued into the Late Jurassic. Burrowing innovations are reflected by the appearance of crab burrows, as recorded by the earliest occurrences of *Psilonichnus* (Fürsich 1981) and *Macanopsis* (Neto de Carvalho et al. 2010) in coastal deposits of Portugal. From an ichnofacies perspective, this represents the appearance of the *Psilonichnus* Ichnofacies, which characterizes transitional settings, typically backshore areas, washover fans, coastal dunes, and supratidal flats (Frey and Pemberton 1987; Curran and White 1991; Buatois and Mángano 2011).

Upper Jurassic fully marine ichnofaunas have been documented in detail from the North Sea (Fig. 9.17a–g). Typical elements of these Upper Jurassic deposits are *Ophiomorpha*, *Skolithos*, *Diplocraterion* (Fig. 9.17g), *Cylindrichnus*, *Schaubcylindrichnus*, *Siphonichnus*, *Palaeophycus*, *Planolites*, *Asterosoma* (Fig. 9.17a–b), *Phoebichnus* (Fig. 9.17c–e), *Teichichnus* (Fig. 9.17f), *Phycosiphon,* and *Chondrites* (Martin and Pollard 1996; Goldring et al. 1991, 2005; Baniak et al. 2014). In particular, the Fulmar Formation of England contains intensely bioturbated ichnofabrics that have been the focus of a number of studies (Taylor and Gawthorpe 1993; Martin and Pollard 1996; Goldring et al. 1991, 2005). Pervasively bioturbated Upper Jurassic shallow-marine deposits also have been recently described from the Ula Formation of Norway (Baniak et al. 2014). In particular, the offshore deposits of the Fulmar and Ula formations are remarkably similar to those described from Lower Jurassic counterparts. For example, the ichnotaxonomic composition of the upper-offshore deposits of the Ula Formation is almost identical to that of the upper-offshore deposits of the Lower to Middle Jurassic Plover Formation previously described. Although no information on tiering structure has been provided for the Ula Formation, the available illustrations seem to indicate a four-tier structure resembling that of the Plover Formation. A similar picture emerges from deposits in the Fulmar Formation (e.g., Martin and Pollard 1996). Ichnologic comparison of similar offshore deposits through the Jurassic indicates that the main evolutionary innovations in these fully marine siliciclastic settings took place in the Early Jurassic and persisted for the remainder of the period and, as will be described, continued into the Cretaceous.

Jurassic nearshore sands were host to mid- to deep-tier infaunal communities (e.g., Heinberg and Birkelund 1984; Dam 1990b; Buatois et al. 2013; Burns et al. 2013; Baniak et al. 2014). Crustacean burrows, such as *Ophiomorpha*, become dominant particularly in middle- to upper-shoreface settings. In fact, *Ophiomorpha* replaced *Skolithos* as the dominant component of the *Skolithos* ichnofacies in post-Paleozoic strata (Droser and Bottjer 1993). The Sinemurian-Toarcian Neill Klinter Formation of East Greenland contains extensive *Ophiomorpha* systems in strongly storm-affected lower-shoreface deposits (Dam 1990b). This occurrence reveals that an *Ophiomorpha* ichnoguild was already present in high-energy nearshore settings by the Early Jurassic, revealing the establishment of a deep-tier malacostracan guild. In addition to *Ophiomorpha*, relatively high-energy nearshore deposits are characterized by deep-tier *Diplocraterion habichi*, which may reach up to 1 m below the sediment-water interface. Because these structures can occur with high densities, *Diplocraterion habichi* ichnofabrics may be regarded as a post-Paleozoic equivalent of *Skolithos* pipe rock. Under slightly lower-energy conditions, most typically in the lower shoreface, other ichnotaxa, such as *Rosselia*, *Teichichnus*, *Asterosoma,* and *Rhizocorallium*, may become common as well (Ager and Walace 1970; Schlirf 2000, 2003).

Also, by the Jurassic, oxygen-depleted ichnofaunas of modern aspect appear to have become well established (Savrda and Bottjer 1989; Wignall 1991; Etter 1995;

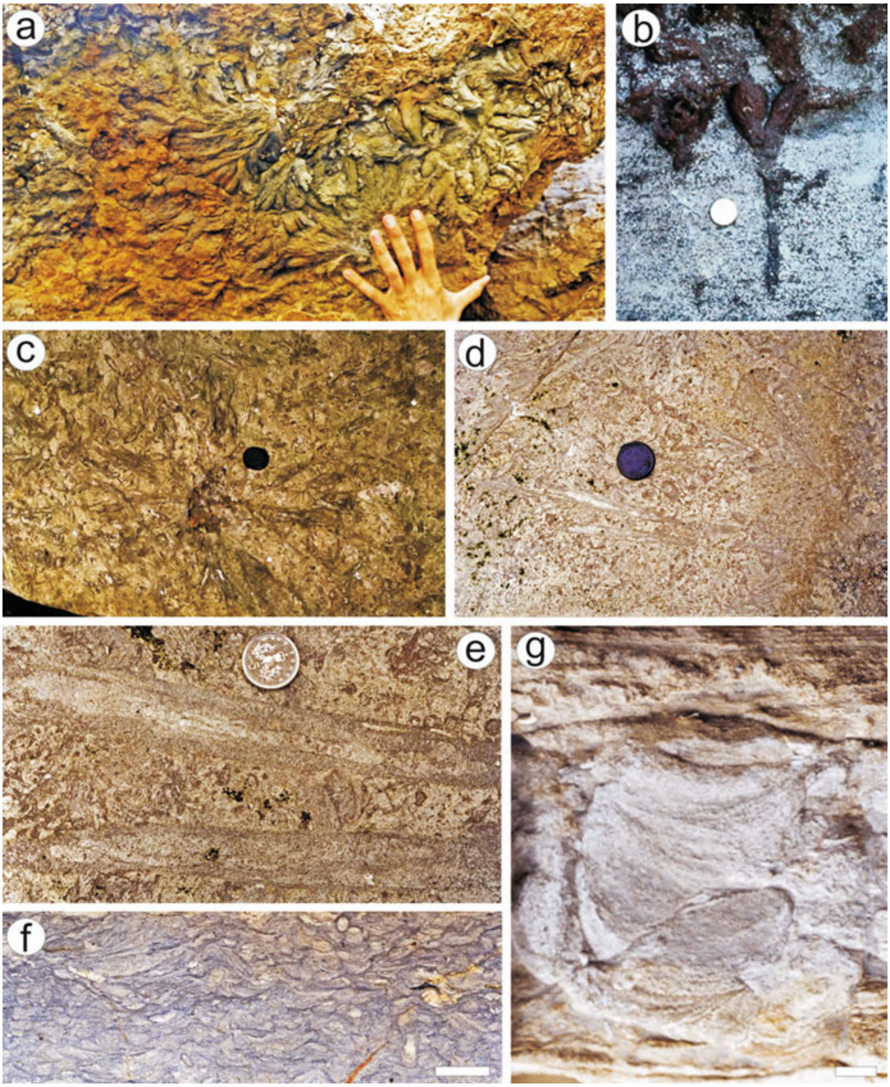


Fig. 9.17 Characteristic trace fossils from Lower to Middle Jurassic shallow-marine deposits of the Yorkshire coast, northeast England**.** (**a**) *Asterosoma* isp. in bedding-plane view, Middle Jurassic, Hundale Sandstone Member, Scarborough Formation, Hundale Point; (**b**) *Asterosoma* isp. in cross-section view, Middle Jurassic, Hundale Sandstone Member, Scarborough Formation, Hundale Point; (**c**) *Phoebichnus trochoides*, Middle Jurassic, Helwath Beck Member, Scarborough Formation, Cloughton Bay; (**d**) *Phoebichnus trochoides*, Lower Jurassic, Blea Wyke Sandstone, Blea Wyke Point; (**e**) Close-up of one of the radial branches shown in (d) to illustrate complex backfilling; (**f**) *Teichichnus rectus*, Middle Jurassic, Gristhorpe Member, Scarborough Formation, Yon's Nab; (**g**) *Diplocraterion parallelum*, Lower Jurassic, Staithes Sandstone Formation, Staithes Harbour. Scale bars are 1 cm, lens cap diameter is 5.5 cm, and coin is 1.8 cm

Monaco 1994, 1995; Komatsu et al. 2001; Olóriz and Rodríguez-Tovar 2002; Uchman et al. 2003; Leonowicz 2012; Šimo and Tomašových 2013). Study of these ichnofaunas has been favored by past occurrences of various anoxic events, which have been particularly widespread in the European portion of the Tethys. Essentially, all the basic aspects of the model of oxygen-related ichnocoenoses (ORI) put forward by Savrda and Bottjer (1986, 1987, 1991) in their seminal papers were in place by the Jurassic. These include a decrease in ichnodiversity, burrow diameter, and burrowing depth in concert with decreasing oxygen content. According to this model, structures emplaced in deep tiers in oxygenated sediments tend to move upward as a response to the upward migration of the redox discontinuity under dysoxic conditions. *Chondrites* generally has been regarded as the trace-fossil form most tolerant to lowered oxygen content of bottom waters, showing diminished size and shallow-tier positions under extreme oxygen depletion (Bromley and Ekdale 1984a).

Shallow-marine carbonate ichnofabrics tend to be dominated by crustacean burrows, such as *Thalassinoides* (Fig. 9.18a–b) and *Ophiomorpha* (Monaco and Garassino 2001; Monaco and Giannetti 2002; Giannetti and Monaco 2004; Goldring et al. 2005; Neto de Carvalho et al. 2010). The latter commonly form nodular limestones, a fabric in which crustacean burrows serve as nuclei for $CaCO_3$ precipitation (Fürsich 1972; Fig. 9.18a). Other ichnogenera common in Jurassic shallow-marine carbonates include *Rhizocorallium* (Fig. 9.18c–d), *Diplocraterion* (Fig. 9.18e), *Phymatoderma* (Fig. 9.18f), *Chondrites* (Fig. 9.18g), and *Cylindrichnus* (Fürsich 1974, 1975; Monaco et al. 1996; Monaco 2002; Goldring et al. 2005; García-Ramos et al. 2011; Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2012). As in the case of clastic settings, trace-fossil assemblages in shallow-marine carbonates tend to reflect an energy gradient along the depositional profile, with dwelling structures commonly, but not exclusively, produced by suspension feeders (e.g., *Diplocraterion*, *Arenicolites*, *Ophiomorpha*) occupying high-energy proximal areas, monospecific suites of *Teichichnus* in protected lagoonal deposits, and a wider variety of ethologies and trophic types (e.g., *Rhizocorallium*, *Chondrites*, *Planolites*, *Thalassinoides, Cylindrichnus*) present in distal, low-energy shelf deposits, as documented in Upper Jurassic carbonates of England and France (Fürsich 1974, 1975).

Similar studies in the Upper Jurassic of Saudi Arabia also show comparable proximal-distal trends in an unrestricted carbonate shelf, displaying high ichnodiversities in distalmost mudstone facies (Goldring et al. 2005). These authors noted the dominance of deep-tier *Cylindrichnus* typically cross-cutting shallow- to mid-tier ichnotaxa, such as *Planolites*, *Rhizocorallium,* and *Chondrites*. In fact, Goldring et al. (2005) noted a close correspondence between ichnofaunas from siliciclastics of the Upper Jurassic Fulmar Formation of the North Sea and carbonates from the roughly coeval Jubaila Formation of Saudi Arabia. The tiering structure of infaunal communities in storm-affected carbonate platforms has been documented in the Jurassic of Italy by Monaco et al. (1996) and Monaco (2002), who identified four tiers: a shallow-tier *Thalassinoides*, a shallow-tier *Planolites-Palaeophycus*, a

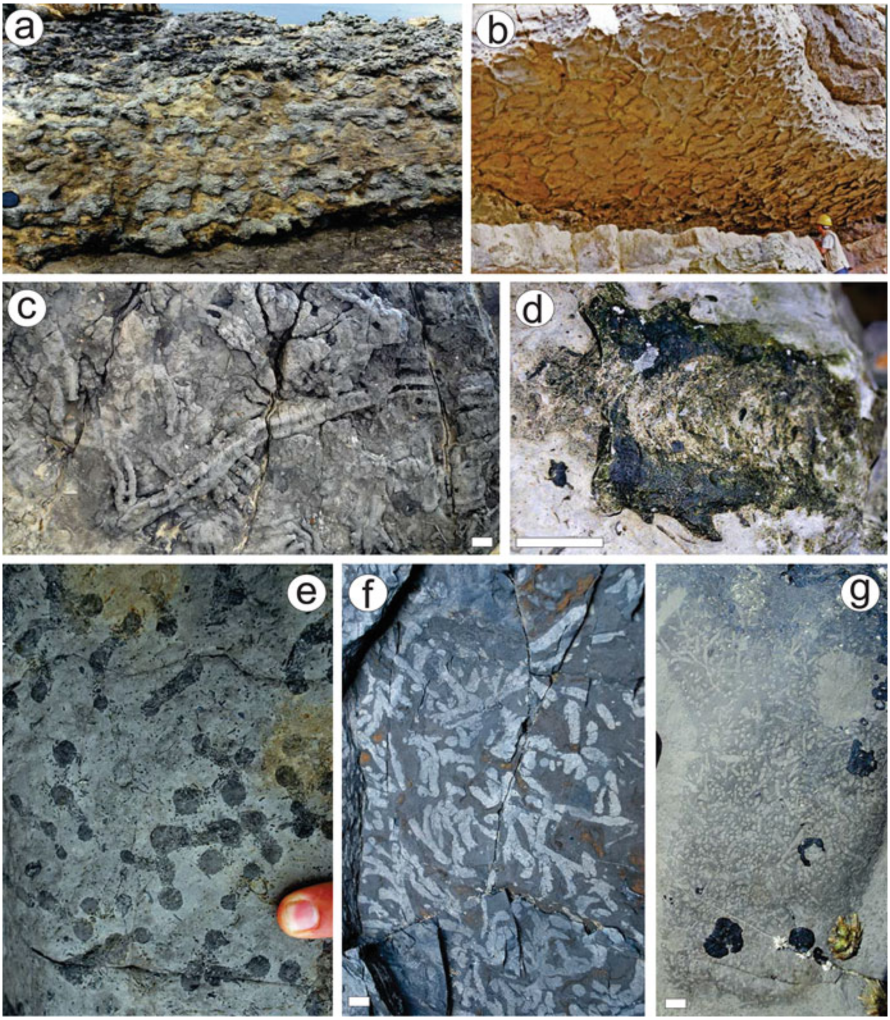


Fig. 9.18 Characteristic trace fossils from Jurassic carbonates. (**a**) *Thalassinoides* nodular limestone, Upper Jurassic, Coralline Oolite Formation, Carr Naze, England, lens cap diameter is 5.5 cm; (**b**) Extensive networks of *Thalassinoides suevicus*, Upper Jurassic, Coralline Oolite Formation, Carr Naze; (**c**) *Rhizocorallium jenense jenense*, Lower Jurassic, Buerres Member, Rodiles Formation, Punta Rodiles, Asturias, northern Spain, scale bar is 1 cm; (**d**) *Rhizocorallium jenense spinosus*, Lower Jurassic, Buerres Member, Rodiles Formation, Punta Rodiles, Asturias, northern Spain, scale bar is 1 cm; (**e**) *Diplocraterion parallelum* in bedding-plane view, Lower Jurassic, Buerres Member, Rodiles Formation, Punta Rodiles, Asturias, northern Spain; (**f**) *Phymatoderma* isp., Lower Jurassic, Rodiles Formation, Vega Beach, Asturias, northern Spain, scale bar is 1 cm; (**g**) *Chondrites* isp., Lower Jurassic, Rodiles Formation, Vega Beach, Asturias, northern Spain, scale bar is 1 cm

Fig. 9.19 *Rhizocorallium* isp. from a Jurassic carbonate firmground, Upper Jurassic, Rodiles Formation, El Puntal Cliffs, San Martín del Mar, Villaviciosa, Asturias, northern Spain. (**a**) General view of the surface with several superbly preserved specimens of *Rhizocorallium* isp., lens cap diameter is 5.5 cm; (**b**) Close-up of a specimen of *Rhizocorallium* isp. showing well-preserved bioglyphs, scale bar is 1 cm; (**c**) Close-up of specimens of *Rhizocorallium* isp. with sharp burrow boundaries

mid-tier *Helminthopsis,* and a deep-tier *Chondrites*. The ichnogenus *Rhizocorallium* is quite common in carbonate firmgrounds as illustrated by spectacular examples in the Jurassic of Asturias (García-Ramos et al. 2011; Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2012; Fig. 9.19a–c).

In addition to infaunalization in soft substrates, ichnologic evidence suggests that the character and levels of bioerosion in hard substrates also showed significant changes by the Jurassic (Fürsich et al. 1994; Kowalewski et al. 1998; de Gibert et al. 1998a; Bertling 1999; Bromley 2004; Tapanila and Hutchings 2012). In particular,

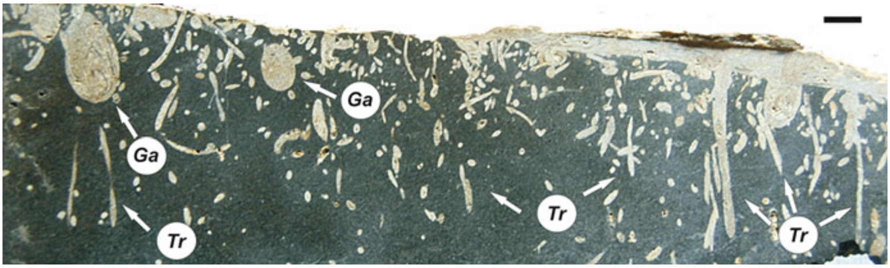


Fig. 9.20 *Gastrochaenolites* isp. and *Trypanites* isp. demarcating the carbonate hardground at the contact between the Middle Jurassic Upper Inferior Oolite and the underlying Carboniferous limestone, England. Scale bar is 1 cm

de Gibert et al. (1998a)) noted the sharp contrast between Paleozoic and post-Paleozoic (mostly from the Jurassic onward) bioerosion ichnofaunas, with the former being dominated by worm borings and the latter by bivalve and sponge borings. Middle Jurassic patch reefs from Israel have been extensively bioeroded by bivalves, worms, barnacles, and phoronids (Wilson et al. 2010). The documented ichnogenera include *Clionolithes* (produced by sponges or algae), *Gastrochaenolites* (bivalves; Fig. 9.20), *Oichnus* (likely a soft-bodied sclerobiont), *Rogerella* (acrothoracican barnacle), *Talpina* (phoronids), and *Trypanites* (worms; Fig. 9.20).

Fürsich et al. (1994) documented a high diversity of macroborings in an Upper Jurassic reef, noting that this is the oldest example where borers destroyed such a large part of the reef, removing up to 40 % of reef volume. Bertling (1999) indicated that the appearance of a modern macrobioeroding reef fauna took place by the Late Jurassic. However, a subsequent study by Perry and Bertling (2000) downplayed the importance of the Late Jurassic radiation of macroborers in favor of a more protracted process throughout the Jurassic. According to these authors, cirripeds, bivalves, and worms dominated in the Early Jurassic, with clionaid sponges becoming main players by the Middle Jurassic. The appearance of *Radulichnus* in the Jurassic is particularly important because gastropods and chitons may have contributed significantly to grazing disturbance in shallow-marine settings, leading to the post-Triassic decline of articulate brachiopods and their retreat to deep-water and/or cryptic refugia (Radley 2010).

A Jurassic diversification of macroborers was certainly not restricted to reefs, but can be extended to hard substrates in other settings, such as mollusk shells and limestone rockgrounds, which supported a bioeroding fauna of modern aspect, including polychaetes, sponges, and bivalves (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Goldring et al. 2005). Despite these changes, Tapanila (2008) noted that, with the exception of echinoids, no new classes of organisms adopted an endolithic strategy during the MMR. From an ichnofacies perspective, the Jurassic marks the appearance of the *Gnathichnus* ichnofacies (de Gibert et al. 2007).

Woodgrounds were colonized for the first time by the Early Jurassic, as indicated by the first appearance of the ichnogenus *Teredolites*, which is produced by pholadacean bivalves (Villegas-Martín et al. 2012). This occurrence predates the first recorded appearance of pholadacean body fossils, documented from the Middle Jurassic (Haga and Kase 2011; Villegas-Martín et al. 2012). Innovations in microbioerosion were not apparent by the Jurassic (Glaub and Vogel 2004; Wisshak et al. 2006).

Increase in predation pressure is one of the most important features of the MMR. Although increased predation is reflected in the body-fossil record, the ichnologic record of predation provides key information for understanding the role of predators during this evolutionary breakthrough (Huntley and Kowalewski 2007). In particular, the roles of drilling predation, as reflected by bioerosion structures, typically including drill holes of the ichnogenus *Oichnus* (Müller 1977) in shells (e.g., Kowalewski et al. 1998, 1999; Harper et al. 1998, 1999; Walker and Brett 2002; Harper 2003) and of durophagous predation, as evidenced by shell-crushing structures (e.g., Harper 2003; Oji et al. 2003; Zatoń and Salamon 2008), have received considerable attention. In addition, fish bite marks in echinoid spines have been recently documented (Wilson et al. 2014). Evaluation of the role of drilling in the Jurassic has been controversial, essentially due to a patchy fossil record (Kowalewski et al. 1998, 1999; Harper et al. 1998, 1999). Although the 120 Myr gap in the presence of drill hole structures, ranging from the end of the Late Triassic to the beginning of the late Early Cretaceous, is starting to be filled with a few reports (see discussions in Kowalewski et al. 1998, 1999; Harper et al. 1998, 1999), available evidence seems to suggest that drilling was not a major selection pressure during the Jurassic (Harper 2003; Huntley and Kowalewski 2007).

In contrast, a number of animals capable of durophagous predation, including malacostracan crustaceans with crushing chelae and several vertebrates (e.g., marine crocodilians, ichthyosaurs, and plesiosaurs), appeared for the first time by the Jurassic (Walker and Brett 2002). The extent of durophagous predation by the Jurassic is still uncertain, but the presence of abundant shells displaying crushing structures most likely produced by predatory fish, probably selachians or teleosteans, in the Middle Jurassic of Poland points toward intense predation pressure, at least locally (Zatoń and Salamon 2008). Interestingly, grazing by gastropods, chitons, and regular echinoids may have been responsible for widespread dislodgement, removal, and consumption of sessile and cemented epifauna from hardgrounds. According to this view, grazing bioerosion was an important factor of escalation during the Jurassic (Radley 2010). This is consistent with the ideas of Vermeij (2008), who noted that the Early Jurassic was characterized by a remarkable increase in escalation-related innovations, with rapid diversification of clades displaying adaptative responses to predators.

Ichnologic data suggest that the rise to dominance of the Modern Evolutionary Fauna is clearly evidenced since the beginning of the Jurassic. Burrow systems attributed on actualistic grounds to malacostracan crustaceans are pervasive in shallow-marine carbonates and siliciclastics, including *Ophiomorpha*, *Thalassinoides*, and *Spongeliomorpha* (e.g., Dam 1990a, b; Monaco and Garassino 2001; Monaco and Giannetti 2002; Giannetti and Monaco 2004; Neto de Carvalho et al. 2010). *Rhizocorallium* is another ichnotaxon produced by crustaceans, at least in some cases, which has been extremely common since the Jurassic (see review in

Knaust 2013). Although present since the Cambrian, post-Paleozoic forms of *Rhizocorallium* record more sophisticated feeding strategies, including the presence of spine-shaped protuberances that may have served as caches or for farming (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2012; Fig. 9.18d).

The occurrence of *Scolicia* in shallow-marine deposits (e.g., Dam 1990a, b), albeit rare in comparison with younger deposits, reveals the impact of irregular echinoids. Bivalve trace fossils, such as *Protovirgularia*, although known since the early Paleozoic, are quite abundant since the Jurassic (e.g., Hallam 1970; Leonowicz 2008). Trace fossils attributed to worm-like organisms or unknown animals reflect the appearance of new behavioral programs. This is clearly evidenced by the ichnogenera *Haentzschelinia* (referred to as *Dactyloidites* in some studies, but see Belaústegui et al. 2015b) and *Phoebichnus* (Bromley and Asgaard 1972; Heinberg and Birkelund 1984; McIlroy 2004, 2007; Srivastava et al. 2010; Patel et al. 2014; Canale et al. 2015; Evans and McIlroy 2016). Other worm structures, such as *Gyrochorte*, although present in Paleozoic rocks, became particularly abundant in the Jurassic (e.g., Hallam 1970; Heinberg 1973; Heinberg and Birkelund 1984; Powell 1992; Sudan et al. 2000; de Gibert and Benner 2002; Leonowicz 2008; Bressan and Palma 2009; Patel et al. 2014). The ichnogenus *Curvolithus*, probably produced by flat worms, also seems to be particularly abundant in Jurassic shallow-marine deposits (Häntzschel and Reineck 1968; Heinberg 1973; Heinberg and Birkelund 1984; Buatois et al. 1998). Both *Gyrochorte* and *Curvolithus* may be regarded as part of a relatively widespread ichnoguild in the Jurassic, comprising vagile, shallow-tier detritus-feeder and predation structures. The spiral burrow *Lapispira*, a structure that may be attributed to either worms or crustaceans, is at present only known from Lower Jurassic shallow-marine deposits (Lanés et al. 2007; Pagani et al. 2012, but see de Gibert et al. 2012 for a possible Miocene occurrence).

Overall, Jurassic ichnofaunas reveal a compositional turnover with respect to older, particularly Paleozoic, ichnofaunas and give strong evidence for the rise to dominance of the Modern Evolutionary Fauna. Comparison of shallow-marine ichnofaunas through the Triassic-Jurassic suggests that this faunal turnover took place essentially by the Early Jurassic as indicated by bioturbation structures, with evidence of a more protracted process for macrobioeroders.

9.3.3 The Cretaceous: Continuation of Previous Trends

Cretaceous siliciclastic shallow-marine ichnofaunas are extremely well known and have been analyzed in detail in several studies. One area that has been explored in great detail is the Western Interior Seaway of North America (Howard and Frey 1984; Vossler and Pemberton 1988, 1989; Frey and Howard 1982, 1985, 1990; Frey 1990; MacEachern and Pemberton 1992; Pemberton et al. 1992; Saunders et al. 1994; Pemberton and MacEachern 1997; MacEachern et al. 1999). Although these studies emphasized ichnofacies applications in facies analysis and sequence stratigraphy, the data presented can be easily explored from an evolutionary perspective. As a whole, information from the Cretaceous of the Western Interior reveals the establishment of diverse climax communities in fully marine offshore settings. Ichnofaunas from these settings include a wide variety of ethologic types and feeding strategies, represented by a large number of ichnogenera, such as *Thalassinoides* (Fig. 9.21f), *Diplocraterion* (Fig. 9.21c), *Cylindrichnus*, *Protovirgularia* (Fig. 9.21l), *Schaubcylindrichnus* (Fig. 9.21g), *Gyrochorte* (Fig. 9.21h), *Curvolithus* (Fig. 9.21i), *Halopoa* (Fig. 9.21k), *Palaeophycus*, *Planolites*, *Teichichnus*, *Taenidium*, *Zoophycos*, *Helminthopsis*, *Phycosiphon*, *Nereites* (referred to as *Cosmorhaphe* in some of the original studies), *Phoebichnus*, *Scolicia, Bichordites* (Fig. 9.21j), *Chondrites*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Bergaueria*, *Asterosoma*, and *Rosselia* (Fig. 9.21d). Overall, no major departures are apparent from the trends established in the Jurassic for these settings.

Relatively high-energy nearshore deposits from Cretaceous sections elsewhere display ichnofaunas that are essentially identical to those of the Jurassic (e.g., Curran 1985; Martino and Curran 1990; Pollard et al. 1993; Nielsen et al. 1996; Weissbrod and Barthel 1998). Cretaceous nearshore sandstones are dominated by mid- to deep-tier dwelling burrows, typically of crustacean (e.g., *Ophiomorpha;* Fig. 9.21a) and worm (e.g., *Skolithos*) origin. Crustaceans encompass a wide variety of feeding strategies. Among other producers, although suspension-feeding strategies are dominant, other trophic types include detritus feeding (e.g., *Cylindrichnus*, *Rosselia*) and passive predation (*Conichnus, Bergaueria,* Fig. 9.21e). The ichnogenus *Macaronichnus* became particularly common in high-energy nearshore sands of Cretaceous deposits (see review by Quiroz et al. 2010; Fig. 9.21a).

From the perspective of infaunalization, Upper Cretaceous lower-offshore deposits of the Magallanes Formation of Patagonia, Argentina provide a glimpse into the complexity of tiering structures by the end of the Mesozoic. These deposits have been totally obliterated by bioturbation, mostly due to the activity of a deposit-feeding infauna (Buatois et al. 2011; Fig. 9.22a–d). The shallowest tier consists of an indistinct mottling (*Planolites*) representing background bioturbation in the water-saturated, soupy substrate of the mixed zone. Below are shallow-tier *Thalassinoides*, *Phycosiphon*, and *Zoophycos*. The mid-tier is represented by *Asterosoma*, *Planolites,* and "Terebellina" (= *Palaeophycus heberti*), whereas the deep tier is occupied by *Chondrites*, *Teichichnus,* and a second type of *Thalassinoides*. The well-defined morphology and sharp burrow margins of *Teichichnus,* in addition to the absence of other trace fossils cross-cutting this ichnotaxon, indicate emplacement deep in compacted sediment. Six ichnoguilds are recognized: the *Planolites* ichnoguild (vagile, deposit-feeding, very shallow tier), the *Thalassinoides* ichnoguild I (semi-vagile and vagile, shallow-tier deposit-feeder structures), the *Phycosiphon-Zoophycos* ichnoguild (vagile, deposit-feeding to chemosymbiont, shallow-tier), the *Asterosoma-Planolites*-"Terebellina" ichnoguild (semi-vagile, deposit-feeding, mid-tier), the *Teichichnus-Chondrites* ichnoguild (vagile, deposit-feeding to chemosymbiont, deep-tier), and the *Thalassinoides* ichnoguild II (semi-vagile and vagile, deep-tier deposit-feeder structures).

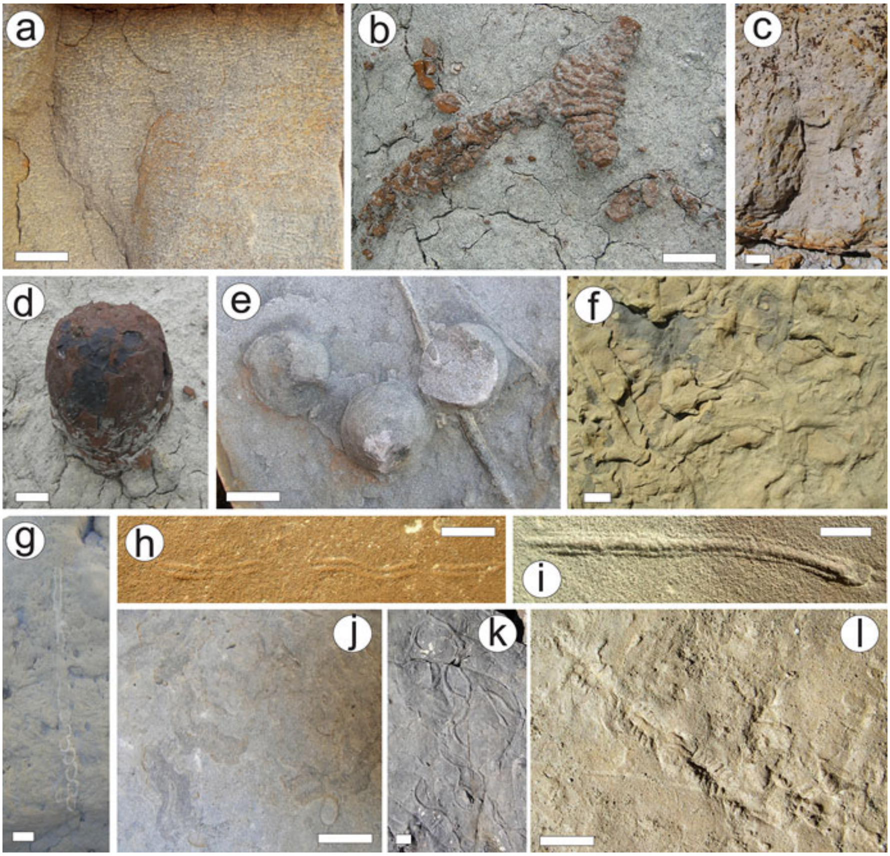


Fig. 9.21 Characteristic trace fossils from the Cretaceous Western Interior Seaway of North America. (**a**) *Macaronichnus segregatis*, Upper Cretaceous, Horseshoe Canyon Formation, near Drumheller, Alberta, Canada; (**b**) *Ophiomorpha irregulaire*, Upper Cretaceous, Horseshoe Canyon Formation, near Drumheller, Alberta, Canada; (**c**) *Diplocraterion parallelum*, Lower Cretaceous, Dakota Group, Alameda Avenue, Denver, Colorado, United States; (**d**) *Rosselia socialis*, Upper Cretaceous, Horseshoe Canyon Formation, near Drumheller, Alberta, Canada; (**e**) *Bergaueria* isp., Upper Cretaceous, Wapiabi Formation, Mount Yamnuska Quarry, Alberta, Canada; (**f**) *Thalassinoides suevicus*, Upper Cretaceous, Ferron Sandstone, Ivie Creek area, Utah, United States; (**g**) *Schaubcylindrichnus coronus*, Upper Cretaceous, Panther Tongue Member, Star Point Formation, Kenilworth Wash, Book Cliffs, Utah, United States; (**h**) *Gyrochorte comosa*, Upper Cretaceous, Kenilworth Member, Blackhawk Formation, near the southern entrance to Tusher Canyon, Book Cliffs, Utah, United States; (**i**) *Curvolithus simplex*, Upper Cretaceous, Kenilworth Member, Blackhawk Formation, near the southern entrance to Tusher Canyon, Book Cliffs, Utah, United States; (**j**) *Bichordites* isp., Upper Cretaceous, Panther Tongue Member, Star Point Formation, Kenilworth Wash, Book Cliffs, Utah, United States; (**k**) *Halopoa* isp., Upper Cretaceous, Ram Member, Cardium Formation, Seebe Dam, Alberta, Canada; (**l**) *Protovirgularia dichotoma*, Upper Cretaceous, Kenilworth Member, Blackhawk Formation, Hutch Mesa area, Book Cliffs, Utah, United States. Scale bars in (**g**, **h**, **i, j**, and **l**) are 1 cm, whereas those in (**a**, **b**, **c**, **d**, **e, f**), and (**k**) are 3 cm

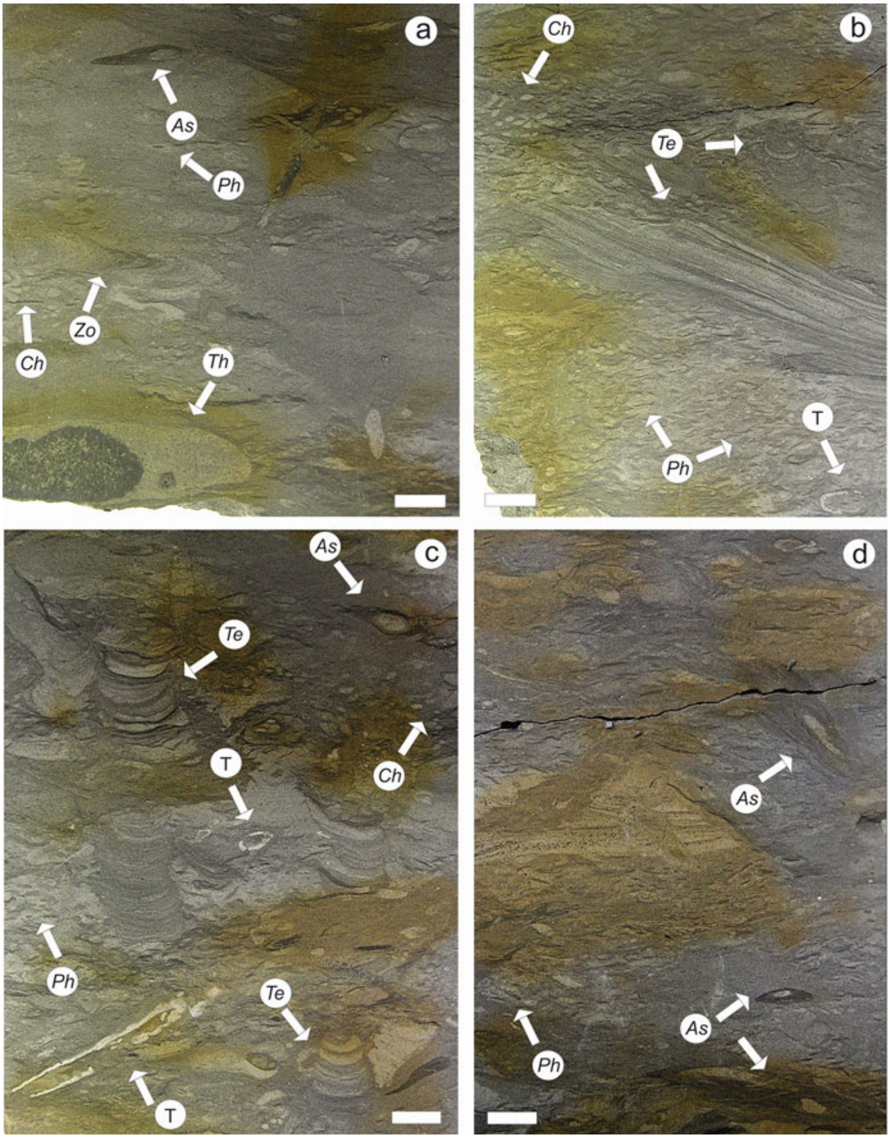


Fig. 9.22 Intensely bioturbated Upper Cretaceous lower-offshore deposits of the Magallanes Formation, Austral Basin, Patagonia, Argentina. (**a**) Shallow-tier *Phycosiphon* (*Ph*) and *Zoophycos* (*Zo*), mid-tier *Asterosoma* (*As*), and deep tier *Chondrites* (*Ch*) and *Thalassinoides* (*Th*); (**b**) Shallow-tier *Phycosiphon* (*Ph*), mid-tier "Terebellina" (T), and deep tier *Chondrites* (*Ch*) and *Teichichnus* (*Te*); (**c**) Shallow-tier *Phycosiphon* (*Ph*), mid-tier *Asterosoma* (*As*) and "Terebellina" (T), and deep tier *Chondrites* (*Ch*) and *Teichichnus* (*Te*); (**d**) Shallow-tier *Phycosiphon* (*Ph*) and mid-tier *Asterosoma* (*As*). Scale bars are 1 cm

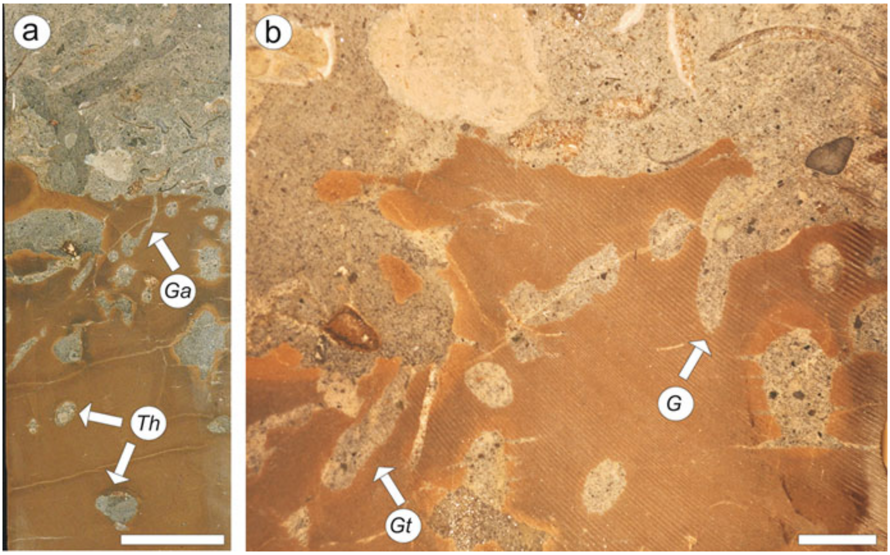


Fig. 9.23 A hardground surface demarcating the Intra-Valanginian Discontinuity (Lower Cretaceous) from the Neuquén Basin of Argentina. (**a**) Close-up showing *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*) penetrating well below the surface and *Gastrochaenolites* isp. (*Ga*) right below the discontinuity surface; (**b**) Close-up showing *Gastrochaenolites turbinatus* (*Gt*) and *Gastrochaenolites*? isp. (*G*). Note abundant intraclasts mantling the surface and unidentified borings. Scale bars are 1 cm

Information on Cretaceous oxygen-depleted ichnofaunas comes from the analysis of the Oceanic Anoxic Event 2 (OAE-2) during the Cenomanian–Turonian transition in Europe (Uchman et al. 2008; Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2009a, b; Monaco et al. 2012; Uchman et al. 2013). These trace-fossil assemblages are virtually identical to those of the Jurassic. In fact, ichnofaunas of oxygen-depleted environments from the Cretaceous onward seem overall to be quite conservative, and no major changes have been recorded subsequent to the Jurassic.

As in the case of the Jurassic, Cretaceous shallow-marine carbonates tend to be dominated by crustacean burrows, particularly in high-energy nearshore grainstones (e.g., Spalletti et al. 2001a, b), but also in slightly distal and lower-energy packstones and wakestones (e.g., Mángano and Buatois 1994) and omission surfaces (e.g., Mángano and Buatois 1991; Schwarz and Buatois 2012; Fig. 9.23a–b). Other less common elements, most likely produced by worms, including *Schaubcylindrichnus* and *Phycodes*, tend to be present in more distal settings (e.g., Mángano and Buatois 1994).

It has been noted that in modern environments, a rapid response of the deep-marine benthic community is triggered by seasonal productivity, resulting in a pattern referred to as the "benthic–pelagic coupling" (Graf 1989). Calcareous nannofossils, diatoms, and dinoflagellates became the largest components of the phytoplankton during the Cretaceous (Katz et al. 2007). As a result, primary production increased dramatically

(Kotake 2014). There is significant ichnologic evidence supporting the establishment of a modern-style benthic–pelagic coupling during the Cretaceous (Kotake 2014; Izumi 2015). These include the permanent occupation of the same burrow by the *Zoophycos* producer as a response to high benthic-food conditions (Kotake 2014) and the synchronization of deposit-feeding strategies with coccolithophore bloom by the *Phymatoderma* animal (Izumi 2015). Therefore, ichnologic information underscores the fact that significant changes took place in marine ecosystems by the late Mesozoic.

Another dataset comes from chalk that has been extensively studied from an ichnologic perspective in Europe (e.g., Bromley 1967; Kennedy 1967, 1970, 1975; Fürsich et al. 1981; Bromley and Ekdale 1984b, 1986; Ekdale and Bromley 1984, 1991) and the United States (Frey 1970, 1972; Frey and Bromley 1985; Savrda 2014). During the Cretaceous, thick chalk deposits resulted from the accumulation of coccoliths on the seafloor, derived post-mortem from the flourishing populations of coccolithophores that dwelled in the marine photic zone above (Stanley et al. 2005). Such deposits provide an ideal medium for ichnofabric analysis due to their complete bioturbation as a result of very slow rates of sedimentation and full-marine conditions (Ekdale and Bromley 1991; Savrda 2012). Coccolithophorids first appeared in the Late Triassic and diversified rapidly during the Early Jurassic (Bown 2005), but it is not until the Cretaceous that this group became a major contributor to ocean sedimentation (Hay 2004). The average size of individual coccoliths increased with time, from Early Jurassic to Middle Cretaceous, and this size history parallels the diversity history of Mesozoic coccolithophorids (Aubry et al. 2005).

In particular, shelf chalk beds, which formed between water depths of 50 and 300 m (Scholle et al. 1983), provide a window to unique infaunal tiered communities in shallow-water settings (Figs. 9.24a–d and 9.25a–e). Crustacean burrow systems, such as those of *Thalassinoides*, are dominant in these deposits, with *Ophiomorpha* and *Gyrolithes* being less common (Ekdale and Bromley 1984). Feeding structures, such as *Chondrites*, *Phycosiphon*, *Zoophycos*, *Planolites,* and *Teichichnus*, are common as well (Ekdale and Bromley 1984). Concretionary flint in chalk typically represents silicified burrow systems, such as *Thalassinoides*, commonly allowing for three-dimensional preservation (Fig. 9.26a–b); Bromley and Ekdale 1984b). Another common structure in European chalks is the large burrow structure *Bathichnus paramoudrae*, which is typically encircled by ring-like paramoudra flint (Bromley and Ekdale 1984b).

From an ichnofabric perspective, chalk hosts extremely complex, tiered ichnocommunities as demonstrated by the detailed analysis of pelagic deposits from Denmark (Ekdale and Bromley 1991). As noted by these authors, degree of bioturbation in these deposits is so high that virtually every grain of sediment was processed by several animals, resulting in composite ichnofabrics recording the activity of multi-tiered infaunal communities. The shallowest tier corresponds to indistinct burrow mottling onto which as many as four ichnoguilds are typically overprinted. A complete overprinting sequence would include the *Planolites* ichnoguild (vagile, shallow-tier deposit-feeder structures), the *Thalassinoides* ichnoguild (semi-vagile and vagile, mid-tier deposit-feeder structures), the *Taenidium-Phycosiphon* ichnoguild (vagile, middle-to-deep-tier deposit-feeder structures), and the *Zoophycos*-

Fig. 9.24 Chalk trace fossils, Upper Cretaceous, West Melbury Chalk Formation, Beachy Head, southeast England. (**a**) General view of intensely bioturbated deposits overprinted by mid-tier *Thalassinoides paradoxicus*; (**b**) Close-up of *Thalassinoides paradoxicus*; (**c**) Close-up of *Thalassinoides paradoxicus* cross-cut by deep-tier *Chondrites* isp.; (**d**) General view of intensely bioturbated deposits overprinted by mid-tier *Thalassinoides paradoxicus*. Scale bars are 1 cm

Chondrites ichnoguild (non-vagile, deep-tier deposit-feeder or chemosymbiont structures). A similar tiering pattern has been recorded in chalk from Alabama (Frey and Bromley 1985). The tiering structure of the Alabama deposits consists of very shallow-tier, indistinct burrow mottling and three ichnoguilds, the *Thalassinoides* ichnoguild (semi-vagile and vagile, mid-tier deposit-feeder structures), the *Zoophycos-Taenidium* ichnoguild (vagile, middle-to-deep-tier deposit-feeder or farming structures), and the *Chondrites* ichnoguild (non-vagile, deep-tier deposit-feeder or chemosymbiont structures).

Common macroborers in the Cretaceous include acrothoracican barnacles, bivalves, clionaid sponges, polychaetes, and bryozoans (Taylor and Wilson 2003). In the specific case of macroborers in reef environments, information is patchy for the Early Cretaceous, but available data suggest a dominance of bivalves and worms over cirripedians (Perry and Bertling 2000; Tapanila and Hutchings 2012). Bivalve borings (*Gastrochaenolites*) were also common in Early Cretaceous hardgrounds (Schwarz and Buatois 2012; Fig. 9.23a–b). During the Late Cretaceous, borer sponges may have played a major role, particularly in rudist reefs, and to some extent also in coral reefs, together with worms and bivalves (Perry and Bertling 2000; Tapanila and Hutchings 2012). Rocky shorelines also were affected by significant bioerosion, with hardgrounds and carbonate rockgrounds displaying similar borer communities (Taylor and Wilson 2003). A wide diversity of bioerosion structures

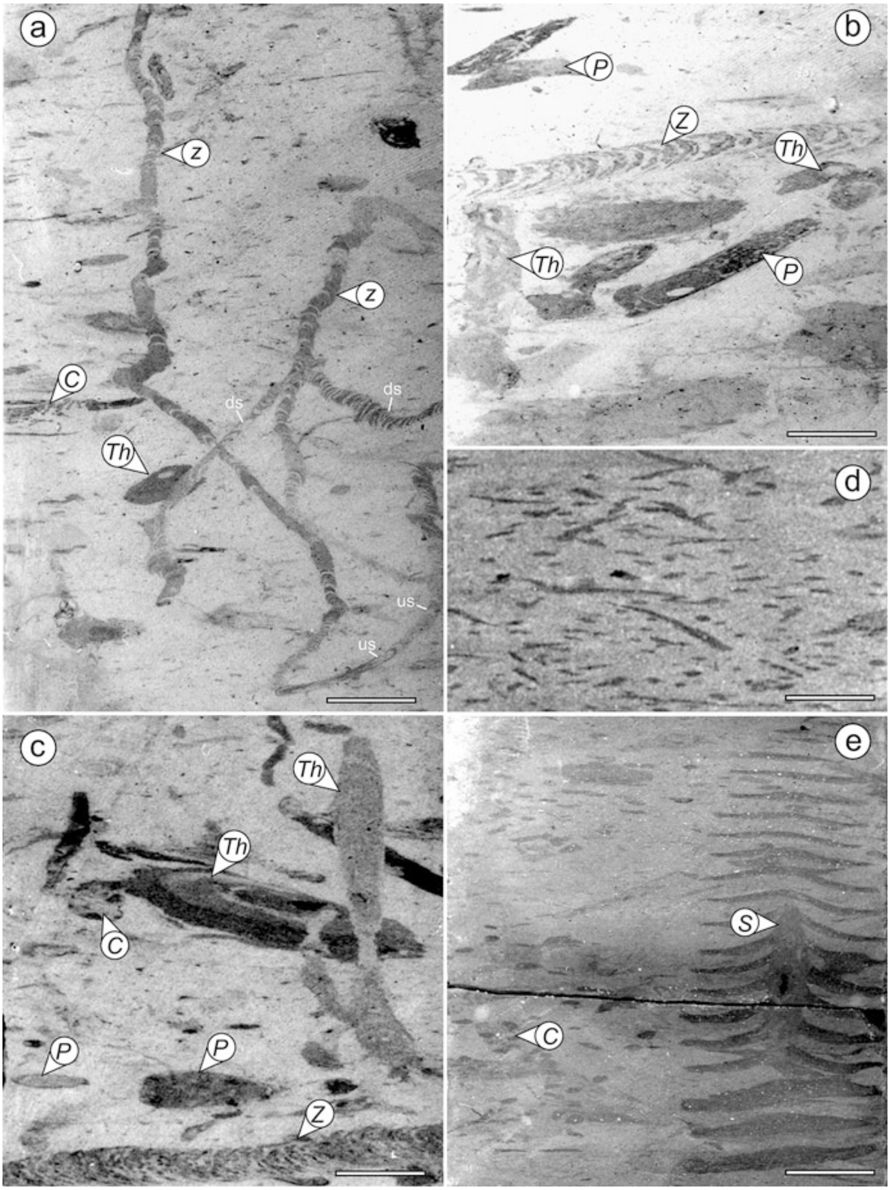


Fig. 9.25 Ichnofabrics and trace fossils in Eocene to Maestrichtian chalk cored at DSDP Site 605 (for details about the lithology see van Hinte et al. 1987; for details about the ichnology see Wetzel 1987). (**a**) Ichnofabric characterized by the vertical or steeply oriented spreite of *Zoophycos* isp. (*Z*) [note deviating spreite (ds) and even upward shifting ones (us)], *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*) some no longer identifiable burrows have been reworked by producers of *Chondrites* isp. (*C*); background sediment has been homogenized (core 19, section 4, 20–29 cm); (**b**) Complex ichnofabric composed of *Planolites* isp. (*P*), *Teichichnus* isp. (*T*), *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*), and *Zoophycos* isp. (Z); some burrows have been reworked by producers of *Chondrites* isp. (*C*) (core 21, section 1, 75–81 cm); (**c**) Complex ichnofabric composed of *Zoophycos* isp. (Z), *Teichichnus* isp. (*T*), and *Planolites* isp. (P) that both have been reworked by producers of *Chondrites* isp. (*C*), and *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*) (core 17, section 1, 21–29 cm); (**d**) Ichnofabric with dominant *Chondrites* isp. (core 41, section 6, 15–19 cm); (**e**) *Spirophyton*-like burrow (*S*) and some *Chondrites* isp. tubes (*C*) (core 50, section 3, 64–71 cm)

Fig. 9.26 Concretionary flint in chalk representing silicified *Thalassinoides* isp. (**a, b**) Upper Cretaceous specimens, Beachy Head, southeast England. All scale bars are 1 cm

was described from a Lower Cretaceous karst surface in the Czech Republic (Mikuláš 1992b). The assemblage included borings by sponges (various ichnospecies of *Entobia*), worms (*Trypanites*), acrothoracican barnacles (*Rogerella*), bivalves (*Gastrochaenolites*), and echinoids (*Circolites*). Non-carbonate rocky shorelines were characteristically of low diversity, as indicated by a monospecific suite of bivalve borings (*Gastrochaenolites*) penetrating slates (Buatois and Encinas 2011). Bioerosion in woodgrounds became much more common in the Cretaceous, as shown by widespread occurrences of the ichnogenus *Teredolites* (Taylor and Wilson 2003; Villegas-Martín et al. 2012). From a microbioerosion perspective, the Cretaceous seems to show only a very slight increase in the number of ichnospecies recorded (Wisshak et al. 2006).

Predation structures, drilling and, to a lesser extent, durophagous predation may have increased in intensity during the Cretaceous (Walker and Brett 2002; Harper 2003, 2006; Huntley and Kowalewski 2007). There is overwhelming paleontologic and ichnologic evidence that drilling predation underwent major evolutionary innovation in the Cretaceous (Kelley and Hansen 2003; Huntley and Kowalewski 2007). The earliest undisputed body-fossil record of muricid and naticid gastropods is from the Late Cretaceous (Merle and Pacaud 2002), although drill holes identical to those produced by these gastropods occur in the Early Cretaceous (Taylor et al. 1983) and even the Triassic (Fürsich and Jablonski 1984). The appearance of these gastropods undoubtedly increased predation pressures (Harper 2003, 2006). Octopod cephalopods may have been important predators, but no undisputed ichnologic evidence of Cretaceous drilling predation by these organisms has been documented (Walker and Brett 2002). With respect to durophagous predation, the appearance by the Cretaceous of many crustacean decapod families that are known to be active predators (e.g., Palinuridae) represented a major breakthrough (Harper 2003). In addition, many vertebrate predators were very active during the Cretaceous, with crocodilians, ichthyosaurs, and plesiosaurs being common in the Early Cretaceous and pliosaurids and mosasaurs as well during the Late Cretaceous (Walker and Brett 2002). Oji et al. (2003) noted that, although a number of durophagous decapod crustaceans (as well as teleost fish) were present by the Late Cretaceous, the scarcity of crushed shells suggests that durophagous predators did not play a major role in

Cretaceous ecosystems. However, their study is of very local scale, based on a number of units in Japan, which may explain the discrepancies with broader compilations, such as those by Vermeij et al. (1981) that noted a global peak in gastropod shell repair frequency in the Cretaceous.

Regarding burrowers, crustaceans, bivalves, and echinoderms were among the most important, signaling consolidation of the MMR in shallow-marine environments. Worm-like organisms also were undoubtedly key bioturbators in these settings. Opheliid polychaetes became common in high-energy foreshore to upper-shoreface sands, as evidenced by the abundance of *Macaronichnus,* particularly in mid- to high-latitude settings (Quiroz et al. 2010). Also, in high-latitude settings, complex spreiten burrows, namely, *Paradictyodora* and *Euflabella,* occurred for the first time (Olivero et al. 2004; Olivero and López-Cabrera 2013; Olivero and López-Cabrera 2014).

To summarize, from the perspective of animal–substrate interactions in shallow-marine siliciclastic settings, the Cretaceous represents a continuation of the trends established in the Jurassic. However, by the end of the Cretaceous, a modern-style benthic–pelagic coupling pattern was established and an important increase in global ichnodiversity (35 %) took place in marine environments (see Chap. 16). In carbonate settings, crustacean burrows are among the dominant forms. In the specific case of chalk, the explosion in coccolithophores provided a new substrate that allowed for the establishment of extremely complex tiering structures, unknown in older deposits. Diversification of microborers was limited, but macrobioerosion exhibited the increased activity of borers typical of modern communities (e.g., sponges, bivalves, gastropods).

9.3.4 The Paleogene: Rise of the Modern Evolutionary Fauna After End-Cretaceous Mass Extinction

The end-Cretaceous mass extinction (see Chap. 12) differentially impacted the various tracemakers involved in the MMR. Unfortunately, the present scarcity of papers documenting Paleogene shallow-marine ichnofaunas inhibits detailed recognition and reconstruction of patterns and trends.

The few available trace-fossil studies of shallow-marine clastic settings seem to display similarities with late Mesozoic ichnofaunas, although the sparse record prevents real evaluation of tiering structure. Crustacean burrows, such as *Thalassinoides*, continued to be elite trace fossils (sensu Bromley 1990) in the Paleogene, having been recorded in shallow-marine deposits as early as the early Paleocene (Danian; Rodríguez and Panza 2003). Overall, typical Mesozoic elements, such as *Thalassinoides*, *Ophiomorpha*, *Psilonichnus*, and *Rhizocorallium*, are dominant in shallow-marine areas during the entirety of the Paleogene (Belt et al. 1997; 2005; Myint 2001; Shelley and Lawton 2005; Uchman and Gaździcki 2006; Singh et al. 2008; Villegas-Martín et al. 2014). Other typical Mesozoic burrowers, such as irregular echinoderms and prosobranch bivalves, also are represented by their trace fossils in the Paleogene (Uchman and Gaździcki 2006; Demírcan and Uchman 2012;

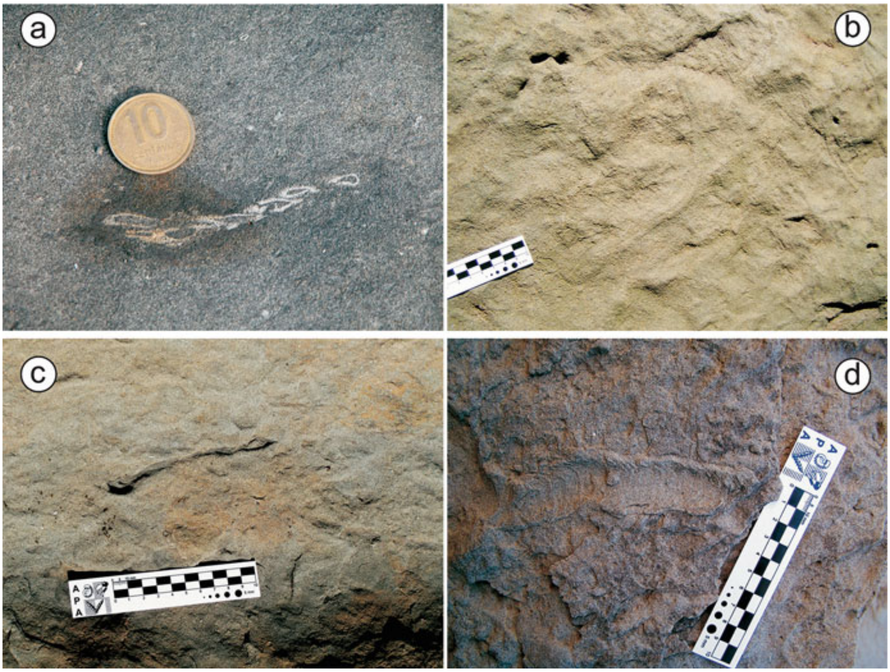


Fig. 9.27 Characteristic trace fossils from the Middle to Upper Eocene Leticia Formation, Patagonia, Argentina (**a**) *Schaubcylindrichnus* isp., cross-section view, coin is 1.8 cm; (**b**) *Gyrochorte* isp., bedding-plane view; (**c**) *Diplocraterion* isp., bedding-plane view; (**d**) *Scolicia* isp., bedding-plane view

Villegas-Martín et al. 2014). One of the most detailed analysis of Paleogene ichnofaunas is that of López-Cabrera et al. (2008), who documented a high-diversity ichnofauna from the upper Eocene of Tierra del Fuego, Argentina, comprising the ichnogenera *Diplocraterion*, *Schaubcylindrichnus*, *Palaeophycus*, *Planolites*, *Rosselia*, *Asterosoma*, *Rhizocorallium*, *Taenidium*, *Teichichnus*, *Tasselia*, *Curvolithus*, *Gyrochorte*, *Patagonichnus*, and *Paradictyodora* (Fig. 9.27a–d). This study showed that, at least by the middle Eocene, ichnodiversity levels were similar to those attained in the late Mesozoic. Of particular importance is the appearance of the ichnogenus *Patagonichnus*, a complex trace fossil attributed to gregarious polychaetes (see also Olivero and López-Cabrera 2005).

As in the case of Jurassic-Cretaceous examples, Paleogene nearshore sands are typically dominated by *Ophiomorpha* (Deville 1996), as well as by other vertical burrows, such as *Skolithos*, *Diplocraterion*, and *Arenicolites* (Zhou 1997; Shelley and Lawton 2005). Quiroz et al. (2010) noted that *Macaronichnus,* an ichnogenus common in nearshore sands of high- to mid-latitudes, is absent in Paleocene to lower Eocene deposits, a pattern that may reflect overall climatic conditions.

Evaluation of the macrobioerosion record is biased as a result of uneven stratigraphic distribution of host substrates, but reports include borings in reefs, rocky shorelines, clasts, and shells. In general, Perry and Bertling (2000) did not note any major change in style of macrobioerosion across the Cretaceous–Paleogene boundary. At present there are few examples of Paleocene and Eocene reef bioerosion, but the sea-level highstand and global oligotrophic conditions during the Oligocene contributed to extensive reef development (Perry and Bertling 2000). Bivalves were apparently the most important macrobioeroders in reefs during the Paleocene, with a subordinate presence of sponges, worms, and bryozoans (Babić and Zupanič 1981; Bernecker and Weidlich 1996; Schuster 1996). Sparse information from the Eocene also underscores the important role of bioeroding bivalves in reefs (Gaemers 1978). Advanced teleost fish, most significantly parrotfish, were important contributors to macrobioerosion in tropical settings since the Eocene because they have a sophisticated jaw mechanism for herbivory (Berg 1940; Steneck 1983). Perry and Bertling (2000) noted that the interpretation of Oligocene patterns is not straightforward, with European reefs having a meager macrobioerosion record, whereas those from the Caribbean display a high ichnodiversity.

In particular, patch and barrier reefs from Puerto Rico contain a wide variety of ichnotaxa, including *Trypanites* and *Uniglobites*, as well as several ichnospecies of *Entobia* and *Gastrochaenolites* (Edinger and Risk 1994). Overall, sponges dominated over bivalves and worms in these reefs. In addition to reefs, rocky shorelines were subject to significant bioerosion by clionaid sponges, bivalves, polychaete worms, and barnacles (Roniewicz 1970; Hanna and Al-Radwany 1993). Composite ichnofabrics typically developed in association with omission surfaces, including both burrows in softgrounds and firmgrounds and borings in hardgrounds, leading to complex patterns of cross-cutting relationships (Lewis and Ekdale 1992). Bioerosion by bivalves and polychaetes has been recorded in clasts as well (Babić and Zupanič 2000). Furthermore, bioerosion in shells was also common during the Cretaceous–Paleogene, particularly in the Eocene-Oligocene (Taylor and Wilson 2003). Examples include borings by acrothoracican barnacles (Abletz 1993), phoronids (Abletz 1994), and lithophagid bivalves (Krumm and Jones 1993; Krumm 1999). Nummulite tests breached by *Oichnus* have been documented from the Eocene (Sengupta and Nielsen 2009). In addition, nummulitids were used as materials to reinforce burrow walls, as illustrated by the ichnogenus *Nummipera* (Hölder 1989; Jach et al. 2011; our Fig. 9.28a–b). During the Oligocene, whale skeletons for

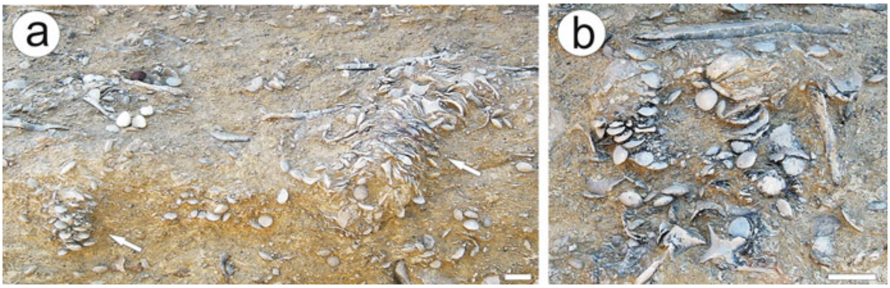


Fig. 9.28 The ichnogenus *Nummipera,* characterized by the presence of nummulite shells reinforcing burrow walls. Middle Eocene, Soğucak Limestone Formation, Uğurlu Beach, Gökçeada Island, western Turkey. (**a**) General view; (**b**) Close-up. Scale bars are 1 cm

the first time show evidence of bioerosion, most likely produced by the osteophagous worm *Osedax* (Boessenecker and Fordyce 2014).

Although there was a slight increase in the diversity of microborings in the Paleogene, a faunal turnover is apparent (Glaub and Vogel 2004). Change in the dominant macrobioeroding ichnotaxa took place by this time, with the appearance of new ichnospecies whose oldest record is Paleogene (Glaub and Vogel 2004; Wisshak 2012).

The great end-Cretaceous mass extinction differentially impacted some groups of predators. Many marine reptiles and the ammonites and belemnoids became extinct, but the majority of invertebrate and fish predatory groups survived (Walker and Brett 2002). Several predatory invertebrates (e.g., neogastropods, decapods) and vertebrates (e.g., teleost fish, neoselachian sharks, sea birds, marine mammals) diversified during the Paleogene. Although precise documentation of ichnologic trends through time is difficult to evaluate, there is general agreement that drilling predation increased during the Paleogene (Kelley and Hansen 2003; Huntley and Kowalewski 2007). Vermeij (1987) indicated that an episode of drilling escalation occurred between the Cretaceous and the Eocene, but the details of timing are uncertain due to uneven stratigraphic distribution of data, including a lack of information from the Paleocene.

A similar Cretaceous–Paleogene phase has been identified (Kowalewski et al. 1998). A decline of drilling frequencies across the Cretaceous–Paleogene boundary followed by a subsequent increase may have resulted from the end-Cretaceous mass extinction and subsequent recovery (Kelley and Hansen 1996, 2003). The record of octopod shell drilling is essentially restricted to the Cenozoic (Walker and Brett 2002). An Eocene radiation of crushing predator crustaceans, including the Portunidae, Cancridae, Calappiidea, Grapsidae, Partheopidae, and Majodae, may have contributed to an increase in predation pressures (Walker and Brett 2002; Harper 2003), although claw-like appendages, such as those in these groups, may have evolved first as defensive traits (Vermeij 1982). Stomatopod crustaceans, comprising both gonodactyloids and squilloids, became important predators in the Cenozoic, although only the former are durophagous predators, commonly preying on mollusks (Walker and Brett 2002). The earliest representatives of gonodactyloid stomatopods in the fossil record are Miocene (Hof and Briggs 1997; Hof 1998). However, the ballistic ichnogenus *Belichnus*, which consists of small puncture marks on mollusk shells (Geary et al. 1991; Pether 1995), has been recognized since the Oligocene (David 1997). Vertebrate predators also contributed to durophagy, including sea turtles as well as a number of marine mammals, the latter since the Eocene (Walker and Brett 2002). Interpretation of shell repair frequency is not straightforward, but Allmon et al. (1990) noted a drop in repair frequency for turritellid shells during the Paleocene and a rebound in the Eocene.

In short, Paleogene ichnofaunas from shallow-marine clastic settings are similar to those of the late Mesozoic. Macrobioerosion styles seem to have persisted across the Cretaceous–Paleogene boundary as well, although an increased role of sponge and fish bioerosion is noted later in the Paleogene. In addition, predation pressures, as reflected by both drilling and durophagy, likely increased during this interval (Kowalewski et al. 1998; Kelley and Hansen 2003; Huntley and Kowalewski 2007).

9.3.5 The Neogene: Establishment of Modern Marine Ecosystems

The Neogene records the establishment of modern-marine ecosystems. In comparison with the Paleogene, the ichnology of Neogene shallow-marine clastic deposits has been documented through a larger number of studies (e.g., Curran and Frey, 1977; Mayoral 1986; Ting et al. 1991; Martini et al 1995; Uchman and Krenmayr 1995, 2004; Pickerill et al. 1996, 1998; Hong 1997; de Gibert et al. 1998b, de Gibert et al. 2013; de Gibert and Martinell 1998; Mayoral et al. 1998, 2013; Muñiz and Mayoral 2001a; Buatois et al. 2003; Malpas et al. 2005; Campbell et al. 2006; Cantalamessa et al. 2007; Carmona et al. 2008, 2012; Pervesler et al. 2011; Lokho and Singh 2013).

Compositionally, Neogene shallow-marine ichnofaunas in clastic settings tend to display similar elements to their Paleogene counterparts. Crustacean burrows, such as *Thalassinoides*, *Ophiomorpha*, *Spongeliomorpha*, *Psilonichnus*, *Macanopsis*, *Gyrolithes,* and *Rhizocorallium*, continued to be common elements (e.g., Mayoral 1986; Ting et al. 1991; Martini et al. 1995; Uchman and Krenmayr 1995, 2004; Hong 1997; de Gibert et al. 1998b, 2013; Mayoral et al. 1998; Muñiz and Mayoral 2001a, b; Buatois et al. 2003; Carmona and Buatois 2003; Cantalamessa et al. 2007; Carmona et al. 2004, 2008, 2012; Malpas et al. 2005; Campbell et al. 2006; Pervesler et al. 2011; de Gibert et al. 2013). Both locomotion and resting trace fossils generated by irregular echinoids are common (e.g., Plaziat and Mahmoudi 1988; Colella and D'Alessandro 1988; Uchman and Krenmayr 1995, 2004; Mayoral and Muñiz 2001; Buatois et al. 2003; Carmona et al. 2008, 2012).

Bivalves are also key burrowers in Neogene shallow-marine sediments, as revealed by the abundance of the ichnogenera *Lockeia*, *Protovirgularia,* and *Siphonichnus* (e.g., Buatois et al. 2003; de Gibert and Domènech 2008; Carmona et al. 2008, 2010, 2012). Also added to this list should be two bivalve ichnogenera that seem to have occurred for the first time by the Neogene: the equilibrium structure *Scalichnus* (Hanken et al 2001; Carmona et al. 2008) and the feeding trace *Saronichnus* (Pervesler and Zuschin 2004). Equilibrium structures of terebellid polychaetes, included in the ichnogenus *Rosselia,* are also common, sometimes displaying a response to sedimentation pulses by formation of dense assemblages (Nara 1995, 1997, 2002; Campbell et al. 2006; Frieling 2007). The highly complex burrow system *Patagonichnus*, produced by gregarious polychaetes, displays sophisticated feeding patterns expressed by its various ichnospecies (Olivero and López-Cabrera 2005).

Neogene nearshore sands display similar ichnofaunas to those of other Early Jurassic–Paleogene deposits. Typical ichnogenera are *Ophiomorpha*, *Conichnus*, *Bergaueria*, *Skolithos*, *Arenicolites,* and *Diplocraterion* (e.g., Curran and Frey 1977; Mayoral 1986; Ting et al. 1991; Martini et al. 1995; Uchman and Krenmayr 1995; 2004; Hong 1997; de Gibert et al. 1998b; Mayoral et al. 1998; Muñiz and Mayoral 2001a,b; Buatois et al. 2003; Carmona and Buatois 2003; Cantalamessa et al. 2007; Carmona et al. 2004, 2008, 2012; Malpas et al. 2005; Pervesler et al. 2011). *Macaronichnus* became common again, with records from a number of high-energy settings (e.g., Uchman and Krenmayr 2004; Carmona et al. 2008; Quiroz et al. 2010).

Despite the overall similarities with Paleogene ichnofaunas, Neogene ichnofaunas display an increase in ichnodiversity (both alpha and global sensu Buatois and Mángano 2013; see Chap. 16) and a more complex pattern of infaunal tiering. Detailed analysis in lower Miocene lower-shoreface to offshore-transition deposits of Patagonia, Argentina (Fig. 9.29a–f) revealed the presence of six ichnoguilds and nine tiers (Buatois et al. 2003; Carmona et al. 2012). This extremely complex infaunal tiering structure includes a mottled texture (vagile, deposit feeders, very shallow-tier), the *Thalassinoides*-*Asterosoma*-*Rosselia* ichnoguild (semi-vagile,

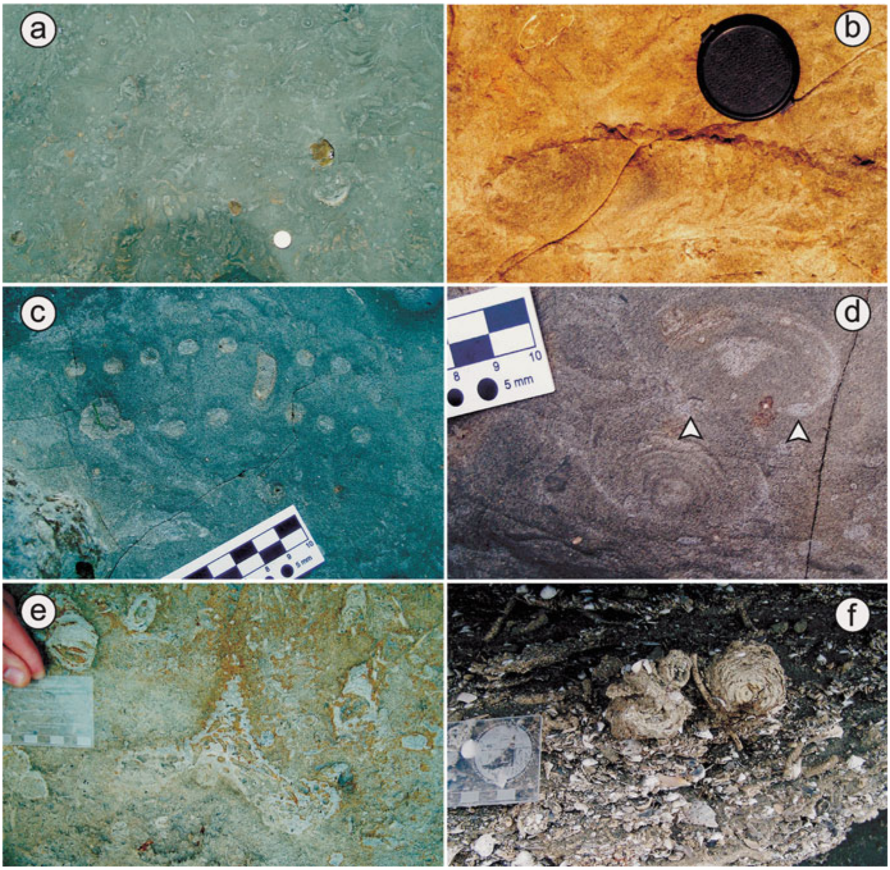


Fig. 9.29 Characteristic trace fossils from Lower Miocene shallow-marine deposits of Patagonia, Argentina. (**a**) *Scolicia* isp. and its producer, bedding-plane view, Chenque Formation, coin is 2.5 cm; (**b**) *Ophiomorpha* isp., bedding-plane view, Chenque Formation, lens cap diameter is 5.5 cm; (**c**) *Helicodromites* isp., bedding-plane view, Chenque Formation; (**d**) *Scolicia* isp., cross-section view, note the two drain channels at the base of the specimens (white arrows); (**e**) *Ophiomorpha nodosa*, cross-section view, Monte León Formation; (**f**) *Asterosoma* isp., cross-section view

deposit feeders, shallow-tier), the *Schaubcylindrichnus*-*Palaeophycus* ichnoguild (vagile, suspension and deposit feeders, middle-tier, the *Scolicia*-*Phycosiphon*-*Helicodromites*-*Teichichnus*-*Taenidium* ichnoguild (vagile, deposit feeders, middle-tier), the *Thalassinoides* ichnoguild (stationary, deposit feeders, deep-tier), and the *Chondrites* ichnoguild (stationary, deposit feeders or chemosymbionts, very deep-tier). This tiering structure reflects higher partitioning of the infaunal habitat and an increase in degree of complexity than that found in older ichnofaunas from siliciclastic settings. This is revealed not only by the number of ichnoguilds present, but particularly by the increased diversity within individual ichnoguilds.

Regarding carbonate settings, an extensive review of the character and importance of ichnology to the study of shallow-marine carbonates was made by Knaust et al. (2012). In a comprehensive study of the Bateig Limestone, Miocene of southeastern Spain, de Gibert and Goldring (2007) identified several ichnofabrics in a pelagic limestone, typically displaying intense bioturbation. The dominant ichnogenera are *Ophiomorpha*, *Bichordites,* and *Palaeophycus*, with subordinate presence of *Planolites*, *Skolithos,* and *Teichichnus*. Invariably, deeply emplaced biogenic structures cross-cut indistinct mottling. Crustacean burrows commonly form quite complex compound structures (de Gibert et al. 2012). More recently, Belaústegui and de Gibert (2013) noted the abundance of *Cylindrichnus*, which contributes to intensely bioturbated carbonate fabrics, and, in this case, represents an elite trace fossil (see also Goldring et al. 2002).

Detailed information on carbonate ichnofaunas also has been derived from Pleistocene–Holocene Bahamian-type carbonates (Curran 2007, and earlier papers cited therein). The ichnologic study of grainstones on San Salvador and other islands of the Bahamas Archipelago and the Miami Limestone of south Florida defined five ichnocoenoses within the *Skolithos* and *Psilonichnus* ichnofacies (Fig. 9.30a–g). *Ophiomorpha* is the dominant trace fossil in shallow subtidal grainstones whereas *Psilonichnus upsilon*, representing the burrows of the ghost crab, *Ocypode quadrata*, is common in beach backshore beds. Carbonate dune deposits (eolianites) also can exhibit a distinctive ichnocoenosis dominated by sometimes complex insect burrows (Curran and White 2001). Similar subtidal ichnofaunas have been recorded in the Pleistocene grainstones of the Cayman Islands (Pemberton and Jones 1988; Jones and Pemberton 1989; Metz 2011).

As is the case with bioturbation structures, macrobioerosion during the Neogene is essentially indistinguishable from that of the modern oceans. Modern reef bioerosion is dominated by grazing and, although the timing of this evolutionary innovation is not totally clear, the onset of widespread grazing may have occurred by the end of the Oligocene (Perry and Bertling 2000). Extensive information on

Fig. 9.30 (continued) shallow-subtidal grainstone, Upper Pleistocene, Cockburn Town Member, Grotto Beach Formation, Clifton Pier, New Providence, pen is 15 cm in length; (**f**) Specimen of a large, well-lithified *Ophiomorpha nodosa* shaft-terminus structure, Upper Pleistocene, Harry Cay, Little Exuma; (**g**) *Psilonichnus upsilon* in beach-backshore grainstone, Holocene, Hanna Bay Member, Rice Bay Formation, Moriah Harbour Cay, Little Exuma

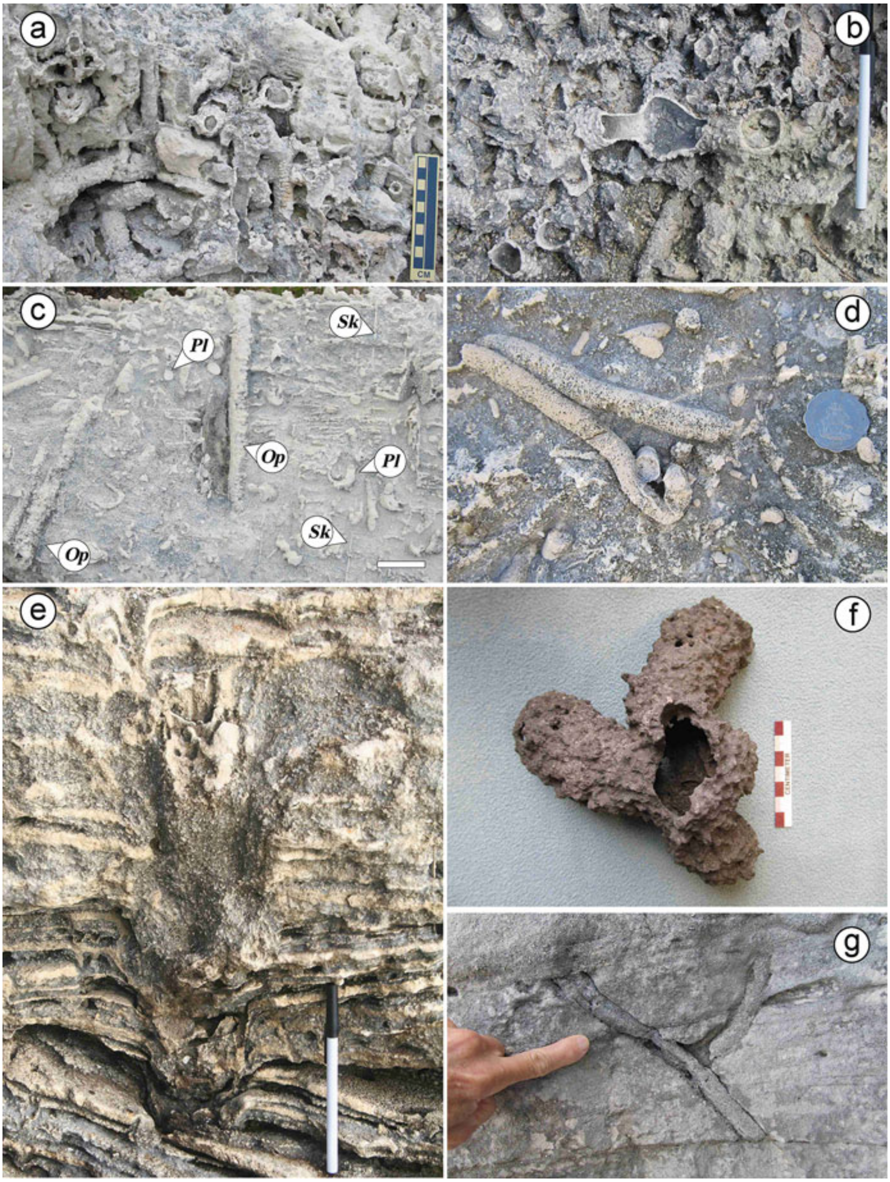


Fig. 9.30 Characteristic trace fossils from Pleistocene–Holocene Bahamian-type carbonates. (**a**) Closely-packed *Ophiomorpha nodosa* in shallow-subtidal, coral-rich grainstone, Upper Pleistocene, Cockburn Town Member, Grotto Beach Formation, Cockburn Town Fossil Coral Reef, San Salvador; (**b**) *Ophiomorpha nodosa* tunnels and shafts, bedding-plane view, same age and location as (**a**), pen is 15 cm in length: (**c**) Shallow-subtidal grainstone with abundant *Ophiomorpha nodosa* (Op), *Planolites* isp. (Pl), and *Skolithos linearis* (Sk), Upper Pleistocene, Cockburn Town Member, Grotto Beach Formation, Harry Cay, Little Exuma, scale bar is 2.5 cm; (**d**) Well-lithified *Planolites*, same age and location as (**c**); coin is 1.8 cm; (**e**) *Conichnus conicus*, a structure commonly attributed to the resting and upward-movement activity of sea anemones, in

macrobioerosion comes from the study of rocky shorelines, which are abundantly preserved in Miocene-Pliocene deposits. Clionaid sponges, echinoids, bivalves, gastropods, polychaete worms, and barnacles are the dominant members of the bioerosion community in hardgrounds and carbonate rocky shorelines, as documented in a large number of studies (e.g., Radwański 1970, 1977; Bromley and Asgaard 1993a, b; Mikulás and Pek 1995; Martinell and Domènech 1995; D'Alessandro and Massari 1997; de Gibert and Martinell 1998; Domènech et al. 2001; Bromley et al. 2009; Caracuel et al. 2011; Demírcan 2012; Pineda-Salgado et al. 2015). Typical ichnogenera include *Entobia*, *Gastrochaenolites*, *Maeandropolydora*, *Centrichnus*, *Caulostrepsis*, *Trypanites*, *Gnathichnus*, *Conchotrema*, *Oichnus*, *Phrixichnus*, *Radulichnus*, *Renichnus*, and *Rogerella*.

Shells and clasts are also host to a wide variety of bioerosion structures (e.g., Martinell and Domènech 1995; Kim and Heo 1997; de Gibert and Martinell 1998; Doyle et al. 1998; Pickerill and Donovan 1998; Farinati and Zavala 2002; Santos et al. 2003a, b, 2005, 2011). Detailed studies by Bromley and Asgaard (1993a) on a coastal karst surface on the island of Rhodes in Greece demonstrated a complex tiering structure with multiple ichnoguilds, namely the *Oichnus* ichnoguild (vagile, predator, very shallow-tier), the *Radulichnus*-*Gnathichnus* ichnoguild (vagile, algal grazer, surficial), the *Centrichnus*-*Renichnus* ichnoguild (permanent, predator, very shallow-tier), the *Entobia* ichnoguild (permanent, suspension-feeding, mid- to deep-tier), the *Trypanites*-*Caulostrepsis*-*Maeandropolydora* ichnoguild (vagile, predator, deposit feeder, and suspension feeder, deep-tier), and the *Gastrochaenolites*-*Phrixichnus* ichnoguild (permanent, suspension-feeding, deep-tier). This level of complexity in tiering structure remains undocumented for older macrobioeroding communities, although it is unclear if this is real or due to a paucity of observations.

Whale falls provided a suitable substrate for bioerosion during the Neogene (Muñiz et al. 2010; Belaústegui et al. 2012; Higgs et al. 2012). Bioerosion structures ascribed to the annelid *Osedax* (*Trypanites*) and bivalves (*Gastrochaenolites*) have been recorded in whale skeletons (Muñiz et al. 2010; Belaústegui et al. 2012; Higgs et al. 2012). From a microbioerosion standpoint, no major evolutionary innovations seem to have arisen during the Neogene (Glaub and Vogel 2004). In fact, the more recent compilation by Wisshak et al. (2006) indicated a decrease in ichnodiversity at ichnospecies level.

Walker and Brett (2002) indicated a new phase of predator intensification during the Neogene. Buccinid gastropods also diversified by the Neogene, further increasing frequency and intensity of durophagy (Walker and Brett 2002). Sea otters, which appeared by the Miocene, may have contributed to shell damage as well (Walker and Brett 2002). Overall, both drilling predation on gastropods and bivalves and shell repair frequencies seem to have increased during the Neogene, although not all estimates in this regard are consistent (Allmon et al. 1990; Kelley and Hansen 1993; Alexander and Dietl 2003).

To summarize, from an ichnologic perspective, the information available suggests that the shallow-marine Neogene is indistinguishable from the modern regarding both bioturbation and bioerosion structures. Shallow-marine ichnofaunas display a continued ichnodiversity increase, as well as more complex tiering structures, albeit without any significant change in overall taxonomic composition. A further increase in predation pressure also is evident (Huntley and Kowalewski 2007), most likely as a result of activity of predators such as stomatopod crustaceans and marine mammals.

9.4 The Paleoenvironmental Breadth of the Mesozoic Marine Revolution

Although the MMR essentially took place in shallow-water, fully marine settings (but see Walker and Voight 1994), its expression in other ecosystems, such as the deep sea and marginal-marine, brackish-water settings, also can be evaluated by the analysis of the trace-fossil record. Colonization of the deep sea has been analyzed in detail by Uchman (2003, 2004). He noted that the end-Permian mass extinction did not appear to have played a major role in decreasing trace-fossil diversity in the deep sea. His studies indicated that ichnodiversity in deep-marine environments displayed nonlinear changes, with peaks in the Late Jurassic–Early Cretaceous and Eocene, reaching a maximum in the latter and decreasing afterward. Irregular echinoids and decapod crustaceans, key players of the MMR in shallow seas at least since the Early Jurassic, apparently arrived to the deep sea by the Late Jurassic, as indicated by the presence of *Ophiomorpha* (Fig. 9.31a–d) and *Scolicia* (Fig. 9.31f–g) in turbidite deposits (Tchoumatchenco and Uchman 2001). The ichnogenus *Thalassinoides* is also relatively common in deep-marine deposits (Fig. 9.31e). The pellet-filled burrow *Tubotomaculum* seems to be restricted to deep-marine settings, which is consistent with the cache strategy used by its crustacean tracemaker (García-Ramos et al. 2014). Holothurids, as represented by the ichnogenus *Artichnus* (and its potential senior synonym *Naviculichnium*; Fig. 9.31h), can be added to this list. These bioturbators may have intensely ploughed the sea floor, increasing irrigation of oxygenated waters, and thereby deepening the redox discontinuity surface, which in turn allowed for colonization of deep tiers (Uchman 2004). *Scolicia* and *Ophiomorpha* show an increase in frequency of occurrence from the Late Cretaceous to the Eocene (Uchman 2004). Ichnologic information seems to suggest that the effects of the MMR were slightly delayed in the deep sea. Body-fossil information from deep-sea deposits is patchy, but Walker and Voight (1994) showed the existence of complex ecological interactions in Cenozoic deep-water gastropods, including high rates of shell repair in large specimens, pointing toward intense predation pressures in the deep sea.

The temporal changes in brackish-water ichnofaunas have been addressed by Buatois et al. (2005), who noted that, as in the case of the deep sea, the end-Permian mass extinction apparently did not play a major role. These authors suggested that the colonization of marginal-marine habitats did not occur at a constant rate, but rather in a number of discrete phases. Two phases relevant to understanding the expression of the MMR in brackish-water ecosystems were identified: Jurassic–Paleogene and Neogene–Recent. The Jurassic–Paleogene phase was marked by an

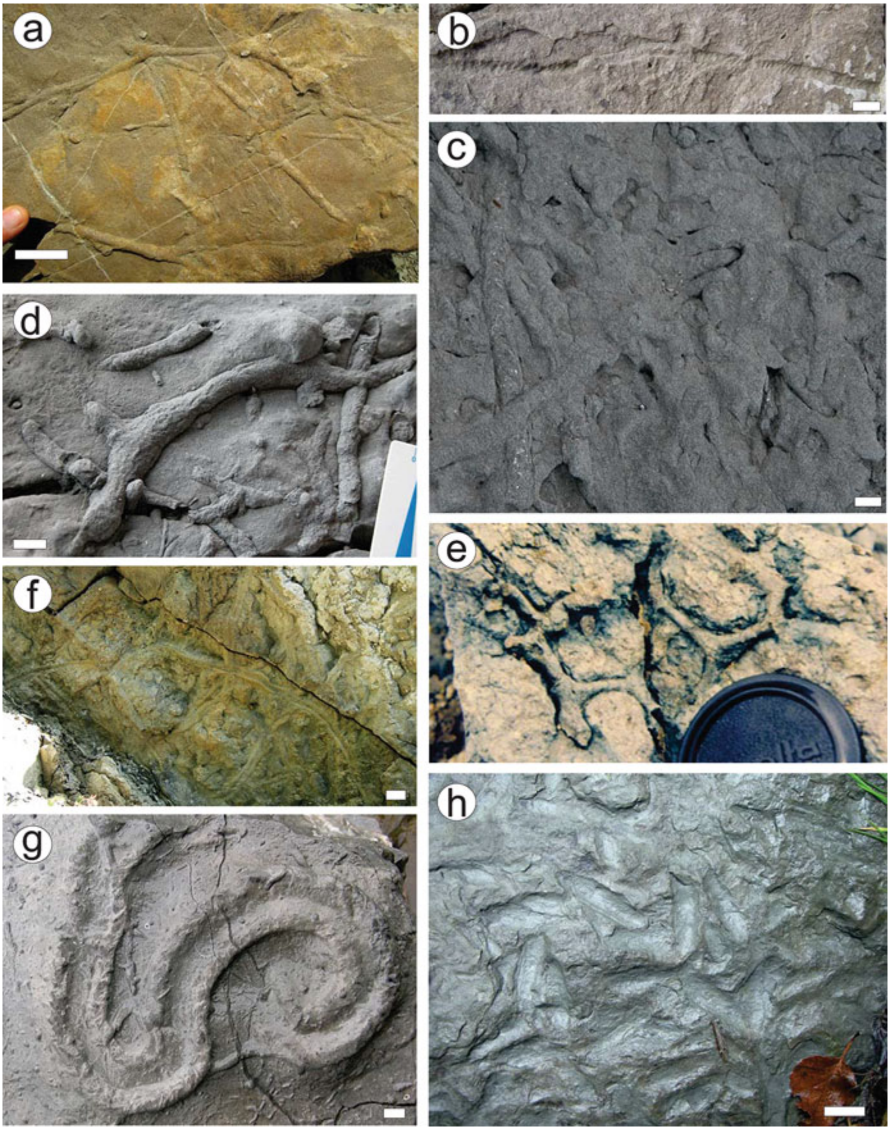


Fig. 9.31 Ichnologic representatives of the MMR in deep-marine environments. (**a**) *Ophiomorpha annulata*, Upper Eocene-Lower Oligocene, Ceylan Formation, Gelibolu Peninsula, western Turkey; (**b**) Close-up of *Ophiomorpha annulata* showing the diagnostic pelletoidal walls, Upper Eocene-Lower Oligocene, Ceylan Formation, Gelibolu Peninsula, western Turkey; (**c**) General view of surface with *Ophiomorpha rudis*, Middle to Upper Eocene, Cerro Colorado Formation, Cerro Colorado, Tierra del Fuego, Argentina; (**d**) Close-up of *Ophiomorpha rudis*, Middle to Upper Eocene, Cerro Colorado Formation, Cerro Colorado, Tierra del Fuego, Argentina; (**e**) *Thalassinoides suevicus*, Lower Cretaceous, Whisky Bay Formation, James Ross Island, Antarctica; (**f**) *Scolicia strozzi* at base of a thick-bedded sandstone turbidite, Eocene, Piwniczna Sandstone Member, Magura Formation, Tylmanowa-Baszta, Polish Carpathians; (**g**) *Scolicia* isp. at base of a thin-bedded sandstone turbidite, Upper Cretaceous–Paleocene, Ropianka Formation, Słopnice, Polish Carpathians; (**h**) High density of *Artichnus pholeoides*, a possible junior synonym of *Naviculichnium marginatum*, a burrow produced by holothurians, Eocene, Magura Formation, Tymbark-Miasto, Polish Carpathians. Lens cap diameter is 5.5 cm and *scale bars* are 1 cm

increase in ichnodiversity and degree of bioturbation in estuarine facies. In addition, colonization was not restricted to softgrounds and firmgrounds, but took place in hardground and xylic substrates as well. As in the case of fully marine ichnofaunas, the Neogene–Recent phase recorded the rise of the modern brackish-water benthos, accompanied by a further increase in ichnodiversity and intensity of bioturbation. Furthermore, cemented surfaces, shells, and clasts began to be colonized by sponges, polychaetes, gastropods, and bivalves, reflecting radiation of several groups of borers into brackish water. Most of the main players of the MMR in fully marine settings, such as decapod crustaceans, bivalves, and worms, were also dominant in brackish-water settings (Fig. 9.32a–f). Irregular echinoids, because of their lack of tolerance to dilution of normal marine salinity, were the exception, and continued for the most part to be restricted to fully marine settings.

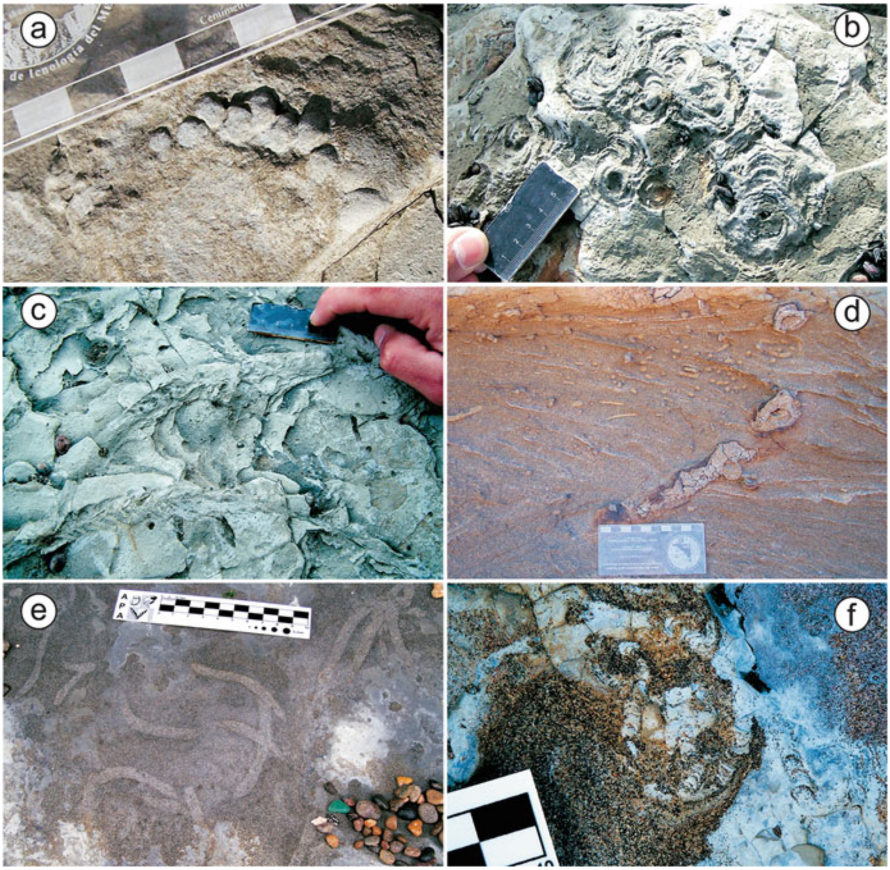


Fig. 9.32 Ichnologic representatives of the MMR in marginal-marine environments. (**a**) *Nereites* isp., bedding plane view; (**b**) *Asterosoma* isp., bedding plane view; (**c**) *Protovirgularia* isp., bedding-plane view; (**a–c**) prodelta deposits, Monte León Formation, Lower Miocene, Argentina; (**d**) *Rosselia socialis* and *Macaronichnus* isp. in cross-section view; (**e**) *Macaronichnus*, bedding-plane view; (**f**) *Nereites* isp., bedding-plane view; (**d–f**) delta-front deposits, Chenque Formation, Lower Miocene, Argentina

9.5 Behavioral Evolution and Environmental Shifts

In addition to the arrival to the deep sea of crustaceans and echinoids capable of creating extensive burrow systems during the MMR, other ichnotaxa experienced environmental shifts coupled with behavioral changes. This is particularly well illustrated by the trace fossil *Zoophycos*, which records a change in morphology and in penetration depth and inferred behavior of the producer during the MMR (e.g., Seilacher 1986; Chamberlain 2000; Kotake 2014; our Fig. 9.33a–e). The morphology of Paleozoic and early Mesozoic *Zoophycos* is relatively simple, consisting of irregularly lobate, "rooster tail"-like spreiten (Fig. 9.34a) with the tendency to turn into a spiral (Seilacher 1986; our Fig. 9.34b–c). In addition, forms were described with lobate spreiten deviating at several levels from a central shaft (e.g., Knaust 2004; Chamberlain 2000; Fig. 9.34d). Normally these *Zoophycos* were emplaced in a shallow-tier position, and the producers followed a sediment-feeding behavior (e.g., Knaust 2004). The host sediment is commonly muddy sand to sandy mud that accumulated in shallow-marine waters from above wave base to outer shelf settings (e.g., Bottjer et al. 1988). Some specimens, however, have been reported from deeper-water deposits, but these occurrences are rare (e.g., Wetzel et al. 2007). Morphologically similar *Zoophycos* specimens occur in fairly high abundance until the Middle Jurassic (Seilacher 1986).

However, since the Late Triassic, *Zoophycos* producers tended to move to deeper-water settings, and *Zoophycos* became sparse in deposits that accumulated above storm-wave base. Late Jurassic shelf settings immediately below storm-wave base were mostly abandoned by *Zoophycos* producers, and since the Oligocene outer-shelf settings also were almost no longer utilized by these tracemakers (Bottjer et al. 1988), with just a few exceptions (e.g., Carmona et al. 2008, 2012). Instead, the *Zoophycos* producers migrated to deeper-water environments (e.g., Seilacher 1986), and today they inhabit continental slope and abyssal plain sediments virtually exclusively (e.g., Wetzel 1991).

This shift in the habitat was accompanied by an evolution of behavior recorded by the formation of multi-lobate and coiled, increasingly complex spreite of *Zoophycos* (Seilacher 1986; Chamberlain 2000; Kotake 2014; our Fig. 9.34e–f), along with an increase in size (area occupied by an individual specimen) and penetration depth. The latter is documented by cross-cutting relationships with other burrows. Cretaceous *Zoophycos* was commonly cut by *Chondrites* (e.g., Frey and Bromley 1985), and *Chondrites* and *Zoophycos* may occupy the same tier in Upper Cretaceous chalks (Bromley and Ekdale 1984b), whereas today *Zoophycos* represents the deepest tier and cross-cuts all other burrows including *Chondrites* (e.g., Wetzel and Werner 1981). Furthermore, a change in nutritional behavior can be inferred, with a strip-mining, sediment-feeding strategy suggested for the Triassic (Knaust 2004) and even Middle Jurassic (Olivero and Gaillard 1996). For modern *Zoophycos,* a temporary-cache producer behavior can be deduced from material within the spreite that is significantly younger than the host sediment (e.g., Löwemark and Grootes 2004). Some *Zoophycos* producers may have employed a cache strategy as early as the Cretaceous, as some spreite exhibit obvious color

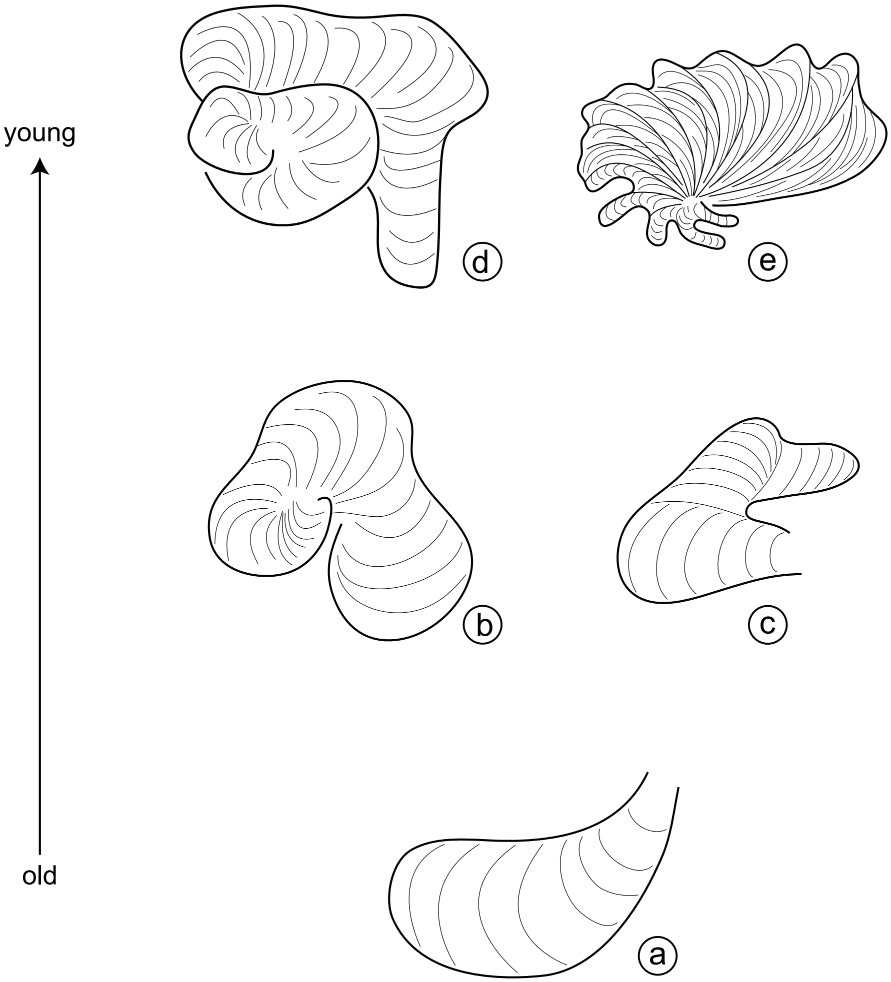


Fig. 9.33 Evolution of *Zoophycos* (based on Seilacher 1977 and Chamberlain 2000). (**a**) Basic, protrusive "rooster tail"-shaped spreite, which occurred in the Palaeozoic and is still produced today; (**b**) Continuous coiled spreite form, which occurred for the first time in the late Paleozoic to early Mesozoic; (**c**) Discontinuously formed spreite consisting of several "rooster-tail"-like spreite one attached to the side/tip of another, a morphology recorded for the first time in the late Paleozoic to early Mesozoic; (**d**) Multiply coiled, helicoidal spreite typical of the Mesozoic onward; (**e**) Helicoidal spreite system consisting of laterally assembled "rooster tail"-like spreite, also typical of the Mesozoic onward (redrawn from Seilacher 2007)

changes between lamellae of the spreite and with the host sediment as well. This can hardly be explained solely by in situ sediment sorting (for instance, see Fig. 3F in Locklair and Savrda 1998). However, this observation has not yet been investigated in detail. Furthermore, with time, it appears that the *Zoophycos* producers increasingly preferred muddy substrates.

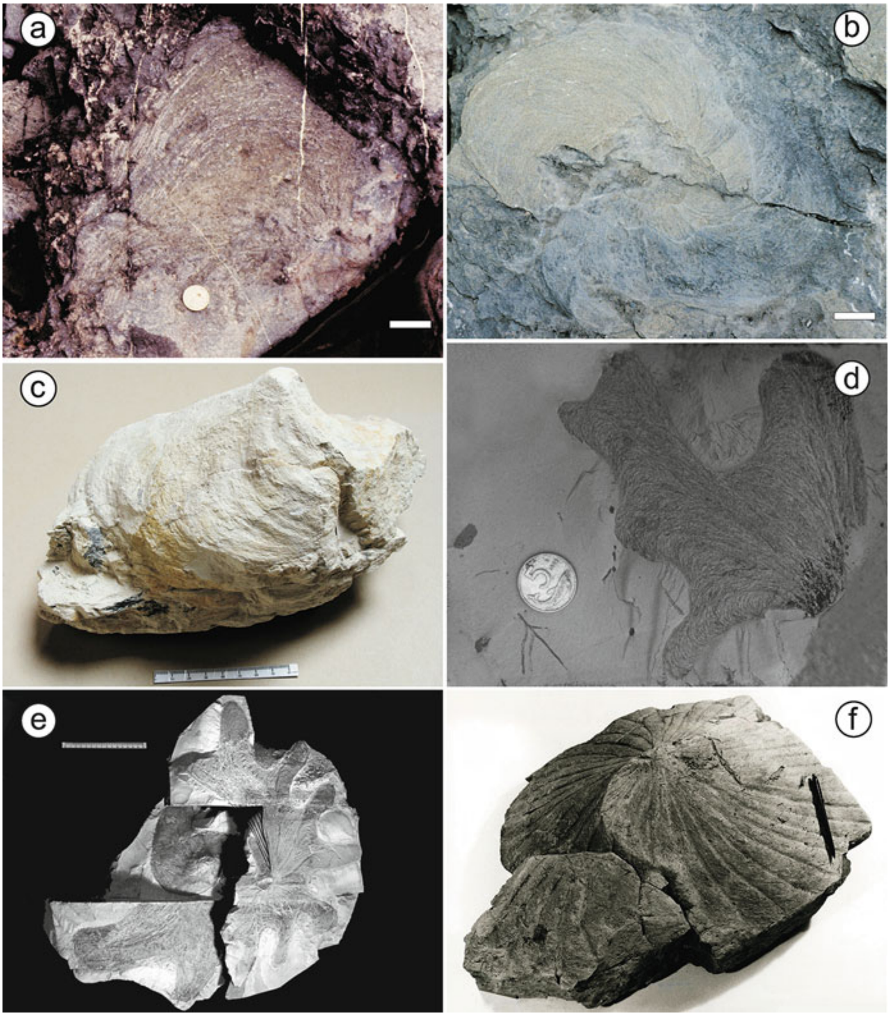


Fig. 9.34 Evolution of *Zoophycos*. (**a**) Simple, "rooster-tail"-like *Zoophycos* from Lower Carboniferous limestone deposited near storm wave-base, near Ogmore-by-Sea, Great Britain (for further details see Wu 1982); (**b**) Simply coiled *Zoophycos* from Bajocian siliciclastic fine-grained deposits near Hauenstein (northern Switzerland); (**c**) Excavated coiled *Zoophycos* specimen from Upper Cretaceous pelagic limestone ("Scaglia") north of Sciacca (Sicily, Italy); (**d**) Lobate *Zoophycos* from Upper Cretaceous Flysch showing major and minor lamellae (near Gropello, northern Italy); (**e**) *Zoophycos* from the Paleogene Flysch in the Apennine near Florence, on display in the Institut und Museum für Geologie und Paläontologie, University of Tübingen in 1995. The specimen was discovered by A. Seilacher, prepared by H. Luginsland and photographed by W. Wetzel (all Tübingen at that time); courtesy of A. Seilacher (for details see Seilacher 2007, plate 38 h); (**f**) *Zoophycos* with major and minor lamellae from Seravallian-Tortonian pelagic Marne ad Orbulina near Monte Aquilone (Latium, Italy); courtesy of P. Belotti (Roma, Italy), original figure (fig. 8) and further details in Bellotti and Valeri (1978)

The stratigraphic distribution of the U-shaped ichnogenus *Rhizocorallium* also seems to show some connection with the MMR. Knaust (2013) reviewed the taxonomy of *Rhizocorallium*, concluding that only two ichnospecies are valid, *R. commune* and *R. jenense*, although ichnosubspecies and varieties are recognized. *Rhizocorallium commune* is known since the Cambrian and has not displayed significant morphologic change, although size has shown some variation through the Phanerozoic, essentially an increase through the Paleozoic, with a decrease after the end-Permian mass extinction, followed by a time of new size increase (Knaust 2013). This ichnospecies has been attributed to worms (Knaust 2013). On the contrary, *Rhizocorallium jenense* originated in the Triassic, reflecting an adaptation to firm substrates that was unknown prior to the MMR, and having been produced most likely by crustaceans. Also, as is the case for *Zoophycos*, *Rhizocorallium* seems to show environmental shifts through time. In particular, *Rhizocorallium commune* is common in shallow-marine environments during the Paleozoic and Mesozoic, becoming relatively abundant in the deep sea during the Cenozoic (Knaust 2013).

9.6 Evolution of the Mixed Layer

The evolution of the uppermost interval of the seafloor, the mixed layer, cannot be described step-by-step over long time spans. This layer is homogeneous in appearance and lacks other diagnostic characteristics (Fig. 9.35a–d). Thus, its crucial parameter is only its thickness, the so-called mixed layer depth (e.g., Boudreau 1998). However, the mixed layer depth cannot be measured in continuously accumulating deposits, because deeper penetrating inhabitants of the transitional layer normally overprint the homogeneous ichnofabric (Wetzel 1981; Werner and Wetzel 1982). Therefore, the preservation potential of the mixed layer is low. Only in the case of frozen tiering resulting from abrupt de-oxygenation or non-erosive deposition of event beds will the mixed layer be preserved in the rock record (e.g., Savrda and Bottjer 1986; Savrda and Ozalas 1992). Evidence of the mixed layer can be detected, albeit indirectly, by the presence of burrow mottlings that are cross-cut by discrete trace fossils emplaced in the transition layer.

Today the mixed layer of the seafloor is normally up to 10 cm thick as defined by excess concentration of radiotracers (e.g., Boudreau 1998). In the rock record, however, the mixed layer thickness can be determined less exactly because its boundary to the transitional layer is gradational (Fig. 9.35b). The homogeneous appearance of the mixed layer is due to the production of biodeformational structures by meiofauna and crypto-bioturbators, shallowly burrowing macrofauna, or even bulldozing megafauna. These organisms utilize the organic matter close to or on the sediment surface and process the deposits in a way such that no discrete traces are left. Furthermore, a homogeneous appearance is favored by the very soft to soupy sediment consistency. Mixed layer depth also depends on environmental conditions, in particular (1) penetration depth of burrows; and (2) burrow diameter, with both decreasing with

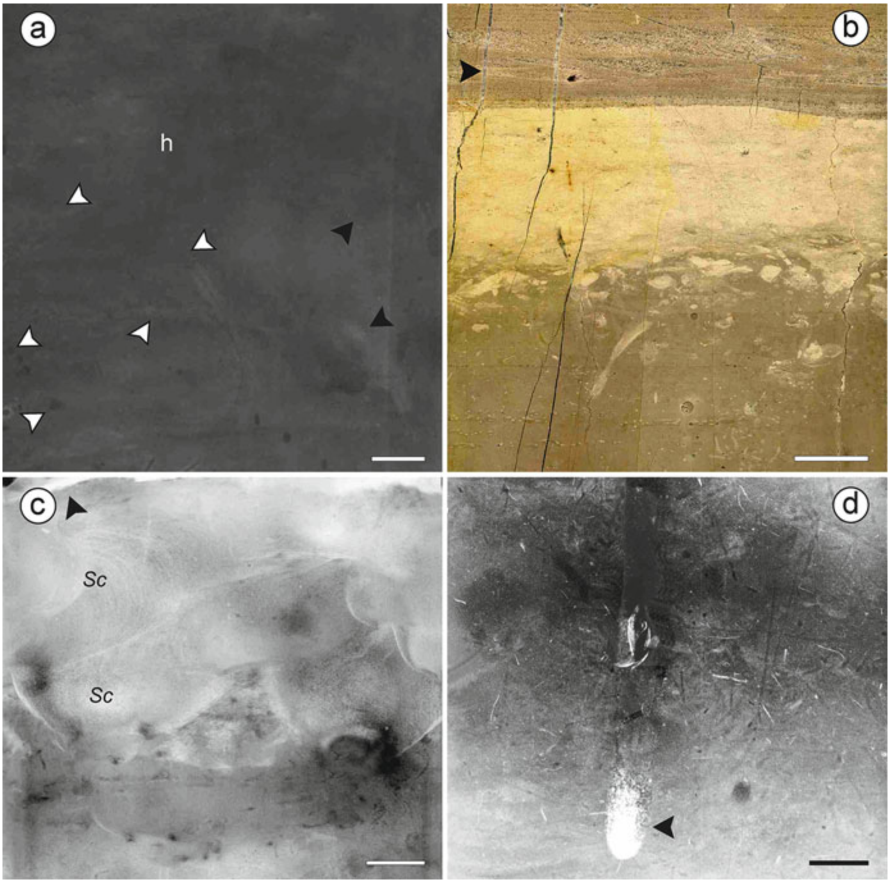


Fig. 9.35 Mixed layer traces. (**a**) Mixed layer (h) in modern muddy sediment; upper boundary of the transitional layer is marked by the occurrence of lined tubes (*black arrows*) or fairly sharp bounded sand-filled *Planolites*-like burrows (*white arrows*). Core Sonne 220 34–1 (19° 14.06′ N/108° 9.23′ E), South China Sea, 50 m water depth; for details see Wiesner et al. 2012); (**b**) Frozen-tiering structure underneath a low- to non-erosive turbidite having hydraulically light foraminifera shells at the base. The transition between mixed layer and transitional layer is gradational and occupies about ¼ of the maximum thickness of the transitional layer (~4 cm). Upper Cretaceous flysch from the area of Gropello, northern Italy; (**c**) *Scolicia* isp. (*Sc*) producers burrowing into the mixed layer from below and extinguishing it to a high degree; lower boundary of a recently deposited event layer is marked by an arrow. Core Sonne 132 35–1 (13° 37.12′ N/119° 58.43′ E), South China Sea, 3202 m water depth; for details see Wiesner et al. 1998), 0–13 cm core depth; (**d**) Basal part of a *Thalassinoides* filled with foraminifera shells (*arrow*) that have been collected by the burrow producer from the seafloor, probably as additional food source. In this way benthic food content of the mixed layer was lowered by a transitional-layer inhabitant. Core 12345–5 (15° 28.8′ N/17° 21.6 W), off NW Africa, 966 m water depth; for details see Wetzel 1981), 107–120 cm core depth

decreasing oxygenation and benthic food content (e.g., Wetzel and Uchman 2012). In turn, the burial of organic matter is affected by the sedimentation rate (e.g., Müller and Suess 1979).

Over geologic time, mixed-layer producers became capable of burrowing to increasingly greater depths. A behavioral evolution is also evident for burrows produced by inhabitants of the transitional layer. Besides a trend to explore increasingly deeper intervals within the seafloor, the burrow producers expanded their behavioral programs to supplement limited food resources. With respect to the mixed layer, three strategies of transitional-layer inhabitants are of importance, (1) temporary feeding directly on the sediment surface; (2) burrowing upward into the mixed layer from below; and (3) taking benthic food from the sediment surface to store in a cache. Again, with time, the number and abundance of ichnogenera exhibiting such behavioral programs increased. For example, the producers of some *Nereites* or *Scolicia* feed temporarily on or close to the sediment surface, respectively (Fig. 9.35c; Wetzel 2008), and the producers of *Zoophycos* and *Thalassinoides* can construct and utilize caches (Fig. 9.35d; e.g., Dworschak 1987; Löwemark and Werner 2001).

Mixed layer thickness is affected by two long-term strategies of burrowing organisms. The inhabitants of the mixed layer tend to expand their habitat vertically, whereas deep-burrowing organisms living in the transitional layer utilize food resources from the mixed layer. The mixed-layer inhabitants, however, often respond more rapidly to environmental changes. Therefore, thickness of the mixed layer, as evidenced by its homogeneous appearance, may fluctuate even during the course of a year, depending on oxygenation and benthic food supply and overprinting (competition) by transitional-layer inhabitants. Consequently, for an analysis of the development of the mixed layer, it is necessary to compare mixed layers that formed within similar environmental settings over geologic time. Given the low fossilization potential of the mixed layer, the data available at present are too sparse for drawing detailed conclusions. In any case, available ichnologic information suggests that the origin of the modern mixed layer can be traced back at least to the Mesozoic.

9.7 Role of Paleogeography and Climate

There is growing evidence that trace fossils may reveal paleogeographic patterns (e.g., Jensen et al. 2013), and that infaunalization trajectories may have been disparate in the different oceans surrounding various paleocontinents (e.g., Mángano and Buatois 2011) during the Cambrian explosion (see Chap. 3) and the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event (see Chap. 4). Here we will explore potential similar ichnologic trends in connection with the MMR.

Understanding the role of paleogeography and climate on the MMR and its potential ichnologic expression is still in its infancy. However, information from modern environments provides an actualistic base that may help to detect potential patterns in the post-Paleozoic world. Thayer (1983) indicated that deposit-feeding taxa in warm-water settings tend to disturb sediment at a greater rate than is the case in cold-water regimes. Cadée (2001) noted an increase in degree of bioturbation and diversity from high-latitude Arctic coasts to low-latitude warm coasts. In addition, he pointed to latitudinal faunal changes, with a diverse callianassid and crab fauna in low latitudes, which is absent or has low diversity in Arctic regions. In the same vein, irregular echinoids tend to display a preference for low- and mid-latitudes (Goldring et al. 2004, 2007). Goldring and coworkers expanded these ideas, by integrating observations from modern environments with information from the Mesozoic and Cenozoic trace-fossil record. According to their model, the distribution of the benthos and associated biogenic structures can be summarized for the three major climatic zones: (1) tropics and subtropics with *Ophiomorpha* and echinoid trace fossils; (2) temperate zone with echinoid trace fossils and *Thalassinoides;* and (3) high latitude zone with only mollusk and worm trace fossils. Gingras et al. (2006) extended the dominance of mollusk and worm burrows to the temperate zone. In addition, Quiroz et al. (2010) summarized available information on the polychaete trace fossil *Macaronichnus*, demonstrating its preference for high to mid latitudes (see also Gingras et al. 2006).

Interestingly, Quiroz et al. (2010) noted the general absence of *Macaronichnus* in Paleocene to lower Eocene deposits, and interpreted this pattern as a result of overall high temperatures and expansion of subtropical belts during these times (Zachos et al. 2001; Hollis et al. 2009). Quiroz et al. (2010) also noted that the few middle to upper Eocene occurrences are from high latitudes (e.g., Olivero et al. 2008; Pearson et al. 2013), most likely reflecting the transition to overall colder climates by these times.

These trends are, however, not without exceptions. Both *Ophiomorpha* and *Scolicia* are abundant in Miocene mid-latitude shallow-marine deposits of Patagonia under temperate to cold climates, representing a departure to the proposed pattern (Buatois et al. 2003; Carmona et al. 2008). Also, *Macaronichnus* has been documented in the Neogene low-latitude nearshore deposits of Venezuela, representing an apparent anomaly to the overall pattern (Quiroz et al. 2010). However, as noted by these authors, this occurrence most likely reflects coastal upwelling of nutrient-rich cold waters, which was extensive in the Caribbean prior to the final closure of the Panama Isthmus in the Pliocene (O'Dea et al. 2007). Despite potential shortcomings, it seems that the present geographic distribution of infaunal organisms can be traced back to the onset of the MMR.

Ongoing research by Olivero and López-Cabrera (2014) indicates that complex spreite burrows, such as *Paradictyodora* and *Euflabella*, appear to be restricted to southern high paleolatitudes during the Late Cretaceous. Strong seasonal variations in primary production and cooling may have promoted the establishment of specialized strategies and behaviors. These authors also noted that this pattern in trace-fossil distribution parallels the increased provincialism in bivalves and ammonites during the Late Cretaceous in southern Gondwana, reflecting concurrent paleogeographical restrictions in the benthos and nekton.

Predation pressures in modern oceans also display a geographic component (Vermeij 1978, 1987). He noted that predation is apparently more intense in the

Western Pacific and Indian Oceans than in the Atlantic Ocean, with the Eastern Pacific occupying an intermediate position. From an ichnologic standpoint, this is revealed by contrasting frequencies of shell repair in neritid and terebrid gastropods in the different oceans. However, tracking these trends back in time to assess a paleogeographic component of escalation is still premature. Also, information from modern environments indicates that predation levels are higher in the tropics (Freestone et al. 2011).

9.8 Discussion: Secular Changes in Bioturbation and Ichnofaunas and the Mesozoic Marine Revolution

The pattern in trace-fossil distribution during the Mesozoic and Cenozoic as previously outlined provides a basis to discuss further how the MMR is expressed in the ichnologic record. First, evaluation of the trace-fossil record may help to detect the timing of this major evolutionary event. In this regard, the Triassic can be viewed as setting the stage for the revolution, albeit with burrows by decapod crustaceans already becoming dominant in carbonate settings (e.g., Knaust 2007). Interestingly, the MMR appears to be at full speed by the Early Jurassic. This is evidenced not only by the increased role of decapod crustaceans, but also by other key players of the Modern Evolutionary Fauna, such as irregular echinoids and bivalves. Infaunal tiering structure also displays a remarkable increase in complexity at this time (Fig. 9.36). The dominant tracemakers remained essentially the same during the rest of the Mesozoic and through the Cenozoic. Complexity of infaunal tiering structures also did not exhibit any further increase until the Neogene (Fig. 9.36). If this chronology is correct, then infaunalization resulting from the MMR can be viewed as a relatively rapid process followed by a long period of stasis. This pattern, essentially based on the analysis of the ichnologic record, is partially consistent with that derived from the analysis of the body-fossil record. In a series of classic studies (Ausich and Bottjer 1982, 1985; Bottjer and Ausich 1986), the tiering history of both infaunal and epifaunal communities of suspension feeders was assessed. These studies demonstrated that epifaunal suspension feeders were strongly affected by the end-Permian mass extinction, showing a relatively rapid recovery in the Triassic, reaching a plateau of maximum diversity during the Jurassic, a subsequent decrease through the Cretaceous, and then reaching another plateau in the Cenozoic. Infaunal suspension feeders displayed a remarkable increase in penetration depth by the late Paleozoic, being apparently unaffected by the end-Permian mass extinction and reaching a plateau all through the Mesozoic and Cenozoic. Ichnogeneric compilations show that the MMR was associated with an increase of global ichnodiversity of 35 % in marine environments (see Chap. 16).

Secondly, comparing the timing of infaunalization with respect to the timing of increase in predation pressures may yield some insights into the complexities of escalation. Although there are still doubts regarding secular changes in predation pressures, drilling apparently was not significant during the Jurassic (Harper 2003),

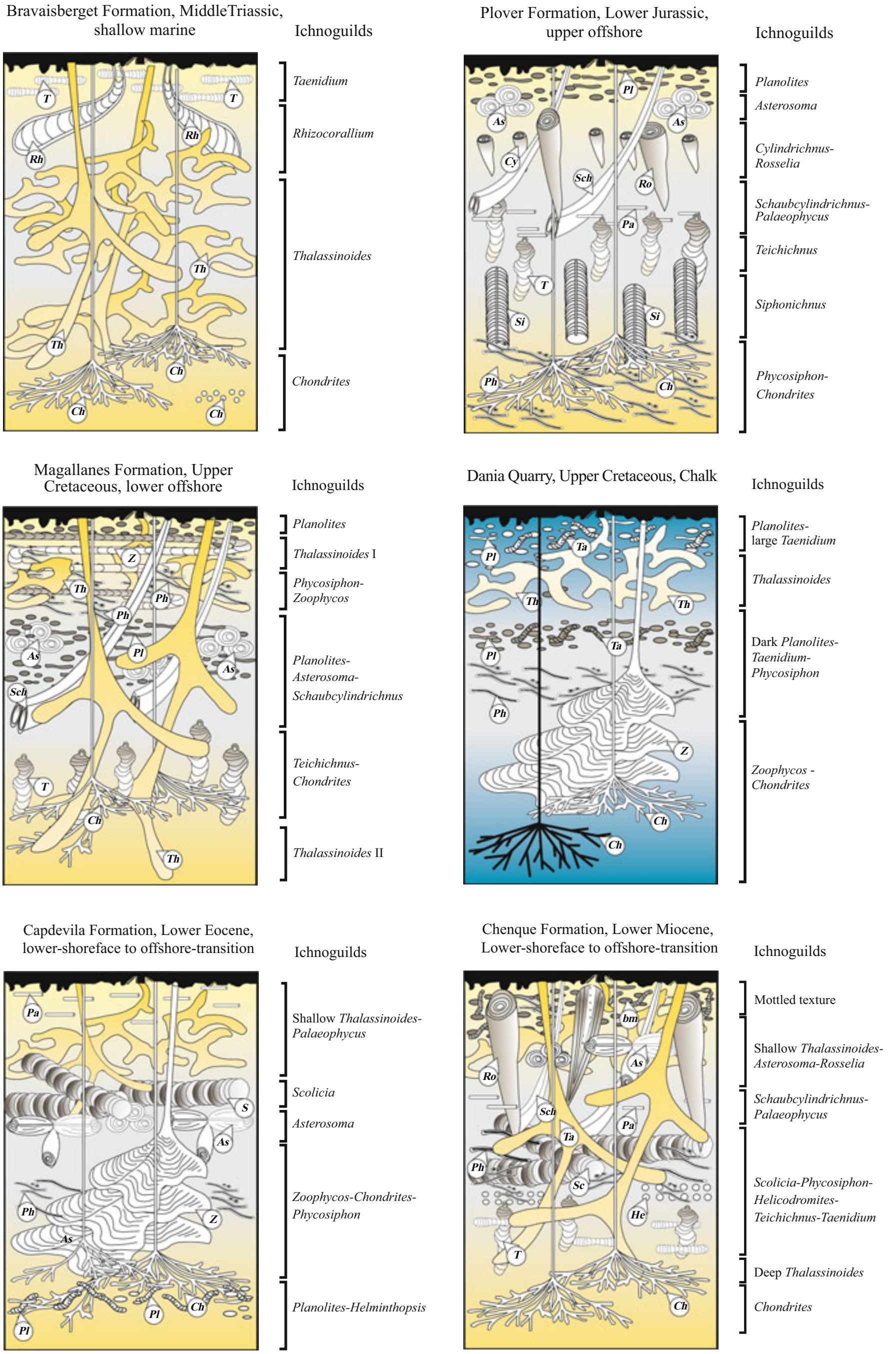


Fig. 9.36 Representative tiering structures and ichnoguilds from selected case studies illustrating infaunal colonization during and in the aftermath of the MMR. Note that by the Early Jurassic, complex tiering patterns have been established. However, an increase in complexity, particularly reflected by the increased number of ichnotaxa per ichnoguild, is apparent by the Miocene. Reconstructions based on Mørk and Bromley (2008); Burns et al. (2013); Buatois et al. (2013); Buatois et al. (2011); Ekdale and Bromley (1991); Villegas-Martín et al. (2014) and Carmona et al. (2012)

although durophagous predation may have displayed an increase in importance, albeit locally, by the Middle Jurassic (Zatoń and Salamon 2008). In any case, by the Cretaceous, predation pressures experienced a significant increase (Vermeij et al. 1981; Kelley and Hansen 2003). Therefore, ichnologic evidence suggests that infaunalization predates an overall increase of predation pressures by approximately 50 Myr. The infaunal environment is typically regarded as a haven from predation (Vermeij 1987) and, therefore, infaunalization could be perceived as an adaptive response to increased predation (Bottjer and Ausich 1986). However, the chronology presented above does not support this cause-effect scenario; rather a more complex set of feedback mechanisms between infaunalization and predation is thought to be the case. A similar conclusion was reached by McRoberts (2001) based on the analysis of Triassic bivalves. Interestingly, infaunalization occurring before an increase in predation has been noted during the Cambrian explosion as well (MacNaughton and Narbonne 1999). In the same vein, complex geobiologic feedbacks involving bioturbation have been invoked recently for the Cambrian diversification event (Mángano and Buatois 2014).

Thirdly, evaluation of the Mesozoic–Cenozoic ichnologic record provides impetus to revisit the bulldozing hypothesis of Thayer (1979, 1983), who proposed that biological disturbance increased through the Phanerozoic. Sediment disturbance tends to be greater when large, mobile bioturbators occur in dense populations (Thayer 1983). In particular, sediment bulldozers rank as the most efficient bioturbators, with their ability to displace sediment, manipulate sediment in burrowing and crawling, and manipulate sediment externally in feeding. Based on the integration of observations from modern environments with those from the fossil record, he noted that post-Paleozoic bioturbators rework sediment faster, tend to burrow deeper, and can generate shorter sediment-turnover times than Paleozoic taxa. The present review of the post-Paleozoic ichnologic record supports this view. In fact, it can be argued that a dramatic increase in sediment bulldozing is one of the diagnostic features of the MMR. Most, if not all, of the bioturbators ranked by Thayer (1983) as most efficient can be regarded as main players in the MMR. Examples include decapod crustaceans [e.g., *Callichirus major* (formerly *Callianassa major*) and many other callianassids, and the many species of *Uca*], clypeasteroid echinoderms (e.g., *Dendraster excentricus*), irregular echinoids (e.g., *Echinocardium cordatum*, *Meoma ventricosa*), tellinacean bivalves (e.g., *Macoma balthica*), protobranch bivalves (e.g., *Portlandia arctica*), and arenicolid polychaetes (e.g., *Abarenicola pacifica*). In addition to this list of invertebrates, it should be noted that marine mammals are important sediment bulldozers throughout Cenozoic (Thayer 1983). The turnover in ichnofaunal composition that took place in the early Mesozoic fully supports an impressive increase in sediment disturbance in connection with the MMR.

Fourth, it has long been argued that the fossil record indicates a pattern of onshore origination of evolutionary innovations and subsequent expansion of new forms to deeper water (Jablonski et al. 1983; Sepkoski and Miller 1985; Jablonski and Bottjer 1990; Sepkoski 1991; Jablonski 2005). Onshore-offshore trends are certainly displayed by individual ichnotaxa, such as *Zoophycos* (Bottjer et al. 1988) and *Rhizocorallium commune* (Knaust 2013). In the case of the innovations associated with the MMR, the pattern of trace-fossil distribution supports a delayed arrival to deep-marine settings. Whereas the changes of this significant evolutionary event were in place in shallow-water settings by the Early Jurassic, they may only have reached the deep sea by the Late Jurassic (Tchoumatchenco and Uchman 2001). Intense bioturbation in deep-marine sediments has been recorded at least since the Cretaceous (Ekdale 1977). In any case, biogenic mixing is even today much slower in the deep sea than in shelf areas (Thayer 1983).

9.9 Conclusions

The ichnologic record of the MMR provides information on various aspects of this major evolutionary event, such as the types of burrowers involved, the timing of this breakthrough, the complexity of infaunal tiering structures, the paleoenvironmental breadth of the event, and the interplay between predation and infaunalization, among other points. Crustaceans, bivalves, echinoids, and worms were arguably the most important burrowers. The MMR appears to be at full speed by the Early Jurassic, as indicated not only by the overall dominance of these key burrower groups, but also by the remarkable increase in complexity of tiering structures in shallow-marine deposits. The complexity of infaunal tiering structures did not experience further increase until the Neogene, suggesting that the MMR was a relatively rapid event followed by a long period of stasis. The MMR took place in shallow-water settings, both fully marine and brackish, by the Early Jurassic, but this evolutionary event may only have reached the deep sea by the Late Jurassic. Infaunalization predated an increase of predation pressures by approximately 50 Myr, suggesting a complex set of feedback mechanisms between predation and infaunalization rather than a cause-effect between the two. Ichnologic information suggests that post-Paleozoic bioturbators reworked sediment faster, tended to burrow deeper, and had shorter turnover times than Paleozoic taxa. Our review strongly supports the bulldozing hypothesis, indicating a dramatic rise in biogenic sediment disturbance during the MMR.

Acknowledgments We dedicate this chapter to our late colleague and friend Jordi de Gibert, who contributed significantly to our understanding of the evolutionary aspects of ichnology, particularly in connection with the origin of modern ecosystems. Many colleagues shared ichnologic examples from throughout the geologic column and all over the world that helped us greatly in developing our ideas on the trace-fossil record of the MMR and in illustrating representative ichnofaunas. These are Richard Bromley, Fiona Burns, Huriye Demírcan, Tony Ekdale, Jose Carlos García-Ramos, Murray Gingras, Stephen Hubbard, María Isabel López-Cabrera, James MacEachern, Francisco Medina, Eduardo Olivero, George Pemberton, Laura Piñuela, John Pollard, Juan Ponce, Francisco Rodríguez-Tovar, Tom Saunders, Ernesto Schwarz, Andy Taylor, and Alfred Uchman. Mark Wilson and Sally Walker greatly improved our manuscript with their reviews. Nic Minter gave us useful feedback on the modes of sediment interaction used in Table 9.1. The photographs used in Fig. 9.23 were provided by Ernesto Schwarz. Peter Pervesler and Nic Minter provided photographs of *Saronichnus* and *Hillichnus*, respectively. Juan Ponce helped us with preparation of the figures. Financial support for this study was provided by Natural

Sciences and Engineering Research Council (NSERC) Discovery Grants 311727–08 awarded to Mángano. Netto is supported by the research grants 305208/2010-1 and 311473/2013-0 awarded by The Brazilian Scientific and Technological Developing Council (CNPq). Carmona's research is funded by the Argentinean Research Council (PICT 2011–1373 and PICTO 2010–0199).

References

Abel O (1935) Vorzeitliche Lebensspuren. Gustav Fischer, Jena, 644 p

Abletz VV (1993) Trace fossils of Acrothoracica (Cirripedia) from the Eocene of the Krivoy Rog Basin. Paleontol J 27:73–80

Abletz VV (1994) Borings of phoronids from the Eocene of the Ukraine. Paleontol J 28:155–160

Ager DV, Walace P (1970) The distribution and significance of trace fossils in the Uppermost Jurassic rocks of the Boulonais, northern France. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace Fossils. Geol J Spec Issue 3. Seel House Press, Liverpool

Agirrezabala LM, de Gibert JM (2004) Paleodepth and paleoenvironment of *Dactyloidites ottoi* (Geinitz, 1849) from Lower Cretaceous deltaic deposits (Basque-Cantabrian Basin, west Pyrenees). Palaios 19:276–291

Alexander RR, Dietl GP (2003) The fossil record of shell-breaking predation on marine bivalves and gastropods. In: Kelley PH, Kowalewski M, Hansen TA (eds) Predator–prey interactions in the fossil record. Kluwer Academic-Plenum, New York

Allmon WD, Nieh JC, Norris RD (1990) Drilling and peeling of turritelline gastropods since the Late Cretaceous. Palaeontology 33:595–611

Arkell WJ (1939) U-shaped burrows in the Corallian Beds of Dorset. Geological Mag 76:455–460

Asgaard U, Bromley RG, Hanken N-M (1997) Recent firmground burrows produced by a upogebiid crustacean: palaeontological implications. Cour Forsch-Inst Senckenberg 210:23–28

Aubry MP, Bord D, Beaufort L, Kahn A, Boyd S (2005) Trends in size changes in the coccolithophorids, calcareous nannoplankton, during the Mesozoic: A pilot study. Micropaleontology 51:309–318

Ausich WI, Bottjer DJ (1982) Tiering in suspension feeding communities on soft substrate throughout the Phanerozoic. Science 216:173–174

Ausich WI, Bottjer DJ (1985) Phanerozoic tiering in suspension feeding communities on soft strata: implications for diversity. In: Valentine JW (ed) Phanerozoic diversity patterns: profiles in macroevolution. Princeton University Press, Princeton

Ayranci K, Dashtgard SE (2013) Infaunal holothurian distributions and their traces in the Fraser River delta front and prodelta, British Columbia, Canada. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 392:232–246

Ayranci K, Dashtgard SE, MacEachern JA (2014) A quantitative assessment of the neoichnology and biology of a delta front and prodelta, and implications for delta ichnology. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 409:114–134

Babić L, Zupanič J (1981) Various pore types in a Paleocene reef, Banja, Yugoslavia. In: Toomey DF (ed) European Fossil Reef Models. SEPM Spec P 30. SEPM, Tulsa

Babić L, Zupanič J (2000) Borings in mobile clasts from Eocene conglomerates of northern Dalmatia (coastal Dinarides, Croatia). Facies 42:51–57

Badve RM (1987) Reassessment of stratigraphy of Bagh Beds, Barwah area, Madhya Pradesh, with description of trace fossils. J Geol Soc India 30:106–120

Badve RM, Ghare MA (1978) Jurassic Ichnofauna of Kutch. Pt. I. Biovigyanam 4:125–140

Baldwin CT, McCave IN (1999) Bioturbation in an active deep-sea area: implications for models of trace fossil tiering. Palaios 14:375–388

Bambach RK (1983) Ecospace utilization and guilds in marine communities through the Phanerozoic. In: Tevesz MJS, McCall PL (eds) Biotic interactions in recent and fossil benthic communities. Plenus, New York

Bambach RK, Bush AM, Erwin DH (2007) Autecology and the filling of ecospace: key metazoan radiations. Palaeontology 50:1–22

Baniak GM, Gingras MK, Burns BA, Pemberton GS (2014) An example of a highly bioturbated, storm-influenced shoreface deposit: Upper Jurassic Ula Formation, Norwegian North Sea. Sedimentology 61:1261–1285

Barras CG, Twitchett RJ (2007) Response of the marine infauna to Triassic–Jurassic environmental change: ichnological data from southern England. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 244:223–241

Beatty TW, Zonneveld JP, Henderson CM (2008) Anomalously diverse Early Triassic ichnofossil assemblages in northwest Pangea: a case for a shallow–marine habitable zone. Geology 36:771–774

Belaústegui Z, de Gibert JM (2009) Icnofábrica de *Cylindrichnus* en el Mioceno de la costa de Tarragona (Cataluña, España). Paleolusitana 1:97–104

Belaústegui Z, de Gibert JM (2013) Bow-shaped, concentrically laminated polychaete burrows: A *Cylindrichnus concentricus* ichnofabric from the Miocene of Tarragona, NE Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 381–382:119–127

Belaústegui Z, Domènech R (2014) *Artichnus giberti* isp. nov., a possible holothurian burrow from the Miocene of El Camp de Tarragona Basin (NE Spain). Spanish J Palaeontol 29:143–150

Belaústegui Z, de Gibert JM, Domènech R, Muñiz F, Martinell J (2012) Clavate borings in a Miocene cetacean skeleton from Tarragona (NE Spain) and the fossil record of marine bone bioerosion. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 323–325:68–74

Belaústegui Z, de Gibert JM, López-Blanco M, Bajo I (2013) Recurrent constructional pattern of the crustacean burrow *Sinusichnus sinuosus* from the Paleogene and Neogene of Spain. Acta Palaeontol Pol 59:461–474

Belaústegui Z, Muñiz F, Domènech R, Martinell, J (2015a) Echinoderm ichnology: a state of the art. In Zamora S, Rábano I (eds) Progress in echinoderm palaeobiology. Cuadernos del Museo Geominero 19:1–4

Belaústegui Z, Domènech R, Martinell, J (2015b) Trace fossils of the Middle Miocene of the El Camp de Tarragona Basin (NE Spain). In: McIlroy D (ed) Proceedings of Ichnia 2012. Geol Ass Canada Misc P 9

Bell CM (2004) Asteroid and ophiuroid trace fossils from the Lower Cretaceous of Chile. Paleontology 47:51–66

Bellotti P, Valeri P (1978) L'influenza dell'ambiente sedimentario sull'assetto elicoidale delle strutture a *Zoophycos*. Boll Soc Geol Ital 97:675–685

Belt ES, Diemer JA, Beutner EC (1997) Marine ichnogenera within Torrejonian facies (Paleocene) of the Fort Union Formation, southeastern Montana. Cont Geol Univ Wyoming 32:3–18

Belt ES, Tibert NE, Curran HA, Diemer JA, Hartman JH, Kroeger TJ, Harwood DM (2005) Evidence for marine influence on a low-gradient coastal plain: ichnology and invertebrate paleontology of the lower Tongue River Member (Fort Union Formation, middle Paleocene), western Williston Basin, USA. Rocky Mt Geol 40:1–24

Berg LS (1940) Classification of fishes both Recent and fossil. Trudy Zoologicheskogo Instituta, Leningrad 5:87–517. Reprinted with English translation by the Thai National Documentation Centre, Bangkok.

Berger WH, Ekdale AA, Bryant PP (1979) Selective preservation of burrows in deep-sea carbonates. Mar Geol 32:205–230

Bernardi M, Boschele S, Ferretti P, Avanzini M (2010) Echinoid burrow *Bichordites monastiriensis* from the Oligocene of NE Italy. Acta Palaeontol Pol 55:479–486

Bernecker M, Weidlich O (1996) The Danian (Paleocene) coral limestone of Fakse, Denmark: a model for ancient aphotic, azooxanthellate coral mounds. Facies 22:103–138

Bertling M (1992) *Arachnostega* n. ichnog.—burrowing traces in internal moulds of boring bivalves (Late Jurassic, northern Germany). Paläontol Zeitschr 66:177–185

Bertling M (1999) Taphonomy of trace fossils at omission surfaces (Middle Triassic, East Germany). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 149:27–40

Bertling M, Insalaco E (1998) Late Jurassic coral/microbial reefs from the northern Paris Basin—facies, palaeoecology and palaeobiogeography. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 139:139–175

Boessenecker RW, Fordyce RE (2014) Trace fossil evidence of predation upon bone-eating worms on a baleen whale skeleton from the Oligocene of New Zealand. Lethaia

Bottjer DJ, Ausich WI (1986) Phanerozoic development of tiering in soft substrata suspension-feeding communities. Paleobiology 12:400–420

Bottjer DJ, Jablonski D (1988) Paleoenvironmental patterns in the evolution of post-Paleozoic benthic marine invertebrates. Palaios 3:540–560

Bottjer DJ, Droser ML, Jablonski D (1988) Palaeoenvironmental trends in the history of trace fossils. Nature 333:252–255

Boudreau BP (1998) Mean mixed depth of sediments: The where-fore and the why. Limnol Oceanogr 43:524–526

Bown PR (2005) Calcareous nannoplankton evolution: a tale of two oceans. Micropaleontology 51:299–308

Brachaniec T, Niedźwiedzki R, Surmik D, Krzykawski T, Szopa K, Gorzelak P, Salamon MA (2015) Coprolites of marine vertebrate predators from the Lower Triassic of southern Poland. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 435:118–126

Bressan GS, Palma RM (2009) Trace fossils from the Lower–Middle Jurassic Bardas Blancas Formation, Neuquén Basin, Mendoza Province, Argentina. Acta Geol Pol 59:201–220

Bromley RG (1967) Some observations on burrows of thalassinidean Crustacea in chalk hardgrounds. Quart J Geol Soc Lond 123:157–182

Bromley RG (1975) Comparative analysis of fossil and recent echinoid bioerosion. Palaeontology 18:725–739

Bromley RG (1978) Bioerosion of Bermuda reefs. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 23:169–197

Bromley RG (1981) Concepts in ichnotaxonomy illustrated by small round holes in shells. Acta Geol Hisp 16:55–64

Bromley RG (1990) Trace fossils. Biology and taphonomy. Unwin Hyman, London

Bromley RG (1991) *Zoophycos*: Strip mine, refuse dump, cache or sewage farm? Lethaia 24:460–462

Bromley RG (1992) Bioerosion: Eating rock for fun and profit. In: Maples CG, West RW (eds) Trace fossils, short courses in paleontology, vol 5. Paleontological Society, Knoxville

Bromley RG (1993) Predation habits of octopus past and present and a new ichnospecies, *Oichnus ovalis*. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 40:167–173

Bromley RG (1996) Trace fossils. Biology, taphonomy and applications, 2nd edn. Chapman & Hall, London

Bromley RG (1999) Anomiid (bivalve) bioerosion on Pleistocene pectinid (bivalve) shells, Rhodes, Greece. Geol Mijnbouw 78:175–177

Bromley RG (2004) A stratigraphy of marine bioerosion. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of Ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Spec P 228:455–479

Bromley RG (2005) Preliminary study of bioerosion in the deep-water coral *Lophelia*, Pleistocene, Rhodes, Greece. In: Freiwald A, Roberts JM (eds) Cold-water corals and ecosystems. Springer, Berlin, pp 895–914

Bromley RG, Asgaard U (1972) Notes on Greenland trace fossils. III. A large radiating burrow-system in Jurassic micaceous sandstones of Jameson Land, east Greenland. Grølands Geol Underøgelse Rap 49:23–30

Bromley RG, Asgaard U (1975) Sediment structures produced by a spatangoid echinoid: a problem of preservation. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 24:261–281

Bromley RG, Asgaard U (1993a) Endolithic community replacement on a Pliocene rocky coast. Ichnos 2:93–116

Bromley RG, Asgaard U (1993b) Two bioerosion ichnofacies produced by early and late burial associated with sea level change. Geol Rundsch 82:276–280

Bromley RG, D'Alessandro A (1983) Bioerosion in the Pleistocene of Southern Italy: Ichnogenera *Caulostrepsis* and *Maeandropolydora*. Riv Ital Paleontol Stratigr 89:283–309

Bromley RG, D'Alessandro A (1990) Comparative analysis of bioerosion in deep and shallow water, Pliocene to recent, Mediterranean Sea. Ichnos 1:43–49

Bromley RG, Ekdale AA (1984a) *Chondrites*: a trace fossil indicator of anoxia in sediments. Science 224:872–874

Bromley RG, Ekdale AA (1984b) Trace fossil preservation in flint in the European chalk. J Paleontol 58:298–311

Bromley RG, Ekdale AA (1986) Composite ichnofabrics and tiering of burrows. Geol Mag 123:59–65

Bromley RG, Goldring R (1992) The palaeoburrows at the Cretaceous to Palaeocene firmground unconformity in southern England. Tert Res 13:95–102

Bromley RG, Hanken NM (2003) Structure and function of large, lobed *Zoophycos*, Pliocene of Rhodes, Greece. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 192:79–100

Bromley RG, Martinell J (1991) *Centrichnus,* new ichnogenus for centrically patterned attachment scars on skeletal substrates. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 38:243–252

Bromley RG, Pemberton SG, Rahmani RA (1984) A Cretaceous woodground: the *Teredolites* ichnofacies. J Paleontol 58:488–498

Bromley RG, Hanken NM, Asgaard U (1990) Shallow marine bioerosion: preliminary results of an experimental study. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 38:85–99

Bromley RG, Jensen M, Asgaard U (1995) Spatangoid echinoids: deep-tier trace fossils and chemosymbiosis. Neues Jahrb Geol Paläontol, Abh 195:25–35

Bromley RG, Uchman A, Gregory MR, Martin AJ (2003) *Hillichnus lobosensis* igen. et isp. nov., a complex trace fossil produced by tellinacean bivalves, Paleocene, Monterey, California, USA. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 192:157–186

Bromley RG, Wisshak M, Glaub I, Botquelen A (2007) Ichnotaxonomic review of dendriniform borings attributed to foraminiferans: *Semidendrina* igen. nov. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Bromley RG, Kedzierski M, Kolodziej B, Uchman A (2009) Large chambered sponge borings on a Late Cretaceous abrasion platform at Cracow, Poland. Cretaceous Res 30:149–160

Buatois LA, Encinas A (2011) Ichnology, sequence stratigraphy and depositional evolution of an Upper Cretaceous rocky shoreline in central Chile: Bioerosion structures in a transgressed metamorphic basement. Cretaceous Res 32:203–212

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (1992) La oxigenación como factor de control en la distribución de asociaciones de trazas fosiles, Formación Kotick Point, Cretácico de Antartida. Ameghiniana 29:69–84

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2011) Ichnology: Organism-substrate interactions in space and time. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2013) Ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity: significance and caveats. Lethaia 46:281–292

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Mikuláš R, Maples CG (1998) The ichnogenus *Curvolithus* revisited. J Paleontol 72(4):758–769

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Alissa A, Carr TR (2002) Sequence stratigraphy and sedimentologic significance of biogenic structures from a late Paleozoic marginal- to open-marine reservoir, Morrow Sandstone, subsurface of southwest Kansas, USA. Sediment Geol 152:99–132

Buatois LA, Bromley RG, Mángano MG, Bellosi E, Carmona NB (2003) Ichnology of shallow marine deposits in the Miocene Chenque Formation of Patagonia: complex ecologic structure and niche partitioning in Neogene ecosystems. Pub Esp Asoc Paleontol Argentina 9:85–95

Buatois LA, Gingras MK, MacEachern J, Mángano MG, Zonneveld J-P, Pemberton SG, Netto RG, Martin AJ (2005) Colonization of brackish-water systems through time: evidence from the trace-fossil record. Palaios 20:321–347

Buatois LA, Uba CE, Mángano MG, Hulka C (2007) Deep bioturbation in continental environments: Evidence from Miocene fluvial deposits of Bolivia. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–organism interactions: A multifaceted Ichnology. SEPM Spec P 88:123–136

Buatois LA, Macsotay O, Quiroz LI (2009) *Sinusichnus*, a trace fossil from Antarctica and Venezuela: expanding the dataset of crustacean burrows. Lethaia 42:511–518

Buatois LA, Saccavino LL, Zavala C (2011) Ichnologic signatures of hyperpycnal flow deposits in Cretaceous river-dominated deltas, Austral Basin, southern Argentina. In: Slatt RM, Zavala C (eds) Sediment transfer from shelf to deep water—revisiting the delivery system. AAPG Studies in Geology 61:153–170

Buatois LA, Burns F, Ainsworth RB (2013) Evaluating the role of stress factors in trace-fossil distribution along mixed-influence deltaic systems of an embayed shoreline (Middle Jurassic, Sunrise Field of the Timor Sea, Australia and Timor-Leste). In: Keep M, Moss SJ (eds) The sedimentary basins of Western Australia IV. Proc Petrol Expl Soc of Australia Symposium, Perth, WA

Buckman JO (1994) *Archaeonassa* Fenton and Fenton 1937 reviewed. Ichnos 3:185–192

Buckman JO (1997) An unusual new trace fossil from the Lower Carboniferous of Ireland: *Intexalvichnus magnus*. J Paleontol 71:316–324

Burns F, Buatois LA, Ainsworth RB (2013) Assessing controls on nearshore clastic deposition in the Plover and Elang Formations using ichnology: case studies from the Bonaparte Basin (Timor Sea, Australia and Timor-Leste). In: Keep M, Moss SJ (eds) The sedimentary basins of Western Australia IV. Proc Petrol Expl Soc of Australia Symposium, Perth, WA

Bush AM, Bambach RK, Daley GM (2007) Changes in theoretical ecospace utilization in marine fossil assemblages between the mid-Paleozoic and late Cenozoic. Paleobiology 33:76–97

Cadée GC (2001) Sediment dynamics by bioturbating organisms. In: Reise K (ed) Ecological comparisons of sedimentary shores. Ecol Stud 151:128–148

Cadée GC, de Wolf P (2013) *Belichnus* traces produced on shells of the bivalve *Lutraria lutraria* by gulls. Ichnos 20:15–18

Campbell KA, Nesbitt EA (2000) High resolution architecture and paleoecology of an active margin, storm-flood influenced estuary, Quinault Formation (Pliocene) Washington. Palaios 15:553–579

Campbell KA, Nesbitt EA, Bourgeois J (2006) Signatures of storms, oceanic floods and forearc tectonism in marine shelf strata of the Quinault Formation (Pliocene), Washington, USA. Sedimentology 53:945–969

Canale N, Ponce JJ, Carmona NB, Drittanti DI, Olivera DE, Martínez MA, Bournod CN (2015) Sedimentología e Icnología de deltas fluvio-dominados afectados por descargas hiperpícnicas de la Formación Lajas (Jurásico Medio), Cuenca Neuquina, Argentina. Andean Geol 42:114–138

Cantalamessa G, Di Celma C, Ragaini L, Valleri G, Landini W (2007) Sedimentology and high-resolution sequence stratigraphy of the late middle to late Miocene Angostura Formation (western Borbón Basin, northwestern Ecuador). J Geol Soc London 164:653–665

Caracuel JE, Corbí H, Giannetti A, Monaco P, Soria JM, Tent-Manclús YA (2011) Paleoenvironmental changes during the Late Miocene (Messinian)–Pliocene transition (Bajo Segura Basin, southeastern Spain): sedimentological and ichnological evidence. Palaios 26:754–766

Carey J (1979) Sedimentary environments and trace fossils of the Permian Snapper Point Formation, Southern Sydney Basin. J Geol Soc Aust 25:433–458

Carmona NB, Buatois LA (2003) Estructuras biogénicas de crustáceos en el Mioceno de la cuenca del Golfo San Jorge: implicancias paleobiológicas y evolutivas. Pub Esp Asoc Paleont Argentina 9:97–108

Carmona NB, Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2004) The trace fossil record of burrowing decapod crustaceans: evaluating evolutionary radiations and behavioral convergence. In: Webby B, Mángano MG, Buatois LA (eds) Trace fossils in evolutionary palaeoecology, Fossils Strata 51:141–153

Carmona NB, Ponce JJ, Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2006) Variabilidad de la icnofacies de *Glossifungites* en el contacto entre las Formaciones Sarmiento (Eoceno-Oligoceno) y Chenque (Mioceno temprano) en el Golfo San Jorge, Chubut, Argentina. Ameghiniana 43:413–425

Carmona NB, Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Ponce JJ (2007) Bivalve trace fossils in an early Miocene discontinuity surface in Patagonia, Argentina: Burrowing behavior and implications for ichnotaxonomy at the firmground–hardground divide. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 255:329–341

Carmona NB, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Bromley RG (2008) Ichnology of the Lower Miocene Chenque Formation, Patagonia, Argentina: Animal-substrate interactions and the Modern Evolutionary Fauna. Ameghiniana 45:93–122

Carmona NB, Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Ponce JJ (2010) Taphonomy and paleoecology of the bivalve trace fossil *Protovirgularia* in deltaic heterolithic facies of the Miocene Chenque Formation, Patagonia, Argentina. J Paleontol 84:730–738

Carmona NB, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Bromley RG, Ponce JJ, Bellosi E (2012) Ichnology of Cenozoic marine deposits from Patagonia (Southern Argentina): The role of the modern evolutionary fauna in Neogene infaunal ecosystems. In: Netto RG, Carmona NB, Tognoli FMW (eds) Ichnology of Latin America—selected papers. Sociedade Brasileira de Paleontologia, Monografias da Sociedade Brasileira de Palentologia Porto Alegre, Brasil Série Monografias da Sociedade Brasileira de Paleontologia, vol 2., pp 83–97

Caron J-B, Conway Morris S, Cameron CB (2013) Tubicolous enteropneusts from the Cambrian period. Nature 495:503–506

Chamberlain CK (1971) Morphology and ethology of trace fossils from the Ouachita Mountains, southeast Oklahoma. J Paleo 45:212–246

Chamberlain CK (2000) Prologue to the study of *Zoophycos*. Ichnology Newslett 22:13–22

Chiplonkar GW, Badve RM (1970) Trace fossils from the Bagh beds. J Palaeontol Soc India 14:1–10

Chiplonkar GW, Ghare MA (1975) Some additional trace fossils from the Bagh Beds. Bull Indian Geol Assoc 8:71–84

Chrząstek A (2013) Trace fossils from the Lower Muschelkalk of Raciborowice Górne (North Sudetic Synclinorium, SW Poland) and their palaeoenvironmental interpretation. Acta Geol Pol 63:315–353

Clifton HE, Thompson JK (1978) *Macaronichnus segregatis*—a feeding structure of shallow marine polychaetes. J Sediment Petrol 48:1293–1302

Colella A, D'Alessandro A (1988) Sand waves, *Echinocardium* traces and their bathyal depositional setting (Monte Torre Palaeostrait, Plio-Pleistocene, southern Italy). Sedimentology 35:219–237

Corner GD, Fjalstad A (1993) Spreite trace fossils (*Teichichnus*) in a raised Holocene fjord-delta, Breidvikeidet, Norway. Ichnos 2:155–164

Cornish FG (1986) The trace fossil *Diplocraterion*: evidence of animal-sediment interactions in Cambrian tidal deposits. Palaios 1:478–491

Crimes TP, Anderson MM (1985) Trace fossils from the Late Precambrian–Early Cambrian strata of southeastern Newfoundland (Canada): temporal and environmental implications. J Paleontol 59:310–343

Crimes TP, Crossley JD (1991) A diverse ichnofauna from Silurian flysch of the Aberystwyth Grits Formation, Wales. Geol J 26:27–64

Cuny G, Benton MJ (1999) Early radiation of the neoselachian sharks in western Europe. Geobios 32:193–204

Curran HA (1976) A trace fossil brood structure of probable callianassid origin. J Paleontol 50:249–259

Curran HA (1985) The trace fossil assemblage of a Cretaceous nearshore environment: Englishtown Formation of Delaware, USA. In: Curran HA (ed) Biogenic structures: Their use in interpreting depositional environments. SEPM Spec P 35:261–276

Curran HA (2007) Ichnofacies, ichnocoenoses and ichnofabrics of Quaternary shallow-marine to dunal tropical carbonates: a model and implications. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace Fossils: Concepts, Problems, Prospects Amsterdam, 232–247

Curran HA, Frey RW (1977) Pleistocene trace fossils from North Carolina (U.S.A.), and their Holocene analogues. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace fossils 2. Geol J Spec Issue 9, Seel House Press, 139–162

Curran HA, White B (1991) Trace fossils of shallow subtidal to dunal ichnofacies in Bahamian Quaternary carbonates. Palaios 6:498–510

Curran HA, White B (2001) Ichnology of Holocene carbonate eolianites of the Bahamas. In Abegg R, Harris M, Loope D (eds) Modern and Ancient Carbonate Eolianites: sedimentology, sequence stratigraphy, and diagenesis, SEPM Spec P 71:47–55

D'Alessandro A, Bromley RG (1995) A new ichnospecies of *Spongeliomorpha* from the Pleistocene of Sicily. J Paleontol 69:393–398

D'Alessandro A, Fürsich FT (2005) *Tursia*—a new ichnogenus from Pleistocene shallow water settings in southern Italy. Ichnos 12:65–73

D'Alessandro A, Massari F (1997) Pliocene and Pleistocene depositional environments in the Pesculuse area Salento, Italy. Riv Ital Paleontol Stratigr 103:221–258

Dam G (1990a) Taxonomy of trace fossils from the shallow marine Lower Jurassic Neill Klinter Formation, East Greenland. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 38:119–144

Dam G (1990b) Paleoenvironmental significance of trace fossils from the shallow marine Lower Jurassic Neill Klinter Formation, East Greenland. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 79:221–248

Damborenea S, Manceñido MO (1996) Icnofósiles (Nucleocavia) preservados sobre moldes internos de conchillas del Jurásico Medio del oeste argentino. Asoc Paleontol Arg, Pub Esp 4:111–120

David A (1997) Predation by muricid gastropods on Late-Oligocene (Egerian) molluscs collected from Wind Brickyard, Eger, Hungary. Malak Táj 16:5–12

de Gibert JM (1996) A new decapod burrow system from the NW Mediterranean Pliocene. Rev Esp Paleontol 11:251–254

de Gibert JM, Benner JS (2002) The trace fossil *Gyrochorte*: ethology and paleoecology. Rev Esp Paleontol 17:1–12

de Gibert JM, Domènech R (2008) Trazas fósiles de nuculoideos (*Protovirgularia*) del Mioceno marino de la Cuenca del Vallès-Penedès. Rev Esp Paleontol 23:129–138

de Gibert JM, Ekdale AA (2002) Ichnology of a restricted epicontinental sea, Arapien Shale, Middle Jurassic, Utah, USA. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 183:275–286

de Gibert JM, Goldring R (2007) An ichnofabric approach to the depositional interpretation of the intensely burrowed Bateig Limestone, Miocene, SE Spain. Sediment Geol 194:1–16

de Gibert JM, Martinell J (1998) Ichnofabric analisis of the Pliocene marine sediments of the Var basin (Nice, SE France). Geobios 31:271–281

de Gibert JM, Martinell J, Doménech R (1995) The rossetted feeding trace fossil *Dactyloidites ottoi* (Geinitz) from the Miocene of Catalonia. Geobios 28:769–776

de Gibert JM, Martinell J, Domènech R (1998a) *Entobia* ichnofacies in fossil rocky shores, Lower Pliocene, Northwestern Mediterranean. Palaios 13:476–487

de Gibert JM, da Silva CM, Cachao M (1998b) Icnofábrica de *Ophiomorpha/Conichnus* en el Mioceno Inferior de Cristo Rei (Almada, Portugal). Implicancias paleoambientales. Rev Esp Paleontol 13:251–259

de Gibert JM, Domenech R, Martinell J (2004) An ethological framework for animal bioerosion trace fossils upon mineral substrates with a proposal for a new class, fixichnia. Lethaia 37:429–437

de Gibert JM, Netto RG, Tognoli FMW, Grangeiro ME (2006) Commensal worm traces and possible juvenile thalassinidean burrows associated with *Ophiomorpha nodosa*, Pleistocene, southern Brazil. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 230:70–8

de Gibert JM, Domènech R, Martinell J (2007) Bioerosion in shell beds from the Pliocene Roussillon Basin, France: implications for the (macro) bioerosion ichnofacies model. Acta Palaeontol Pol 52:783–798

de Gibert JM, Mas G, Ekdale AA (2012) Architectural complexity of marine crustacean burrows: unusual helical trace fossils from the Miocene of Mallorca, Spain. Lethaia 45:574–585

de Gibert JM, Muñiz F, Belaústegui Z, Hyžný M (2013) Fossil and modern fiddler crabs (*Uca tangeri: ocypodidae*) and their burrows from SW Spain: ichnologic and biogeographic implications. J Crustacean Biol 33:537–551

De Grave S, Pentcheff ND, Ahyong ST, Chan T-Y, Crandall KA, Dworschak PC, Felder DL, Feldmann RM, Fransen CHJM, Goulding LYD, Lemaitre R, Low MEY, Martin JW, Ng PKL, Schweitzer CE, Tan SH, Tshudy D, Wetzer R (2009) A classification of living and fossil genera of decapod crustaceans. Raffles B Zool 21:1–109

Demírcan H (2012) Determination of a Late Miocene rocky palaeoshore by bioerosion trace fossils from the Bozcaada Island, Çanakkale, Turkey. Comptes Rendus Palevol 11:331–344

Demírcan H, Uchman A (2012) The miniature echinoid trace fossil *Bichordites kuzunensis* isp. nov. from early Oligocene prodelta sediments of the Mezardere Formation, Gökçeada Island, NW Turkey. Acta Geol Pol 62:205–215

Desai BG, Saklani RD (2012) Significance of the trace fossil *Balanoglossites* Mägdefrau, 1932 from the Lower Cretaceous Guneri member (Bhuj Formation) of the Guneri dome, Kachchh, India. Swiss J Palaeont 131:255–263

Desai BG, Saklani RD (2014) Ichnofabric analysis of the Tithonian shallow marine sediments (Bhadasar Formation) Jaisalmer Basin. India J Earth Syst Sci 123:1413–1431

Desai BG, Patel SJ, Shukla R, Surve D (2008) Analysis of ichnoguilds and their significance in interpreting ichnological events: A study from Jhuran Formation (Upper Jurassic) Western Kachchh. J Geol Soc India 72:458–466

Deville J (1996) Palaeontological study of the Neerrepen sands in the Francart Quarry (Tongeren, Belgium). Natuurwet Tijdschr 75:75–97

Domènech R, de Gibert JM, Martinell J (2001) Ichnological features of a marine transgression: Middle Miocene rocky shores of Tarragona, Spain. Geobios 34:99–107

Donovan SK, Jagt JWM, Nieuwenhuis APM (2015) The boring *Cunctichnus* Fürsich, Palmer and Goodyear, 1994, from the type Maastrichtian (Upper Cretaceous, Northeast Belgium). Ichnos 22:19–21

Dornbos SQ (2008) Tiering history of early epifaunal suspension-feeding echinoderms. In: Ausich WI, Webster GD (eds) Echinoderm paleobiology. Indiana University Press, Bloomington, IN

Doyle P, Bennett MR, Cocks FM (1998) Borings in a boulder substrate from the Miocene of southern Spain. Ichnos 5:277–286

Driese SG, Dott RH (1984) Model for sandstone–carbonate "cyclothems" based on upper member of Morgan Formation (Middle Pennsylvanian) of northern Utah and Colorado. AAPG Bull 68:574–597

Droser ML, Bottjer DJ (1993) Trends and patterns of Phanerozoic ichnofabrics. Ann Rev Earth Planet Sci 21:205–225

Dworschak PC (1987) Feeding behavior of *Upogebia pusilla* and *Callianassa tyrrhena* (Crustacea, Decapoda, Thalassinidea). Inv Pesq 51:421–429

Dworschak PC (2000) Global diversity in the Thalassinidea (Decapoda). J Crustacean Biol 20:238–245

Dworschak PC (2005) Global diversity in the Thalassinidea (Decapoda): an update (1998–2004). Nauplius 13:57–63

Dworschak PC, de Rodrigues SA (1997) A modern analogue for the trace fossil *Gyrolithes*: burrows of the thalassinidean shrimp *Axianassa australis*. Lethaia 30:41–52

Dworschak PC, Felder DL, Tudge CC (2012) Infraorders Axiidea de Saint Laurent, 1979 and Gebiidea de Saint Laurent, 1979 (formely known collectively as Thalassinidea). The Crustacea 9:109–219

Edinger EN, Risk MJ (1994) Oligocene-Miocene extinction and geographic restriction of Caribbean corals; roles of turbidity, temperature, and nutrients. Palaios 9:76–598

Ekdale AA (1977) Abyssal trace fossils in worldwide Deep Sea Drilling Project cores. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace fossils 2. Geol. J Spec Issue, Seel House Press

Ekdale AA (1992) Muckraking and mudslinging: the joys of deposits feeding. In: Maples CG, West RW (eds) Trace fossils, short courses in paleontology, vol 5. Paleontological Society, Knoxville

Ekdale AA, Bromley RG (1984) Comparative ichnology of shelf-sea and deep-sea chalk. J Paleontol 58:323–332

Ekdale AA, Bromley RG (1991) Analysis of composite ichnofabrics: an example in uppermost Cretaceous chalk of Denmark. Palaios 6:232–249

Ekdale AA, Bromley RG (2001a) A day and a night in the life of a cleft-foot clam: *Protovirgularia-Lockeia-Lophoctenium*. Lethaia 34:119–124

Ekdale AA, Bromley RG (2001b) Bioerosional innovation for living in carbonate hardgrounds in the Early Ordovician of Sweden. Lethaia 34:1–12

Ekdale AA, Lewis DW (1991) Trace fossils and paleoenvironmental control of ichnofacies in a late Quaternary gravel and loess fan delta complex, New Zealand. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 81:253–279

Etter W (1995) Benthic diversity patterns in oxygenation gradients: an example from the Middle Jurassic of Switzerland. Lethaia 28:259–270

Evans JN, McIlroy D (2016) Ichnology and palaeobiology of *Phoebichnus trochoides* from the Middle Jurassic of north-east England. Papers in Palaeontology 2:139–154

Farinati E, Zavala C (2002) Trace fossils on shelly substrate. An example from the Miocene of Patagonia, Argentina. Acta Geol Hisp 37:29–36

Fauchald K (1984) Polychaete distribution patterns, or: can animals with Palaeozoic cousins show large-scale geographic patterns. In: Proceedings of the First International Polychaete Conference, Sydney, Australia, 1983

Fedonkin MA (1981) Belomorskaja biota venda. [The Vendian White Sea biota]. Trudy Akademii Nauk SSSR 342:1–100

Fedonkin MA (1983) Besskeletnaya fauna podol’skogo pridnestrov‘ya. [Non-skeletal fauna of Podolia (Diniestr River Valley)]. In: Velikanov VA, Aseeva MA, Fedonkin MA (eds) Vend Ukrainy: Naukova Dunka. Naukova Dumka, Kiev, pp 128–139

Feldmann RM, Schweitzer CE (2006) Paleobiogeography of Southern Hemisphere decapod crustacean. J Paleontol 80:83–103

Fenton CL, Fenton MA (1937) Burrows and trails from Pennsylvanian rocks of Texas. Am Midl Nat 18:1079–1084

Finnegan S, McClain CM, Kosnik MA, Payne JL (2011) Escargots through time: an energetic comparison of marine gastropod assemblages before and after the Mesozoic Marine Revolution. Paleobiology 37:252–269

Förster R (1985) Evolutionary trends and ecology of Mesozoic decapod crustaceans. Trans Roy Soc Edinb-Earth 76:299–304

Freestone AL, Osman RW, Ruiz GM, Torchin ME (2011) Stronger predation in the tropics shapes species richness patterns in marine communities. Ecology 92:983–993

Frey RW (1970) Trace fossils of Fort Hays Limestone Member of Niobrara Chalk (Upper Cretaceous), west-central Kansas. Univ Kansas Paleontol Cont 53:1–41

Frey RW (1972) Paleoecology and depositional environment of Fort Hays Limestone Member, Niobrara Chalk (Upper Cretaceous), west-central Kansas. Univ of Kansas Paleontol Cont 58:1–72

Frey RW (1990) Trace fossils and hummocky cross-stratification, Upper Cretaceous of Utah. Palaios 5:203–218

Frey RW, Bromley RG (1985) Ichnology of American chalks: the Selma Group (Upper Cretaceous), western Alabama. Can J Earth Sci 22:801–828

Frey RW, Howard JD (1982) Trace fossils from the Upper Cretaceous of the Western Interior: potential criteria for facies models. Mount Geol 19:1–10

Frey RW, Howard JD (1985) Trace fossils from the Panther Member, Star Point Formation (Upper Cretaceous), Coal Creek Canyon, Utah. J Paleontol 59:370–404

Frey RW, Howard JD (1990) Trace fossils and depositional sequences in a clastic shelf setting, Upper Cretaceous of Utah. J Paleontol 64:803–820

Frey RW, Pemberton SG (1987) The *Psilonichnus* ichnocoenose, and its relationship to adjacent marine and nonmarine ichnocoenoses along the Georgia coast. Bull Can Petrol Geol 35:333–357

Frey RW, Howard JD, Pryor WA (1978) *Ophiomorpha*: its morphologic, taxonomic and environmental significance. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 23:199–229

Frey RW, Curran HA, Pemberton SG (1984) Tracemaking activities of crabs and their environmental significance: the ichnogenus *Psilonichnus*. J Paleontol 58:333–350

Frieling D (2007) *Rosselia socialis* in the Upper Marine Molasse of southwestern Germany. Facies 53:479–492

Fritz WH (1980) International Precambrian–Cambrian Boundary Working Group's 1979 field study to Mackenzie Mountains, Northwest Territories, Canada. Geol Surv Canada Paper 10-1A:41–45

Fu S (1991) Funktion, Verhalten und Einteilung fucoider und lophocteniider Lebensspuren. Cour Forsch-Inst Senckenberg 135:1–79

Furlong CM, McRoberts CA (2014) Commensal borings from the Middle Devonian of Central New York: Ecologic and taxonomic review of *Clionoides*, *Clionolithes*, and *Canaliparva* n. ichnogen. J Paleontol 88:130–144

Fürsich FT (1972) *Thalassinoides* and the origin of nodular limestone in the Corallian beds (Upper Jurassic) of southern England. Neues Jahrb Geol Paläontol, Abh 3:136–156

Fürsich FT (1973) A revision of the trace fossil *Spongeliomorpha*, *Ophiomorpha* and *Thalassinoides*. Neues Jahrb Geol Paläontol, Mh 1973:719–735

Fürsich FT (1974) Corallian (Upper Jurassic) trace fossils from England and Normandy. Stuttgarter Beitr Naturk Serie B (Geol und Paläontol) 13:1–51

Fürsich FT (1975) Trace fossils as environmental indicators in the Corallian of England and Normandy. Lethaia 8:151–172

Fürsich FT (1981) Invertebrate trace fossils from the Upper Jurassic of Portugal. Com Serv Geol de Portugal 67:153–168

Fürsich FT (1998) Environmental distribution of trace fossils in the Jurassic of Kachchh (Western India). Facies 39:243–272

Fürsich FT, Bromley RG (1985) Behavioural interpretation of a rosetted spreite trace fossil: *Dactyloidites ottoi* (Geinitz). Lethaia 18:199–207

Fürsich FT, Jablonski D (1984) Late Triassic naticid drillholes: Carnivorous gastropods gain a major adaptation but fail to radiate. Science 224:78–80

Fürsich FT, Kennedy WJ, Palmer TJ (1981) Trace fossils at a regional discontinuity surface: the Austin/Taylor (Upper Cretaceous) contact in central Texas. J Paleontol 55:537–551

Fürsich FT, Palmer TJ, Goodyear KL (1994) Growth and disintegration of bivalve dominated patch reefs in the Upper Jurassic of southern England. Palaeontology 37:131–171

Gaemers PAM (1978) Biostratigraphy, palaeoecology and palaeogeography of the mainly marine Ager Formation (upper Paleocene-lower Eocene) in the Tremp basin, Central-South Pyrenees, Spain. Leid Geol Med 51:151–231

García-Ramos JC, García Domingo A, Gonzalez Lastra JA, Hernaiz P, Ruiz P, Valenzuela M (1984) Significado ecológico y aplicaciones sedimentológicas de la traza fósil *Tubotomaculum* del Eoceno-Mioceno inferior de Andalucía. Pub Geol, Univ Aut de Barcelona 20:373–378

García-Ramos JC, Piñuela L, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ (2011) Post-workshop field trip guide of the XI International Ichnofabric Workshop. MUJA, Colunga, Asturias

García-Ramos JC, Mángano MG, Piñuela L, Buatois LA, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ (2014) The ichnogenus *Tubotomaculum*: An enigmatic pellet-filled structure from Upper Cretaceous to Miocene deep-marine deposits of southern Spain. J Paleontol 88:1189–1198

Geary DH, Allmon WD, Reaka-Kudla ML (1991) Stomatopod predation on fossil gastropods from the Plio-Pleistocene of Florida. J Paleontol 65:355–360

Getty PR, Hagadorn JW (2008) Reinterpretation of *Climactichnites* Logan 1860 to include subsurface burrows, and erection of *Musculopodus* for resting traces of the trailmaker. J Paleontol 82:1161–1172

Getty PR, Hagadorn JW (2009) Palaeobiology of the *Climactichnites* tracemaker. Palaeontology 52:753–778

Giannetti A, Monaco P (2004) Burrow decreasing upward parasequence (BDUP): a case study from the Lower Jurassic of the Trento carbonate platform (southern Alps), Italy. Riv Ital Paleontol S 110:77–85

Gingras MK, Dashtgard SE, Pemberton SG (2006) Latitudinal (climatic) controls on neoichnological assemblages of modern marginal-marine depositional environments. AAPG 2006 Annual Convention (Houston), Abstract 38

Gingras MK, Dashtgard SE, MacEachern JA, Pemberton SG (2008) Biology of shallow marine ichnology: a modern perspective. Aquat Biol 2:255–268

Glaessner MF (1969) Decapoda. In: Moore RC (ed) Treatise on invertebrate paleontology, Part R, Arthropoda 4, Vol 2. Geol Soc America and Univ Kansas Press, Lawrence, Kansas

Glasby CJ, Hutchings PA, Fauchald K, Paxton H, Rouse GW, Russell CW, Wilson RS (2000) Class Polychaete. In: Beesley PL, Ross GJB, Glasby CJ (eds) Polychaetes and allies: the southern synthesis

Glaub I, Vogel K (2004) The stratigraphic record of microborings. In: Webby BD, Mángano MG, Buatois LA (eds) Trace fossils in evolutionary palaeoecology. Fossils and Strata 51:126–135

Goldring R (1962) The trace fossils of the Baggy Beds (Upper Devonian) of North Devon, England. Paläont Zeitschr 36:232–251

Goldring R, Pollard JE, Taylor AM (1991) *Anconichnus horizontalis*: a pervasive ichnofabric-forming trace fossil in post- Paleozoic offshore siliciclastic facies. Palaios 6:250–263

Goldring R, Gruszczynski M, Gatt PA (2002) A bow-form burrow and its sedimentological and palaeoecological significance. Palaios 17:622–630

Goldring R, Cadée GC, D'Alessandro A, Gibert JM de, Jenkins R, Pollard JE (2004) Climatic control of trace fossil distribution in the marine realm. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis, Geol Soc Spec P 228

Goldring R, Pollard J, Radley J (2005) Trace fossils and pseudofossils from the Wealden strata (non-marine Lower Cretaceous) of southern England. Cretaceous Res 26:665–685

Goldring R, Cadée GC, Pollard JE (2007) Climatic control of marine trace fossi distribution. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects Amsterdam

Golubic S, Radtke G, Campbell SE, Lee SJ, Vogel K, Wisshak M (2014) The complex fungal microboring trace *Saccomorpha stereodiktyon* isp. nov. reveals growth strategy of its maker. Ichnos 21:100–110

Graf G (1989) Benthic-pelagic coupling in a deep-sea benthic community. Nature 341:437–439

Gurav SG, Kulkarni KG, Paranjape AR, Borkar VD (2014) Palaeonenvironmental implications of Middle Jurassic trace fossils from the Jaisalmer Formation, India, with emphasis on the ichnogenus *Asteriacites lumbricalis* von Schlotheim, 1820. Ann Soc Geol Poloniae 84:249–257

Haga T, Kase T (2011) *Opertochasma somaensis* n. sp. (Bivalvia: Pholadidae) from the Upper Jurassic in Japan: a perspective on pholadoidean early evolution. J Paleontol 85:78–488

Hallam A (1970) *Gyrochorte* and other trace fossils in the Forest Marble (Bathonian) of Dorset, England. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace fossils. Geol J Spec Issue 3. Seel House Press, Liverpool

Hanken N-M, Bromley RG, Thomsen E (2001) Trace fossils of the bivalve *Panopea faujasi*, Pliocene, Rhodes, Greece. Ichnos 8:117–130

Hanna RK, Al-Radwany MT (1993) Statistical study of pelecypod borings on top of the Pila Spi Formation (upper Eocene) at Baashiqa, northern Iraq. Neues Jahrb Geol Paläontol, Mh 1993:393–404

Häntzschel W, Reineck HE (1968) Fazies Untersuchungen in Hettangium von Helmstedt (Niedersachsen). Mitt geol Staatsinst Hamburg 37:5–39

Harper EM (2003) The Mesozoic Marine Revolution. In: Kelley PH, Kowalewski M, Hansen TA (eds) Predator—prey interactions in the fossil record. Topics in Geobiology 20:433–455

Harper EM (2006) Dissecting post-Palaeozoic arms races. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 232:322–343

Harper EM, Forsythe GTW, Palmer TJ (1998) Taphonomy and the Mesozoic marine revolution; preservation state masks the importance of boring predators. Palaios 13:352–360

Harper EM, Dulai A, Forsythe GTW, Fürsich FT, Kowalewski M, Palmer TJ (1999) A fossil record full of holes, the Phanerozoic history of drilling predation: discussion and reply. Geology 27:959–960

Hay WW (2004) Carbonate fluxes and calcareous nannoplankton. In: Thierstein HR, Young J (eds) Coccolithophores—From molecular processes to global impact. Springer, Berlin

Hein FJ, Robb GA, Wolberg AC, Longstaffe FJ (1991) Facies descriptions and associations in ancient reworked (?transgressive) shelf sandstones: Cambrian and Cretaceous examples. Sedimentology 38:405–431

Heinberg C (1973) The internal structure of the trace fossils *Gyrochorte* and *Curvolithus*. Lethaia 6:227–238

Heinberg C (1974) A dynamic model for a meniscus filled tunnel *(Ancorichnus* n. ichnogen.) from the Jurassic *Pecten* sandstone of Milne Land, East Greenland. Rapp. Grønlands geol Unders 62:1–20

Heinberg C, Birkelund T (1984) Trace-fossil assemblages and basin evolution of the Vardekløft Formation (Middle Jurassic, central East Greenland). J Paleontol 58:362–397

Higgs ND, Little CTS, Glover AG, Dahlgren TG, Smith CR, Dominici S (2012) Evidence of *Osedax* worm borings in Pliocene (~3 Ma) whale bone from the Mediterranean. Historical Biol 24:269–277

Hof CHJ (1998) Fossil Stomatopods (Crustacea: Malacostraca) and their phylogenetic impact. J Nat Hist 32:1567–1576

Hof CHJ, Briggs DEG (1997) Decay and mineralization of mantis shrimps (Stomatopoda: Crustacea)—a key to their fossil record. Palaios 12:420–438

Hölder H (1989) Spuren auf der Spur. Palichnologische und verwandte Notizen über *Teredolites*, *Entobia*, *Nummipera* nov. gen. und einiges andere. Münster Forsch Geol und Paläontol 69:13–30

Hollis CJ, Handley L, Crouch EM, Morgans HEG, Baker JA, Creech J, Collins KS, Gibbs SJ, Huber M, Schouten S, Zachos SJ, Pancost RD (2009) Tropical sea temperatures in the high-latitude South Pacific during the Eocene. Geology 37:99–102

Hong E (1997) Evolution of Pliocene to Pleistocene sedimentary environments in an arc-continent collision zone: evidence from the analyses of lithofacies and ichnofacies in the southwestern foothills of Taiwan. J Asian Earth Sci 15:381–392

Hopkins MJ, Smith AB (2015) Dynamic evolutionary change in post-Paleozoic echinoids and the importance of scale when interpreting changes in rates of evolution. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112:3758–3763

Howard JD, Frey RW (1975) Regional animal-sediment characteristics of Georgia estuaries. Senckenbergiana Maritima 7:33–103

Howard JD, Frey RW (1984) Characteristic trace fossils in nearshore to offshore sequences, Upper Cretaceous of east-central Utah. Can J Earth Sci 21:200–219

Hua H, Pratt BR, Zhang L-Y (2003) Borings in *Cloudina* shells: complex predator–prey relationships in the terminal Proterozoic. Palaios 18:454–459

Huang DY, Chen JY, Vannier J, Saiz Salinas JI (2004) Early Cambrian sipunculan worms from southwest China. Proc Roy Soc Lond B Bio 271:1671–1676

Huang DY, Vannier J, Chen JY (2007) Anatomy and lifestyles of Early Cambrian priapulid worms exemplified by *Corynetis* and *Anningvermis* from the Maotianshan Shale (SW China). Lethaia 37:21–33

Huntley JW, Kowalewski M (2007) Strong coupling of predation intensity and diversity in the Phanerozoic fossil record. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:15006–15010

Ippolitov AP (2010) Serpulid (Annelida, Polychaeta) evolution and ecological diversification patterns during Middle-Late Jurassic. Earth Sci Front 17:207–208

Izumi K (2015) Deposit feeding by the Pliocene deep-sea macrobenthos, synchronized with phytodetritus input: Micropaleontological and geochemical evidence recorded in the trace fossil *Phymatoderma*. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 431:15–25

Jablonski D (2005) Evolutionary innovations in the fossil record: The intersection of ecology, development and macroevolution. J Exp Zool Part B 304B:504–519

Jablonski D, Bottjer DJ (1990) Onshore-offshore trends in marine invertebrate evolution. In: Ross RM, Allmon WD (eds) Causes of evolution: a paleontological perspective. University of Chicago Press, Chicago

Jablonski D, Sepkoski JJ Jr, Bottjer DJ, Sheehan PM (1983) Onshore-offshore patterns in the evolution of shelf communities. Science 222:1123–1125

Jach R, Machaniec E, Uchman A (2011) The trace fossil *Nummipera eocenica* from the Tatra Mountains, Poland: morphology and palaeoenvironmental implications. Lethaia 45:342–355

Jagt JW, Neumann C, Donovan SK (2009) *Petroxestes altera*, a new bioerosional trace fossil from the upper Maastrichtian (Cretaceous) of northeast Belgium. Bull Inst Roy Sci Nat Belgique, Sciences de la Terre 79:137–145

Jensen S (1997) Trace fossils from the Lower Cambrian Mickwitzia sandstone, south-central Sweden. Fossils Strata 42:1–111

Jensen S, Grant SWF (1998) Trace fossils from the Divdalen Group, northern Sweden: implications for Early Cambrian biostratigraphy of Baltica. Norsk Geol Tidssk 78:305–317

Jensen S, Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2013) Testing for palaeogeographical patterns in the distribution of Cambrian trace fossils. In: Harper DAT, Servais T (eds) Early Palaeozoic Biogeography and Palaeogeography. Geol Soc London Mem 38:45–58

Jones B, Pemberton SG (1989) Anatomy of an unconformity bounded carbonate sequence: The Pleistocene Ironshore Formation, Salt Creek, Grand Cayman. Palaios 4:343–355

Joseph JK, Patel SJ, Bhatt NY (2012) Trace fossil assemblages in mixed siliciclastic-carbonate sediments of the Kaladongar Formation (Middle Jurassic), Patcham Island, Kachchh, Western India. J Geol Soc India 80:189–214

Kanazawa K (1995) How spatangoids produce their traces: relationship between burrowing mechanism and trace structure. Lethaia 28:211–219

Kase T, Johnston PA, Seilacher A, Boyce JB (1998) Alleged mosasaur bite marks on Late Cretaceous ammonites are limpet (patellogastropod) home scars. Geology 26:947–950

Katz ME, Fennel K, Falkowski PG (2007) Geochemical and biological consequences of phytoplankton evolution. In: Falkowski PG, Knoll AH (eds) Evolution of primary producers in the Sea. Elsevier, Academic, Burlington

Kaźmierczak J, Pszczōłkowski A (1969) Burrows of Enteropneusta in Muschelkalk (Middle Triassic) of the Holy Cross Mountains, Poland. Acta Palaeontol Pol 14:299–318

Keighley DG, Pickerill RK (1994) The ichnogenus *Beaconites* and its distinction from *Ancorichnus* and *Taenidium*. Palaeontology 37:305–337

Kelley PH, Hansen TA (1993) Evolution of the naticid gastropod predator–prey system, an evaluation of the hypothesis of escalation. Palaios 8:358–375

Kelley PH, Hansen TA (1996) Naticid gastropod prey selectivity through time and the hypothesis of escalation. Palaios 11:437–445

Kelley PH, Hansen TA (2001) The Mesozoic marine revolution. In: Briggs DEG, Crowther PR (eds) Palaeobiology II. Blackwell Science, Oxford, UK

Kelley PH, Hansen TA (2003) The fossil record of drilling predation on bivalves and gastropods. In: Kelley PH, Kowalewski M, Hansen TA (eds) Predator–prey Interactions in the Fossil Record. Kluwer Academic/Plenum Press, New York

Kelly SRA (1988) Cretaceous wood-boring bivalves from western Antarctica with a review of the Mesozoic Pholadidae. Palaeontology 31:341–372

Kelly SRA, Bromley RG (1984) Ichnological nomenclature of clavate borings. Palaeontology 27:793–807

Kennedy WJ (1967) Burrows and surface traces from the Lower Chalk of southern England. Br Museum (Nat Hist) Geol Bull 15:127–167

Kennedy WJ (1970) Trace fossils in chalk environments. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace Fossils. Geol J Spec Issue 3. Seel House Press, Liverpool

Kennedy WJ (1975) Trace fossils in carbonate rocks. In: Frey RW (ed) The study of trace fossils – a synthesis of principles, problems, and procedures in ichnology. Springer, Berlin

Kern JP, Grimmer JC, Lister KH (1974) A new fossil spionid tube, Pliocene and Pleistocene of California and Baja California. J Paleontol 48:978–982

Kim SY, Heo WH (1997) Shell beds and trace fossils of the Seogwipo (early Pleistocene), Jeju Island, Korea. Ichnos 5:89–99

Kim JY, Kim KS, Pickerill RK (2002) Cretaceous nonmarine trace fossils from the Hasandong and Jinju Formations of the Namhae Area, Kyongsangnamdo, Southeast Korea. Ichnos 9:41–60

Kim JY, Keighley DG, Pickerill RK, Hwang W, Kim KS (2005) Trace fossil from marginal lacustrine deposits of the Cretaceous Jinju Formation, southern coast of Korea. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 218:105–124

Klompmaker AA, Schweitzer CE, Feldmann RM, Kowalewski M (2013) The influence of reefs and the rise of Mesozoic marine crustaceans. Geology 41:1179–1182

Klompmaker AA, Schweitzer CE, Feldmann RM, Kowalewski M (2015) Environmental and scale-dependent evolutionary trends in the body size of crustaceans. Proc R Soc B 282:20150440

Knaust D (1998) Trace fossils and ichnofabrics on the Lower Muschelkalk carbonate ramp (Triassic) of Germany: tool for high-resolution sequence stratigraphy. Geol Rundsch 87:21–31

Knaust D (2002) Ichnogenus *Pholeus* Fiege, 1944, revisited. J Paleontol 76:882–891

Knaust D (2004) The oldest Mesozoic nearshore *Zoophycos*: Evidence from the German Triassic. Lethaia 37:297–306

Knaust D (2007) Invertebrate trace fossils and ichnodiversity in shallow marine carbonates of the German Middle Triassic (Muschelkalk). In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–Organism Interactions: A Multifaceted Ichnology. SEPM Spec P 88:223–240

Knaust D (2008) Complex behavioural pattern as an aid to identify the producer of *Zoophycos* from the Middle Permian of Oman. Lethaia 42:146–154

Knaust D (2010) Remarkably preserved benthic organisms and their traces from a Middle Triassic (Muschelkalk) mud flat. Lethaia 43:344–356

Knaust D (2013) The ichnogenus *Rhizocorallium*: Classification, trace makers, palaeoenvironments and evolution. Earth-Sci Rev 126:1–47

Knaust D (2015) Siphonichnidae (new ichnofamily) attributed to the burrowing activity of bivalves: Ichnotaxonomy, behaviour and palaeoenvironmental implications. Earth-Sci Rev 150:497–519

Knaust D, Costamagna LG (2012) Ichnology and sedimentology of the Triassic carbonates of North-west Sardinia, Italy. Sedimentology 59:1190–1207

Knaust D, Dronov A (2013) *Balanoglossites* ichnofabrics from the Middle Ordovician Volkhov formation (St. Petersburg Region, Russia). Stratigr Geol Correl 21:265–279

Knaust D, Neumann, C (2016) Asteriacites von Schlotheim, 1820 – the oldest valid ichnogenus name – and other asterozoan-produced trace fossils. Earth-Sci Rev 157:111–120

Knaust D, Curran HA, Dronov AV (2012) Shallow marine carbonates. In: Knaust D, Bromley RG (eds) Trace Fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Develop in Sedim 64:705–750

Kobluk DR, Nemcsok S (1982) The macroboring ichnofossil *Trypanites* in the Middle Ordovician bryozoan Prasopora: population behaviour and reaction to environmental influences. Can J Earth Sci 19:679–688

Komatsu T, Saito R, Fursich FT (2001) Mode of occurrence and composition of bivalves of the Middle Jurassic Mitarai Formation, Tetori Group, Japan. Paleontol Res 5:121–129

Kotake N (1991) Non-selective surface deposit feeding by the *Zoophycos* producers. Lethaia 24:379–385

Kotake N (1992) Deep-sea echiurans: possible producers of *Zoophycos*. Lethaia 25:311–316

Kotake N (2003) Ethologic and ecologic interpretation of complex stellate structures in Pleistocene deep-sea sediments (Otadai Formation), Boso Peninsula, central Japan). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 192:143–155

Kotake N (2014) Changes in lifestyle and habitat of *Zoophycos*-producing animals related to evolution of phytoplankton during the Late Mesozoic: geological evidence for the 'benthic-pelagic coupling model'. Lethaia 47:165–175

Kowalewski M, Dulai A, Fursich FT (1998) A fossil record full of holes: the Phanerozoic history of drilling predation. Geology 26:1091–1094

Kowalewski M, Dulai A, Fursich FT (1999) A fossil record full of holes: the Phanerozoic history of drilling predation: reply. Geology 27:959–960

Krumm DK (1999) Bivalve bioerosion in Oligocene corals from Puerto Rico and Jamaica. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 45:179–180

Krumm DK, Jones DS (1993) New coral-bivalve association (*Actinastrea-Lithophaga*) from the Eocene of Florida. J Paleontol 67:945–951

Książkiewicz M (1977) Trace fossils in the Flysch of the Polish Carpathians. Palaeontol Polonica 36:1–208

Lanés S, Mancenido M, Damborenea S (2007) *Lapispira*: a double helicoidal burrow from Jurassic marine nearshore environments. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–Organism interactions: a multifaceted ichnology, SEPM Spec P 88:59–77

Leighton LR, Webb AE, Sawyer JA (2013) Ecological effects of the Paleozoic-Modern faunal transition: Comparing predation on Paleozoic brachiopods and molluscs. Geology 41:275–278

Leonowicz P (2008) Trace fossils from the Lower Jurassic Ciechocinek Formation, SW Poland. Vol Juras 6:89–98

Leonowicz P (2012) Sedimentology and ichnology of Bathonian (Middle Jurassic) ore-bearing clays at Gnaszyn, Kraków-Silesia Homocline, Poland. Acta Geol Pol 62:281–296

Lewis DW, Ekdale AA (1992) Composite ichnofabric of a mid-Tertiary unconformity on a pelagic limestone. Palaios 7:222–235

Liñán E (1984) Los icnofósiles de la Formación Torrearboles (Precámbrico?–Cámbrico inferior) en los alrededores de fuente de Cantos, Badajoz. Cuad Lab Xeol de Laxe 8:47–74

Locklair RE, Savrda CE (1998) Ichnology of rhythmically bedded Demopolis Chalk (Upper Cretaceous, Alabama): implications for paleoenvironmental depositional cycle origins, and tracemaker behavior. Palaios 13:423–438

Lohrer AM, Thrush SF, Gibbs MM (2004) Bioturbators enhance ecosystem function through complex biogeochemical interactions. Nature 431:1092–1095

Lokho K, Singh BP (2013) Ichnofossils from the Miocene Middle Bhuban Formation, Mizoram, Northeast India and their paleoenvironmental significance. Acta Geol Sin-Engl 87:1460–1471

López-Cabrera MI, Olivero EB, Carmona NB, Ponce JJ (2008) Cenozoic trace fossils of the *Cruziana, Zoophycos* and *Nereites* ichnofacies from the Fuegian Andes, Argentina. Ameghiniana 45:377–392

Löwemark L (2015) Testing ethological hypotheses of the trace fossil *Zoophycos* based on Quaternary material from the Greenland and Norwegian Seas. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 425:1–13

Löwemark L, Grootes PM (2004) Large age differences between planktic foraminifers caused by abundance variations and *Zoophycos* bioturbation. Paleoceanography 19:1–9

Löwemark L, Hong E (2006) *Schaubcylindrichnus formosus* isp. nov. in Miocene Sandstones from Northeastern Taiwan. Ichnos 13:267–276

Löwemark L, Nara M (2013) Morphological variability of the trace fossil *Schaubcylindrichnus coronus* as a response to environmental forcing. Palaeontol Elec 16:1–14

Löwemark L, Werner F (2001) Dating errors in high-resolution stratigraphy: a detailed X-ray radiograph and AMS-^{14}C study of *Zoophycos* burrows. Mar Geol 177:191–198

MacEachern JA, Pemberton SG (1992) Ichnological aspects of Cretaceous shoreface successions and shoreface variability in the Western Interior Seaway of North America. In: Pemberton SG (ed) Applications of ichnology to petroleum exploration, a core workshop. SEPM Core W 17

MacEachern JA, Pemberton SG (1994) Ichnological aspects of incised valley fill systems from the Viking Formation of the Western Canada Sedimentary Basin, Alberta, Canada. In: Boyd R, Zaitlin BA, Dalrymple R (eds) Incised Valley Systems: Origin and Sedimentary Sequences. SEPM Spec P 51:129–157

MacEachern JA, Zaitlin BA, Pemberton SG (1999) Coarse-grained, shoreline-attached, marginal marine parasequences of the Viking Formation, Joffre Field, Alberta Canada. In: Bergman KM, Snedden JW (eds) Isolated Shallow Marine Sand Bodies: Sequence Stratigraphic and Sedimentologic Interpretation. SEPM Spec P 64:273–296

MacEachern JA, Pemberton SG, Bann KL, Gingras MK (2007) Departures from the Archetypal Ichnofacies: Effective recognition of environmental stress in the rock record. In: MacEachern JA, Bann KL, Gingras MK, Pemberton SG (eds) Applied Ichnology SEPM Short Course Notes 52:65–93

MacNaughton RB, Narbonne GM (1999) Evolution and ecology of Neoproterozoic-Lower Cambrian trace fossils, NW Canada. Palaios 14:97–115

MacNaughton RB, Zonneveld JP (2010) Trace–fossil assemblages in the Lower Triassic Toad Formation, La Biche River map area, southeastern Yukon. Bull Canad Petrol Geol 58:100–114

Maerz RH Jr, Kaesler RL, Hakes WG (1976) Trace fossils from the Rock Bluff Limestone (Pennsylvanian, Kansas). Univ of Kansas Paleontol Cont 80:1–6

Mägdefrau K (1932) Über einige Bohrgänge aus dem unteren Muschelkalk von Jena. Paläontol Zeitschr 14:150–160

Malpas JA, Gawthorpe RL, Pollard JE, Sharp IR (2005) Ichnofabric analysis of the shallow marine Nukhul Formation (Miocene), Suez Rift, Egypt implications for depositional processes and sequence stratigraphic evaluation. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 215:239–264

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (1991) Discontinuity surfaces in the Lower Cretaceous of the High Andes (Mendoza, Argentina): trace fossils and environmental implications. J S Am Earth Sci 4:215–229

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (1994) Trazas fósiles e icnofábricas en depósitos carbonáticos cretácicos, Las Cuevas, Alta Cordillera de Mendoza. Ameghiniana 31:55–66

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2003) Trace fossils. In: Benedetto JL (ed) Ordovician fossils of Argentina. Universidad Nacional de Cordoba. Secretaria de Ciencia y Tecnología

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2011) Timing of infaunalization in shallow-marine early Paleozoic communities in high-latitude Gondwanic settings: Discriminating evolutionary, environmental and paleogeographic controls. Paleontol Electron 14:1–21

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2014) Decoupling of body-plan diversification and ecological structuring during the Ediacaran-Cambrian transition: Evolutionary and geobiological feedbacks. Proc Roy Soc B 281:20140038

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, West RR, Maples CG (1998) Contrasting behavioral and feeding strategies recorded by tidal-bivalve trace fossils from the Upper Carboniferous of Eastern Kansas. Palaios 13:335–351

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, West RR, Maples CG (1999) The origin and paleoecologic significance of the trace fossil *Asteriacites* in the Pennsylvanian of Kansas and Missouri. Lethaia 32:17–30

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Rindsberg AK (2002a) Carboniferous *Psammichnites*: systematic re-evaluation, taphonomy and autecology. Ichnos 9:1–22

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, West RR, Maples CG (2002b) Ichnology of a Pennsylvanian Equatorial tidal flat: The Stull Shale Member at Waverly, Eastern Kansas. Kansas Geol Surv Bull 245

Martin MA, Pollard JE (1996) The role of trace fossil (ichnofabric) analysis in the development of depositional models for the Upper Jurassic Fulmar Formation of the Kittiwake Field (Quadrant 21 UKCS). In: Hurst A (ed) Geology of the Humber Group: Central Graben and Moray Firth, UKCS. Geol Soc SP 114

Martinell J, Domènech R (1995) Bioerosive structures on the Pliocene rocky shores of Catalonia (Spain). Rev Esp Paleontol 10:37–44

Martini IP, Cascella A, Rau A (1995) The Manciano Sandstone; a shoreface deposit of Miocene basins of the Northern Apennines, Italy. Sediment Geol 99:37–59

Martino RL, Curran HA (1990) Sedimentology, ichnology, and paleoenvironments of the Upper Cretaceous Wenonah and Mt. Laurel Formations, New Jersey. J Sediment Petrol 60:125–144

Mayoral E (1986) Icnofacies de *Skolithos* y *Cruziana* en el Neógeno Superior (Plioceno marino) del sector Huelva-Bonares (Valle del Río Guadalquivir, España). Rev Esp Paleontol 1:13–28

Mayoral E (1987a) Acción bioerosiva de Mollusca (Gastropoda, Bivalvia) en el Plioceno inferior de la Cuenca del Bajo Guadalquivir. Rev Esp Paleontol 2:49–58

Mayoral E (1987b) *Stellichnus* nov. icnogen., huellas de incrustación atribuídas a *Paravinella* nov. gen. (Bryozoa, Ctenostomata) de la formación Arenas de Huelva (Pllioceno inferior) en la Cuenca del Bajo Guadalquivir (España). Rev Esp Paleontol 2:33–40

Mayoral E (1988) *Pennatichnus* nov. icnogen., *Pinaceocladichnus* nov. icnogen., e *Iramena*. Huellas de bioerosión debidas a Bryozoa perforantes (Ctenostomata, Plioceno inferior) en la Cuenca del Bajo Guadalquivir. Rev Esp Paleontol 3:13–22

Mayoral E, Muñiz F (1993) Consideraciones paleoetológicas acerca de *Gyrolithes*. In: Jornadas de Paleontología, 9, 1993. Comunicaciones, Barcelona, SPE, p. 18–22

Mayoral E, Muñiz F (2001) New ichnospecies of *Cardioichnus* from the Miocene of the Guadalquivir Basin, Huelva, Spain. Ichnos 8:69–76

Mayoral E, Reguant S (1995) Palaeoecology and taphonomy of bivalves, (mainly Glycymeris insubrica, Brocchi) and bryozoans from the Huelva Sands Fm. (Lower Pliocene, SW Spain). Rev Esp Paleontol, No Homenaje al Dr. Guillermo Colom, 31–47

Mayoral E, Pál M, Muñiz F (1998) Lower Pliocene Decapod crustaceans from the Southwestern Iberian Peninsula (Guadalquivir basin, Sevilla, Spain). Geobios 31:505–510

Mayoral E, Ledesma-Vazquez J, Baarli BG, Santos A, Ramalhod R, Cachão M, da Silva CM, Johnson ME (2013) Ichnology in oceanic islands; case studies from the Cape Verde Archipelago. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 381–382:47–66

McIlroy D (2004) Ichnofabrics and sedimentary facies of a tide-dominated delta: Jurassic Ile Formation of Kristin Field, Haltenbanken, Offshore Mid-Norway. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of Ichnology to Palaeoenvironmental and Stratigraphic Analysis. Geol Soc London Spec P 228

McIlroy D (2007) Ichnology of a macrotidal tide-dominated deltaic depositional system: Lajas Formation, Neuquén Province, Argentina. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–Organism Interactions: A Multifaceted Ichnology, SEPM Spec P 88

McRoberts CA (2001) Triassic bivalves and the initial marine Mesozoic revolution: A role for predators? Geology 29:359–362

Melchor RN, Bromley RG, Bedatou E (2009) *Spongeliomorpha* in nonmarine settings: an ichnotaxonomic approach. Earth Environ Sci Trans Roy Soc Edinburgh 100:429–436

Merle D, Pacaud J-M (2002) The first record of *Poirieria subcristata* (d'Orbigny, 1850) (Muriidae: muricinae), in the early Cuisian of the Paris Basin (Celles-sur-Aisne, Aizy Formation), with comments on the sculptural evolution of some Palaeocene and Eocene, Poirieria and Paziella. Tert Res 21:19–27

Metz R (2011) Pleistocene trace fossils in the Ironshore Formation, Little Cayman, British West Indies. Cent Eur J Geosci 3:71–76

Michalík J (1977) Systematics and ecology of Zeilleria Bayle and other brachiopods in the uppermost Triassic of the West Carpathians. Geol Zbornik-Geol Carpathica 28:323–346

Mikuláš R (1992a) The ichnogenus *Asteriacites*—Paleoenvironmental trends. Vêstnik Ceského geologického ústavu 67:423–433

Mikuláš R (1992b) Early Cretaceous borings from Stramberk (Czechoslovakia). Casop Miner Geol Rod 37:297–312

Mikulás R, Pek I (1995) Tertiary borings in Devonian limestone rockgrounds from Hranice (northern Moravia, Czech Republic). Vestnik Ceského geologického ústavu 70:19–26

Monaco P (1994) Hummocky cross-stratifications and trace fossils in the Middle Toarcian of some sequences of Umbria–Marche Apennines. Geobios 17:679–688

Monaco P (1995) Relationships between trace-fossil communities and substrate characteristics in some Jurassic pelagic deposits in the Umbria-Marche Basin, central Italy. Geobios Mem Sp 18:299–311

Monaco P (2002) Tracce fossili di invertebrati narini e loro rapporti con il substrato: esempi dal Mesozoico e dal Terziario dell'Appennino Umbro e dell'area Voncentia. Studi e Ricerche—Associazione Amici del Museo—Museo Civicio "G. Zannato" Montecchio Maggiore (Vicenza):29–38

Monaco P, Garassino A (2001) Burrows and body fossil of decapod crustaceans in the Calcari Grigi, Lower Jurassic, Trento platform (Italy). Geobios 34:291–301

Monaco P, Giannetti A (2002) Three-dimensional burrow systems and taphofacies in shallowing-upward parasequences, lower Jurassic carbonate platform (Calcari Grigi, Southern Alps, Italy). Facies 47:57–82

Monaco P, Caracuel JE, Castellani L (1996) Infaunal tiering, bioclasts erosion and decompaction as new tolos to quantify discontinuities in ammonitico rosso: examples from the Middle Toarcian and the Kimmeridgian. Palaeopelagos 6:202–210

Monaco P, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A (2012) Ichnological analysis of lateral environmental heterogeneity within the Bonarelli Level (uppermost Cenomanian) in the classical localities near Gubbio, Central Apennines, Italy. Palaios 27:48–54

Mørk A, Bromley RG (2008) Ichnology of a marine regressive systems tract: the Middle Triassic of Svalbard. Polar Res 27:339–359

Mouzo FR, Farinati EA, Espósito GJ (1989) Tubos fósiles de callianássidos en la playa de Pehuen-Co, provincia de Buenos Aires. 1ra Jorn Geol Bonaer (Tandil), Actas, 263–274

Müller AH (1977) Zur ichnologie der subherzynen Oberkreide (Campan). Zeitschr geol Wissensch, Berlin 5:881–897

Müller PJ, Suess E (1979) Productivity, sedimentation rate and sedimentary organic matter in the oceans. I. Organic carbon preservation. Deep-Sea Res 26:1347–1362

Muñiz F, Mayoral E (2001a) El icnogénero *Spongeliomorpha* en el Neógeno superior de la Cuenca de Guadalquivir (área de Lepe-Ayamonte, Huelva, España). Rev Esp Paleontol 16:115–130

Muñiz F, Mayoral E (2001b) *Macanopsis plataniformis* nov. ichnosp. from the Lower Cretaceous and Upper Miocene of the Iberian Peninsula. Geobios 34:91–98

Muñiz F, de Gibert JM, Esperante R (2010) First fossil evidence of bone-eating worms in whale carcasses. Palaios 25:269–273

Myint M (2001) *Psilonichnus quietis* isp. nov. from the Eocene Iwaki Formation, Shiramizu Group, Joban Coal Field, Japan. Ichnos 8:1–14

Myrow PM (1995) *Thalassinoides* and the enigma of Early Paleozoic open-framework burrow systems. Palaios 10:58–74

Nara M (1995) *Rosselia socialis*: a dwelling structure of a probable terebellid polychaete. Lethaia 28:171–178

Nara M (1997) High-resolution analytical method for event sedimentation using *Rosselia socialis*. Palaios 12:489–494

Nara M (2002) Crowded *Rosselia socialis* in Pleistocene inner shelf deposits: benthic paleoecology during rapid sea-level rise. Palaios 17:268–276

Nara M, Kondo Y (2012) The trace fossil *Scalichnus phiale* in Pleistocene shallow marine deposits of the Boso Peninsula, Japan. The Palaeontol Soc of Jpn 92:1–2

Neenan JM, Klein N, Scheyer TM (2013) European origin for sauropterygian marine reptiles and the evolution of placodont crushing dentition. Nature Comm 4:1621

Nesbitt EA (2006) Fossil pantries: crustacean debris storage chamber in Late Cenozoic estuarine sands. GSA. Abstracts with Programs 38:435

Nesbitt EA, Campbell KA (2002) A new *Psilonichnus* ichnospecies attributed to mud-shrimp *Upogebia* in estuarine settings. J Paleontol 76:892–901

Nesbitt EA, Campbell KA (2006) The environmental significance of *Psilonichnus*. Palaios 21:187–196

Neto de Carvalho C, Rodrigues NPC (2007) Compound *Asterosoma ludwigae* Schlirf, 2000 from the Jurassic of the Lusitanian Basin (Portugal): conditional strategies in the behaviour of Crustacea. J Iberian Geol 33:295–310

Neto de Carvalho C, Rodrigues NP, Viegas PA, Baucon A, Santos VF (2010) Patterns of occurrence and distribution of crustacean ichnofossils in the Lower Jurassic–Upper Cretaceous of Atlantic occidental margin basins, Portugal. Acta Geol Pol 60:19–28

Netto RG (1994) A paleoicnologia como ferramenta de trabalho na seqüência sedimentar Rio Bonito/Palermo. Doctorate Thesis, Porto Alegre, Universidade Federal do rio Grande do Sul

Netto RG (2000) Paleoicnologia do Rio Grande do Sul. In: Holz M, De Ros LF (eds) A paleontologia do Rio Grande do Sul., CIGO/UFRGS

Netto RG (2007) *Skolithos*-dominated piperock in non-marine environments: An example from the Triassic Caturrita Formation, southern Brazil. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–Organism Interactions: A Multifaceted Ichnology, SEPM Spec P 88:109–121

Netto RG, Grangeiro ME (2009) Neoichnology of the seaward side of Peixe Lagoon in Mostardas, southernmost Brazil: the *Psilonichnus* ichnocoenosis revisited. Rev Bras Paleontol 12:211–224

Netto RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Balistieri P (2007) *Gyrolithes* as a multipurpose burrow: an ethologic approach. Rev Bras Paleontol 10:157–168

Nielsen KSS, Nielsen JK (2001) Bioerosion in Pliocene to Late Holocene tests of benthic and planktonic foraminiferans, with a revision of the ichnogenera *Oichnus* and *Tremichnus*. Ichnos 8:99–116

Nielsen JK, Hansen KS, Simonsen L (1996) Sedimentology and ichnology of the Robbedale Formation (Lower Cretaceous), Bornholm, Denmark. B Geol Soc Denmark 43:115–131

O'Dea A, Jackson JBC, Fortunato H, Smith JT, D'Croz L, Johnson KG, Todd JA (2007) Environmental change preceded Caribbean extinction by 2 million years. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:5501–5506

Oji T, Ogaya C, Sato T (2003) Increase of shell-crushing predation recorded in fossil shell fragmentation. Paleobiology 29:520–526

Olivero D (2003) Early Jurassic to Late Cretaceous evolution of *Zoophycos* in the French Subalpine Basin (southeastern France). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 192:59–78

Olivero D, Gaillard C (1996) Paleoecology of Jurassic *Zoophycos* from south-eastern France. Ichnos 4:249–260

Olivero D, Gaillard C (2007) A constructional model for *Zoophycos*. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace Fossils: Concepts, Problems, Prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Olivero EB, López-Cabrera MI (2005) *Patagonichnus*: a new trace fossil from the Miocene of Patagonia. A probable fodinichnion of gregarious polychaetes. Ameghiniana 42:277–294

Olivero EB, López-Cabrera MI (2013) *Euflabella* n. igen.: complex horizontal spreite burrows in Upper Cretaceous–Paleogene shallow-marine sandstones of Antarctica and Tierra del Fuego. J Paleontol 87:413–413

Olivero EB, López-Cabrera MI (2014) Coupled paleogeographic patterns in Late Cretaceous, shallow-marine body and trace fossils from Antarctica. 4th International Palaeontological Congress, Mendoza, Argentina, Abstract Volume, p. 226.

Olivero EB, Buatois LA, Scasso RA (2004) *Paradictyodora antarctica*: a new complex vertical spreite trace fossil from the Upper Cretaceous–Paleogene of Antarctica and Tierra del Fuego, Argentina. J Paleontol 78:783–789

Olivero EB, Torres P, López MI, Buatois LA (2008) Variaciones faciales y arquitecturas complejas en depósitos marinos someros de la Formación Leticia, Eoceno, Andes Fueguinos. XII Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología Abstract Book

Olóriz F, Rodriguez-Tovar FJ (2002) Trace-fossils and minor discontinuities in a marl limestone rhythmite, Lower–Middle Kimmeridgian, southern Spain. Geobios 35:581–593

Olszewski TD, Patzkowsky ME (2001) Measuring recurrence of marine biotic gradients: A case study from the Pennsylvanian-Permian midcontinent. Palaios 16:444–460

Osinga R, Kop AJ, Malschaert JFP, Van Duyl FC (1997) Effects of the sea urchin *Echinocardium cordatum* on bacterial production and carbon flow in experimental benthic systems under increasing organic loading. J Sea Res 37:109–121

Pagani MA, Manceñido MO, Damborenea SE, Ferrari SM (2012) The ichnogenus *Lapispira* from the Early Jurassic of Patagonia (Chubut, Argentina). Rev Paléobiologie 11:409–416

Parma SG (2008) Echinodermata. In: Camacho HH, Longobucco ML (eds) Los invertebrados fósiles. 1st Edition. Fundación de Historia Natural Félix de Azara: Universidad Maimónides

Patel SJ, Desai BG, Vaidya AD, Shukla R (2008) Middle Jurassic trace fossils from Habo Dome, Mainland Kachchh, Western India. J Geol Soc India 71:345–362

Patel SJ, Joseph JK, Bhatt NY (2014) Ichnology of the Goradongar Formation, Goradongar hill range, Patcham Island, Kachchh, Western India. J Geol Soc India 84:129–154

Pazos PJ, Fernández DE (2010) Three-dimensionally integrated trace fossils from shallow-marine deposits in the Lower Cretaceous of the Neuquén Basin (Argentina): *Hillichnus agrioensis* isp. nov. Acta Geol Pol 60:105–118

Pearson NJ, Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Casadío S, Raising MR (2013) Environmental variability of *Macaronichnus* ichnofabrics in Eocene tidal-embayment deposits of southern Patagonia, Argentina. Lethaia 46:341–354

Pemberton SG, Frey RW (1982) Trace fossil nomenclature and the *Planolites-Palaeophycus* dilemma. J Paleontol 56:843–881

Pemberton SG, Frey RW (1985) The *Glossifungites* ichnofacies: Modern examples from the Georgia Coast, USA. In: Curran HA (ed) Biogenic structures: Their use in interpreting depositional environments. SEPM Spec P 35:237–259

Pemberton SG, Jones B (1988) Ichnology of the pleistocene ironshore formation, Grand Cayman Island, British West Indies. J Paleontol 62:495–505

Pemberton SG, MacEachern JA (1997) The ichnological signature of storm deposits: the use of trace fossils in event stratigraphy. In: Brett CE (ed) Paleontological event horizons: ecological and evolutionary implications. Columbia University Press, New York

Pemberton SG, Wightman DM (1992) Ichnological characteristics of brackish water deposits. In: Pemberton SG (ed) Applications of Ichnology to Petroleum Exploration: A Core Workshop. SEPM Core W 17

Pemberton SG, Reinson GE, MacEachern JA (1992) Comparative ichnological analysis of late Albian estuarine valley-fill and shelf-shoreface deposits, Crystal Viking field, Alberta. In: Pemberton SG (ed) Applications of ichnology to petroleum exploration, a core workshop: SEPM Core W 17

Pemberton SG, Spilla, M, Pulham AJ, Saunders T, MacEachern JA, Robbins D, Sinclair IK (2001) Ichnology and Sedimentology of shallow to marginal marine systems: Ben Nevis and Avalon Reservoirs, Jeanne d'Arc Basin. Geol Assoc of Canada Short Course 15

Pérez-López A (1997) Estudio de la ichnofauna del Muschelkalk de la zona Subbetica y su relación con las facies sedimentarias. Rev Soc Geol España 10:393–403

Perry CT, Bertling M (2000) Temporal and spatial patterns of coral reef macroboring since the Mesozoic. In: Insalaco E, Skelton P, Palmer T (eds) Carbonate platform systems: components and interactions. Geol Soc Spec P 178

Pervesler P, Uchman A (2009) A new Y−shaped trace fossil attributed to upogebiid crustaceans from Early Pleistocene of Italy. Acta Palaeontol Pol 54:135–142

Pervesler P, Zuschin M (2004) A lucinoid bivalve trace fossil *Saronichnus abeli* igen. et isp. nov. from the Miocene molasses deposits of Lower Austria, and its environmental significance. Geol Carpath 55:111–115

Pervesler P, Roetzel R, Uchman A (2011) Ichnology of shallow sublittoral siliciclastics of the Burgschleinitz Formation (Lower Miocene, Eggenburgian) in the Alpine-Carpathian Foredeep (NE Austria). Austrian J Earth Sci 104(1):81–96

Pether J (1995) *Belichnus* new ichnogenus, a ballistic trace on mollusc shells from the Holocene of the Benguela region, South Africa. J Paleontol 69:171–181

Pickerill RK, Donovan SK (1998) Ichnology of the Pliocene Bowden shell bed, southeast Jamaica. Contrib Tert Quat Geol 35:161–175

Pickerill RK, Keighley DG, Donovan SK (1996) Ichnology of the Pliocene Bowden Formation of Southeastern Jamaica. Caribbean J Sci 32:221–232

Pickerill RK, Mitchell SF, Donovan SK, Keighley DG (1998) Sedimentology and palaeoenvironment of the Pliocene Bowden Formation, southeast Jamaica. Contrib Tert Quat Geol 35:9–29

Pickerill RK, Donovan SK, Portell RW (2001) The bioerosional ichnofossil *Petroxestes pera* Wilson and Palmer from the middle Miocene of Carriacou, Lesser Antilles. Caribbean J Sci 37:130–131

Pieńkowski G, Uchman A (2009) *Ptychoplasma conica* isp. n.—a new bivalve locomotion trace fossil from the Lower Jurassic (Hettangian) alluvial sediments of Sołtyków, Holy Cross Mountains, Poland. Geol Quart 53:397–406

Pineda-Salgado G, Quiroz-Barroso SA, Sour-Tovar F (2015) Analysis of bioerosion in clasts from a Miocene rocky-shore, Concepción Formation, Veracruz, México. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclim Palaeoecol 439:50–62

Pirrie D, Feldmann RM, Buatois LA (2004) A New Decapod Trackway from the upper cretaceous, James Ross Island, Antarctica. Palaeontology 47:1–12

Plaziat J-C, Mahmoudi M (1988) Trace fossils attributed to burrowing echinoids: A revision including new ichnogenus and ichnospecies. Geobios 21:209–233

Plička M, Uhrová J (1990) New trace fossils from the Outer Carpathian flysch (Czechoslovakia). Acta Mus Morav, Sci Nat 75:53–59

Pollard JE, Goldring R, Buck SG (1993) Ichnofabrics containing *Ophiomorpha*: significance in shallow-water facies interpretation. J Geol Soc London 150:149–164

Poschmann M (2015) The corkscrew-shaped trace fossil *Helicodromites* Berger, 1957, from Rhenish Lower Devonian shallow-marine facies (Upper Emsian; SW Germany). Paläontol Zeitschr 89:635–643

Powell JH (1992) *Gyrochorte* burrows from the Scarborough Formation (Middle Jurassic) of the Cleveland Basin, and their sedimentological setting. Proc Yorkshire Geol Soc 49:41–47

Quiroz LI, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Jaramillo CA, Santiago N (2010) Is the trace fossil *Macaronichnus* an indicator of temperate to cold waters? Exploring the paradox of its occurrence in tropical coasts. Geology 38:651–654

Radley JD (2010) Grazing bioerosion in Jurassic seas: a neglected factor in the Mesozoic marine revolution? Hist Biol 22:387–393

Radwański A (1970) Dependence of rock-borers and burrowers on the environmental conditions within the Tortonian littoral zone of southern Poland. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace Fossils. Geol J Spec Issue 3. Seel House Press, Liverpool

Radwański A (1977) Present-day types of trace in the Neogene sequence; their problems of nomenclature and preservation. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace Fossils 2. Geol J Spec Issue 9, Seel House Press

Rice ME (1969) Possible boring structures of sipunculids. Am Zool 9:803–812

Rindsberg AK (1994) Ichnology of the Upper Mississippian Hartselle Sandstone of Alabama, with notes on other Carboniferous formations. Geol Survey Alabama Bull 158:1–107

Rodrigues J, Gutschick RC (1970) Late Devonian-Early Mississippian ichnofossils from westem Montana and northern Utah. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace fossils. Geol J Spec Issue 3. Seel House Pres, Liverpool

Rodrigues NPC, Gil Cid MD, Arroyo F, Huineman M, Lara R, Torices A (2005) *Arachnostega gastrochaenae* Bertling, 1992 en fósiles del Dobrotiviense (Ordovícico Medio) de los Montes de Toledo (SO de España). Rev Esp Paleontol 20:57–64

Rodríguez MF, Panza JL (2003) La icnofacies de *Glossifungites* en la Formación Salamanca, Paleoceno, paraje Campamento Villegas, Chubut, Argentina. Asoc Paleontol Arg Pub Esp 9

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A, Martín-Algarra A (2009a) Oceanic anoxic event at the Cenomanian–Turonian boundary interval (OAE-2): Ichnological approach from the Betic Cordillera, southern Spain. Lethaia 42:407–417

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A, Martín-Algarra A, O'Dogherty L (2009b) Nutrient spatial variation during intrabasinal upwelling at the Cenomanian–Turonian oceanic anoxic event in the westernmost Tethys: An ichnological and facies approach. Sediment Geol 215:83–93

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Buatois LA, Piñuela L, Mángano MG, García-Ramos JC (2012) Palaeoenvironmental and functional interpretation of *Rhizocorallium jenense spinosus* (ichnosubsp. nov.) from the lower Jurassic of Asturias, northern Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 339–341:114–120

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Stachacz M, Uchman A, Reolid M (2014) Lower/Middle Ordovician (Arenigian) shallow-marine trace fossils of the Pochico Formation, southern Spain: palaeoenvironmental and palaeogeographic implications at the Gondwanan and peri-Gondwanan realm. J Iber Geol 40:539–555

Roniewicz P (1970) Borings and burrows in the Eocene littoral deposits of the Tatra Mountains, Poland. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace fossils. Geol J Spec Issue 3. Seel House Press, Liverpool

Rosso A (2008) *Leptichnus tortus* isp. nov., a new cheilostome etching and comments on other bryozoan-produced trace fossils. Studi Trent Sci Nat Acta Geol 83:75–85

Ruppert EE, Fox RS, Barnes RD (2004) Invertebrate Zoology: a functional evolutionary approach, 7th edn. Thomson, USA

Santos A, Mayoral E, Muñiz F, Boski T, Cachao M (2003a) Variaciones morfológicas en *Maeandropolydora sulcans* Voigt, 1965, del Néogeno Superior marino del extremo suroccidental de la península Ibérica. Asoc Paleontol Arg Pub Esp 9

Santos A, Mayoral E, Muñiz F, Bajo I, Adriaenses O (2003a) Bioerosión en erizos irregulares (Clypeasteroidea) del Mioceno superior en el sector suroccidental de la cuenca del Guadalquivir (Provincia de Sevilla). Rev Esp Paleontol 18:131–141

Santos A, Mayoral E, Muñiz F (2005) Bioerosion scars of acorn barnacles from the southwestern Iberian Peninsula, upper Neogene. Riv Ital Paleontol S 111:181–189

Santos A, Mayoral E, Bromley RG (2011) Bioerosive structures from Miocene marine mobile-substrate communities in southern Spain, and description of a new sponge boring. Palaeontology 54:535–545

Santos A, Mayoral E, Dumont CP, da Silva CM, Ávila SP, Baarli BG, Cachão M, Johnson ME, Ramalho RS (2015) Role of environmental change in rock-boring echinoid trace fossils. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 432:1–14

Saunders TDA, MacEachern JA, Pemberton SG (1994) Cadotte Member sandstone: Progradation in a boreal basin prone to winter storms. In: Pemberton SG, James DP, Wightman DM (eds) CSPG Mannville Core Conference. Can Soc Petrol Geol, Exploration Update

Savrda CE (2012) Chalk and related deep-marine carbonates. In: Knaust D, Bromley RG (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Develop in Sedim 64. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Savrda CE (2014) Limited ichnologic fidelity and temporal resolution in pelagic sediments: Paleoenvironmental and paleoecologic implications. Palaios 29:210–217

Savrda CE, Bottjer DJ (1986) Trace fossil model for reconstruction of paleo-oxygenation in bottom waters. Geology 14:3–6

Savrda CE, Bottjer DJ (1987) Trace fossils as indicators of bottom-water redox conditions in ancient marine environments. In: Bottjer DJ (ed) New Concepts in the Use of Biogenic Sedimentary Structures for Paleoenvironmental Interpretation. Soc Sed Geol Pacific Section. Volume and Guidebook 52

Savrda CE, Bottjer DJ (1989) Anatomy and implications of bioturbated beds in" black shale" sequences: Examples from the Jurassic Posidonienschiefer (southern Germany). Palaios 4:330–342

Savrda CE, Bottjer DJ (1991) Oxygen-related biofacies in marine strata: An overview and update. In: Tyson RV, Pearson TH (eds) Modern and Ancient Continental Shelf Anoxia. Geol Soc Spec P 58:201–219

Savrda CE, Ozalas K (1993) Preservation of mixed-layer ichnofabrics in oxygenation-event beds. Palaios 8:609–613

Savrda CE, King DT Jr (1993) Log-ground and *Teredolites* largerstatte in a transgressive sequence, Upper Cretaceous (Lower Campanian) Mooreville Chalk, central Alabama. Ichnos 3:69–77

Schäfer W (1962) Aktuo-Paläontologie nach Studien in der Nordsee. Waldemar Kramer, Frankfurt am Main

Schäfer W (1972) Ecology and palaeoecology of marine environments. University of Chicago Press, Chicago

Schatz ER, Mángano MG, Aitken AE, Buatois LA (2013) Response of benthos to stress factors in Holocene Arctic fjord settings: Maktak, Coronation, and North Pangnirtung Fjords, Baffin Island, Canada. Paleogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 386:652–668

Schlirf M (2000) Upper Jurassic trace fossils from the Boulonnais (northern France). Geol et Palaeontol 34:145–213

Schlirf M (2003) Palaeoecologic significance of Late Jurassic trace fossils from the Boulonnais, N France. Acta Geol Pol 53:123–142

Schlirf M (2012) *Heliophycus seilacheri* n. isp. and *Biformites insolitus* Linck, 1949 (trace fossils) from the Late Triassic of the Germanic Basin: their taxonomy and palaeoecological relevance. Neues Jahrb Geol Paläontol, Abh 263:185–198

Schlirf M, Uchman A (2005) Revision of the ichnogenus *Sabellarifex* Richter, 1921 and its relationship to *Skolithos* Haldeman, 1840 and *Polykladichnus* Fursich, 1981. J Syst Palaeontol 3:115–131

Schmidt H (1992) Mikrobohrspuren ausgewählter Faziesbereiche der tethyalen und germanischen Trias (Beschreibung, Vergleich und bathymetrische Interpretation). Frankf Geowiss Arb 12:1–228

Schneider CL (2008) The importance of echinoids in Late Paleozoic ecosystems. In: Ausich WI, Webster GD (eds) Echinoderm paleobiology. Indiana University Press, Bloomington

Scholle PA, Arthur MA, Ekdale AA (1983) Pelagic environment. In: Scholle PA, Bebout DC, Moore CH (eds) Carbonate depositional environments. AAPG Mem 33

Schuster F (1996) Paleoecology of Paleocene and Eocene corals from the Kharga and Farafra oases (western Desert, Egypt) and the depositional history of the Paleocene Abu Tartur carbonate platform, Kharga oasis. Tübinger Geowissenschaftliche Arbeiten 31

Schwarz E, Buatois LA (2012) Substrate-controlled ichnofacies along a marine sequence boundary: The Intra-Valanginian Discontinuity in central Neuquén Basin (Argentina). Sediment Geol 277–278:72–87

Schweitzer CE (2001) Paleobiogeography of Cretaceous and Tertiary decapod crustaceans of the North Pacific Ocean. J Paleontol 75:808–826

Schweitzer CE, Feldmann RM (2010) The Decapoda (Crustacean) as predators on Mollusca through geologic time. Palaios 25:167–182

Schweitzer CE, Feldmann RM (2015) Faunal turnover and niche stability in marine Decapoda in the Phanerozoic. J Crust Biol 35:633–649

Seike K (2009) Influence of beach morphodynamics on the distribution of the opheliid polychaete *Euzonus* sp. and its feeding burrows on a sandy beach: paleoecological and paleoenvironmental implications for the trace fossil *Macaronichnus segregatis*. Palaios 24:799–808

Seike K, Curran HA (2014) Burrow morphology of the land crab *Gecarcinus lateralis* and the ghost crab *Ocypode quadrata* on San Salvador Island, The Bahamas: Comparisons and palaeoenvironmental implications. Spanish J Palaeontol 29:61–70

Seilacher A (1953) Studien zur Palichnologie. II. Die fossilen Ruhespuren (Cubichnia). Neues Jahrb Geol Palaeontol, Abh 98:87–124

Seilacher A (1955) Spuren und Fazies im Unterkambrium. In: Schindewolf OH, Seilacher A (eds) Beiträge zur Kenntnis des Kambriums in der Salt Range (Pakistan). Akad Wiss LitMainz, math-naturwiss Kl, Abh 10: 373–399

Seilacher A (1969) Paleoecology of boring barnacles. Am Zool 9:705–719

Seilacher A (1977) Evolution of trace fossil communities. In: Hallam A (ed) Patterns of evolution as illustrated by the fossil record Develop in Palaeontol and Stratigr 5. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Seilacher A (1983) Upper Paleozoic trace fossils from the Gilf Kebir-Abur Ras area in southwestern Egypt. J Afr Earth Sci 1:21–34

Seilacher A (1986) Evolution of behavior as expressed in marine trace fossils. In: Kitchell JA, Nitecki MH (eds) Evolution of animal behavior: Paleontological and field approaches. Oxford University Press, New York

Seilacher A (1990a) Aberrations in bivalve evolution related to photo- and chemosymbiosis. Hist Biol 3:289–311

Seilacher A (1990b) Paleozoic trace fossils. In: Said R (ed) The Geology of Egypt. A.A. Balkema, Rotterdam

Seilacher A (1998) Rudists as bivalvian dinosaurs. In: Johnston PA Haggart JW (eds) Bivalves: an Eon of evolution. Paleobiological studies honoring Norman D. Newell. University of Calgary Press

Seilacher A (2007) Trace fossil analysis. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York

Seilacher A, Seilacher E (1994) Bivalvian trace fossils: A lesson from Actuopaleontology. Cour Forsch-Inst Senckenberg 169:5–15

Sengupta S, Nielsen JK (2009) Bioerosion in middle Eocene larger Foraminifera *Nummulites obtusus* (Sowerby) from Lakhpat, northwest Kutch, Gujarat, India. Indian J Geosci 63:81–86

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1981) A factor analytic description of the marine fossil record. Paleobiology 7:36–53

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1991) A Model of onshore-offshore change in faunal diversity. Paleobiology 17:58–77

Sepkoski JJ Jr, Miller AI (1985) Evolutionary faunas and the distribution of Paleozoic benthic communities is space and time. In: Valentine JW (ed) Phanerozoic diversity patterns: profiles in macroevolution. Princeton University Press, Princeton

Sepkoski JJ Jr, Sheehan PM (1983) Diversification, faunal change, and community replacement during the Ordovician radiations. In: Tevesz MJS, McCall LL (eds) Biotic interactions in recent and fossil benthic communities. Plenum, New York

Serpagli E, Serventi P, Monegatti P (2008) The ichnofossil genus *Paradictyodora* Olivero, Buatois and Scasso (2004) from the Pliocene of the northern Apennines, Italy. Riv Ital Paleontol S 114:161–167

Sheehan PM (2001) History of marine biodiversity. Geol J 36:231–249

Shelley DC, Lawton TF (2005) Sequence stratigraphy of tidally influenced deposits in a salt-withdrawal minibasin: Upper sandstone member of the Potrerillos Formation (Paleocene), La Popa basin, Mexico. AAPG Bull 89:1157–1179

Signor PW III, Brett CE (1984) The mid Paleozoic precursor to the Mesozoic marine revolution. Paleobiology 10:222–236

Šimo V, Tomašových A (2013) Trace-fossil assemblages with a new ichnogenus in "spotted" (Fleckenmergel-Fleckenkalk) deposits: a signature of oxygen-limited benthic communities. Geol Carpat 64:355–374

Singh RH, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Ibotombi S (2008) Trace fossils of the upper eocene–lower oligocene transition of the Manipur, Indo-Myanmar Ranges (Northeast India). Turkish J Earth Sci 17:821–834

Singh MC, Kundal P, Kushwaha RAS (2010) Ichnology of Bhuban and Boka Bil Formations, oligocene-miocene deposits of Manipur Western Hill, Northeast India. J Geol Soc India 76:573–586

Smilek KR, Hembree DI (2012) Neoichnology of the holothurian *Thyonella gemmata*. Open Paleontol J 4:1–10

Smith AB (1984) Echinoid palaeobiology (Special Topics in Palaeontology, 1). Allen and Unwin, London

Smith AB (2005) Growth and form in echinoids: The evolutionary interplay of plate accretion and plate addition. In: Briggs DEG (ed) Evolving form and function: Fossils and development. Proceedings of a Symposium Honoring Adolf Seilacher for his Contributions to Paleontology, in celebration of his 80th Birthday. New Haven: Peabody Museum of Natural History, Yale University

Smith AB, Crimes TP (1983) Trace fossils formed by heart urchins. A study of Scolicia and related traces. Lethaia 16:76–92

Spalletti LA, Poiré D, Pirrie D, Matheos S, Doyle P (2001a) Respuesta sedimentológica a cambios en el nivel de base en una secuencia mixta clástica-carbonática del Cretácico de la cuenca Neuquina, Argentina. Rev Soc Geol Esp 14:57–74

Spalletti LA, Poiré D, Schwarz E, Veiga G (2001b) Sedimentologic and sequence stratigraphic model of a Neocomian marine carbonate-siliciclastic ramp: Neuquén Basin, Argentina. J South Am Earth Sci 14:609–624

Sprinkle J, Kier PM (1987) Phylum Echinodermata. In: Boardman RS, Cheetham AH, Rowell AJ (eds) Fossil invertebrates. Blackwell Scientific, Palo Alto, CA

Srivastava DK, Singh MP, Kulshrestha AK (2010) The trace fossil *Dactyloidites* Hall, 1886 from the Middle Jurassic Khadir Formation of Bela Island, Kachchh, India and its palaeoenvironmental significance. J Palaeontol Soc India 55:171–175

Stafford E, Dietl G, Gingras G, Leighton L (2015) *Caedichnus*, a new ichnogenus representing predatory attack on the gastropod shell aperture. Ichnos 22:87–102

Stanistreet IG, Le Blanc SG, Cadle AB (1980) Trace fossils as sedimentological and palaeoenvironmental indices in the Ecca Group (Lower Permian) of the Taansvaal. T Geol Soc South Afr 83:333–344

Stanley SM (1970) Relation of Shell Form to Life Habits of the Bivalvia (Mollusca). Geol Soc Am Mem 25:1–256

Stanley SM (2014) Evolutionary radiation of shallow-water Lucinidae (Bivalvia with endosymbionts) as a result of the rise of seagrasses and mangroves. Geology 42:803–806

Stanley TM, Feldmann RM (1998) Significance of nearshore trace fossil assemblages of the Cambro-Ordovician Deadwood Formation and Aladdin Sandstone, South Dakota. Annals Carnegie Mus 67:1–51

Stanley SM, Ries JB, Hardie LA (2005) Seawater chemistry, coccolithophore population growth, and the origin of Cretaceous chalk. Geology 33:593–596

Steneck RS (1983) Escalating herbivory and resulting adaptive trends in calcareous algae. Paleobiology 9:45–63

Sudan CS, Sahni AK, Sharma UK (2000) Trace fossils from the Jurassic sequence of Jaisalmer basin, Rajasthan. J Palaeontol Soc India 45:165–171

Sutcliffe OE (1997) An ophiuroid trackway from the Lower Devonian Hunsrück Slate, Germany. Lethaia 30:33–39

Swen K, Fraaije RHB, van der Zwaan GJ (2001) Polymorphy and extinction of the Late Cretaceous burrowing shrimp *Protocallianassa faujasi* and first record of the genera *Corallianassa* and *Calliax* (Crustacea, Decapoda, Thalassinoidea) from the Cretaceous. Contrib Zool 70:85–98

Tapanila L (2006) Devonian Entobia borings from Nevada, with a revision of Topsentopsis. J Paleo 80:760–767

Tapanila L (2008) The endolithic guild: an ecological framework for residential cavities in hard substrates. In: Wisshak M, Tapanila L (eds) Current developments in bioerosion. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg

Tapanila L, Cooper P (2002) Endolithic trace fossils in Ordovician-Silurian corals and stromatoporoids, Anticosti Island, eastern Canada. Acta Geol Hisp 37:15–20

Tapanila L, Hutchings P (2012) Reefs and mounds. In: Knaust D, Bromley RG (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Develop in Sedim 64

Taylor AM, Gawthorpe RL (1993) Application of sequence stratigraphy and trace fossil analysis to reservoir description: examples from the Jurassic of the North Sea. In: Parker JR (ed) Petroleum Geology of Northwest Europe: Proc 4th Conf. Geological Society, London

Taylor PD, Wilson MA (2003) Palaeoecology and evolution of marine hard substrate communities. Earth-Sci Rev 62:1–103

Taylor JD, Cleevely RJ, Morris NJ (1983) Predatory gastropods and their activities in the Blackdown Greensand (Albian) of England. Palaeontology 26:521–533

Taylor PD, Wilson MA, Bromley RG (1999) A new ichnogenus for etchings made by cheilostome bryozoans into calcareous substrates. Palaeontology 42:595–604

Taylor PD, Wilson MA, Bromley RG (2013) *Finichnus*, a new name for the ichnogenus *Leptichnus* Taylor, Wilson and Bromley, 1999, preoccupied by *Leptichnus* Simroth, 1896 (Mollusca, Gastropoda). Palaeontology 56:456–456

Taylor TN, Krings M, Taylor EL (2015) Fossil fungi. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Tchoumatchenco P, Uchman A (2001) The oldest deep-sea *Ophiomorpha* and *Scolicia* and associated trace fossils from the Upper Jurassic–Lower Cretaceous deep-water turbidite deposits of SW Bulgaria. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 169:85–99

Thayer CW (1979) Biological bulldozers and the evolution of marine benthic communities. Science 203:458–461

Thayer CW (1983) Sediment-mediated biological disturbance and the evolution of the marine benthos. In: Tevesz MJS, McCall PL (eds) Biotic interactions in recent and fossil benthic communities. Plenum, Zeitschr

Thompson I (1979) Errant polychaetes (Annelida) from the Pennsylvanian Essex Fauna of Northern Illinois. Palaeontographica A 163:169–199

Ting H-H, Huang C-Y, Wu L-C (1991) Paleoenvironments of the Late Neogene sequences along the Nantzuhsien River, Southern Taiwan. Petrol Geol of Taiwan 26:121–149

Trueman ER (1966) Bivalve molluscs: fluid dynamics of burrowing. Science 152:523–525

Trueman ER (1975) The locomotion of soft-bodied Animals. Edward Arnold, London

Twitchett RJ, Barras CG (2004) Trace fossils in the aftermath of mass extinction events. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Spec P 228

Uchman A (1995) Taxonomy and paleoecology of flysch trace fossils: The Marnoso-arenacea Formation and associated facies (Miocene, Northern Apennines, Italy). Beringeria 15:1–115

Uchman A (1998) Taxonomy and ethology of flysch trace fossils: revision of the Marian Ksiazkiewicz collection and studies of complementary material. Ann Soc Geol Poloniae 68:105–218

Uchman A (2003) Trends in diversity, frequency and complexity of graphoglyptid trace fossils: evolutionary and palaeoenvironmental aspects. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 192:123–142

Uchman A (2004) Phanerozoic history of deep-sea trace fossils. In: McIlroy D (ed) The Application of Ichnology to Palaeoenvironmental and Stratigraphic Analysis. Geol Soc Spec P 228

Uchman A (2009) The *Ophiomorpha rudis* ichnosubfacies of the *Nereites* ichnofacies: characteristics and constraints. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 276:107–119

Uchman A, Gaździcki A (2006) New trace fossils from the La Meseta Formation (Eocene) of Seymour Island, Antarctica. Polish Polar Res 27:153–170

Uchman A, Krenmayr HG (1995) Trace fossils from the Lower Miocene (Ottnangian) molasse deposits of Upper Austria. Paläontol Zeitschr 69(3/4):503–524

Uchman A, Krenmayr HG (2004) Trace fossils, ichnofabrics and sedimentary facies in the shallow marine Lower Miocene molasse of Upper Austria. Jahrb Geol Bundesanst 144:233–251

Uchman A, Pervesler P (2007) Palaeobiological and palaeonvironmental significance of the Pliocene trace fossil *Dactyloidites peniculus*. Acta Palaeontol Pol 52:799–808

Uchman A, Mikuláš R, Housa V (2003) The trace fossil *Chondrites* in uppermost Jurassic-Lower Cretaceous deep cavity fills from the western Carpathians (Czech Republic). Geol Carpathica 54:181–187

Uchman A, Bąk K, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ (2008) Ichnological record of deep-sea palaeoenvironmental changes around the Oceanic Anoxic Event 2 (Cenomanian–Turonian boundary): An example from the Barnasiówka section, Polish Outer Carpathians. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 262:61–71

Uchman A, Mikulas R, Rindsberg AK (2011) Mollusc trace fossils *Ptychoplasma* Fenton and Fenton, 1937 and *Oravaichnium* Plička and Uhrová, 1990: Their type material and ichnospecies. Geobios 44:387–397

Uchman A, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Machaniec E, Kędzierski M (2013) Ichnological characteristics of Late Cretaceous hemipelagic and pelagic sediments in a submarine high around the OAE-2 event: A case from the Rybie section, Polish Carpathians. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 370:222–231

Van Hinte JE, Wise SW et al (1987) Initial Reports of the Deep Sea Drilling Project, 95. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington

Vannier J, Calandra I, Gaillard C, Żylińska A (2010) Priapulid worms: pioneer horizontal burrowers at the Precambrian-Cambrian boundary. Geology 38:711–714

Verde M, Martinez S (2004) A new ichnogenus for crustacean trace fossils from the Upper Miocene Camacho Formation of Uruguay. Palaeontology 47:39–49

Vermeij GJ (1977) The Mesozoic Marine Revolution: Evidence from snails, predators and grazers. Paleobiology 3:245–258

Vermeij GJ (1978) Biogeography and adaptation: patterns of marine life. Harvard University Press, Cambridge

Vermeij GJ (1982) Unsuccessful predation and evolution. Am Nat 120:701–720

Vermeij GJ (1987) Evolution and escalation: an ecological history of life. Princeton University Press, Princeton

Vermeij GJ (2008) Escalation and its role in Jurassic biotic history. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 263:3–8

Vermeij GJ, Schindel DE, Zipser E (1981) Predation through geological time: evidence from gastropod shell repair. Science 214:1024–1026

Villegas-Martín J, de Gibert JM, Rojas-Consuegra R, Belaústegui Z (2012) Jurassic *Teredolites* from Cuba: New trace fossil evidence of early wood-boring behavior in bivalves. J S Am Earth Sci 38:123–128

Villegas-Martín J, Netto RG, Lavina ELC, Rojas-Consuegra R (2014) Ichnofabrics of the Capdevila Formation (early Eocene) in the Los Palacios Basin (western Cuba): Paleoenvironmental and paleoecological implications. J S Am Earth Sci 56:214–227

Villier L, Navarro N (2004) Biodiversity dynamics and their driving factors during the Cretaceous diversification of Spatangoida (Echinoidea, Echinodermata). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 214:265–282

Voigt E (1965) Über parasitische Polychaeten in Kreide-Austern sowie einige andere in Muschelschalen bohrende Würmer. Paläont Zeitschr 39:193–211

Voigt E (1972) Über *Talpina ramosa* v. Hagenow 1840, Ein wahrscheinlich zu den Phoroniden gehöriger Bohrorganismus aus der Oberen Kreide, nebst Bemerkungen zu den fibrigen bisher beschriebenen kretazischen‚Talpina'-Arten. Nachr Akad Wissensch Göttingen 2. Math-phys Kl 1972:93–126

Voigt E (1977) On grazing traces produced by the radula of fossil and recent gastropods and chitons. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace Fossils 2. Geol J Spec Issue 9

Voigt E (1978) Phoronidenbaue *(Talpina ramose v.* Hagenow) aus der maastrichter Tuftkreide. Natuurhist Genootschap in Limburg 28:3–6

Vossler SM, Pemberton SG (1988) *Skolithos* in the Upper Cretaceous Cardium Formation: an ichnofossil example of opportunistic ecology. Lethaia 21:351–362

Vossler SM, Pemberton SG (1989) Ichnology and paleoecology of offshore deposits in the Cardium Formation (Turonian, Alberta, Canada). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 74:217–239

Wagner PJ, Kosknik MA, Lidgard S (2006) Abundance distributions imply elevated complexity of post-Paleozoic marine ecosystems. Science 314:1289–1292

Walker SE (1992) Criteria for recognizing marine hermit crabs in the fossil record using gastropod shells. J Paleontol 66:535–558

Walker SE (2007) Traces of gastropod predation on molluscan prey in tropical reef environments. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Walker SE, Brett CE (2002) Post-paleozoic patterns in marine predation: was there a Mesozoic and Cenozoic marine predatory revolution. Paleontol Soc Papers 8:119–194

Walker SE, Voight JR (1994) Paleoecologic and taphonomic potential of deepsea gastropods. Palaios 9:48–59

Walker SE, Holland SM, Gardiner L (2003) *Coenobichnus currani* (new ichnogenus and ichnospecies): Fossil trackway of a land hermit crab, early Holocene, San Salvador, Bahamas. J Paleontol 77:576–582

Weissbrod T, Barthel WK (1998) An Early Aptian ichnofossil assemblage zone in southern Israel, Sinai and southwestern Egypt. J Afr Earth Sci 26:151–165

Werner F, Wetzel A (1982) Interpretation of biogenic structures in oceanic sediments. Bull Inst Géol Bassin d'Aquitaine 31:275–288

Wetzel A (1981) Ökologische und stratigraphische Bedeutung biogener Gefüge in quartären Sedimenten am NW-afrikanischen Kontinentalrand. "Meteor" Forsch-Ergebn C34:1–47

Wetzel A (1987) Ichnofabrics in Eocene to Maestrichtian sediments from Deep Sea Drilling Project Site 605. In: Van Hinte J, Wise SW et al (eds) Init Rept Deep Sea Drilling Project 95. US Govt Print Off, Washington, pp 825–835

Wetzel A (1991) Ecologic interpretation of deep-sea trace fossil communities. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol, Palaeoecol 85:47–69

Wetzel A (2008) Recent bioturbation in the deep South China Sea: a uniformitarian ichnologic approach. Palaios 23:601–615

Wetzel A, Bromley RG (1994) *Phycosiphon incertum* revisited-*Anconichnus horizontalis* is its junior subjective synonym. J Paleontol 68:1396–1402

Wetzel A, Uchman A (2012) Hemipelagic and pelagic basin plains. In: Knaust D, Bromley RG (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Develop in Sedim 64. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 673–701

Wetzel A, Werner F (1981) Morphology and ecological significance of *Zoophycos* in deep-sea sediments off NW Africa. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 32:185–212

Wetzel A, Blechschmidt I, Uchman A, Matter A (2007) A highly diverse ichnofauna in Late Triassic deep-sea fan deposits of Oman. Palaios 22:567–576

Wetzel A, Werner F, Stow DAV (2008) Bioturbation and biogenic sedimentary structures in contourites. In: Rebesco M, Camerlenghi A (eds) Contourites. Contourites. Develop in Sedim 60. Elsevier, Amsterdam, p 183–202

Wetzel A, Tjallingii R, Stattegger K (2010) *Gyrolithes* in Holocene estuarine incised-valley fill deposits, offshore southern Vietnam. Palaios 25:239–246

Wiesner MG, Kuhnt W, Party SS (1998) R/V Sonne Research Cruise SO-132 to the South China Sea. Institut für Biogeochemie und Meereschemie der Universität Hamburg, Hamburg, 19 p

Wiesner MG, Stattegger K, Pohlmann T, Chen F, Heddaeus A, Heyckendorff K, Jechlitschek H, Lahajnar N, Liskow I, Li X, Liu Z, Lorenc S, Metzke M, Müller M, Peleo-Alampay A, Schönke M, Schwarzer K, Szczygielski A, Steen E, Unverricht D, Wang X, Welsch A, Wetzel A, Zhao

Y (2012) Cruise Report RV Sonne 220—Land-Ocean–atmosphere Interactions in the Gulf of Tonkin. Institut für Geowissenschaften Universität Kiel, Kiel, 101 p

Wignall PB (1991) Dysaerobic trace fossils and ichnofabrics in the Upper Jurassic Kimmeridge Clay of southern England. Palaios 6:264–270

Wilson MA (2007) Macroborings and the evolution of bioerosion. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Wilson MA, Palmer TJ (1988) Nomenclature of a bivalve boring from the Upper Ordovician of the Midwestern United States. J Paleontol 62:306–308

Wilson MA, Palmer TJ (1998) The earliest *Gastrochaenolites* (Early Pennsylvanian, Arkansas, USA): An Upper Paleozoic bivalve boring? J Paleontol 72:769–772

Wilson MA, Rigby JK (2000) *Asteriacites lumbricalis* von Schlotheim 1820: ophiuroid trace fossils from the Lower Triassic Thaynes Formation, central Utah. Ichnos 7:43–49

Wilson MA, Feldman HR, Krivicich EB (2010) Bioerosion in an equatorial Middle Jurassic coral–sponge reef community (Callovian, Matmor Formation, southern Israel). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 289:93–101

Wilson MA, Borszcz T, Zatoń M (2014) Bitten spines reveal unique evidence for fish predation on Middle Jurassic echinoids. Lethaia 48:4–9

Wisshak M (2012) Microbioerosion. In: Knaust D, Bromley RG (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Develop in Sedim 64:213–243

Wisshak M, Gektidis M, Freiwald A, Lundälv T (2005) Bioerosion along a bathymetrical gradient in a cold-temperate setting (Kosterfjord/SW Sweden): an experimental study. Facies 51:93–117

Wisshak M, Seuβ B, Nützel A (2006) Evolutionary implications of an exceptionally preserved Carboniferous microboring assemblage in the Buckhorn Asphalt lagerstätte (Oklahoma, USA). In: Wisshak M, Tapanila L (eds) Current developments in bioerosion. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg

Wisshak M, Kroh A, Bertling M, Knaust D, Nielsen JKN, Jagt JW, Neumann C, Nielsen KSN (2015) In defence of an iconic ichnogenus-*Oichnus* Bromley, 1981. Ann Soc Geol Poloniae 85:445–451

Wu X-T (1982) Storm-generated depositional types and associated trace fossils in Lower Carboniferous shallow-marine carbonates of Three Cliffs Bay and Ogmore-by-Sea, South Wales. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 39:187–202

Yochelson EL, Fedonkin MA (1997) The type specimens (Middle Cambrian) of the trace fossil *Archaeonassa* Fenton and Fenton. Can J Earth Sci 34:1210–1219

Zachos J, Pagani M, Sloan L, Thomas E, Billups K (2001) Trends, rhythms, and aberrations in global climate 65 Ma to present. Science 292:686–693

Zatoń M, Salamon M (2008) Durophagous predation on the Middle Jurassic molluscs, as evidenced from shell fragmentation. Palaeontology 51:63–70

Zhang G, Uchman A, Chodyń R, Bromley RG (2008) Trace fossil *Artichnus pholeoides* igen. nov. isp. nov. in Eocene turbidites, Polish Carpathians: Possible ascription to holothurians. Acta Geol Pol 58:75–86

Zhou Z (1997) Cretaceous and Lower Tertiary trace fossils from the Gamba area of southern Tibet, China. Neues Jahrb Geol Paläontol, Abh 203:145–172

Zonneveld J-P, Gingras MK (2013) The ichnotaxonomy of vertically oriented, bivalve-generated equilibrichnia. J Paleontol 87:243–253

Zonneveld J-P, Zaim Y, Rizal Y, Ciochon RL, Bettis EA III, Aswan GGF (2012) Ichnological constraints on the depositional environment of the Sawahlunto Formation, Kandi, northwest Ombilin Basin, west Sumatra, Indonesia. J Asian Earth Sci 45:106–113

Chapter 10
The Mesozoic Vertebrate Radiation in Terrestrial Settings

Massimo Bernardi, Fabio Massimo Petti, Laura Piñuela, José Carlos García-Ramos, Marco Avanzini, and Martin G. Lockley

10.1 Introduction

Given their worldwide abundance, it is not surprising that the study of Mesozoic vertebrate tracks is the most ancient branch of vertebrate ichnology. Dinosaur tracks were first observed and figured by Native Americans by, if not before, the seventeenth century (Lockley et al. 2006a), and the first document dates back to the earliest nineteenth century when Pliny Moody reported the discovery of large tracks in the eastern U.S. With Edward Hitchcock (who would eventually coin the world "ichnology"), tracks began to be approached scientifically (e.g., Hitchcock 1858) and subsequent papers by Wolfgang Soergel (Soergel 1925), Othenio Abel (Abel 1935)

M. Bernardi (✉)
Department of Geology and Palaeontology, MUSE - Museo delle Scienze,
Corso del Lavoro e della Scienza 3, 38122 Trento, Italy

School of Earth Sciences, University of Bristol, Queen's Road, Bristol BS8 1RJ, UK
e-mail: massimo.bernardi@muse.it

F.M. Petti
Department of Geology and Palaeontology, MUSE - Museo delle Scienze,
Corso del Lavoro e della Scienza 3, 38122 Trento, Italy

PaleoFactory, Dipartimento di Scienze della Terra, Sapienza Università di Roma,
Piazzale Aldo Moro, 5, 00185 Rome, Italy

L. Piñuela • J.C. García-Ramos
Museo del Jurásico de Asturias [MUJA], Colunga, Asturias, España

M. Avanzini
Department of Geology and Palaeontology, MUSE - Museo delle Scienze,
Corso del Lavoro e della Scienza 3, 38122 Trento, Italy

M.G. Lockley
Dinosaur Tracks Research Group, University of Colorado Denver,
PO Box 173364, Denver, CO 80217-3364, USA

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_10

and Roland Bird (Bird 1939, 1944) brought consciousness and the first scientific methods into the discipline. Haubold (1971a, b) published two seminal papers which constituted the base of the first reliable track-trackmakers associations.

In the late twentieth century, the discovery of numerous and vast dinosaur tracksites contributed to the so-called "renaissance" in vertebrate ichnology (Lockley and Gillette 1987) and brought the first solid attempts to standardize study procedures (Leonardi 1987). With this new impetus the first ideas were put forward for using track data for palebiologic (mainly behavioral and physiologic) studies (Lockley and Gillette 1987). This continued in the last two decades with the publication of several seminal volumes, especially on dinosaur tracks (Leonardi 1987, 1994; Gillette and Lockley 1989; Thulborn 1990; Lockley 1991; Lockley and Hunt 1995a; Lockley and Meyer 2000). In order to fully contribute to the paleobiology of dinosaurs, however, the long-standing debate of the relation between tracks and trackmakers needed to be addressed. No paleobiologic inference can in fact be drawn except by interpreting tracks as the result of the activity of a trackmaker, identified as belonging to a particular taxon. It is commonly assumed that tracks can rarely be accurately associated with their producers at the species or genus level (Farlow and Pianka 2000; Carrano and Wilson 2001). During its two centuries of history, however, vertebrate ichnology built a broad consensus on the assignment of some footprint morphogroups to broad taxonomic categories, based on clear analysis of the morphologies of digits, hands, and feet, and comparisons of tracks with hand and foot skeletons (e.g., Haubold 1971a, b; Demathieu and Demathieu 2004; Padian et al. 2010; Heckert et al. 2010) or, rarely, on the direct association of track and fossil material (e.g., Voigt et al. 2012). Most authors agree that a trackmaker attribution at a high taxonomic level is often possible (e.g., Baird 1980; Sarjeant 1990; Olsen et al. 2002; Carrano and Wilson 2001; Thulborn 2006), and in fact morphofamilies or ichnofamilies have been referred to in the literature since the early twentieth century (Lull 1904). In the 1980s, Demathieu and colleagues began to elaborate on the possibility of implementing tracks in phylogenetic studies (Demathieu 1981; Demathieu and Haubold 1978). Demathieu also pioneered the use of vertebrate tracks in many other areas of paleobiologic studies (Demathieu 1986); since then, a synapomorphy-based approach has been employed in a number of studies (Olsen 1995; Olsen and Baird 1986; Olsen et al. 1998; Wilson and Carrano 1999; Haubold and Klein 2000, 2002; Padian 2003; Wilson 2005; Wright 2005; Brusatte et al. 2010b; Kubo and Kubo 2012; Bernardi et al. 2015). This perspective has considerably constrained potential trackmakers finally allowing full hypothesis testing and a better integration of vertebrate ichnology in paleobiologic analysis.

10.2 Trends and Events During the Mesozoic

10.2.1 Tetrapods Across the PT Boundary

A track is the result of the activity of a producer, or trackmaker, namely a track is the imprint of an autopodium (a limb) registered during locomotion. The vertebrate track record can be thought as an archive of the evolution of foot morphology and posture of extinct and extant vertebrates. Here we must also remember that tracks also record many details of soft tissue morphology, not revealed by body fossils, which in many cases may lack foot skeletons, even when other key diagnostic elements are present. When consecutive steps are impressed as an animal moves, in fact, a trackway is formed and its parameters (i.e., width, distance between single tracks, angle between tracks, distance of the tracks from midline, etc.) can be used to accurately define the walking posture of its producer. Assessing posture from a skeleton involves observing limb articular surfaces and manipulating (physically or virtually) bones at the hip, knee, and ankle in the hindlimb, and shoulder, elbow, and wrist in the forelimb. This procedure is time-consuming and necessitates good preservation of the joints, which is not often the case. On the contrary, basic trackway parameters, such as those listed here, can be easily measured in all kinds of trackways and are less dependent on substrate consistency and taphonomic deformation with respect to single-track descriptive measurements (i.e., interdigital angles). Furthermore, the track record is often much more abundant than the skeletal one, thus giving opportunities to statistically analyze the data.

Limb postures of tetrapods vary from sprawling to erect. An erect limb can be found within birds and cursorial mammals, where the limbs are held under the body and move in a parasagittal plane. On the other hand, a sprawling limb posture is seen in limbed squamates and all limbed amphibians, where the proximal limb segments are highly abducted and swing largely in a horizontal plane (Blob 2000). Posture can change during locomotion, a classic example being crocodiles which show a sprawling posture at low speeds and a semi-erect one when running (Zug 1974; Carpenter 2009). An erect limb posture is energetically advantageous over a sprawling limb posture, especially for large animals. Stresses over the knee and elbow joints are reduced and respiration is facilitated when the limbs are held vertical (Carrier 1987).

From skeletal studies, it is known that Late Permian tetrapods such as temnospondyl amphibians, pelycosaurs, and pareiasaurs were largely sprawlers (Carroll 1988; Benton 2005). Late Triassic faunas were instead dominated by erect forms such as dinosaurs and crurotarsan archosaurs (Nesbitt 2011). The postural transition from sprawling to erect between those times can be described by looking at skeletal remains, but these are scanty in the Early and Middle Triassic. Vertebrate ichnology has allowed a better understanding of this event, especially regarding the exact pattern, timing, and possible correlation with other events by studying fossil trackways.

A key study in this respect was developed by Kubo and Benton (2009). The authors used a classic, simple measure to distinguish sprawlers from erect walkers: the ratio of stride length to trackway width, indicated by the pace angulation (Peabody 1959). This is defined as the angle formed by three continuous front or hind footprints (Peabody 1959) (Fig. 10.1). Pace angulation is dependent on body size and speed, but limb posture is the key factor in determining pace angulation. As exemplified by neoichnologic studies, values lower than 107°, in fact, indicate the producer performed a sprawled locomotion while values greater than 138° indicate erect locomotion (Kubo and Benton 2009).

By analyzing a large dataset of Late Paleozoic to Early Mesozoic tetrapod trackways, the authors found a clear distinction between Permian and Triassic samples

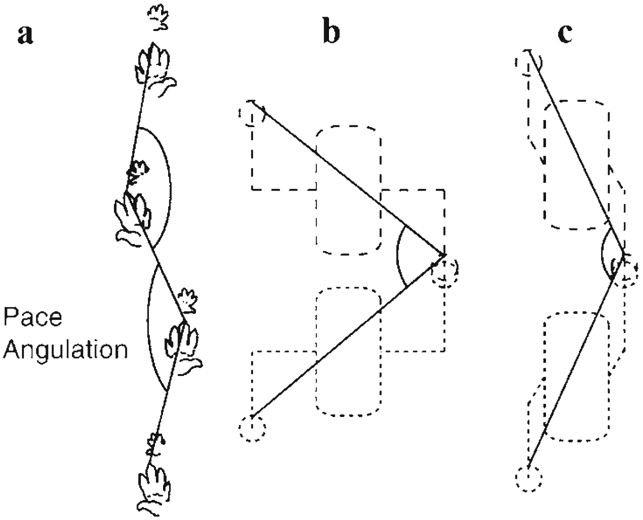


Fig. 10.1 Pace angulation, the angle formed by three consecutive footprints, can be used as a proxy for trackmaker's posture. Using the measuring method shown in (**a**), Kubo and Benton (2009) discovered that the shift from a sprowler posture (**b**) to a more erect one (**c**) occurred across the Permian-Triassic boundary, and may thus be related with the profound impact of the devastating mass extinction event. Modified from Kubo and Benton (2009)

when median values rise from 87.5° (Late Permian) to 139.5° (Early Triassic), whereas within those epochs no significative change in the distributions of pace angulation could be found. All tetrapods, whether synapsids or archosaurs, show the same postural shift across the Permo-Triassic boundary and once the posture had changed, there was no significant change in mean pace angulation through the Triassic. This shift was mostly caused by the increase in the number of chirotheriid trackways from the Early Triassic. The ichnofamily Chirotheriidae (Abel 1935) is a form family comprising the ichnogenera *Chirotherium* Kaup, 1835; *Brachychirotherium* Beurlen, 1950; *Isochirotherium* Haubold, 1971b; *Synaptichnium* Nopcsa, 1923; *Parasynaptichnium* Mietto, 1987, and *Protochirotherium* Fichter and Kunz, 2004. These have been consistently attributed to archosaurs, usually to crurotarsans (pseudosuchians) and basal archosauriforms (Krebs 1965; Haubold 1967, 1971a, 1971b, 1984, 1986, 1999; 2006; Lockley and Meyer 2000; Demathieu and Demathieu 2004; Gand et al. 2010; Bowden et al. 2010; Heckert et al. 2010; Lucas and Heckert 2011; Desojo et al. 2013; Bernardi et al. 2015) and show *manus* (fore foot) and *pes* (hind foot) imprints with a compact anterior digit group I–IV and a postero-laterally positioned, strongly reduced digit V, which are apomorphies of Archosauromorpha (Nesbitt 2011). Thus it is clear that archosaurs (and to a lesser extent, therapsids) were responsible for the high pace angulation of Triassic trackways. Footprints made by amphibians, procolophonids, and small basal diapsids indicate retained sprawling limb posture (Haubold 1971a, b). The abundance of trackways from the Permian up to the Triassic provides resolution that the rare skeletal fossil tetrapods of this age do not. In addition to providing a description of the pattern of this event, dating indicates that the shift was accomplished already 6 myr after the profound Permo-Triassic mass extinction; this is considerably earlier than the 15–20 myr suggested by the study of locomotory evolution based on skeletal fossils (Charig 1972; Kemp 1982; Bonaparte 1984; Parrish 1987; Kubo and Benton 2009). The ichnologic record also supports a late Permian-Early Triassic radiation of archosauriforms not well documented by skeletal material. By analizing several chirotheriid footprints from the upper Permian of the Southern Alps (Italy), Bernardi et al. (2015) showed that archosauriforms had already undergone substantial taxonomic diversification by the late Permian, widening the geographical distribution of this clade before and after the P-T boundary (Bernardi et al. 2015). Furthermore, analysis of body size, as deduced from track length, allowed formulating a new hypothesis on the response of archosauriforms to the end-Permian events, proposing that their body size did not change significantly from the late Permian to the Early Triassic (Bernardi et al. 2015).

10.2.2 The Origin of Dinosauromorphs

In vertebrate ichnology synapomorphy-based studies are still rare. However, it now appears possible to integrate this discipline into paleobiologic studies if rigorous descriptions are coupled by thoughtful character-based evaluation of potential trackmakers. When synapomorphic characters are found, potential trackmakers can be constrained considerably, allowing full hypothesis testing. More simply, each find that reveals new morphotypes of trackways or skeletal remains of limbs/feet showing apomorphic characters, helps constrain possible track-trackmaker correlations more accurately. Using this approach, tracks and trackways become “biologically informative” and can thus be of interest for paleobiologic analysis. The synapomorphy-based technique focuses on the identification of osteologic-derived character states in the tracks that result from the impression of corresponding (synapomorphic) characters in the autopodia of the trackmaker. These characters allow the recognition of a particular clade independent from the defined body-fossil distributions (see Olsen et al. 1998; Carrano and Wilson 2001; Wilson 2005). This approach has been applied only recently (e.g., Olsen 1995; Olsen and Baird 1986; Olsen et al. 1998; Wilson and Carrano 1999; Carrano and Wilson 2001; Haubold and Klein 2000, 2002; Padian 2003; Wilson 2005; Wright 2005; Brusatte et al. 2010b; Kubo and Kubo 2013; Bernardi et al. 2015).

The most recent advances in the understanding of the origin of dinosaur lineages are a good example of the potential for integrating ichnologic studies with cladistic approaches. The resulting contribution is that, conceived in this way, vertebrate ichnology can give to a deeper understanding of patterns and processes in the evolution of life. Dinosauromorpha is a clade including all taxa closer to dinosaurs than to the other main archosaur clades (i.e., pterosaurs and crocodylomorphs). Dinosauromorphs originated, and radiated in the Triassic, and several taxa are now known that vary in size, feeding, and locomotory features, and that were spread over most of western Pangea (Langer et al. 2013). However, both the timing and pattern of the early radiation of this lineage are poorly understood (see Marsicano et al. 2015 for a recent update). The oldest known body fossils of dinosauromorphs are silesaurids, which are Anisian in age (Nesbitt et al. 2010; Peecook et al. 2011; Barrett et al. 2015). Silesaurids occupy a derived position within Dinosauromorpha (Ezcurra 2006; Nesbitt et al. 2010; Nesbitt 2011), and therefore imply the presence of other dinosauromorph groups such as lagerpetids, and non-silesaurid dinosauriformes before that time. No such Early Triassic groups are documented in the body fossil record. However, the Early Triassic archosaur track record is rich (see Klein and Haubold 2007 and references therein), raising the intriguing possibility that dinosauromorph tracks can be recognized among the diverse ichnoassociations. *Rotodactylus*, a common ichnogenus in the latest Olenekian–Ladinian worldwide (Peabody 1948; Gand and Demathieu 2005; Gand et al. 2005; Klein and Haubold 2007), has been long attributed to basal dinosauromorphs (Haubold 1999; Haubold and Klein 2002); however, a strict synapomorphy-based assessment was lacking. Recently, Brusatte et al. (2010a) presented a formal analysis corroborating this identification. *Rotodactylus*, in fact, possesses unequivocal features of dinosauromorphs, such as reduction of digits I and V and digitigrade posture. Moreover Brusatte et al. (2010a, see also; Niedźwiedzki et al. 2013), described a new ichnogenus named *Prorotodactylus*, discovered in the Early Triassic of Koszary and Stryczowice, Poland. *Prorotodactylus* can be assigned to Dinosauromorpha thanks to the presence of unequivocal synapomorphies such as the bunched metatarsus, reduction of digits I and V, the posterior deflection of digit V, and the manifest digitigrady. Brusatte et al. (2010a) suggested *Lagerpeton* as possible trackmaker, and although this is (Niedźwiedzki et al. 2013) or might be (Langer et al. 2013) the case, an attribution of *Prorotodactylus* to dinosauromorphs appears quite solid (Niedźwiedzki et al. 2013; but see Klein and Niedźwiedzki 2012). The nearly complete absence of autopodia in the skeletal record (with the notable exception of *Lagerpeton*, Sereno and Arcucci 1994) prevents an evaluation of digit ratios across other dinosauromorph taxa (see Langer et al. 2013 for a discussion) and enhance the importance of the above cited ichnotaxa in exploring the early history of this group. The synapomorphy-based identifications of *Rotodactylus* and *Prorotodactylus* shed new light on the debate over the posture of the earliest dinosauromorphs; both show that these early forms were much more digitigrade than any other closely related archosaurs and that they walked on all fours (Fig. 10.2b). The ichnogenus *Sphingopus*, which is found in numerous Olenekian to Middle Triassic sites all over the world (Klein and Haubold 2007), shares the apomorphic characters described in *Prorotodactylus*; however, the lack of associated manus imprints and high pace angulation indicates that the trackmaker was walking bipedally. Furthermore, *Sphingopus* is much larger than the other dinosauromorph tracks. The tendency toward a full tridactyl morphology, with digit III being the longest, suggest that *Sphingopus* isp. was produced by a dinosauromorph more derived than the *Proroto dactylus*/*Rotodactylus* trackmaker, and therefore suggests that bipedality was acquired and the trackmaker was closer to the origin of dinosaurs (Fig. 10.2c).

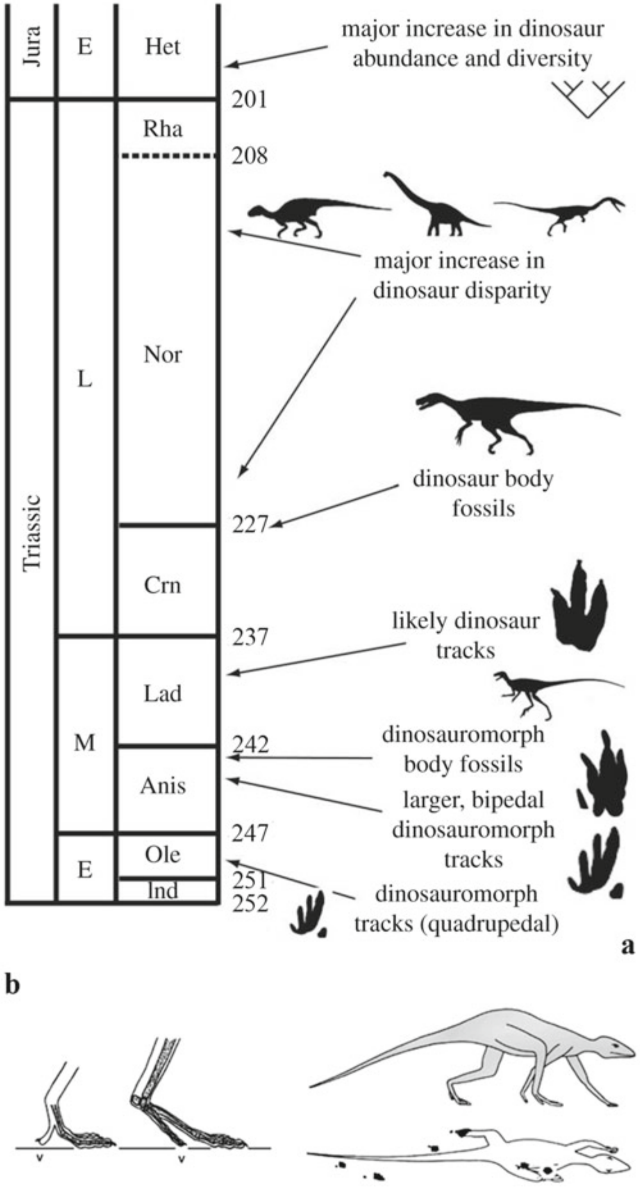


Fig. 10.2 Footprints attributed to dinosauromorphs and early dinosaurs can be integrated with skeletal data to build a general timeline of early dinosaur history. Footprints, as those described by Brusatte et al. (2010b), document the earliest phase of this radiation and predate timing of emergence of the various groups (**a**). (**b**) Shows a likely reconstruction of an early dinosauromoph as reconstructed on the base of *Rotodactylus* trackways. (**a**) Modified from Brusatte et al. (2010b), (**b**) modified from Haubold (1999) and Niedźwiedzki et al. (2013)

The stratigraphically successive records of *Prorotodactylus* and *Rotodactylus* documented by Brusatte et al. (2010a) show that changes in foot anatomy were occurring in dinosauromorphs during the Olenekian; the appearance of *Sphingopus* documents the evolutionary shift from quadrupedality to bipedality, and from small to large size, in the dinosaur lineage. Tracks, identified using synapomorphies, can thus provide new data on the timing and pattern of character acquisition during early dinosauromorph radiation (Fig. 10.2a). Such data are currently not visible in the body fossil record. Furthermore, being older than indicated by the skeletal record, tracks might indicate that the appearance of the dinosauromorph lineage can be linked with the Permian—Triassic mass extinction event (Brusatte et al. 2010a; Niedźwiedzki et al. 2013).

10.2.3 The Origin and Early History of Dinosaurs

The vertebrate track record can be used to make inferences about the spatial and temporal distribution of tetrapod taxa and can give reliable clues, although at a coarse taxonomic level, into tetrapod diversity. If parsimoniously interpreted, it can complement the skeletal record offering a "total evidence" approach to the study of evolutionary patterns and timing of events.

The study of early Mesozoic vertebrate terrestrial ecosystems is a lively field in both vertebrate paleontology and paleoichnology, mostly powered by the debates on dinosaur origins and their early history. The appearance of dinosaurs during the Triassic marked the onset of a faunal diversification that has dominated terrestrial ecosystems for almost 230 Myr (Brusatte et al. 2008a). As discussed, the possible contribution of track data to this and other taxon-based debates, depends on reliable identification of dinosaur trackmakers.

Triassic tridactyl prints are traditionally assigned to Dinosauria (see Lucas et al. 2006 and reference therein). Supposed dinosaur tracks are recognized on the base of few synapomorphies: (1) the prevalence of the digit II–IV group, (2) mesaxonic pattern of foot structure, (3) digit I reduced and shifted backwards (and thus often not preserved in tracks), and (4) tendency towards digitigrady (see also Thulborn 1990; Haubold 1999; Brusatte et al. 2010b). However, this morphotype cannot be unambiguously assigned to Dinosauria using apomorphy-based identifications; a functionally tridactyl pes is found also in some non-dinosaurian dinosauriforms (Gauthier 1986; Brinkman and Sues 1987; King and Benton 1996; Novas 1992; Carrano and Wilson 2001; Fraser et al. 2002; Dzik 2003; Marsicano et al. 2007; Nesbitt et al. 2007; Brusatte et al. 2010b). Furthermore, no synapomorphies of three-toed footprints can discriminate among theropods, basal saurischian, and basal ornithischian groups (Olsen et al. 1998). "Theropod-like" tracks can, however, be identified on the basis of the following characters: (1) asymmetry of the track with angle between digit III and II lower than III-IV, (2) digit III longer than IV > II, (3) sharp claw traces on all digits, and (4) tip of digit II turned inwards (Bernardi et al. 2013). Lockley (2001, 2007a, 2009) has also argued that narrowness and strong mesaxony distinguishes theropod tracks from those of tridactyl ornithischians. Nevertheless, no clear synapomorphy can be described in tridactyl tracks to clearly distinguish between dinosaurian- and non-dinosaurian-dinosauriforms. All Triassic functionally tridactyl tracks with digitigrade pes produced by bipedal parasagittal posture should be loosely attributed to an archosaur on the dinosaur line. Some derived characters, such as those listed by Bernardi et al. (2013), can be used in support of an attribution to Dinosauria, but a "gray zone" will always exist.

Debates on dinosaur origin thus focus around three main topics: (1) timing of appearance, (2) pattern and pace of early diversification (body size and biogeography), and (3) dynamics of replacement of crurotarsan archosaurs by dinosaurs. If the first relies on new discoveries of older specimens and reliable dating of the dinosaur-bearing formations, the second refers to dinosaurs having experienced a rapid diversification or having a deeper origin ("slow fuse") not documented (with the possible notable exception of Nesbitt et al. 2013) by current knowledge of the fossil record. The last needs data from mixed assemblages to test for habitat preferences and niche competition, and the in situ nature of footprints can be of great value in this respect.

10.2.3.1 Timing of Appearance

The exact timing of dinosaur origins remains unclear (Benton 1983; Brusatte et al. 2008a). The oldest record of dinosaurs based on skeletal remains is from the Carnian of Argentina (Benton 1983; Sereno and Arcucci 1994; Sereno 1999; Irmis et al. 2007; Brusatte et al. 2010b; Langer et al. 2010; Ezcurra 2010; Martinez et al. 2011), although Nesbitt et al. (2013) reported a possible earlier dinosaur from the Anisian of Tanzania. By the Carnian-Norian transition, all three major dinosaur lineages (Ornithischia, Sauropodomorpha, Theropoda) are documented (Brusatte et al. 2010b; Irmis et al. 2007; Langer et al. 2010). This forces researchers to focus mostly on the still poorly known Middle Triassic record. Furthermore, ghost lineages inferred from phylogenetic analyses predict that Dinosauria and its immediate stem lineage should be as old the early Middle Triassic (Sereno and Arcucci 1994; Nesbitt et al. 2010).

Early Triassic tracks previously attributed to dinosaurs have been reconsidered as partially or badly preserved "chirotheroids" (King and Benton 1996; see also Cavin et al. 2012). Although track-bearing formations cannot be always confidently dated, functionally tridactyl footprints are documented in the Middle Triassic of France (Demathieu 1989; Lockley and Meyer 2000), Germany (Haubold and Klein 2000, 2002), Italy (Avanzini 2002), and Argentina (Marsicano et al. 2007 and references therein), and have been generally attributed to dinosauromorphs. Dinosaur tracks have been reported from the Middle Triassic Los Rastros Formation (Argentina) by Marsicano et al. (2004, 2007; see also Marsicano and Barredo 2004; Melchor and Valais 2006) but have been considered ambiguously identified by others (Langer et al. 2010; Irmis 2011). Therefore the ichnologic record, although failing to definitively prove a Middle Triassic origin for dinosaurs, clearly indicates the presence of a diverse fauna of dinosauromorphs with functionally tridactyl digitigrade pedes, and possibly true dinosaurs during the Middle Triassic (Fig. 10.3), a condition that the body-fossil record is only recently beginning to document (Nesbitt et al. 2013).

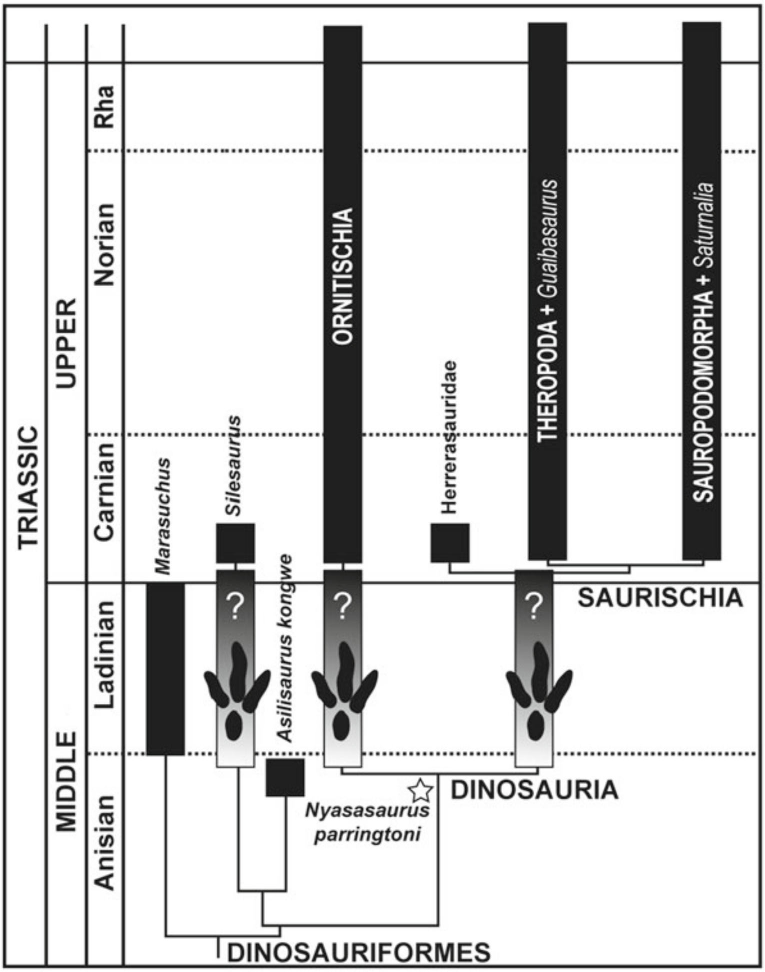


Fig. 10.3 A calibrated phylogeny of early dinosaurs and sister taxa based on both skeletal and ichnological data. The possible presence of dinosaurs in the Middle Triassic as testified by controversial footprints have recently received support from the description of *Nyasasaurus* which is considered either within, or sister-taxon of, Dinosauria. Modified from Marsicano et al. (2007) and Nesbitt et al. (2013)

10.2.3.2 Early Diversification

Although the first unequivocal dinosaur body fossils are known from the Carnian (Brusatte et al. 2010b; Langer et al. 2010; Nesbitt et al. 2013), Brusatte et al. (2008a, 2010b) demonstrated that dinosaurs increased their diversification and their morphologic disparity only from the Norian; dinosaurs experienced a burst of diversification only after the Triassic–Jurassic transition.

At the end of the Triassic the dinosaurs experienced an increase in maximum body size, later expressed as an increase in average body size (Sookias et al. 2012; Turner and Nesbitt 2013). Late Triassic tridactyl footprints are well known from USA, Europe, South America, Australia, and Africa (e.g., Tucker and Burchette 1977; Biron and Dutuit 1981; Mietto 1988; Olsen and Baird 1986; Thulborn 2000; Gatesy 2001; Knoll 2004; Milàn and Gierliński 2004; Weishampel et al. 2004; Lockley and Eisenberg 2006; Silva et al. 2007; Meyer et al. 2013). The Triassic record of large tridactyl tracks (e.g., Thulborn 2003; Bernardi et al. 2013; Meyer et al. 2013) has invalidated the hypothesis of Olsen et al. (2002) of a dramatic increase in size at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary. However, the increasing abundance toward the end of the Triassic of medium- and large-sized theropod tracks (*Eubrontes* and *Grallator* above all) marked a crucial phase in dinosaur history, when the main radiation or diversification of theropods and the evolution of large species got underway during the Late Triassic (Lockley and Hunt 1995a). Furthermore, if the attribution of the largest Late Triassic tracks is correct, the estimated body length, calculated according to Thulborn's (1990) equations ($h = 3.06 \times \mathrm{FL}1.14$ and $L = 4$ h), would be more than 5 m. Their estimated body mass value, following Weems (2006), would have been about 200 kg (Bernardi et al. 2013). This size is not known from dinosaur skeletal remains of Carnian age (Benton 2006; Brusatte et al. 2010b) and is approximated only by the Norian theropod dinosaur *Liliensternus* (Cuny and Galton 1993; Lucas et al. 2006).

Tracks are also a valuable tool that gives us insight into the geographic distribution of the first dinosaurs. The earliest skeletal remains of dinosaurs are from southern Pangaea and the oldest possible dinosaur tracks are from Argentina. The earliest dinosaur from northern Pangaea has recently been dated as "middle" Norian of western North America (Nesbitt et al. 2009). This has led to the view that the major dinosaurian clades (Ornithischia, Sauropodomorpha, Theropoda) may have originated in southern Pangaea (Brusatte et al. 2010b; Langer et al. 2010). The paleogeographic importance of this distribution, however, is compromised by the absence of well-preserved skeletal remains of Carnian age from northern localities (northern Africa, Europe, North America) (Langer 2005; Nesbitt et al. 2007; Martinez et al. 2011). Tracks, however, indicate that dinosaurs were already present by the Late Carnian in northern Pangea (Bernardi et al. 2013, Fig. 10.4). With the exclusion of the possible earliest dinosaur *Nyasasaurus* (Nesbitt et al. 2013), this would imply a nearly contemporaneous appearance of dinosaurs on all of Pangea (Bernardi et al. 2013).

10.2.3.3 Dynamics of Replacement

In the past, the Late Triassic was described as the period when the faunas dominated by crurotarsan archosaurs were competitively replaced by those dominated by dinosaurs (Bakker 1972; Charig 1984). A growing consensus now suggests that dinosaurs were initially rare components of Triassic terrestrial ecosystems and that their ascent was gradual (Brusatte et al. 2008b). It was only after the Triassic–Jurassic transition that dinosaurs became dominant in terrestrial vertebrate ecosystems

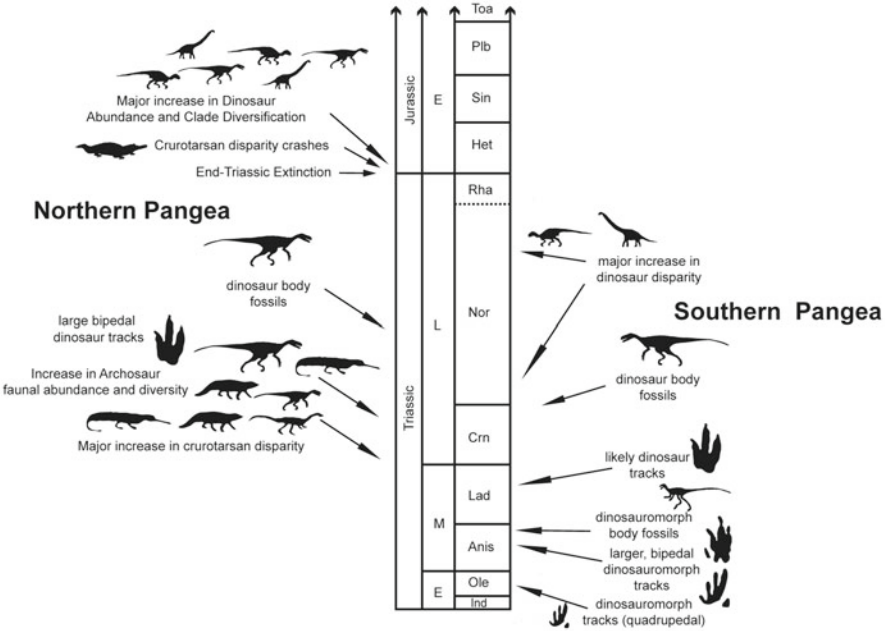


Fig. 10.4 The ichnological record provides valuable data on both temporal and spatial distribution of basal dinosaurs. Tracks, for example, indicate the presence of archosaur faunas, which include dinosaurs, during the early Late Triassic both in Laurasia and Gondwana. This pattern is not (yet) documented by body-fossil data. Modified from Brusatte et al. (2010a, 2011)

worldwide (Benton 1983; Sereno 1999 see also Brusatte et al. 2010b). The body fossil record has shown that in the Late Triassic, during the first 25–30 million years of dinosaur history, crurotarsans had double the variety of body plans, lifestyles, and diets in comparison with contemporary dinosaurs (Brusatte et al. 2008a, 2010b, 2011; see also, Benton 1983; Sereno 1999). In addition to crurotarsans, Triassic dinosaurs lived together with dicynodont synapsids (Dzik et al. 2008) and coexisted with dinosauromorphs for at least 20 million years (Irmis et al. 2007). The scarcity of Early to Middle Triassic terrestrial body fossils, however, leaves open questions on taxonomic abundance, composition, diversity, and regional specificity of such dinosaur communities (Irmis et al. 2007; Dzik et al. 2008; Nesbitt et al. 2009; Ezcurra 2010; Irmis 2011). The track record can be integrated into this picture.

As a general depiction, while the upper Triassic ichnologic record is characterized by dinosaur, dinosauromorph, crurotarsan archosaurs, and nonmammalian therapsid tracks (Marsicano and Barredo 2004; Bernardi et al. 2013; Lockley and Meyer 2000; Klein and Haubold 2007; Lucas and Tanner 2007), the Lower Jurassic record is dominated by saurischian dinosaurs (Lockley and Hunt 1995a; Lockley and Meyer 2000; Olsen et al. 2002; Avanzini et al. 2006; Avanzini and Petti 2008). Well-diversified tetrapod ichnoassemblages are known from the Middle to Late Triassic of both southern and northern Pangaea (see Bernardi et al. 2013). Olsen and Huber (1998) reported the co-occurence of *Apatopus*, cf. *Brachychirotherium*, and small bipedal and tridactyl forms, possibly produced by "dinosaurian" trackmakers in the Carnian of North Carolina, while Cameron and Wood (2003, 2004) described a rich association composed of *Atreipus*, *Brachychirotherium*, *Grallator,* and *Rhynchosauroides* from the Carnian of Canada. Similar assemblages are ubiquitous in the western USA (Lockley and Hunt 1995a). Marsicano and Barredo (2004) reported the presence of crurotarsal archosaurs, dinosaurs (sauropodomorphs and theropods) and nonmammalian therapsids (small cynodonts and large dicynodonts). Nicosia and Loi (2003) described a rich Carnian ichnoassociation from Italy with crurotarsan and dinosaurian tracks. D'Orazi Porchetti et al. (2008) and Bernardi et al. (2013) document the co-occurrence of large- and middle-sized dinosaurs, dinosauriforms, and crurotarsans in the late Carnian (Tuvalian) of the southern Alps. Therefore, the record of ichnofaunal assemblages composed of large and small dinosaurs, dinosauriforms and non-dinosaurian archosaurs and their co-occurrence with dinosauriforms and crurotarsal archosaurs provides support to the non-abrupt replacement of the more archaic faunas by dinosaur-dominated ones. Furthermore, the co-occurrence of dinosaurs, dinosauriforms, and crurotarsal archosaurs in the Middle to Late Triassic (Ladinian to Late Carnian) documents a prolonged coexistence of different groups of archosaurs, even in the same environment. This provides support to the view of crurotarsan-dominated faunas being neither rapidly outcompeted nor quickly opportunistically replaced by dinosaurs, but rather substituted by a more gradual process of ecologic replacement (Irmis et al. 2007; Nesbitt et al. 2010; Brusatte et al. 2010b; Martinez et al. 2011).

10.2.4 A Look into Sauropod Paleobiology

One key feature of tracks that neatly distinguishes them from body fossils is that they cannot be transported post-mortem, in this case, "post-emplacement". Tracks thus provide a direct indication of environmental and/or habitat preferences of the producer (Thulborn 1982; Lockley 1991; Wilson and Carrano 1999; Carrano and Wilson 2001). To better understand habits, locomotory attitudes or geographic distribution of particular groups, it is therefore useful to integrate body fossil findings with track data. A good example in this respect is provided by the sauropod dinosaur record.

Numerous studies of locomotory dynamics in this group attribute different footprint morphotypes to distinct trackmakers. Many authors (Farlow et al. 1989; Farlow 1992; Lockley et al. 1995a; Moratalla et al. 1995; Wilson and Carrano 1999; Lockley et al. 2002, 2005; Day et al. 2002a; Henderson 2002) have observed that sauropod trackways could be essentially subdivided into two broad categories: "narrow gauge" and "wide gauge" (Fig. 10.5). Sauropod trackways can also show (or lack) claw and phalangeal impressions in the manus (Farlow et al. 1989; Lockley et al. 1995a; Wilson and Carrano 1999; Day et al. 2004). "Wide-gauge" trackways are those in which manus and pes prints are well separated from the midline, and which frequently lack pollex claw impressions (e.g., *Brontopodus* Farlow et al. 1989); "Narrow gauge" trackways have manus and pes prints that approach or intersect the trackway midline, and have pollex claw impressions (e.g., *Parabrontopodus*

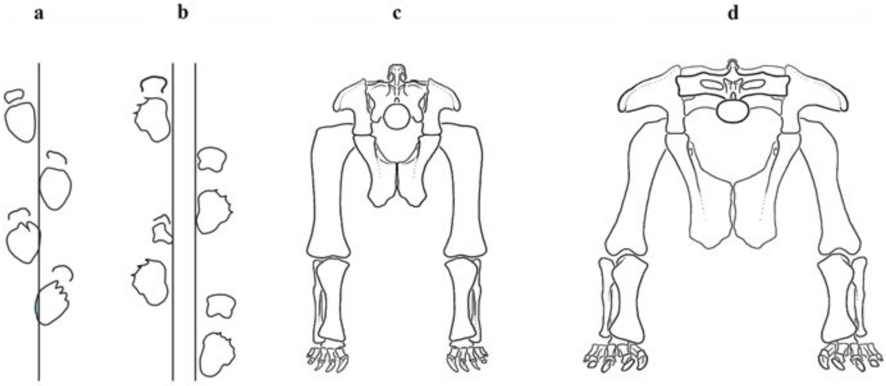


Fig. 10.5 Many authors (see text for discussion) have observed that sauropod trackways could be essentially subdivided into two broad categories: "narrow gauge" (**a**) and "wide gauge" (**b**). These reflect the postural difference between non-titanosaur (**c**, here represented by *Camarasaurs*—pelvic girdles and hindlimbs in anterior view) and titanosaur sauropods (**d**, here *Opisthocoelicaudia*). This inference allowed full integration of ichnogical and skeletal data, which contributed to a better understanding of sauropod paleobiology. Modified from Lockley et al. (1995b), and Wilson and Carrano (1999)

Lockley et al. 1995a). Lockley (1999, 2001, 2007a) also argued that there is a positive correlation between narrow gauge and small manus forms, and between wide-gauge and large manus forms. Furthermore, large and small manus forms have been independently identified among the various chirotherian ichnotaxa (Lockley 2007a). Such differences in turn speak to changes in the position of the center of gravity in various archosaur clades.

Ichnologic investigations suggest that the transition from narrow- to wide-gauge occurred during the Kimmeridgian-Tithonian (Wilson and Carrano 1999). "Wide-gauge" trackways show a trend towards an increase of manus print dimensions through time. This feature and the age of "wide-gauge" trackways closely match the evolutionary trend seen in the sauropod body fossil record. Skeletal remains record a gradual shift of the center of gravity toward the front, with the consequent growth of the forelimbs in response to the greater weight they had to support. This evolutionary change coincides with the appearance of Titanosauriformes Salgado, Coria and Calvo 1997 (including Brachiosauridae Riggs 1904 and Titanosauria Bonaparte and Coria 1993) (Wilson 1995; Upchurch et al. 2004), animals that would have produced tracks with larger manus impressions. The lack of digital impressions in the manus ichnites of the "wide-gauge" trackways could also be referred to the appearance of Titanosauriformes; indeed both Brachiosauridae and Titanosauria are characterized by the progressive reduction and loss of phalanges and claws in the manus (Wilson and Sereno 1998; Upchurch et al. 2004; Apesteguía 2005). In particular, Titanosauria probably walked only on the distal parts of their metacarpal bones (Salgado et al. 1997; Wilson and Sereno 1998). It is thus difficult to envisage digital or claw marks produced by individuals belonging to Titanosauriformes. Wilson and Carrano (1999) argued that hindlimb modifications, such as outwardly angled femora, offset knee condyles, and a more eccentric femoral midshaft cross-section, could be responsible for wide-gauge tracks. All these features are synapomorphies of titanosaurs, and thus support the hypothesis that they were the producers of wide-gauge trackways. Temporal and geographic distribution of titanosaurs is coherent with this hypothesis; "wide-gauge" trackways predominate during the Cretaceous and are found worldwide. After Wilson and Carrano's (1999) proposals, other studies have cast some doubt on this correlation. D'Emic (2012) suggested that some Late Jurassic non-titanosaurs might have femoral cross-sections similar to those of titanosaurs. Henderson (2006) proposed that all large sauropods (over 12.6 tonnes) would have been constrained to adopt a wide-gauge stance in order to maintain stability during locomotion; trackway gauge could also be influenced by the degree of lateral motion of the trackmaker (Carpenter 2009). Recent discovery of sauropod trackways from Switzerland, Morocco (both of Jurassic age), and Spain (Cretaceous age) show that single sauropod trackmakers were able to adopt both narrow and wide gauge as testified by the occurrence of differently spaced tracks along single trackways (Marty et al. 2010; Castanera et al. 2012a, b). Furthermore, wide-gauge trackways could have appeared more than once in sauropod evolution. Wide-gauge trackways are not exclusive to titanosauriform sauropods and caution must be applied ascribing a trackway to an ichnotaxon on the basis of this character (Castanera et al. 2012a, b).

Sauropod tracks have provided important clues for the understanding of the environmental preferences of this clade. Based on the analysis of a dataset of sauropod trackways, Lockley et al. (1995b) found a good correlation between sauropod tracksites and coastal environments, and noted that they are primarily associated with tropical and subtropical paleolatitudes (mean average Northern Hemisphere = 25°), and semi-arid or seasonal climatic carbonate depositional environments (lacustrine or marine carbonate platform). Butler and Barrett (2008) partially confirmed these results: the percentage of Cretaceous sauropod tracks in coastal environments is remarkable (32 %) if compared with the contemporaneous sauropod body fossil record (7 %). Nevertheless, statistic analysis of the ichnologic data does not indicate that sauropod trackways are overrepresented if compared to those of other herbivorous dinosaurs. In contrast, the body fossil record supports previous hypotheses of a preference for inland settings (e.g., Lehman 1987; Hunt et al. 1995a). However, it should be noted that these results might be hindered by preservational biases that are not yet fully understood (Mannion and Upchurch 2010). Using a new large data set of sauropod skeletal remains, Mannion and Upchurch (2010) found a significant positive association between non-titanosaurs and coastal environments, and between titanosaurs and inland environments. Their analysis of track records also highlighted a positive correlation between narrow-gauge trackways and coastal environments, and wide-gauge trackways and inland environments; this reinforced the hypothesis of Wilson and Carrano (1999) that wide-gauge trackways were produced by titanosaurs. The hypothesis of Mannion and Upchurch (2010) has been partially put into question by isolated findings of wide-gauge trackways preserved in coastal environments (e.g., Castanera et al. 2011).

10.2.5 Clues About Theropod Paleobiology

Most famously among track features, trackways allow estimation of speed (Alexander 1976, 1989; Thulborn 1981, 1990). In fact, debates about speeds attained by dinosaurs led to a revival of tetrapod ichnology (Alexander 1976; Lockley 1998). Early estimates of rapid progression of large dinosaurs were proposed in support of the idea that dinosaurs were highly active and possibly warm-blooded (Russell and Belland 1976; Czerkas and Olson 1987); however, later studies based on larger samples and updated formulae concluded that most medium- to large-sized theropods walked fairly slowly (Farlow 1981; Thulborn 1990). Estimates of the speeds of theropod dinosaurs are based on the formula of Alexander (as corrected by Thulborn 1990); speed (v, velocity) is calculated on the basis of stride length (SL) where $v \approx 0.25\ \mathrm{g}^{0.5}\ \mathrm{SL}^{1.67}\, h^{-1.17}$, where hip height ($h$) of a trackmaker can be estimated from footprint length (FL): $h \approx 8.60\ \mathrm{FL}^{0.85}$ (Thulborn 1984; Thulborn and Wade 1984). This formula was successively slightly modified by Weems (2006) to estimate basal theropod dinosaur speeds ($v = 0.16\ \mathrm{SL}^2\ \mathrm{h}^{-1.5}\, g^{0.5}$). The same formula can be used for any bipedal dinosaurs (see Currie 1983, 1995), while no similar, reliable formulae are available for quadrupedal dinosaur taxa. Using musculoskeletal modeling and Computer Aided Engineering, Mallison (2011) questioned the validity of the Alexander formula to assess speed in dinosaurs without knowing the frequency of the stride. He suggested that speeds calculated from tracks should be better considered as the slowest speeds at which the animals moved.

Tracks and trackways have also been long used to establish dynamics of foot movement (Avanzini 1998; Gatesy et al. 1999; Gatesy 2001, 2003; Manning 2004; Milàn et al. 2004, 2006; Avanzini et al. 2012; Ellis and Gatesy 2013), locomotion (Alexander 1976, 1985, 1989; Thulborn 1981, 1990) and contributed in the debate about theropod posture (Lockley 1998). The high pace angulation exhibited by theropod trackways, for example, shows that theropods placed their hind feet close to, or on, the midline (Alexander 1976, 1985). This optimizes the efficiency by reducing the energy lost through lateral displacement of the center of gravity (Thulborn 1981, 1990), and is characteristic of a highly specialized locomotory control system. Lockley (2007a) regarded such narrow trackway configurations as a manifestation of an intrinsic morphodynamic organization in theropods. Furthermore, saurischians in general had narrow bodies, narrow feet, and other laterally compressed skeletal elements, although this contrasts with the wide-gauge trackway configurations and wide bodies and feet seen in derived saurischians such as the titanosaurs. Furthermore, Day et al. (2002b) showed that large theropods were able to change their speed instantaneously, highlighting their high maneuverability and balance control.

Theropod trackways do not typically include hand imprints, which is again an expression of a posterior center of gravity (Lockley 2007a). Only when the trunk was lowered toward a substrate, as in a crouched posture, could the hands potentially produce impressions. Crouching has been demonstrated by a few extraordinary discoveries of impressions of autopodia associated with metatarsals and pelvic girdle imprints. Milner et al. (2009) reported unambiguous theropod manus impressions associated with a crouching trace that indicate the avian orientation of the manus (with a medially facing palm) evolved early within the history of Theropoda (see Gierliński et al. 2009 and references therein for further examples). The crouching trace was registered when the animal rested on the substrate in a posture similar to that of modern birds; the traces include well-defined impressions made by both hands, the ischial callosity, pedes, and the tail. This trace constitutes evidence that an Early Jurassic theropod expressed two bird-like features: anatomic restriction to a palms-medial manual posture, and symmetric leg positions while resting (Fig. 10.6). Inferences that theropods displayed behavior analogous to modern birds are intriguing but often too speculative. Recently discovered Cretaceous theropod tracks in Colorado provided extensive physical evidence of substrate scraping behavior by large theropods; they were considered as compelling evidence of "display arenas" or leks, and consistent with "nest scrape display" behavior among many extant ground-nesting birds (Lockley et al. 2016).

Another iconic example of the impact that ichnology has had on postural biomechanic reconstructions is the case of the orientations of dinosaur trunks and tails. Analysis of trackways have clearly shown that most dinosaurs walked with their tails carried well off the ground, so tail-drag traces are rare (Irby and Albright 2012; García-Ramos et al. 2004, 2006; Platt and Hasiotis 2008; Kim and Lockley 2013). The presence of tail traces, therefore, implies either a pathologic condition of the

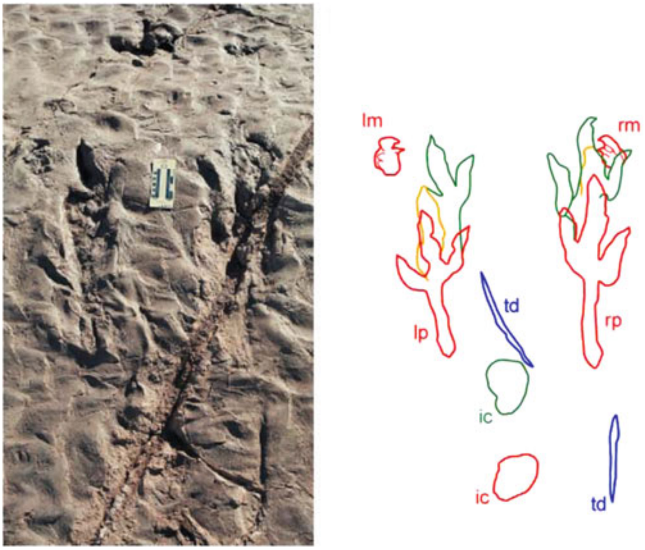


Fig. 10.6 Footprints provide clues to the individual behavior of trackmakers. These crouching traces described by Milner et al. (2009), for example, demonstrate that avian orientation of the manus, with medially facing palms, evolved by the Early Jurassic within Theropoda. Such conclusion would have never been reached on the base of skeletal record alone. Modified from Milner et al. (2009)

trackmaker or an atypical mode of locomotion because dinosaurs used their tails for balance on land (Galton 1970; Farlow et al. 2000; Fujita et al. 2012).

Tracks can also be used to assess the effects of traumas and illness in dinosaur bones and therefore the evolution of phatologic behavior. Tracks and trackways indicative of pathologies (e.g., fractures in pedal phalanxes) are relatively frequent, especially in middle to large-sized theropods (Tanke and Rothschild 1997, 2002; Rothschild et al. 2001; Rothschild and Tanke 2005). Many of the trackways described refer to large carnivorous dinosaurs that show missing or curled digits (Lockley 1991; Tanke and Rothschild 1997). Footprint and trackway evidence of limping theropods (Ishigaki 1986; Dantas et al. 1994; Lockley et al. 1994b) suggests injury or arthritis. Foot pathologies in large bipedal dinosaurs however have also been used to infer more active life-styles or natural fragility of the narrow, protruding digits (Laws 1997; Tanke and Rothschild 1997). For other good examples of pathologic tracks, see Abel (1935), Thulborn (1990) and Avanzini et al. (2005).

Tracks have also helped unveil another aspect of dinosaur behavior: their ability to swim. No skeletal remains can help addressing this question, and tracks attributable to swimming theropods have been reported, among others, by Coombs (1980), Milner et al. (2006), Ezquerra et al. (2007) and Xing et al. (2013a) (similar reports are available also for other dinosaur taxa; e.g., Currie 1983; Fujita et al. 2012). Theropods could float, as demonstrated by clawing traces left in the sediment as they swam (Ezquerra et al. 2007); the trackway shows that this theropod used a pelvic paddle motion, i.e. they were powered by alternating movements of the two hind limbs, like in living aquatic birds, and swam with amplified asymmetric walking movements to maintain its direction while swimming perpendicular to a water current (Ezquerra et al. 2007). The track record, therefore, has shown that dinosaurs (mostly theropods) colonized areas that included aquatic environments and were therefore probably able to swim.

10.2.6 Evidence for Gregariousness

Gregariousness is a form of social interaction between individuals that probably evolved to increase the fitness of single individuals within a group (Alexander 1974). Gregariousness allows greater defense of individuals from predators, increases effective access to food, efficiency of breeding, effective migration, and enhances the probability of safely raising the young (Currie and Eberth 2010). In order to maintain group cohesion, individuals within a group must synchronize their behavior in terms of time spent resting, foraging, and moving (Conradt 1998).

Tracksites, together with nesting sites, provide some of the most reliable proof about the gregariousness in extinct animals, in particular among dinosaurs (Ostrom 1972; Currie 1983; Lockley et al. 1986; Farlow et al. 1989; Horner and Gorman 1990; Carpenter 1999). Fossil trackways made by multiple individual animals can provide important qualitative and quantitative information about their social behavior.

Evidence for gregariousness in dinosaurs is difficult to gain from the body fossil record, and only bone bed assemblages may reflect such group behavior. Bone beds are concentration of bones in a localized area or stratigraphically limited sedimentary unit, in which the bones belong to more than one individual (see Rogers et al. 2007 for more details). Significant work on bone beds assemblages has provided compelling evidence on the gregarious habits of some ornithischian dinosaurs and the coexistence of multispecific individuals in the same habitat (Rogers 1990; Varricchio and Horner 1993; Mathews et al. 2009; Zhao et al. 2007).

In the study of dinosaur tracks, gregariousness may be deduced by the recognition of some peculiar features, primarily by the occurrence of multiple parallel trackways, exhibiting a preferring directionality (Ostrom 1972; Currie 1983; Lockley 1991). However, there is no arbitrary minimum number of adjacent parallel trackways for indicating gregarious behavior (Lockley and Matsukawa 1999). The presence of many parallel trackways does not necessarily constitute proof of a herding behavior, and data should be critically examined: trackways could have been made by animals that have walked alone at different times, and selected the same direction for the presence of a physical constraint, such as narrow river valley, shoreline, or the banks of a river (e.g., Ostrom 1972). Depths of the tracks in each trackway must be taken into consideration; similar-sized dinosaurs, walking contemporaneously on a substrate characterized by similar physical properties, probably produced parallel trackways with comparable depths. By contrast, parallel trackways with different track depths suggest that the animals walked on that substrate at different times, perhaps months, days, or even years later one from the other. A useful parameter to recognize gregariousness from track data is the intertrackway spacing (i.e., an index of regularity of spacing between parallel trackways; Lockley 1989; Lockley et al. 1998). In recent years, several trackways characterized by regular intertrackway spacing have been reported (Lockley et al. 1986, 2006b; Farlow et al. 1989; Lim et al. 1989; Li et al. 2008), suggesting animals that walked shoulder to shoulder, and thereby substantiating the hypothesis of their social behavior. Parallel trackways curving or swerving in unison could also provide evidence of herd habits among the trackmakers (Lockley and Hunt 1995a, b; Lockley and Matsukawa 1999).

Such ichnologic evidence for gregarious behavior in dinosaurs has been reported from Jurassic and Cretaceous sites in North America (Currie 1983, 1995; Lockley et al. 1983, 1986, 1992a, 1998; Farlow 1987; Farlow et al. 1989; Pittman and Gillette 1989; Hawthorne 1990; Carpenter 1992; Barnes and Lockley 1995; Lockley and Hunt 1995a, b; Cotton et al. 1998; Kvale et al. 2001; Schumacher 2003; Myers and Fiorillo 2009), South America (Leonardi 1989; Lockley et al. 2002; Fig. 10.7), East Asia (Lim et al. 1989; Matsukawa et al. 1997, 2001, 2005; Lockley et al. 2002, 2006b, 2012a, b; Hwang et al. 2004; Li et al. 2008; Xing et al. 2013a), Europe (Kaever and Lapparent 1974; Delair 1981; Agirrezabala et al. 1985; Viera and Torres 1992; Lockley et al. 1995c; Moratalla et al. 1997; Day et al. 2002a, 2004; Piñuela et al. 2002; Pérez-Lorente 2003; García-Ramos et al. 2004; Clark et al. 2005; Vila et al. 2008; Castanera et al. 2011, 2013, 2014; García-Ortiz and Pérez-Lorente 2014), Africa (Lingham-Soliar et al. 2003) and Australia (Thulborn and Wade 1979, 1984).

Fig. 10.7 Footprints provide clues on the social behavior of dinosaurs. Here spectacular parallel trackways at the Humaca dinosaur tracksite (Chuquisaca, Bolivia) interpreted as evidence of gregarious behavior by Lockley et al. (2002). Direction of progression is towards the *right* of picture. From Lockley et al. (2002)

Evidence suggests that large herbivorous dinosaurs, especially sauropods and ornithopods often traveled in herds, and that both groups acquired gregarious tendencies early in their histories (see Lockley and Matsukawa 1999 and Myers and Fiorillo 2009 and references therein). Sauropod trackways indicate groups of 40 or more individuals (Day et al. 2002a, 2004) and show either mixed-age or are age-segregated ichnologic assemblages (Lockley et al. 1986, 1995c, 2002; Castanera et al. 2011). The co-occurrence of adult and juvenile trackways may suggest protracted parental care far beyond the hatchling stage of development; groups of small-sized trackways may be interpreted as herds of juveniles or (as in the case of archipelago paleoenvironments) as the presence of dwarfed populations (Benton et al. 2010). Few tracksites exhibit parallel trackways of different species or groups (e.g., Day et al. 2002a, 2004).

Much evidence of possible social behavior in other groups of herbivorous dinosaurs, such as ankylosaurs (McCrea and Currie 1998; McCrea 2000) and ceratopsians (Lockley and Hunt 1995b) has now also accumulated. Evidence of gregariousness in carnivorous dinosaur trackways, particularly non-avian theropods, is less common than in other groups of dinosaurs, and the interpretations of such evidence remain more controversial. Some researchers support this hypothesis (Lockley and Matsukawa 1999; Carvalho and Pedrão 2000; Smith et al. 2002; Lingham-Soliar et al. 2003; Clark et al. 2005; Barco et al. 2006; Li et al. 2008; Currie and Eberth 2010; McCrea et al. 2014) while others prefer to consider trackway data as coincidental instances of normally solitary individuals converging on a common point (e.g., food source, Roach and Brinkman 2007).

10.2.7 On the Tracks of Birds

Birds are among the most diversified and thoroughly analyzed vertebrate groups, but both their origin and evolution remain controversial. The skeletal record of birds is strongly biased by the nature of bones that, in this group, are mostly small and delicate so that limbs are commonly lost in taphonomic decay processes (Davis and Briggs 1998; Brand et al. 2003). This makes the bird fossil record highly incomplete, and only a multidisciplinary approach, including paleornithology, paleoichnology, and molecular studies, can help in the understanding avian origins and radiation.

The skeletal record indicates an initial avian radiation around the Jurassic-Cretaceous boundary (about 145 million years ago) and an early Paleogene diversification for modern birds (Neornithes) (e.g., Clarke et al. 2005; Dyke and Kaiser 2011; Brocklehurst et al. 2012; Ksepka and Boyd 2012). Molecular studies and recent combined molecular and morphologic analyses, instead, indicate that modern birds began radiating in the Early Cretaceous (Cooper and Penny 1997; Haddrath and Baker 2012; Jetz et al. 2012; Lee et al. 2014).

Tracks similar to those of modern birds (i.e., shorebirds, small ducks, small herons, roadrunners) are only 15-20 million younger than the oldest avian skeletal remains, which is in agreement with molecular data (Brown et al. 2008). In contrast, the oldest body-fossil records of anseriforms and possibly charadriiforms date to the latest Cretaceous (ca. 70 million years ago), and are even younger for ciconiiforms and cuculiforms (Lockley and Harris 2010; Fig. 10.8). This could be explained through the following two hypotheses: (1) pre-latest Cretaceous occurrence of neornithians, implying that the body fossil record is strongly biased toward the preservation of non-neornithian birds, or (2) neornithians converged in foot morphology with their non-neornithian, Cretaceous ancestors. The latter appears more parsimonious suggesting that convergent evolutionary programs, in similar niches and at different periods, produced not only similar pedal morphologies but also similar size (Lockley and Harris 2010).

Feeding behavior has been also inferred from different fossil bird tracks by comparing them with traces characteristic of modern birds. For example several *Ignotornis* trackways exhibit reduced pace length, interpreted as a type of “foot stirring” behavior characteristic of modern herons “stirring” up the substrate for feeding (Lockley et al. 2008, 2009). The most noticeable example of feeding behavior was reported from the Cretaceous of Korea (Lockley and Harris 2010; Lockley et al. 2012a; Kim et al. 2012). Traces consist of sets of fine, zigzag, arcuate to semicircular grooves that “sweep” back and forth across the trackway, indistinguishable from those of modern spoonbills (Swennen and Yu 2005). But spoonbills are not recorded in the Cretaceous fossil record, and no spoonbill morphology is known in any Cretaceous bird. The ichnologic record thus adds new data to the Cretaceous avian diversity.

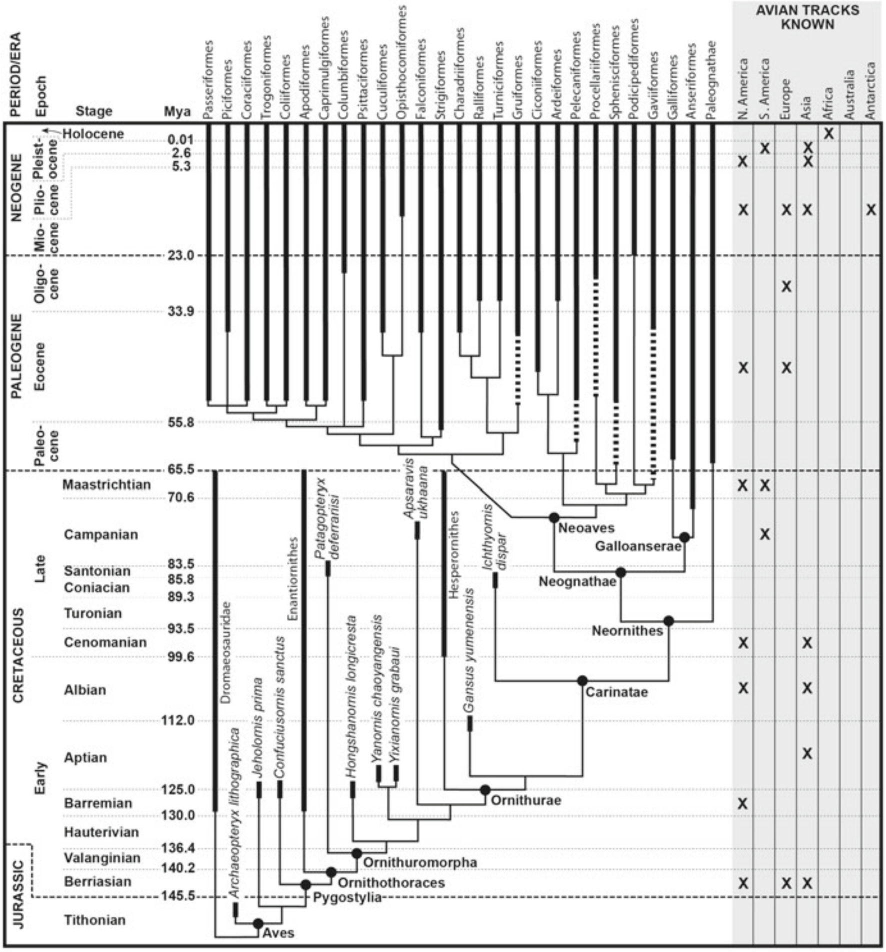


Fig. 10.8 Paleornithology and avian paleoichnology provide complementary data on the evolution of birds. This cladogram superimposed on geologic time scale shows both taxon ranges based on skeletal data and associated footprint occurrences. See text for discussion. Modified from Lockley and Harris (2010)

The primary Mesozoic bird tracksites were recently reviewed by Lockley and Harris (2010) but there are new findings reported every year (Falk et al. 2010, 2014; Falk 2011; Fiorillo et al. 2011; Xing et al. 2011, 2013b; Contessi and Fanti 2012; Huh et al. 2012; Kim et al. 2012; Lockley et al. 2012c, d; Azuma et al. 2013; Martin et al. 2014). Most fossil bird tracks exhibit sizes and morphologies similar to those of extant shorebirds and water-birds (Greben and Lockley 1992), and are generally associated with lake basin, fluvial floodplain, coastal plain, and marine shoreline deposits (Lockley and Harris 2010). This bias is strictly related to the physical properties of these environments that apparently facilitate the registration and preservation of tracks, and the creation of what has been called the shorebird ichnofacies (Lockley et al. 1994a; Lockley 2007b). Tracks of birds with feet adapted for perching, such as songbirds or raptors, have much less chance to be produced and preserved; the same happens with birds that live in environments where the burial and preservation of tracks is less frequent or improbable (mountain, forest, open marine, etc.). Even though there are many avian skeletal and track fossils, the two records do not match each other and few footprints were probably produced by the feet represented by the skeletal remains (Lockley and Harris 2010). This mismatch and all the previously mentioned data strongly indicate that morphologies and behaviors of many modern birds actually evolved convergently with many of their extinct, Mesozoic relatives. A striking example is provided by the discovery of an Early Cretaceous (Aptian-Albian 120–110 Ma) trackway: *Shandongornipes muxiai* (Li et al. 2005). This discovery shows the evolution of a terrestrial, zygodactylous bird that is unknown in the body fossil record; it probably occupied a roadrunner-like niche indicating evolutionary convergence of an early Cretaceous bird with the locomotory habits and possible ecology of modern birds (see Lockley et al. 2007).

The majority of the fossil bird tracksites discovered to date are in East Asia, primarily in China and South Korea (Azuma et al. 2002, 2013; Li et al. 2002; Kim et al. 2006, 2012; Lockley et al. 2006b, 2007, 2009, 2012c, d; Xing et al. 2011, 2013b; Contessi and Fanti 2012; Huh et al. 2012; He et al. 2013; Falk et al. 2014). The high frequency could be related to the abundance of lake deposits in these regions, but the contemporaneous Chinese and North Korean skeletal records are also very rich in birds. The complementary evidence thus indicates that the distribution pattern may reflect a true center of avian radiation (Lockley and Harris 2010).

10.2.8 Pterosaur Locomotion

Pterosaurs are the earliest known vertebrates to have evolved powered flight. These winged reptiles first appeared in the Late Triassic and went extinct at the end of the Cretaceous period (Buffetaut and Mazin 2003). Since their first discovery, there has been considerable debate over their terrestrial locomotor capabilities, in particular whether they walked bipedally (Cuvier 1809) or quadrupedally with their hindlimbs splayed (Soemmerring 1812, 1817). Some eminent paleontologists considered that pterosaurs were unable to walk (Abel 1925) or were bad walkers with their hindlimbs unsuitable for a quadrupedal gait (Wellnhofer 1978). The hypothesis that pterosaurs were digitigrade bipeds with an erect stance was supported and argued with phylogenetic and osteologic analysis by Padian (1983, 1984, 1985, 1987, 1988, 1991), Padian and Rayner (1993), Paul (1987) and Bennett (1990). In contrast, several researchers, on the basis of osteologic arguments, claim that pterosaurs were quadrupedal plantigrades, with semi-erect or possibly even sprawling stances (Pennycuick 1986; Unwin 1987, 1989; Wellnhofer and Vahldiek 1986; Wellnhofer 1988, 1991a, b).

As was the case for other extinct track-making animals, ichnology provided unequivocal evidence in resolving this long-standing dispute. Already in 1957 Stokes described a short trackway composed of tridactyl manus and tetradactyl pes prints

(Stokes 1957). He instituted the new ichnotaxon *Pteraichnus saltwashensis* that he identified as produced by a quadrupedal pterodactyloid pterosaur. This attribution was endorsed by subsequent findings (Stokes 1978; Wellnhofer 1978; Stokes and Madsen 1979), but was strongly opposed by Padian and Olsen (1984) who proposed they were made by a crocodilian trackmaker. *Pteraichnus* was no longer considered a pterosaur ichnotaxon (Unwin 1986, 1989; Prince and Lockley 1989; Lockley 1991; Wellnhofer 1991a; Bennett 1992). New discoveries provided new information (Logue 1994; Hunt et al. 1995b; Lockley and Hunt 1995a) and Mazin et al. (1995) and Lockley et al. (1995d) independently demonstrated that *Pteraichnus* could be attributed to pterosaurs (Fig. 10.9). To date, this interpretation is accepted by most pterosaur researchers (Lockley et al. 1996, 1997; Bennett 1997; Mazin et al. 1997, 2001; Unwin 1997a, b, 2006; Wright et al. 1997; Kubo 2008; Witton 2013). Ichnology therefore provided definitive evidence that pterosaurs walked on all fours.

These studies also demonstrated that at low-velocity walking, the body was held upright, with the forelimbs held more vertically and the *mani* brought close to the axis of the trackway, so they could not be starched much foreword. Conversely, at

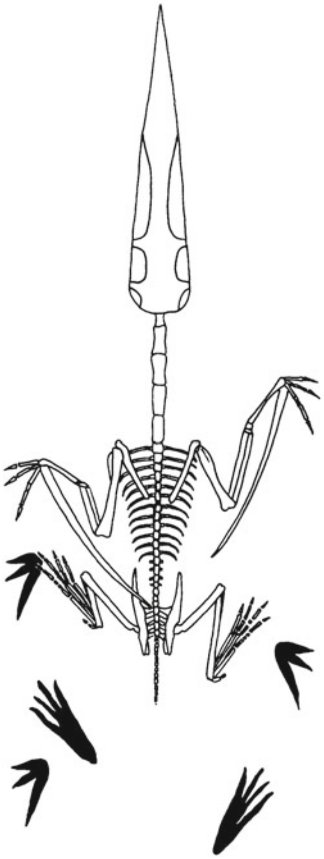


Fig. 10.9 Fossil trackways attributed to pterosaurs provided exceptional insight into the functional morphology and behavior of these flying reptiles. Furthermore, they solved the long-standing debate over pterosaur terrestrial locomotion. The tracks called *Pteraichnus* show that pterosaurs employed a plantigrade, quadrupedal stance and gait with the hind limb partially—to fully—abducted. From Unwin (1996)

higher velocities, the body was held less erect (possibly subhorizontally) allowing the long forelimbs to reach a more distant anterior point (Mazin et al. 2001). Trackways were also useful to infer the landing behavior of pterosaurs, which like modern birds used their wings to stall before landing (Mazin et al. 2009).

Pterosaur tracks are abundant in the Upper Jurassic rocks of Arizona, Colorado, Oklahoma, Utah and Wyoming (Stokes 1957; Lockley et al. 1995d, 1996; Lockley and Wright 2003; Lockley et al. 2008), France (Mazin et al. 1997, 2003, 2009; Billon-Bruyat and Mazin 2003), Poland (Pienkowski and Niedzwiedzki 2005), and Spain (García-Ramos et al. 2000, 2002, 2006; Meijide Calvo and Fuentes Vidarte 2001; Fuentes Vidarte et al. 2004a, b; Sánchez-Hernández et al. 2009). Tracks of Cretaceous age are much larger than those of the Late Jurassic, which agrees with body size trends of skeletal remains (Buffetaut and Mazin 2003). Large body size in this group can have evolved as early as Late Jurassic as testified by abundant footprints from Spain (García-Ramos et al. 2000, 2002, 2006) and few skeletal remains from Switzerland (Meyer and Hunt 1999). Pterosaur tracks have been reported from the Lower Cretaceous of China (Li et al. 2002; Zhang et al. 2006; Xing et al. 2013b, c), England (Delair 1963, re-interpreted by Wright et al. 1997), Germany (Hornung and Reich 2013), Japan (Lee et al. 2010), South Korea (Kim et al. 2006; Lee et al. 2008), Spain (Pascual Arribas and Sanz Pérez 2000; Meijide Calvo 2001; Fuentes Vidarte 2001; Hernández Medrano et al. 2006; Moratalla and Hernán 2009; Sánchez-Hernández et al. 2009), and USA (Maryland; Lockley and Rainforth 2002). In the Upper Cretaceous, they are known from Argentina (Calvo and Lockley 2001), Mexico (Rodríguez de la Rosa 2003), South Korea (Lockley et al. 1997; Hwang et al. 2002) and USA (Colorado, Lockley and Rainforth 2002; Utah, Lockley et al. 1995d). Upper Cretaceous Korean tracks, known as *Haenamichnus*, are the largest pterodactyloid tracks (up to 33 cm) and were made by a trackmaker not yet known from the body fossil record.

Pterosaur tracks have been also used as an indicator of body mass. Kubo (2011) tried to correlate the foot area with weight. He used seven ichnospecies of pterosaur tracks and estimated body weights of pterosaurs as ranging from 110 to 145 kg. This result indicates that large pterosaurs were ten times heavier than the heaviest modern birds.

The pterosaur track record provides evidence about the preferred environments and behaviors of these flying reptiles. Most Upper Jurassic pterosaur tracks are found in marginal marine, carbonate, and clastic-evaporitic lagoonal deposits whereas Cretaceous tracksites are associated with fluvial and freshwater deposits (Lockley and Rainforth 2002). The Late Jurassic record is consistent with the hypothesis, inferred also through the body fossil record, that pterosaurs inhabited marine shoreline habitats. This view is further corroborated by the discoveries of “swimming” and “feeding traces” (García-Ramos et al. 2000, 2002, 2006; Lockley and Wright 2003; Witton 2013; Lockley et al. 2014). They consist of scrape marks that are interpreted as traces produced by paddling limbs, a random distribution of tracks without evidence of trackways, and small circular paired depressions left in the substrate by beak prods of pterosaurs in search of food. This evidence reveals that pterosaurs could probably swim, or at least float on the surface of the water, like modern seabirds (Witton 2013; Hone and Henderson 2014; Li et al. 2015).

10.3 Conclusions

By applying rigorous analytic methods, which allow full hypothesis testing, vertebrate ichnology can provide reliable information about paleobiology (documenting evolutionary patterns, tempo of evolution, locomotion, posture, size, speed, social and individual behavior), paleobiodiversity (indicating the presence of taxa undocumented by the skeletal record), paleoecology (giving hints on environmental/habitat preferences and faunal composition) and paleobiogeography (providing presence/absence data on geographic distribution) of trackmakers, vertebrate ichnology is finally sitting at the "high table" of paleobiology.

In this review of Mesozoic reptile tracks some milestones of paleoichnologic research have been evaluated with the aim of highlighting the potential of these studies in contributing to the knowledge of evolutionary history and coevolution on the changing Earth. We have shown that vertebrate track record can be used to study the evolution of posture. Studies of the Permian to Triassic tetrapod-track record documents the appearance of upright stance in reptiles and shows a previously hidden correlation between this event and the Permo-Triassic mass extinction. Using synapomorphic characters in tracks has been essential in developing the present understanding of the origin of the dinosauromorph clade. Tracks show that the most basal dinosauromorphs were quadrupedal and that bipedalism was acquired phylogenetically closer to the origin of dinosaurs. An earlier origin of dinosauromorphs might imply a possible link with the Permo-Triassic mass extinction. The ichnologic record can be used to make hypotheses about the spatial and temporal distribution of basal dinosaurs. Tracks indicate the presence of a diverse and widespread fauna of dinosaurs during the early Late Triassic both in Laurasia and Gondwana, a distribution not yet documented by the body-fossil record. Track records provide evidence that habitats were shared by dinosaurian and non-dinosaurian archosaurs in the Late Triassic, and support the hypothesis that crurotarsan-dominated faunas were replaced by dinosaurs through a gradual process of ecologic replacement. Combined analyses of body and track fossils provide insights in the understanding of both environmental preferences and evolution of locomotory mechanisms in sauropod dinosaurs. Ichnologic data reveals the inland preference of wide-gauge titanosaurs highlighting the importance of considering track data in ecologic analysis. Trackways are used to estimate the speeds of trackmakers and provide clues to individual behaviors of theropod dinosaurs. Empiric formulae derived from extant animals constitute the basis of these interpretations, and show that theropods primarily used walking gaits, although some were runners, and there are a few records of individuals using trotting gaits. Crouching traces demonstrate that the avian orientation of the manus, with a medially facing palm, had evolved by the Early Jurassic within Theropoda. Footprints provide clues on social behavior in dinosaurs. Many sites have shown that herbivorous dinosaurs were at times gregarious. Carnivorous non-avian theropods were sometimes gregarious although interpretations are more controversial. A strong link between paleornithology and avian paleoichnology illuminates aspects of avian evolution, particularly with regard to paleoenvironmental preferences. Ichnology is particularly relevant when studying shorebirds evolution, given the completeness of the track record for this group. Footprints are crucial to understand pterosaur terrestrial locomotion and stance, to estimate body mass, and to learn about their physiology and behavior (swimming, feeding, landing).

Acknowledgments Our sincere thanks to the editors M.G. Mángano and L.A. Buatois for the invitation to contribute to this volume and for the enthusiastic support during the realization of the chapter. We thank J.D. Harris for providing bibliographic references. P. Currie and C. Meyer are thanked for their constructive reviews. This study was supported by MUSE, Museo delle Scienze, Trento. M.B., F.M.P. and M.A. were supported also by the Promotion of Educational Policies, University and Research Department of the Autonomous Province of Bolzano-South Tyrol as part of the project “The Permian–Triassic ecological crisis in the Dolomites: extinction and recovery dynamics in Terrestrial Ecosystems” and partly as part of the project “The end-Permian mass extinction in the Southern and Eastern Alps: extinction rates vs taphonomic biases in different depositional environments” financed by the Euregio Science Fund (call 2014, IPN16) of the Europaregion Euregio. L.P and J.C.G.-R. were supported by Project CGL2012-33281 of the Spanish Ministry of Economy and Competitiveness.

References

Abel O (1925) Geschichte und Methode der Rekonstruktion Vorzeitlicher Wirbeltiere. Gustav Fischer, Stuttgart

Abel O (1935) Vorzeitliche Lebensspuren. Gustav Fischer, Jena

Agirrezabala LM, Torres JA, Viera LI (1985) El weald de Igea (Cameros, La Rioja). Sedimentología, bioestratigrafía y paleoichnologia de grandes reptiles (dinosaurios). Munibe. Soc Cienc Aranzadi 37:111–138

Alexander RD (1974) The evolution of social behavior. Annu Rev Ecol Evol Syst 5:325–383

Alexander RM (1976) Estimates of speeds of dinosaurs. Nature 261:129–130

Alexander RM (1985) Mechanics of posture and gait of some large dinosaurs. Zool J Linn Soc 83:1–25

Alexander RM (1989) Dinamics of dinosaurs and other extinct giants. Columbia Univ Press, New York

Apesteguía S (2005) Evolution of titanosaur metacarpus. In: Tidwell V, Carpenter K (eds) Thunder-lizards—the sauropodomorph dinosaurs. Indiana Univ Press, Bloomington Univ Press, New York

Avanzini M (1998) Anatomy of a footprint: bioturbation as a key to understanding dinosaur walk dynamics. Ichnos 6:129–139

Avanzini M (2002) Dinosauromorph tracks from the Middle Triassic (Anisian) of the Southern Alps (Valle di Non-Italy). Boll Soc Paleontol Ital 41:37–40

Avanzini M, Petti FM (2008) Updating the dinosau tracksites from the Lower Jurassic Calcari Grigi Group (Southern Alps, Northern Italy). Stud Trent Sci Nat Acta Geol 83:289–301

Avanzini M, Piubelli D, Mietto P, Roghi G, Romano R, Masetti D (2006) Lower Jurassic (Hettangian-Sinemurian) dinosaur track megasites, Southern Alps, northern Italy. In: Harris JD et al (eds) The Triassic-Jurassic terrestrial transition, New Mexico. Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:207–216

Avanzini M, Piñuela L, García-Ramos JC (2005) Paleopathologies deduced from a theropod trackway. Upper Jurassic of Asturias (N Spain). Book-international symposium on dinosaurs and other vertebrates palaeoichnology, 2010. P 59–60

Avanzini M, Piñuela L, García-Ramos JC (2012) Late Jurassic footprints reveal walking kinemtics of theropod dinosaur. Lethaia 45:238–252

Azuma Y, Tomida Y, Currie PJ (2002) Early Cretaceous bird tracks from the Tetori Group, Fukui Prefecture, Japan. Mem Fukui Pref Dinosaur Mus 1:1–6

Azuma Y, Lü J, Jin X, Noda Y, Shibata M, Chen R, Zheng W (2013) A bird footprint assemblage of early Late Cretaceous age, Dongyang City, Zhejiang Province, China. Cretaceous Res 40:3–9

Baird D (1980) A prosauropod dinosaur trackway from the Navajo Sandstone (Lower Jurassic) of Arizona. In: Jacobs LL (ed) Aspects of vertebrate history: essays in honor of Edwin Harris Colbert. Mus Northern Arizona Press, Flagstaff

Bakker RT (1972) Anatomical and ecological evidence of endothermy in dinosaurs. Nature 238:81–85

Barco JL, Canudo JI, Ruiz-Omeñaca JI (2006) New data on *Therangospodus oncalensis* from the Berriasian Fuentesalvo tracksite (Villar del Río, Soria, Spain): an example of gregarious behavior in theropod dinosaurs. Ichnos 13:237–248

Barnes FA, Lockley MG (1995) Trackway evidence for social sauropods from the Morrison Formation, Eastern Utah (USA). Gaia 10:37–42

Barrett PM, Nesbitt SJ, Peecook BR (2015) A large-bodied silesaurid from the Lifua Member of the Manda beds (Middle Triassic) of Tanzania and its implications for body-size evolution in Dinosauromorpha. Gondwana Res 27:925–931

Bennett SC (1990) A pterodactyloid pterosaur pelvis from the Santana Formation of Brazil: implications for terrestrial locomotion. J Vertebr Paleontol 10:80–85

Bennett SC (1992) Reinterpretation of problematical tracks at Clayton Lake State Park, New Mexico: not one pterosaur, but several crocodiles. Ichnos 2:37–42

Bennett SC (1997) Terrestrial locomotion of pterosaurs: a reconstruction based on *Pteraichnus* trackways. J Vert Paleontol 17:104–113

Benton MJ (1983) Dinosaur success in the Triassic: a noncompetitive ecological model. Q Rev Biol 58:29–55

Benton MJ (2005) Vertebrate palaeontology, 3rd edn. Blackwell, Oxford, 455 pp

Benton MJ (2006) The origin of the dinosaurs. In: Proceedings of the 3rd international symposium about paleontology of dinosaur and their environment. Salas de Los Infantes, Burgos, 16–18 September 2004

Benton MJ, Csiki Z, Grigorescu D, Redelstorff R, Sander PM, Stein K, Weishampel DB (2010) Dinosaurs and the island rule: the dwarfed dinosaurs from Hateg Island. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 293:438–454

Bernardi M, Petti FM, D´Orazi Porchetti S, Avanzini M (2013) Large tridactyl footprint associated with a diverse ichnofauna from the Carnian of the Southern Alps. In: Tanner LH et al (eds) The Triassic system. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 61:48–54

Bernardi M, Klein H, Petti FM, Ezcurra MD (2015) The origin and early radiation of Archosauriforms: integrating the skeletal and footprint record. PLoS One 10(6):e0128449

Beurlen K (1950) Neue Fährtenfunde aus der fränkischen Trias. Neues Jahrb Geol 10S:308–320

Billon-Bruyat JP, Mazin JM (2003) The systematic problem of tetrapod ichnotaxa: the case study of *Pteraichnus* Stokes, 1957 (Pterosauria, Pterodactyloidea). Geol Soc Spec Publ 217:315–324

Bird RT (1939) Thunder in his footsteps. Nat Hist 43:254–261

Bird RT (1944) Did Brontosaurus ever walk on land? Nat Hist 53:60–67

Biron P-E, Dutuit JM (1981) Figurations sédimentaires et traces d'activité au sol dans le Trias de la Formacion d'Argana et de l'Ourika (Maroc). Bull Mus Nat Hist Nat, 4ème sér, 3 (section C, 4):339–427

Blob RW (2000) Interspecific scaling of the hindlimb skeleton in lizards, crocodilians, felids and canids: does limb bone shape correlate with limb posture? J Zool 250:507–531

Bonaparte JF (1984) Locomotion in rauisuchid thecodonts. J Vert Paleontol 3:210–218

Bonaparte JF, Coria RA (1993) Un nuevo y gigantesco sauropodo titanosaurio de la Formacíon Río Limay (Albiano-Cenomaniano) de la Provincia del Neuquén, Argentina. Ameghiniana 30:271–282

Bowden AJ, Tresise GR, Simkiss W (2010) *Chirotherium*, the Liverpool footprint hunters and their interpretation of the Middle Trias environment. Geol Soc Spec Publ 343:209–228

Brand LR, Hussey M, Taylor J (2003) Decay and disarticulation of small vertebrates in controlled experiments. J Taphonomy 1:69–95

Brinkman DB, Sues H-D (1987) A staurikosaurid dinosaur from the Upper Triassic Ischigualasto Formation of Argentina and the relationships of the Staurikosauridae. Palaeontology 30:493–503

Brocklehurst N, Upchurch P, Mannion PD, O'Connor J (2012) The completeness of the fossil record of Mesozoic birds: implications for early avian evolution. PLoS One 7:e39056

Brown JW, Rest JS, García Moreno J, Sorenson MD, Mindell DP (2008) Strong mithochondrial DNA support for a Cretaceous origin of modern avian lineages. BMC Biol 6:1–18

Brusatte SL, Benton MJ, Ruta M, Lloyd GT (2008a) Superiority, competition, and opportunism in the evolutionary radiation of dinosaurs. Science 321:1485–1488

Brusatte SL, Benton MJ, Ruta M, Lloyd GT (2008b) The first 50 Myr of dinosaur evolution: macroevolutionary pattern and morphological disparity. Biol Lett 4:733–736

Brusatte SL, Nesbitt SJ, Irmis RB, Butler RJ, Benton MJ, Norell MA (2010a) The origin and early radiation of dinosaurs. Earth-Sci Rev 101:68–100

Brusatte SL, Niedźwiedzki G, Butler RJ (2010b) Footprints pull origin and diversification of dinosaur stem lineage deep into Early Triassic. Proc R Soc B 278:1107–1113

Brusatte SL, Benton MJ, Lloyd GT, Ruta M, Wang SC (2011) Macroevolutionary patterns in the evolutionary radiation of archosaurs (Tetrapoda: Diapsida). Earth Environ Sci Trans R Soc Edinb 101:357–382

Buffetaut E, Mazin JM (2003) Evolution and palaeobiology of pterosaurs. Geol Soc Spec Publ 217, 349 pp

Butler RJ, Barrett PM (2008) Paleoenvironmental controls on the distribution of Cretaceous herbivorous dinosaurs. Naturwissenschaften 95:1027–1032

Calvo JO, Lockley MG (2001) The first pterosaur tracks from Gondwana. Cretaceous Res 22:585–590

Cameron B, Wood N (2003) A Late Triassic terrestrial vertebrate community, as indicated by reptile footprints preserved in the Upper Wolfville Formation (Fundy Supergroup) at North Medford, Nova Scotia. Min Matters 2003:3

Cameron B, Wood N (2004) A comparison of the Late Triassic dinosaur fotprintss *Atreipus acadicus* and *Grallator* (Grallator) sp. from the Upper Wolfville Formation at North Medford, Nova Scotia. Min Matters 2004:4

Carpenter K (1992) Behavior of hadrosaurs as iinterpreted from footprints in the "Mesaverde" Group (Campanian) of Colorado, Utah, and Wyoming. Contrib Geol Univ Wyoming 29:81–96

Carpenter K (1999) Eggs, nests, and baby dinosaurs: A look at dinosaur reproduction. Indiana Univ Press, Bloomingtong, IN

Carpenter K (2009) Role of lateral body bending in crocodylian track making. Ichnos 16:202–207

Carrano MT, Wilson JA (2001) Taxon distributions and the vertebrate track record. Paleobiology 27:563–581

Carrier DR (1987) The evolution of locomotor stamina in tetrapods—circumventing a mechanical constraint. Paleobiology 13:326–341

Carroll RL (1988) Vertebrate paleontology and evolution. W H Freeman & Co, New York, 698 pp

Carvalho I, Pedrão E (2000) Brazilian theropods from the equatorial atlantic margin: behaviour and environmental setting. In: Pérez-Moreno BP et al (eds) Aspects of theropod paleobiology. Gaia 15:369–378

Castanera D, Barco JL, Díaz-Martínez I, Herrero Gascón J, Pérez-Lorente F, Canudo JI (2011) New evidence of a herd of titanosauriform sauropods from the lower Berriasian of the Iberian range (Spain). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 310:227–237

Castanera D, Pascual C, Canudo JI, Hernández N, Barco J (2012a) Gauge variations in sauropod trackways from the Huérteles Formation (Berriasian) of the Cameros Basin (Spain): implications for sauropod ichnotaxonomy. Abstract volume 10th EAVP meeting, 2012. p 35–37

Castanera D, Pascual C, Canudo JI, Hernández N, Barco J (2012b) Ethological variations in gauge in sauropod trackways from the Berriasian of Spain. Lethaia 45:476–489

Castanera D, Pascual C, Razzolini NL, Vila B, Barco JL, Canudo JI (2013) Discriminating between medium-sized tridactyl trackmakers: tracking ornithopod tracks in the base of the Cretaceous (Berriasian, Spain). PLoS One 8(11):e81830

Castanera D, Vila B, Razzolini NL, Santos VF, Pascual C, Canudo JI (2014) Sauropod trackways of the Iberian Peninsula: palaeoetological and palaeoenvironmental implications. J Iber Geol 40:49–59

Cavin L, Avanzini M, Bernardi M, Piuz A, Proz P-A, Meister C, Boissonnas J, Meyer C (2012) New Triassic trackways from the autochthonous of the Triassic of the Aiguilles Rouges Massif, and re-evaluation of the dinosaur record in Valais, SW Switzerland. Swiss J Palaeontol 131:317–324

Charig AJ (1972) The evolution of the archosaur pelvis and hindlimb: an explanation in functional terms. In: Joysey KA, Kemp TS (eds) Studies in vertebrate evolution. Oliver and Boyd, Edinburgh

Charig AJ (1984) Competition between therapsids and archosaurs during the Triassic Period: a review and synthesis of current theories. Sym Zool Soc Lond 52:597–628

Clark NDL, Ross DA, Booth P (2005) Dinosaur tracks from the Kilmaluag Formation (Bathonian, Middle Jurassic) of Score Bay, Isle of Skye, Scotland, UK. Ichnos 12:93–104

Clarke JA, Tambussi CP, Noriega JI, Erickson GM, Ketcham RA (2005) Definitive fossil evidence for the extant avian radiation in the Cretaceous. Nature 433:305–308

Conradt L (1998) Could asynchrony in activity between the sexes cause intersexual social segregation in ruminants? Proc R Soc B 265:1359–1363

Contessi M, Fanti F (2012) First record of bird tracks in the Late Cretaceous (Cenomanian) of Tunisia. Palaios 27:455–464

Coombs WP (1980) Swimming ability of carnivorous dinosaurs. Science 207:1198–1200

Cooper A, Penny D (1997) Mass survival of birds across the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary: molecular evidence. Science 275:1109–1113

Cotton WD, Cotton JE, Hunt AP (1998) Evidence for social behavior in ornithopod dinosaurs from the Dakota Group of northeastern New Mexico, U.S.A. Ichnos 6:141–149

Cuny G, Galton PM (1993) Revision of the Airel theropod dinosaur from the Triassic-Jurassic boundary (Normandy, France). Neues Jahrb Geol P A 187:261–288

Currie PJ (1983) Hadrosaur trackways from the Lower Cretaceous of Canada. Acta Paleontol Pol 28:63–73

Currie PJ (1995) Ornithopod trackways from the Lower Cretaceous of Canada. In: Sarjeant WAS (ed) Vertebrate fossils and the evolution of scientific concepts. Gordon and Breach, Newark, NJ

Currie PJ, Eberth DA (2010) On gregarious behavior in *Albertosaurus*. Can J Earth Sci 47:1277–1289

Cuvier G (1809) Memoire sur le squelette fossile d'un reptile volant des environs d'Aichstedt, que quelques naturalistes ont pris pour un oiseau, et dont nous formons un genre de Sauriens, sous le nom de Ptero-Dactyle. Ann Mus Hist Nat Paris 13:424–437

Czerkas S, Olson EC (1987) Dinosaurs past and present. Univ Washington Press, Seattle

Dantas P, Dos Santos VF, Lockley MG, Meyer CA (1994) Footprint evidence for limping dinosaurs form the Upper Jurassic of Portugal. Gaia 10:43–48

Davis PG, Briggs DEG (1998) The impact of decay and disarticulation on the preservation of fossil birds. Palaios 13:3–13

Day JJ, Upchurch P, Norman DB, Gale AS, Powell HP (2002a) Sauropod trackways, evolution, and behavior. Science 296:1659

Day JJ, Norman DB, Upchurch P, Powell HP (2002b) A new trackway locality with implications for theropod dinosaur locomotion. Nature 415:494–495

Day JJ, Norman DB, Gale AS, Upchurch P, Powell HP (2004) A Middle Jurassic dinosaur trackway site from Oxfordshire, UK. Palaeontology 47:319–348

Delair JB (1963) Notes on Purbeck fossil footprints, with descriptions of two hitherto unknown forms from Dorset. Proc Dorset Nat Hist Archaeol Soc 84:92–100

Delair JB (1981) Multiple trackways from the Isle of Purbek. Proc Dorset Nat Hist Archaeol Soc 102:65–68

Demathieu GR (1981) Comparaison des informations fournies par l´ichnologie des vertébrés et par la paléontologie ostéologique dans le domaine de la chrolologie. Bull Sci Bourg 34:5–12

Demathieu G (1986) Nouvelles recherches sur la vitesse des vertébrés, auteurs de traces fossiles. Geobios 19:327–333

Demathieu G (1989) Appearance of the first dinosaur tracks in the French Middle Triassic and their probable significance. In: Gillette DD, Lockley MG (eds) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Demathieu G, Demathieu P (2004) Chirotheria and other ichnotaxa of the European Triassic. Ichnos 11:79–88

Demathieu G, Haubold H (1978) Du problème de l'origine des dinosauriens d'après les données de l'ichnologie du Trias. Geobios 11:409–412

D'Emic MC (2012) The early evolution of titanosauriform sauropd dinosaurs. Zool J Linnean Soc 166:624–671

Desojo JB, Heckert AB, Martz JW, Parker WG, Schoch RR, Small BJ, Sulej T (2013) Aetosauria: a clade of armoured pseudosuchians from the Upper Triassic continental beds. Geol Soc Special Publ 379

D'Orazi Porchetti S, Nicosia U, Mietto P, Avanzini M (2008) *Atreipus*-like footprints and their co-ocurrence with *Evazoum* from the upper Carnian (Tuvalian) of Trentino-Alto Adige. Stud Trent Sci Nat Acta Geol 83:277–287

Dyke G, Kaiser G (eds) (2011) Living dinosaurs: the evolutionary history of modern birds. Wiley, Oxford

Dzik J (2003) A beaked herbivorous archosaur with dinosaur affinities from the early Late Triassic of Poland. J Vert Paleontol 23:556–574

Dzik J, Sulej T, Niedzwiedzki G (2008) A dicynodont-theropod association in the latest Triassic of Poland. Acta Palaeontol Pol 53:733–738

Ellis RG, Gatesy SM (2013) A biplanar X-ray method for three-dimensional analysis of track formation. Palaeontol Electron 16:1–16

Ezcurra MD (2006) A review of the systematic position of the dinosauriform archosaur *Eucoelophysis baldwini* from the Upper Triassic of New Mexico, USA. Geodiversitas 28:649–684

Ezcurra MD (2010) Biogeography of Triassic tetrapods: evidence for provincialism and driven sympatric cladogenesis in the early evolution of modern tetrapod lineages. Proc R Soc Lond B 277:2547–2552

Ezquerra R, Doublet S, Costeur L, Galton PM, Pérez-Lorente F (2007) Were non-avian theropod dinosaurs able to swim? Supportive evidence from an Early Cretaceous trackway, Cameros Basin (La Rioja, Spain). Geology 35:507–510

Falk AR (2011) Tracking Mesozoic birds across the world. J Syst Palaeontol 9:85–90

Falk AR, Hasiotis ST, Martin LD (2010) Feeding traces associated with bird tracks from the Lower Cretaceous Haman Formation, Republic of Korea. Palaios 25:730–741

Falk AR, Lim J-D, Hasiotis ST (2014) A behavioral analysis of fossil bird tracks from the Haman Formation (Republic of Korea) shows a nearly modern avian ecosystem. Vert Palasiatic 52:129–152

Farlow JO (1981) Estimates of dinosaur speeds from a new trackway site in Texas. Nature 294:747–748

Farlow JO (1987) Lower Cretaceous dinosaur tracks, Paluxy River Valley, Texas. South Central Section, Geol Soc Am, Waco, TX

Farlow JO (1992) Sauropod tracks and trackmakers: integrating the ichnological and skeletal records. Zubía 10:89–138

Farlow JO, Pianka ER (2000) Body form and trackway pattern in Australian desert monitors (Squamata: Varanidae): Comparing zoological and ichnological diversity. Palaios 15:235–247

Farlow JO, Pittman JG, Hawthorne JM (1989) Brontopodus birdi, Lower Cretaceous sauropod footprints from the U.S. Gulf Coastal Plain. In: Gillette DD, Lockley MG (eds) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Farlow JO, Gatesy SM, Holz T Jr, Hutchinson JR, Robinson JM (2000) Theropod locomotion. Am Zool 40:640–663

Fichter J, Kunz R (2004) New genus and species of Chirotheroid tracks in the Detfurth-Formation (Middle Bunter, Lower Triassic) of Central Germany. Ichnos 11:183–193

Fiorillo AR, Hasiotis ST, Kobayashi Y (2011) Bird tracks from the Upper Cretaceous Cantwell Formation of Denali National Park, Alaska, USA: a new perspective on ancient northern polar vertebrate biodiversity. J Syst Palaeontol 9:33–49

Fraser NC, Padian K, Walkden GM, Davis ALM (2002) Basal Dinosauriform Remains from Britain and the Diagnosis of the Dinosauria. Palaeontology 45:79–95

Fuentes Vidarte C (2001) A new species of *Pteraichnus* of the Spanish Lower Cretaceous. *Pteraichnus cidacoi*. Strata 11:44–46

Fuentes Vidarte C, Meijide Calvo M, Meijide Fuentes F, Meijide Fuentes M (2004a) *Pteraichnus longipodus* nov. ichnosp. en la Sierra de Oncala (Soria, España). Stvdia Geol Salmanticensia 40:103–114

Fuentes Vidarte C, Meijide Calvo M, Meijide Fuentes M, Meijide Fuentes F (2004b) Huellas de pterosaurios en la Sierra de Oncala (Soria, España), nuevas ichnospecies: *Pteraichnus vetustior*, *Pteraichnus parvus*, *Pteraichnus manueli*. Celtiberia 98:471–490

Fujita M, Lee Y-N, Azuma Y, Li D (2012) Unusual tridactyl trackways with tail traces from the Lower Cretaceous Hekou Group, Gansu province, China. Palaios 27:560–570

Galton PM (1970) The posture of hadrosaurian dinosaurs. J Paleontol 44:464–473

Gand G, Demathieu G (2005) Les pistes dinosauroides du Trias moyen francais: interprétation et réévaluation de la nomenclature. Geobios 38:725–749

Gand G, Demathieu G, Grancier M, Sciau J (2005) Les traces dinosauroïdes du Trias supérieur français: discrimination, interprétation et comparaison. Bull Soc Géol Fr 176:69–79

Gand G, De La Horra R, Galán-Abellán B, López-Gómez J, Barrenechea JF, Arche A, Benito MI (2010) New ichnites from the Middle Triassic of the Iberian Ranges (Spain): paleoenvironmental and paleogeographical implications. Hist Biol 22:40–56

García-Ortiz E, Pérez-Lorente F (2014) Palaeoecological inferences about dinosaur gregarious behaviour based on the study of tracksites from La Rioja area in the Cameros Basin (Lower Cretaceous, Spain). J Iber Geol 40:113–127

García-Ramos JC, Piñuela L, Lires J, Fernández LA (2000) Icnitas de reptiles voladores (pterosaurios) con impresiones de la piel en el Jurásico Superior de Asturias (N de España). In: Diez JB, Balbino AC (eds) I Congresso Ibérico de Paleontología, libro de resumos, Évora, Portugal, 12–14 October 2000

García-Ramos JC, Lires J, Piñuela L (2002) Dinosaurios. Rutas por el Jurásico de Asturias. La Voz de Asturias, Lugones, Asturias

García-Ramos JC, Piñuela L, Lires J (2004) Guía del Jurásico de Asturias. Zinco Comunicación, Gijón, Asturias

García-Ramos JC, Piñuela L, Lires J (2006) Atlas del Jurásico de Asturias. Ediciones Nobel, Oviedo

Gatesy SM (2001) Skin impressions of Triassic theropods as records of foot movement. Bull Mus Comp Zool 156:137–149

Gatesy S (2003) Direct and indirect track features: what sediment did a dinosaur touch? Ichnos 10:91–98

Gatesy SM, Middleton KM, Jenkins FA Jr, Shubin NH (1999) Three dimensional preservation of foot movements in Triassic theropod dinosaurs. Nature 399:141–144

Gauthier JA (1986) Saurischian monophyly and the origin of birds. Mem Calif Acad Sci 8:1–55

Gierliński GD, Lockley MG, Niedźwiedzki G (2009) A distinctive crouching theropod trace from the Lower Jurassic of Poland. Geol Quart 53:471–475

Gillette DG, Lockley MG (eds) (1989) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Greben R, Lockley MG (1992) Vertebrate tracks from the Green River Formation, eastern Utah: implications for paleoecology. Geol Soc Am, Rocky Mountain Sect, Abstr Progr 24:16

Haddrath O, Baker AJ (2012) Multiple nuclear genes and retroposons support vicariance and dispersal of the palaeognaths, and an Early Cretaceous origin of modern birds. Proc R Soc Lond Biol 279:4617–4625

Haubold H (1967) Eine Pseudosuchier-Fährtenfauna aus dem Buntsandstein Südthüringens. Hall Jb Mitteldt Erdg 8:12–48

Haubold H (1971a) Die Tetrapodenfährten des Buntsandsteins. Paläontol Abh A 4:395–548

Haubold H (1971b) Ichnia amphibiorum et reptiliorum fossilium. In: Kuhn O (ed) Handbuch der paläoherpetologie, Teil 18. G Fischer, Stuttgart

Haubold H (1984) Saurierfährten. Wittenberg, Ziemsen

Haubold H (1986) Archosaur footprints at the terrestrial Triassic-Jurassic transition. In: Padian K (ed) The beginning of the age of dinosaurs. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Haubold H (1999) Tracks of the Dinosauromorpha from the Lower Triassic. Zbl Geo Pal 1:783–795

Haubold H (2006) Die Saurierfährten *Chirotherium barthii* Kaup, 1835—das Typusmaterial aus dem Buntsandstein bei Hildburghausen/Thüringen und das Chirotherium-Monument. Ver Nat Mus Schl 21:3–31

Haubold H, Klein H (2000) Die dinosauroiden Fährten *Parachirotherium–Atreipus–Grallator* aus dem unteren Mittelkeuper (Obere Trias: Ladin, Karn? Nor) in Franken. Halles Jahr Geowiss B 22:59–85

Haubold H, Klein H (2002) Chirotherien und rallatoriden aus der Unteren bis Oberen Trias Mitteleuropas und die Entstehung der Dinosauria. Hall Jahr Geowiss B 24:1–22

Hawthorne JM (1990) Dinosaur track-bearing strata of the Lampasas Cut Plain and Edwards Plateau, Texas. Baylor Geol Stud Bull 49:1–47

He Q, Xing LD, Zhang J-P, Lockley MG, Klein H, Persons WS, Qi L-Q, Jia C-K (2013) New Early Cretaceous pterosaur-bird track assemblage from Xinjiang, China: palaeoethology and palaeoenvironment. Acta Geol Sin-Engl 87:1477–1485

Heckert AB, Lucas SG, Rinehart LF, Celeskey MD, Spielmann JA, Hunt AP (2010) Articulated skeletons of the aetosaur *Typothorax coccinarum* Cope (Archosauria: Stagonolepididae) from the Upper Triassic Bull Canyon Formation (Revueltian: Early-Mid Norian), eastern New Mexico, USA. Vert Paleontol 30:619–642

Henderson DM (2002) Wide and narrow-gauge sauropod trackways as a consequence of body-mass distribution and the requirements for stability. Vert Paleontol 22:64A

Henderson DM (2006) Burly gaits: centers of mass, stability, and the trackways of sauropod dinosaurs. Vert Paleontol 26:907–921

Hernández Medrano N, Pacual Arribas C, Latorre Macarrón P, Sanz Pérez E (2006). Huellas de terópodos y pterosaurios en Valdegén 1 (Villar del Río, Soria, España). In: Proceedings of the 3rd international symposium about paleontology of dinosaur and their environment. Salas de Los Infantes, Burgos, 16–18 September 2004

Hitchcock E (1858) Ichnology of New England. A report of the sandstone of the Connecticut Valley especially its footprints. W. White, Boston

Hone DWE, Henderson DM (2014) The posture of floating pterosaurs: ecological implications for inhabiting marine and freshwater habitats. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 394:89–98

Horner JR, Gorman J (1990) Digging dinosaurs. Workman Publ, New York

Hornung JJ, Reich M (2013) The First Record of the Pterosaur Ichnogenus *Purbeckopus* in the Late Berriasian (Early Cretaceous) of Northwest Germany. Ichnos 20:164–172

Huh M, Lockley MG, Kim KS, Kim JY, Gwak S-G (2012) First report of *Aquatilavipes* from Korea: new finds from Cretaceous strata in the Yeosu Islands archipelago. Ichnos 19:43–49

Hunt AP, Lockley MG, Lucas SG, Meyer CA (1995a) The global sauropod fossil record. Gaia 10:261–279

Hunt AP, Lockley MG, Hups K, Schultz R (1995b) Jurassic vertebrate paleontology of Cactus Park, west-central Colorado. Geol Soc Am Abstr Prog Rocky Mountains Sec 27:15

Hwang KG, Huh M, Lockley MG, Unwin DM, Wright JL (2002) New pterosaur tracks (Pteraichnidae) from the Late Cretaceous Uhangri Formation, southwestern Korea. Geol Mag 139:421–435

Hwang KG, Huh M, Paik SI (2004) Sauropod trackways from the Cretaceous Jindong Formation at Docheon-ri, Changnyeon-gun, Geongsagnam-do, Korea. J Geol Soc Korea 40:145–159

Irby GV, Albright LB III (2012) Tail drag marks and dinosaur footprints from the Upper Cretaceous Toreva Formation, northeastern Arizona. Palaios 17:516–521

Irmis RB (2011) Evaluating hypotheses for the early diversification of dinosaurs. Earth Environ Sci Trans R Soc Edin 101:397–426

Irmis RB, Nesbitt SJ, Padian K, Smith ND, Turner AH, Woody D, Downs A (2007) A Late Triassic dinosauromorph assemblage from New Mexico and the rise of dinosaurs. Science 317:358–361

Ishigaki S (1986) Dinosaur footprints in the Atlas mountains. Nat Study 32:6–9

Jetz W, Thomas GH, Joy JB, Hartmann K, Mooers AO (2012) The global diversity of birds in space and time. Nature 491:444–448

Kaever M, de Lapparent AF (1974) Les traces de pas de Dinosaures du Jurassique de Barkhausen (Basse Saxe, Allemagne). Bull Soc Geol Fr 16:516–525

Kaup JJ (1835) Über Thierfährten bei Hildburghausen. Neues Jahrb Miner Geogn Geol Petrefakt 1835:227–228

Kemp TS (1982) Mammal-like reptiles and the origin of mammals. Academic, London

Kim JY, Lockley MG (2013) Review of dinosaur tail traces. Ichnos 20:129–141

Kim JY, Kim SH, Kim KS, Lockley MG (2006) The oldest record of webbed bird and pterosaur tracks from South Korea (Cretaceous Haman Formation, Changseon and Sinsu Islands): More evidence of high avian diversity in East Asia. Cretaceous Res 27:56–69

Kim JY, Lockley MG, Seo SJ, Kim KS, Kim SH, Baek KS (2012) A paradise of mesozoic birds: the world's richest and most diverse Cretaceous bird track assemblage from the Early Cretaceous Haman Formation of the Gajin tracksite, Jinju, Korea. Ichnos 19:28–42

King MI, Benton MJ (1996) Dinosaurs in the Early and Middle Triassic?—The footprint evidence from Britain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 122:213–225

Klein H, Haubold H (2007) Archosaur footprints—potential for biochronology of Triassic continental sequences. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 4:120–130

Klein H, Niedźwiedzki G (2012) Revision of the Lower Triassic tetrapod ichnofauna from Wióry, Holy Cross Mountains, Poland. Cross Mountains, Poland. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 56:1–62

Knoll F (2004) Review of the tetrapod fauna of the "Lower Stormberg Group" of the main Karoo Basin (southern Africa): implication for the age of the Lower Elliot Formation. Bull Soc Géol Fr 175:73–83

Krebs B (1965) E. Kuhn-Schnyder und B. Peyer: Die Triasfauna der Tessiner Kalkalpen. XIX. *Ticinosuchus ferox* nov. gen. nov. sp. [E. Kuhn-Schnyder and B. Peyer: The Triassic fauna of the Tessin Limestone Alps. XIX. *Ticinosuchus ferox* nov. gen. nov. sp.]. Schweizerische Paläontologische Abhandlungen. Mem Suisses Paleontol 81:1–140

Ksepka DT, Boyd CA (2012) Quantifying historical trends in the completeness of the fossil record and the contributing factors: an example using Aves. Paleobiology 38:112–125

Kubo T (2008) In quest of the *Pteraichnus* trackmaker: comparisons to modern crocodilians. Acta Palaeontol Pol 53:405–412

Kubo T (2011) Estimating body weight from footprints: application to pterosaurs. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 299:197–199

Kubo T, Benton MJ (2009) Tetrapod postural shift estimated from Permian and Triassic trackways. Palaeontology 52:1029–1037

Kubo T, Kubo MO (2012) Associated evolution of bipedality and cursoriality among Triassic archosaurs: a phylogenetically controlled evaluation. Paleobiology 38:474–485

Kubo T, Kubo M (2013) Analysis of Triassic archosauriform trackways: difference in stride/footprint ratio between dinosauromorphs and other archosauriforms. Palaios 28:259–265

Kvale EP, Johnson GD, Mickelson DL, Keller FLC, Archer AW (2001) Middle Jurassic (Bajocian and Bathonian) dinosaur megatracksites, Bighorn Basin, Wyoming, U.S.A. Palaios 16:233–254

Langer MC (2005) Studies on continental Late Triassic tetrapod biochronology. II The Ischigualastian and a Carnian global correlation. J South Am Earth Sci 19:219–239

Langer MC, Ezcurra MD, Bittencourt JS, Novas FE (2010) The origin and early evolution of dinosaurs. Biol Rev 85:55–110

Langer MC, Nesbitt SJ, Bittencourt JS, Irmis RB (2013) Non-dinosaurian dinosauromorphs. In: Nesbitt SJ, Desojo JB, Irmis RB (eds) Phylogeny and palaeobiology of early archosaurs and their kin. Geol Soc London, Spec Publ 379:157–186

Laws RR (1997) Allosaur traumatism and infection: palaeopathological analysis as a tool for lifestile reconstruction. J Vert Paleontol 17:59–60

Lee MSY, Cau A, Naish D, Dyke GJ (2014) Morphological clocks in palaeontology, and a mid-Cretaceous origin of crown Aves. Syst Biol. doi:10.1093/sybio/syt110, Advanced Onlive Version

Lee Y-N, Azuma Y, Lee H-J, Shibata M, Lü J (2010) The first pterosaur trackways from Japan. Cretaceous Res 31:263–273

Lee Y-N, Lee H-J, Lü J, Kobayashi Y (2008) New pterosaur tracks from the Hasandong Formation (Lower Cretaceous) of Hadong County, South Korea. Cretaceous Res 29:345–353

Lehman TM (1987) Late Maastrichtian paleoenvironments and dinosaur biogeography in the Western Interior of North America. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 60:189–217

Leonardi G (ed) (1987) Glossary and manual of tetrapod footprint palaeoichnology. Dept Nac Prod Min, Brazil

Leonardi G (1989) Inventory and statistics of the South American dinosaurian ichnofauna and its paleobiological interpretation. In: Gillette DD, Lockley MG (eds) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Leonardi G (1994) Annotated atlas of South America tetrapod footprints (Devonian to Holocene). Ministry of Mines and Energy, Brasilia

Li D, Azuma Y, Arakawa Y (2002) A new Mesozoic bird track site from Gansu Province, China. Mem Fukui Prefect Dino Mus 1:92–95

Li D, Xing L, Lockley MG, Pinuela L, Zhang J, Dai H, Kim JY, Person WS IV, Kong D (2015) A manus dominated pterosaur track assemblage from Gansu, China: implications for behavior. Sci Bull 60:264–272

Li R, Lockley MG, Liu M (2005) A new ichnotaxon of fossil bird track from the Early Cretaceous Tianjialou Formation (Barremian–Albian), Shandong Province, China. Chin Sci Bull 50:1149–1154

Li R, Lockley MG, Makovicky PJ, Matsukawa M, Norell MA, Harris JD, Liu M (2008) Behavioral and faunal implications of Early Cretaceous deinonychosaur trackways from China. Naturwissenschaften 95:185–191

Lim SY, Yang SY, Lockley MG (1989) Large dinosaur footprint assemblages from the Cretaceous Jindong Formation of southern Korea. In: Gillette D, Lockley MG (eds) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Lingham-Soliar T, Broderick T, Ait-Kaci Ahmed A (2003) Closely associated theropod trackways from the Jurassic of Zimbabwe. Naturwissenschaften 90:572–576

Lockley MG (1989) Tracks and traces: new perspectives on dinosaurian behavior, ecology and biogeography. In: Padian K, Chure DJ (eds) The age of dinosaurs short courses in paleontology #2. Paleontological Society, Knoxville, TN

Lockley M (1991) Tracking dinosaurs: a new look at an ancient world. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Lockley M (1998) The vertebrate tracks record. Nature 396:429–432

Lockley MG (1999) The Eternal Trail: a tracker looks at evolution. Perseus Books, Reading, MA, 334 p

Lockley MG (2001) Trackways-dinosaur locomotion. In: Briggs DEG, Crowther P (eds) Paleobiology: a synthesis. Blackwell, Oxford

Lockley MG (2007a) The morphodynamics of dinosaurs, other archosaurs and their trackways: holistic insights into relationships between feet, limbs and the whole body. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–organism interactions: a multifaceted ichnology. SEPM Spec Pub 88:27–51

Lockley MG (2007b) A tale of two ichnologies: the different goals and missions of vertebrate and invertebrate ichnology and how they relate in ichnofacies analysis. Ichnos 14:39–57

Lockley MG (2009) New perspectives on morphological variation in tridactyl footprints: clues to widespread convergence in developmental dynamics. Geol Quart 53:415–432

Lockley MG, Cart K, Martin J, Prunty R, Houck K, Hups K, Lim J-D, Kim K-S, Houck K, Gierliński G (2014) A bonanza of new tetrapod tracksites from the Cretaceous Dakota Group, western Colorado: implications for paleoecology. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 62:393–410

Lockley MG, Eisenberg L (2006) A preliminary report on a spectacular dinosaur tracksite in the Chinle Group, Dirty Cevil River Valley, Wayne County, Utah. In: Harris JD et al (eds) The Triassic–Jurassic terrestrial transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:263–268

Lockley MG, Gillette DD (1987) Dinosaur tracks symposium signals a renaissance in vertebrate ichnology. Paleobiology 13:246–252

Lockley MG, Harris JD (2010) On the trail of early birds: a review of the fossil footprint record of avian morphological and behavioral evolution. In: Ulrich PK et al (eds) Trends in ornithology research. Nova Science Publ, New York

Lockley MG, Houck K, Yang S-Y, Matsukawa M, Lim S-K (2006a) Dinosaur dominated footprint assemblages from the Cretaceous Jindong Formation, Hallayo Haesang National Park, Goseong County, South Korea: evidence and implications. Cretaceous Res 27:70–101

Lockley MG, Hunt AP (1995a) Dinosaur tracks and other fossil footprints of the Western United States. Columbia Univ Press, New York

Lockley MG, Hunt AP (1995b) Ceratopsid tracks and associated ichnofauna from the Laramie Formation (Upper Cretaceous: Maastrichtian) of Colorado. J Vert Paleontol 15:592–614

Lockley MG, Hunt AP, Meyer C (1994a) Vertebrate tracks and the ichnofacies concept: implications for paleoecology and palichnostratigraphy. In: Donovan S (ed) The paleobiology of trace fossils. Wiley, Chichester

Lockley MG, Hunt AP, Moratalla J, Matsukawa M (1994b) Limping dinosaurs? Trackway evidence for abnormal gait. Ichnos 3:193–202

Lockley MG, Matsukawa M (1999) Some observations on trackway evidence for gregarious behavior among small bipedal dinosaurs. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 150:25–31

Lockley MG, Meyer C (2000) Dinosaur tracks and other fossil footprints of Europe. Columbia Univ Press, New York

Lockley MG, Rainforth EC (2002) The track record of Mesozoic birds and pterosaurs. An ichnological and paleoecological perspective. In: Chiappe LM, Witmer LM (eds) Mesozoic birds: above the head of dinosaurs. Univ California Press, Berkeley

Lockley MG, Wright J (2003) Pterosaur swim tracks and other ichnological evidence of behavior and ecology. In: Buffetaut E (ed) Evolution and paleobiology of pterosaurs. Geolo Soc Spec Publ 217:297–313

Lockley MG, Young BH, Carpenter K (1983) Hadrosaur locomotion and herding behavior: evidence from footprints in the Mesaverde Formation Gran Mesa Coal field, Colorado. Mountain Geol 20:5–14

Lockley MG, Houck KJ, Prince NK (1986) North America's largest dinosaur trackway site: implications for Morrison Formation paleoecology. Geol Soc Am Bull 97:1163–1176

Lockley MG, Holbrook J, Hunt AP, Matsukawa M, Meyer C (1992a) The dinosaur freeway: a preliminary report on the Cretaceous megatracksite, Dakota Group, Rocky Mountain Front Range and Highplains; Colorado, Oklahoma and New Mexico. In: Flores R (ed) Mesozoic of the Western Interior. SEPM, Midyear Mtg, Field Guideb. Tulsa, OKlahoma

Lockley MG, Yang SY, Matsukawa M, Fleming F, Lim SK (1992b) The track record of Mesozoic birds: evidence and implications. Philos Trans R Soc 336:113–134

Lockley MG, Farlow JO, Meyer CA (1995a) *Brontopodus* and *Parabrontopodus* Ichnogen. nov. and the significance of wide and narrow-gauge sauropod trackways. In: Lockley MG et al (eds) Aspects of sauropod biology. Gaia 10:135–146

Lockley MG, Meyer CA, Hunt AP, Lucas S (1995b) The distribution of sauropod tracks and trackmakers. In: Lockley MG et al (eds) Aspects of sauropod biology. Gaia 10:233–248

Lockley MG, Meyer C, Santos VF (1995c) Trackway evidence for a herd of juvenile sauropods from the Late Jurassic of Portugal. In: Lockley MG et al (eds) Aspects of sauropod biology. Gaia 10:27–36

Lockley MG, Lim JD, Kim J-Y, Kim K-S, Huh M, Hwang KG (2012a) Tracking Korea's early birds: ichnological insights into avian evolution and behavior. Ichnos 19:17–27

Lockley MG, Logue TJ, Moratalla JJ, Hunt AP, Schultz RJ, Robinson JW (1995a) The fossil trackway *Pteraichnus* is pterosaurian, not crocodilian: implications for the global distribution of pterosaur tracks. Ichnos 4:7–20

Lockley MG, Hunt AP, Lucas SG (1996) Vertebrate track assemblages from the Jurassic Summerville Formation and correlative deposits. In: Morales M (ed) The continental Jurassic. Mus Northern Arizona Bull 60:249–254

Lockley MG, Lim M, Huh S-K, Yang S-Y, Chun SS, Unwin DM (1997) First report of pterosaur tracks from Asia, Chollanam Province, Korea. J Paleontol Soc Korea Spec Publ 2:17–32

Lockley MG, Santos VF, Meyer C, Hunt A (1998) A new dinosaur tracksite in the Morrison Formation, Boundary Butte, Southeastern Utah. Modern Geol 23:317–330

Lockley M, Schulp AS, Meyer CA, Leonardi G, Mamani DK (2002) Titanosaurid trackways from the Upper Cretaceous of Bolivia: evidence for large manus, wide-gauge locomotion and gregarious behavior. Cretaceous Res 23:383–400

Lockley MG, Wright JL, Thies D (2005) Some observations on the dinosaur tracks at Müncheagen (Lower Cretaceous), Germany. Ichnos 11:261–274

Lockley M, Matsukawa M, Ohira H, Li J, Wright J, White D, Chen P (2006b) Bird tracks from Liaoning Province, China: new insights into avian evolution during the Jurassic-Cretaceous transition. Cretaceous Res 27:33–43

Lockley MG, Li R, Harris JD, Matsukawa M, Liu M (2007) Earliest zygodactyl bird feet: evidence from Early Cretaceous roadrunner-like track. Naturwissenschaften 94:657–665

Lockley MG, Harris JD, Chin K, Masukawa M (2008) Ichnological evidence for morphological and behavioral convergence between Mesozoic and extant birds: paleobiological implications. In: Uchman A (ed) 2nd Int Congr Ichnol Abstr Book. Polish Geol Inst, Warszawa

Lockley MG, Chin K, Houck M, Matsukawa M, Kukihara R (2009) New interpretations of *Ignotornis* the first reported Mesozoic avian footprints: implications for the ecology and behavior of an enigmatic Cretaceous bird. Cretaceous Res 30:1041–1061

Lockley MG, Huh M, Kim BS (2012b) *Ornithopodichnus* and pes-only sauropod trackways from the Hwasun tracksite Cretaceous of Korea. Ichnos 19:93–100

Lockley MG, Huh M, Gwak S-G, Hwang KG, Paik IS (2012c) Multiple tracksites with parallel trackways from the Cretaceous of the Yeosu City Area Korea: implications for gregarious behavior in Ornithopod and Sauropod dinosaurs. Ichnos 19:105–114

Lockley MG, Li J, Matsukawa M, Li R (2012d) A new avian ichnotaxon from the Cretaceous of Nei Mongol, China. Cretaceous Res 34:84–93

Lockley MG, McCrea RT, Buckley LG, Deock Lim J, Matthews NA, Breithaupt BH, Houck KJ, Gierliński GD, Surmik D, Soo Kim K, Xing L, Yong Kong D, Cart K, Martin J, Hadden G (2016) Theropod courtship: large scale physical evidence of display arenas and avian-like scrape ceremony behaviour by Cretaceous dinosaurs. Sci Rep 6:18952

Logue TJ (1994) Alcova, Wyoming tracks of *Pteraichnus saltwashensis* made by pterosaurs. Geol Soc Am Abstr Prog South Central Region 26:10

Lucas SG, Heckert AB (2011) Late Triassic aetosaurs as the trackmaker of the tetrapod footprint ichnotaxon *Brachychirotherium*. Ichnos 18:197–208

Lucas SG, Tanner LH (2007) The nonmarine Triassic-Jurassic bounday in the Newark Supergroup of eastern North America. Earth-Sci Rev 84:1–20

Lucas SG, Klein H, Lockley MG, Spielmann JA, Gierliński GD, Hunt AP, Tanner LH (2006) Triassic–Jurassic stratigraphic distribution of the theropod footprint ichnogenus Eubrontes. In: Harris JD et al (eds) The Triassic–Jurassic terrestrial transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:86–93

Lull RS (1904) Fossil footprints of the Jura-Trias of North America. Mem Boston Soc Nat Hist 5:461–557

Mallison HJ (2011) Fast moving dinosaurs: why our basic tenet is wrong. Vert Paleontol 31:S150

Manning PL (2004) A new approach to the analysis and interpretation of tracks: examples form the dinosaurian. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Spec Publ 228:93–123

Mannion PD, Upchurch P (2010) A quantitative analysis of environmental associations in sauropod dinosaurs. Paleobiology 36:253–282

Marsicano CA, Barredo SP (2004) A Triassic tetrapod footprint assemblage from southern South America: palaeobiogeographical and evolutionary implications. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 203:313–335

Marsicano CA, Arcucci AB, Mancuso AC, Caselli AT (2004) Middle Triassic tetrapod footprints of southern South America. Ameghiniana 41:171–184

Marsicano CA, Domnanovich NS, Mancuso AC (2007) Dinosaur origins: evidence from the footprint record. Hist Biol 19:83–91

Marsicano CA, Irmis RB, Mancuso AC, Mundil R, Chemale F (2015) The precise temporal calibration of dinosaur origins. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113:509–513

Martin AJ, Vickers-Rich P, Rich TH, Hall M (2014) Oldest known avian footprints from Australia: Eumeralla Formation (Albian), Dinosaur Cove, Victoria. Palaeontology 57:7–19

Martinez RN, Sereno PC, Alcober OA, Colombi CE, Renne PR, Montañez IP, Currie BS (2011) A basal dinosaur from the dawn of the dinosaur era in southwestern Pangaea. Science 331:206–210

Marty D, Paratte G, Lovis C, Jacquemet M, Meyer CA (2010) Extraordinary sauropod trackways from the Late Jurassic Béchat Bovais tracksite (Canton Jura, NW Switzerland): implications for sauropod locomotor styles. Abstract volume 8th EAVP meeting, 2010. p 56

Mathews JC, Brusatte SL, Williams SA, Henderson MD (2009) The first *Triceratops* bonebed and its implications for gregarious behavior. J Vert Paleontol 29:286–290

Matsukawa M, Hamuro T, Mizukami T, Fujii S (1997) First trackway evidence of gregarious dinosaurs from the Lower Cretaceous Tetori Group of eastern Toyama prefecture, central Japan. Cretaceous Res 18:603–619

Matsukawa M, Matsui T, Lockley MG (2001) Trackway evidence of herd structure among ornithopod dinosaurs from the Cretaceous Dakota Group of Northeastern New Mexico, USA. Ichnos 8:197–206

Matsukawa M, Shibata K, Kukihara R, Koarai K, Lockley MG (2005) Review of Japanese dinosaur track localities: implications for ichnotaxonomy, paleogeography and stratigraphic correlation. Ichnos 12:201–222

Mazin JM, Hantzpergue P, Lafaurie G, Vignaud P (1995) Des pistes de ptérosaures dans le Tithonien de Crayssac (Quercy, France). C R Acad Sci Paris 321:417–424

Mazin J-M, Hantzpergue P, Bassoullet J-R, Lafaurie G, Vignaud P (1997) Le gisement de Crayssac (Tithonien inferieur, Quercy, Lot, France): decouverte de pistes de dinosaures en place et premier bilan ichnologique. C R Acad Sci Paris 325:733–739

Mazin J-M, Billon-Bruyat J-R, Roller P (2001) If they did it, they were able to do it! A computational reconstruction of pterodactyloid terrestrial locomotion from trackways. Strata Serie 1(11):60–63

Mazin J-M, Billon-Bruyat J-P, Hantzpergue P, Lafaurie G (2003) Ichnological evidence for quadrupedal locomotion in pterodactyloid pterosaurs: trackways from the Late Jurassic of Crayssac (southwestern France). In: Buffetaut E, Mazin J-M (eds) Evolution and palaeobiology of pterosaurs. Geol Soc Spec Publ 217:283–296

Mazin J-M, Billon-Bruyat J-P, Padian K (2009) First record of a pterosaur landing trackway. Proc R Soc B 276:3881–3886

McCrea RT (2000) Dinosaur footprints in the Lower Cretaceous (Albian) Gates Formation of Alberta, Canada: their use in palaeobiology and palaeoenvironmental interpretation. Paleontol Soc Korea Spec Publ 4:169–178

McCrea RT, Currie PJ (1998) A preliminary report on dinosaur tracksites in the Lower Cretaceous (Albian) Gates Formation near Grande Cache, Alberta. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 14:155–162

McCrea RT, Buckley LG, Farlow JO, Lockley MG, Currie PJ, Matthews NA, Pemberton SG (2014) A "Terror of Tyrannosaurus": the first trackways of tyrannosaurids and evidence of gregariousness and pathology in tyrannosauridae. PLoS One 9:e103613

Meijide Calvo M (2001) Pterosaur trace in Oncala Berriasian (Soria, Spain). New ichnospecies: *Pteraichnus manueli*. Strata 11:72–74

Meijie Calvo M, Fuentes Vidarte C (2001) Huellas de pterosaurios en el Weald de Soria (Espana). Proceedings of the 1st International Symposium about paleontology of dinosaur and their environment. Salas de Los Infantes, Burgos, 21–25 September 1999

Melchor RN, Valais SD (2006) A review of Triassic tetrapod track assemblages from Argentina. Palaeontology 49:355–379

Meyer CA, Hunt AP (1999) The first pterosaur from the Late Jurassic of Switzerland: evidence for the largest Jurassic flying animal. Oryctos 2:111–116

Meyer CA, Marty D, Thüring B, Stecher R, Thüring S (2013) Dinosaurierspuren aus der Trias der Bergüner Stöcke (Parc Ela, Kanton Graubünden, SE-Schweiz). Mitt Nat Ges Basel 14:135–144

Mietto P (1987) *Parasynaptichnium gracilis* nov. ichnogen., nov. sp. (Reptilia: Archosauria Pseudosuchia) nell'Anisico inferiore di Recoaro (Prealpi Vicentine–Italia). Mem Sci Geol 39:37–47

Mietto P (1988) Piste di dinosauri nella Dolomia Principale (Triassico Superiore) del Monte Pelmetto (Cadore). Mem Soc Geol Ital 30(1985):307–310

Milàn J, Gierliński G (2004) A probable thyreophorean (Dinosauria, Ornithischia) footprint from the Upper Triassic of southern Sweden. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 51:71–75

Milàn J, Clemmensen LB, Bonde N (2004) Vertical sections through dinosaur tracks (Late Triassic lake deposits, East Greenland)—undertracks and other subsurface deformation structures revealed. Lethaia 37:285–296

Milàn J, Avanzini M, Clemmensen LB, García-Ramos JC, Piñuela L (2006) Theropod foot movement recorded from Late Triassic, Early Jurassic and Late Jurassic fossil footprints. In: Harris et al (eds) The Triassic-Jurassic Terrestrial Transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:352–364

Milner ACR, Lockley MG, Kirkland JI (2006) A large collection of well-preserved theropod dinosaur swim tracks form the Lower Jurassic Moenave Formation, St. George, Utah. In: Harris JD et al (eds) The Triassic-Jurassic Terrestrial Transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:315–328

Milner ACR, Harris JD, Lockley MG, Kirkland JI (2009) Bird-like anatomy, posture and behavior revealed by an Early Jurassic theropod dinosaur resting trace. PLoS One 4:e4591

Moratalla JJ, Hernán J (2009) Turtle and pterosaur tracks from the Los Cayos dinosaur tracksite, Cameros Basin (Cornago, La Rioja, Spain): tracking the Lower Cretaceous bio-diversity. Rev Esp Paleontol 24:59–77

Moratalla JJ, García-Mondejar J, Santos VF, Lockley MG, Sanz JL, Jimenez S (1995) Sauropod trackways from the Lower Cretaceous of Spain. Gaia 10:75–83

Moratalla JJ, Sanz JL, Jiménez S (1997) Información paleobiológica y paleoambiental inferida a partir de las icnitas de dinosaurios: problemas, límites y perspectivas. Rev Esp Paleontol 12:185–196

Myers TS, Fiorillo AR (2009) Evidence for gregarious behavior and age segregation in sauropod dinosaurs. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 274:96–104

Nesbitt SJ (2011) The early evolution of Archosauria: relationships and the origin of major clades. Bull Am Mus Nat Hist 352:1–292

Nesbitt SJ, Irmis RB, Parker WG (2007) A critical re-evaluation of the Late Triassic dinosaur taxa of North America. J Syst Palaeontol 5:209–243

Nesbitt SJ, Smith ND, Irmis RB, Turner AH, Downs A, Norell MA (2009) A complete skeleton of a Late Triassic saurischian and the early evolution of dinosaurs. Science 326:1530–1532

Nesbitt SJ, Sidor CA, Irmis RB, Angielczyk KD, Smith RMH, Tsuji LA (2010) Ecologically distinct dinosaurian sister group shows early diversification of Ornithodira. Nature 464:95–98

Nesbitt SJ, Barret PM, Werning S, Sidor CA, Charig AJ (2013) The oldest dinosaur? A Middle Triassic dinosauriform from Tanzania. Biol Lett 9:20120949

Nicosia U, Loi M (2003) Triassic footprints from Lerici (La Spezia, Northern Italy). Ichnos 10:127–140

Niedźwiedzki G, Brusatte SL, Butler RJ (2013) Prorotodactylus and Rotodactylus tracks: an ichnological record of dinosauromorphs from the Early-Middle Triassic of Poland. In: Nesbitt SJ, Desojo JB, Irmis RB (eds) Phylogeny and palaeobiology of early archosaurs and their kin. Geol Soc Spec Publ 379:319–351

von Nopcsa F (1923) Die fossilen Reptilien. Fortschritte Geol Paleont 2:1–210

Novas FE (1992) Phylogenetic relationships of the basal dinosaurs, the herrerasauridae. Palaeontology 35:51–62

Olsen PE (1995) A new approach for recognizing track makers. Geol Soc Am Abstr Prog 27:22

Olsen PE, Huber P (1998) The oldest Late Triassic footprint assemblage from North America (Pekin Formation, Deep River basin, North Carolina, USA). Southeastern Geol 38:77–90

Olsen PE, Baird D (1986) The ichnogenus Atreipus and its significance for Triassic biostratigraphy. In: Padian K (ed) The beginning of the age of dinosaurs. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Olsen PE, Smith JB, McDonald NG (1998) Type material of the type species of the classic theropod footprint genera *Eubrontes*, *Anchisauripus*, and *Grallator* (Early Jurassic, Hartford and Deerfield basins, Connecticut and Massachusetts, USA). J Vert Paleontol 18:586–601

Olsen PE, Kent DV, Sues H-D, Koeberl C, Huber H, Montanari A, Rainforth EC, Fowell SJ, Szajna MJ, Hartline BW (2002) Ascent of dinosaurs linked to an iridium anomaly at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary. Science 296:1305–1307

Ostrom JH (1972) Were some dinosaurs gregarious? Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 11:287–301

Padian K (1983) A functional analysis of flying and walking in pterosaurs. Paleobiology 9:218–239

Padian K (1984) The origin of pterosaurs. In: Reif W E, Westphal E (eds) Third symposium on Mesozoic terrestrial ecosystems and biota, Tübingen

Padian K (1985) The origin and aerodynamics of flight in extinct vertebrates. Palaeontology 28:413–433

Padian K (1987) The case of the bat-winged pterosaur, In: Czerkas SJ, Olsen EC, (eds) Dinosaurs past and present. Nat Hist Mus Los Angeles and Univ Washington Press 2:64–81

Padian K (1988) The flight of pterosaurs. Nat Hist 97:58–65

Padian K (1991) Pterosaurs: were they functional birds or functional bats? In: Rayner JMV, Wooton RJ (eds) Biomechanics in evolution. Seminar series of the Soc Experim Biol 36, Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Padian K (2003) Pterosaur stance and gait and the interpretation of trackways. Ichnos 10:115–126

Padian K, Olsen PE (1984) The fossil trackway Pteraichnus: not pterosaurian, but crocodilian. J Paleontol 58:178–184

Padian K, Rayner JMV (1993) The wings of pterosaurs. Am J Sci 293A:91–166

Padian K, Li C, Pchelnikova J (2010) The trackmaker of *Apatopus*: early diversification of archosaur stance and gait. Palaeontology 53:175–189

Parrish JM (1987) The origin of crocodilian locomotion. Paleobiology 13:396–414

Pascual Arribas C, Sanz Pérez E (2000) Huellas de pterosaurios en el grupo Oncala (Soria, España). *Pteraichnus palaciei-saenzi*, nov. ichnosp. Estud Geol 56:73–100

Paul GS (1987) Pterodactyl habits—real and ratio controlled. Nature 328:481

Peabody FE (1948) Reptile and amphibian trackways from the Moenkopi Formation of Arizona and Utah. Univ Calif Pub Bull Dept Geol Sci 27:295–468

Peabody FE (1959) Trackways of living and fossil salamanders. Univ Calif Publ Zool 63:1–72

Peecook B, Sidor C, Nesbitt S, Angielczyk K (2011) New data on the archosaur fauna of the Middle Triassic (Anisian) Ntawere Formation of Zambia. J Vert Paleontol 31:1127–1137

Pennycuick CJ (1986) Mechanical constraints on the evolution of flight. In: Padian K (ed) The origin of birds and the evolution of flight. Mem Calif Acad Sci 8:83–98

Pérez-Lorente F (2003) Icnitas de dinosaurios del Cretácico en España. In: Pérez-Lorente F (coord) Dinosaurios y otros reptiles Mesozoicos en España, Cienc Tierra 26:161–214

Pienkowski G, Niedzwiedzki G (2005) Pterosaur tracks from the early Kimmeridgian intertidal deposits of Wierzbica, Poland. Geol Quart 49:339–346

Piñuela L, García-Ramos JC, Lires J (2002) Comportamiento gregario de ornitópodos en el Jurásico Superior de Asturias. In: Pérez-Lorente F (coord) Dinosaurios y otros reptiles mesozoicos de España, Resum, Univ La Rioja, 26–29 November 2002

Pittman JG, Gillette DD (1989) The Briar Site: a new sauropod dinosaur tracksite in Lower Cretaceous beds of Arkansas, USA. In: Lockley MG, Gillette DD (eds) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Platt BF, Hasiotis ST (2008) A new system for describing and classifying tetrapod tail traces with implications for interpreting the dinosaur tail trace record. Palaios 23:3–13

Prince NK, Lockley MG (1989) The sedimentology of the Purgatoire tracksite region, Morrison Formation of South-eastern Colorado. In: Gillette DD, Lockley MG (eds) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Riggs ES (1904) Structure and relationships of ophistocoelian dinosaurs. Part II. The Brachiosauridae. Field Columbian Mus Publ Geol 2:229–247

Roach BT, Brinkman DL (2007) A reevaluation of cooperative pack hunting and gregariousness in *Deinonychus antirrhopus* and other nonavian theropod dinosaurs. Bull Peabody Mus Nat Hist 48:103–138

Rodríguez-de la Rosa R (2003) Pterosaur tracks from the lastest Campanian Cerro del Pueblo Formation of southeastern Coahuila, México. In: Buffetaut E, Mazin JM (eds) Evolution and paleobiology of pterosaurs. Geol Soc Spec Publ 217:275–282

Rogers RR (1990) Taphonomy of three dinosaur bone bed in the upper Cretaceous Two Medicine Formation of northwestern Montana. Palaios 5:394–413

Rogers RR, Eberth DA, Fiorillo AR (2007) Bonebeds. Genesis, analysis, and paleobiological significance. The Univ Chicago Press, Chicago

Rothschild BM, Tanke DH (2005) Theropod paleopathology. State-of-the-art review. In: Carpenter K (ed) The carnivorous dinosaurs. Indiana University Press, Bloomington

Rothschild BM, Tanke DH, Ford T (2001) Theropod stress fractures and tendon avulsions as a clue to activity. In: Tanke DH, Carpenter K (eds) Mesozoic vertebrate life. Indiana University Press, Bloomington

Russell DA, Belland P (1976) Running dinosaurs. Nature 264:486

Salgado L, Coria RA, Calvo JO (1997) Evolution of titanosaurid sauropods. I Phylogenetic analysis based on the postcranial evidence. Ameghiniana 34:3–32

Sánchez-Hernández B, Przewieslik AG, Benton MJ (2009) A reassessment of the *Pteraichnus* ichnospecies from the Early Cretaceous of Soria Province, Spain. J Vert Paleontol 29:487–497

Sarjeant WAS (1990) A name for the trace of an act: approaches to the nomenclature and classification of fossil vertebrate fossils. In: Carpenter K, Currie PJ (eds) Dinosaur systematics: perspectives and approaches. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Schumacher BA (2003) An addition to the Dinosaur Freeway Megatracksite, Dakota Group (Upper Cretaceous), Bent County, Colorado. Ichnos 10:255–262

Sereno PC (1999) The evolution of dinosaurs. Science 284:2137–2147

Sereno PC, Arcucci AB (1994) Dinosaur precursors from the Middle Triassic of Argentina: Lagerpeton chanarensis. J Vert Paleontol 13:385–399

Silva RC, Carvalho IS, Schwanke C (2007) Vertebrate dinoturbation from the Caturrita Formation (Late Triassic, Paraná Basin), Rio Grande do Sul State, Brazil. Gondwana Res 11:303–310

Smith JA, Sampson S, Loewen M, Santucci V (2002) Trackway evidence of possible gregarious behavior in large theropods from the Lower Jurassic Moenave Formation of Zion National Park. J Vert Paleontol 22(S3):108A–109A

von Soemmerring ST (1812) Über einen Ornithocephalus. Denks Akad Wissens München Math-Phys 3:89–158

von Soemmerring ST (1817) Uber einen Ornithocephalus brevirostris der Vorwelt. Denks Akad Wissens München Math-Phys 6:89–104

Soergel W (1925) Die Fährten der Chirotheria. Eine Paläobiologische Studie, Gustav Fischer, Jena

Sookias RB, Butler RJ, Benson RBJ (2012) Rise of dinosaurs reveals major body-size transitions are driven by passive processes of trait evolution. Proc R Soc B 279:2180–2187

Stokes WL (1957) Pterodactyl tracks from the Morrison formation. J Paleontol 31:952–954

Stokes WL (1978) Animal tracks in the Navajo-Nugget sandstone. Univ Wyoming Contrib Geol 16:103–107

Stokes WL, Madsen JH Jr (1979) Environmental significance of pterosaur tracks in the Navaro Sandstone (Jurassic) Grand County, Utah. Brigham Young Univ Geol Stud 26:21–26

Swennen C, Yu YT (2005) Food and feeding behavior of the black faced spoonbill. Waterbirds 28:19–27

Tanke DH, Rothschild BM (1997) Paleopathology. In: Currie PJ, Padian K (eds) Encyclopedia of dinosaurs. Academic, San Diego, CA

Thulborn RA (1981) Estimated speed of a gait dinosaur. Nature 292:272–252

Thulborn RA (1982) Speeds and gaits of dinosaurs. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 38:227–256

Thulborn RA (1984) Preferred gaits of bipedal dinosaurs. Alcheringa 8:243–252

Thulborn T (1990) Dinosaur tracks. Chapman and Hall, London

Thulborn T (2000) Australia´s earliest theropods: footprint evidence in the Ipswich Coal Measures (Upper Triassic) of Queensland. Gaia 15:301–311

Thulborn T (2003) Comment on "Ascent of dinosaurs linked to an iridium anomly at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary". Science 301:169

Thulborn T (2006) On the tracks of the earliest dinosaurs: implications for the hypothesis of dinosaurian monophyly. Alcheringa 30:273–311

Thulborn RA, Wade M (1979) Dinosaur stampede in the Cretaceous of Queensland. Lethaia 12:275–279

Thulborn RA, Wade M (1984) Dinosaur trackways in the Winton Formation (Mid-Cretaceous) of Queensland. Mem Queensland Mus 21:413–517

Tucker ME, Burchette TP (1977) Triassic dinosaur footprints from south Wales: their context and preservation. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 22:195–208

Turner A, Nesbitt SJ (2013) Body size evolution during the Triassic archosauriform radation. In: Nesbitt SJ, Desojo JB, Irmis RB (eds) Phylogeny and palaeobiology of early archosaurs and their kin. Geol Soc Spec Publ 379:573–597

Unwin DM (1986) Tracking the dinosaurs. Geol Today 2:168–169

Unwin DM (1987) Pterosaur locomotion. Joggers or waddlers? Nature 327:13–14

Unwin DM (1989) A predictive method of the identification of vertebrate ichnites and its application to pterosaur tracks. In: Gillette DD, Lockley MG (eds) Dinosaur tracks and traces. Cambridge Univ Press, Cambridge

Unwin DM (1997a) Locomotory roles of the hind limbs in pterosaurs. J Vert Paleontol 17:82A

Unwin DM (1997b) Pterosaur tracks and the terrestrial ability of pterosaurs. Lethaia 29:373–386

Unwin DM (2006) Pterosaurs from deep time. Pi Press, New York

Upchurch P, Barrett PM, Dodson P (2004) Sauropoda. In: Weishampel DB, Dodson P, Osmólska H (eds) The dinosauria, 2nd edn. Univ California Press, Berkeley

Varricchio DJ, Horner JR (1993) Hadrosaurid and lambeosaurid bone beds from the Upper Cretaceous Two Medicine Formation of Montana: taphonomic and biologic implications. Can J Earth Sci 31:997–1006

Viera LI, Torres JA (1992) Sobre "Dinosaurios coeluridos gregarios en el yacimiento de Valdevajes (La Rioja, España)". Nota de réplica y crítica. Rev Esp Paleontol 7:93–96

Vila B, Oms O, Marmi J, Galobart A (2008) Tracking Fumanya Footprints (Maastrichtian, Pyrenees): historical and ichnological overview. Oryctos 8:115–130

Voigt S, Niedźwiedzki G, Raczyński P, Mastalerz K, Ptaszyński T (2012) Early Permian tetrapod ichnofauna from the Intra-Sudetic Basin, SW Poland. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 313–314:173–180

Weems RE (2006) The manus print of Kayentapus minor: its bearing on the biomechanics and ichnotaxonomy of early Mesozoic saurischian dinosaurs. In: Harris JD et al (eds) The Triassic–Jurassic terrestrial transition. Bull New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci 37:379–389

Weishampel DB, Dodson P, Olsmólska H (2004) The Dinosauria, 2nd edn. University of California Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles, 861 pp

Wellnhofer P (1978) Pterosauria, handbuch der paläoherpetologie. Gustav Fischer, Stuttgart

Wellnhofer P (1988) Terrestrial locomotion in pterosaurs. Hist Biol 1:3–16

Wellnhofer P (1991a) The illustrated encyclopedia of pterosaurs. Salamander Books, London

Wellnhofer P (1991b) Weitere Pterosaurierfunde aus der Santana-Formation (Apt.) der Chapada do Araripe, Brasilien. Palaeontographica A 215:43–101

Wellnhofer P, Vahldiek BW (1986) Ein Flugsaurier-Rest aus dem Posidonienshiefer (Unter-Toarcian) von Schandelah bei Braunschweig. Paläontol Z 60:329–340

Wilson JA (1995) The evolutionary history of sauropod dinosaurs. Philos Trans R Soc B 349:365–390

Wilson JA (2005) Integrating ichnofossil and body fossil records to estimate locomotor posture and spatiotemporal distribution of early sauropod dinosaurs: a stratocladistic approach. Paleobiology 31:400–423

Wilson JA, Carrano MT (1999) Titanosaurs and the origin of "wide gauge" trackways: a biomechanical and systematic perspective on sauropod locomotion. Paleobiology 25:252–267

Wilson JA, Sereno PC (1998) Early evolution and higher-level phylogeny of sauropod dinosaurs. Soc Vert Paleontol Mem 5:1–68

Witton MP (2013) Pterosaurs. Princeton Univ Press, New Jersey

Wright JL (2005) Steps in understanding sauropod biology: the importance of sauropod tracks. In: Curry Rogers KA, Wilson JA (eds) The sauropods: evolution and paleobiology. Univ California Press, Berkeley

Wright JL, Unwin DM, Lockley MG, Rainforth EC (1997) Pterosaur tracks from the Purbeck Limestone Formation of Dorset, England. Proc Geol Assoc 108:39–48

Xing LD, Harris JD, Jia C-K, Luo Z-J, Wang S-N, Anf J-F (2011) Early Cretaceous bird-dominated and dinosaur footprint assemblages from the northwestern margin of the Junggar Basin, Xinjiang, China. Palaeoworld 20:308–321

Xing LD, Lockley MG, Zhang J-P, Milner ARC, Klein H, Li DQ, Persons WS IV, Ebi JF (2013a) A new Early Cretaceous dinosaur track assemblage and the first definite non-avian theropod swim trackway from China. Chin Sci Bull 58:2370–2378

Xing LD, Lockley MG, Klein H, Zhang J-P, He Q, Divay JD, Qi L-Q, Jia C-K (2013b) Dinosaur, bird and pterosaur footprints from the Lower Cretaceous of Wuerhe asphaltite area, Xinjiang, China, with notes on overlapping track relationships. Palaeoworld 22:42–51

Xing LD, Lockley MG, Piñuela L, Zhang J-P, Klein H, Li D, Wang F (2013c) Pterosaur trackways from the Lower Cretaceous Jiaguan Formation (Barremian–Albian) of Qijiang, Southwest China. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 392:177–185

Zhang JP, Li D, Li M, Lockley MG, Bai Z (2006) Diverse dinosaur-pterosaur-bird track assemblages from the Hakou Formation, Lower Cretaceous of Gansu Province, Northwest China. Cretaceous Res 27:44–55

Zhao Q, Barrett PM, Eberth DA (2007) Social behaviour and mass mortality in the basal ceratopsian dinosaur *Psittacosaurus* (Early Cretaceous, People's Republic of China). Palaeontology 50:1023–1029

Zug GR (1974) Crocodilian galloping: an unique gait for reptiles. Copeia 2:550–552

Chapter 11
The Mesozoic Lacustrine Revolution

Luis A. Buatois, Conrad C. Labandeira, M. Gabriela Mángano, Andrew Cohen, and Sebastian Voigt

11.1 Introduction

The Mesozoic lacustrine revolution (MLR) represents a major evolutionary event in the continental realm (Cohen 2003). The decline in taxic diversity at the family level in lacustrine environments that took place during the late Paleozoic–Middle Triassic was reversed later in the Mesozoic, with diversification seeming to have continued to the Quaternary, although potential biases may have affected this trend (Cohen 2003). Major novelties and innovations that took place in lacustrine

---

L.A. Buatois (✉) • M.G. Mángano
Department of Geological Sciences, University of Saskatchewan,
114 Science Place, Saskatoon, SK, Canada
e-mail: luis.buatois@usask.ca

C.C. Labandeira
Department of Paleobiology, National Museum of Natural History; Smithsonian Institution
Washington, DC 200013-7012, USA

Department of Entomology and BEES Program, University of Maryland,
Collage Park, MD 20742, USA

College of Life Sciences, Capital Normal University, Beijing 100048, China

Department of Geology, Rhodes University, Grahamstown, 6140 South Africa

Department of Entomology and BEES Program, University of Maryland,
College Park, MD 21740, USA

A. Cohen
Department of Geosciences, The University of Arizona, 1040 E. 4th Street,
Tucson, AZ 85721, USA

S. Voigt
Urweltmuseum GEOSKOP, Burg Lichtenberg (Pfalz), Burgstraße 19,
66871 Thallichtenberg, Germany

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_11

settings during the mid-Mesozoic include the diversification and increase in morphological disparity of aquatic macrophytes, aquatic insects, and teleosts. By the mid Cretaceous (125–90 Ma), the basic ecologic structure of the MLR was well established, defined by an ecologically significant increase of herbivory within ecosystems which previously had been overwhelmingly composed of detritivores and predators. This trophic readjustment was minimally altered by the end-Cretaceous global crisis and the subsequent ecologic rearrangement of the Paleogene world (Dunne et al. 2014).

It is a basic premise of this chapter that a review of this formative interval from a comparison of the body- and trace-fossil records will illuminate our understanding of the MLR. Although direct links between individual ichnotaxa and producers commonly are not possible, a comparison of the trace-fossil and body-fossil records through time is valuable in detecting the timing of large-scale ecologic changes in lacustrine ecosystems. Consequently, in this chapter we review the trace- and body-fossil record of lake and related continental aquatic deposits to establish and assess the importance of the MLR. As part of our examination, we discuss how ichnologic evidence may provide insights into major evolutionary innovations within lacustrine ecosystems. To do so, we provide an extensive summary of the available ichnologic information for Mesozoic–Cenozoic lacustrine successions. In addition, a review of the paleoecologic structure of Eurasian paleolakes in particular provide important evidence for understanding the impact this event had on trophic relationships throughout the water column (Zherikhin et al. 1999; Sinitshenkova 2002) as well as the lacustrine benthos and associated sediments during this formative interval (Buatois et al. 1998a; Mángano and Buatois 2007; Voigt and Hoppe 2010). Although this chapter is focused on the evolutionary novelties and innovations that took place during the Mesozoic, in order to place these changes within a broader context, we briefly outline the basic features of lacustrine ecosystems prior to the MLR (see Chap. 6 for a detailed discussion on the ichnology of Silurian-Permian lakes). A more complete context for understanding the MLR involves a search for the roots of Mesozoic MLR novelties and innovations in older deposits to establish relevant ichnological, biotic, and physical contrasts between the late Paleozoic and the Mesozoic worlds. Similarly, we provide a discussion of the post-Mesozoic record in order to evaluate the aftermath of the MLR.

11.2 Methods and Terminology

For this study, all ichnotaxonomic determinations have been checked and adjusted based on a reevaluation of the available literature. Because the literature essentially provides two contrasting trace fossil-assemblages, a distinction is made between lake-margin settings and fully subaqueous lacustrine conditions. Lake-margin settings are characterized by periodic fluctuations of the water table, leading to highly variable conditions in substrate consistency. Typically, a characteristic zonation from softgrounds near the edge of the water body to drier substrates outward from the lake develops (Scott et al. 2012a). Lake-margin ichnofaunas commonly display activity of a combined terrestrial to shallow subaqueous biota. The degree of consolidation of the substrate plays a major role for preservation of biogenic structures in lake-margin deposits (Buatois and Mángano 2004, 2009). Ichnofaunas from lake-margin settings typically comprise the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies (Buatois and Mángano 1995, 2004, 2009) and less commonly the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies (see Chaps. 1 and 13).

Fully lacustrine settings (i.e. the permanent subaqueous zone), particularly in hydrologically open systems, may host a relatively diverse benthic fauna. In this zone a where a lake experiences a high degree of environmental stability and appropriate ecologic conditions, particularly high levels of oxygenation, low energy, constant food supply, the presence of freshwater, and cohesive substrates (Buatois and Mángano 1995, 2004, 2009; Miller and White 2007; Scott et al. 2012a). Oxygenation is a first-order limiting factor, because in lakes with year-round thermal stratification the hypolimnion becomes anoxic or dysoxic and bioturbation is precluded in the lake bottom below the mixolimnion. Low-energy turbidity and underflow currents may provide oxygen and food to lake bottoms. Colonization by macrobenthos and preservation of their trace fossils are both unfavorable in soupy substrates and, accordingly, some degree of substrate cohesion is required to allow the passage of discrete biogenic structures through the fossilization barrier. Ichnofaunas from fully lacustrine settings typically form the *Mermia* Ichnofacies (Buatois and Mángano 1995, 2004, 2009; see Chap. 1).

At the scale of the basin, we commonly refer to the scheme developed by Bohacs et al. (2000), who recognized three different types of lake basins, namely overfilled, balanced-fill, and underfilled. Overfilled-lake basins occur if the rate of sediment/water input exceeds the rate of formation of potential accommodation. These systems are typically hydrologically open, and form deposits of fluvio-lacustrine, siliciclastic sediments that display parasequences resulting from shoreline progradation and delta-channel avulsion. Balanced-fill lake basins are formed when rates of sediment/water supply are in balance with the formation of potential accommodation. These lakes tend to shift periodically from hydrologically open to closed and vice versa, producing both carbonate and siliciclastic deposits which display parasequences that record both progradational parasequences and aggradation of chemical sediments during periods of desiccation. Underfilled-lake basins are characterized by rates of accommodation formation that exceed the rate of supply of sediment/water. These are typically hydrologically closed lakes, dominated by evaporite deposits which display parasequences that record vertical aggradation. This scheme has been successfully used to frame both ichnologic (Buatois and Mángano, 2004, 2007, 2009) and paleobiologic (Gierlowski-Kordesch and Park, 2004) information.

In order to frame the major ecosystem changes discussed in this chapter, we have used the distinction between novelties and innovations outlined by Erwin and Krakauer (2004) and Erwin (2012). According to these authors, invention is the creation of something new, whereas innovation is a successful development of an invention. Evolutionary novelties only result in innovations when they drive ecologic transformation (Erwin 2012).

For better clarity in specifying the immatures of non-holometabolous versus holometabolous insects, we employ the standard entomological terminology used in North America (China et al. 1958). For those insects possessing egg to naiad/nymph to adult development, the term “naiad” is used for an aquatic immature instar that lacks holometabolous development (Snodgrass 1954). Immatures consisting of naiads occur in the Ephemeroptera (mayflies) and Odonata (dragonflies and damselflies), the extinct archaeorthopteroid Chresmodida, Plecoptera (stoneflies), and some groups of Heteroptera (true bugs) within the Hemiptera. A terrestrial immature of these non-holometabolous insects is termed a “nymph” (Snodgrass 1954; Davies 1958), and nymphs commonly occur within the same major groups as species with naiad immatures. Examples of taxa with nymphs include the terrestrial Orthoptera (grasshoppers, crickets), Blattodea (cockroaches), Isoptera (termites), and Mantodea (mantids). We restrict the term “larva” solely to insects with holometabolous development, consisting of egg to larva to pupa to adult development (Snodgrass 1954). Holometabolous taxa that have aquatic larvae include certain groups within the Coleoptera (beetles); the Megaloptera (alderflies and dobsonflies); a few groups of Neuroptera such as spongillaflies; certain, especially nematocerous, Diptera (true flies); and the Trichoptera (caddisflies). Restriction of the term, larva, to holometabolous insects offers more precision than application of the term broadly to multiple developmental modes that would encompass developmental stages such as aquatic naiads, terrestrial nymphs, and probably forms that lack developmental change. The distinction used herein generally has been accepted by a broad spectrum of evolutionary developmental biologists (Gilbert 2014).

The body-fossil record of ancient lacustrine basins is strongly biased as a result of the distribution of fossil *Lagerstätten*. Fortunately, these spectacular deposits are quite common in lacustrine successions (see Table 14.1 in Cohen 2003). However, integrating body-fossil evidence from fossil Lagerstätten with ichnologic information frequently is problematic because many of the former records accumulated as event beds under anoxic conditions, preventing bioturbation, and therefore having a sparse trace-fossil record. Notwithstanding this limitation, there are a number of Mesozoic examples where exceptional body-fossil accumulations have been recovered in association with trace fossils, most notably the Madygen (Voigt and Hoppe 2010), El Montsec (de Gibert et al. 2000) and Las Hoyas (Buatois et al. 2000a; de Gibert et al. 2016) biotas.

11.3 Lacustrine Ecosystems in Deep Time

Exploration of lacustrine ecosystems in deep time is a challenging enterprise because lakes are geologically ephemeral (Cohen 2003). However, the long-term evolution of organisms in freshwater settings provides continuity, allowing reconstruction, albeit tentative, of secular changes in lacustrine biotas (Anderson and Dean 1988; Buatois et al. 1998a; Labandeira 1999; Park and Gierlowski-Kordesch 2007). Because of the patchiness and lack of connection between individual lakes in space and time, as opposed to the more continuous record of oceans, the fossil record of lacustrine organisms is sporadic (Cohen 2003).

As with other depositional settings, lakes are affected by a number of taphonomic megabiases (Behrensmeyer and Kidwell 1985; Behrensmeyer et al. 2000).

Taphonomic megabiases are defined as "largescale patterns in the quality of the fossil record that affect paleobiologic analysis at provincial to global levels and at timescales usually exceeding ten million years" (Behrensmeyer et al. 2000). In particular, the fossil record of lacustrine basins is strongly affected by both intrinsic changes and extrinsic abiotic and biotic changes. The former results from the evolution of new body plans and the impact of behavior on fossilization potential (Behrensmeyer et al. 2000). As in the archetypal case of marine environments, development of mineralized hard parts is one of the intrinsic factors in lake settings, as is the establishment of fossorial behavior by vertebrates. The increased depth and extent of bioturbation through time exhibited by the lacustrine infauna is certainly one of the most important, extrinsic biotic factors contributing to taphonomic megabiases in these settings (see Sect. 11.8.2). Finally, tectonic and climatic controls on the establishment and evolution of lacustrine basins are prime examples of extrinsic, abiotic factors in the generation of taphonomic megabiases. These interpretive limitations notwithstanding, our understanding of this record are informed by several key observations.

(1) **Lacustrine habitats have experienced a history of regular and repeated formation, isolation, and destruction**. Because of the combined effects of climate variability and change as well as sediment infill, most individual lakes only persist over timescales of ~10^2–10^4 yrs, with only a small percentage of lakes, generally those originating from tectonic, volcanic, and meteoritic impact processes, persisting over longer intervals of time (Cohen 2003; Cohen et al., 2015). Most of the processes that create lakes, such as fluvial diversion from damming, glacial blockage of drainage systems and delta-plain subsidence, are also predilect for the eventual destruction of these same habitats. The creation and destruction of lakes often occur at quasi-predictable tempos scaled by the lake formation process, including determining potential sediment accommodation space, coupled with the typical range of sediment accumulation rates associated with lacustrine systems.

(2) **The need for dispersal of organism populations among lakes is a primary driver of both evolutionary innovations and constraints on the lacustrine biota**. The excellent dispersal adaptations of organisms are a hallmark characteristic of most lacustrine systems. Organisms have evolved adaptations for dispersal as well as for the constraints emplaced on them by the "typical" lacustrine environment mentioned above. These features include adaptations for flight, such as active flight by aquatic insects, and passive carriage by birds, fish, and wind (Boag 1985; Bilton et al. 2001; Green and Figuerola 2005; Van Bocxlaer et al. 2011); active parasitism on animal dispersal vectors (Graf and Cummings 2006); and desiccation resistance (Watanabe et al. 2002; Watanabe 2006). Conversely, the very adaptations for dispersal between ephemeral waterbodies also promote gene exchange between populations and reduce the likelihood of population isolation and speciation (Bilton et al. 2001). These adaptations inherently constrain and scale the rates of lacustrine evolution to the stability and persistence of their waterbodies, with the faunas of shorter-lived lakes (better migrants or desiccation survivors) associated with slower evolutionary rates and overall lower diversity. Morphological novelties arising from new functional and behavioral modifications take advantage of changing lacustrine

food resources, of which herbivory on aquatic plants or tiered detritivory exploiting deeper substrates are prime examples. These novelties become innovations when in the case of dispersal, the spread of disseminules is severely impeded by a periodic scarcity of quasipersistent lakes, and the energetic requirements of adaptations for exploiting lacustrine resources run up against the competing need to migrate to new habitats.

(3) **Lacustrine evolution in long-lived lakes is highly iterative and lacustrine habitats can act as refugia for evolutionary novelties and innovations.** Comparative studies of the living and fossil faunas of long-lived Neogene African Great Lakes and early Mesozoic Newark Supergroup paleolakes show that speciation and diversification trends often are highly iterative. The iteration of homologous morphological novelties in lacustrine clades evolve repeatedly in space and time whenever lakes persist sufficiently long for the results of diversification to be expressed (McCune 1996; Salzburger et al. 2014). Particular body plans and evolutionary novelties have been observed resulting from the convergence of lineages within isolated lakes. One such convergence is the iconic example of cichlid fish pharyngeal jaw mechanics and overall body structure converging among species populations in Lakes Tanganyika and Malawi (Kocher et al. 1993). Perhaps even more remarkable, trophic interactions have also been observed to converge among long-lived lakes, albeit occasionally with slightly different players. One example involves patterns of escalatory predator–prey coevolution (West and Cohen 1996; Van Damme and Pickford 2003). Occasionally, the resulting species of these radiations are themselves later dispersed into other lake systems, providing the beginnings for more widespread spatial diversification of the original clade (Van Damme and Pickford 1999; Anderson et al. 2010).

(4) **The tempo of evolutionary innovation related to trophic interactions in lakes is probably modulated by the history of geochronologically long-lived lakes**. If long-lived lakes can serve as incubators for diversification and evolution of key innovations and interactions in aquatic organisms, then it is likely that during times of such lake abundance, the most favorable opportunity exists for large scale trophic "revolutions" within lacustrine biotas. The mid-Mesozoic breakup of Pangaea probably represented the peak period of long-lived lake formation. These lakes were coupled with an ever increasing provinciality as they were progressively rafted on different continental land masses around the planet (Cohen 2003).

11.4 The Lacustrine World Prior to the Mesozoic Revolution

In this section we provide a brief review of the basic features of lacustrine communities that immediately preceded those of the Mesozoic world. Evidence of Proterozoic lacustrine biotas is scarce, to say the least, essentially being restricted to stromatolites most likely formed by cyanobacteria (e.g. Hoffmann et al. 1980) and leiosphaeridian acritarchs that may have been adapted to freshwater, although this is a contentious issue (Martín-Closas 2003). There is a paucity of evidence for body-fossils in Cambrian through mid-Silurian continental aquatic habitats (Labandeira 2005a). Tasmanitids (green algae) were abundant during the early Paleozoic, but most likely inhabited brackish rather than fresh water (Martín-Closas 2003). The Cambrian-Ordovician evidence for the incipient colonization of land originates from trace fossils of arthropods that were able to foray into intertidal areas, coastal dunes and ponds (see Chap. 5), and stromatolites that were similar in structure to, but commonly more diminutive than those of the Precambrian (Ponomarenko 2009). In addition, the occurrence of a diverse cryptospore assemblage in Lower to Middle Ordovician deposits represents the earliest evidence of land plants, suggesting an early origin of embryophytes (Rubinstein et al. 2010). Chlorophytes were represented mainly by the Chlorococcales, which became dominant in lacustrine plankton by the Ordovician (Martín-Closas 2003), and the closely related Charophytes that were present in freshwater bodies at by the Late Silurian, if not earlier (Feist et al. 2005). The presence of liverwort and embryophyte-grade spores toward the end of this interval, and continuing into the Early Devonian, signals the establishment of an incipient subaerial plant cover, probably adjacent to bodies of brackish and freshwater inland and along coastlines (Strother 2000). These developments, in conjunction with the presence of lacustrine (and fluvial) sediments, particularly during the Late Ordovician and Silurian, indicate the emergence of a depauperate lacustrine biota consisting of transient and permanent microorganisms, plants, fungi, and invertebrate animals. The fossil history of lacustrine zooplankton is notably poor. However, molecular clocks may help to provide some constraints. For example, cladoceran crustaceans are thought to have originated by the Devonian (Sacherová and Hebert 2003). The Silurian-Devonian lacustrine trace-fossil record is restricted to lake-margin settings, and is dominated by arthropod trackways (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a; see Chap. 6). The restriction of biogenic structures to lake margins and the apparent absence of fully lacustrine ichnofaunas are consistent with extremely inefficient nutrient delivery in the absence of an extensive upland plant cover (Cohen 2003). These lakes may have been ultraoligotrophic and limited in phosphorous (Cohen 2003), precluding the establishment of a lacustrine benthos.

With few exceptions (Grenier 1974; Clarkson et al. 1993; Rolfe et al. 1993; Jeram and Selden 1993; Shear 1993), the Lower Carboniferous (Mississippian) lacks a significant record of well-documented lake deposits and associated biotas. During the Late Carboniferous (Pennsylvanian), two major types of ecosystems appeared that were displaced by differing environmental conditions. The Wet Biome emerged during the earlier Pennsylvanian and included a wide variety of wetlands, notably coal-swamp communities that consisted of water-tolerant lycopods, sphenopsids, medullosan seedferns, and arborescent marattialean ferns, occupying much of humid equatorial Euramerica (Gastaldo et al. 1996). By contrast, evidence for a Dry Biome appears toward the latter half of the Pennsylvanian, and included communities dominated by a desiccation-tolerant biota, such as cordaites, noeggeranthialeans, conifers, gigantopterids, peltasperms, and probably cycads that occupied more continental, extra-tropical environments (Opluštil et al. 2013). Regarding zooplankton, copepods were already present by the Mississippian in glacial lakes of

Gondwana (Selden et al 2010). During the Permian, the tropical to paratropical Wet Biome diminished significantly, at least in North America and Europe, although it survived largely intact in China (D'Rozario et al. 2011). By contrast, the Dry Biome, which first appeared during the latter half of the Pennsylvanian (Opluštil et al. 2013), temporally overlapped with the Wet Biome, and became prominent in more inland, drier basins of the Permian as it assumed a distinctive biotal character in many habitats. Aquatic herbivory was still absent, in contrast to a pulse of significant herbivory that had evolved on land by the Late Pennsylvanian (Labandeira 2006). In addition to ichnofaunas in lake-margin deposits, Mississippian and Pennsylvanian trace fossils also are present in fully subaqueous lacustrine deposits, indicating a significant environmental expansion of the benthic fauna (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a) (see Chap. 6). These lacustrine deposits were colonized by a moderately diverse, mobile, detritus-feeding epifauna. This expansion was probably linked to the rapid diversification, and increase in abundance of land plants, attributable to vegetational changes that introduced abundant organic detritus into previously nutrient-poor, lacustrine habitats (Maples and Archer 1989). Also, ichnologic information suggests a major diversification event during the Mississippian and Pennsylvanian, which parallels the diversification of freshwater organisms, such as arthropods, annelids, fish, and mollusks (Maples and Archer 1989; Buatois et al. 1998a). The ichnologic evidence of the Dry Biome during the subsequent Permian consists of a high abundance and moderate diversity of arthropod trackways emplaced in subaerially exposed sediment of playa-lake systems (see Chap. 6). By the Permian, the presence of meniscate trace fossils (e.g. *Scoyenia*) records the establishment of a mobile, shallow- to mid-tier, infauna in firm, desiccated substrates. However, these structures still were relatively rare and for the most part have been recorded in overbank environments rather than in lake-margin settings that are overwhelmingly dominated by arthropod and tetrapod trackways.

11.5 The Mesozoic Lacustrine Revolution

The Mesozoic trace-fossil record of lacustrine successions is uneven in time and space. The Lower Triassic ichnologic record of lake-margin environments is remarkably poor, and we are not aware of well-documented, fully lacustrine, Early Triassic ichnofaunas. In contrast, Middle to Late Triassic lacustrine ichnofaunas have been documented in great detail. The Jurassic ichnologic record is uneven, with a number of detailed studies documenting both Early and Late Jurassic ichnofaunas, but less information is available for the Middle Jurassic. The Early Cretaceous record is relatively good, but the record of Late Cretaceous fully lacustrine ichnofaunas is particularly poor.

Unsurprisingly, body fossils of the MLR are unevenly distributed as well. Triassic paleontologic information is essentially based on Eurasian localities and, to a lesser extent, eastern North America and South Africa. The Jurassic body-fossil record, particularly for aquatic insects, is still significantly centered in Eurasia, but includes a few localities in western North America as well. In contrast, the Early Cretaceous tends to show a more widespread distribution of lacustrine fossiliferous localities, but still is heavily represented by Eurasian lake deposits, most likely resulting from extensional tectonics during the breakup of Gondwana. However, information from the Late Cretaceous is patchy.

11.5.1 Early Triassic Denouement

After the ecologic crisis at the Permian–Triassic boundary, the short-lived, five million-year-long Early Triassic represents a period that ranges from biotal stasis to subtle increases in the diversity of aquatic and terrestrial communities (Looy et al. 1999). The ichnology of Lower Triassic lake-margin deposits has been documented in a few places, namely Germany (Knaust and Hauschke 2004, 2005) and the western United States (Lovelace and Lovelace 2012). A moderate diversity of invertebrate trace fossils has been recorded in marginal facies of an underfilled playa-lake system in Germany (Knaust and Hauschke 2005). The playa-lake ichnofauna contains arthropod trackways and trails (*Diplichnites*, *Stiallia*, *Diplopodichnus*), arthropod bilobate structures (*Cruziana*, *Rusophycus*), vertical burrows (*Skolithos*), bivalve burrows (*Lockeia*), branching burrow systems (*Phycodes*), and the horizontal J-shaped ichnogenus *Fuersichnus*. Pseudofossils, such as *Aristophycus*, are present in the same deposits (Knaust and Hauschke 2004). Body fossils have been recovered from these deposits, including conchostracans, notostracans, and xiphosurids, as well as indeterminate fish remains (Knaust and Hauschke 2005). The arthropod trackway *Diplichnites* and the bivalve dwelling/resting structure *Lockeia* also occur in Lower Triassic shallow-lacustrine deposits of the western United States (Lovelace and Lovelace 2012).

In contrast to younger lake-margin ichnofaunas, meniscate, backfilled trace fossils are absent in these Lower Triassic examples, and arthropod trackways seem to be relatively common. In this respect, Lower Triassic lake-margin ichnofaunas apparently are more similar to those from the Permian (see Chap. 6) than to the archetypal Mesozoic suites, revealing the persistence of Paleozoic types of animal–substrate interactions. Also, as is commonly the case for Paleozoic lacustrine ichnofaunas, shallow tiers were dominant and penetrative structures, such as those responsible for ichnofabric formation, were absent (Knaust and Hauschke 2005).

The Early Triassic continental body-fossil record is sparse as well (Shcherbakov 2008a). Freshwater insects originate mostly from Eurasian localities and generally consist of mayfly wings (Sinitshenkova 2013), archaeorthopteran and related orthopteroid taxa (Shcherbakov 2008b), cockroaches (Żyla et al. 2013), a few basal hemipteran lineages (Shcherbakov 2008a), and isolated elytra of schizophorid and permosynid beetles and related lineages (Ponomarenko 2004, 2008). Many of these fossil taxa preferentially are represented by immatures, especially naiads, that when compared to conspecific adults, occur at frequencies greater than is typical of the Permian (Shcherbakov 2008b). As with Early Triassic plants (Looy et al. 2001), contemporaneous insect faunas are characterized by four major changes when compared to their Late Permian precursors (Shcherbakov 2008b). These shifts are: (1) the evolution of new, Early Triassic dominant groups at the expense of earlier Late Permian dominants; (2) movement into the high-latitude Triassic by groups that formerly occurred at Permian low latitudes; (3) preferential survival of small-sized, generalist feeding taxa; and (4) emergence of lineages that were aquatic or otherwise tied to water bodies such as lakes. Although these changes promoted diversity, it was not until the Anisian stage of the early Middle Triassic, 5–11 m.yr. after the end-Permian crisis, when insect taxa, including aquatic forms, and their interactions with plants approached the diversity that had existed during the Late Permian (Gall 1996; Labandeira 2005b).

Another important component of the Triassic benthos was charophytes, which are particularly well known in lacustrine carbonates and marls (Martín-Closas 2003). *Isoetes*-related, nonflowering vascular plants were present in the littoral zone (Cohen 2003; Moisan et al., 2012b). As in the Paleozoic, lacustrine phytoplankton was still dominated by Chlorococcales, but an increase in diversity is apparent (Brenner and Foster 1994; Martín-Closas 2003).

11.5.2 Rediversification During the Middle to Late Triassic

Ichnofaunas have been documented in detail in Middle to Upper Triassic lake-margin deposits (including those of playa lakes) from the eastern (Metz 1995, 1996, 2000; Szajna and Hartline 2003) and western (Gillette et al. 2003; Lucas et al. 2010) United States, Argentina (Melchor et al. 2003, 2006; Melchor 2004; Genise et al. 2009; Marsicano et al. 2010), Greenland (Bromley and Asgaard 1979), England (Porter and Gallois 2008), Germany (Schlirf et al. 2001), Morocco (Hminna et al. 2015), and China (Shi et al. 2007; Li et al. 2014). These lake-margin deposits commonly contain a relatively wide variety of vertebrate and invertebrate trace fossils.

Vertebrate ichnofaunas in Middle to Upper Triassic lake-margin deposits typically are dominated by tetrapod trackways (e.g. *Brachychirotherium*, *Brasilichnium*, *Dicynodontipus*, *Characichnos*, *Evazoum*, *Grallator*, *Gwyneddichnium*, *Rhynchosauroides*, *Tetrasauropus*) and, more rarely, lungfish burrows (*Redondarefugium*) (Melchor et al. 2006; Lucas et al. 2010). Typical invertebrate trace fossils in lake-margin deposits are shallow-tier, ornamented, meniscate, unbranched (*Scoyenia*), and branched (*Spongeliomorpha*) structures, as well as meniscate structures lacking bioglyphs (*Taenidium*), arthropod bilobate structures (*Cruziana*, *Rusophycus*), and simple horizontal (*Palaeophycus*, *Planolites*) and vertical (*Skolithos*) burrows (Bromley and Asgaard 1979; Metz 1995, 1996; Schlirf et al. 2001; Gillette et al. 2003; Melchor et al. 2003, 2006; Melchor 2004; Shi et al. 2007; Porter and Gallois 2008; Lucas et al. 2010; Li et al. 2014; Hminna et al. 2015). In some cases, great densities of the bivalve burrow *Lockeia* (Lucas et al. 2010) and the ichnogenus *Fuersichnus* (Bromley and Asgaard 1979) have been documented, typically forming monospecific trace-fossil suites. Arthropod trackways, although extremely common in Paleozoic lake-margin settings (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a; see Chap. 6), and are quite rare in Middle to Upper Triassic deposits that were formed in similar environments, typically represented as isolated occurrences (Melchor 2004; Melchor et al. 2006). Horizontal, nonspecialized grazing trails, such as *Helminthopsis* and *Cochlichnus*, may be present (Melchor 2004; Shi et al. 2007; Li et al. 2014; Hminna et al. 2015), but they are never dominant and tend to reflect emplacement in substrates that did not experience periodic desiccation. Three-dimensional branching burrow systems (*Treptichnus*) may be present, but are uncommon (Porter and Gallois 2008). These structures were typically emplaced close to the sediment surface, the only exception being those produced by crayfish, referred to the ichnogenus *Camborygma*, which display variations in architecture as a response to the depth of the water table. Complex architectures with many branches and chambers were constructed by primary burrowers in areas of high water table, whereas deep and simple burrows are dominant in areas of low and/or highly fluctuating water table (Hobbs 1981; Hasiotis and Mitchell 1993).

Middle to Late Triassic, fully lacustrine ichnofaunas are known from the eastern United States (Metz 1995, 1996, 2000), Argentina (Melchor et al. 2003, Melchor 2004), Kyrgyzstan (Voigt and Hoppe 2010), England (Porter and Gallois 2008), and Greenland (Bromley and Asgaard 1979). Ichnofaunas in low-energy deposits are essentially represented by invertebrate trace fossils, with a dominance of very shallow-tier, simple, horizontal trails of deposit and detritus feeders (e.g. *Helminthopsis*, *Helminthoidichnites*, *Cochlichnus*, *Mermia*) and of shallow-tier, three-dimensional, branching burrow systems (*Treptichnus*) (e.g. Metz 1995, 1996, 2000; Melchor et al. 2003; Melchor 2004; Porter and Gallois 2008). Vertebrates are represented by the fish trail *Undichna* (Melchor 2004).

One of the first lacustrine ichnofaunas studied in detail is that of the Fleming Fjord Formation of Greenland (Bromley and Asgaard 1979) (Fig. 11.1a–f). Integration of ichnologic and sedimentologic information indicates that three main trace-fossil assemblages are present in these ephemeral lacustrine deposits (Bromley and Asgaard 1979, 1991; Dam and Stemmerik 1994; Bromley 1996). *Skolithos*, *Arenicolites,* and *Polykladichnus* occur in tempestites, whereas *Fuersichnus* (Fig. 11.1a–b) and *Lockeia* (Fig. 11.1c) are present in fair-weather deposits. *Scoyenia* (Fig. 11.1d–f) and *Skolithos* (Fig. 11.1d–f) occur in marginal-lacustrine deposits.

Upper Triassic ichnofaunas preserved in deposits of the Newark Supergroup, which record sedimentation in lakes within an extensive rift system in eastern North America, formed during the initial breakup of Pangaea (Olsen 1989; Schlische 2003). These ichnofauna have been analyzed in detail (e.g. Olsen and Flynn 1989; Metz 1995, 1996, 2000) (Fig. 11.2a–g). One of these units, the Lockatong Formation, records sedimentation in a balanced-fill lake characterized by recurrent base-level fluctuations. As a result, successions show well-defined, vertically stacked, transgressive–regressive cycles (Olsen 1980). The invertebrate ichnofauna consists of a combination of feeding (*Planolites montanus*, *Scoyenia gracilis, Treptichnus pollardi*), dwelling (*Spongeliomorpha milfordensis*), grazing (*Cochlichnus anguineus*), resting (*Lockeia siliquaria*), and locomotion (an undetermined arthropod trackway)

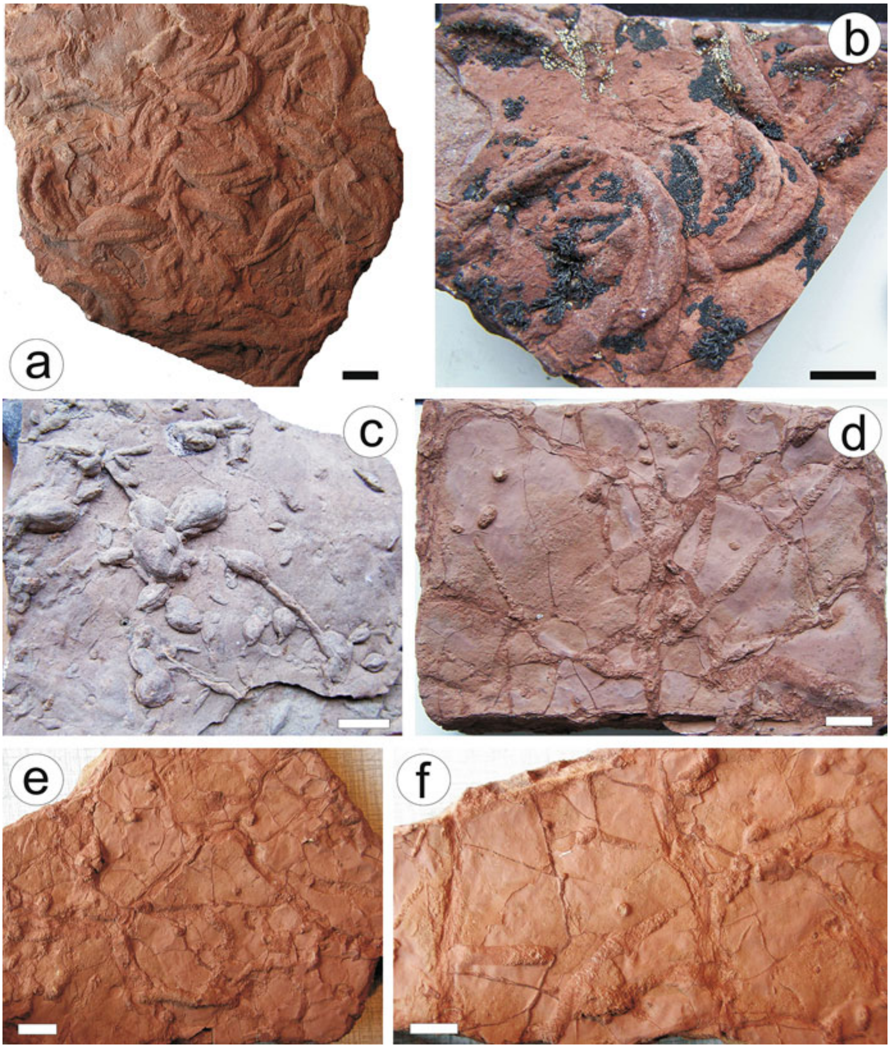


Fig. 11.1 Characteristic trace fossils from Upper Triassic ephemeral lacustrine deposits of the Flemming Fjord Formation of Greenland. (**a**) General view of a surface displaying a high density of *Fuersichnus communis*; (**b**) Close-up of *Fuersichnus communis* showing its characteristic banana shape; (**c**) The almond-shape trace fossil *Lockeia amygdaloides*. The associated horizontal burrows may be referred to the ichnogenus *Ptychoplasma*; (**d**) General view of a surface showing several specimens of the meniscate ichnotaxon *Scoyenia gracilis*. Note the presence of circular cross-section of vertical *Skolithos* isp.; (**e**) *Scoyenia gracilis* with less developed meniscate infill and bedding-plane expression of *Skolithos* isp.; (**f**) Close-up of *Scoyenia gracilis* and *Skolithos* isp. All scale bars are 1 cm long

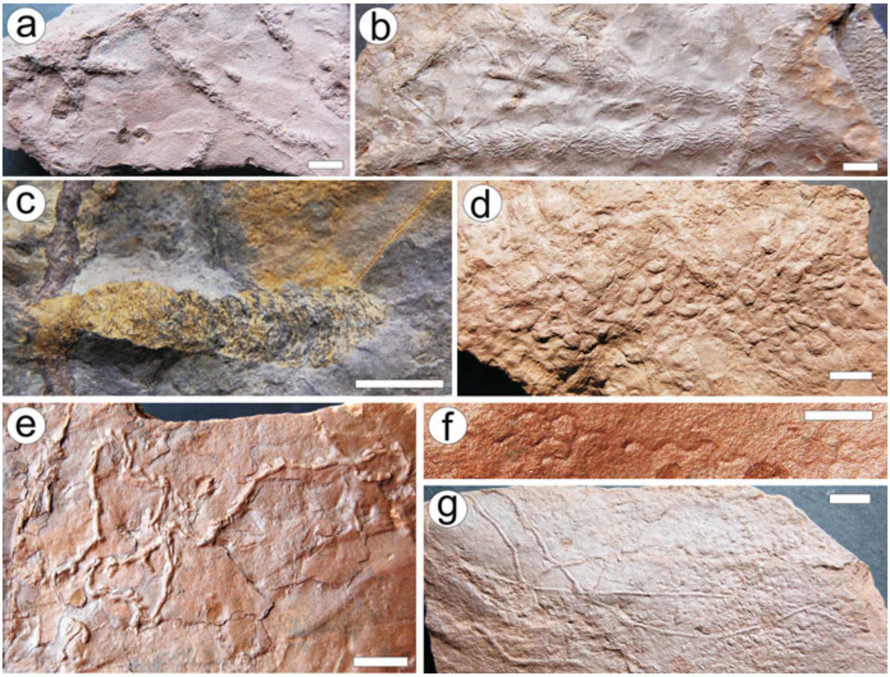


Fig. 11.2 Characteristic trace fossils from Upper Triassic lake-margin deposits of the Newark Supergroup of eastern United States. (**a**) General view of a surface with *Scoyenia gracilis*, Passaic Formation; (**b**) Close-up showing bioglyphs in *Scoyenia gracilis*, Passaic Formation; (**c**) Close-up showing meniscate infill in *Scoyenia gracilis*, Lockatong Formation; (**d**) General view of a surface with high density of *Lockeia amygdaloides*, Passaic Formation; (**e**) *Treptichnus bifurcus*, Passaic Formation; (**f**) *Cochlichnus anguineus*, Passaic Formation; (**g**) *Helminthoidichnites tenuis*, Passaic Formation. All scale bars are 1 cm long. Photographs courtesy of Robert Metz

structures (Metz 1995). The reptile trackway *Gwyneddichnium* is present as well (Olsen and Flynn 1989). Trace fossils are almost invariably restricted to lake-margin deposits. Whereas some of these structures most likely were emplaced in wet substrates (e.g. *Treptichnus pollardi*, *Lockeia siliquaria*), other ichnotaxa, such as *Scoyenia gracilis* and *Spongeliomorpha milfordensis*, support their formation in firm substrates resulting from desiccation (Metz 1995). Under extremely dry conditions, all other ichnotaxa disappear, and only *Spongeliomorpha* and *Scoyenia* are present. Collectively, the Lockatong ichnofauna represents the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies (Metz 1995). A slightly more complicated picture is revealed by the Passaic Formation. Overall, this unit displays similar ichnologic characteristics to the Lockatong Formation, namely the widespread presence of the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies in lake-margin deposits, and the presence of *Spongeliomorpha* and *Scoyenia* as the only ichnotaxa present in sediments deposited under extremely arid conditions (Metz 1996). However, some elements of the *Mermia* Ichnofacies are present in this unit as well, illustrating transitions from subaqueous portions during the initial phase of lake regression (Metz 1996).

Another extensively studied continental unit, containing well-exposed lacustrine intervals and represented by abundant trace fossils, is the Middle to Upper Triassic Agua de la Peña Group of the Ischigualasto–Villa Unión Basin of western Argentina (Melchor et al. 2003; Melchor 2001, 2004, 2007). As in the case of the Newark Supergroup, this rift basin developed during the breakup of Pangea (Uliana and Biddle 1988; Milana and Alcober 1994). In particular, the most abundant and diverse ichnofaunas occur in the Los Rastros Formation, which represents sedimentation in a shallow, overfilled lake characterized by successive prograding delta deposits (Melchor 2007). Deposits are typically arranged in coarsening-upward parasequences encompassing prodelta, delta-front, and delta-plain facies. The highest ichnodiversity occurs in the distal delta-front deposits, which are dominated by grazing trails (*Helminthoidichnites tenuis*, *Gordia marina*, *Archaeonassa fossulata*, *Cochlichnus anguineus*) and fish trails (*Undichna britannica*, *U. bina*, *U.* cf. *insolentia*). Also present are feeding (*Treptichnus pollardi*), dwelling (*Palaeophycus tubularis*), locomotion (*Bifurculapes* isp., *Cruziana problematica*, *Diplopodichnus biformis*, *Didymaulichnus lyelli*, *Diplichnites* isp., *Protichnites* isp.) and resting (*Rusophycus stromnessi*, *Avolatichnium* isp.) structures (Melchor 2001). Middle delta-front deposits display a similar ichnologic composition to distal delta-front deposits, being dominated by grazing trails (*Helminthoidichnites tenuis*, *Helminthopsis abeli*, *Gordia indianaensis*, *Archaeonassa fossulata*, *Cochlichnus anguineus*), with fish trails (*Undichna britannica*) and dwelling structures (*Palaeophycus tubularis*) also present (Melchor et al. 2003). Upper delta-front to lower delta-plain deposits reflect a decrease in ichnodiversity that parallels a shallowing of the lake, with only *Palaeophycus tubularis*, *Skolithos* isp., and *Cochlichnus anguineus* recorded. Upper delta-plain deposits contain dwelling trace fossils, some of which contain striations (e.g. *Palaeophycus striatus*) and vertebrate trackways (*Rhynchosauroides* isp.). Collectively, the Los Rastros ichnofauna reflects the vertical transition from the *Mermia* to the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies as a result of shallowing caused by deltaic progradation.

The Middle to Upper Triassic Madygen Formation of Kyrgyzstan contains abundant trace fossils formed in an overfilled lake (Voigt and Hoppe 2010; Voigt et al. 2016). Lake-margin deposits are characterized by pervasive root trace fossils (Voigt et al. 2016) (Fig. 11.3a). The most abundant trace fossils in this unit occur in permanent subaqueous deposits, and consist of horizontal networks of multiple-branched burrows (Voigt and Hoppe 2010) (Fig. 11.3b–e). These structures have been compared with *Thalassinoides* by Voigt and Hoppe (2010), but were placed in the ichnogenus *Virgaichnus* by Knaust (2010). Further work is required to unravel the ichnotaxonomic affinity of these burrows. Regardless of these ichnotaxonomic complexities, these trace fossils represent feeding structures of worm-like deposit feeders. These burrows occur at their highest densities in deposits formed around the sublittoral–profundal boundary, probably coincident with the paleo-thermocline and chemocline (Voigt et al. 2016). It has been speculated that the producers of these burrows may have been able to tolerate dysoxic conditions, allowing them to colonize deeper parts of the lake which may have acted as a refugium from predators (Voigt et al. 2016). Other structures documented in these deposits are the grazing trail

Helminthoidichnites tenuis (Fig. 11.3f), unidentified sand-filled radiating burrow systems, and ribbon-like burrows with transverse segmentation, which have been interpreted as branchiopod locomotion traces (Voigt and Hoppe 2010; Voigt et al. 2016).

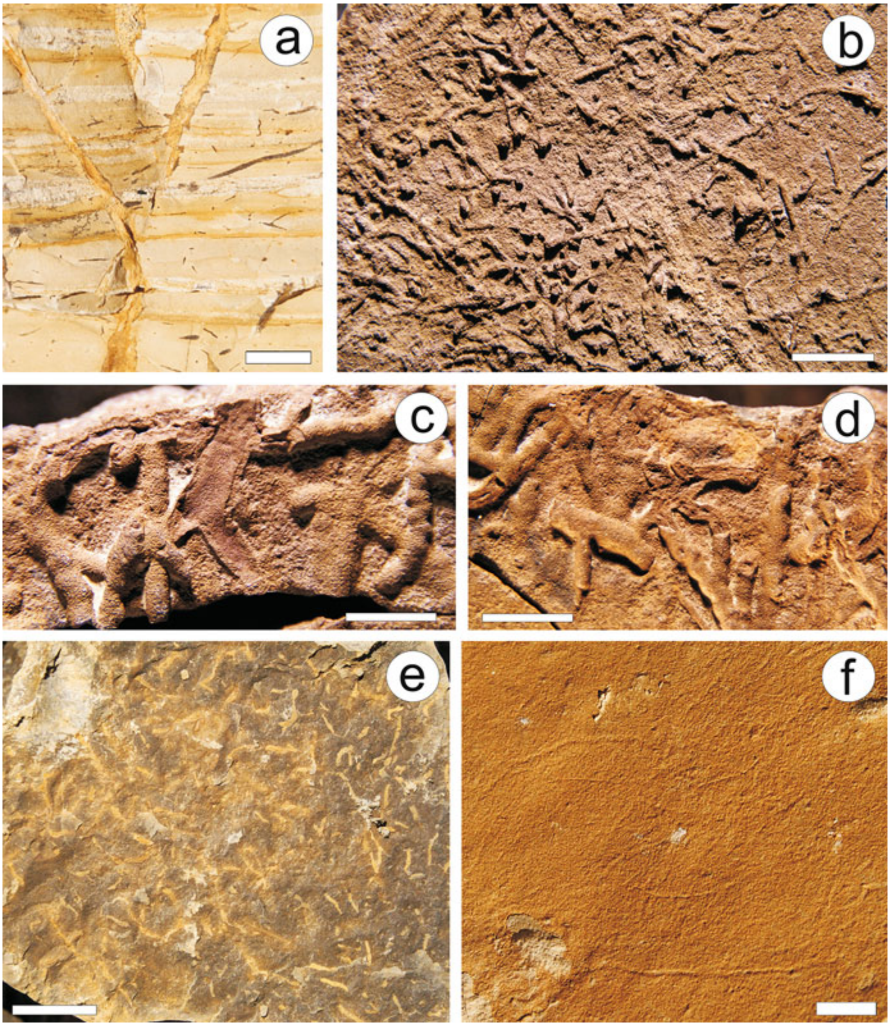


Fig. 11.3 Characteristic trace fossils from Middle to Upper Triassic lacustrine deposits of the Madygen Formation of Kyrgyzstan. (**a**) Root trace fossils in lake-margin deposits; (**b**) General view of a sandstone surface with horizontal networks of multiple-branched burrows in permanent subaqueous lacustrine deposits; (**c**) and (**d**) Close-up of networks showing branching patterns; (**e**) Preservational variation of horizontal networks as cleavage relief in mudstone; (**f**) *Helminthoidichnites tenuis* in lacustrine deltaic deposits. All scale bars are 1 cm long, with the exception of **c** and **d**, which are 0.5 cm long

Globally, Middle to Late Triassic ichnofaunas from lake-margin deposits are of modern aspect and record the widespread establishment of the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies. In addition, the presence of trace-fossil suites dominated by the crayfish burrow *Camborygma* records the appearance of the homonymous ichnofacies (see Chap. 13). Middle to Late Triassic, fully lacustrine ichnofaunas resemble trace-fossil assemblages described from similar, late Paleozoic settings (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a; see Chap. 6). However, more penetrative trace fossils occur, as revealed by the presence of networks of irregularly branched burrows in the Madygen deposits (Voigt and Hoppe 2010). In addition, higher-energy sandy, storm, and mouth-bar deposits tend to contain relatively deep vertical burrows, such as *Skolithos*, *Arenicolites,* and *Polykladichnus* (Bromley and Asgaard 1979; Mángano et al. 1994; Bromley 1996) (Fig. 11.4), representing freshwater equivalents of the *Skolithos* Ichnofacies (Buatois and Mángano 2004, 2009).

In short, ichnologic data seem to support Sinitshenkova's (2002) view that the Triassic is a time of significant evolutionary innovation in lacustrine communities. This is particularly evident in lake-margin settings which exhibit trace-fossil assemblages that would dominate these environments for the rest of the Phanerozoic. The picture in fully lacustrine settings is slightly different because central lake deposits display some ichnofaunas reminiscent of the late Paleozoic, with the addition of more penetrative burrows typical of the rest of the Mesozoic and Cenozoic.

During the late Middle to Late Triassic there was a major, qualitative increase in the abundance of lacustrine insect taxa. Fossil assemblages of this age contain a prevalence of immature over adult aquatic insects, such that in many deposits immature stages (naiads and larvae) outnumber adult specimens (Sinitshenkova 2002)—a situation that reverses that of the Permian. For this, and other reasons, Sinitshenkova (2002) mentions that "…the Triassic [is] a starting point of a new, Mesozoic evolutionary stage of lacustrine biocoenoses." This novelty may be

Fig. 11.4 *Arenicolites* isp. in deltaic mouth bar deposits of the Upper Triassic Tanzhuang Formation of central China. Scale bar is 1 cm long

attributable to greater stability of the hydrological and water-chemistry conditions in the physical environment of Eurasian, Late Triassic lakes (Kalugina 1980). Also, part of the diversification event may be attributed to increased provinciality from the breakup of Pangaea or to sizable increases in number and persistence of long-lived lakes associated with the breakup (Cohen 2003).

Late Triassic aquatic taxa included new lineages representing a diversity of functional feeding groups. For crustaceans, the major lineages were detritivorous ostracods, conchostracans, notostracans and the bizarre central Asian lineage, Kazakharthra. Dasyleptid bristletails were holdovers from the Permian, and persisted until the Late Triassic along bodies of water. Mayflies diversified, with benthic naiads assuming nektonic, epifaunal and infaunal filter-feeding strategies; some benthic forms constructed U-shaped burrows, representing potential producers of the biogenic structures typically found in lacustrine deposits of this age (e.g. Bromley and Asgaard 1979; Mángano et al. 1994) (Fig. 11.4). Odonatans are represented by fewer fossil occurrences of naiads than adults, and all of the mostly benthic naiads possessed a prominent, raptorial labial mask. The Plecoptera were represented by obligately aquatic, benthic naiads, as were their Permian counterparts, and included the extinct benthic–lentic taxa of the Euxenoperlidae, *Mesoleuctra* and *Siberioperla* (Sinitshenkova 2002). Grylloblattids (rock crawlers), a surviving lineage from the Permian, may have inhabited lakeshores or even shallow-aquatic habitats.

Most of the trophically dominant predators were streamlined, agile nectic heteropteran bugs and adephagan beetles. A few lineages of dominantly predatory, aquatic heteropteran bugs appeared during or just before the Late Triassic, consisting of the dominant naucoroid lineages of the extinct Triassocoridae, and the extant Notonectidae (backswimmers) and Belostomatidae (giant water bugs) (Popov 1980). Aquatic adephagan lineages, such as the extinct Schizophoridae, Ademosynidae, Colymbothetidae, and the extant Dytiscidae (predaceous diving beetles) had similar dietary habits. The extant algivorous Haliplidae (crawling water beetles) and its extinct Triassic relative, the Triaplidae, occurred on bottom substrates and in aquatic plant entanglements (Fraser et al. 1996). Both adults and larvae of the nectic Coptoclavidae were major predators, and had agile, active life habits based on legs equipped for rapid movement and raptorial mouthparts, likely feeding on small vertebrates and large insects. Megalopteran larvae are very similar to present-day alderflies (Marchal-Papier 1998). A few taxa of Mecoptera (scorpionflies) have been encountered, such as liassophilids that resemble modern aquatic Nannochoristidae. The earliest, definitive, aquatic Trichoptera (caddisflies) are from the Late Triassic, and include adults of the basal lineages Prorhyacophilidae and Necrotaulidae, but also immatures that likely were predatory (Sinitshenkova 2002).

These lacustrine biotas still lacked a significant herbivore component, which emerged later in the Mesozoic. Supporting this observation is the absence of submerged or emergent aquatic macrophytes, which did not occur in significant abundance until the Early Cretaceous. There is limited evidence, however, for a flora fringing lakes and pools during the earlier Mesozoic, as indicated by the presence of aquatic quillworts such as *Isoetes*, and *Azolla*-related ferns (Retallack 1997; Moisan et al. 2012a, 2012b; Sun et al. 2014). In any case, the contribution was overwhelmingly dead plant matter for detritivores rather than live plant tissues. For herbivores as in the Early Triassic, charophytes continued to be the dominant macrophytes and Chlorococcales the dominant phytoplankton (Martín-Closas 2003).

Six major community types have been recognized in Triassic Eurasian freshwater deposits (Sinitshenkova 2002). These community types are characterized by distinctive groupings of major taxa that occur in particular types of lakes and habitats. Although Sinitshenkova's (2002) general trophic analysis of lake ecosystems demonstrated significant partitioning of available lotic and lentic resources, evidently the herbivore guild was largely absent.

The most diverse Triassic insect assemblage is in an upper-Middle to lower-Upper Triassic lacustrine deposit near the village of Madygen, in Kyrgyzstan, central Asia, whose ichnofauna has been summarized above. In particular, one locality, Dzhailoucho, and nearby outcrops have provided some of the best insights into later Triassic aquatic and terrestrial life, including a diverse assemblage of 20 orders and ca. 106 family-ranked lineages of insects, such as the earliest definitive occurrences of Diptera (true flies) and Hymenoptera (sawflies, wasps, ants, and bees) (Shcherbakov 2008c). The Madygen Biota consists of typical, early Mesozoic plant groups, including cryptogams, sphenopsids, lycopsids, filicalean ferns, broadleaved conifers, diverse peltasperms, corystosperms, a variety of ginkgophytes and rare bennettitaleans (Dobruskina 1995). Aquatic invertebrates include several microconchids, bivalves, gastropods, bryozoans, and a spectrum of crustaceans consisting of phyllopods, ostracods, conchostracans, kazakharthrans, and malacostracan decapods (Voigt et al. 2006). The vertebrate fauna is rather diverse, and is comprised of a broad variety of fishes, such as lungfish, coelacanths, hybodontid, and xenacanthid sharks, and ray-finned fish, including palaeoniscids, evenkiids, perleidids, and a saurichthyid (Sytchevskaya 1999; Kogan et al. 2009; Fischer et al. 2011). The fauna also includes six genera of lake-margin tetrapods, notably an early urodelan, basal reptiliomorph, primitive cynodont, and three small diaspids including tree-climbing, gliding, and insectivorous reptiles (Voigt et al. 2006; Schoch et al. 2010; Alifanov and Kurochkin 2011). The lacustrine aquatic food web consisted of a variety of lakeside plants, numerous insects and other aquatic invertebrates, fish and occasional tetrapods (Shcherbakov 2008c). The aquatic portion of the biota included eight orders of insects and ca. 25 families of primarily aquatic or amphibiotic insects, of which a fifth of the lineages are extant. The Ephemeroptera included only the single, extant family, Siphlonuridae (small minnow mayflies); by contrast, ten families of Odonata were present, none of which are extant. Extinct Miomoptera constituted one family, and Plecoptera were represented by two extinct families. The Hemiptera included one family, the extant Ochteridae (velvet shore bugs). As for holometabolous insects, aquatic Coleoptera were represented by five, early to mid-Mesozoic, structurally streamlined families, but only one lineage, the Hydrophilidae (water scavenger beetles) are extant, likely appearing as large, black, and shining species. Similarly, the Trichoptera was represented by the basal and extant Philopotamidae (fingernet caddisflies). Likewise, the Diptera consisted of two new taxa, notably the diverse, extant Limoniidae (short-palped crane flies).

Neoichnologic data suggest that dipterans, in particular larval Limoniidae, produce zigzag burrows that in the fossil record may be referred to the ichnogenus *Treptichnus* (Muñiz-Guinea et al. 2014). This ichnogenus is quite common in Middle to Upper Triassic lacustrine deposits (Fig. 11.2e), which is consistent with paleoentomologic information on the earliest definitive occurrences of Diptera. However, *Treptichnus* is known in late Paleozoic lacustrine to fluvio-estuarine deposits as well (Buatois and Mángano 1993b, c; Buatois et al. 1998b). Interestingly, a molecular analysis placed the origin of crown group Diptera in the middle Permian (Bertone et al. 2008).

11.5.3 Continued Jurassic Diversification and Increased Infaunalization

Lower Jurassic, lake-margin ichnofaunas have been documented in both eastern (Gierlowski-Kordesch 1991; Metz 1992; Collette et al. 2011) and western (Lucas et al. 2006; Tanner and Lucas 2008) United States, whereas Upper Jurassic equivalents are widespread only in the latter (Hasiotis 2004; Foster and Lockley 2006; Hunt and Lucas 2006). Among invertebrate trace fossils, shallow-tier, meniscate, backfilled structures with striated walls (*Scoyenia*) or without bioglyphs (*Taenidium*) are typical, as are striated, branched burrows (*Spongeliomorpha*) (Gierlowski-Kordesch 1991; Hasiotis 2004). Simple horizontal (*Planolites*, *Palaeophycus*) and vertical (*Skolithos*) structures, together with crayfish burrows (*Camborygma*) and banana-shaped structures (*Fuersichnus*), also are common (Gierlowski-Kordesch 1991; Hasiotis 2004; Tanner and Lucas 2008). Grazing trails (*Helminthoidichnites*) and arthropod trackways (*Diplichnites*, *Kouphichnium*) are only abundant locally (Lucas et al. 2006). Borings in stromatolites have been mentioned, but it is uncertain if these were formed in lacustrine or marine coastal settings (Hasiotis 2004).

Although the earliest body-fossil record of dinosaurs is Late Triassic, dinosaur tracks are known at least since the Middle Triassic (Marsicano et al. 2007; see Chap. 10). However, it is by the Early Jurassic that dinosaur tracks (e.g. *Grallator*, *Eubrontes*) become the dominant vertebrate-generated structures in lake-margin deposits (Hunt and Lucas 2006). Dinosaur tracks also occur in Lower Jurassic deposits where the first megatracksites are recorded (Hamblin et al. 2006). These megatracksites include trampled surfaces, although these seem to occur in wet interdunes, rather than in lake margins (Seiler and Chan 2008). However, by the Late Jurassic spectacular megatracksites are known from lake-margin deposits of the Morrison Formation (Lockley et al. 1986; Jennings and Hasiotis 2006), among other sites. The Morrison tracksites are associated with intense bioturbation and the development of trampled surfaces (Lockley et al. 1986; Jennings and Hasiotis 2006). These Jurassic trampled surfaces are significant because, as demonstrated by studies in Quaternary and modern lake-margin deposits (e.g. Laporte and Behrensmeyer 1980; Ashley and Liutkus 2002), activities by large vertebrates play a major role in disturbing primary sedimentary fabric.

Fully lacustrine ichnofaunas have been documented in the Lower Jurassic of the eastern United States (Metz 1992) and China (Wu 1985; Buatois et al. 1995, 1996; Hu et al. 1998; Uchman et al. 2011), the Middle Jurassic of England (Whyte et al. 2007), and the Upper Jurassic of the western United States (Hasiotis 2004). These ichnofaunas show a combination of shallow-tier, simple trails and burrows (*Helminthopsis*, *Helminthoidichnites*, *Palaeophycus*, *Diplopodichnus*, *Paracanthorhaphe*) and deeper-tier, branching burrow systems (*Vagorichnus*) (Metz 1992; Buatois et al. 1996; Uchman et al. 2011). Vertical U-shaped burrows (*Arenicolites*) (Hasiotis 2004) and bivalve burrows (*Lockeia*) (e.g. Whyte et al. 2007) are present as well. As in the case of earlier assemblages, the fish trail *Undichna* is the typical vertebrate ichnotaxa in this setting (Whyte et al. 2007).

The Lower Jurassic Anyao Formation of central China is arguably the most studied deep-lacustrine succession of this age, providing valuable insight into the colonization of a fully lacustrine setting (Wu 1985; Buatois et al. 1995, 1996; Hu et al. 1998; Uchman et al. 2011). This formation represents deposition in a deep overfilled lake system developed in a pull-apart basin (Buatois et al. 2000b). The Anyao trace fossils are mostly present in thin-bedded turbidites which were formed in lobe-fringe areas of lacustrine turbidite systems. This ichnofauna is relatively diverse, encompassing both pre- (open burrows casted by the incoming turbidite sand) and post- (burrows penetrating from a colonization surface at the top of the turbidite sand) turbidite suites (Buatois et al. 1996) (Fig. 11.5a–i). The pre-event suite consists of *Helminthopsis abeli* (Fig. 11.5a), *Helminthoidichnites tenuis* (Fig. 11.5b), discrete specimens of *Tuberculichnus vagans* (Fig. 11.5c–d), *Monomorphichnus lineatus*, *Paracanthorhaphe togwunia* (Fig. 11.5e–f), and thin irregular trails. The post-event suite consists of *Vagorichnus anyao* (Fig. 11.5g–h), *Cochlichnus anguineus* (Fig. 11.5i) and *Helminthopsis hieroglyphica*. Specimens of *Gordia marina* and *Tuberculichnus vagans* intergrading with *V. anyao* also are part of this suite. The ichnofauna is dominated by feeding and grazing trace fossils produced by deposit feeders. From an evolutionary perspective, the Anyao ichnofauna is significant because it is dominated by infaunal burrows that reflect the activity of invertebrates that were able to penetrate into discrete sandy layers for subsequently expanding along sand–mud interfaces, a behavior unknown in older deposits in similar environmental settings. The producer of these burrows is uncertain, although it has been noted that in modern environments oligochaetes construct structures that radiate from a surface tube and branch horizontally within the sediment (Chamberlain 1975; Buatois et al. 1995). Amphipods and isopods may potentially construct similar structures, but the paucity of modern analogues precludes further evaluation (Buatois et al. 1995). In addition, this behavior shows the appearance of more organized branching patterns, such as *Paracanthorhaphe togwunia*, that reveal an increase in complexity with respect to Paleozoic lacustrine ichnofaunas.

Overall, the taxonomic composition of invertebrate ichnofaunas in lake-margin Jurassic deposits is quite similar to that of the Middle to Upper Triassic. No major evolutionary novelties or innovations are apparent in these settings from the perspective of invertebrate ichnnology. However, the appearance of megatracksites and trampled surfaces represents a major change with respect to older deposits, implying substantial sediment reworking and modification by dinosaurs. This was probably the first time in the history of the biosphere that lake-margin landscapes were significantly transformed at a large scale by biogenic activity.

In addition, trace-fossil information from fully lacustrine environments provides a different picture to that of older deposits. Ichnodiversity levels are similar

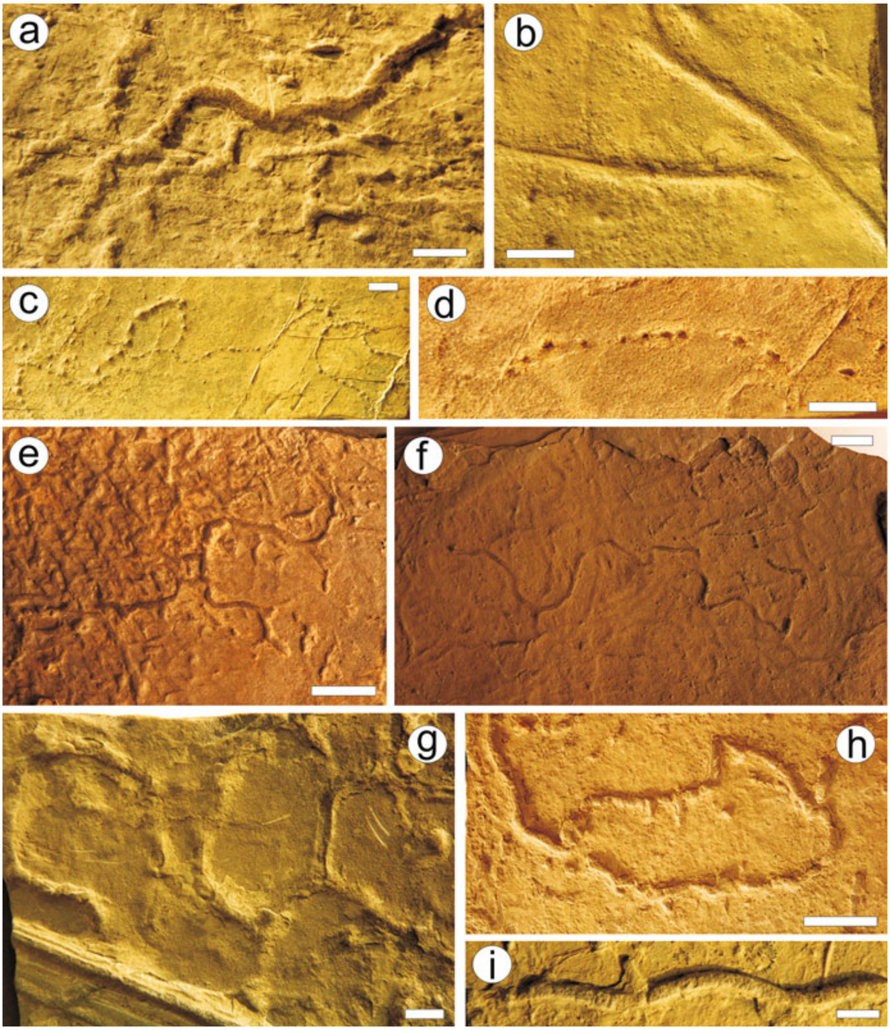


Fig. 11.5 Characteristic trace fossils preserved at the base of Lower Jurassic lacustrine turbidites of the Anyao Formation of central China. (**a**) *Helminthopsis abeli*; (**b**) *Helminthoidichnites tenuis*; (**c**) General view of *Tuberculichnus vagans* displaying a meandering pattern; (**d**) Close-up of *Tuberculichnus vagans*; (**e**) and (**f**) *Paracanthorhaphe togwunia*; (**g**) *Vagorichnus anyao* cross-cutting and inorganic sole mark; (**h**) Close-up of *Vagorichnus anyao*; (**i**) *Cochlichnus anguineus*. All scale bars are 1 cm long

to those of the Middle to Late Triassic, and even to those of the late Paleozoic, but the principal difference is the degree of infaunalization, as revealed by the widespread occupation of mid tiers in deep lacustrine sediments.

During the Early Jurassic there was further taxonomic, morphologic, and ecologic diversification of continental aquatic biotas. Much of the Jurassic zooplankton was represented by diverse cladoceran crustaceans, indicated by fossil occurrences (Zherikhin and Kalugina 1985), supported by molecular-clock data from phylogenetic analyses (Colbourne and Hebert 1996). One of the more distinctive differences from Triassic aquatic insect assemblages was the greater presence of immature stages (naiads, larvae) in Jurassic deposits, a consequence of a different preservational mode. The opposite situation of adult stages predominating over immature stages was much less common, and may have been attributable to poor preservation in habitats frequented by adults or the presence of adults in distant, more upland environments that have low preservation potential. Another distinction is the absence of virtually all Permian insect faunal elements and the first occurrences of many modern family-level lineages (Sinitshenkova 2002).

The dominant insect groups of Jurassic lotic and lentic ecosystems represent a spectrum of lineages that would occur in the same habitats today, although not necessarily with the same ecologic tolerances or proportional abundances as their present-day descendants. Ephemeropterans and odonatans were significantly more speciose than their Triassic equivalent taxa. Ephemeropterans experienced a major diversification, with the naiads of many groups, such as the Siphlonuridae and extinct Mesonetidae and Epeorominidae having laterally positioned abdominal gills and reaching considerably larger sizes than their Triassic confamilial antecedents. Currently, ephemeropterans occur in high numerical abundance at local scales, are present at significant diversities, and apparently were the major collector and filter-feeding functional feeding groups (Merritt and Cummins 1984) in many Jurassic localities. The Jurassic mayfly fauna is found in almost every aquatic environment, in streams ranging from cascade-like rhythral settings, to calm water sites on floodplains such as oxbow lakes and overbank ponds, to lowland playas, and highland graben-formed lakes. Like ephemeropterans, odonatans were diverse, best illustrated by several, large, dragonfly genera which co-occur in the Solnhofen Formation of southern Germany, including a relict lineage of late Paleozoic meganeurid forms. Jurassic odonatan naiads typically resemble modern damselfly naiads with a narrow body and three, flap-like, heavily sclerotized, and terminal abdominal structures, the cercus and paracerci. The formidable labial-masks of naiads indicate predation on other larger aquatic insects and small vertebrates, such as fish and tadpoles. In some lacustrine environments odonatan naiads likely were top predators in the absence of fish (Sinitshenkova 2002).

Plecopteran nymphs occur commonly in Lower Jurassic deposits and are represented by three life-habit groups that are different from their modern representatives taxa. The Mesoleuctridae possessed unusually long and slender legs, suggesting an unusual detritivorous feeding habit. By contrast, the Platyperlidae bore an opposite, flat habitus, with exceptionally squat, wide legs indicating a benthic insectivorous diet. The Siberioperlidae, judging from robust mouthparts unusual for the Plecoptera, were consumers of fibrous or otherwise indurated plant tissues (Sinitshenkova 2002). An unrelated group is the extinct Chresmodidae of the Archaeorthoptera. The family Chresmodidae includes large, water-strider-like insects presumably occurring on water surfaces. Chresmodids have had a checkered history of being taxonomically poorly resolved and having equally contentious dietary preferences. Some specimens display mouthparts designed for active predation but possess external, sawtooth ovipositors that functioned for insertion of eggs into substrates such as aquatic plant stems (Delclòs et al. 2008). Based on ovipositional lesions on preangiospermous Mesozoic plants associated with lake deposits, the most likely hosts for ovipositing chresmodids were lycopsids (Moisan et al. 2012b) and horsetails (Kräusel 1958), or less likely a seed plant such as a bennettitalean (Pott et al. 2008).

Jurassic lotic and lentic biotal assemblages commonly are dominated by aquatic heteropteran bugs or adephagan beetles, or both. Heteropteran aquatic bugs included the dominant nepomorph taxa of Corixidae (water boatman) and Nepidae (water scorpions), as well as giant water bugs, backswimmers, and the Mesoveliidae (mesoveliid water striders), distant relatives of modern Gerridae (water striders) that likely skimmed the water surface of lakes and streams. These taxa were predaceous, except for mostly algivorous corixids and shurabellids (Popov 1971). Based on mouthpart structure that employed a triturating device (Cobben 1978), these microvorous corixid and shurabellid microvores filter fed on unicellular or very small multicellular algae. Some heteropterans inhabited hypersaline playas and coastal brackish lagoons or estuaries (Santiago-Blay et al. 2001). Like heteropteran bugs, aquatic adephagan beetles were ecologically diverse and mostly predaceous, although some were scavengers and microvorous consumers of algae. There is no indication of macrovorous herbivorous forms.

During the Early Jurassic the dominant beetle clade is the Schizophoridae, but its diversity and abundance decreases towards the latest Jurassic (Ponomarenko 1995). During this time extinct aquatic lineages include large, predaceous Coptoclavidae with active, nektonic larvae, the Liadytidae, possessing benthic larvae, and the Parahygrobiidae, of unknown feeding habits. The extant, large Gyrinidae (whirligig beetles) appear in significant numbers in Jurassic lentic deposits, consisting of predaceous larvae and detritivorous adults. The Parahygrobiidae are known only from larvae of mid-Mesozoic lake deposits and are presumed predaceous. In contrast to the commonness of beetle taxa, alderfly and dobsonfly larvae of the Megaloptera are rare and confined to lotic habitats.

Other holometabolan taxa are the larvae of scorpionflies, caddisflies, and true flies which typically were rare at most sites. The extinct Liassophilidae belongs to a scorpionfly lineage that survived into the Early Jurassic, and whose modern close relatives are the primitive, aquatic Nannochoristidae (Novokshonov 1997). Caddisflies are represented primarily by the Necrotaulidae and the larger complex of families constituting the Phryganeina. The Phryganeina appeared during the Late Jurassic (Sukatcheva 1991) and their presence is indicated by some of the earliest caddisfly cases in the fossil record. Caddisflies were mostly microvores, and likely were algivorous, detritivorous, or omnivorous, commonly occurring in eutrophic environments (Zherikhin and Kalugina 1985). Unlike other abundant holometabolan groups, true flies represent a major radiation throughout the Jurassic, particularly involving several nematocerous lineages, principally the Limoniidae, Chironomidae (midges), Chaoboridae (phantom midges), Psychodidae (moth flies), Simuliidae (black flies), Dixidae (nonbiting midges), and the extinct Eoptychopteridae, a clade related to modern phantom crane flies (Kalugina 1980). These seven dipteran lineages included disparate mouthpart modifications for passive and active filter feeding, net sieving, collecting, and mandible-assisted chewing, indicating that they were dominantly microvores. Microvory in nematocerous Diptera is typically achieved by the pumping of water currents into a specialized mouthpart filter or sieve for capture of small particulate matter such as diatoms, protists, ostracods, and a variety of other microorganisms.

The Jurassic also witnessed the appearance of major lineages of teleost fish, frogs, crocodilians, and aquatic birds (Cohen 2003). These lineages represent evolutionary novelties that may have been conducive to key innovations, mostly increased predation in freshwater settings, which in turn may have resulted in the disappearance of large-bodied branchiopods and other slow moving crustaceans from many lacustrine settings (Webb 1979; Cohen 2003). Since the Jurassic, these taxa seem to have been displaced to more marginal habitats, such as saline lakes and vernal pools, characterized by low diversity of predators. Also, the coincidence of increased predation and infaunalization of the lacustrine benthos may be significant. As indicated by Vermeij (1987), the infaunal environment typically is regarded as a haven from predation and, therefore, infaunalization may be regarded as an adaptive response to increased predation.

Relatively little is known about aquatic vegetation during the Jurassic. The dominance of charophytes is apparent, with porocharaceans and nitellaceans occurring in Early to Middle Jurassic Chinese basins (Wang et al. 1976), probably reflecting accommodation to ephemeral lakes (Martín-Closas and Serra-Kiel 1991). By the Late Jurassic, two charophyte families underwent diversification, the Characeae and the Clavatoraceae, which were associated with oligotrophic and alkaline lakes (Martín-Closas and Serra-Kiel 1991). This may have resulted in the displacement of porocharaceans to higher latitudes and brackish-water settings (Martín-Closas 2003). Nonflowering vascular plants were represented by relatives of *Azolla* ferns along littoral zones (Cohen 2003). An incipient colonization of ponds by ferns also is apparent by the Late Jurassic (Martín-Closas 2003), particularly the Hymenophyllaceae (filmy ferns), that preferred hydric habitats (Hennequin et al., 2008). Lacustrine phytoplankton retained its ancestral condition, with Chlorococcales remaining dominant (Martín-Closas 2003).

Beginning toward the end of the Early Jurassic, and culminating during the Middle to Late Jurassic, a distinctive, fluvio-lacustrine ecosystem is recognized in Eurasia. This ecosystem represents a continuation of earlier, similar, Late Triassic ecosystems, but is characterized by a suite of physical, chemical, and biological features that were distinct from other contemporaneous and later ecosystems (Table 11.1). The overwhelmingly Jurassic biotas that occupy this ecosystem are the "Assemblage B" of Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996), characterized by a detritivore-based food web, in which primary production consisted of coarse and fine detritus and dead benthic algae. These sources of food were channeled to filter-feeding and shredding invertebrates, particularly insects, but also crustaceans, mollusks, and bryozoans (Table 11.1 and Fig. 11.6). Although this biota persisted into the Early Cretaceous, the geochronologic acme of this community type was during the Middle to Late Jurassic.

A prime example of an Assemblage B community is the *Mesoleuctra–Mesoneta* assemblage at Ust'-Balei, in Transbaikalian Russia, representing a lacustrine deposit from uppermost Lower Jurassic strata (Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996). The *Mesoleuctra–Mesoneta* assemblage was more productive, through the fixation of organic carbon by chemotrophic and autotrophic organisms, than those from coexisting Assemblage A lakes. However, the *Mesoleuctra–Mesoneta* assemblage was considerably less productive than Assemblage C lakes of the Early Cretaceous (Table 11.1 and Fig. 11.6). This assemblage type may have occurred in several Gondwanan sites, although documentation is poor. The dominant biotal features of the *Mesoleuctra–Mesoneta* assemblage at Ust'-Balei was an epibenthic fauna that consisted dominantly of mayfly and stonefly taxa, the absence of chaoborid dipteran larvae, and the general presence of some algae, bivalves, and fish. Deposits containing an Assemblage B biota are associated with lignitic and coal-bearing strata, paleobotanical indicators suggesting oxygen depletion (Samylina 1988), and a setting in which microbial activity was strongly suppressed. At Ust'-Balei, the *Mesoleuctra–Mesoneta* assemblage inhabited an aquatic environment similar to a modern, disaerobic peat lake wherein bacterial metabolic activity is limited by water acidity (Kuznetsov 1970).

Jurassic lacustrine deposits are present in North America as well (see review of ichnologic literature above), but unlike those in Eurasia, they have been less studied in a paleoentomological context, typically lacking body fossils, notably insects. Deposits such as the deep, graben-fill deposits of the Late Triassic (Theismeyer 1939) and the more laterally persistent, epicontinental strata of the Late Cretaceous–Early Paleogene temporally bracket the Middle Jurassic (Callovian) Sundance and Late Jurassic (Tithonian) Morrison Formations. The Morrison Formation evidently included a series or large, relatively shallow alkaline lakes, most of which were intermittent and lacked significant freshwater input due to water limitation within an arid, subtropical belt (Turner and Fishman 1991; Demko and Parrish 1998; Engelmann et al. 2004). Although much is known of the vertebrates of landscapes surrounding Morrison lakes, little is understood of their aquatic invertebrate faunas. Lacustrine insects are unknown, and the only significantly studied invertebrates are lacustrine ostracods (Schudack 1998) and bivalves occurring in associated fluvial, floodplain and pond environments (Good 2004).

The Sundance Formation perhaps provides the sole exception of a Jurassic, North American lacustrine biota on par with numerous Eurasian examples of the same period (Fig. 11.7). The Sundance Formation occurs along the central-northern Wyoming and central-southern Montana border, and provides paleoentomologically the best documented Jurassic lacustrine ecosystem in North America (Santiago-Blay et al. 2001; Grimaldi and Engel 2005). In particular, the thinly laminated, interbedded paper shales of the Hulett Sandstone Member provide considerable evidence for a modestly diverse lacustrine fauna. The deposit was formed from

Table 11.1 Biological features of Mesozoic lakes before and after the Mesozoic Lacustrine Revolution (MLR) based on aquatic insect data. Modified slightly from Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996), with brown indicating more detritivore-based and green more herbivore-based lacustrine assemblages

	Pre Mesozoic lacus trine revolution lake structure		Post Mesozoic lacustrine revolution lake structure		
Assemblage Type[a]	A	B	C	D	E
Age:	Upper Lower J—Lower K	Upper Lower J—Lower K[a]	Lower K[a]	Lower K	Lower K
1. Algal production	Low	Low	High	?Moderate	High
2. Macrophyte production	Very low	Moderate	Low	Low	Low
3. Allochthonous detritus	Low	High	Low	?Low	?Variable
4. Turnover rate	Low	High	High	High	High
5. Microbial activity	Low	Low, suppres-sed by antibio-tic leaf litter	Moderate, high in deep-water zone	Unknown	?High
6. Dominating trophic chain	Detritivorous	Detritivorous	Herbivorous	Herbivorous	Herbivorous
7. Trophic web complexity	Low	Low	High	Low	Moderate
8. Dominating strategy	K	K	?r	?r	r
9. Shredders[b]	Common	Common	Uncommon	?Uncommon	?Uncommon
10. Scrapers[b]	Common	Common	Uncommon	Uncommon	Uncommon
11. Grazers[b]	Rare	Rare	Common	Common	Common
12. Filtrators[b]	Very rare	Rare	Uncommon	Common	Common
13. Planktonivores[b]	Moderately common	Rare	Very abundant	Very abundant	Very abundant
14. Predators[b]	Common	Common	Common	Rare	Common
15. Modern analogues	Cold, clear-water oligo-trophic lakes	None	None	Unknown	None
16. Ecosystem type	Montane; oligotrophic to ultraoligotrophic	Hypotrophic (non-acid dystrophic)	Pseudoligo-trophic (productive nonsaprobic)	?Mesoligo-trophic	?Pseudoligo-trophic.

The vertical line separating Assemblages B and C indicates the timing of the MMLR transition

[a] The five assemblages (A–E) are further detailed in Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996)

[b] Macroinvertebrate functional feeding groups (after Merritt and Cummins 1984)

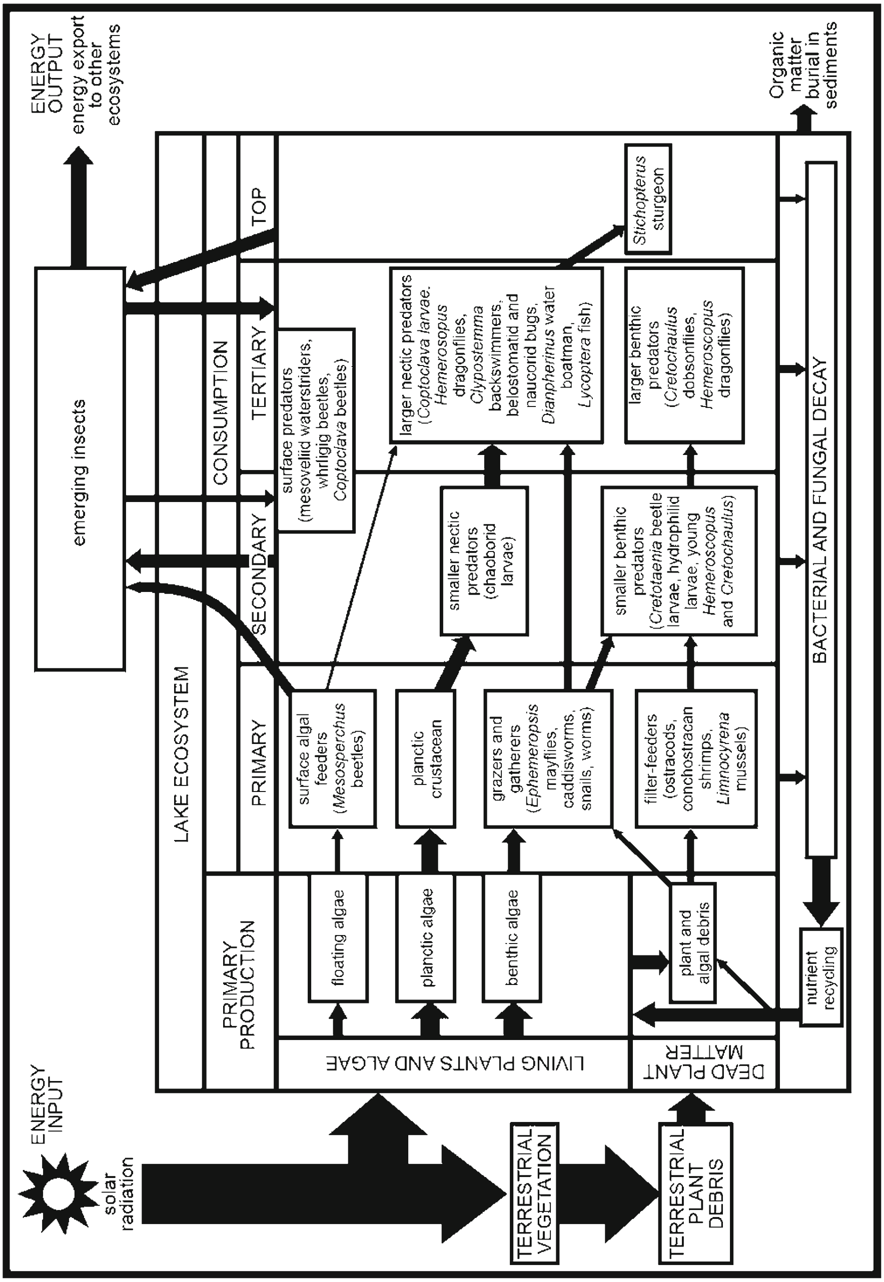


Fig. 11.6 Trophic structure reconstruction for primary producers and arthropods of a Middle Jurassic hypotrophic lake (Zherikhin and Kalugina 1985). This lake represents the *Mesoleuctra–Mesoneta* biotal assemblage typifying Lake Ust'Balei, in the Irkutsk Region of northern Siberia, Russia. This trophic reconstruction corresponds to the Type B lake biotal assemblage of Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996). See Assemblage B in Table 11.1 for additional physical, chemical and biological details. Redrawn, with modification, from Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996)

freshwater to brackish water input and includes locally a back-barrier shoal and tidal inlet consistent with a more estuarine environment during certain time intervals (Uhlir et al. 2006; Stone and Vondra 2013). Vertebrate footprints and bone material have been found in other strata of the Sundance Formation. The biota of the Hulett Sandstone Member consists of pollen, land-plant fragments, aquatic insects, and a leptolepid fish, presumably of continental provenance (Fig. 11.7a–p). The insects are modestly diverse, consisting minimally of about 15 species, and include a variety of typically freshwater nepomorph heteropterans, especially notonectids, corixids, belostomatids, and possibly the extinct Enicocoridae. Adephagan beetles include dytiscids and possible parahygrobiids, and elytra assigned to *Holcoptera* are suggestive of a polyphagan lineage (Santiago-Blay et al. 2001; Grimaldi and Engel 2005). Other faunal constituents are very rare caddisfly cases. Whereas much of these strata, particularly those containing the insects, indicate lacustrine deposition, other strata indicate a more marine influence, suggesting harsh, occasionally hypersaline conditions and an uninhabitable benthic environment. Palynomorph and mesofossil land-plant material reveal a xerophytic coastal vegetation of cheirolepidiaceous and araucariaceous conifers and possible gnetaleans indicated by *Eucommiidites* pollen. A similar, approximately coeval lacustrine deposit, the Todilto Formation, occurs in central New Mexico, is less diverse but has a similar depositional environment with periodic influxes of fresh and brackish water alternating with marine incursions from the east, and has a similar lacustrine biota (Bradbury and Kirkland 1966; Anderson and Lucas 1996; Ulmer-Scholle 2005).

11.5.4 Persistence of Previous Trends During the Early Cretaceous

Early Cretaceous lake-margin ichnofaunas have been documented in England (Goldring et al. 2005), Spain (Moratalla et al. 1995; Moratalla and Hernán 2009), Mongolia (Johnson and Graham 2004) and Korea (Kim and Paik 1997; Kim et al. 2002, 2005, 2012a,b,c; Paik et al. 2012; Lockley et al. 2012). Dinosaur (e.g. *Ornithopodichnus*, *Dromaeosauripus*, *Caririchnium*, *Minisauripus*), bird (e.g. *Koranornis*, *Jindongornipes*, *Uhangrichnus*, *Ignotomis*), crocodile, turtle (*Emydiphus*), and pterosaur (e.g. *Pteraichnus*, *Haenamichnus*) tracks are extremely common, in many cases forming megatracksites (Moratalla et al. 1995; Meyer et al. 2001; Moratalla and Hernán 2009; Lockley et al. 2012; Kim et al. 2012a,b,c).

As is the case for their earlier Mesozoic counterparts, Early Cretaceous lake-margin invertebrate ichnofaunas are dominated by shallow-tier striated or nonstriated meniscate, backfilled structures (*Scoyenia*, *Taenidium*), and simple horizontal (*Planolites*, *Palaeophycus*) and vertical simple or U-shaped (*Skolithos*, *Diplocraterion*) features (Zhang 1987; Kim and Paik 1997; Kim et al. 2002, 2005; Johnson and Graham 2004; Goldring et al. 2005). Arthropod trackways (*Diplichnites*), simple grazing trails (*Helminthopsis*, *Cochlichnus*), and branching burrows (*Thalassinoides*) occur locally (Kim et al. 2002, 2005; Goldring et al. 2005).

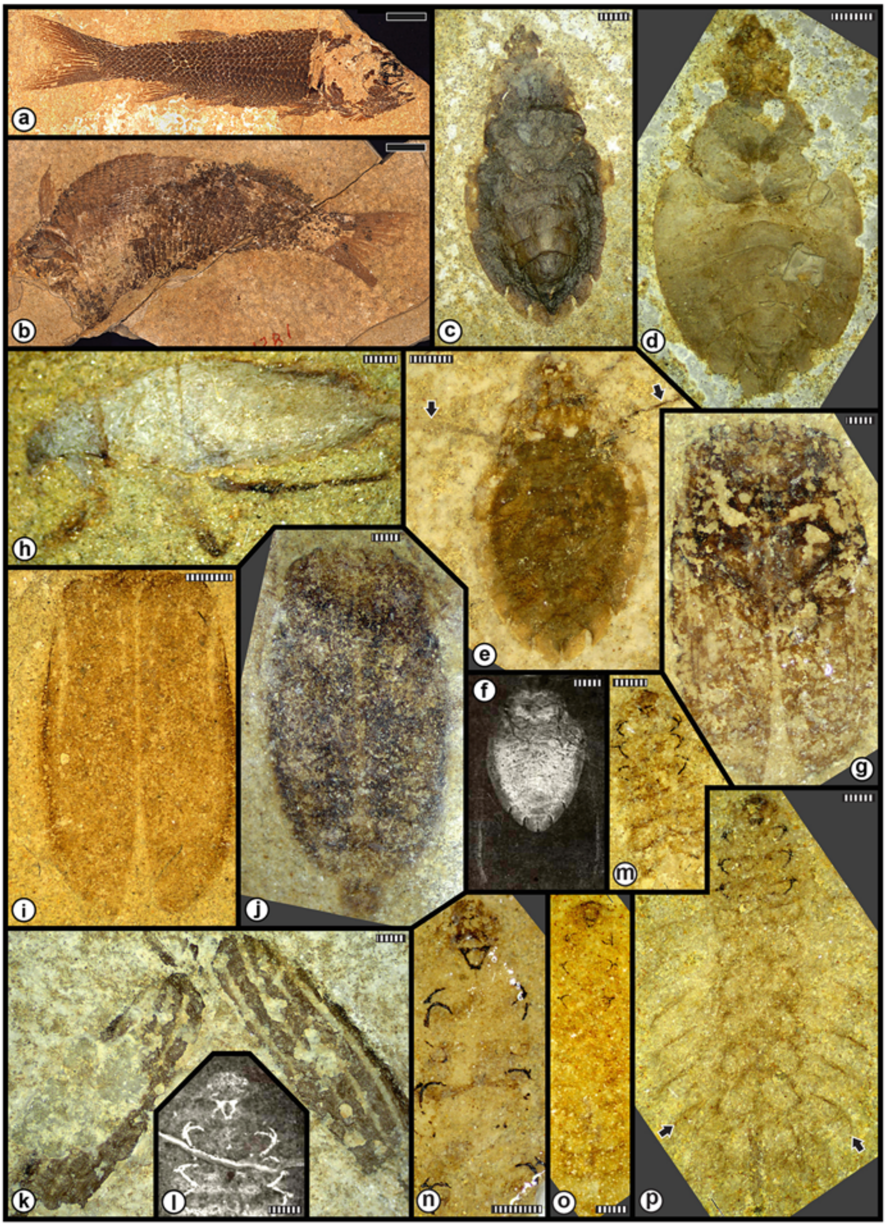


Fig. 11.7 The late Middle Jurassic (Callovian, 165 Ma) Sundance Biota from the lacustrine Sundance Formation, central-northernmost Wyoming and adjacent central-southernmost Montana, United States (Santiago-Blay et al. 2001). (**a**) Leptocerid fish (USNM-597438, Specimen 605); (**b**) Leptocerid fish (USNM-597439, Specimen 1281); (**c**) Hemiptera: ?Belostomatidae (USNM-597440, Specimen 554–39); (**d**) Hemiptera: Belostomatidae (USNM-597441, Specimen 775); (**e**) Hemiptera: Corixidae (USNM-597442, Specimen 1377A); (**f**) Hemiptera: Corixidae (USNM-597443, Specimen 1801); (**g**) Hemiptera: ?Notonectidae (USNM-597444, Specimen 2688B); (**h**) Hemiptera: Enicocoridae (USNM-597445, Specimen 2194); (**i**) Coleoptera: undetermined family (USNM-597446, Specimen 24); (**j**) Coleoptera: undetermined family (USNM-597447, Specimen 2443); (**k**) Coleoptera: (USNM-597448, Specimen 2501); (**l**) (USNM-597449, Specimen 1936B); (**m**) (USNM-597450, Specimen 2398B); (**n**) (USNM-597451, Specimen 2260); (**o**) (USNM-597452, Specimen 2906); (**p**) Coleoptera: (USNM-597453, Specimen 2149). Scale bars: solid, 10 mm; striped, 1 mm

Early Cretaceous examples of fully lacustrine ichnofaunas have been recorded in Spain (de Gibert et al. 1999, 2000, 2016; Buatois et al. 2000a) and Brazil (Buatois and Mángano 1998). Information is sparse, and examples are known from quite different lacustrine settings, further complicating the establishment of general patterns. The Spanish paleolake deposits are carbonates, and their ichnofaunas are dominated by very shallow-tier trails and burrows (*Gordia*, *Cochlichnus*, *Steinsfjordichnus, Cruziana, Helminthoidichnites, Palaeophycus, Treptichnus, Planolites*), with a very minor contribution of arthropod trackways (*Hamipes*) (de Gibert et al. 2000, 2016; Buatois et al. 2000a) (Fig. 11.8a–d). The vertebrate component of the subaqueous biota is represented by the fish trail *Undichna* (de Gibert

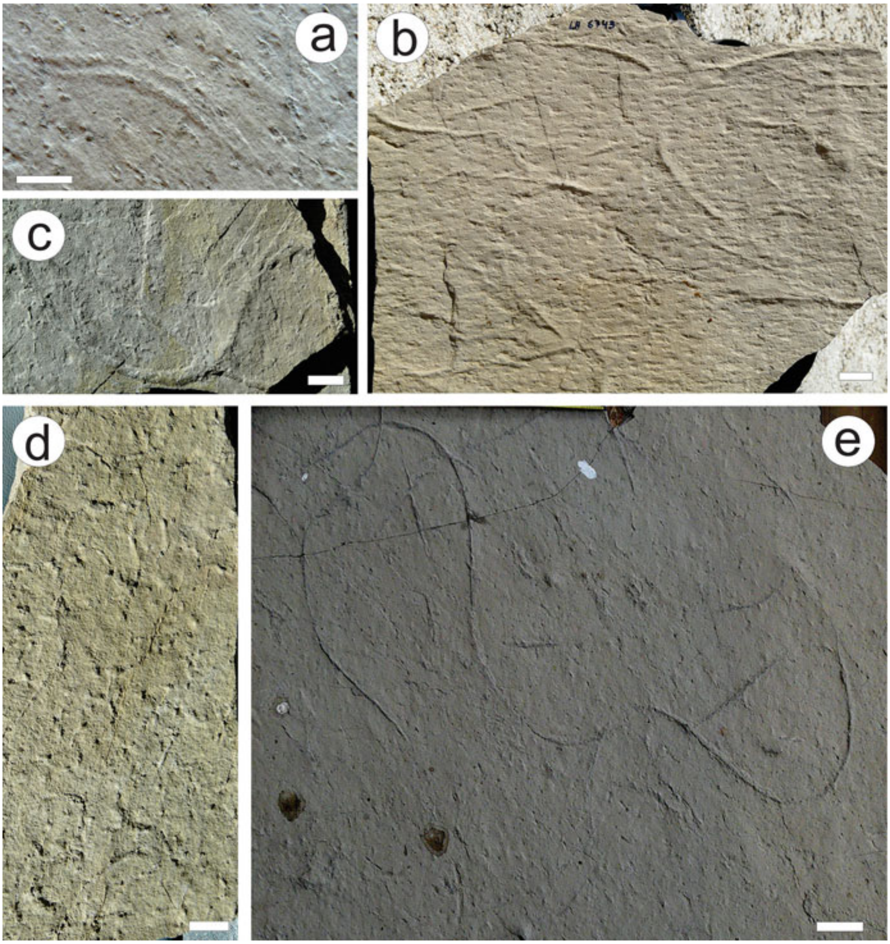


Fig. 11.8 Characteristic trace fossils from Lower Cretaceous fully subaqueous lacustrine carbonate deposits of Las Hoyas, Spain. (**a**) *Cruziana* isp.; (**b**) *Helminthoidichnites tenuis*; (**c**) *Palaeophycus tubularis*; (**d**) Surface containing high density of poorly developed *Treptichnus pollardi*; (**e**) *Undichna unisulca.* All scale bars are 1 cm wide, with the exception of **e**, which is 2 cm long

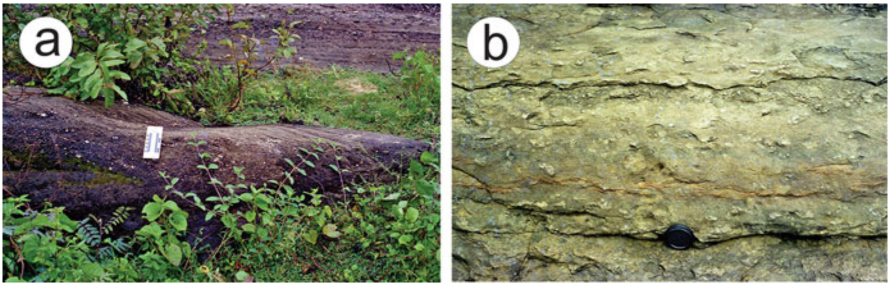


Fig. 11.9 Ichnofabrics from the Lower Cretaceous lacustrine shoreface deposits of the Coqueiro Seco Formation of northeast Brazil. (**a**) General view of cross-bedded pebbly very coarse-grained sandstone (foreground) interbedded with intensely bioturbated fine-grained sandstone (background); (**b**) Close-up of intensely bioturbated sandstone displaying mottled texture. Lens cap diameter is 5.5 cm long

et al. 1999) (Fig. 11.8a–e). In contrast, the Brazilian ichnofauna is derived from intensely bioturbated, lacustrine, clastic shoreface deposits, and displays mottling attributable to *Planolites* (Buatois and Mángano 1998) (Fig. 11.9a–b).

Lower Cretaceous shallow-lake deposits present within the nonmarine Sindong Group of South Korea are useful to illustrate the major characteristics of lacustrine ichnofaunas from this age (e.g. Kim and Paik 1997; Kim et al. 2002, 2005; Paik et al. 2012). In particular, the Jinju Formation has been the object of several ichnologic studies (e.g. Kim et al. 2002, 2005, 2012c). This unit was deposited in a shallow lake periodically affected by immersion and desiccation. The ichnofauna contains a variety of feeding (*Beaconites antarcticus*, *B. coronus*, *Planolites annularis*, *P. beverleyensis*, *Taenidium barretti*), locomotion (*Octopodichnus* cf. *didactylus*, *Diplichnites* ispp., unassigned sauropod trackways), dwelling (*Palaeophycus sulcatus*, *P. tubularis*, *Skolithos magnus*), and grazing (*Cochlichnus anguineus*, *Helminthopsis hieroglyphica*) traces (e.g. Kim et al. 2005). The vast majority of these ichnotaxa are common in the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies, which is consistent with the lake-margin interpretation for these deposits. The sharply defined margins of the trackways suggest firm substrates. However, Kim et al. (2005) noted that some of the grazing trails may have been emplaced in softgrounds, implying colonization under subaqueous conditions and transition to the *Mermia* Ichnofacies. Potential producers include several groups of dipterans as well as nematodes and spiders. Overall, the Early Cretaceous, South Korean lake ichnofaunas show a similar trace-fossil distribution to those ichnofaunas recorded in shallow-lacustrine deposits of the Newark Supergroup. In both cases, colonization by benthic organisms reflects changes in the degree of consolidation of the substrate as a result of progressive subaerial exposure.

Early Cretaceous lotic and especially lentic insect taxa are derived from the same taxonomic families as those of the Late Jurassic (Martínez-Delclòs et al. 1995; Delclòs et al. 2008). Representatives of this faunal assemblage are a lentic, ephemeropteran fauna that consists of siphlonurids, hexagenitids and mesonetids.

Hexagenitid naiads, as well as ephemeroid naiads, are very common in some Early Cretaceous lentic assemblages (Sinitshenkova 2002), including taxa that produced the bioerosion ichnogenus *Asthenopodichnium* subaqueously in woods (Thenius 1989). Most of the Early Cretaceous mayfly genera did not survive into the Late Cretaceous (Sinitshenkova 2002), and only one lineage, the Australiephemeridae, became extinct at the end-Cretaceous (K-Pg) boundary.

The Early Cretaceous aquatic odonatan fauna is quite different from that of the Jurassic. The diversification of modern anisopteran (dragonfly) and zygopteran (damselfly) lineages appear for the first time. Curiously, the Pseudomyrmeleontidae, interpreted by some as related to the Paleozoic Meganeuroidea, were still present as a relict group. Unlike ephemeropteran assemblages, odonatan assemblages appear to have most of their evolutionary development in lotic habitats. The dominant Early Cretaceous odonatan lineages are the Isophlebioidea, Heterophlebioidea, Calopterygoidea, and other anisopteran clades. Among these lineages are a few specialized types, such as naiads of the Eurasian Hemeroscopidae and Sonidae (Pritykina 1986), which include a morphotype with long legs possessing paddling locomotion and a nectic, predatory existence. By contrast, other taxa, such as the Nothomacromyiidae lacked swimming structures but retained actively cursorial, long legs, indicating predatory pursuit habits. Another ecomorph is represented by the short-legged, burrowing Gomphidae (Bechley 1998). The labial-mask mouthpart structure has been examined for a select few species of these lineages, and no conclusions could be made regarding prey-specific relationships (Sinitshenkova 2002).

Plecopteran family-level diversity increased during the Early Cretaceous. Jurassic plecopteran clades persisted into the Early Cretaceous and were supplemented by the earliest occurrences of several, modern, family-level lineages. All of the modern, plecopteran functional feeding groups were present during the Early Cretaceous, such as collectors and shredders engaged in detritivory, algal herbivory and insect predation. In addition, chresmodids are still present in some lacustrine settings, but probably became competitively excluded by emerging, Early Cretaceous gerrid lineages.

True bugs of the Hemiptera are ubiquitous and diverse throughout the Early Cretaceous, and with the exception of the Shurabellidae, are continuations of Jurassic lineages (Sinitshenkova 2002). By contrast, the Gerridae and Mesoveloidea (water treaders) initially appear during the Early Cretaceous, ecologically supplementing and replacing an earlier convergent ecotype, the orthopteroid Chresmodidae, which had affinities to orthopteroid insects (Martínez-Delclòs et al. 1995). This replacement included larger-sized, surface-skimming gerrids during the Late Cretaceous that approached in size many of the medium-sized Jurassic chresmodids, the latter of which had legspans of up to 16 cm (Labandeira pers. observ.). Corixids, notonectids, mesotrephids and notably large, predaceous belostomatids continued into the Early Cretaceous (Delclòs et al. 2008). Although there are some evolutionary novelties between Jurassic and Early Cretaceous aquatic bug faunas, it appears that all of the Jurassic ecologic feeding types were present during the Early Cretaceous and encompassed surface water and neuston-zone feeders on dead or dying arthropods, nectic algivores, nectic predators and epibenthic predators.

There are minimal taxonomic and ecologic differences between Late Jurassic and Early Cretaceous beetle faunas. Archostematan schizophorids became very rare; the largely aquatic Adephaga retained a similar spectrum of major taxa as before, although the proportions of major lineages change. The major shifts are that the Parahygrobiidae become more abundant; the Coptoclavidae become dominated by a newly emerging, advanced clade, the Coptoclavinae; the Gyrinidae increase in diversity; the Liadytidae become rarer; the Dytiscidae remain rare; and the Haliplidae have their earliest occurrence (Ponomarenko 1969). The dominantly terrestrial Polyphaga are represented by the same families in the Early Cretaceous as during the Jurassic, including the Scirtiidae (marsh beetles), but especially the detritivorous Hydrophilidae, represented by new taxa such as *Cretotaenia*.

Other holometabolous insect clades with aquatic stages include the Megaloptera, Neuroptera (lacewings, antlions, and related forms) and Mecoptera. These clades express a similar pattern of mostly lotic-based diversity, as do their descendants in modern ecosystems. The predaceous larvae of megalopterans, such as the Corydalidae (dobsonflies), neuropterans such as the Osmyloidea (net-winged lacewings and relatives) and the detritivorous mecopteran larvae of the Nannochoristidae occur in Lower Cretaceous deposits of Eurasia and Australia (Zherikhin 1978; Jell and Duncan 1986). These lineages currently reside in the same habitats, although they have been overshadowed by more derived Cenozoic lineages that entered the same aquatic niches.

During the Early Cretaceous, caddisflies experienced major evolutionary novelties, as new family-level lineages emerged, other groups assumed dominance, and a profusion of larval case-making activity ensued. Evidence from adult caddisflies indicate that the earliest Mesozoic caddisflies, necrotaulids, became rare; others, such as the extinct phryganeoid families Dysoneuridae, Vitimotaulidae, and Baissoferidae were common, as were the extant Phyganeoidea, the Calamoceratidae (flat-case caddisflies), Lepidostomatidae (lepidostomatid casemaker caddisflies), Plectrotarsidae (plectrotarsid caddisflies), and Helicopsychidae (snail-case caddisflies) (Sinitshenkova 2002). Of these, the Vitimotaulidae were the most numerically abundant, or at least were common across most Eurasian localities. There was significant differentiation of the Vitimotaulidae at the generic level across Eurasia, and the dominance of particular local genera occurred throughout the region.

An important event in lotic and especially lentic environments was the global diversification of caddis larval-case morphotypes (Sukatcheva 1982). This expansion of domicile morphotypes that used a variety of mineral, plant, and animal resources evidently commenced during the earliest Cretaceous in northern Asia, and penecontemporaneously in Europe, South America and Australia (Sinitshenkova 1999). Circumstantial evidence indicates that the Vitimotaulidae were the dominant fabricators of these cases. In localities where adult body fossils and larval cases are both abundant and diverse, it appears that each case morphotype likely is associated with one adult species. Apparently, each case morphotype was made by an adult species that was restricted to a particular lotic or lentic habitat, partly reflected by use of building materials that were available for case construction. Cases were variously fabricated from conchostracan shells, *Karkenia* ginkgoalean seeds, conifer needles, plant twigs, quartz grains, mica flakes, and other available materials (Sukatcheva 1982).

The dominant lacustrine lineages of the Diptera during the Early Cretaceous were the same as for the Late Jurassic. Planktivorous chaoborids were more abundant but less speciose during the Early Cretaceous when compared to the Late Jurassic, whereas chironomids had an opposite trend. Both groups are represented primarily by adult and pupal fossils; larvae are relatively rare and poorly preserved. This pattern of differential preservation of developmental stages also exists for limoniids, eoptychopterids and other nematocerous fly lineages. Not only compression deposits capture this pattern, but this pattern also is found in amber occurrences, such as Lebanese Amber. In Lebanese Amber the most common families are, in decreasing rank: Chironomidae, Ceratopogonidae, Psychodidae, and Eoptychopteridae (Kalugina 1980). However, in Paleolake Baissa deposits, chaoborids were very abundant and likely were a major food resource for consumers that sustained much of the upper tier of the food-web. One interesting development in Early Cretaceous lakes was the emergence of brachyceran fly larvae, including the Stratiomyiidae (soldier flies), Empididae (dance flies), other asilomorphs, and possibly the Sciomyzidae (snail-eating flies) (Whalley and Jarzembowski 1985).

Arguably, one of the major innovations by the Early Cretaceous is the appearance of aquatic angiosperms which, together with ferns (Schneider et al. 2004), started to replace charophytes as the dominant macrovegetational elements in lacustrine ecosystems (Martín-Closas 2003; Friis et al. 2003, 2010; Gandolfo et al. 2004; Coiffard et al. 2007). The presence of freshwater species representing among the first angiosperms documented in the fossil record is hard to interpret, because it may reflect an initial evolution and diversification in aquatic habitats or a taphonomic bias (Martín-Closas 2003). Regardless of these alternatives, the appearance of angiosperms was an evolutionary breakthrough that may have had a considerable impact on aquatic life in ponds and lakes (Ponomarenko 1998; Friis et al. 2010). Specifically, aquatic angiosperms (Sun et al. 2002; Friis et al. 2003; Dilcher et al. 2007) would have been instrumental in providing substrates for epiphytic organisms, increasing the release of phosphorous by decaying macrophytes, promoting light attenuation, steepening of the vertical temperature gradient, retarding of water flow and enhancing fine-grained sediment deposition, among other processes (Carpenter and Lodge 1986; Granéli and Solander 1988; Ponomarenko 1998; Cohen 2003). Paralleling this pattern, aquatic ferns experienced further diversification (Schneider et al. 2004), but lycophytes remained abundant (Martín-Closas 2003). With respect to phytoplankton, although Chlorococcales were still abundant, the appearance of freshwater dinoflagellates is a major evolutionary innovation which signaled the demise of green algal dominance in freshwater phytoplankton (Martín-Closas 2003; Leliaert et al. 2011).

As with the Triassic and Jurassic, Cretaceous lotic and lentic insect faunas have been divided into distinctive lacustrine assemblages, each characterized by specific dominant and ecologically important insect species occurring in a particular environmental setting (Zherikhin 1978; Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996; Sinitshenkova 1999; Sinitshenkova 2002). For the Cretaceous, 18 such assemblages have been described (Sinitshenkova 2002), one of which is Assemblage 5A, or the *Ephemeropsis melanurus–Hemeroscopus baissicus* Assemblage, whose environmental conditions and trophic structure have been examined in detail (Table 11.1 and Fig. 11.10). This

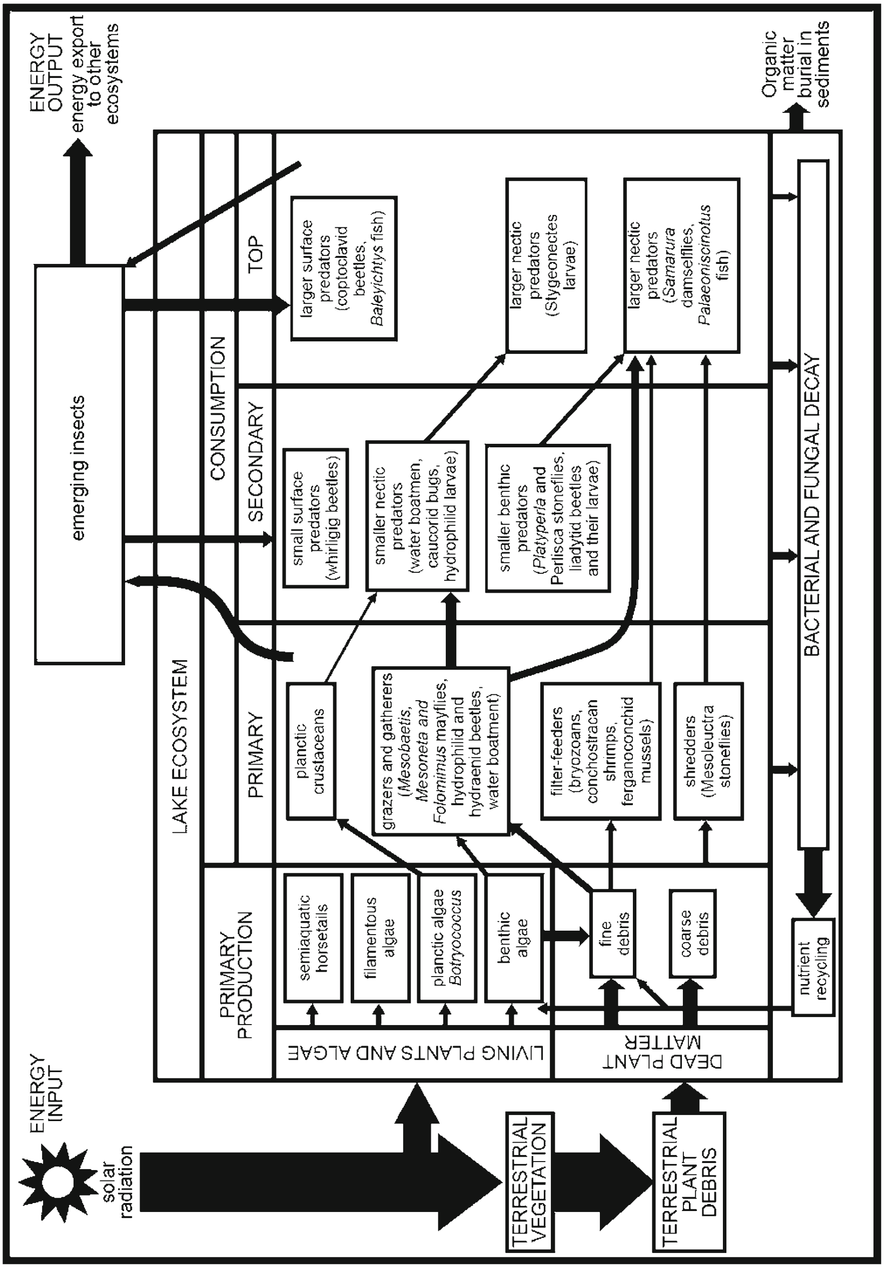


Fig. 11.10 Trophic structure reconstruction of an Early Cretaceous pseudoligotrophic lake (Zherikhin et al. 1999). This lake represents the *Ephemeropsis melanurus–Hemeroscopus bassicus* biotal assemblage typifying Paleolake Baissa in southern Siberia, Russia. This trophic reconstruction corresponds to the Type C lake biotal assemblage of Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996). See Assemblage C in Table 11.1 for additional physical, chemical and biological details. Redrawn, with modification, from Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996)

assemblage, from Paleolake Baissa, occurs in the Zaza Formation, Buryat Republic, in Transbaikalian Russia, and was deposited in a deep, intermontane, meromictic lake. Paleolake Baissa periodically dried out in shallower regions, indicated by mass mortality occurring as dense accumulations of the same instar of large coptoclavid larvae that became locally confined to a few bedding surfaces. Accumulations of chaoborid larvae are present at more widespread event horizons and at small unconformities or possibly diastems separating adjacent beds (Zherikhin et al. 1999).

The *Ephemeropsis melanurus–Hemeroscopus bassicus* Assemblage is more taxonomically and ecologically diverse than earlier Jurassic Eurasian paleolakes. This assemblage includes tetrapods, birds, and osteoglossomorph fish such as *Lycoptera*, and a rare *Stychopterus* sturgeon; phyllopod, conchostracan and ostracod crustaceans, gastropods, bivalves and freshwater bryozoans (Vinogradov 1996). Most of the estimated 1000 species of insects in the fauna are terrestrial and allochthonous in origin (Zherikhin et al. 1999). The autochthonous lacustrine component of the biota consists of ca. 80–120 species of lake residents, and was dominated by the aquatic immatures of odonatans, heteropterans, coleopterans, dipterans and numerous caddisflies (as cases). Insect fossils typically are shed exuviae rather than whole, dead individuals. The surrounding vegetation consisted of *Pseudolarix* forest, a *Podozamites–Czekanowskia* shrubland, and groundcover of horsetails, ferns, and very rare angiosperms of uncertain affiliation (Zherikhin et al. 1999). Although this assemblage represents one of the earliest occurrences of angiosperms in an Eurasian lake deposit, the effect of angiosperms were insignificant, and it was toward the end of the Early Cretaceous, during the Aptian and Albian Stages, during which the role of angiosperms were manifest in terrestrial ecosystems (Labandeira, 2014; Labandeira et al. 2016) and likely in freshwater ecosystems as well.

In most Mesozoic deposits intraspecific links between growth stages, such as naiads and adults in nonholometabolous insects and larvae and adults in holometabolous insects are not possible (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002). However, in the *Ephemeropsis melanurus–Hemeroscopus bassicus* Assemblage, some larval and adult taxa are associated based on a variety of evidence. Strong associations include the dragonfly adult of the hemeroscopid *Hemeroscopus baissicus* and a very common species of an aeschnidiid naiad, and similarly the hydrophilid beetle adult *Hydrophilopsia baissensis* with the hydrophilid larva *Cretotaenia pallipes*. Adults and larvae of the dobsonfly *Cretochaulus lacustris* and the adephagan beetle *Coptoclava longipoda* are also found in this assemblage, although the latter may be a complex of several species (Zherikhin et al. 1999). It appears that most of the caddisfly cases were constructed by various species of Vitimotaulidae. However, many of these fossils are immature individuals of lentic taxa whose adults are associated with nearby, lotic, especially rhythral, habitats that were allochthonously transported into Paleolake Baissa. The transported lotic taxa are represented by rare odonatans, plecopterans, simuliid dipterans, and nannochoristid mecopterans. These connections between immatures and adults in different aquatic habitats within lakes and rivers indicate a greater autecologic partitioning within species by life stage, as well as among species. This twofold, intraspecific and interspecific subdivision of resources can be interpreted as a maturation of terrestrial aquatic habitats that became more widespread during the Early Cretaceous (Zherikhin et al. 1999).

11.5.5 The Late Cretaceous Biotal Replacement

Ichnologic information from Late Cretaceous paleolakes is remarkably scarce, precluding a detailed discussion. Late Cretaceous examples of lake-margin ichnofaunas are known from the southern United States (Montgomery and Barnes 2012), western Canada (Rylaarsdam et al. 2006), Botswana (Du Plessis and Le Roux 1995), Bolivia (Meyer et al. 2001), China (Zhang 1987), and Korea (Paik et al. 2012; Lockley et al. 2012; Minter et al. 2012). However, most of these studies do not address the ichnofaunas in a comprehensive fashion. As for fully lacustrine deposits, we are aware of only one study documenting Late Cretaceous ichnofaunas in this setting, namely perennial lake deposits in Botswana (Du Plessis and Le Roux 1995).

The crayfish burrow *Camborygma* is present in lake-margin deposits (Montgomery and Barnes 2012), indicating the persistence of this deep tier throughout the Mesozoic. Vertical burrows (e.g. *Skolithos*) and branching structures (e.g. *Thalassinoides*) occur as well (Zhang 1987; Du Plessis and Le Roux 1995). Arthropod trackways (*Lithographus*) have been recorded locally (Minter et al. 2012). Dinosaur and bird tracks preserved along lacustrine paleoshorelines also are known (Meyer et al. 2001; Rylaarsdam et al. 2006; Paik et al. 2012; Lockley et al. 2012). In particular, intense bioturbation by dinosaurs continued to have an impact on the sedimentary fabric of lake-margin deposits throughout the Late Cretaceous (Rylaarsdam et al. 2006).

A complex mosaic of lacustrine deposits is preserved in Upper Cretaceous grabens, whose infill is recorded in the Kalahari Group of Botswana (Du Plessis and Le Roux 1995). The succession includes deposits of ephemeral and perennial alkaline lakes. In both systems, an irregular network of tunnels, showing Y-shaped bifurcations, attributed to *Thalassinoides*, has been recorded (Du Plessis and Le Roux 1995). In the ephemeral lake deposits, these structures are present in sand and mud flats flanking the lake system. In the perennial lake deposits, *Thalassinoides* occurs in fully lacustrine deposits in great abundances, commonly forming intensely bioturbated fabrics, which most likely record less saline conditions in relatively deeper water environments (Du Plessis and Le Roux 1995). In these deposits, *Thalassinoides* commonly occurs in association with vertical shafts that have lateral tunnels, which have been compared with the poorly known vertical burrow *Lennea* (Du Plessis and Le Roux 1995), but this attribution needs further confirmation. In short, the sparse information available suggests continuation in lake-margin environments of the same trends evidenced earlier in this setting. As well, the presence of intensely bioturbated, fully lacustrine deposits resembles similar deposits of the Lower Cretaceous.

Much less is known about Late Cretaceous lacustrine biotas when compared to those of the Early Cretaceous. Most likely this is a reflection of limited outcrop that resulted from the end of the broad extensional-tectonic regime that dominated the mid-Mesozoic continental breakup, which promoted the formation of widespread lacustrine rifts (Cohen 2003). The fossil record of aquatic insects documents mid-Cretaceous extinction of some lineages that were thriving during the Early Cretaceous but are not present during the Late Cretaceous. This event included the extinction of about 20 family- and superfamily-level lineages (Zherikhin 1978; Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996). Of ephemeropterans, none became extinct; for odonatans, the latest meganeuroid lineage, the Protomyrmeleontidae, became extinct, as did the Isophlebioidea and Heterophlebioidea. For plecopterans, the family Oecanthoperlidae is extinguished, as was the Chresmodida, a major Jurassic clade of aquatic Archaeorthoptera. With the exception of the Shurabellidae, apparently no lineage of hemipterans became extinct, as early originating lineages such as corixids, notonectids, belostomatids, and mesoveliids survive to the present day. Coleopterans experienced several major extinctions, such as the Ademosynidae, Parahygrobiidae, Schizophoridae, Coptoclavidae, and Liadytidae. No major extinctions are known for the major lineages of the relatively undiverse neuropteroid groups Megaloptera, Raphidioptera, or Neuroptera, or for the Mecoptera, of which the extant Nannochoristidae is an aquatic representative. For the Trichoptera, major extinctions of family-level taxa were the Dysoneuridae, Necrotaulidae, Baissoferidae, and Vitimotaulidae, the latter of which produced a high diversity of caddisfly case morphologies. The Diptera remained unaffected by the mid-Cretaceous extinction events; evidently the nematocerous Eoptychopteridae and possibly the Hennigmatidae are the only family-level lineages that became extinct (Zherikhin 1978; Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996).

Perhaps more important are the originations of new aquatic insect lineages during the mid Cretaceous, almost all of which survive to the present and essentially form the modern lentic and lotic aquatic insect fauna. Approximately 19 family- and superfamily-level lineages have their first fossil occurrences during the mid Cretaceous, consisting of approximately the same number of lineages that go extinct. For the Ephemeroptera, only the earliest Heptagenoidea is known to occur close to the Early–Late Cretaceous boundary. In odonatans, modern family-level lineages of the Zygoptera (damselflies) may have originated during this interval, but geochronological timing is poorly constrained. No known major lineages of plecopterans originated during the mid Cretaceous. As for hemipterans, the diverse clade Gerromorpha had its earliest major bout of diversification during the mid Cretaceous, including some of the first occurrences of sublineages within the Gerridae, Hydrometroidea (water measurers), probably the Hebroidea (velvet waterbugs and relatives), and the extinct Mesotrephidae. Of coleopterans, only the Haliplidae and Scirtiidae have their earliest occurrences during the mid Cretaceous. Five lineages of the Trichoptera have their first occurrences at this time, including the Hydrobiosidae (pincer-clawed caddisflies), Sericostomatidae (bushedtailed caddisflies), Odontoceridae (mortarjoint casemakers), Calamoceratidae (comblipped casemakers), and Leptoceridae (long-horned caddisflies). The origin of these lineages curiously is associated with a significant decline in case morphotype diversity, as early Cretaceous cases range from 10–15 morphotypes in a typical assemblage, to ca. 5 per assemblage in the Late Cretaceous (Sukatcheva 1991). This decline may be attributable to the disappearance of the diverse Vitimotaulidae which became extinct at this time. Several nematocerous lineages of dipterans with aquatic larvae diversified during the mid Cretaceous, particularly the Ptychopteridae (phantom crane flies), Culicidae (mosquitoes), Chaoboridae (phantom midges), Corethrellidae (frog-biting midges), and Ceratopogonidae (biting midges). Interestingly, while the number of known aquatic insect extinctions and originations for the mid Cretaceous appear to balance out with ca. 20 lineages in each category, the totals of insect herbivore turnover is much greater for the mid-Cretaceous terrestrial realm (Labandeira 2014).

The biologies of these aquatic insect lineages indicate that, whereas the aquatic immatures (naiads, larvae) were well integrated into aquatic ecosystems, the adults became more removed from aquatic habitats than in previous freshwater biotas. For example, whereas the naiads of damselflies were major aquatic predators, their adults preyed on aerially winged insects. The adults of aquatic heteropterans became predators on other aquatic insects (Anderson 1998). Almost all dipteran lineages were comprised of larvae that were aquatic filter-feeders whereas their adults—at least the females—were obligate blood feeders on vertebrates (Labandeira 2002). As the aquatic larvae of caddisflies increasingly became herbivorous, their terrestrial adults targeted angiosperm nectar or similar nutritive sources (Porsch 1958), or lacked feeding capabilities altogether. The disjunction of habitats between immatures (naiads, larvae) and adults increased during the Late Cretaceous, exhibiting an even more profound separation between the life habits of immatures and adults than ever before.

The Late Cretaceous witnessed the continuation of the radiation of aquatic angiosperms and ferns (Martín-Closas 2003; Gandolfo et al. 2004; Schneider et al. 2004), the former showing increased interaction with modern insect families. The shift from gymnosperm-dominated floras to angiosperm-dominated floras was accompanied by a major turnover in their terrestrial insect associates (Labandeira 2014; Labandeira et al. 2016). This transition occurred during the angiosperm radiation, and included episodes of extinction and origination that paralleled a similar pattern characterizing the MLR, although it appears that there is a time shift between the two major events. By contrast, no such pattern is seen in freshwater algal groups. Charophyte assemblages became dominated by the Characeae (Martín-Closas 2003). During the Late Cretaceous, lacustrine phytoplankton displays a similar composition to that of the Early Cretaceous, as indicated by the presence of Chlorococcales and freshwater dinoflagellates (Martín-Closas 2003). However, evidence of diatoms is known from the Late Cretaceous, suggesting early diversification, albeit playing a limited role as lacustrine plankton (Chacón-Bacca et al. 2002). Chrysophytes also are documented from the Cretaceous (Cornell 1979; Adam and Mahood 1981), but as with diatoms, they radiated later in the Cenozoic when they became an important phytoplankton component (Leliaert et al. 2011). In any case, the major changes in the plankton composition involved the diversification of freshwater diatoms and chrysophytes.

11.6 The Aftermath of the Revolution

An examination of the trace- and body-fossil records, as well as the ecological structure of Cenozoic lakes, provides a picture of the aftermath of the MLR, thereby revealing whether additional evolutionary novelties or innovations took place. Interestingly, the biological response to the MLR is not straightforward.

A review of the Cenozoic lacustrine trace-fossil record shows that Cenozoic lake-margin invertebrate ichnofaunas are similar in composition to those of the Late Cretaceous (Table 11.2). Apparently there was minimal effect of the Cretaceous–Paleogene (K-Pg) events on the MLR (see Chap. 12). This is in sharp contrast, for example, with the ongoing rapid diversification of insect nesting structures in paleosols that took place during the Cenozoic (see Chap. 13).

Little is known of complete inventories of bulk aquatic insect faunas from amber and compression–impression deposits during the Late Cretaceous and Paleocene, unlike the significantly better documented terrestrial fossil insect record (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002; Labandeira 2005b). Perhaps more importantly, paleoecological data indicate that the modern ecologic structure from one, well-documented lake was well established by the early–middle Eocene boundary interval at Paleolake Messel (Fig. 11.12), and resembled in all measured food-web indices that of a variety of modern lake ecosystems (Dunne et al. 2014). This study proposes that earlier, well preserved lake deposits that postdate the MLR but predate Messel (and straddling the K-Pg boundary) also be examined to determine how far back in geologic time modern lacustrine food-web structure extends (Dunne et al. 2014). Until food-web studies that use similar analytical techniques and trophic measurement indices as those used for Messel are applied to well-preserved lake deposits before and after the MLR, analytical detection of the trophic shift left by the MLR may be difficult. Nevertheless, studies of ichnofaunas and insect biotas, particularly those from the Paleogene may provide robust results in lieu of detailed food-web analyses of lake deposits using modern ecological techniques. One particular approach that may be useful is to attempt an associational approach in the freshwater, especially lacustrine realm that has been done for the terrestrial realm (Labandeira et al. 2002; Wilf et al. 2006). In lieu of more complete knowledge of aquatic, arthropod body-fossil faunas during this time interval, analyses of interactions may provide an another approach for detecting the trophic shift toward herbivore-dominated aquatic communities following the MLR.

Ichnofaunas from lake-margin deposits are known from the Paleogene of the western United States (Melchior and Erickson 1979; Lamond and Tapanila 2003; Bohacs et al. 2007; Scott and Smith 2015), Spain (Rossi 1992; de Gibert and Sáez 2009), China (Hsiao et al. 2010), Antarctica (Yang and Shen 1999; Perea et al. 2001), the Neogene of the western United States (Toots 1975; Smith et al. 1982; Squires and Advocate 1984; Scrivner and Bottjer 1986; Lucas et al. 2002), Spain (Rodriguez-Aranda and Calvo 1998; Uchman and Álvaro 2000; Ortí et al. 2003) and Kenya (Laporte and Behrensmeyer 1980; Cohen 1982; Ekdale et al. 1989; Cohen et al. 1991, 1993; Lamond and Tapanila 2003). Shallow-tier, horizontally striated or non-ornamented, meniscate, backfilled structures (*Scoyenia*, *Taenidium*, *Beaconites*), simple horizontal structures (*Planolites*, *Palaeophycus*), vertical burrows (*Arenicolites*, *Polykladichnus*), and striated or non-ornamented branching burrows (*Spongeliomorpha, Labyrintichnus*) are the dominant elements (Toots 1975; Smith et al. 1982; Squires and Advocate 1984; Rodriguez-Aranda and Calvo 1998; Uchman and Álvaro 2000; Ortí et al. 2003; Bohacs et al. 2007; de Gibert and Sáez 2009; Hsiao et al. 2010). The crayfish burrow *Camborygma* has been locally recorded (Hsiao et al. 2010). Vertical burrows with a terminal chamber, ascribed to the ichnotaxon *Liticuniculatus erectus,*

Table 11.2 Summary of ichnologic, paleontologic, and paleoecologic information on the Mesozoic Lacustrine Revolution (MLR)

Evolutionary phases	Aquatic insect body fossils (representative families)[a]	Other benthos	Aquatic plants	Nekton/plankton	Lake-margin trace fossils	Permanently subaqueous trace fossils	Ecosystem characteristics
Pre-Mesozoic Backdrop to Diversification	Dasyleptidae, Protereismatidae, Misthodotidae, Syntonopteridae, Jarmilidae, Oboriphlebiidae, Eraspteriidae, Meganeuridae, Protomyrmeleontidae, Permagrionidae, Kennedyidae, Perlopseidae, Tschekardiperliidae, Palaeonemouriidae	Chelicerates, conchostracans, leperditocopid crustaceans, shrimp-like crustaceans, oligochaetes, bivalves, gastropods, amphibians, reptiles	Charophytes, water-tolerant lycopods, sphenopsids, medullosan seedferns and arborescent marattialean ferns in wetlands; cordaites, noeggeranthialeans, conifers, gigantopterids, and peltasperms in dry settings	Chlorophytes (mostly Chlorococcales), agnathan, acanthodian, placoderm, chondrichthyan, and osteichthyan fish	Arthropod and tetrapod trackways dominant	Superficial grazing trails and shallow-tier feeding trace fossils dominant, fish trails present	Colonization of lake-margin settings by the Silurian-Devonian and of permanently submerged lake bottoms by the Carboniferous. Limited to no colonization of the infaunal ecospace. Poorly developed food webs driven by detritivores and top predators as near-exclusive consumers; herbivory was absent
Early Triassic Denouement	Protomyrmeleontidae, Batkeniidae, Naucoridae, Belostomatidae, Permosynidae, Schizophoridae, Liassophilidae, Tipulidae	Decline in family-level biodiversity. Conchostracans, shrimp-like crustaceans, bivalves, gastropods, oligochaetes, amphibians, reptiles	Charophytes and *Isoetes*-related nonflowering vascular plants	Chlorophytes (mostly Chlorococcales), osteichthyan fish	Arthropod trackways dominant	No data	Persistence of Paleozoic styles of animal–substrate interactions in lake-margin settings. Poorly developed food webs driven by detritivores and top predators as near-exclusive consumers; herbivory was absent

(continued)

Table 11.2 (continued)

Evolutionary phases	Aquatic insect body fossils (representative families)[a]	Other benthos	Aquatic plants	Nekton/plankton	Lake-margin trace fossils	Permanently subaqueous trace fossils	Ecosystem characteristics
Middle-Late Triassic Rediversification	Triassolestidae, Saxonagrionidae, Triadophlebiidae, Siphloneuridae, Euxenoperlidae, Ochteridae, Triassocoridae, Notonectidae, Belostomatidae, Schizophoridae, Ademosynidae, Colymbothetidae, Hydrophilidae, Dytiscidae, Triaplidae, Philopotamidae, Prorhyacophilidae, Nannochoristidae	Biodiversity recovery. Conchostracans, shrimp-like crustaceans, ostracods, kazacharthrans, phyllopods, bivalves, gastropods, oligochaetes, bryozoans, amphibians, reptiles	Charophytes and *Isoetes*- and *Azolla*-related nonflowering vascular plants	Chlorophytes (mostly Chlorococcales), osteichthyes fish	Meniscate trace fossils dominant, crayfish burrows common, reptile trackways and lungfish burrows present	Superficial grazing trails and shallow-tier feeding trace fossils dominant, fish trails present, mid-tier feeding burrows locally present. Vertical dwelling burrows in higher-energy settings	Increase in depth and extent of bioturbation in lake-margin sediments Persistence of Paleozoic styles of animal-substrate interactions in permanent subaqueous lake settings, but incipient colonization of the infaunal ecospace locally. More complex food webs, albeit still driven by detritivores and top predators with herbivory absent
Jurassic diversification and infaunalization	Tarsophlebiidae, Siphlonuridae, Mesonetidae, Epeorominidae, Mesoleuctridae, Siberioperlidae, Chresmodidae, Belostomatidae, Gyrinidae, Mesoveliidae, Shurabellidae, Coptoclavidae, Haliplidae, Liadytidae, Parahygrobiidae, Necrotaulidae, Limoniidae, Chironomidae Eoptychopteridae, Chaoboriodae	Conchostracans, shrimp-like crustaceans, ostracods, phyllopods, bivalves, gastropods, oligochaetes, bryozoans, amphibians, reptiles	Charophytes dominant (radiation of Characeae and the Clavatoraceae), *Azolla*-related nonflowering vascular plants, ferns, porocharaceans and nitellaceans locally	Chlorophytes (mostly Chlorococcales), osteichthyes fish	Meniscate trace fossils dominant, dinoaur trackways present (including trampled surfaces)	Shallow-tier feeding and grazing trace fossils and deeper-tier feeding burrows dominant, fish trails present, mid-tier feeding burrows locally present. Vertical dwelling burrows in higher-energy settings	Persistence of Middle to Late Triassic styles of animal-substrate interactions in lake-margin settings, but with the addition of intense bioturbation by dinosaurs. Widespread occupation of mid tiers in deep lacustrine deposits, but limited sediment reworking.Increase in predation pressures. Initial transformation from detritivore-driven to herbivore-driven trophic networks of the mesolimnion and epilimnion

Early Cretaceous Persistence	Petaluridae, Libellulidae, Hemeroscopidae, Hexagenitidae, Chresmodidae, Clypostemmatidae, Mesotrephidae, Gerridae, Mesoveliidae, Hydrophilidae, Dytiscidae, Coptoclavidae Scirtiidae, Corydalidae Vitimotaulidae, Baissoferidae Calamoceratidae	Conchostracans, shrimp-like crustaceans, ostracods, phyllopods, bivalves, gastropods, oligochaetes, bryozoans, amphibians, reptiles	Aquatic angiosperms and ferns common, charophytes present	Chlorophytes (mostly Chlorococcales), dominant, dinoflgellates, osteichthyan fish	Meniscate trace fossils dominant, crayfish burrows common, dinosaur, pterosaur, bird, reptile and turtle trackways present	Shallow-tier feeding and grazing trace fossils, mid-tier pervasive burrow mottlings, fish trails present	Establishment of the lacustrine mixed layer. Transformation from detritivore-driven to herbivore-driven trophic networks of the mesolimnion and epilimnion
Late Cretaceous biotal replacement	Gomphidae, Petaluridae, Aeshnidae, Libellulidae Coenagrionidae Gerridae, Hebridae, Hydrometridae, Mesotrephidae, Hydrobioscidae, Sericostomatidae, Leptoceridae Culicidae, Ptychopteridae, Chaoboridae Ceratopogonidae	Conchostracans, shrimp-like crustaceans, ostracods, phyllopods, bivalves, gastropods, oligochaetes, bryozoans, amphibians, reptiles	Aquatic angiosperms and ferns dominant, charophytes present.	Chlorophytes (mostly Chlorococcales), and dinoflgellates dominant, osteichthyan fish	Crayfish burrows, and dinosaur and bird trackways present	Deeper-tier feeding burrows present	Persistence of previous trends in styles of animal–substrate interactions

(continued)

Table 11.2 (continued)

Evolutionary phases	Aquatic insect body fossils (representative families)[a]	Other benthos	Aquatic plants	Nekton/plankton	Lake-margin trace fossils	Permanently subaqueous trace fossils	Ecosystem characteristics
Cenozoic Aftermath to MLR	Sieblosiidae, Zacallatidae, Dysagrionidae, Baetidae, Hydrophilidae, Dytiscidae, Hydropsychidae, Leptoceridae, Limnephilidae, Hydroptilidae, Phryganeidae, Culicidae Tipulidae, Cylindrotomidae Chironomidae	Conchostracans, shrimp-like crustaceans, ostracods, phyllopods, bivalves, gastropods, oligochaetes, bryozoans, amphibians, reptiles and mammals	Aquatic angiosperms and ferns dominant.	Chlorophytes (mostly Chlorococcales), and dinoflgellates dominant, freshwater diatoms and chrysophytes, osteichthyan fish	Meniscate trace fossils dominant, crayfish burrows common, insect nests and borings locally, bird and mammal trackways present	Shallow-tier feeding and grazing trace fossils and deeper-tier feeding burrows dominant, fish trails and nests present, mid-tier feeding burrows locally present. Shallow-tier trails in glacial settings. Vertical dwelling burrows in higher-energy settings	Persistence of previous trends in styles of animal–substrate interactions. Strong impact of diatoms starting in early Neogene on the biogeochemical cycling of silica, promotion of more complex trophic webs and probable overall increase of lacustrine productivity

[a] This column provides the more important aquatic forms or inhabitants of wet habitats adjacent to lakes for at least one stage in their life cycle (naiad, larva, adult)

were compared with similar structures produced by decapods (Melchior and Erickson 1979). This is a poorly known ichnotaxon that may elicit comparisons with *Camborygma*. Simple grazing trails (*Archaeonassa*, *Cochlichnus*) are very rare (Smith et al. 1982; de Gibert and Sáez 2009).

In some cases lake-margin deposits are overprinted by a suite of insect nests (*Celliforma, Roselichnus*; Uchman and Álvaro 2000), which are particularly common in Cenozoic terrestrial settings (see Chap. 13). Spectacular examples of surfaces and beds containing several overprinted suites from fully aquatic to transitional and fully terrestrial facies are known from a number of Quaternary localities in Kenya (Scott et al. 2009; Owen et al. 2009). Borings (*Trypanites*, *Sertaterebrites*) and embedment cavities have been documented in lacustrine stromatolites (Ekdale et al. 1989; Lamond and Tapanila 2003; but see Corsetti and Grotzinger 2005 for an alternative interpretation). Evidence of insects capable of burrowing in highly stressed, hypersaline environments of underfilled lakes are observed for the first time in some of the Neogene basins of Spain (e.g. Rodriguez-Aranda and Calvo 1998; Uchman and Álvaro 2000; Ortí et al. 2003).

Vertebrate trace fossils in Cenozoic lake-margin deposits include bird (e.g. *Gruipeda*) and mammal tracks (Scrivner and Bottjer 1986; Yang and Shen 1999; Perea et al. 2001; Lucas et al. 2002; de Gibert and Sáez 2009). A wealth of information has been produced on how vertebrates modify lake-margin surfaces. Large mammals (e.g. hippos) are known to produce trampled surfaces, actively modifying lake-margin landscapes (Laporte and Behrensmeyer 1980; Cohen et al. 1991, 1993; Ashley and Liutkus 2002; Deocampo 2002; Scott et al 2007, 2008) (Fig. 11.11a–c). Additionally, flamingos produce nest mounds and alter lake-margin deposits by trampling and churning wet clayey sediments (Scott et al. 2009, 2012b). These authors documented that these nests may be so compacted that they contribute to the stability of deltaic distributary channels in lake margins, leading to channelization of flow by water diversion around the mounds. Indeed, the impact of flamingos on lake-margin sediments results in the development of a distinctive mounded topography that qualifies as an ichnolandscape (*sensu* Buatois and Mángano 2011a), which can be preserved in the fossil record (Fig. 11.12a–b).

Ichnofaunas from fully lacustrine deposits have been recorded nearly worldwide in Cenozoic deposits. They have been documented from the Paleogene of the western United States (Moussa 1968, 1970; Melchior and Erickson 1979; Loewen and de Gibert 1999; Bohacs et al. 2007; Martin et al. 2010; Scott and Smith 2015), Antarctica (Yang and Shen 1999; Perea et al. 2001), the Neogene of the eastern (O'Brien and Pietraskek-Mattner 1998; Benner et al. 2009; Knecht et al. 2009) and western (Smith et al. 1982) United States, eastern Canada (Gibbard and Dreimanis 1978), Hungary (Babinszski et al. 2003; Magyar et al. 2006; Cziczer et al. 2009), Slovakia (Starek et al. 2010; Hyžný et al. 2015), England (Gibbard and Stuart 1974), Lithuania (Uchman et al. 2008, 2009), Finland (Gibbard 1977), Sweden (Uchman and Kumpulainen 2011), Germany (Walter 1985; Walter and Suhr 1998), Greece (Owen et al. 2011), Turkey (Price and McCann 1990; Uchman et al. 2007), China (Yang 1996), Indonesia (Whateley and Jordan 1989), Thailand (Gibling et al. 1985; Flint et al. 1989), Japan (Allison et al. 2008), Kenya (Feibel 1987) and New Zealand (Lindqvist 1994).

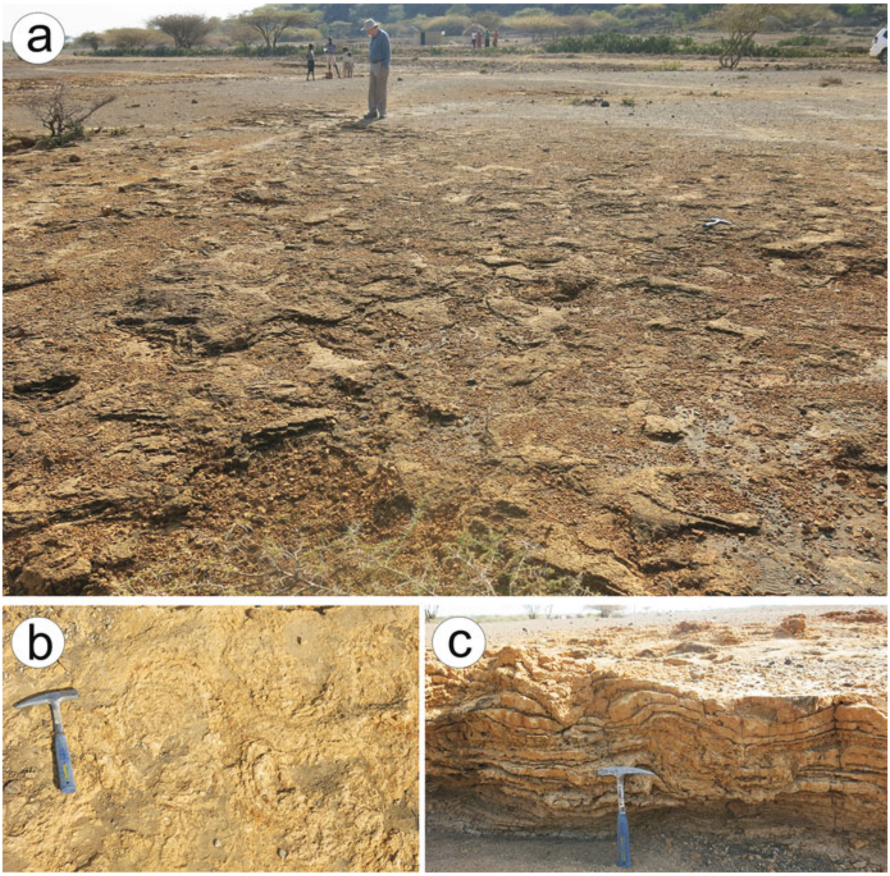


Fig. 11.11 Fossilized trampled surface consisting of a high-density of hippopotamus tracks, Pleistocene, Ilosowuani horst near Logumukum, Lake Bogoria Basin, Kenya. (**a**) General view of the trampled surface; (**b**) Close-up of one of the tracks; (**c**) Cross-section view showing intense disturbance of the primary sedimentary fabric

Ichnofaunas from fully lacustrine, Cenozoic deposits are known from both nonglacial and glacial settings. Nonglacial lake deposits that accumulated under low energy conditions tend to be dominated by a combination of very shallow-tier grazing trails (*Cochlichnus*, *Helminthopsis*), shallow-tier mottlings attributed to *Planolites*, and deeper-tier branching burrows (*Vagorichnus*) (Moussa 1968, 1970; Smith et al. 1982; Gibling et al. 1985; Feibel 1987; Flint et al. 1989; Whateley and Jordan 1989; Yang and Shen 1999; Perea et al. 2001; Bohacs et al. 2007; Uchman et al. 2007; Owen et al. 2011). *Oligichnos limnos*, an ichnotaxon erected by Melchior and Erickson (1979) and suggested to have been made by oligochaetes, needs re-evaluation and may become a junior synonym of *Helminthopsis*. Also, the presence of the bivalve burrow *Lockeia* has been mentioned (Feibel 1987). Interbedded sandstone tempestites and dolomites contain deeper-tier vertical burrows (*Skolithos*, *Arenicolites Polykladichnus*) (Price and McCann 1990; Magyar et al. 2006). Vertical burrows similar to *Trichichnus* have been

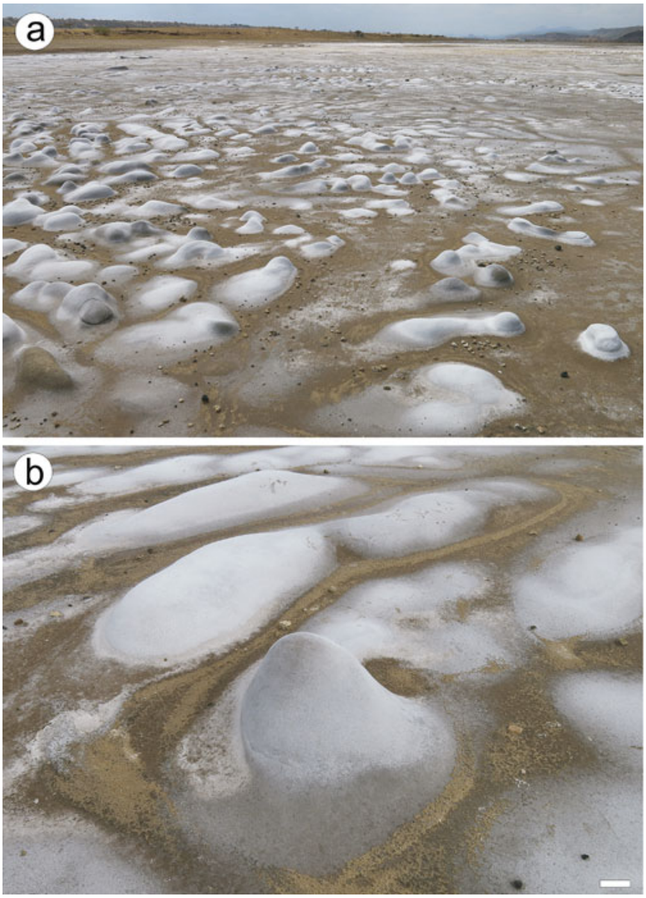


Fig. 11.12 Fossilized flamingo nests, Pleistocene, High Magadi Beds, Lake Magadi, Kenya. (**a**) General view of the nest-bearing surface showing a spectacular biogenic topography (i.e. ichnolandscape); (**b**) Close-up of nests. Scale bar is 10 cm long

mentioned in lacustrine shales (Lindqvist 1994). Burrow systems from long-lived brackish- to freshwater fossil Paleolake Pannon have been attributed a new ichnotaxon, *Egbellichnus jordidegiberti* (Hyžný et al. 2015). These burrows have been interpreted to have been produced by ghost shrimps, indicating that these marine organisms were able to survive for a long time after the closure of the seaway connecting this water body with the central Paratethys sea (Hyžný et al. 2015). Vertebrates are represented by the fish trail *Undichna* (Loewen and de Gibert 1999; Martin et al. 2010) and the fish nest *Piscichnus* (Feibel 1987).

Glacial lakes are dominated by very shallow-tier grazing trails (*Cochlichnus*, *Gordia*, *Helminthoidichnites*) and arthropod trackways (*Glaciichnium*, *Warvichnium*, *Dendroichnites*, *Lusatichnium*), with the branching burrow *Treptichnus* and the conchostracan resting trail *Surculichnus* locally present (Gibbard and Stuart 1974; Gibbard 1977; Gibbard and Dreimanis 1978; Walter and

Suhr 1998; O'Brien and Pietraskek-Mattner 1998; Uchman et al. 2009; Benner et al. 2009; Knecht et al. 2009; Uchman and Kumpulainen 2011). Vertebrates are represented by the fish ichnotaxa *Undichna*, *Broomichnium* and *Piscichnus* (Benner et al. 2009; Uchman and Kumpulainen 2011). The ichnofaunas of Pleistocene glacial lakes are somewhat unusual in that they closely resemble those that are typical of the Paleozoic, displaying a dominance of very shallow-tier ichnotaxa and an underutilized infaunal ecospace. The anachronistic nature of Pleistocene glacial lacustrine ichnofaunas may represent another example of the so-called *déjà vu* effect (Buatois and Mángano 2011b). The dominance of very shallow-tier structures in Pleistocene glacial deposits may reflect very limited burial of organic matter in highly oligotrophic lakes, restricting the habitable zone to a few millimeters below the sediment–water interface.

It should be noted, however, that suppressed bioturbation is not restricted to these types of settings, but also occur in highly productive lakes having oxygenated bottom waters, as evidenced in Lake Turkana (Cohen 1984). In this lake, primary productivity is extremely high toward the lake shore, but phytoplankton populations are markedly less productive offshore. As a result, food content is quite low in offshore lake bottoms and the invertebrate fauna essentially consists of epibenthic detritivores which do not disturb the primary sedimentary fabric. In addition, the lack of sediment mixing results in a redox discontinuity surface very close to the sediment–water interface, further restricting infaunalization (Cohen 1984). This pattern may be regarded as reminiscent of Paleozoic settings displaying limited colonization of infaunal ecospace.

To summarize, a review of the Cenozoic lacustrine trace-fossil record fails to show the appearance of any major evolutionary novelty or innovation from an ichnologic perspective. The spectacular trampled surfaces produced by large mammals that characterize Neogene and modern lake margins were preceded by equally extended and bioturbated surfaces produced by dinosaurs in the Mesozoic. Cenozoic ichnofaunas suggest a continuation of trends that started during the MLR. However, these extensive ichnologic studies need to be linked with examination of body-fossil assemblages from lacustrine and other aquatic environments, particularly during the Paleogene, to more comprehensively document the effects of the MLR. It is notable that, as discussed below, aquatic organisms and ecosystems were better buffered from extinction and ecological reorganization than terrestrial ecosystems during and after the K-Pg crisis (also see Chap. 12). This buffering has multiple sources, including (1), behavioral modifications of lacustrine organisms, including infaunalization, encystment, and planktotrophic larvae that would predispose organisms toward avoiding major environmental vicissitude (Chap. 12); (2), more generalized and less specialized food webs occurring in lakes than for coexisting, surrounding terrestrial communities, at least known for the middle Eocene (Dunne et al. 2014); and (3), the temporally ephemeral nature of lake communities that require considerable dispersal mechanisms for continuity of lake biotas (Cohen 2003), Additionally, the responses to the K-Pg event were variable by the taxonomic group involved, by their occupied habitat, by where they occurred in regional landscapes and in their worldwide distribution, and were variably dampened by the effects of time.

A major effect of the end-Cretaceous global crisis (see Chap. 12) was not only extensive taxonomic extinction and subsequent origination for many non-arthropodan terrestrial lineages, but equally important, trophic pruning of ecosystem structure. On land, the consequences of this event meant the demise of numerous lineages, particularly vertebrates (Archibald and Bryant 1990) and plants (Nichols and Johnson 2008), but this extinction only minimally affected arthropod groups, when evaluated as body-fossil taxa at the family level (Labandeira 2005b). However, when plant–insect interactions are examined at the K-Pg boundary interval, the consequences were important, and hit especially specialized insects such as gallers and leaf miners, while leaving taxa with generalized feeding habits relatively intact (Labandeira et al. 2002; Wilf et al. 2006). In aquatic ecosystems, there was less of an effect (but see Bailey et al. 2005 for possible taphonomic biases). Aquatic insects were minimally affected, at least at the family level (Labandeira 2005b), although there may have been significant changes in food-web structure that persisted well into the Paleogene (Dunne et al. 2014). One important pattern documented for aquatic invertebrates was the differential effects that the K-Pg event had on organisms that inhabited the benthos of water bodies (Twitchett 2006). Detritivorous organisms in or on the sediment were considerably more buffered both from extinction and destruction of their food resources than those trophic networks subsisting on food resources derived from photosynthetic organisms such as algae, diatoms, or aquatic vascular plants (Sheehan and Hansen 1986). This immunity was enhanced for those aquatic invertebrates, such as many detritivorous arthropodan groups, that had planktic immature stages and thus were more able to withstand extinction. For aquatic, especially lentic and lotic–potamic habitats, there was a reduced effect from the end-Cretaceous crisis, particularly for local trophic networks whose dietary resources were not dependent on the herbivory of photosynthetic organisms.

The history of Paleogene insects in aquatic ecosystems is poorly known outside of Central Europe and North America. Most aquatic insect orders have been minimally documented, and many assemblages are woefully deficient in species-level descriptions and revisions. The number of autochthonous lentic taxa is poorly known. Better documented are exceptionally well preserved compression deposits that include the Green River, Messel, Kishenehn, and Menat paleolakes (Nel and Roy 1996; Smith ME et al. 2008b; Greenwalt and Labandeira 2013; Dunne et al. 2014). These well-documented deposits represent only a broad outline of Paleogene aquatic insect history, even though their temporal proximity to the modern fauna should allow easier identification and ecological interpretation of the insect taxa present (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002). These and almost all Paleogene aquatic taxa are assigned to extant families. The only significant exceptions to this generalization lie within the Odonata, in which the families Sieblosiidae (which disappeared during the Pliocene) and Zacallatidae (Paleogene only) and the subfamilies Dysagrioninae (Paleogene only) and Eodichrominae (Paleogene only) are absent from the modern fauna (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002). The overwhelming majority of modern lotic and lentic aquatic families extend at least to the Paleogene, and occur in compression and amber deposits. There are many cases of extant aquatic genera extending to the middle Eocene, and apparently living species present in sediments as old as the Eocene (Askevold 1990; Murray 1976; Kluge 1986).

The naiads of ephemeropterans are uncommon in Paleogene compression deposits. Some amber deposits, such as Baltic Amber have provided the overwhelming majority of known mayfly adults. A common, modern epibenthic form, the Baetidae, is virtually absent from Paleogene aquatic faunas. Paleogene odonatan assemblages exhibit minimal similarity with those of today when compared to other aquatic insect lineages (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002). The relative rarity of Lestidae (spreadwing damselflies), Coenagronidae (narrow-winged damselflies), Corduliidae (emerald dragonflies) and Libellulidae (darner dragonflies) are in stark contrast to the abundance of these lineages in extant aquatic faunas. Naiads are rare in Paleogene aquatic deposits, whereas they are much more common in Neogene faunas, a pattern mirrored by ephemeropterans and attributable to styles of preservation in lacustrine deposits rather than any intrinsic biologic cause.

Paleogene Plecoptera are represented principally by adults in resins and are referable to extant genera. These fossil Plecoptera probably were confined to lotic habitats, consistent with the rarity of their naiad stages in lentic deposits. Apparently, stoneflies do not exhibit any shift in taxonomic proportions between the Paleogene and Neogene (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002), and display a dominance similar to corixids and notonectids. Aquatic bugs (Hemiptera), unlike paleopterous taxa, are common in Paleogene deposits, where they are often numerically dominant. Similarly, aquatic beetles are diverse in the Paleogene, but are marked by the absence of the algivorous Haliplidae and the overwhelmingly presence of the Hydrophilidae and Dytiscidae, particularly during the Oligocene. Aquatic megalopterans and neuropterans are represented only by extinct genera, and aquatic mecopterans have not been documented.

In contrast to several modern aquatic groups that were uncommon during the Paleogene, the Trichoptera were quite common in local assemblages. All Paleogene taxa have been assigned to modern lineages, many which consist of extant genera (Sukatcheva 1982; Wichard and Weitschat 1996). However, there is a significant difference in family-level dominance between the Paleogene and Neogene assemblages, and in compression versus resin deposits, with the Oligocene being a transitional interval. During the Paleogene, the currently dominant families, the Hydropsychidae (net-spinning caddisflies), Leptoceridae, and Limnephilidae (northern caddisflies) are either rare or absent. Similarly, the diversity of caddisfly cases are rare when compared to the Cretaceous or present-day levels (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002). Some of these taxa may have colonized floating algal mats (Ponomarenko 1996) or dwelled amid the floating leaves, as appears to be the case for fossils from earliest middle Eocene Paleolake Messel (Lutz 1991).

The Paleogene aquatic dipteran fauna is particularly depauperate in culicids, chironomine chironomids (nonbiting midges), and higher brachyceran taxa. However, the abundance of the enigmatic botfly-like larvae of *Lithohypoderma* continues to elude taxonomic placement and ecologic understanding (Stokes 1978; Sinitshenkova 2002). Culicids (mosquitoes) and brachyceran taxa became more abundant during the Oligocene. Toward the Oligocene–Miocene boundary, the aquatic fauna attained an even more modern cast than in the previously described Paleogene assemblages.

Paleogene aquatic angiosperms continued to be dominant in ponds and lakes, forming diverse assemblages and displaying increased provincialism (Martín-Closas 2003). Aquatic ferns also exhibited further diversification (Schneider et al. 2004), whereas taxonomic turnover within the Characeae took place during the Paleogene (Martín-Closas 2003). Further extinctions and replacements occurred within the charophytes later in the Cenozoic. Aquatic bryophytes became common in shallow lakes and swamps (Mai 1995). The most significant changes, however, are those experienced by lacustrine phytoplankton, essentially by expansion of freshwater diatoms and chrysophytes during the Eocene (Martín-Closas 2003; Wolfe and Edlund 2005; Sims et al. 2006; Leliaert et al. 2011). During the Neogene, diatoms clearly dominated over the Chlorococcales (Martín-Closas 2003; Sims et al. 2006). The overall ecologic impact of the colonization of freshwater bodies by diatoms cannot be overemphasized. In particular, diatoms typically exert a significant effect on the biogeochemical cycling of silica, promote a diversion of other nutrients into other trophic pathways and increase overall lacustrine productivity (Cohen 2003).

One of the most highly investigated Cenozoic lacustrine deposits is the series of four major paleolake basins that form the Green River Formation in the Western Interior of the United States. The Green River Formation is dated from ca. 54.0–43.5 Ma (Smith ME et al. 2008b), and consists of a mixture of open lacustrine, lake-margin lacustrine, shallow playa, carbonate mudflat, fluvial, deltaic and alluvial deposits (Ferber and Wells 1995; Chetel and Carroll 2010; Aswasereelert et al. 2013). The Green River Formation is assigned to Cenozoic Lake Assemblage Type 8 (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002), dominated by brachyceran fly larvae with few, if any, other aquatic insects (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002). Green River fossils overwhelmingly preserve land-based organisms, especially plants, insects, and vertebrates, to the near exclusion of autochthonous aquatic organisms (Wilson 1978), which likely was taphonomically modulated by depositional biases favoring terrestrial taxa (Smith, 2000, 2008). The insect fauna is very diverse, consisting of about 26 of the ca. 35 modern recognized orders for the Piceance Creek Basin of the Green River Formation (Pribyl et al. 1996). The apparently under-represented aquatic insect fauna is autochthonous, but only consists of several major lineages of mostly nematocerous Diptera, principally tipulids, cylindrotomids, culicids, chironomids, and the occasional aquatic beetle. In spite of the extensive geographic coverage and numerous fossiliferous strata, there is only minor representation of lotic and lentic fossils from the Green River Formation. Nevertheless, three families of dragonflies are represented (Wilson 1978; Petrulevičius et al. 2007), two families of Hemiptera, two families of beetles, four families of nematocerous Diptera and the enigmatic *Lithohypoderma* “botfly” (Pribyl et al. 1996; Sinitshenkova 2002). The Trichoptera includes the Hydropsychidae, Hydroptilidae (micro caddisflies), Limnephilidae, and Sericostomatidae. The particular reason for such an under-representation of the lentic and lotic fauna, especially when adjacent terrestrial insects are exceedingly abundant by comparison, is likely attributable to the role of size in the formation of live versus death assemblages of insects. In the Green River biota, death assemblages that become incorporated in the fossil record are smaller sized and more robust than live equivalents (Smith 2000). Although the role of size and robustness applies to beetles (Smith 2000), it is unclear if such a relationship also applies to softer-bodied, more gracile insects that are often disarticulated prior to sediment burial.

The taxonomic composition and ecologic structure of Neogene paleolakes is very similar to that of modern lakes (Zherikhin and Sinitshenkova 2002). Many modern aquatic species occur throughout the Neogene. A few extinct insect clades are known, such as the subfamily Electrobatinae of the Gerridae and the coral bug species *Halovelia electrodominica*, both from early Miocene Dominican Amber; the coeval dytiscid genus *Palaeogyrinus* from Germany; several extinct aquatic taxa of the Megaloptera and Neuroptera, including the species *Sialis strausi* from the Pliocene of Germany; and several new caddisfly case morphotypes that are difficult to attribute to potential modern or extinct genera (Illies 1967; Galewski and Glazek 1997; Sukatcheva 1982; Anderson 1998). Throughout the Miocene, these occurrences do not represent any significant change in aquatic insect community characterization, a conclusion buttressed by the similarity of overall lake ecologic structure between the middle Eocene and the present (Dunne et al. 2014), indicated in Fig. 11.13.

There is evidence for an increase in lentic habitats and their biotas at the beginning of the Neogene. This extension is indicated by greater submergent and emergent angiosperm vegetation that increased habitat structural complexity, resulting in an expansion of herbivory, greater constancy of O_2 levels and nutrient cycle stability (Zherikhin

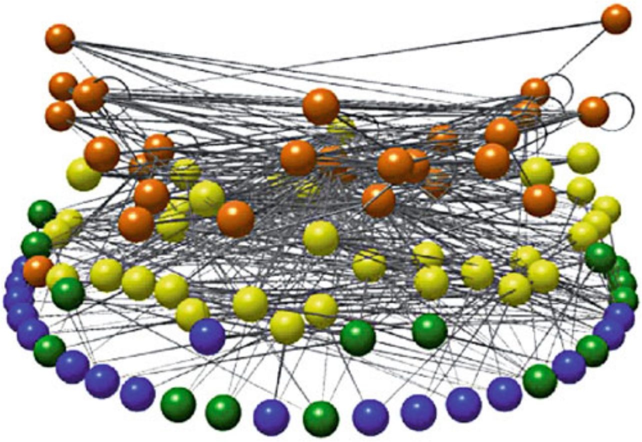


Fig. 11.13 Visualization of the middle Eocene (48 Ma) food web of Paleolake Messel, in central-west Germany, representing a post MLR lake. Spheres designate trophic taxa and lines represent feeding links. A trophic taxon is a species or group of species (in the case of microorganisms) that have links to organisms that consume it and to other organisms that it consumes. Plants have links only to their consumers. Looped links refer to cannibalism. The vertical axis corresponds to short-weighted trophic level, with autotrophic taxa and detritus at the bottom. The colors of nodes indicate the taxonomic assignment of species: green = plants, algae and diatoms; blue = bacteria, fungi and detritus; yellow = invertebrates; orange = vertebrates. This image was produced with Network 3D software (Williams 2010), and reprinted with permission from the Royal Society

1978; Kalugina 1980). Nevertheless, special sedimentary environments occupying spatially small areas could have hosted aquatic communities of distinctive taxonomic composition and ecologic structure. Examples of these biotic microcosms include small bodies of water associated with sinter structures, ponds in asphaltum depressions, karst sinkholes, impact craters, and pits created by subsurface diatreme explosions. Such deposits are typically spatiotemporally ephemeral and constitute a very minor part of the lacustrine record that is represented preferentially toward the recent.

11.7 Discussion

There are four issues about the MLR that necessitate further discussion. The first issue is whether the MLR is indirectly or directly connected to other obvious, major biotic events during the mid Mesozoic, such as the Mesozoic marine, parasitoid, angiosperm, and Cretaceous terrestrial revolutions. The second issue is to what extent did the MLR involve not only a change in the diversity and abundances of participating fossil groups, but also their effect on the sedimentological record through the increased variety of ichnotaxa and bioturbation intensities recorded from well sampled sections. A third issue is how modern lacustrine trophic webs were established. These trophic webs are recorded in a well-examined Paleogene lake deposit, but also should be present in earlier, mid-Mesozoic food webs. Finally, what is the role of behavioral convergence in shaping the aquatic marine and continental trace fossil records, and to what extent should ichnotaxonomic nomenclature be applied across the marine/continental divide to very similar trace fossils that involve convergent morphologies (and presumably behaviors).

11.7.1 Possible Connections to Other Mesozoic, Biotal Revolutions

Other than the MLR, four other, major biotic revolutions occurred during the mid to late Mesozoic: the Mesozoic marine revolution in the marine realm and the parasitoid, angiosperm and Cretaceous terrestrial revolutions in the continental realm. These mid-Mesozoic, global ecologic shifts may have had an effect on the MLR that may be relevant to the development of lacustrine food webs throughout the later Mesozoic. The possible connections among these five prolonged events may shed light on the shift of detritivore- to herbivore dominated ecosystems in lacustrine and other freshwater habitats during the mid Mesozoic.

One of the aspects involved in the Mesozoic marine revolution (see Chap. 9) was the notable increase in mechanical sturdiness and increased robustness of other structural features that promoted the resistance of shells, principally gastropods, to crushing by predators (Vermeij 1977; Stanley 1977). Major structural transformations favored durable shell architecture of molluscan prey, and involved new modes by mostly arthropods and teleost predators of pursuing, capturing, and overcoming the mechanical defenses of their prey. Another aspect of the Mesozoic marine revolution was intensification of marine herbivory, such as grazing on algae at relatively shallow and subsurface depths. Added to the expansion of durophagy and grazing pressure was increased predation in benthic communities that led to infaunalization of many former epibenthic groups, as well as a significant reduction of the sessile life habit (Stanley 2008). The major consequence of these innovations has been the relegation of their certain life forms to extinction or to refugial habitats (Oji 1996), and the occupation of their adaptive zones by competitively superior, new, predatory groups (Vermeij 1977; Stanley 1977). This worldwide marine reorganization has been linked to continental breakup, widening of latitudinal belts, and the emergence of angiosperms on land (Vermeij 1977).

The parasitoid revolution is based on an observation that the first appearances of several major clades of parasitoid insect clades occur primarily during the mid Jurassic (Labandeira 2002). Parasitoids are a distinctive type of carnivore in which a small, invading organism attaches to or lives on or in an animal and slowly feeds on internal tissues and organs of their relatively long-lived but still alive host. The much smaller parasitoid feeds on host such that the most vital organs are consumed immediately before the host dies, followed by its emergence from the host as an adult parasitoid (Vinson and Barbosa 1987). Parasites, by contrast, such as mosquitoes do not kill the host, but use host tissues such as blood to feed on. For insects, the actively feeding parasitoid stage is always a holometabolous larva, overwhelmingly a parasitoid wasp, and less frequently a brachyceran fly. Parasitoids may feed on their hosts internally (endoparasitoids) or externally (ectoparasitoids) and attack arthropod hosts, such as myriapods, arachnids, especially insects, and some vertebrates (Godfray 1994). The earliest appearance of the parasitoid guild was the mid Early Jurassic, during which several clades of parasitoid wasps appear. This was followed and supplemented by more modest brachyceran dipteran diversification and the massive radiation of several parasitoid superfamilies during the Late Jurassic, and continued with the addition of occasional neuropteran, beetle, and lepidopteran parasitoid lineages into the Paleogene (Labandeira 2002).

A major consequence of the parasitoid revolution was the increased complexity of food webs by insertion of a significant more efficient mode of carnivory. This greater efficiency resulted from the targeting of particular species of prey by a host-specific parasitoid using specific chemical, behavioral, visual, and other cues emanating from prey. With the proliferation of the host-specialist, parasitoid feeding guild that originated during the mid Mesozoic, carnivory became considerably more targeted than was the case for food webs earlier in time based solely on diffuse generalist predation patterns (Labandeira 2002). This ecological shift resulted in consumer-driven, top–down regulation of herbivores, rather than bottom–up, resource-driven regulation, based on modern food-web studies (Dunne et al. 2002). In modern ecosystems, parasitoid loads on insect herbivores are elevated (Memmott and Godfray 1993), and are much more efficient at assimilating prey biomass into consumer biomass than either predators such as dragonflies or parasites such as fleas or lice (Eggleton and Belshaw 1992). In lacustrine systems, unionacean and mytilacean bivalves are dispersed in their larval stages as ectoparasites on fish; some copepod and isopod crustaceans are also parasitic on fish, as well as certain flatworms and trematodes (Cohen 2003). One of the major effects of the parasitoid revolution on lake biotas was to further separate immature aquatic stages of insects from their adult terrestrial counterparts. Additional work needs to be done to properly address the importance of parasitoids in lacustrine food webs.

The angiosperm revolution consists of the early, major diversification interval of flowering plants, ranging during the mid Cretaceous from 125 to 90 million years ago (Crane et al 1995). The angiosperm revolution had a major effect on terrestrial ecosystem structure (Wing and Boucher 1998). The emergence of numerous clades of angiosperms over a ca. 35 million-year interval resulted in a major replacement of fern- and gymnosperm dominated floras by angiosperms in most habitats globally (Crane 1987), including aquatic settings (Wing and Boucher 1998).

The Cretaceous terrestrial revolution is directly connected to and may be a consequence of the angiosperm revolution because it encompasses not only the evolutionary radiation of land-dwelling organisms, but involves the replacement of ferns and gymnosperms by angiosperms (Lloyd et al. 2008). Therefore, the comments outlined for the angiosperm revolution are prefatory to the Cretaceous terrestrial revolution. Together with the rapid expansion of flowering plants, the Cretaceous terrestrial revolution includes the diversification of herbivorous and social insects (see Chap. 13), squamates, birds, and mammals (Lloyd et al. 2008). However, these authors (Lloyd et al. 2008) questioned the notion that dinosaur evolution was driven directly by angiosperm diversification. From an ichnologic standpoint, the appearance of trampled surfaces is a direct consequence of the expansion of dinosaur faunas that significantly altered lake-margin landscapes.

Both the Mesozoic marine revolution and the parasitoid revolution provided a greater efficiency in the conversion of prey biomass into consumer biomass. The angiosperm and Cretaceous terrestrial revolutions expanded the amount of photosynthetic biomass created by a new group of primary producers that had a major global impact. The MLR was characterized by increased infaunalization and a major trophic shift from detritivore-based to herbivore-based foodwebs in lacustrine and other terrestrial aquatic ecosystems. However, the detritivore to herbivore shift occurred much earlier in terrestrial ecosystems than in aquatic ones (Vermeij and Lindberg 2000; Miller and Labandeira 2002) – a shift that was already noticeable during the Permian (Labandeira 2006). This is not surprising, as in the continental realm, aquatic ecosystems always have been lagging behind terrestrial ecosystems in other features such as species diversity, trophic relationships, and food-web development (Vermeij and Lindberg 2000; Sinitshenkova 2002). Nevertheless, it is unclear whether there are satisfactory explanations invoking cause-and-effect links among any of these four major revolutions to lacustrine ecosystems.

11.7.2 Secular Changes in Global Ichnodiversity and Bioturbation

A systematic review of the ichnologic record indicates that the MLR is expressed not only by body-fossil data. Ichnologic evidence demonstrates that colonization of freshwater habitats has been a protracted process (Buatois and Mángano 1993a;

Buatois et al. 1998a), with the MLR representing a pivotal point (Cohen 2003) (Table 11.2). Freshwater colonization may have been delayed due to the need to develop complex osmoregulatory systems and innovative styles of reproduction and dispersal (Miller and Labandeira 2002).

Unlocking the evolutionary significance of the lacustrine trace fossil record requires integration of several conceptual and methodological tools. Patterns of change in global ichnodiversity may be misleading, and should not be analyzed in isolation (Buatois and Mángano 2013; see Chap. 16). Mesozoic global invertebrate ichnodiversity in lacustrine environments does not show any significant increase with respect to late Paleozoic levels (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a), in contrast to what may have been expected by diversity curves based on body fossils (Labandeira 2005b). Indeed, whereas global ichnodiversity levels for fully lacustrine environments have remained more or less constant since the Carboniferous, global ichnodiversity of lake-margin settings is actually higher in the late Paleozoic than in the Mesozoic. However, it often has been suggested that the Permian ichnodiversity peak reflects at least in part splitting tendencies in arthropod trackway taxonomy (see discussion in Buatois et al. 1998a and Chap. 6). Also, the fact that diversity trajectories for body and trace fossils are markedly dissimilar is not unexpected. The three groups that diversified the most – aquatic insects, aquatic macrophytes, and teleosts – are unevenly represented in the ichnologic record. Aquatic insects are thought to have been widespread tracemakers; some fish (e.g. cichlids) may contribute locally to sediment disturbance (Feibel 1987; Martin et al. 2010; Abbate et al. 2012); and aquatic macrophytes are represented by root structures but technically do not contribute to ichnodiversity. (No formal ichnotaxonomic names are given to root trace fossils.) In addition, it long has been recognized that equating ichnodiversity with biological diversity is fundamentally misleading, and one-to-one correspondences between ichnotaxa and biotaxa is simply not possible (Bromley 1996). This is particularly true for very simple structures (Buatois and Mángano 2011a), which tend to be dominant in lacustrine settings.

However, an evaluation of changes of ichnodiversity that parallel changes in intensity and depth of bioturbation may be illuminating. In both lake-margin and fully lacustrine deposits, an increase in extent and depth of bioturbation long has been recognized (Miller 1984; Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1996, 1998a; Miller and Labandeira 2002; Miller et al. 2002) (Fig. 11.14). In lake-margin settings, trace fossils of the *Scoyenia* ichnoguild became more abundant, leading to increased sediment mixing since the Middle Triassic (Buatois et al. 1998a). In addition, a stationary deep crayfish infauna , referred to as the *Camborygma* ichnoguild, was established by the Triassic, further contributing to destruction of primary sedimentary fabric. This is in sharp contrast with the situation of Paleozoic lake-margin deposits, which overwhelmingly are dominated by very shallow-tier trace fossils, mostly arthropod trackways (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a; see Chap. 6). Arthropod trackways, although locally present in Mesozoic lake-margin deposits, are never dominant components, and they essentially disappeared from the Cenozoic lacustrine trace-fossil record with the exception of glacial lakes, where they tend to occur in distal facies rather than in lake-margin deposits (Uchman et al. 2009). Seilacher (2008) underscored the importance of bioglue for trackway preservation,

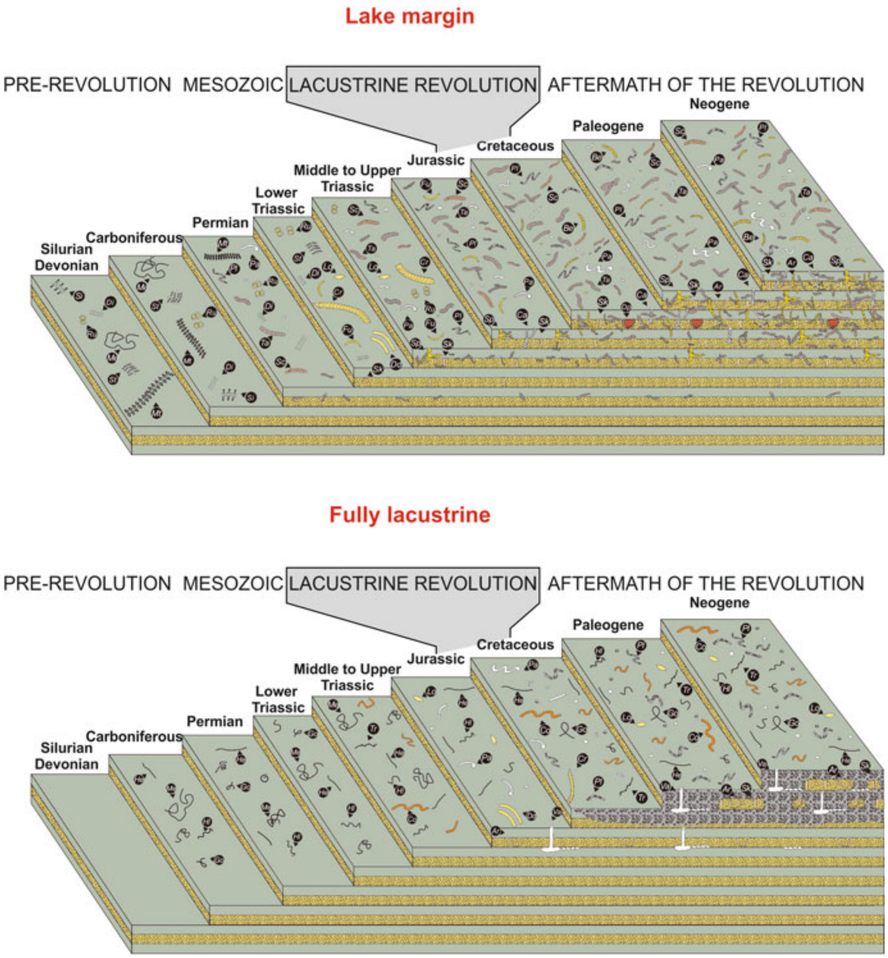


Fig. 11.14 Secular changes in bioturbation in lake-margin and fully subaqueous lacustrine deposits. Note progressive colonization of the infaunal ecospace through time

suggesting that the scarcity of trackways in post-Paleozoic lake-margin deposits may have resulted from the appearance of a bioturbating meiofauna, therefore precluding the formation of coherent biofilms. In any case, it is clear that there is a negative correlation between diversity of shallow-tier trace fossils and intensity and depth of bioturbation. This trend also has been noted for tidal flats, which display high diversity during the late Paleozoic due to a richness of shallow-tier structures and decreased ichnodiversity during the Mesozoic–Cenozoic, with ichnofaunas characterized by deeper-tier structures (Mángano et al. 2002; Mángano and Buatois 2015). This decrease in tidal-flat global ichnodiversity is arguably a taphonomic product resulting from increased colonization of infaunal ecospace (Mángano et al. 2002; Buatois and Mángano 2011a; Mángano and Buatois 2015). A similar argument can be posited to explain the post-Paleozoic decrease in global ichnodiversity in lake-margin deposits.

In fully lacustrine settings, a similar increase in intensity and depth of bioturbation is apparent throughout the Mesozoic, although changes seem to have been slightly more gradual, lagging behind those in lake-margin environments. During the Middle to Late Triassic, assemblages dominated by very shallow-tier grazing trails, not unlike those of the late Paleozoic, were still common (Metz 1995, 1996, 2000; Melchor et al. 2003; Melchor 2004). However, the simultaneous appearance of penetrative trace fossils is evidenced by systems of irregularly branched burrows, most likely produced by oligochaetes or insect larvae (Voigt and Hoppe 2010). The high density of these burrows contributed locally to disruption of the primary fabric, generating patches of intense bioturbation in lacustrine mudstones. Branching burrows occur in Lower Jurassic turbidites as well, reflecting the establishment of the *Vagorichnus* ichnoguild, which represents the activity of a mobile, mid-tier, deposit-feeding infauna (Buatois et al. 1995, 1996). These mid-tier trace fossils persisted in Cenozoic lacustrine deposits (Uchman et al. 2007). Interestingly, although Lower Jurassic turbidites contain many ichnotaxa (e.g. *Cochlichnus*, *Helminthopsis*) common in older deposits, these are more robust and produced infaunally, reflecting penetration into the sediment and unlike those of the late Paleozoic. In the example of the *Vagorichnus*-bearing deposits, the increase in maximum bioturbation depth is not associated with an increase in bioturbation intensity. The decoupling of bioturbation depth and intensity of bioturbation results from the observation that these burrow systems were emplaced at lithologic interfaces without causing major disturbance of the primary sedimentary fabric (Buatois et al. 1995, 1996).

This pattern contrasts with Cretaceous ichnofaunas, which include pervasive mottlings reflecting establishment of a shallow-tier deposit-feeding infauna, referred to as the *Planolites* ichnoguild. The high density of these structures caused major disruption of lacustrine sedimentary fabrics (Buatois and Mángano 1998; Buatois et al. 1998a). These observations may suggest that the establishment of the mixed layer in these settings is a result of the MLR. Although further work needs to be done to detect the exact timing of formation of the mixed layer, sparse data suggest that this sediment zone was already incipiently developed in lake bottoms by the Middle to Late Triassic and well established by the beginning of the Cretaceous. As is the case of lake-margin deposits, the appearance of these active bioturbators was detrimental for the preservation of very shallow-tier structures. In any case, biogenic homogenization of the lacustrine bottom sediments is not a universal phenomenon, as indicated by the dominance of very shallow-tier trace fossils, in pristinely preserved, sedimentary fabrics of other Lower Cretaceous lacustrine deposits (de Gibert et al. 2000, 2016; Buatois et al. 2000a), as well as in modern glaciolacustrine varves (Gibbard and Stuart 1974; Uchman et al. 2009). Studies in other modern lakes, such as the Great Lakes in North America, indicate up to 10 cm of deep reworking by insects, oligochaetes, bivalves, and amphipods (McCall and Tevesz 1982; Miller and Labandeira 2002), suggesting a well-established mixed layer.

The pattern of increased infaunalization during the MLR is empirically well supported, but the underlying causes remain more speculative. As a first approach, the increase in sediment penetration and disruption during the MLR is connected with the expansion and diversification of certain groups of benthic aquatic organisms, most likely dipterans (such as chironomids), which together with oligochaetes, are among the key bioturbators in modern lacustrine settings (McCall and Tevesz 1982; Duck and McManus 1984; Wootton 1988; Evenhuis 1994; Buatois et al. 1998a). At a deeper explanatory level, one may invoke protection from environmental disturbance, escape from predators and increased rates of buried organics as potential causes of infaunalization. It long has been known that burrowing is a key strategy intended to minimize environmental stress, such as salinity variations and sediment disturbance by currents or waves (see Buatois and Mángano 2011a for discussion). However, environmental disturbance may only work as an explanation for infaunalization at a local scale. In a situation such as the MLR, infaunalization occurred globally and no overarching disturbance factor can be associated with this macroevolutionary trait, therefore precluding protection from environmental disturbance as a likely causal factor of infaunalization. In contrast, the link between increased predation pressure and infaunalization seems to be a more robust explanation because the former is considered a driving force in macroevolution, with the infaunal ecospace serving as refugium for predation. As discussed above, the coincidence between increased predation and infaunalization during the MLR is consistent with a causal link. The possibility that infaunalization can be linked to exploitation of increasing amounts of organic matter buried within the sediment cannot be disregarded. Higher quantities of food supply may have resulted from increased eutrophication in lacustrine systems combined with increased delivery of terrestrially derived and aquatic organic matter resulting from macrophyte diversification. Indeed, nutrient availability may be regarded as an overarching factor controlling lacustrine ecospace utilization in deep time (Cohen 2003). The ultraoligotrophic conditions predominant during the early Paleozoic were most likely the key limiting factor preventing colonization of lacustrine bottoms, a situation that started to change during the late Paleozoic, albeit with colonization limited to a narrow inhabitable zone close to the sediment–water interface (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a). Finally, it may be argued that invoking complex geobiologic feedbacks between bioturbation and a wide range of abiotic to biotic factors (e.g. Mángano and Buatois 2014) probably is more realistic than strict causal linkage. In the case of the MLR, the timing of events suggests that the interplay of increased predation pressures and food availability may have been the casual drivers forces in lacustrine infaunalization.

To summarize, whereas the Paleozoic is characterized by an increase in global ichnodiversity as a result of the progressive colonization of continental environments (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a; see Chap. 6), the ichnologic expression of the MLR is one of increased colonization of infaunal ecospace (Table 11.2). This is reflected by an increase in both degree and depth of bioturbation, although these increases occurred first in lake margins and subsequently in fully lacustrine settings. In addition, the increased intensity of bioturbation lagged behind greater penetration in burrowing depth in both settings. For further evaluation of the evolutionary significance of the MLR, we turn now our attention to trophic webs.

11.7.3 The Establishment of Modern Lacustrine Trophic Webs

Biotic interactions are of fundamental importance to understand ecosystem structure and function in lakes. In particular, deciphering food webs, the complex networks among predators, herbivores, autotrophs, and detritus/deposit feeders is a central issue in reconstructing the biotic dynamics of lakes. Experimental studies show that lacustrine food webs reflect an interplay of both bottom–up and top–down selective pressures. Bottom–up processes involve food/nutrient resource availability and competition for those resources whereas top–down processes involve trophic cascades in which predation and selective consumption are the main regulators of community structure (Carpenter and Kitchell 1993). Various groups of benthic invertebrates, including crustaceans, mollusks, annelids, and larval insects play important roles in mediating energy flow, nutrient cycling, and the ingestion of organic and inorganic detritus and fecal production (reflected to some extent by bioturbation) that is a central component of lacustrine food webs (Charbonneau and Hare 1998; Covich et al. 1999; Voigt and Hoppe 2010). However, from an energetic point of view, the importance of planktonic and nektonic components of the lacustrine food web is probably much greater (Schweitzer et al. 2007).

Accordingly, exploring the timing of the establishment of the modern lacustrine food web and its potential connection with the MLR may yield insights into the evolutionary history of lake ecosystems. There is little known about Early Triassic lakes or their fossils. Late Middle–early Late Triassic Paleolake Madygen, discussed earlier (Voigt et al. 2006), included organisms representing at least five trophic levels (Fig. 11.15). Phytoplankton (of which there is no fossil evidence as yet) and macrophytes (e.g., *Ricciopsis*, *Neocalamites*, and some lycopsids) were presumably the major primary producers. An important external source of food must have been dead

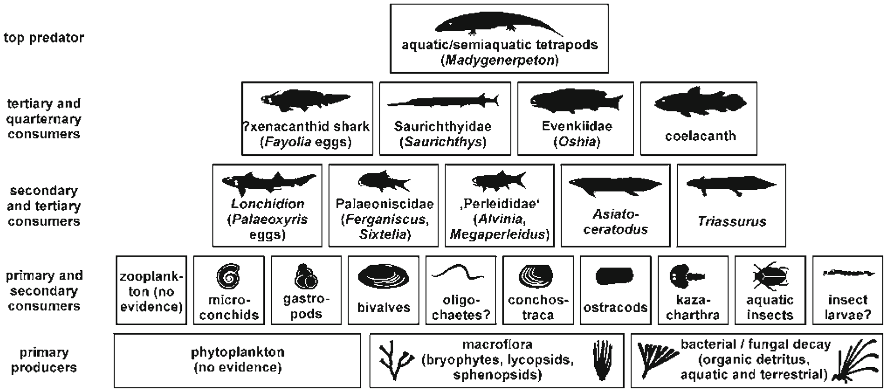


Fig 11.15 Ecosystem of the Madygen Formation of Kyrgyzstan. Trophic levels and their respective constituents as proposed for the Triassic Madygen lake environment. Note the absence of macro herbivores After Voigt et al. (2006, 2016)

organic matter (e.g., plants, insects, tetrapods) transported from the land into lakes. Zooplankton (of which there is no fossil evidence as yet), microconchids, gastropods, bivalves, conchostracans, ostracods, kazakharthrans, certain insects (schizophorid beetles), and wormlike aquatic invertebrates such as oligochaetes or particular insect larvae, based on indirect evidence from trace fossils, are interpreted as primary consumers. These organisms in turn served as food for a variety of fishes including actinopterygians (Palaeoniscidae, "Perleididae"), dipnoans (*Asiatoceratodus*), and durophagous sharks (*Lonchidion*). Four large carnivorous fishes – *Saurichthys*, *Oshia*, a currently unknown xenacanthid (suggested by *Fayolia*-type egg capsules), and coelacanths – can be considered tertiary consumers. The semi-aquatic reptiliomorph *Madygenerpton* may have been the apex predator of Paleolake Madygen. This system shows clear evolutionary innovations when compared to Paleozoic lakes, as it represents among the earliest known record of a well-developed, deep lacustrine infauna (Voigt and Hoppe 2010), and documents a quantitatively important pattern of macrophytic colonization of the shoreline (Moisan et al. 2012a).

Although energy-flow diagrams have not been constructed for a Late Triassic lake, coarse-grained trophic webs have been estimated for the biota of a hypotrophic (low primary production, high O_2) Middle Jurassic lake (Fig. 11.6; Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996), and for a pseudoligotrophic (high O_2 but with an active herbivore guild) Early Cretaceous lake (Fig. 11.10; Zherikhin et al. 1999). These data indicate that there was a major shift in lacustrine productivity and biotal complexity later in the Mesozoic (Table 11.1). However, it appears that these changes likely began during the Late Triassic. The trophic structure of the Jurassic *Mesoleuctra–Mesoneta* Assemblage (Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996) occurred throughout the warm temperate region of Siberia and other Eurasian and perhaps Gondwanan Jurassic localities (Sinitshenkova 2002). In the lowlands at temperate latitudes, particularly in Eurasia, these shallow, hypotrophic (type B) lakes of the Jurassic consisted of depauperate lentic and lotic faunas that allowed high O_2 levels to accumulate, and with a near exclusive trophic emphasis on detritivory (Fig. 11.6). The high abundance of O_2 throughout these hypotrophic lakes, and particularly the benthos, is attributable to the absence of respiring organisms to sufficiently take up the O_2 that was being produced by autotrophic microorganisms (Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996). In addition, Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin (1996) state that these lakes were littered with incoming ginkgoalean and czekanoskialean plant detritus that exerted a negative control on productivity of the lake by having an antimicrobial effect on decomposers, judging by the negative effect that modern *Ginkgo biloba* litter has on modern lake productivity (Samylina 1988). Consequently, productivity in these lakes had two, related features: there was poor development of a detritivore base, in part likely hindered by the dominant terrestrial vegetation of the time that favored buildups of O_2. In addition, there was absence of large, especially vascular, hydric plants that would allow herbivores to expand herbivory, as seen in later Cretaceous lakes (Fig. 11.10). The subsequent changeover is notable, particularly establishment of a guild of grazing herbivorous organisms, present in pseudoligotrophic Paleolake Baissa, a type C lake but also with high O_2 levels, is notable. This shift during the mid Early Cretaceous from a detritivore-based to herbivore-driven food web, occurred in the switch from Type A and B to Type C to E lakes, documented in Eurasia, and is probably the single most important event associated with the MLR. The ecologic structure of Early Cretaceous Paleolake Baissa differs significantly from that of its predecessor lacustrine biotas during the Jurassic (Table 11.1).

The basic trophic structure of Cretaceous Paleolake Baissa was a highly productive, pseudo-oligotrophic lake in which there were relatively low levels of dissolved nutrients supporting an abundant and diverse standing crop of green plants, especially algae. Paleolake Baissa apparently is a lake type without a clear modern analog. The algae was limited by high consumption levels, but promoted a complex, herbivore-based food web within an ecosystem of de-emphasized detritivore food chains (Sinitshenkova 2002). The elevated O_2 levels were sufficiently depressed to allow a diverse, detritivorous insect fauna (Zherikhin et al. 1999) at greater depths in the water column, the hypolimnion. At intermediate depths, in the mesolimnion, but below the surface-water layer of the epilimnion, there was an herbivore community of grazing and algivorous gastropods and insects, including case-bearing caddisflies, which were supported by abundant and diverse benthic, planktonic, and floating algae (Sinitshenkova 2002). Paleolake Baissa was an early lake ecosystem where aquatic invertebrate herbivory played a significant trophic role. Other coeval deposits of similar origin are the lacustrine beds of the Yixian Formation in China (Barrett 2000; Pan et al. 2011) and the Las Hoyas wetland deposits of Spain (Buscalioni et al. 2016 and references therein).

In particular, the Las Hoyas fossil site, which is now interpreted as a freshwater carbonatic, lentic wetland, has been analyzed recently from a trophic-web approach (Buscalioni et al. 2016). According to this study, hydrophytic vegetation is dominated by charophytes and aquatic angiosperms. The large mass of hydrophytic plants allowed the presence of abundant grazers, such as ostracods, gastropods, spelaeogryphaceans, and aquatic insects, pointing to the importance of herbivory in this trophic web, as is the case of Paleolake Baissa. Various worm-like organisms have been regarded as feeding on phytoplankton and zooplankton, whereas unionid bivalves were suspension feeders and crayfish are considered omnivorous scavengers. Some large aquatic insects may have preyed on fish larvae and medium-sized fish consumed various aquatic insects. Buscalioni et al. (2016) also emphasized the importance of insects and fish in lake productivity, which is consistent with data from modern wetlands.

During the Cretaceous, physical and chemical lake conditions exhibit a major shift favoring development of certain lake types based on a variety of physiochemical conditions. These features were increased aridity, greater topography, more unstable and variable lake levels, enhanced variability in annual temperature, greater water-column stratification, and higher water turbidity. Chemical indicators show elevated nutrient levels, a tendency toward alkaline over acidic water *p*H's, and more variable and lower dissolved oxygen levels. These physiochemical shifts provided an opportune environment for biotal changes, such as less allochthonous plant detritus as input, much greater turnover rates, higher microbial activity, and considerably higher algal production, but anomalously, lower macrophyte production. For food-web development, there was a shift from detritivore to herbivore processing of primary productivity (via more intensive levels of herbivory), greater complexity of food webs, and an emphasis from K-selected to r-selected evolutionary strategies. Among benthic insects there was a trophic shift from shredders and scrapers to filter-feeding and live-plant ingesters as the dominant feeding types (Sinitshenkova and Zherikhin 1996).

Finally, a recent examination of the 48 million-year-old deposit of Paleolake Messel, near Darmstadt, in central Germany, produced an exhaustive food-web analysis that was made for 94, well-documented organisms, including amphibious taxa, that constituted the lake portion (Fig. 11.13) of the total food web (Dunne et al. 2014). This study provides valuable information on food webs in the aftermath of the MLR. The Messel lacustrine web was constructed by using highly-resolved, well-documented data of feeding relationships among all taxa. The lacustrine food-web data from Messel indicate an ecologic structure very similar to modern lake webs, and notably, a stability of trophic relationships that were likely in place shortly after the K-Pg extinction (Dunne et al. 2014). However, the fact that Chlorococcales dominated over diatoms in Paleolake Messel represents a departure from the situation in modern lakes.

11.7.4 Behavioral Convergence Between Marine and Continental Benthic Fauna

A comparison between marine and lacustrine ichnofaunas suggests that use of freshwater infaunal ecospace may have been less complete than in marine environments (Miller and Labandeira 2002). In addition, levels of ichnodiversity and complexity of biogenic structures are significantly lower in lakes than in marine settings (Buatois and Mángano 1998). Evaluation of the extent and limitations of behavioral convergence on both sides of the salinity barrier may help to understand evolutionary constraints on the lake colonization process.

Ichnotaxonomic problems undoubtedly prevented an adequate recognition of the similarities and differences between the marine and continental realms. There are two sides to this problem: uncritical use of marine ichnotaxa in continental settings and unsupported erection of new ichnotaxa apparently exclusive to continental settings. Whereas the former has contributed to the overemphasis of behavioral convergence, the latter promoted its lack of appreciation. This is essentially an issue with freshwater, rather than terrestrial trace fossils. The vast majority of the latter (e.g. *Coprinisphaera*, *Termitichnus*, *Vondrichnus*, *Celliforma*, *Eatonichnus*, *Castrichnus, Quirogaichnus*) are exclusively found in paleosols, and their ichnotaxonomic intricacies have been clarified by extremely detailed and solid work (e.g. Genise 2000, 2004; Laza 2006).

Freshwater trace fossils tend to be characterized by relatively simple morphologies, typically including facies-crossing ichnotaxa that occur in marine environments (e.g. *Gordia*, *Helminthoidichnites*, *Cochlichnus*). In contrast, there are many ichnotaxa that are restricted to marine environments, including the typical elements of the *Nereites* and *Zoophycos* Ichnofacies and a considerable number of those in the *Cruziana* Ichnofacies (Buatois and Mángano 2007). Arguably, the best example of this confusion is *Scolicia*. This ichnogenus consists of bilobate or trilobate horizontal structures displaying a complex meniscate backfill and two parallel strings, representing the feeding and locomotion activities of irregular echinoids (Smith and Crimes 1983; Uchman 1995; Bromley et al. 1997), which are restricted to the marine realm. Although *Scolicia* has been the subject of a number of taxonomic revisions and is well understood among ichnologists, surprisingly the name continues to be applied for continental, simple epirelief furrows that lack the complex morphology of this ichnogenus (Turner 1978; Hasiotis 2002, 2004; Lovelace and Lovelace 2012). Less commonly, other typical marine ichnotaxa, such as *Paleodictyon*, *Nereites,* and *Chondrites*, are used for much simpler freshwater trace fossils. Structures included in *Paleodictyon* from freshwater settings (e.g. Archer and Maples 1984; Wu 1985; Pickerill 1990) are quite simple, and do not display the regular pattern that characterizes this ichnogenus in marine turbidites. A feeding trace referred to as *Nereites* in lacustrine turbidites (Hu et al. 1998) lacks the internal, complex backfill structure of this ichnogenus, displaying only superficial similarities with *Nereites*. Feeding traces doubtfully assigned to *Chondrites* in lacustrine deposits (Smith et al. 1982; Kim et al. 2005) may superficially resemble this ichnogenus, although the dichotomous, primary successive branching that is diagnostic of *Chondrites* has never been documented in continental settings.

By contrast, some names that have been introduced for freshwater trace fossils fail to pass ichnotaxonomic validation. The classic example is *Isopodichnus*, a combination of short, bilobate resting traces and more continuous bilobate trails. Although *Isopodichnus* was frequently used in the past for continental bilobate trace fossils, recently its use essentially has been abandoned, following convincing demonstration that it is a junior synonym of *Rusophycus* and *Cruziana* (Bromley 1996). More recently, however, meniscate trace fossils present in continental deposits, previously referred informally as “adhesive meniscate burrows” (Hasiotis 2004), were subsequently included in a new ichnogenus, *Naktodemasis* (Smith JJ et al. 2008). However, *Naktodemasis* clearly falls within the diagnosis of *Taenidium* (Krapovickas et al. 2009; Díez-Canseco et al. 2016), an ichnogenus known from marine environments as well.

Behavioral convergence may also be evaluated by examining categories of ichnodisparity (architectural designs) rather than ichnotaxa. Of the 58 architectural design categories defined for invertebrate bioturbation structures (see Chap. 16), none are exclusive to freshwater settings, six are only present in terrestrial settings (vertical to oblique simple ornamented burrows; isolated, clustered, or interconnected cells; chambers with discrete thick linings; excavated chambers with thin linings undetachable from rock matrix; interconnected chambers and boxworks; and Holes, pits and galleries in walls and fillings), and one is shared by terrestrial and marginal-ichnofaunas (Simple to complex burrows with terminal chambers). Indeed, the only ichnogenus in the latter present in both marine and continental environments is *Macanopsis*, which actually occurs in backshore coastal areas, rather than in fully marine settings.

Freshwater ichnofaunas are represented by twenty architectural design categories, all of which also occur in marine environments: (1) simple horizontal trails (*Archaeonassa, Circulichnis, Cochlichnus, Gordia, Helminthoidichnites, Helminthopsis, Herpystezoum, Mermia*); (2) trails with undulating transverse bars and furrows (*Steinsfjordichnus*); (3) bilobate trails and paired grooves (*Cruziana, Didymaulichnus, Diplopodichnus*); (4) trackways and scratch marks (e.g. *Diplichnites, Hamipes, Keircalia, Lithographus, Siskemia, Stiallia, Stiaria, Tasmanadia, Umfolozia*); (5) bilaterally symmetrical short, scratched impressions (e.g. *Avolatichnium, Rotterodichnium, Tonganoxichnus*); (6) bilaterally symmetrical short, scratched burrows (e.g. *Rusophycus*); (7) passively filled horizontal burrows (*Palaeophycus*); (8) simple actively filled (massive) horizontal burrows (e.g. *Planolites*); (9) simple actively filled (meniscate) horizontal burrows (e.g. *Scoyenia, Taenidium, Beaconites*); (10) simple actively filled (pelletoidal) horizontal burrows (e.g. *Edaphichnium, Sphaerapus*); (11) complex actively filled (meniscate) horizontal burrows (*Scolecocoprus*); (12) horizontal branching burrow systems (*Labyrintichnus, Paracanthorhaphe, Shanwangichnus, Vagorichnus)*; (13) horizontal burrows with horizontal to vertical branches (*Ctenopholeus*, *Treptichnus*); (14) burrows with horizontal spreiten (*Fuersichnus, Rhizocorallium*); (15) isolated and serial almond-shaped burrows (*Calceoformites, Lockeia, Ptychoplasma*); (16) vertical simple burrows (e.g. *Skolithos*); (17) vertical U- and Y-shaped burrows (e.g. *Arenicolites, Diplocraterion*); (18) vertical multiple U- and Y-shaped burrows (*Polykladichnus*); (19) Simple to complex burrows with terminal chambers (*Camborygma, Castrichnus, Katbergia, Macanopsis, Platicytes)*; and (20) mazes and boxworks (*Thalassinoides*, *Spongeliomorpha, Virgaichnus*)

The common feature of this list is that these freshwater biogenic structures collectively represent relatively simple behaviors. Miller and Vokes (1998) categorized trace fossils as incidental and deliberate. Incidental trace fossils are those that record a single or dominant behavioral activity, and typically are structurally simple. Deliberate trace fossils are those that represent restructuring of habitats, modulation of disturbances, and control of food resources, and are typically structurally complex. Freshwater trace fossils tend to fall within the first category. In some cases, the same groups of producers were involved (*Lockeia* produced by both marine and freshwater bivalves). In other cases, true behavioral convergence can be invoked. The U-shaped burrow *Arenicolites* in marine environments is produced by a wide variety of organisms, such as polychaetes, echiuran worms, crustaceans, holothurians, and enteropneusts (e.g. Bromley 1996; Mángano et al. 2002), whereas in freshwater settings insects and oligochaetes are involved (e.g. McCall and Tevesz 1982; Scott et al. 2012a). Amphipods produce U-shaped burrows in both freshwater and marine settings. Behavioral convergence on both sides of the salinity barrier seems to have occurred only with the simplest ethologic types. The most complex architectural categories, such as burrows with helicoidal spreiten, dichotomous branching burrows, and those included within graphoglyptids, do not have a freshwater counterpart. This is clearly illustrated by the contrasting trace-fossils suites present in lacustrine and marine turbidites (Buatois and Mángano 1998).

Although the term "salinity barrier" has been commonly used to contrast the nature of freshwater and marine ichnofaunas, the term is somewhat misleading. Differences between ichnodiversity levels and the degree of morphologic complexity of trace fossils most likely are explained by the stability-time hypothesis developed by Sanders (1968), rather than salinity per se. According to this hypothesis, species diversity – and parallel to this, the degree of complexity of biogenic structures – is a function of environmental stability or predictability of the environment. Because lakes are considerably shorter-lived than oceanic basins, they tend to display lower taxonomic diversity (and ichnodiversity) levels and more simple structures than marine settings (Buatois and Mángano 1998). In addition, this line of reasoning can be applied to understand contrasting ichnodiversity levels in different lakes. For example, lakes from recently glaciated regions exhibit lower diversity levels than those from the long-lived, large, and deep lakes such as Lakes Baikal and Tanganyika (Saunders 1968).

Finally, regardless of the specifics of the MLR and lacustrine ecosystems in general, there are at least two common themes between the macroevolutionary aspects of marine and lacustrine settings. First, the overall trend in increased infaunalization discussed above also took place in marine basins, albeit with very different timing, because infaunalization in lacustrine basins lagged behind the same process in marine settings (Buatois and Mángano 1993a; Buatois et al. 1998a). Second, an analogue of the onshore – offshore pattern recognized in marine communities seems to be apparent in freshwater settings as well. An onshore origination of novelties and subsequent migration or expansion into deeper water has been proposed in marine settings based on body fossils (e.g. Jablonski et al. 1983; Sepkoski and Miller 1985; Jablonski 2005; Sepkoski and Sheehan 1983) and trace fossils (Crimes and Anderson 1985; Bottjer et al. 1988; Jensen and Mens 1999). In freshwater settings, an analogue of the onshore-offshore pattern is indicated by increases in the depth and extent of bioturbation that took place progressively through time, expanding from fluvial and lake-margin settings to permanent subaqueous lacustrine environments (Buatois et al. 1998a). These commonalities between the continental and marine trace-fossil records suggest the existence of recurrent macroevolutionary patterns of animal–substrate interactions through time (see Chap. 16).

11.8 Conclusions

Our review of the trace-fossil and body-fossil histories of the continental aquatic record suggests that the Mesozoic Lacustrine Revolution (MLR) represents a significant evolutionary event for lacustrine ecosystems that took place in a protracted fashion in time and space. Although ichnologic data demonstrate that both lake-margin and fully lacustrine deposits were colonized prior to the MLR, benthic activity essentially was restricted to a very narrow zone at the sediment–water interface, leaving the overwhelming portion of infaunal ecospace empty or underutilized. This situation commenced first in lake-margin environments during the Middle to Late Triassic, as shown by widespread presence of mid-tier meniscate trace fossils and deep-tier crayfish burrows. Colonization of the infaunal ecospace in these deposits resulted in more intense sediment reworking, typically precluding preservation of superficial trace fossils such as arthropod trackways. Although incipient penetration of the substrate in fully lacustrine settings has been recorded locally during the Middle to Late Triassic, ichnofaunas from these settings are typically reminiscent of those from the Paleozoic, suggesting that colonization of lacustrine bottoms was delayed in comparison with lake margins. Deeper penetration into the substrate became more common during the Early Jurassic, but the intensity of bioturbation remained low. The lacustrine mixed layer seems to have become well-established by the Early Cretaceous, as indicated by intense bioturbation mottlings.

The MLR also is recorded by examination of the record of body-fossils, particularly arthropods and angiosperms, and by trophic interactions at both the interorganismic and entire-lake foodweb levels. From an ecosystem perspective, prior to the MLR, lacustrine primary production by microorganisms was low and the depressed level of invertebrate consumption was overwhelmingly detritivorous. After the MLR, lakes are characterized by the appearance of macrophytes and a significantly more robust herbivore guild of microorganisms and increasingly larger arthropods and vertebrates, especially grazers on plants other than microscopic and small algae. This transition occurred during elevated lake oxygen levels, attributable to the insufficiency of detritivorous microorganisms before the MLR and detritivorous plus dominant herbivorous organisms after the MLR to use all available O_2 for respiration. Given this context, the MLR actually represents the incremental trophic shift from a detritivore-based to an herbivore-based lacustrine biota and concomitant food-web adjustments. But this change also represents a shift toward infaunalization that results from predatory escalation, also seen in other parts of the lake environment postdating the MLR. Perhaps related to predatory escalation is the distinct evolution of insect species in which their immature aquatic stages become increasingly more environmentally decoupled from their conspecific, exclusively terrestrially occurring adult stages. Based on the arthropod body-fossil record, this switch took place during the Late Jurassic to Early Cretaceous, but may have had a variable spatiotemporal occurrence in other mid-Mesozoic continents. Information from both trace fossils and body fossils suggests that this shift to more mixed trophic strategy consisting of detritivores, herbivores, predators, and other macroguilds that form animal communities has persisted to the present since initiation of the MLR, as demonstrated by the Paleolake Messel food web.

Acknowledgements Tony Ekdale, Leif Tapanila, and Mark Wilson provided useful feedback on the Kenyan stromatolites. Richard Bromley and Ulla Asgaard showed to some of us (LAB and MGM) the wonderful Flemming Fjord trace-fossil collection. Nilo Azambuja Filho and Adali Spadini showed one of us (LAB) the lacustrine outcrops in the Sergipe-Alagoas Basin of Brazil. Robin Renaut and Bernie Owen guided LAB through the impressive lakes of the Kenya Rift Valley, resulting in a greater appreciation of the complexities of these systems. Robert Metz made available trace-fossil photos from the Newark Supergroup. Ángela Buscalioni and Francisco

Poyato-Ariza provided information on the ecology of Las Hoyas. Ángela Buscalioni and Nic Minter reviewed the chapter, offering valuable suggestions to improve it. Thanks go to Jorge Santiago-Blay for photography of specimens in Fig. 11.7 and assistance with identifications. Jennifer Dunne and Richard Williams rendered the food web in Fig. 11.13, and Finnegan Marsh produced Figs. 11.6, 11.7, and 11.10. This is contribution 276 of the Evolution of Terrestrial Ecosystems consortium the National Museum of Natural History in Washington, D.C., USA.

References

Abbate E, Bruni P, Landucci F, Pellicano G (2012) Unusual ichnofossils in *Homo erectus*-bearing beds of the Pleistocene lake deposits in central-eastern Eritrea, East Africa. Palaios 27:97–102

Adam DP, Mahood AD (1981) Chrysophyte cysts as potential environmental indicators. Geol Soc Am Bull 92:839–844

Alifanov VR, Kurochkin EN (2011) *Kyrgyzsaurus bukhanchenkoi* gen. et sp. nov., a new reptile from the Triassic of southwestern Kyrgyzstan. Paleontol J 45:639–647

Allison PA, Maeda H, Tuzino T, Maeda Y (2008) Exceptional preservation within Pleistocene lacustrine sediments of Shiobara, Japan. Palaios 23:260–266

Anderson NM (1998) Water striders from the Paleogene of Denmark with a review of the fossil record and evolution of semiaquatic bugs (Hemiptera, Gerromorpha). Biol Skr Dan Vid Sel 50:1–157

Anderson RY, Dean WE (1988) Lacustrine varve formation through time. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 62:215–235

Anderson OJ, Lucas SG (1996) Stratigraphy and depositional environments of Middle and Upper Jurassic rocks, southeastern San Juan Basin, New Mexico. New Mexico Geol Soc Guidebook, 47th Conf, pp 205–210

Anderson LC, Wesslingh FP, Hartman J (2010) A phylogenetic and morphologic context for the radiation of an endemic fauna in a long-lived lake: Corbulidae (Bivalvia; Myoida) in the Miocene Pebas Formation of western Amazonia. Paleobiology 36:534–554

Archer AW, Maples CG (1984) Trace-fossil distribution across a marine-to-nonmarine gradient in the Pennsylvanian of southwestern Indiana. J Paleontol 58:448–466

Archibald JD, Bryant LJ (1990) Differential Cretaceous–Tertiary extinctions of non-marine vertebrates: evidence from northeastern Montana. In: Sharpton VL, Ward P (eds) Global Catastrophes in Earth History: an interdisciplinary conference on impacts, Volcanism, and mass mortality. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 247:549–562

Ashley G, Liutkus CM (2002) Tracks, trails and trampling by large vertebrates in a rift valley paleo-wetland, lowermost Bed II, Olduvai Gorge, Tanzania. Ichnos 9:23–32

Askevold IS (1990) Classification of tertiary fossil Donaciinae of North America and their implications about the evolution of the Donaciinae (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae). Can J Zool 68:2135–2145

Aswasereelert W, Meyers SR, Carroll AR, Peters SE, Smith ME, Feigl KL (2013) Basin-scale cyclostratigraphy of the Green River Formation, Wyoming. Geol Soc Am Bull 125:216–228

Babinszki E, Sztanó O, Magyari Á (2003) Episodic deposition in the Kála bay of Lake Pannon: sedimentology and trace fossils of Kálla Sand. Foldtani Kozlony 133:363–382

Bailey JV, Cohen AS, Kring DA (2005) Lakes in well-buffered catchments: implications for fossil preservation and survival of freshwater organisms following the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary acid rain trauma. Palaios 20:376–389

Barrett PM (2000) Evolutionary consequences of dating the Yixian Formation. Trends Ecol Evol 15:99–103

Bechley G (1998) Phylogeny and Systematics of Fossil Dragonflies (Insecta: Odonatoptera) with Special Reference to Some Mesozoic Outcrops. Ph.D. thesis, Eberhard Karls University, Tubingen

Behrensmeyer AK, Kidwell SM (1985) Taphonomy's contributions to paleobiology. Paleobiology 11:105–119

Behrensmeyer AK, Kidwell SM, Gastaldo RA (2000) Taphonomy and paleobiology. Paleobiology 26(4):103–147

Benner JS, Ridge JC, Knecht RJ (2009) Timing of post-glacial reinhabitation and ecological development of two New England, USA, drainages based on trace fossil evidence. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 272:212–231

Bertone MA, Courtney GW, Wiegmann BM (2008) Phylogenetics and temporal diversification of the earliest true flies (Insecta: Diptera) based on multiple nuclear genes. Syst Entomol 33:668–687

Bilton DT, Freeland JR, Okamura B (2001) Dispersal in freshwater invertebrates. Ann Rev Ecol Syst 32:159–181

Boag DA (1985) Dispersal in pond snails: potential role of waterfowl. Can J Zool 64:904–909

Bohacs KM, Carroll AR, Neal JE, Mankiewicz PJ (2000) Lake-Basin type, source potential, and hydrocarbon character: an integrated sequence-stratigraphic-geochemical framework. In Gierlowski-Kordesch D, Kelts K (ed) Lake basins through space and time. AAPG Studies in Geol 46:3–34

Bohacs KM, Hasiotis ST, Demko TD (2007) Continental ichnofossils of the Green River and Wasatch Formations, Eocene, Wyoming: a preliminary survey and proposed relation to lake-basin type. Mt Geol 44:79–108

Bottjer DJ, Droser ML, Jablonski D (1988) Palaeoenvironmental trends in the history of trace fossils. Nature 333:252–255

Bradbury JP, Kirkland DW (1966) Upper Jurassic aquatic Hemiptera from the Todilto Formation. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 101:24 [abstract]

Brenner W, Foster CB (1994) Chlorophycean algae from the Triassic of Australia. Rev Palaeobot Palyno 80:209–234

Bromley RG (1996) Trace fossils: biology, taphonomy and applications. Chapman & Hall, London

Bromley RG, Asgaard U (1979) Triassic freshwater ichnocoenoses from Carlsberg Fjord, East Greenland. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 28:39–80

Bromley RG, Asgaard U (1991) Ichnofacies: a mixture of taphofacies and biofacies. Lethaia 24:153–163

Bromley RG, Asgaard U, Jensen M (1997) Experimental study of sediment structures created by a spatangoid echinoid, *Echinocardium mediterraneum*. Proc Geol Assoc 108:183–189

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (1993a) Ecospace utilization, paleoenvironmental trends and the evolution of early nonmarine biotas. Geology 21:595–598

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (1993b) Trace fossils from a Carboniferous turbiditic lake: implications for the recognition of additional nonmarine ichnofacies. Ichnos 2:237–258

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (1993c) The ichnotaxonomic status of *Plangtichnus* and *Treptichnus*. Ichnos 2:217–224

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (1995) The paleoenvironmental and paleoecological significance of the lacustrine *Mermia* ichnofacies: an archetypical subaqueous nonmarine trace fossil assemblage. Ichnos 4:151–161

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (1998) Trace fossil analysis of lacustrine facies and basins. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 183:71–86

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2004) Animal-substrate interactions in freshwater environments: applications of ichnology in facies and sequence stratigraphic analysis of fluvio-lacustrine successions. In: McIlroy D (ed) The Application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc London Spec Pub 228:311–333

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2007) Invertebrate ichnology of continental freshwater environments. In: Miller W (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2009) Applications of ichnology in lacustrine sequence stratigraphy: potential and limitations. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 272:127–142

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2011a) Ichnology: organism–substrate interactions in space and time. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2011b) The Déjà vu effect: recurrent patterns in the exploitation of ecospace, the establishment of the mixed layer, and the distribution of matgrounds. Geology 39:1163–1166

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2013) Ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity: significance and caveats. Lethaia 46:281–292

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Wu X, Zhang G (1995) *Vagorichnus*, a new ichnogenus for feeding burrow systems and its occurrence as discrete and compound ichnotaxa in Jurassic lacustrine turbidites of Central China. Ichnos 3:265–272

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Wu X, Zhang G (1996) Trace fossils from Jurassic lacustrine turbidites of the Anyao Formation (central China) and their environmental and evolutionary significance. Ichnos 4:287–303

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Taylor TN (1998a) The ichnologic record of the continental invertebrate invasion: evolutionary trends in environmental expansion, ecospace utilization, and behavioral complexity. Palaios 13:217–240

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Maples CG, Lanier WP (1998b) Ichnology of an Upper Carboniferous fluvio—estuarine paleovalley: the Tonganoxie Sandstone, Buildex Quarry, eastern Kansas. J Paleontol 71:152–180

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Fregenal-Martinez MA, de Gibert JM (2000a) Short-term colonization trace-fossil assemblages in a carbonate lacustrine Konservat-Lagerstätte (Las Hoyas fossil site, Lower Cretaceous, Cuenca, central Spain). Facies 43:145–156

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Wu X, Zhang G (2000b) Jurassic lake deposits from the Anyao Formation, Central China. In: Gierlowski-Kordesch E, Kelts K (eds) Lake Basins through space and time. Am Assn Petrol Geol Stud Geol 46:189–194

Buscalioni AD, Poyato-Ariza FJ, Marugán-Lobón J, Fregenal-Martínez M; Sanisidro O, Navalón G, de Miguel C (2016) The wetland of Las Hoyas. In: Poyato-Ariza F, Buscalioni AD, (eds.) Las Hoyas: a Cretaceous Wetland. A Multidisciplinary Synthesis after 25 Years of Research on an Exceptional Fossil Deposit from Spain. Pfeil, Munich

Carpenter SR, Kitchell JF (1993) The Trophic Cascade in Lakes. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Carpenter SR, Lodge DM (1986) Effects of submersed macrophytes on ecosystem processes. Aquat Bot 26:341–370

Chacón-Bacca E, Beraldi-Campesi H, Cevallos-Ferriz CRS, Knoll AH, Golubic S (2002) 70 Ma nonmarine diatoms from northern Mexico. Geology 30:279–280

Chamberlain CK (1975) Recent lebensspuren in nonmarine aquatic environments. In: Frey RW (ed) The study of trace fossils. Springer, New York, pp 431–458

Charbonneau P, Hare L (1998) Burrowing behavior and biogenic structures of mud-dwelling insects. J No Am Benthol Soc 17:239–249

Chetel LM, Carroll AR (2010) Terminal infill of Eocene Lake Gosiute, Wyoming, USA. J Sediment Res 80:492–514

China WE, Henson H, Hobby BM, Hinton HE, Macan TT, Richards OW, Wigglesworth VB (1958) The terms ‘larva’ and ‘nymph’ in entomology. Trans Soc Br Entomol 13:17–24

Clarkson ENK, Miller AR, Coates MI (1993) Paleoecology of the Viséan of East Kirkton, West Lothian, Scotland. Trans Roy Soc Edinburgh Earth 84:417–425

Cobben RH (1978) Evolutionary trends in Heteroptera—Part 2: mouthpart structures and feeding strategies. Meded Landbouwhogesch Wageningen 78:1–407

Cohen AS (1982) Paleoenvironments of root casts from the Koobi Fora Formation, Kenya. J Sediment Petrol 52:401–414

Cohen AS (1984) Effect of Zoobenthic standing crop on laminae preservation in tropical Lake sediment, Lake Turkana, East Africa. J Paleontol 58:499–510

Cohen AS (2003) Paleolimnology. Oxford University Press, Oxford

Cohen A, Lockley M, Halfpenny J, Michel AE (1991) Modern vertebrate track taphonomy at Lake Manyara, Tanzania. Palaios 6:371–389

Cohen A, Halfpenny J, Lockley M, Michel AE (1993) Modern vertebrate tracks from Lake Manyara, Tanzania, and their paleobiological implications. Paleobiology 19:433–458

Cohen AS, McGlue M, Ellis G, Zani H, Swarzenski P, Assine M, Silva A. (2015) Lake formation, characteristics and evolution in retroarc deposystems: A synthesis of the modern Andean Orogen and its associated basins. In: DeCelles PG, Ducea MN, Carrapa B, Kapp PA (eds) Geodynamics of a Cordilleran Orogenic System: The Central Andes of Argentina and Northern Chile. Geological Society of America Memoir 212:309–335

Coiffard C, Gomez B, Thevenard F (2007) Early Cretaceous angiosperm invasion of western Europe and major environmental changes. Ann Bot 100:545–553

Colbourne K, Hebert PDN (1996) The systematics of North American *Daphnia* (Crustacea: Anomopoda): a molecular phylogenetic approach. Phil Trans Biol Sc 351:349–360

Collette JH, Getty PR, Hagadorn HW (2011) Insights into an Early Jurassic dinosaur habitat: ichnofacies and enigmatic structures from the Portland Formation, Hoover Quarry, Massachusetts, U.S.A. Atlantic Geology 47:81–98

Cornell WC (1979) Mesozoic silicoflagellates and archaeomonads. Am Assoc Strat Palyn Contrib Series 5B:31–47

Corsetti FA, Grotzinger JP (2005) Origin and significance of tube structures in Neoproterozoic post-glacial cap carbonates: example from Noonday Dolomite, Death Valley, United States. Palaios 20:348–362

Covich AP, Palmer MA, Crowl TA (1999) The role of benthic invertebrate species in freshwater ecosystems. BioScience 49:119–127

Crane PR (1987) Vegetational consequences of the angiosperm diversification. In: Friis EM, Chaloner WG, Crane PR (eds) The origins of angiosperms and their biological consequences. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 107–144

Crane PR, Friis EM, Pedersen KR (1995) The origin and early diversification of angiosperms. Nature 374:27–33

Crimes TP, Anderson MM (1985) Trace fossils from Late Precambrian–Early Cambrian strata of southeastern Newfoundland (Canada): temporal and environmental implications. J Paleontol 59:310–343

Cziczer I, Magyar I, Pipík R, Böhme M, Ćorić S, Bakrač K, Sütö-Szentai M, Lantos M, Babinszski E, Müller P (2009) Life in the sublittoral zone of long-lived Lake Pannon: paleontological analysis of the Upper Miocene Szák formation, Hungary. Int J Earth Sci (Geol Rundsch) 98:1741–1766

D'Rozario A, Labandeira CC, Guo WY, Yao YI, Li CS (2011) Spatiotemporal extension of the Eurasian *Psaronius* component community to the Late Permian of Cathaysia: In situ coprolites in *P. housuoensis* stems from Yunnan Province, southern China. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 133:127–133

Dam G, Stemmerik L (1994) East Greenland lacustrine complexes. In: Gierlowski-Kordesh E, Kelts K (eds) Global Geological Record of Lake Basins, 1. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Davies RG (1958) The terminology of the juvenile phases of insects. Trans Soc Br Entomol 13:25–36

de Gibert JM, Sáez A (2009) Paleohydrological significance of trace fossil distribution in Oligocene fluvial-fan-to-lacustrine systems of the Ebro Basin, Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 272:162–175

de Gibert JM, Buatois LA, Fregenal-Martinez MA, Mángano MG, Ortega F, Poyato-Ariza FJ, Wenz S (1999) The fish trace fossil *Undichna* from the Cretaceous of Spain: taphonomic and palaeoenvironmental implications for the ichnogenus. Palaeontology 42:409–427

de Gibert JM, Fregenal-Martínez MA, Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2000) Trace fossils and their palaeoecological significance in Lower Cretaceous lacustrine conservation deposits, El Montsec, Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 156:89–101

de Gibert JM, Moratalla JJ, Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2016) Palaeoichnology. In: Poyato-Ariza F, Buscalioni AD, (eds.) Las Hoyas: a Cretaceous Wetland. A multidisciplinary synthesis after 25 years of research on an exceptional fossil deposit from Spain. Pfeil, Munich

Delclòs X, Nel A, Azar D, Bechly G, Dunlop JA, Engel MS, Heads SW (2008) The enigmatic Mesozoic insect taxon Chresmodidae (Polyneoptera): new palaeobiological and phylogenetic data, with the description of a new species from the Lower Cretaceous of Brazil. Neues Jahrb Geol Pal A 247:353–381

Demko TM, Parrish JT (1998) Paleoclimatic setting of the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation. Mod Geol 22:283–296

Deocampo DM (2002) Sedimentary structures generated by Hippopotamus amphibius in a lake-margin wetland, Ngorongoro Crater, Tanzania. Palaios 17:212–217

Díez-Canseco D, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Díaz-Molina M, Benito MI (2016) Ichnofauna from coastal meandering channel systems (Upper Cretaceous Tremp Formation, South-Central Pyrenees, Spain): Delineating the fluvial-tidal transition. J Paleo 90:250–268

Dilcher DL, Sun G, Ji Q, Li H (2007) An early infructescence *Hyrcantha decussata* (comb. nov.) from the Yixian Formation in northeastern China. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:9370–9374

Dobruskina IA (1995) Keuper (Triassic) flora from Middle Asia (Madygen, southern Fergana). New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 5:1–49

Du Plessis PI, Le Roux JP (1995) Late Cretaceous alkaline saline lake complexes of the Kalahari Group in northern Botswana. J Afr Earth Sci 20:7–15

Duck RW, McManus J (1984) Traces produced by chironomid larvae in sediments of an ice-contact proglacial lake. Boreas 13:89–93

Dunne J, Williams R, Martinez ND (2002) Network topology and species loss in food webs: robustness increases with connectance. Santa Fe Inst Work Pap 02-03-013:1–17

Dunne J, Labandeira CC, Williams R (2014) Highly resolved early Eocene food webs show development of modern trophic structure after the end-Cretaceous extinction. Proc Roy Soc B 281:20133280.

Eggleton P, Belshaw R (1992) Insect parasitoids: an evolutionary overview. Proc Roy Soc Lond B 337:1–20

Ekdale AA, Brown FH, Feibel CS (1989) Nonmarine macroborings in early Pleistocene algal biolithites (stromatolites) of the Turkana Basin, northern Kenya. Palaios 4:389–396

Engelmann GF, Chure DJ, Fiorillo AR (2004) The implications of a dry climate for the paleoecology of the fauna of the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation. Sed Geol 167:297–308

Erwin DH (2012) Novelties that change carrying capacity. J Experim Zool Part B (Mol Devel Evol) 318:460–465

Erwin DH, Krakauer DC (2004) Insights into innovation. Science 304:1117–1119

Evenhuis NL (1994) Catalogue of the fossil flies of the World (Insecta: Diptera). Backhuys, Leiden

Feibel CS (1987) Fossil fish nests from the Koobi Fora Formation (Plio-Pleistocene) of northern Kenya. J Paleontol 61:130–134

Feist M, Liu J, Tafforeau P (2005) New insights into Paleozoic charophyte morphology and phylogeny. Am J Bot 92:1152–1160

Ferber CT, Wells NA (1995) Paleolimnology and taphonomy of some fish deposits in "Fossil" and "Uinta" lakes of the Eocene Green River Formation, Utah and Wyoming. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 117:185–210

Fischer J, Voigt S, Schneider JW, Buchwitz M, Voigt S (2011) A selachian freshwater fauna from the Triassic of Kyrgyzstan and its implication for Mesozoic shark nurseries. J Vertebr Paleontol 31:937–953

Flint S, Stewart DJ, Van Riessen ED (1989) Reservoir geology of the Sirikit oilfield, Thailand: Lacustrine deltaic sedimentation in a Tertiary intermontane basin. In: Whateley MKG, Pickering KT (eds) Deltas: Sites and Traps for Fossil Fuels. Geological Society Special Publication 41:223–237

Foster J, Lockley MG (2006) Preservation and abundance patterns in the ichnological record of the Morrison Formation (Upper Jurassic, North America). In: Foster R, Lucas SG (eds) Paleontology and Geology of the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 36:203–216

Fraser NC, Grimaldi DA, Olsen PE, Axsmith B (1996) A Triassic Lagerstätte from eastern North America. Nature 380:615–619

Friis EM, Doyle JA, Endress PK, Leng Q (2003) *Archaefructus*—angiosperm precursor or specialized early angiosperm? Trends Plant Sci 8:369–373

Friis EM, Pedersen KR, Crane PR (2010) Diversity in obscurity: fossil flowers and the early history of angiosperms. Phil Trans R Soc B 365:369–382

Galewski K, Glazek J (1997) Upper Miocene Dytiscidae (Coleoptera) from Przeworno (Lower Silesia) and the problem of Dytiscidae evolution. B Pol Acad Sci, Biological Sciences Series 25:781–789

Gall JC (1996) Triassic insects of Western Europe. Paleontol Lombarda (NS) 5:1–60

Gandolfo MA, Nixon KC, Crepet WL (2004) Cretaceous flowers of Nymphaeaceae and implications for complex insect entrapment pollination mechanisms in early angiosperms. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101:8056–8060

Gastaldo RA, DiMichele WA, Pfefferkorn HW (1996) Out of the icehouse into the greenhouse: a late Paleozoic analog for modern global vegetational change. GSA Today 6:1–7

Genise JF (2000) The ichnofamily Celliformidae for *Celliforma* and allied ichnogenera. Ichnos 7:267–282

Genise JF (2004) Ichnotaxonomy and ichnostratigraphy of chambered trace fossils in palaeosols attributed to coleopterans, ants and termites. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geological Society of London Special Publication 228:419–453

Genise JF, Melchor RN, Archangelsky M, Baia LO, Straneck R, Valais S (2009) Application of neoichnological studies to behavioural and taphonomic interpretation of fossil bird-like tracks from lacustrine settings: The Late Triassic–Early Jurassic? Santo Domingo Formation, Argentina. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 272:143–161

Gibbard PL (1977) Fossil tracks from varved sediments near Lammi, south Finland. Bull Geol Soc Finl 49:53–57

Gibbard PL, Dreimanis A (1978) Trace fossils from late Pleistocene glacial lake sediments in southwestern Ontario, Canada. Can J Earth Sci 15:1967–1976

Gibbard PL, Stuart AJ (1974) Trace fossils from proglacial lake sediments. Boreas 3:69–74

Gibling MR, Tantisukrit C, Uttamo W, Thanasuthipitak T, Haraluck M (1985) Oil shale sedimentology and geochemistry in Cenozoic Mae Sot Basin, Thailand. Am Assoc Petrol Geol B 69:767–780

Gierlowski-Kordesch E (1991) Ichnology of an ephemeral lacustrine/alluvial plain system: Jurassic East Berlin Formation, Hartford Basin, USA. Ichnos 1:221–232

Gierlowski-Kordesch E, Park LE (2004) Comparing species diversity in the modern and fossil record of lakes. J Geol 112:703–717

Gilbert SF (2014) Developmental biology, 10th edn. Sinauer, Sunderland, MA

Gillette L, Pemberton SG, Sarjeant WAS (2003) A late triassic invertebrate ichnofauna from Ghost Ranch, New Mexico. Ichnos 10:141–151

Godfray HCJ (1994) Parasitoids. Princeton University Press, Princeton

Goldring R, Pollard JE, Radley JD (2005) Trace fossils and pseudofossils from the Wealden strata (non-marine Lower Cretaceous) of southern England. Cretaceous Res 26:665–685

Good SC (2004) Paleoenvironmental and paleoclimatic significance of freshwater bivalves in the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation, Western Interior, USA. Sediment Geol 167:163–176

Graf DL, Cummings KS (2006) Palaeoheterodont diversity (Mollusca: Trigonioida + Unionoida): what we know and what we wish we knew about freshwater mussel evolution. Zool J Linn Soc 148:343–394

Granéli W, Solander D (1988) Influence of aquatic macrophytes on phosphorus cycling in lakes. Hydrobiologia 170:245–266

Green AJ, Figuerola J (2005) Recent advances in the study of long-distance dispersal of aquatic invertebrates via birds. Divers Distrib 11:149–156

Greenwalt D, Labandeira CC (2013) The amazing fossil insects of the Eocene Kishenehn Formation in northwestern Montana. Rocks Miner 88:434–439

Grenier H (1974) The Albert Formation of New Brunswick: A Paleozoic lacustrine model. Geol Rundsch 63:1102–1113

Grimaldi DA, Engel MS (2005) Evolution of the insects. Cambridge University Press, New York

Hamblin AH, Lockley MG, Milner ARC (2006) More reports of theropod dinosaur tracksites from the Kayenta Formation (Lower Jurassic), Washington County, Utah: implications for describing the Springdale megatracksite. In: Harris HD, Lucas SG, Spielmann GA, Lockley MG, Milner ARC, Kirkland JI (eds) The triassic–jurassic terrestrial transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:276–281

Hasiotis ST (2002) Continental trace fossils. SEPM Short Course Notes 51. doi: 10.2110/scn.06.51

Hasiotis ST (2004) Reconnaissance of Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation ichnofossils, Rocky Mountain Region, USA: Paleoenvironmental, stratigraphic, and paleoclimatic significance of terrestrial and freshwater ichnocoenoses. Sediment Geol 167:177–268

Hasiotis ST, Mitchell CE (1993) A comparison of crayfish burrow morphologies: Triassic and Holocene fossil, paleo- and neo-ichnological evidence, and the identification of their burrowing signatures. Ichnos 2:291–314

Hennequin S, Schuettpelz E, Pryer KM, Ebihara A, Dubuisson JY (2008) Divergence and the evolution of epiphytism in filmy ferns (Hymenophyllaceae) revisited. Int J Plant Sci 169:1278–1287

Hminna A, Saber H, Schneider JW, Voigt S, Klein H, Lagnaoui A, Hmich D, Belahmira A (2015) First occurrence of non-marine trace fossils from the Machraa Abbass Member (Late Triassic, Sidi Saïd Maachou Basin, Morocco). First International Congress on Continental Ichnology, Proceedings of Abstracts, pp 32–33

Hobbs HH Jr (1981) The crayfishes of Georgia. Smithson Contrib Zool 318:1–549

Hoffmann HJ, Pearson DAB, Wilson BH (1980) Stromatolites and fenestral fabric in Early Proterozoic Huronian Supergroup, Ontario. Can J Earth Sci 17:1351–1357

Hsiao LH, Graham SA, Tilander N (2010) Stratigraphy and sedimentation in a rift basin modified by synchronous strike-slip deformation: southern Xialiao Basin, Bohai, offshore China. Basin Res 22:61–78

Hu B, Wang G, Goldring R (1998) *Nereites* (or *Neonereites*) from Lower Jurassic lacustrine turbidites of Henan, Central China. Ichnos 6:203–209

Hunt AP, Lucas SG (2006) Tetrapod ichnofacies of the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation, western United States. In: Foster R, Lucas SG (eds) Paleontology and geology of the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 36:217–222

Hyžný M, Šimo V, Starek D (2015) Ghost shrimps (Decapoda: Axiidea: Callianassidae) as producers of an Upper Miocene trace fossil association from sublittoral deposits of Lake Pannon (Vienna Basin, Slovakia). Paleogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 425:50–66

Illies J (1967) Megaloptera and Plecoptera (Ins.) aus den jungpliocänen Süswassermergeln von Willershausen. Ber Naturhist Ges Hannover 111:47–55

Jablonski D (2005) Evolutionary innovations in the fossil record: the intersection of ecology, development, and macroevolution. J Exp Zool Part B 304:504–519

Jablonski D, Sepkoski JJ Jr, Sheehan PM (1983) Onshore-offshore patterns in the evolution of Phanerozoic shelf communities. Science 222:1123–1124

Jell P, Duncan PM (1986) Invertebrates, mainly insects, from the freshwater, Lower Cretaceous Koonwarra fossil bed (Korumburra Group), South Gippsland, Victoria. In: Jell P, Roberts J (eds) Plants and invertebrates from the Lower Cretaceous Koonwarra Fossil Bed, South Gippsland, Victoria. Memoirs of the Association of Australasian Paleontologists 3:111–205

Jennings DS, Hasiotis ST (2006) Taphonomic analysis of a dinosaur feeding site using geographic information systems (GIS), Morrison Formation, southern Bighorn Basin, Wyoming, USA. Palaios 21:480–492

Jensen S, Mens K (1999) Lower Cambrian shallow-water occurrence of the branching 'deep-water' type of trace fossil *Dendrorhaphe* from the Lontova Formation, eastern Latvia. Palaeontol Z 73:187–193

Jeram AJ, Selden PA (1993) Eurypterids from the Viséan of East Kirkton, West Lothian, Scotland. T Roy Soc Edinburgh: Earth Sci 84:301–308

Johnson CL, Graham SA (2004) Sedimentology and reservoir architecture of a synrift lacustrine delta, southeastern Mongolia. J Sediment Res 74:770–785

Kalugina NS (1980) Insects in fresh-water ecosystems of the past. In: Rohdendorf BB, Rasnitsyn AP (eds) Historical development of the Class Insecta. Trud Paleontol Inst 175:224–240 [in Russian]

Kim JY, Paik IS (1997) Nonmarine *Diplocraterion luniforme* (Blanckenhorn 1916) from the Hasandong Formation (Cretaceous) of the Jinju area, Korea. Ichnos 5:131–138

Kim JY, Kim KS, Pickerill RK (2002) Cretaceous nonmarine trace fossils from the Hasandong and Jinju Formations of the Namhae Area, Kyongsangnamdo, Southeast Korea. Ichnos 9:41–60

Kim JY, Keighley DG, Pickerill RK, Hwang W, Kim KS (2005) Trace fossil from marginal lacustrine deposits of the Cretaceous Jinju Formation, southern coast of Korea. Paleogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 218:105–124

Kim JY, Lockley MG, Seo SJ, Kim KS, Kim SH, Baek KS (2012a) A paradise of Mesozoic birds: The world's richest and most diverse Cretaceous bird track assemblage from the Early Cretaceous Haman Formation of the Gajin tracksite, Jinju, Korea. Ichnos 19:28–42

Kim JY, Lockley MG, Kim KS, Seo SJ, Lim SD (2012b) Enigmatic giant pterosaur tracks and associated ichnofauna from the Cretaceous of Korea: implication for the bipedal locomotion of pterosaurs. Ichnos 19:50–65

Kim JY, Lockley MG, Woo JO, Kim SH (2012c) Unusual didactyl traces from the Jinju Formation (Early Cretaceous, South Korea) indicate a new ichnospecies of *Dromaeosauripus*. Ichnos 19:75–83

Kluge NJ (1986) A recent mayfly species (Ephemeroptera, Heptageniidae) in Baltic amber. Paleontol J 20:106–107

Knaust D (2010) Meiobenthic trace fossils comprising a miniature ichnofabric from Late Permian carbonates of the Oman Mountains. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 286:81–87

Knaust D, Hauschke N (2004) Trace fossils versus pseudofossils in early Triassic playa deposits, Germany. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 215:87–97

Knaust D, Hauschke N (2005) Living conditions in a Lower Triassic playa system of Central Germany: evidence from ichnofauna and body fossils. Hallesches Jahrb Geowiss B 19:95–108

Knecht RJ, Benner JS, Rogers DC, Ridge JC (2009) *Surculichnus bifurcauda* n. igen., n. isp., a trace fossil from Late Pleistocene glaciolacustrine varves of the Connecticut River Valley, USA, attributed to notostracan crustaceans based on neoichnological experimentation. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 272:232–239

Kocher TD, Conroy JA, McKaye KR, Stauffer JR (1993) Similar morphologies of cichlid fish in lakes Tanganyika and Malawi are due to convergence. Mol Phylogen Evol 2:158–65

Kogan I, Schönberger K, Fischer J, Voigt S (2009) A nearly complete skeleton of *Saurichthys orientalis* (Pisces, Actinopterygii) from the Madygen Formation (Middle to Late Triassic, Kyrgyzstan, Central Asia)—preliminary results. Freiberg Forschungsh C 532:139–152

Krapovickas V, Ciccioli PL, Mángano MG, Marsicano CA, Limarino CO (2009) Paleobiology and paleoecology of an arid–semiarid Miocene South American ichnofauna in anastomosed fluvial deposits. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 284:129–152

Kräusel R (1958) Die Juraflora von Sassendorf bei Bamberg. I. Sporenpflanzen. Senck Leth 39:67–103

Kuznetsov SI (1970) The microflora of lakes and its geochemical activity. Nakua, Leningrad [in Russian]

Labandeira CC (1999) Insects and other arthropods. In: Singer R (ed) Encyclopedia of paleontology. Fitzroy Dearborn, Chicago, pp 603–624

Labandeira CC (2002) Paleobiology of predators, parasitoids, and parasites: death and accommodation in the fossil record of continental invertebrates. In: Kowalewski M, Kelley PH (eds) The Fossil Record of Predation. Paleontological Society Papers 8:211–249

Labandeira CC (2005a) Invasion of the continents: cyanobacterial crusts to tree-inhabiting arthropods. Trends Ecol Evol 20:253–262

Labandeira CC (2005b) The fossil record of insect extinction: new approaches and future directions. Am Entomol 51:14–29

Labandeira CC (2006) Silurian to Triassic plant and insect clades and their associations: new data, a review, and interpretations. Arth Syst Phylog 64:53–94

Labandeira CC (2014) Why did terrestrial insect diversity not increase during the angiosperm radiation? Mid-mesozoic plant-associated insect lineages harbor clues. In: Pontarotti P (ed) Evolutionary biology, genome evolution, speciation, coevolution and origin of life. Springer, Berlin, pp 261–299.

Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Wilf P (2002) Impact of the terminal Cretaceous event on plant–insect associations. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99:2061–2066

Labandeira CC, Yang Q, Santiago-Blay JA, Hotton CL, Monteiro A, Wang YJ, Goreva Y, Shih CK, Siljeström, Rose TR, Dilcher DL, Ren D (2016) The evolutionary convergence of mid-Mesozoic lacewings and Cenozoic butterflies. Proc Roy Soc B 283:20152893.

Lamond RE, Tapanila L (2003) Embedment cavities in lacustrine stromatolites: evidence of animal interactions from Cenozoic carbonates in USA and Kenya. Palaios 18:445–453

Laporte LF, Behrensmeyer AK (1980) Tracks and substrate reworking by terrestrial vertebrates in Quaternary sediments of Kenya. J Sediment Res 50:1337–1346

Laza JH (2006) Dung-beetle fossil brood balls: the ichnogenera *Coprinisphaera* Sauer and *Quirogaichnus* (Coprinisphaeridae). Ichnos 13:217–235

Leliaert F, Verbruggen H, Zechman FW (2011) Into the deep: new discoveries at the base of the green plant phylogeny. BioEssays 33:683–692

Li Y, Shao L, Eriksson KA, Tong X, Gao C, Chen C (2014) Linked sequence stratigraphy and tectonics in the Sichuan continental foreland basin, Upper Triassic Xujiahe Formation, southwest China. J Asian Earth Sci 88:116–136

Lindqvist JK (1994) Lacustrine stromatolites and oncoids: Manuherikia Group (Miocene), New Zealand: In: Bertrand-Sarfati J, Monty C (eds) Phanerozoic stromatolites II. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht, pp 227–254

Lloyd GT, Davis KE, Pisani D, Tarver JE, Ruta M, Sakamoto M, Benton MJ (2008) Dinosaurs and the Cretaceous terrestrial revolution. Proc Royal Soc B 275:2483–2490

Lockley MG, Houck KJ, Prince NK (1986) North America's largest dinosaur trackway site: implications for Morrison Formation paleoecology. Geol Soc Am Bull 97:1163–1176

Lockley MG, Lim JD, Kim JY, Kim KS, Huh M, Hwang KG (2012) Tracking Korea's early birds: a review of Cretaceous avian ichnology and its implications for evolution and behavior. Ichnos 19:17–27

Loewen MA, de Gibert JM (1999) The first occurrence of Cenozoic fish trails (*Undichna*) from Eocene Fossil Lake, Wyoming. J Vertebr Paleontol 19:59A [abstract]

Looy CV, Brugman WA, Dilcher DA, Visscher H (1999) The delayed resurgence of equatorial forests after the Permian–Triassic ecologic crisis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:13857–13862

Looy CV, Twitchett RJ, Dilcher DL, Van Konijnenburg-Van Cittert JHA, Visscher H (2001) Life in the end-Permian dead zone. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98:7879–7883

Lovelace DN, Lovelace SD (2012) Paleoenvironments and paleoecology of a Lower Triassic invertebrate and vertebrate ichnoassemblage from the Red Peak Formation (Chugwater Group), central Wyoming. Palaios 26:636–657

Lucas SG, Morgan GS, Hawley JW, Love DW, Myers RG (2002) Mammal footprints from the upper Pleistocene of the Tularosa Basin, Doña Ana County, New Mexico. In: Lueth V, Giles KA, Lucas SG, Kues BS, Myers RG, Ulmer-Scholle D (eds) Geology of White Sands. New Mexico Geological Society Guidebook 53:285–288

Lucas SG, Lerner AJ, Milner AC, Lockley MG (2006) Lower Jurassic invertebrate ichnofossils from a clastic lake margin, Johnson Farm, Southwestern Utah. In: Harris HD, Lucas SG, Spielmann GA, Lockley MG, Milner ARC, Kirkland JI (eds) The triassic–jurassic terrestrial transition. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 37:128–136

Lucas SG, Spielmann JA, Klein H, Lerner AJ (2010) Ichnology of the Upper Triassic (Apachean) Redonda Formation, east-central New Mexico. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 47:1–75

Lutz H (1991) Autochthone aquatische Arthropoda aus dem Mittel-Eozän der Fundstítte Messel (Insecta, Heteroptera: Coleoptera; cf. Diptera-Nematocera; Crustacea: Cladocera). Cour Forschungsinst Senck 139:119–125

Magyar I, Mihály Müller P, Sztanó O, Babinszki E, Lantos M (2006) Oxygen-related facies in Lake Pannon deposits (Upper Miocene) at Budapest-Kőbánya. Facies 52:209–220

Mai DH (1995) Tertiäre Vegetationsgeschichte Europas. Gustav Fischer, Jena

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2007) Trace fossils in evolutionary paleoecology. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Berlin, pp 391–409

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2014) Decoupling of body-plan diversification and ecological structuring during the Ediacaran-Cambrian transition: evolutionary and geobiological feedbacks. Proc R Soc B 281:20140038. doi:10.1098/rspb.2014.0038

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2015) The trace-fossil record of tidal flats through the phanerozoic: evolutionary innovations and faunal turnover. In: McIlroy D (ed) Ichnology: Papers from Ichnia III. Geol Assn Can Misc Publ 9:157–177

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Wu X, Sun J, Zhang G (1994) Sedimentary facies, depositional processes and climatic controls in a Triassic lake, Tanzhuang Formation, western Henan Province, China. J Paleolimnol 11:41–65

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, West RR, Maples CG (2002) Ichnology of an equatorial tidal flat: the Stull Shale Member at Waverly, eastern Kansas. Kansas Geol Survey Bull 245:1–130

Maples CG, Archer AW (1989) The potential of Paleozoic nonmarine trace fossils for paleoecological interpretations. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 73:185–195

Marchal-Papier F (1998) Les Insectes du Buntsandstein des Vosges (NE de la France). Biodiversité et Contribution aus Modalites de la Crise Biologique du Permo-Trias. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Louis Pasteur University, Strasbourg

Marsicano CA, Domnanovich N, Mancuso AC (2007) Dinosaur origins: evidence from the footprint record. Hist Biol 19:83–91

Marsicano CA, Mancuso AC, Palma RM, Krapovickas V (2010) Tetrapod tracks in a marginal lacustrine setting (Middle Triassic, Argentina): Taphonomy and significance. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 291:388–399

Martin AJ, Vazquez-Prokopec GM, Page M (2010) First known feeding trace of the Eocene bottom-dwelling fish *Notogoneus osculus* and its paleontological significance. PLoS ONE 5:1–8

Martín-Closas C (2003) The fossil record and evolution of freshwater plants: a review. Geol Acta 1(4):315–338

Martín-Closas C, Serra-Kiel J (1991) Evolutionary patterns of Clavatoraceae (Charophyta) analysed according to environmental change during Malm and Lower Cretaceous. Hist Biol 5:291–307

Martínez-Delclòs X, Nel A, Popov YA (1995) Systematics and functional morphology of *Iberonepa romerali* n. gen. and sp., Belostomatidae from the Spanish Lower Cretaceous (Insecta, Heteroptera). J Paleontol 69:496–508

McCall PL, Tevesz MJS (1982) The effects of benthos on physical properties of freshwater sediments. In: McCall PL, Tevesz MJS (eds) Animal-sediment relations: the biogenic alteration of sediments. Academic, New York, pp 105–176

McCune A (1996) Biogeographic and stratigraphic evidence for rapid speciation in semionotid fishes. Paleobiology 22:34–48

Melchior RC, Erickson BR (1979) Paleontological notes on the Wannagan Creek Quarry Site (Paleocene—North Dakota) Ichnofossils I. Scientific Pub Sci Mus of Minnesota 4:1–16

Melchor RN (2001) Icnología y sedimentología de una sucesión lacustre influenciada por tormentas: Formación Los Rastros (Triásico), Talampaya, La Rioja. 4th Reunión Argentina de Icnología and 2nd Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur Abstracts, San Miguel de Tucumán, p 56

Melchor RN (2004) Trace fossil distribution in lacustrine deltas: examples from the Triassic rift lakes of the Ischigualasto–Villa Union Basin, Argentina. In: McIlroy D (ed) The Application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Lond Spec Publ 228:335–354

Melchor RN (2007) Changing lake dynamics and sequence stratigraphy of synrift lacustrine strata in a half-graben: an example from the Triassic Ischigualasto-Villa Unión Basin, Argentina. Sedimentology 54:1417–1446

Melchor RN, Bellosi ES, Genise JF (2003) Invertebrate and vertebrate trace fossils from a lacustrine delta: the Los Rastros Formation, Ischigualasto Provincial Park, San Juan, Argentina. Asoc Paleontól Arg Publ Espec 9:17–33

Melchor RN, Bedatou E, de Valais S, Genise JF (2006) Lithofacies distribution of invertebrate and vertebrate trace-fossil assemblages in an Early Mesozoic ephemeral fluvio-lacustrine system from Argentina: Implications for the Scoyenia ichnofacies. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 239:253–285

Memmott J, Godfray CJ (1993) Parasitoid webs. In: LaSalle J, Gauld ID (eds) Hymenoptera and biodiversity. Commonwealth Agricultural Board International, Walingford

Merritt RW, Cummins KW (1984) An introduction to aquatic insects of North America, 2nd edn. Kendall-Hunt Publishing Company, Dubuque

Metz R (1992) Trace fossils from the Lower Jurassic nonmarine Towaco Formation, New Jersey. Northeast Geol 14:29–34

Metz R (1995) Ichnologic study of the Lockatong Formation (Late Triassic), Newark Basin, southeastern Pennsylvania. Ichnos 4:43–51

Metz R (1996) Newark Basin ichnology: The Late Triassic Perkasie Member of the Passaic Formation, Sanatoga, Pennsylvania. Northeast Geol Environ Sci 18:118–129

Metz R (2000) Triassic trace fossils from lacustrine shoreline deposits of the passaic formation, Douglassville, Pennsylvania. Ichnos 7:253–266

Meyer CA, Hippler D, Lockley MG (2001) The Late Cretaceous vertebrate ichnofacies of Bolivia: facts and implications. Asoc Paleontól Arg Publ Espec 7:133–138

Milana JP, Alcober O (1994) Modelo tectosedimentario de la Cuenca Triásica de Ischigualasto (San Juan, Argentina). Rev Asoc Geol Argent 49:217–235

Miller MF (1984) Distribution of biogenic structures in Paleozoic non-marine and marine–margin sequences: an actualistic model. J Paleontol 58:550–570

Miller MF, Labandeira CC (2002) Slow crawl across the salinity divide: Delayed colonization of freshwater ecosystems by invertebrates. GSA Today 12:4–10

Miller W III, Vokes EH (1998) Large *Phymatoderma* in Pliocene slope deposits, Northwestern Ecuador: associated ichnofauna, fabrication, and behavioral ecology. Ichnos 6:23–45

Miller MF, White DS (2007) Ecological and evolutionary controls on the composition of marine and lake ichnofacies. In: Miller W (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 531–544

Miller MF, McDowell TA, Smail SE, Shyr Y, Kemp NR (2002) Hardly used habitats: dearth and distribution of burrowing in Paleozoic and Mesozoic stream and lake deposits. Geology 30:527–530

Minter NJ, Lockley MG, Huh M, Hwang KG, Kim JY (2012) *Lithographus*, an abundant arthropod trackway from the Cretaceous Haenam tracksite of Korea. Ichnos 19:115–120

Moisan P, Voigt S, Schneider JW, Kerp H (2012a) New fossil bryophytes from the Triassic Madygen Lagerstätte (SW Kyrgyzstan). Rev Palaeobot Palyno 187:29–37

Moisan P, Labandeira CC, Matushkina NA, Wappler T, Voigt S, Kerp H (2012b) Lycopsid–arthropod associations and odonatopteran oviposition on Triassic herbaceous *Isoetites*. Palaeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 344–345:6–15

Montgomery H, Barnes K (2012) Paleolimnology of uppermost Cretaceous lacustrine deposits in western Texas. Palaios 27:386–394

Moratalla JJ, Hernán J (2009) Turtle and pterosaur tracks from the Los Cayos dinosaur tracksite, Cameros Basin (Cornago, La Rioja, Spain): Tracking the Lower Cretaceous bio-diversity. Rev Esp Paleontol 24:59–77

Moratalla JJ, Lockley M, Buscalioni AD, Fregenal-Martínez MA, Meléndez N, Ortega F, Pérez-Moreno BP, Pérez-Asensio E, Sanz JL, Schultz RJ (1995) A preliminary note on the first tetrapod trackways from the lithographic limestones of Las Hoyas (Lower Cretaceous, Spain). Geobios 28:777–782

Moussa MT (1968) Fossil tracks from the Green River Formation (Eocene) near Soldier Summit, Utah. J Paleontol 42:1433–1438

Moussa MT (1970) Nematode fossil trails from the Green River Formation (Eocene) in the Uinta Basin, Utah. J Paleontol 44:304–307

Muñiz-Guinea F, Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Podeniene V, Gamez JA, Mayoral E (2014) Compound biogenic structures resulting from ontogenetic variation: an example from a modern dipteran. Span J Palaeontol 29:83–94

Murray DA (1976) *Buchonomyia thienemanni* Fittkau (Diptera, Chironomidae), a rare and unusual species recorded from Killarney, Ireland. Entomol Gaz 27:179–180

Nel A, Roy R (1996) Revision of the fossil "mantid" and "ephemerid" species described by Piton from the Palaeocene of Menat (France) (Mantodea: Chaeteessidae, Mantidae; Ensifera: Tettigonioidea). Eur J Entomol 93:223–234

Nichols DJ, Johnson KJ (2008) Plants and the KT Boundary. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Novokshonov VG (1997) The early evolution of Scorpionflies (Insecta: Panorpida). Academy of Sciences, Moscow

O'Brien NR, Pietraskek-Mattner S (1998) Origin of the fabric of laminated fine-grained glaciolacustrine deposits. J Sediment Res 68:832–840

Oji T (1996) Is predation intensity reduced with increasing depth? Evidence from the west Atlantic stalked crinoid *Endoxocrinus parvae* (Gervais) and implications for the Mesozoic marine revolution. Paleobiology 22:339–351

Olsen PE (1980) The latest Triassic and early Jurassic formations of the Newark basin (eastern North America, Newark Supergroup): stratigraphy, structure and correlation. Bull N J Acad Sci 25:25–51

Olsen PE (1989) Newark Basin, New Jersey. In: Olsen PE, Schliche R, Gore PJ (eds) Tectonic, depositional, and paleoecologic history of early Mesozoic Rift Basins, Eastern North America. International Geological Congress Field Trip Guidebook, T-351:2

Olsen PE, Flynn JJ (1989) Field guide to the vertebrate paleontology of Late Triassic age rocks in the southwestern Newark basin (Newark Supergroup, New Jersey and Pennsylvania). Mosasaur 4:1–43

Opluštil S, Šimůnek Z, Zajíc J, Mencl V (2013) Climatic and biotic changes around the Carboniferous/Permian boundary recorded in the continental basins of the Czech Republic. Int J Coal Geol 119:114–151

Ortí F, Rosell L, Anadón P (2003) Deep to shallow lacustrine evaporates in the Libros Gypsum (southern Teruel Basin, Miocene, NE Spain): an occurrence of pelletal gypsum rhythmites. Sedimentology 50:361–386

Owen RB, Renaut RW, Scott JJ, Potts R, Behrensmeyer AK (2009) Wetland sedimentation and associated diatoms in the Pleistocene Olorgesailie Basin, southern Kenya Rift Valley. Sediment Geol 222:124–137

Owen RB, Renaut RW, Stamatakis MG (2011) Late Miocene lacustrine sedimentation in the Mytilinii Basin, Samos Island, Greece. J Paleolimnol 46:151–166

Paik IS, Lee YI, Kim HJ, Huh M (2012) Time, space and structure on the Korea Cretaceous dinosaur coast: cretaceous stratigraphy, geochronology, and paleoenvironments. Ichnos 19:6–16

Pan Y, Sha J, Fürsich FT, Wang Y, Zhang X, Yao X (2011) Dynamics of the lacustrine fauna from the Early Cretaceous Yixian Formation, China: implications of volcanic and climatic factors. Lethaia 45:299–314

Park LE, Gierlowski-Kordesch EH (2007) Paleozoic lake faunas: establishing aquatic life on land. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 249:160–179

Perea D, Masquelin E, Verde M, Gueréquiz R (2001) Estratigrafía y paleontología de "Fossil Hill", Península Fieldes, Isla Rey Jorge, Antártida: Un nuevo aporte. Inst Antárt Urug Act Cient 1998–2000 7:49–55

Petrulevičius JF, Nel A, Rust J, Bechly G, Kohls D (2007) New Paleogene Epallagidae (Insecta: Odonata) recorded in North America and Europe. Biogeographic implications. Alavesia 1:15–25

Pickerill RK (1990) Nonmarine *Paleodictyon* from the Carboniferous Albert Formation of southern New Brunswick. Atlantic Geol 26:157–163

Ponomarenko AG (1969) The historical development of the Coleoptera Archostemmata. Trudy Paleontol Inst 125:1–241 [in Russian]

Ponomarenko AG (1995) The geological history of beetles. In: Pakaluk J, Slipiński SA (eds) Biology phylogeny, and classification of Coleoptera: Papers celebrating the 80th birthday of Roy A. Crowson. Museum of and Institute of Zoology, Polish Academy of Sciences, Warsaw, pp 155–171

Ponomarenko AG (1996) Evolution of continental aquatic ecosystems. Paleontol J 30:705–709

Ponomarenko AG (1998) Paleobiology of angiospermization. Paleontol J 32:325–331

Ponomarenko AG (2004) Beetles (Insecta, Coleoptera) of the Late Permian and Early Triassic. Paleontol J 38(Suppl 2):185–196

Ponomarenko AG (2008) New Triassic beetles (Coleoptera) from northern European Russia. Paleontol J 42:600–606

Ponomarenko AG (2009) The role of arthropods in the development of continental biota. Paleontol J 43:852–857

Popov YA (1971) Historical development of the heteropterous Infraorder Nepomorpha. Trudy Paleontol Inst 129:1–228 [in Russian]

Popov YA (1980) Superorder Cimicidea Laicharting, 1781. In: Rohdendorf BB, Rasnitsyn AP, (eds) Historical development of the Class Insecta. Trudy Paleontol Inst 175:58–69 [in Russian]

Porsch O (1958) Alte Insektentypen als Blumenausbeuter. Osterr Bot Z 104:115–163

Porter RJ, Gallois RW (2008) Identifying fluvio–lacustrine intervals in thick playa-lake successions: an integrated sedimentology and ichnology of arenaceous members in the mid–late Triassic Mercia Mudstone Group of south-west England, UK. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 270:381–398

Pott C, Labandeira CC, Krings M, Kerp H (2008) Fossil insect eggs and ovipositional damage on bennettitalean leaf cuticles from the Carnian (Upper Triassic) of Austria. J Paleontol 82:778–789

Pribyl L, Labandeira CC, Kohls D (1996) Eocene (Green River) fossil insects from the Piceance Creek Basin, Colorado. Paleontol Soc Spec Publ 8:313 [abstract]

Price S, McCann TM (1990) Environmental significance of *Arenicolites* ichnosp. In: Pliocene lake deposits of southwest Turkey. Neues Jahrb Geol Pal Mn 1990:687–694

Pritykina LN (1986) Two new dragonflies from the Lower Cretaceous deposits of West Mongolia. Odonatologica 15:169–184

Retallack GJ (1997) Earliest Triassic origin of *Isoetes* and quillwort evolutionary radiation. J Paleontol 71:500–521

Rodriguez-Aranda JP, Calvo JP (1998) Trace fossils and rhizoliths as a tool for sedimentological and palaeoenvironmental analysis of ancient continental evaporite successions. Palaegeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 140:383–399

Rolfe WDA, Durant GP, Baird WH, Chaplin C, Paton RL, Reekie RJ (1993) The East Kirkton Limestone, Viséan, of West Lothian, Scotland: introduction and stratigraphy. T Roy Soc Edinburgh: Earth Sci 84:177–188

Rossi C (1992) Bioturbación de invertebrados y microcodium en facies lacustres y fluviales: Thanetiense del Valle de Ager (Lérida). Geogaceta 12:111–113

Rubinstein CV, Gerienne P, de la Puente GS, Astini RA, Steemans P (2010) Early Middle Ordovician evidence for land plants in Argentina (eastern Gondwana). New Phytol 188:365–369

Rylaarsdam JR, Varban BL, Plint AG, Buckley LG, McCrea RT (2006) Middle Turonian dinosaur paleoenvironments in the Upper Cretaceous Kaskapau Formation, northeast British Columbia. Can J Earth Sci 43:631–652

Sander HL (1968) marine benthic diversity: A comparative study. American naturalist 102: 243–282

Sacherová V, Hebert PDN (2003) The evolutionary history of the Chydoridae (Crustacea: Cladocera). Biol J Linnean Soc 79:629–643

Salzburger W, Van Bocxlaer B, Cohen AS (2014) The ecology and evolution of the African Great Lakes and their faunas. Annual Rev Ecol Evol Syst 45:519–545.

Samylina VA (1988) The Arkagala Stratoflora of North-East Asia. Nauka, Leningrad [in Russian]

Santiago-Blay JA, Labandeira CC, Pribyl L, Hotton C, Martin LD (2001) The Sundance insect fauna (Middle Jurassic) of northern Wyoming and southern Montana. Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs 33:A-266 [abstract]

Schlirf M, Uchman A, Kümmel M (2001) Upper Triassic (Keuper) non-marine trace fossils from the Haßberge area (Franconia, south-eastern Germany). Palaeontol Zeit 75:71–96

Schlische RW (2003) Progress in understanding the structural geology, basin evolution, and tectonic history of the eastern North American rift system. In: LeTorneau PM, Olsen PE (eds) The great rift valleys of Pangea in eastern North America, 1. Columbia University Press, New York

Schneider H, Schuettpelz E, Pryer KM, Cranfill R, Magallón S, Lupia R (2004) Ferns diversified in the shadow of angiosperms. Nature 428:553–557

Schoch R, Voigt S, Buchwitz M (2010) A chroniosuchid from the Triassic of Kyrgyzstan and analysis of chroniosuchian relationships. Zool J Linn Soc 160:515–530

Schudack ME (1998) Ostracoda (marine/nonmarine) and paleoclimate history in the Upper Jurassic of Central Europe and North America. Mar Micropaleontol 37:273–288

Schweitzer MK, Steele A, Toporski JKW, Fogel ML (2007) Stable isotopic evidence for fossil food webs in Eocene Lake Messel. Paleobiology 33:590–609

Scott JJ, Renaut RW, Buatois LA, Owen RB (2009) Trace fossils in exhumed surfaces around saline lakes: an example from Lake Bogoria, Kenya Rift Valley. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 272:176–198

Scott JJ, Smith ME (2015) Trace Fossils of the Eocene Green River Lake Basins, Wyoming, Utah, and Colorado. In: Smith ME, Carroll AR (eds) Stratigraphy and Paleolimnology of the Green River Formation, Western USA, Syntheses in Limnogeology 1:313–350

Scott JJ, Renaut RW, Owen RB, Sarjeant WAS (2007) Biogenic activity, trace formation, and trace taphonomy in the marginal sediments of saline, alkaline Lake Bogoria, Kenya Rift Valley. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–Organism Interactions: A Multifaceted Ichnology. SEPM Spec Pub 88:311–332

Scott JJ, Renaut RW, Owen RB (2008) Preservation and paleoenvironmental significance of a footprinted surface on the Sandai Plain, Lake Bogoria, Kenya Rift Valley. Ichnos 15:208–231

Scott JJ, Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2012a) Lakes. In: Knaust D, Bromley RG (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Scott JJ, Renaut RW, Owen RB (2012b) Impacts of flamingos on saline lake margin and shallow lacustrine sediments in the Kenya Rift Valley. Sediment Geol 277:32–51

Scrivner PJ, Bottjer DJ (1986) Neogene avian and mammalian tracks from Death Valley National Monument, California: Their context, classification and preservation. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 57:285–331

Seilacher A (2008) Biomats, biofilms, and bioglue as preservational agents for arthropod trackways. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 270:252–257

Seiler WM, Chan MA (2008) A wet interdune dinosaur trampled surface in the Jurassic Navajo Sandstone, Coyote Buttes, Arizona: rare preservation of multiple track types and tail traces. Palaios 23:700–710

Selden PA, Huys R, Stephenson MH, Heward AP, Taylor PN (2010) Crustaceans from bitumen clast in Carboniferous glacial diamictite extend fossil record of copepods. Nat Commun 1:50. doi:10.1038/ncomms1049

Sepkoski JJ Jr, Miller AI (1985) Evolutionary faunas and the distribution of Paleozoic benthic communities in space and time. In: Valentine JW (ed) Phanerozoic diversity patterns: profiles in macroevolution. Princeton University Press, Princeton, pp 153–190

Sepkoski JJ Jr, Sheehan PM (1983) Diversification, faunal change, and community replacement during the Ordovician radiations. In: Tevesz MJS, McCall PL (eds) Biotic Interactions in Recent and Fossil Benthic Communities. Plenum, New York

Shcherbakov DE (2008a) On Permian and Triassic insect faunas in relation to biogeography and the Permian–Triassic crisis. Paleontol J 42:15–31

Shcherbakov DE (2008b) Insect recovery after the Permian/Triassic crisis. Alavesia 2:125–131

Shcherbakov DE (2008c) Madygen, Triassic Lagerstätte number one, before and after Sharov. Alavesia 2:113–124

Shear WA (1993) Myriapodous arthropods from the Viséan of East Kirkton, west Lothian, Scotland. T Roy Soc Edin Earth Sci 84:309–316

Sheehan PM, Hansen TA (1986) Detritus feeding as a buffer to extinction at the end of the Cretaceous. Geology 14:868–870

Shi ZS, Yang W, Guo CM, Xie ZY, Jin H, Zhu QY, Liu MC (2007) Ichnocoenosis of shore-shallow lacustrine Upper Triassic in Central and South Sichuan Basin. Acta Palaeontol Sinica 46:453–463 [in Chinese with English abstract]

Sims PA, Mann DG, Medlin LK (2006) Evolution of the diatoms: insights from fossil, biological and molecular data. Phycologia 45:361–402

Sinitshenkova ND (1999) The Mesozoic aquatic assemblages of Transbaikalia, Russia. Proceedings of the First Palaeoentomological Conference Moscow 1998. AMBA Projects International, Bratislava, pp. 149–154

Sinitshenkova ND (2002) Ecological history of the aquatic insects. In: Rasnitsyn AP, Quick DLJ (eds) History of insects. Kluwer, Dordrecht, pp 388–417

Sinitshenkova ND (2013) New mayflies (Insecta: Ephemerida = Ephemeroptera) from the Upper Permian locality of Isady, northern European Russia. Paleontol J 47:162–165

Sinitshenkova ND, Zherikhin VV (1996) Mesozoic lacustrine biota: extinction and persistence of communities. Paleontol J 30:710–715

Smith DM (2000) Beetle taphonomy in a recent ephemeral lake, southeastern Arizona. Palaios 15:152–160

Smith DM (2008) A comparison of plant–insect associations in the middle Eocene Green River Formation and the upper Eocene Florissant Formation and their climatic implications. GSA Spec Pap 435:87–103

Smith AB, Crimes TP (1983) Trace fossils formed by heart urchins: a study of *Scolicia* and related traces. Lethaia 16:79–92

Smith PR, Harper AS, Wood MF (1982) Nonmarine trace fossils in the Mio-Pliocene Ridge Basin Group, southern California. In: Cromwell JC, Link MH (eds) Geologic History of Ridge Basin, Southern California. Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Pacific Section, Tulsa, pp 1–122

Smith JJ, Hasiotis ST, Kraus MJ, Woody DT (2008) *Naktodemasis bowni*: new ichnogenus and ichnospecies for adhesive meniscate burrows (AMB), paleoenvironmental implications, Paleogene Willwood Formation, Bighorn Basin, Wyoming. J Paleontol 82:267–278

Smith ME, Carroll AR, Singer BS (2008) Synoptic reconstruction of a major ancient lake system: Eocene Green River Formation, western United States. Bull Geol Soc Am 120:54–84

Snodgrass RE (1954) Insect metamorphosis. Smithson Misc Collns 122(9):1–124

Squires RL, Advocate DM (1984) Meniscate burrows from Miocene lacustrine fluvial-deposits, Diligencia Formation, Orocopia Mountains, southern California. J Paleontol 58:593–597

Stanley SM (1977) Trends, rates, and patterns of evolution in the Bivalvia. In: Hallam A (ed) Patterns of evolution, as illustrated by the fossil record. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Stanley SM (2008) Predation defeats competition on the seafloor. Paleobiology 34:1–21

Starek D, Pipík R, Hagarová I (2010) Meiofauna, trace metals, TOC, sedimentology, and oxygen availability in the LateMiocene sublittoral deposits of Lake Pannon. Facies 56:369–384

Stokes WL (1978) Transported fossil biota of the Green River Formation, Utah. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 25:353–364

Stone R, Vondra CF (2013) Sediment dispersal patterns of oolitic calcarenite in the Sundance Formation (Jurassic), of Wyoming. J Sediment Res 42:227–229

Strother PK (2000) Cryptospores: the origin and early evolution of the terrestrial flora. In: Gastaldo RA, DiMichele WA (eds) Phanerozoic terrestrial ecosystems. Paleontol Soc Pap 6:3–20

Sukatcheva ID (1982) Historical development of the caddisflies. Trudy Paleontol Inst 197:1–112 [in Russian]

Sukatcheva ID (1991) The Late Cretaceous stage in the history of the caddisflies (Trichoptera). Acta Hydroentomol Latv 1:68–85 [in Russian with English summary]

Sun G, Ji Q, Dilcher DL, Zheng KC, Nixon KC, Wang X (2002) Archaefructaceae, a new basal angiosperm family. Science 296:899–904

Sun C, Li T, Na Y, Wu W, Li Y, Wang L, Zhang L (2014) *Flabellariopteris*, a new aquatic fern leaf from the Late Triassic of western Liaoning, China. Chin Sci Bull 59:2410–2418

Sytchevskaya EK (1999) Freshwater fish fauna from the Triassic of Northern Asia. In: Arratia G, Schultze HP (eds) Mesozoic fishes 2—systematics and fossil record. Verlag Dr. Friedrich Pfeil, Munich, pp 445–468

Szajna MJ, Hartline BW (2003) A new vertebrate footprint locality from the Late Triassic Passaic Formation near Birdsboro, Pennsylvania. In: Letourneau PM, Olsen PE (eds) The Great Rift Valleys of Pangaea in Eastern North America, vol 2, Sedimentology, stratigraphy, and paleontology. Columbia University Press, New York, pp 264–272

Tanner LH, Lucas SG (2008) The Whitmore Point Member of the Moenave Formation: Early Jurassic Dryland Lakes on the Colorado Plateau, Southwestern USA. Volum Jurassica 6:11–21

Theismeyer LR (1939) Varved slates in Faquier County, Virginia. VA Geol Surv Bull 51-D:1–118

Thenius E (1989) Fossile Lebensspuren aquatischen Insekten in Knochen aus dem Jungtertiär Niederösterreichs. Anz Österr Akad Wiss Math-Naturwiss Kl 125:41–45

Toots H (1975) Distribution of meniscate burrows in non-marine Tertiary sediments of western U.S. Rocky Mt Geol 14:9–10

Turner BR (1978) Trace fossils from the Upper Triassic fluviatile Molteno Formation of the Karoo (Gondwana) Supergroup, Lesotho. J Paleontol 52:959–963

Turner CE, Fishman NS (1991) Jurassic lake T'oo'dichi': A large, alkaline, saline lake, Morrison Formation, eastern Colorado Plateau. Geol Soc Am Bull 103:538–558

Twitchett RJ (2006) The palaeoclimatology, palaeoecology and palaeoenvironmental analysis of mass extinction events. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 252:133–144

Uchman A (1995) Taxonomy and paleoecology of flysch trace fossils: the Marnoso-Arenacea Formation and associated facies (Miocene, Northern Apennines, Italy). Beringeria 15:1–115

Uchman A, Álvaro JJ (2000) Non-marine invertebrate trace fossils from the Tertiary Calatayud-Teruel Basin, NE Spain. Rev Esp Paleontol 15:203–218

Uchman A, Kumpulainen RA (2011) Trace fossils in Quaternary glacial varved clays near Uppsala, Sweden. Geol Fören Stockholm Förhand 133:135–140

Uchman A, Nemec W, Ilgar A, Messina C (2007) Lacustrine trace fossils and environmental conditions in the Early Miocene Ermenek Basin, southern Turkey. Ann Soc Geol Pol 77:123–139

Uchman A, Gaigalas A, Kazakauskas V (2008) Trace fossils from the Upper Pleistocene glaciolacustrine laminated sediments of Lithuania. Geologija 50:212–226

Uchman A, Kazakauskas V, Gaigalas A (2009) Trace fossils from Late Pleistocene lacustrine varve sediments in eastern Lithuania. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 272:199–211

Uchman A, Hu B, Wang Y, Song H (2011) The trace fossil *Diplopodichnus* from the Lower Jurassic lacustrine sediments of central China and the isopod *Armadillidium vulgare* (Pillbug) lebensspuren as its recent analogue. Ichnos 18:147–155

Uhlir DM, Akers A, Vondra CF (2006) Tidal inlet sequence, Sundance Formation (Upper Jurassic), north-central Wyoming. Sedimentology 35:739–752

Uliana MA, Biddle KT (1988) Mesozoic-Cenozoic paleogeographic and geodynamic evolution of Southern South America. Rev Bras Geoc 18:172–190

Ulmer-Scholle DS (2005) Stromatolites in the Todilto Formation? In: Geology of the Chama Basin. New Mexico Geological Society 56th Field Conference Guidebook. pp 380–388

Van Bocxlaer B, Verschuren D, Schettler G, Kröpelin S (2011) Modern and early Holocene mollusc fauna of the Ounianga lakes (northern Chad): implications for the palaeohydrology of the central Sahara. J Quat Sci 26:433–447

Van Damme D, Pickford M (1999) The late Cenozoic Viviparidae (Mollusca, Gastropoda) of the Albertine Rift Valley (Uganda-Congo). Hydrobiologia 390:171–217

Van Damme D, Pickford M (2003) The late Cenozoic Thiaridae (Mollusca, Gastropoda, Cerithiodea) of the Albertine Rift Valley (Uganda–Congo) and their bearing on the origin and evolution of the Tanganyikan thalassoid malacofauna. Hydrobiologia 498:1–83

Vermeij GJ (1977) The Mesozoic marine revolution: evidence from snails, predators and grazers. Paleobiology 3:245–258

Vermeij GJ (1987) Evolution and escalation: an ecological history of life. Princeton University Press, Princeton

Vermeij GG, Lindberg DR (2000) Delayed herbivory and the assembly of marine benthic ecosystems. Paleobiology 26:404–415

Vinogradov AV (1996) A new eurystomate bryozoan from Cretaceous deposits of Transbaikalia. Paleontol Zhur 1196(1):115–116 [in Russian]

Vinson SB, Barbosa P (1987) Interrelationships of nutritional ecology of parasitoids. In: Slansky F Jr, Rodriguez JG (eds) Nutritional ecology of insects, mites, spiders, and related invertebrates. John Wiley, New York, pp 673–695

Voigt S, Hoppe D (2010) Mass occurrence of penetrative trace fossils in Triassic lake deposits (Kyrgyzstan, Central Asia). Ichnos 17:1–11

Voigt S, Haubold H, Meng S, Drause D, Buchantschenko J, Ruckwied K, Götz AE (2006) Die Fossil-Lagerstätte Madygen: Ein Beitrag zur Geologie und Paläontologie der Madygen-Formation (Mittel- bis Ober-Trias, SW-Kirgisistan, Zentralasien). Hall Jahr Geowiss 22:85–119

Voigt S, Buchwitz M, Fischer J, Kogan I, Moisan P, Schneider JW, Spindler F, Brosig A, Preusse M, Scholze F, Linnemann U (2016) Triassic life in an inland lake basin of the warm-temperate biome—the Madygen Lagerstätte (Southwest Kyrgyzstan, Central Asia). In: Fraser NC, Sues H-D (eds) Terrestrial Conservation Lagerstätten—Windows into the evolution of life on land. Dunedin, Edinburgh

Walter H (1985) Zur ichnologie des Pleistozans von Liebegast. Freib Forsch C 400:101–116

Walter H, Suhr P (1998) Lebesspuren aus kaltzeitlichen Bändersedimenten des Quartärs. Abhandl Staatl Mus Mineral Geol Dresden 43–44:311–328

Wang Z, Huang R, Wang S (1976) Mesozoic and Cenozoic Charophyta from Yunnan Province. Mesozoic Fossils of Yunnan 1:65–86 [In Chinese]

Watanabe M (2006) Anhydrobiosis in invertebrates. Appl Entomol Zool 41:15–31

Watanabe M, Kikawada T, Minagawa N, Yukuhiro F, Okuda T (2002) Mechanism allowing an insect to survive complete dehydration and extreme temperatures. J Exp Biol 205:2799–2802

Webb J (1979) A reappraisal of the palaeoecology of conchostracans (Crustacea: Branchiopoda). Neues Jahr Geol Paläont Abh 158:259–275

West K, Cohen AS (1996) Shell microstructure of gastropods from Lake Tanganyika, Africa: adaptation, convergent evolution, and escalation. Evolution 50:672–681

Whalley PES, Jarzembowski EA (1985) Fossil insects from the lithographic limestone of Montsech (late Jurassic–early Cretaceous), Lérida Province, Spain. Bull Br Mus Nat Hist Geol 38:381–412

Whateley MKG, Jordan GR (1989) Fan-delta-lacustrine sedimentation and coal development in the Tertiary Omlibin Basin, W. Sumatra, Indonesia. In: Whateley MKG, Pickering KT (eds) Deltas: Sites and Traps for Fossil Fuels. Geol Soc Am Spec Publ 41:317–332

Whyte MA, Romano M, Elvidge DJ (2007) Reconstruction of Middle Jurassic dinosaur-dominated communities from the vertebrate ichnofauna of the Cleveland Basin of Yorkshire, UK. Ichnos 14:117–129

Wichard W, Weitschat W (1996) Wasserinsekten im Bernstein. Eine paläobiologische Studie. Entomol Mitt Löbbecke Mus Aquazoo 4:1–122

Wilf P, Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Ellis B (2006) Decoupled plant and insect diversity after the end-Cretaceous extinction. Science 313:1112–1115

Wilson MVH (1978) Paleogene insect faunas of western North America. Quaest Entomol 14:13–34

Williams RJ (2010) Network 3D software Cambridge, UK Micro Soft Research

Wing SL, Boucher LD (1998) Ecological aspects of the Cretaceous flowering plant radiation. Annu Rev Earth Planet Sci 26:379–421

Wolfe AP, Edlund MB (2005) Taxonomy, phylogeny, and paleoecology of *Eoseira wilsonii* gen. et sp. nov., a middle Eocene diatom (Bacillariophyceae: Aularoseiraceae) from lake sediments at Horsefly, British Columbia, Canada. Can J Earth Sci 42:243–257

Wootton RJ (1988) The historical ecology of aquatic insects: an overview. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 62:477–492

Wu X (1985) Trace fossils and their significance in non-marine turbidite deposits of Mesozoic coal and oil bearing sequences from Yima-Jiyuan basin, western Henan, China. Acta Sedimentol Sin 3:23–31 [in Chinese with English abstract]

Yang Y (1996) Trace fossils from the Miocene diatomites of Shanwang, Shandong, China. Geol Rev 42:187–190 [in Chinese with English abstract]

Yang S, Shen Y (1999) Early Tertiary trace fossils from King George Island, West Antarctica. Acta Paleontol Sin 38:203–217

Zhang L (1987) Significance of the Upper Cretaceous trace fossils from Laiyang, Shandong Province. Geological Information of Shandong Province 2:33–35 [in Chinese]

Zherikhin VV (1978) Development and changes of the Cretaceous and Cenozoic faunal assemblages (Tracheata and Chelicerata). Trudy Paleontol Inst 175:1–198 [in Russian]

Zherikhin VV, Kalugina NS (1985) Landscapes and communities. In: Rasnitsyn AP (ed) Jurassic Continental Biocoenoses of South Siberia and Adjacent Territories [in Russian]

Zherikhin VV, Sinitshenkova ND (2002) Ecological history of the aquatic insects: Cainozoic. In: Rasnitsyn AP, Quick DLJ (eds) History of insects. Kluwer, Dordrecht, pp 417–426

Zherikhin VV, Mostovski MB, Vršanský P, Blagoderov VA, Lukashevich ED (1999) The unique Lower Cretaceous locality Baissa and other contemporaneous fossil insect sites in North and West Transbaikalia. Proceedings of the First International Palaeoentomological Conference, Moscow, 1998. AMBA Projects International, Bratislava, pp 185–192

Żyla D, Wegierek P, Owocki K, Niedźwiedzki G (2013) Insects and crustaceans from the latest Early–early Middle Triassic of Poland. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 371:136–144

Chapter 12
The End-Cretaceous Extinction and Ecosystem Change

Conrad C. Labandeira, Francisco J. Rodríguez-Tovar, and Alfred Uchman

12.1 Introduction

One of the most phenomenal events in the history of Phanerozoic life was the end-Cretaceous (K-Pg) mass extinction, occurring 66.04 Ma ago (Vandenberghe et al. 2012; Husson et al. 2014 for recent calibrations), an event that has been important for the subsequent evolutionary and ecological history of the continental and marine biota. Interest in this event was reignited during the early 1980s, when evidence for extraterrestrial causation was proposed based on several lines of evidence (Alvarez et al. 1980, 1984), later identified with an impact site (Hildebrand et al. 1991). Currently there is near consensus that the K-Pg event was caused by a bolide hitting the carbonate platform in Yucatan, Mexico (but see Schoene et al. 2014), which resulted in a significantly altered global environment, including altered sedimentation patterns (D'Hondt 2005), wildfires (Wolbach et al. 1985), and elevated atmospheric temperatures, and $p\mathrm{CO}_2$ and $p\mathrm{O}_2$ concentrations (Gale et al. 2001;

C.C. Labandeira, (✉)
Department of Paleobiology, MRC-121, National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution, P.O. Box 37012, Washington, DC 200013-7012, USA

Department of Geology, Rhodes University, Grahamstown 6140, South Africa

Department of Entomology and BEES Program, University of Maryland,
College Park, MD 21740, USA

College of Life Sciences, Capital Normal University, Beijing 100048, China
e-mail: labandec@si.edu

F.J. Rodríguez-Tovar
Department of Stratigraphy and Paleontology, University of Granada, Granada 18007, Spain

A. Uchman
Institute of Geological Sciences, Jagiellonian University, Kraków 30-063, Poland

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_12

Beerling et al. 2002; Schulte et al. 2010). However, the most consequential, long-lasting effects were on organisms, not only immediately after the event, but also throughout the intervening time between the event and today.

In the continental realm, the most obvious group that became extinct were major lineages of non-avian dinosaurs (Sereno 1999), which suffered a sudden fate (Sheehan et al. 2000); the previously declining pterosaurs (Penny and Phillips 2004); and several lineages of birds (Hou et al. 1996, but see Cooper and Penney 1997) that underwent major diversity declines (Gelfo and Pascual 2001). For birds, nine lineages survived that became the progenitors to the 42 extant orders of birds (Jarvis et al. 2014). There was extinction of at least one and probably several major clades of mammals (MacLeod 2005), although 39 lineages continued across the boundary, giving rise to the 25 orders of mammals of today (Bininda-Emonds et al. 2007). The similar style of survivorship of bird versus mammal lineages across the K-Pg boundary is noteworthy. Both major vertebrate lineages seem to support a slow-fuse model (Bininda-Emonds et al. 2007; Jarvis et al. 2014), in which overwhelmingly fewer, nondiverse lineages were present deep in the Cretaceous or earlier. These comparatively few lineages were "triggered" soon after the end-Cretaceous ecological crisis to provide a stunningly rapid cascade of evolutionary diversification within 10–15 Ma into the numerous lineages of birds and mammals that presently occupy virtually every significant continental and marine habitat on the planet.

Other organisms in terrestrial and freshwater habitats suffered considerable losses, including land plants (Johnson 2002; Wilf and Johnson 2004; McElwain and Punyasena 2007), with important regional differences (Askin and Jacobson 1996); bivalves (Hartman 1998; Hartman et al. 2009); crocodyliforms (Brochu 2004); and many avian dinosaurs (Sereno 1999; Retallack 2004). Groups that were minimally or not affected were amphibians (Archibald and Bryant 1990); and non-archosaurian reptiles such as turtles, lizards, rhynchocephalians, amphisbaenians, and choristoderes (MacLeod et al. 1997; Novacek 1999). Major insect lineages were unaffected at the family level (Labandeira and Sepkoski 1993), although ecological relationships with plants were significantly reduced (Labandeira et al. 2002a, b; Wilf et al. 2006; Donovan et al. 2014). Spiders, predators overwhelmingly consuming insects, also were not reduced in family-level diversity (Penney et al. 2003), and appear to track the family-level diversity of insects before and after the event (Penney 2003).

For the marine realm, as in the continental realm, some clades experienced significant or outright extinctions, whereas others did not (D'Hondt 2005). The principle clades that suffered major extinctions at the K-Pg boundary were diatoms (MacLeod 1998); calcareous nannoplankton (Bown 2005); other phytoplankton (MacLeod et al. 1997); benthic and planktic foraminifera (Kuhnt and Collins 1996; Arenillas et al. 2000; Molina 2015); scleractinian corals, particularly colonial taxa inhabiting warmer waters (Rosen and Turnšek 1989); echinoderms (Jeffrey 2001); mollusks such as belemnoids, ammonites (Marshall and Ward 1996) and inoceramid and rudistid clams (Ward et al. 1991; Raup and Jablonski 1993; Lockwood 2003). Vertebrate extinctions included many lineages of teleost fish (Friedman 2009, 2010), mosasaurs (MacLeod et al. 1997), and plesiosaurs (O'Keefe 2001). Apparently, there were minimal levels of extinctions, if any, of radiolaria (MacLeod et al. 1997), dinoflagellates (Gedl 2004); probably ostracods (Brouwers and De Deckker 1993); and brachiopods, which experienced a diversification event during the early Paleocene (MacLeod et al. 1997).

It is evident that these data are overwhelmingly based on identifications and tallies of body fossils, inventoried as either specimens or taxa, which represent diversities or abundances through time. A neglected but crucial aspect toward understanding the K-Pg event and its recovery phase is the collection, analysis, and interpretation of ecological data. When appropriately linked to various types of diversity data and to assessments of phylogeny based on paleobiological occurrence data and molecular phylogenies, ecological data can yield insights into mechanisms and patterns that may not be evident solely from a focus on taxonomic affiliations or occurrence tallies in particular habitats. In this contribution, we attempt to fill this void by providing two approaches toward understanding the ecology of the K-Pg extinction in both the continental and marine realms. For the continental realm, we will employ the system of analyzing damage types (DTs), that record distinctive plant–insect interactions throughout the K-Pg event to the late Paleogene (Labandeira et al. 2007). This approach has resulted in a fuller understanding of the patterns and processes during this tumultuous interval in terrestrial earth history. From a different branch of paleoichnology, we employ sedimentologically based tools for understanding marine organism–sediment relationships and behavioral correlates, mainly based on detailed ichnofabrics from studies of polished sections and examined burrow fills, including isotopic composition studies, which yields a better understanding of organism response to changes in the marine realm.

12.2 Evolutionary and Ecological Dynamics of the K-Pg Event and Its Recovery

There are two basic aspects to the generation of new lineages and their associated ecologies during a major mass-extinction crisis. The initial phase involves lineage-sorting processes inherent in the extinction, whereas the subsequent phase molds the selected lineages within the context of newly created ecospace.

12.2.1 Selectivity and Sorting During the Mass Extinction

The effect of the K-Pg event on the evolutionary trajectory of life has been examined extensively, particularly for marine mollusks (Jablonski 1989, 2001, 2005). The K-Pg mass extinction resulted in dramatic decreases in standing diversity (Jablonski 2005), although there were other significant patterns that have been recorded related to lineage selectivity and its consequences on affected taxa (Jablonski and Raup 1995). One of the more important conclusions of these studies has been the central role that mass extinction selectivity plays in favoring certain taxa-specific attributes over others (Jablonski 2001). The targeting of attributes during mass extinctions differs substantively from times of ambient, background extinction rates (Kitchell et al. 1986). In addition to providing dramatic decreases in standing diversity, another pattern resulted in more widely distributed taxa becoming considerably extinction averse compared to taxa with much narrower biogeographic ranges (Jablonski 2005). This extinction differential tends to favor taxonomically higher-ranked taxa for survival over their lower-ranked subordinates. Consequently, there was extinction of species with narrower geographic ranges, many of which were members of more broadly distributed (and temporally persistent) genera.

Perhaps the most important factor for selectivity during mass extinction was the relationship between life habits and feeding biology (Jablonski 2005). Most buffered of all were deposit feeders that occurred in the benthos or on sediment substrates that subsisted on detritus or dead organisms (Arthur and Zachos 1987; Twichett 2006). Deposit-feeding clades suffered much lower extinction levels than those groups occurring in the water column or having more direct trophic links to photosynthetic organisms (Sheehan and Hansen 1986). Consequently, in the marine realm, benthic deposit feeders and scavengers were favored over suspension and filter feeders existing in the water column that were embedded in food webs connected to photosynthetic organisms. For the continental realm, small insectivorous animals and aquatic invertebrates in streams were favored over most large-bodied vertebrates such as dinosaurs (Sheehan and Hansen 1986). Nevertheless, Levinton (1996) suggested that deposit feeders should have suffered extinction levels comparable to organisms more directly linked to photosynthetic organisms. This alternative pattern would be attributable to all dead organic material ultimately originating from more inclusive food chains of primary producers and their herbivores, although the effects would have been separated by a temporal lag of 3–6 months after impact. Contrary evidence is the presence of a local detritivorous earthworm fauna within several thousand years of the K-Pg event that consumed organic material preserved regionally as lignites (Chin et al. 2013). Another life-history source of immunity from extinction was marine organisms that possessed planktic life stages, versus those that do not (Kitchell et al. 1986). Those organisms with planktic life stages, such as many crustaceans with planktotrophic larvae, preferentially survived the K-Pg extinction. A considerably longer effect, resulting from a decrease of organic flux to the sea, were the negative consequences on calcium carbonate production by marine plankton, which took a few million years for the open-ocean ecosystem to be restored to full operational capacity, well into the mid Paleocene (D'Hondt 2005).

12.2.2 Establishing New Lineages and Ecologies During the Recovery

The recovery phase also had interesting evolutionary and ecological dynamics that were separate from the much shorter, preceding extinction phase. One secondary effect, based on a combination of theoretical models (Erwin 2001) and observations

(Jablonski 2001), was the probable lack of an association between the severity of the extinction and the length of recovery. In part, this would have been attributable to the collapse of ecosystems and thus the removal of ecospace that would disallow a rapid, orderly, logistic recolonization of pre-existing habitats. The destruction of ecospace was rebuilt, figuratively and trophically, from the ground up, and the idiosyncratic nature of lineage survivorship suggests that the recovery pattern was not attributable to global trophic principles, but rather represent a summation of lineages resulting from disparate patterns in time and space (McKenna and Farrell 2006), with no single, unifying ecological explanation (Jablonski 2005).

The vagaries of organismic occupation of ecospace during the recovery phase also indicate that origination rates of major lineages are reset at mass extinction episodes, rather than at intervals of background extinction (Jablonski 1989). It is during the recovery phase that entirely novel ecologies are created for surviving lineages (Solé et al. 2002); indicating that mass extinction and subsequent recoveries ultimately are the key intervals for establishing major evolutionary trajectories (Erwin 1998; Krug and Jablonski 2012). Indeed, the effects of the K-Pg event are reflected in current disruptions in the biogeographical distributions and ages of marine bivalve genera (Krug et al. 2009), and in the times of origin of particular extant plant–insect interactions (Labandeira 2005). These patterns indicate an increase in origination rates that followed the K-Pg mass extinctions and eventually reached a peak about 10 my after the event (Kirchner and Weil 2000). Effects of these origination-rate increases persist to the present day. An associated, but opposite, phenomenon is the survival of some lineages that survived the mass extinction event in radically decreased diversity, only to be finally extirpated early within a short-lived recovery (Erwin 2001). Such clades are termed “dead clade walking” (Jablonski 2002), and their early, post-event demise probably involved mismatches among biotic interactions.

12.3 The Continental Perspective of Ecological Disruption and Its Consequences

In this section, the effects of the K-Pg crisis on aquatic and terrestrial communities will be discussed, although the focus will be insects and their associations with plants from floras spanning the K-Pg boundary in the Western Interior of North America (Labandeira et al. 2002a, b; Wilf et al. 2000, 2006; Winkler et al. 2010; Labandeira and Currano 2013; Donovan et al. 2014). The analytical techniques used in these studies were developed during the late 1990’s (Wilf and Labandeira 1999; Wilf et al. 2001; Labandeira et al. 2007), and have expanded in scope to allow examination of plant–insect herbivore dynamics immediately preceding, during, and following the Paleocene–Eocene Thermal Maximum (PETM) floras that occur in the same or nearby basins (Wilf and Labandeira 1999; Wilf et al. 2001; Currano et al. 2008, 2010). Examination of plant-host and insect herbivore dynamics of the PETM studies can be seen as an extension of the K-Pg work, the latter detailed below, particularly as it documents the final stage of recovery from the major effects of the end-Cretaceous ecological crisis.

Parenthetically, it should be noted that study of plant–insect interactions in the fossil record never has been a major theme in paleoichnology. Mainstream paleoichnology has been principally driven by varied studies of the organismic alteration of sediment substrates in the fossil record from a wide variety of continental and marine depositional environments (Bromley et al. 2007). By contrast, much of the recent study of plant–insect interactions, principally herbivory, has targeted well-preserved, angiosperm-dominated fossil floras from several well-studied areas worldwide, including western North America (Wilf et al. 2001, 2006; Labandeira et al. 2002a), western Europe (Wappler et al. 2009, 2012), east Africa (Currano et al. 2011), and southern Patagonia and northern Colombia in South America (Wilf et al. 2005; Wing et al. 2009). The two approaches—sedimentological and plant–insect associational——have allowed for differing collection procedures, statistical protocols, interpretations, research-driven questions, and reference to overarching theory.

12.3.1 Aquatic Communities

The fate of invertebrates in freshwater aquatic communities during the K-Pg event is minimally understood, but is best demonstrated for bivalves, which experienced a major contraction of taxa that survived into the Paleocene (Hartman 1998). Major insect lineages such as mayflies, dragonflies, stoneflies, caddisflies, nematocerous flies, and beetles, which have actively feeding aquatic immatures, did not suffer extinction at the family level above that of the background level (Labandeira 2005), and likely were preferentially buffered against extinction (Sheehan and Hansen 1986). There is virtually no data on survivorship of major freshwater malacostracan lineages across the boundary.

12.3.2 Terrestrial Communities

Terrestrial communities house the bulk of biodiversity in the modern world, and undoubtedly did so during the latest Cretaceous. Most of this biomass occurs as land plants and arthropods, the two hyperdiverse groups that provide macroscopic structure to terrestrial ecosystems. Because of the ecological importance of these two groups and the absence of body-fossil insects near the K-Pg boundary (e.g., Larsson 1975; Pike 1994), a plant–insect associational analysis was conducted across the boundary in the Williston Basin of North Dakota, where abundant, diverse, and well-preserved floras are widespread (Johnson 2002; Labandeira et al. 2002a, b; Wilf et al. 2006; Donovan et al. 2014). When these ecological studies of K-Pg plant–insect interactions (Labandeira et al. 2002a, b) were linked to those of the PETM (Wilf et al. 2006; Currano et al. 2008, 2010; Donovan et al. 2014), the results (discussed below) parallel those found in the evolutionary studies of birds (Jarvis et al. 2014) and mammals (Bininda-Emonds et al. 2007), also occurring within 10 to 15 my after the boundary. Additionally, examinations of K-Pg to PETM floras have been extended to western Europe (Wappler et al. 2009, 2012; Dunne et al. 2012), and the results are suggestive of the pattern in North America. However, a valid test of Williston Basin data in Europe would require a regional, continuous section of well-preserved floras traversing the K-Pg boundary, currently absent, for further progress toward understanding the broader biogeographical extent of this global event.

12.3.2.1 Plants

The change in plant diversity across the K-Pg boundary was once thought to have been gradual (Hickey 1981) or stepwise (Frederiksen 1989), based on megafloral and palynological data, respectively. However, subsequent evidence from more intensely collected sections from the Williston Basin have clearly established a catastrophic extinction pattern (Johnson 2002), equivalent to a 57 % maximum estimate for extinction based on megafloral species-level data (Wilf and Johnson 2004), and a 30 % minimum estimate based on palynological genus-level data (Nichols 2002). These more recent data indicate a major turnover from more highly diverse and warm-adapted late Maastrichtian floras occupying a variety of habitats, to depauperate, cool-adapted early Paleocene floras that largely occupied mire habitats (Johnson 2002).

12.3.2.2 Insect Herbivory

With the possible exception of the Denver Basin to the south, the Williston Basin floral sequence represents the best combination of conditions for an analysis of insect herbivore patterns on floras straddling the K-Pg boundary. These floras are stratigraphically linked to a composite section of 183 m of strata that represent 2.2 my, of which the lower 1.4 my interval is of latest Cretaceous age and the upper 0.8 my interval is of earliest Paleocene age (Fig. 12.1). Within this system of floras, 13,441 specimens representing 380 plant-organ morphotypes were examined from 143 localities derived from 106 discrete stratigraphic levels (Fig. 12.1). Typical of most floras for this time interval, the Williston Basin floras are dominated by dicotyledonous angiosperms (86.3 %), but also include monocotyledonous angiosperms, conifers, cycads, ginkgos, ferns, a horsetail, and bryophytes (Fig. 12.2). The total assemblage represents a variety of fluvially dominated environments, including abandoned channels, sand bars, overbank deposits, ponds, and swamps, which formed a mosaic of distinctive habitats. Additional details are provided in the two reports from this study (Labandeira et al. 2002a, b).

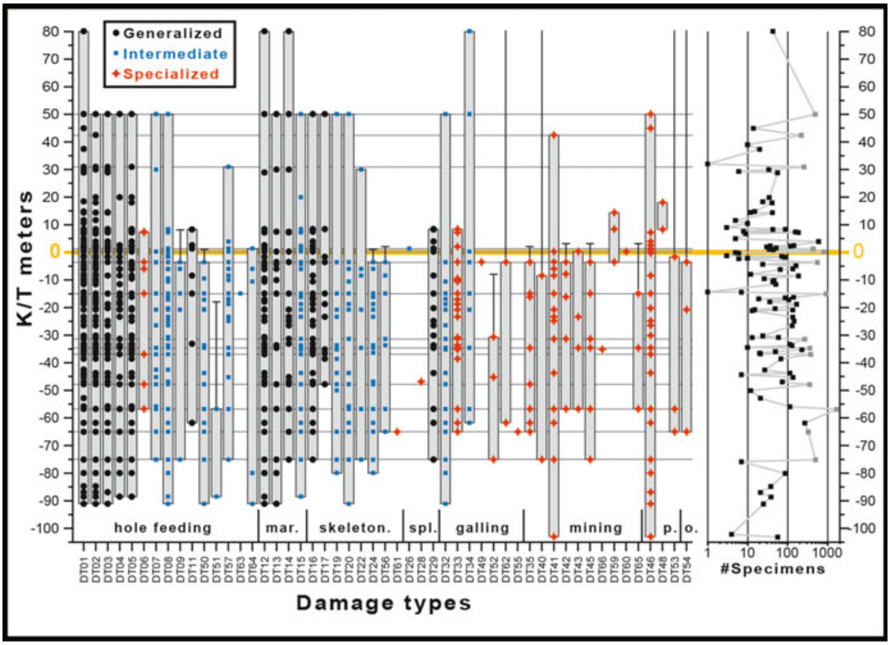


Fig. 12.1 Stratigraphic and sampling data for the 51 insect-mediated damage types from a 183 meter composite section straddling the K-Pg boundary (*orange bar*), from the Williston Basin of southwestern North Dakota. The estimated time duration for this interval is 2.2 million years (my) before present, of which 0.8 my are assigned to the postboundary interval and 1.4 my are allocated to the pre-boundary interval. The Cretaceous strata are within the Hell Creek and Fort Union formations, and the Paleocene strata are entirely within the Fort Union Formation. Placement of the zero datum is at the K-Pg boundary, not the Hell Creek/Fort Union formational contact, because the contact is diachronous with respect to the K-Pg boundary timeline. Depicted are the raw presence/absence data for damage types, categorized by functional feeding group and DT subgroup at bottom, and representing 106 discrete horizons. Eight damage types have single stratigraphic occurrences (*dots*); the ranges of those with multiple stratigraphic occurrences are shown as *vertical shaded bars*, categorized by host specificity from the color scheme at *upper left* (see text). Of the 14 specialized damage types with multiple stratigraphic occurrences that disappear at or below the K-Pg boundary, six (42.9 %) reappear during the latest Paleocene to middle Eocene of Wyoming and Utah. All associations are extant today. Four confidence intervals that exceed our sampling range are shown without end bars. Total specimen frequencies are given at *right*, including all plant organs; note logarithmic scale. The *gray horizontal lines* in the main figure and corresponding *gray squares* at *right* indicate the 14 horizons with more than 200 specimens of identified dicot leaves; meter levels for these floras are: −75.0, −65.0, −56.8, −47.8, −36.9, −31.4, −15.0, −3.6, +0.2, +1.3, +30.9, +42.4, +50.0. Abbreviations: *mar* margin feeding, *skeleton.* skeletonization, *spl.* surface feeding, *p.* piercing-and-sucking, *o.* oviposition. Limitations on graphical presentation cause the flora at +0.2 m, which are Paleocene, to appear within the *orange line* representing the K-Pg boundary. From Labandeira et al. (2002b), reprinted with permission by the National Academy of Sciences

Fig. 12.2 A spectrum of generalized (**c**, **g**, **i**, **j**) and specialized (**a**, **b**, **d**, **e**, **f**, **h**, **i**, **k**) plant–insect associations from the Williston Basin of southwestern North Dakota. Associations range from the earliest Paleocene at upper left, 14.4 m above the K/T boundary, and continue to the older associations of the latest Cretaceous at lower right, 85.5 m below the boundary. All material is from the Denver Museum of Nature and Science (DMNH) or the Yale Peabody Museum (YPM). Following each plant host are, respectively, morphotype number (indicated by the prefixes HC or FU), specimen number, NMNH locality number (loc.), and ± meter distances from the K/T boundary. Damage types are indicated by the prefix DT. Scale bars: *solid*, 1 cm; *backslashed*, 0.1 cm. (**a**) Two linear mines with oviposition sites (*arrows*), following secondary and then primary venation, terminating in a large pupation chamber (DT59) on the dicot *Paranymphaea crassifolia* (FU1), DMNH-20055, loc. 563, +14.4 m. (**b**) Single gall (DT33) on primary vein of *Cercidiphyllum genetrix* (Cercidiphyllaceae, FU5), DMNH-20042, loc. 562, +8.4 m. (**c**) Free feeding (DT26) on *Platanus raynoldsi* (Platanaceae, FU16), DMNH-20035, loc. 2217, +1.3 m. (**d**) Skeletonization (DT51) on a probable lauralean leaf (HC32), DMNH-19984, loc. 2097, −31.4 m. (**e**) Multiple galls (DT33) on *Trochodendroides nebrascensis* (Cercidiphyllaceae, HC103), DMNH-19976, loc. 1489, −33.7 m. (**f**) Initial phase of a serpentine mine (DT45) on *Marmarthia pearsoni* (Lauraceae, HC162), DMNH-7228, loc. 2087, −36.9 m. (**g**) Cuspate margin feeding (DT12, *arrow*) on *Metasequoia* sp. (Cupressaceae, HC35), DMNH-13108, loc. 567, −56.8 m. (**h**) Serpentine leaf mine (DT43) assigned to the Nepticulidae (Lepidoptera) on unidentified Rosaceae (HC80), YPM-6367a, loc. 567, −56.8 m. (**i**) Hole feeding pattern (DT57) on an unknown genus of Urticales (HC81), DMNH-19539, loc. 2203, −56.8 m. (**j**) General skeletonization (DT16) on *Erlingdorfia montana* (Platanaceae, HC57), DMNH-11013, loc. 571, −61.7 m. (**k**) Large scale-insect impressions (DT53) centered on primary veins of *E. montana*, DMNH-18829b, loc. 571, −61.7 m. (**l**) Slot hole feeding (DT08) on an unidentified genus of Platanaceae (HC109), DMNH-18658, loc. 434, −88.5 m. See Labandeira et al. (2007) for descriptions of damage types. From Labandeira et al. (2002b), reprinted with permission by the National Academy of Sciences

Of the examined specimens, 9292 (69 %) were late Maastrichtian and 4149 (31 %) were early Paleocene in age. This breakdown approximately was associated with the Hell Creek Formation, and the Fort Union Formation, respectively, but since the Hell Creek–Fort Union formational contact is diachronous with respect to the K-Pg boundary (the zero datum of Fig. 12.1), some earliest Paleocene floras were within the uppermost Hell Creek Formation. Sampling did not favor either the Paleocene or the Maastrichtian portions of this study, as specimen coverage was approximately equal for any 5-m interval above and below the boundary. In addition, confidence intervals were placed on the tops of ranges for each damage type (or DT) to correct for sampling intensity and to provide estimates for the likely time of extinction for each relevant DT (Labandeira et al. 2002a).

The presence–absence matrix represented 51 DTs from eight functional feeding groups (FFGs): hole feeding, margin feeding, skeletonization, surface feeding, galling, leaf mining, piercing-and-sucking, and oviposition (Figs. 12.1, 12.2, and 12.3). Each DT was categorized as to whether it was a generalized, intermediate, or specialized interaction (Figs. 12.1 and 12.2), but with particular attention to documenting unique host-specialist associations (Fig. 12.3), based on a variety of criteria. Three major patterns resulted from an analysis of the plant–insect interactions dataset. First, generalized DTs are better represented than intermediate and specialized DTs in the Paleocene side, with all generalized DT's crossing the boundary whereas 10 of 16 of the intermediate and 6 of 20 of the specialized cross the boundary. Second, of the 14 Maastrichtian DTs that are represented by large sample size, 10 have a last appearance just below the boundary, indicating extirpation at or just below the K-Pg boundary, a finding buttressed by confidence intervals. Third, after the decrease of the early Paleocene, herbivory increases in both frequency and richness during the later Paleocene. Most of this herbivory is generalized, as the more specialized DTs remain consistently low in frequency and richness. The frequency and richness of insect damage was analyzed throughout the section, and confined to the 14 discrete horizons (Fig. 12.1) and to the most abundant, identifiably dicot leaves to avoid biases in DT sampling on less abundant and poorly preserved non-dicot leaves. These analyses show a decrease in herbivory at the boundary, with the most significant decrease attributed to the intermediate and specialized DTs (data

→

Fig. 12.3 (continued) (**i**) Detail of mine in **h**, showing median frass trail at *upper left*. (**j**) Three aborted leaf mines, two of which have coiled initial phase (loc. 900, DMNH-7325). (**k**) Complete leaf mine with extensive terminal chamber illustrating trail (loc. 900, DMNH-7264). (**l**) Enlargement of terminal mine chamber in **k**, showing path of undulatory frass trail, indicated by *white arrows*. (**m**) Two aborted leaf mines with coiled initial phases (loc. 428, DMNH-7498). (**n**) Enlargement of leaf mine at *upper left* in **m**, showing coiled (*darkened*) initial phase. (**o**) Enlargement of leaf mine at *lower right* in **m**, revealing coiled leaf mine at *lower right* in **k**, indicating coiled (*darkened*) initial phase, and subsequent curvilinear phase along median primary and branching secondary veins (*arrow*). (**p**) Two adjacent leaf mines aborted early in development (loc. 900, DMNH-7313). Abbreviations: *DMNH* Denver Museum of Nature and Science, *YPM* Yale Peabody Museum. Scale bars: 1.0 cm, *solid*; 0.1 cm, *striped*. From Labandeira et al. (2002a), reprinted with permission by the Geological Society of America

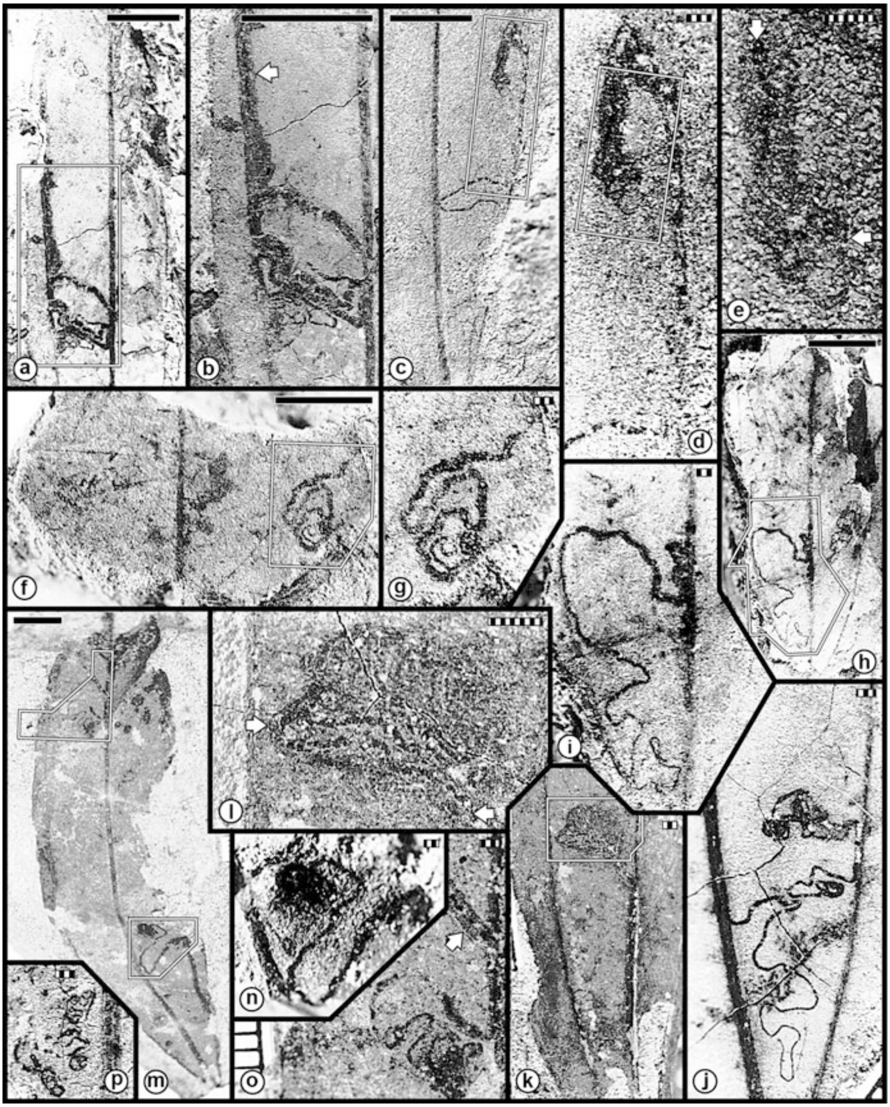


Fig. 12.3 Host-specific association between *Marmarthia pearsoni* (Laurales) and a gracillariid leaf miner (Lepidoptera), from the uppermost Hell Creek Formation. This highly stereotyped damage type, DT45, represents a specialized serpentine miner typically with an initial coiled phase, a subsequent curvilinear trajectory, and modestly expanded terminal chamber. It occurs exclusively on plant host HC162 at YPM localities 900 and 428. (**a**) Near-complete leaf mine following the primary venation (loc. 900, DMNH-7313). (**b**) Enlargement of **a**, with dark colored, medial frass trail detectable at upper left corner, along a primary vein. (**c**) Complete leaf mine with terminal chamber at *upper right* (loc. 900, DMNH-7263). (**d**) Enlargement of latter serpentine phase and terminal chamber of leaf mine in **c**. (**e**) Close-up of terminal chamber displaying dark frass trail (*top arrow*) and chamber edge (*bottom arrow*). (**f**) Fragment of leaf with a portion of leaf mine; note coiled early phase (loc. 900, DMNH-7199). (**g**) Close-up of mine in **f**. (**h**) Complete leaf mine bounded by median and lateral primary veins of plant host, typical for this species (loc. 900, DMNH-20023).

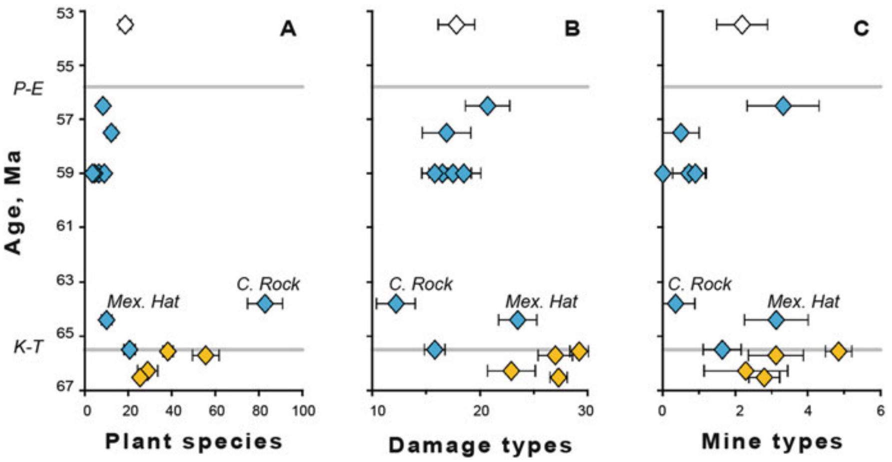


Fig. 12.4 Plant and insect-feeding diversity for bulk floras, standardized to sample sizes of 400 leaf specimens each. *Orange-yellow* data points are Cretaceous floras; *blue* data points are Paleocene floras. *Ma* million years ago. Plant richness (**a**) was standardized by means of rarefaction, with error bars indicating 95 % confidence intervals. Insect damage was standardized by means of random resampling without replacement, with ±1σ error bars around the mean of 5000 iterations, both for (**b**) all damage morphotypes and (**c**) mine morphotypes only. There is a strong negative correlation of plant and insect damage richness for Mexican Hat (*Mex. Hat*) and Castle Rock (*C. Rock*). A separate analysis (not shown in the figure) excluded most external feeding and other generalized damage morphotypes, yielding results nearly identical to (**b**). Abbreviations: *K-T* Cretaceous–Paleogene boundary, *P-E* Paleocene–Eocene boundary. Reprinted from Wilf et al. (2006), with permission from the American Association for the Advancement of Science

not shown; Labandeira et al. 2002a, Fig. 3). The sustained decrease of herbivory above the boundary, and the failure of intermediate and specialized DTs to recover do record a major event affecting insect herbivores, documented in particular for leaf-mining taxa (Donovan et al. 2014).

These results were tested in a subsequent study (Wilf et al. 2006), in which insect feeding damage from 14,999 dicot leaves were examined from 14 latest Cretaceous, Paleocene, and early Eocene sites to understand post-extinction patterns of herbivory, including generalized and specialized forms of interactions (Fig. 12.4). Expectedly, most of the Paleocene sites displayed low richness of plants and insect damage, with two unexpected exceptions in the early Paleocene, both within 1.7 my of the end-Cretaceous extinction. One site from the Denver Basin, Castle Rock, showed exceptionally high plant diversity but virtually no specialized feeding; another site from the Williston Basin, Mexican Hat, conversely exhibited a typically depauperate Paleocene flora but high levels of specialized herbivory. These disparate results indicate that, for about 2 my after the end-Cretaceous extinction, local community structure of plants and insect herbivores remained significantly unbalanced, and did not regain latest Cretaceous levels of herbivory and specialization until much later, during the late Paleocene.

12.3.2.3 Implications for Macroevolutionary Patterns of Specialist Insect Herbivores

The above studies are based on assessments of insect herbivore functional feeding groups and their damage types in floras across the K-Pg boundary, through the Paleocene, and well into the early Eocene. These data may be important for detecting the immediate and longer-term ecological processes of plant–insect interactions after a major environmental perturbation. Given the long lag times toward increased levels of herbivory and host-plant specialization following the K-Pg event, it would appear to support the gradual rather than instantaneous colonization of plant hosts after a major ecological crisis. This pattern also is detected from examination of specialized leaf-mining lineages and their delayed colonization of available plant hosts (Lopez-Vaamonde et al. 2006; Donovan et al. 2014), consistent with the long lead-times to diversification predicted by the resource abundance–dependent diversification hypothesis (Nyman et al. 2012). The post-event fossil pattern also is inconsistent with geologically rapid, synchronous patterns of insects that co-radiate onto their host plants, documented for certain chrysomelid beetles and their burseraceous hosts (Becerra 2003). Alternatively, these data could address the issue of quick, local adaptation to allopatric populations of novel host plants from a broadly distributed specialist species (Rosenzweig 1995; Zvereva et al. 2010).

If host specialists were disproportionately extirpated at the K-Pg mass extinction event, then specialization of insect herbivores could be an evolutionary dead end. A tendency toward lineage phylogenetic stasis has been documented for recent clades of leaf miners (Connor and Taverner 1997; Lopez-Vaamonde et al. 2003), those gallers with more limited host ranges (Hardy and Cook 2010), and some *Dendroctonus* bark beetles (Kelley and Farrell 1998). This especially would be true if the lineages of host-plant specialists are clustered in particular clades vulnerable to a mass extinction (Roy et al. 2009). However, there are good reasons to indicate that some specialized relationships are not evolutionary cul-de-sacs (Colles et al. 2009); counterexamples include doniciine beetles on aquatic reeds (Kölsch and Pedersen 2008) and perhaps other *Dendroctonus* bark beetle taxa (Kelley and Farrell 1998). While host-plant specialization may lead to extinction at times of major ecosystem crises, such as the K-Pg, during other, much more prolonged intervals of background extinction, specialist and generalist herbivore lineages may experience stasis and have bidirectional acquisition of host-plant feeding preferences (DiMichele et al. 2004; Forister et al. 2012; Thompson 2013).

12.3.2.4 Insect Pollination

The data and methods of assessing patterns of insect pollination across the K-Pg boundary are considerably more difficult than that those that evaluate insect herbivory. The palynological record, however, can reveal broad trends in the frequency of zoophilous (insect vectored) versus anemophilous (wind dispersed) pollen. Several examinations have documented a significant reduction of zoophilous pollen at the K-Pg boundary (Frederiksen 1989; Sweet and Braman 2001), indicating a disproportionate extinction of pollen vectored by insects at the boundary. In one study documenting a lineage of dominantly Late Cretaceous zoophilous pollen across the K-Pg boundary, a sole anemophilous palynospecies evidently survived the event in a local section (McIver et al. 1991). Other lines of evidence also indicate the emergence of pollinators immediately after the K-Pg event. One is a fortuitous occurrence of an entrapped stingless bee associated in a flower of its orchid host found in Dominican amber (Ramírez et al. 2007). A molecularly based reconstruction of orchid phylogeny based mostly on this fossil indicated that the time of origin of the insect-pollinated orchid lineage was immediately after the K-Pg event. This result parallels the same time of origin, using a similar method of phylogenetic reconstruction, for nymphalid butterflies (Wahlberg et al. 2009), another major pollinator clade likely originating in the wake of the K-Pg crisis.

12.3.2.5 Blood Feeding on Dinosaur Hosts

Some associations are known from the Late Cretaceous involve live and dead dinosaurs. Perhaps the most intriguing association involves an example of blood feeding between *Culicoides*, the most diverse genus of extant blood-feeding of the mosquito-like dipteran family Ceratopogonidae (biting midges, no-see-ums, punkies) and its inferred live host, the dinosaur *Corythosaurus*. Female ceratopogonids currently are major vectors of arboviruses, parasitic protozoa, and filarial worms that cause diseases such as African Horsesickness, Bovine Ephemeral Fever, Bluetongue Virus, and occasional filariasis, which are associated with acute dermatitis and skin lesions (Lehane 1991). (Male ceratopogonids are nectar feeders and often are pollinators.) Early appearing ceratopogonid lineages occur in Early Cretaceous ambers and include taxa whose modern representatives, such as *Leptoconops* and certain basal species of *Forcipomyia* and *Culicoides* feed on reptiles such as turtles, iguanas and lizards (Wirth and Hubert 1962; Auezova et al. 1990). In particular, these ceratopogonids attack hosts with vulnerable skin regions lacking scales such as eye membranes, the anal vent area, and underbelly of individuals, or alternatively in heavily vascularized regions of the skin that have narrow spaces of exposed skin between thickened scutes (Auezova et al. 1990; Borkent 1995).

An association has been between certain Late Cretaceous species of *Culicoides*—particularly *C. canadensis* and *C. bullus* of Campanian Grassy Lake Amber of Canada and possibly *C. filapalpis* of Coniacian Taimyr Amber of Russia—and dinosaurs (Borkent 1995). This interaction is based on the mouthpart structure of fossil and modern *Culicoides* (Borkent 1995). Those *Culicoides* species with a combination of finely toothed mandibular stylets and coarse, retorsely toothed maxillary stylets indicate feeding on vertebrates, rather than insects (McIver et al. 1991). In addition, the number CO_2 detecting capitate sensillae on the maxillary palps of *Culicoides* species is directly associated with vertebrate host size: those with a greater number of sensillae ($n=29$–74) feed on small hosts such as small birds and small mammals, whereas those species with fewer sensillae ($n=11$–17) feed on large mammals, with some species possessing an intermediate number of sensillae ($n=29$–36) that feed on birds and mammals of intermediate sizes (Rowley and

Cornford 1972; Braverman and Hulley 1979). An examination of the fossil record from both the Late Cretaceous of north-central North America northern Russia indicate that mammals and birds were comparatively small and that the only large vertebrate candidates as hosts were large dinosaurs, such as *Corythosaurus* which possessed exposed integumental surfaces for blood-feeding ceratopogonids that co-occurred with Grassy Lake species of *C. canadensis* and *C. bullus* (Borkent 1995) Both of these and the Russian species of *Culicoides* have several features of mouthpart structure and anatomy that would strongly indicate blood feeding on vulnerable integumental areas of large dinosaurs.

12.3.2.6 Other Interactions

Based on scant evidence, there are other types of interactions that likely were extirpated at the K-Pg boundary. Most of these associations involve plant pathogens, and those involving various relationships with large vertebrates, particularly dinosaurs.

The documented fossil record of plant pathogens is almost nonexistent, with the exception of epiphyllous fungi (Labandeira and Prevec 2014). Mid-Cretaceous floras such as the Dakota Formation display a significant epiphyllous mycota (DT58 on page 15 of Labandeira et al. 2007), and foliar fungi are known from floras spanning the K-Pg boundary of the Williston Basin (Labandeira personal observation), though they have not been characterized other than assignment to DT58. The other major plant-parasitic pathogen groups of viruses, bacteria, and nematodes may have instances of tissue damage in the fossil record (Labandeira and Prevec 2014), but have not been documented formally.

Sediments from approximately the same age as the example of the biting midge and dinosaur parasitism reveal an association between scarab beetles and dinosaur dung rich in conifer fragments (Chin and Gill 1996). Evidence of carrion communities on dinosaur carcasses includes beetle borings in and on bone material from the Campanian of southern Utah and northwestern Montana, and from the Maastrichtian of northwestern Madagascar (Rogers 1992; Roberts et al. 2007). Wasp cocoons associated with decomposing dinosaur eggs were described from middle Campanian to lower Maastrichtian sediments of northern Patagonia, in Argentina (Genise and Sarzetti 2011). These Late Cretaceous associations occur within several million years of the K-Pg boundary likely were extirpated by the demise of their dinosaur hosts.

12.4 The Marine Perspective of Ecological Disruption and Its Consequences

Although the end-Cretaceous mass extinction is one of the best documented events of the Phanerozoic, until recently, there have been few detailed ichnological analyses focusing on this extinction in marine environments (Ekdale and Bromley 1984a;

Savrda 1993; Stinnesbeck et al. 1993, 1996; Keller et al. 1994; Ekdale and Stinnesbeck 1998). This absence of research is a consequence of difficulties inherent in examining discrete trace fossils from lower Danian sediments. However, in Spain and France, the K-Pg boundary transition usually is marked by a 2–3 mm-thick red, iron-rich, boundary layer at the base of several-centimeter-thick interval of dark clay. In most cases, material infilling the earliest Danian trace fossil assemblage is similar in color to that of host Danian strata, precluding any direct, visual, differentiation. Typically, both the latest Maastrichtian and the earliest Danian ichnoassemblages are observed below the K-Pg boundary, and contrast with the light color of Maastrichtian strata. The latest Maastrichtian ichnoassemblage consists of structures filled with sediments that are only slightly darker than the host material, while the earliest Danian forms are filled with a dark-colored matrix similar to marly, lowermost Danian strata that contrast strongly with the light color of the Maastrichtian host rock. In order to analyze the ichnology of the K-Pg transition in Spain and France, one recent, fruitful methodology has been applied in four boundary sections. These methods have focused on detailed ichnofabric analysis based on the study of polished sections and on analyses, including isotopic studies, of material infilling various sedimentary trace fossils (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2002, 2004, 2006; Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2004a, b, 2006, 2008).

12.4.1 A Selective Impact Favoring the Deposit Feeding Community

Marine ichnoassemblages recorded in pelagic and hemipelagic, non-turbiditic facies of the K-Pg boundary transition globally are very similar in composition. At one distal, continental shelf deposit in Denmark, the Maastrichtian assemblage consists mostly of *Thalassinoides*, *Zoophycos,* and *Chondrites*, whereas basal Danian sediments are comprised of *Planolites*, *Thalassinoides*, and "small *Chondrites*-like forms" that now are recognized as *Phycosiphon* (Ekdale and Bromley 1984a). In very proximal, continental shelf deposits from Alabama, Savrda (1993) observed that *Thalassinoides*, *Ophiomorpha,* and *Planolites* penetrated estuarine sandy deposits of the lowermost Danian. In shallow neritic settings examined in Mexico, trace-fossil assemblages principally consisted of *Chondrites*, *Ophiomorpha*, *Planolites,* and *Zoophycos* (Ekdale and Stinnesbeck 1998). In sections studied from the south (Agost and Caravaca) and north (Sopelana) of Spain and in southwestern France (Bidart), there is correspondence to open, deep-sea pelagic sedimentation (Fig. 12.5). At these Spanish and French sites, a well-developed, oldest Danian, endobenthic community is recognized, composed typically of *Chondrites*, *Zoophycos*, *Planolites*, *Thalassinoides,* and *Alcyonidiopsis* (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2004a, b; Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2011) (Fig. 12.6).

Ichnoassemblages at the K-Pg boundary transition principally consist of *Chondrites*, *Zoophycos*, *Planolites*, *Thalassinoides*, *Ophiomorpha,* and *Alcyonidiopsis* as

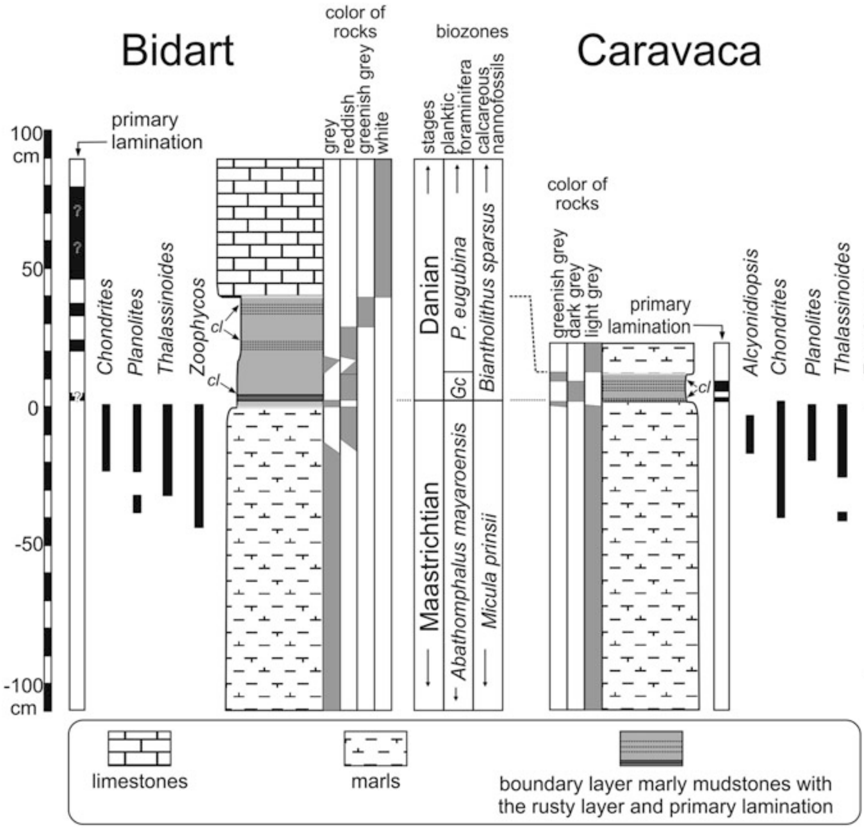


Fig. 12.5 The range of black-filled trace fossils are displayed in stratigraphic sections from Bidart, southwestern France, and Caravaca, southeastern Spain. The trace-fossil infilling is derived from the K-Pg boundary layer. The Bidart lithologic column is after Rodríguez-Tovar et al. (2011). Abbreviation: *cl* base colonization levels in lowermost Danian dark sediments. The planktic foraminiferal zonation and stratigraphic correlation of the Caravaca section is based on Arz et al. (2000) and Arenillas et al. (2004)

the most common ichnotaxa (Figs. 12.5 and 12.6), and are similar to those from other Late Cretaceous, fine-grained, marly sediments (Ekdale and Bromley 1984b). These assemblages reveal the dominance of feeding traces that consist of a variety of behaviors——including domichnia, fodinichnia, pascichnia, and chemichnia——and were produced predominantly by deposit feeders obtaining food from the sediment. This spectrum of feeding ecologies agrees with favorable conditions for detritus- and deposit-feeding tracemakers, associated with the availability of abundant food that was established immediately after the impact event (Morrow and Hasiotis 2007). As mentioned above, deposit-feeding clades were less affected by the extinction than by groups inhabiting the water column or narrowly linked

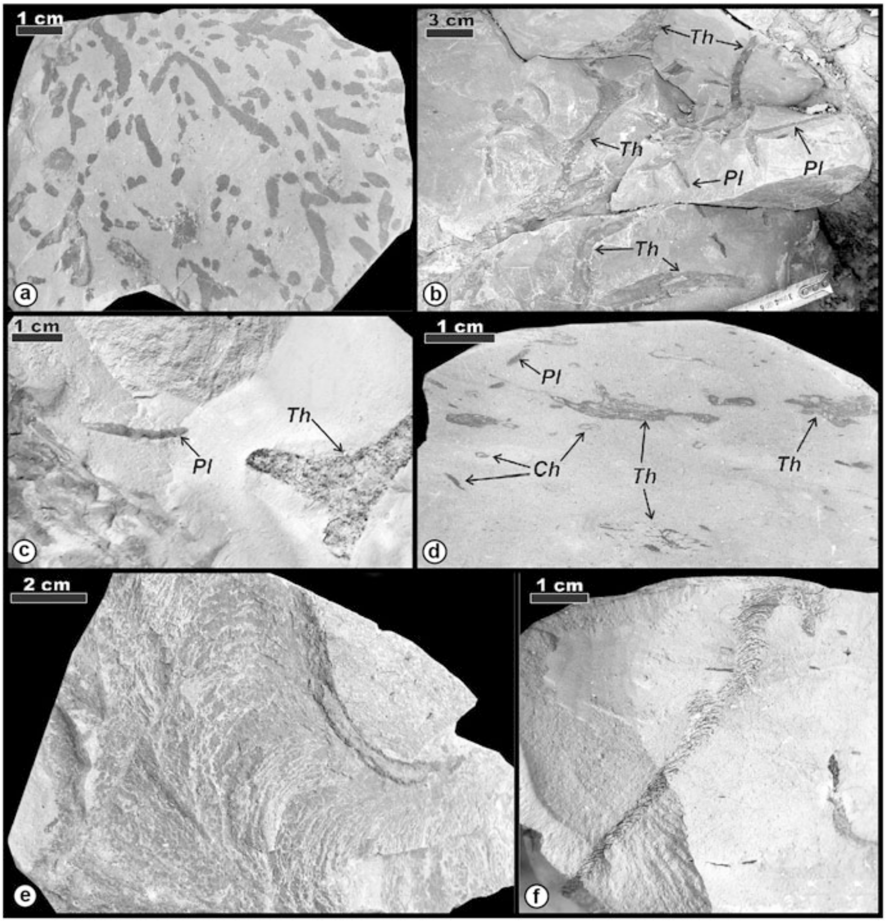


Fig. 12.6 Black-filled, lowermost Danian trace fossils are shown from the uppermost Maastrichtian in stratigraphic sections of Bidart, southwestern France, and Caravaca, southeastern Spain. (**a**) *Chondrites targionii* occurring in a polished section of a horizontal slab, Caravaca section. (**b**) *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*) and *Planolites* isp. (*Pl*) occurring in an oblique parting surface, Bidart section. (**c**) *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*) and *Planolites* isp. (*Pl*) occurring in a horizontal parting surfaces, Bidart section. (**d**) *Thalassinoides* isp. (*Th*), *Chondrites* isp (*Ch*), and *Planolites* isp. (*Pl*) occurring in a polished section of a vertical slab, Bidart section. (**e**) A lobe of *Zoophycos* isp. in a horizontal parting surface, Caravaca section. (**f**) *Zoophycos* isp. in a vertical section of a parting surface, Caravaca section

trophically to photosynthetic organisms (Arthur and Zachos 1987; Jablonski 2005; Twichett 2006). However, along K-Pg sites along the Gulf Coastal plain, apparently the producer of *Thalassinoides* experienced a significant bout of dwarfism after the boundary, as burrow diameters underwent a significant decrease in earliest Paleocene sediments (Wiest et al. 2015).

Ichnological studies of the K-Pg boundary interval from deep sea turbidite facies are less well known than those from non-turbiditic sediments. In the Uzgruň section of Moravia, in the Czech Republic, *Chondrites intricatus*, *Ch. targionii*, *Ophiomorpha annulata*, *O. rudis*, *Palaeophycus tubularis*, *Planolites* isp., *Phycosiphon incertum*, *Thalassinoides* isp., and *Trichichnus* isp. occur through the boundary interval (Uchman et al. 2005). They occur in the sediments underlying and overlying the boundary, and lack distinct morphological changes. In addition, the trace-fossil diversity pattern at the ichnogenus level does not display significant change through this interval (Uchman 2004, 2007). Interestingly, after a Cretaceous peak, the number of new graphoglyptid ichnogenera in the Paleocene decreased considerably, while the contribution of graphoglyptid taxa in ichnoassemblages of turbiditic sediments increased in general (Uchman 2003). Stratigraphic resolution of these changes is poor, making it very difficult to link these changes precisely to the K-Pg event. However, it is possible that the coincidental the drop of ambient, deep-sea, water temperature during the Paleocene (Barron and Peterson 1991) may have affected the infaunal farming activity of graphoglyptid tracemakers.

12.4.2 Minor Disruption in the Macrobenthic Tracemaker Community

As noted above, in the Spanish and French sections there is a differentiation between pre-event latest Maastrichtian ichnoassemblages, consisting of trace fossils with lighter-hued infillings of *Chondrites*, *Zoophycos,* and *Planolites*, versus post-event, earliest Danian ichnoassemblages of darkly filled structures that contain principally *Chondrites*, *Zoophycos*, *Planolites*, *Thalassinoides,* and *Alcyonidiopsis* (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2004a, b; Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2011). These two ichnoassemblages are differentiated by matrix color, nature of the burrow infill material, and isotopic composition. Minor variations between sections, such as the presence or abundance of *Chondrites* and *Zoophycos*, probably have local importance that can be related to differences in feeding strategies of the trace-fossil tracemakers related to food content or site bathymetry.

Similarly, in other K-Pg boundary sections, *Thalassinoides*, *Zoophycos,* and *Chondrites* are representative of the upper Maastrichtian assemblage, while *Planolites* and *Thalassinoides* are dominant in the lower Danian (Ekdale and Bromley 1984a; Savrda 1993). Thus, trace-fossil assemblages do not change significantly across the K-Pg boundary, appearing in lower Danian ichnoassemblages, and by comparison are less abundant and diverse than Maastrichtian ichnoassemblages. Environmental changes associated with K-Pg boundary phenomena apparently did not have a significant impact on macrobenthic tracemakers, and had a minimal effect on the marine macrobenthic tracemaker community at the K-Pg boundary.

12.4.3 An Unfavorable Habitat for Macrobenthic Colonization?

Historically, the rusty, red boundary layer in various K-Pg boundary sections of Spain and France has been considered non-bioturbated, presumably revealing unfavorable environmental conditions that were inhospitable for colonization by organisms. Nevertheless, a detailed analysis does show that the K-Pg boundary layer at the Caravaca section exhibits a highly bioturbated fabric that includes *Zoophycos* and *Chondrites* vertically crossing the boundary layer (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2008). This boundary interval also is penetrated horizontally by *Chondrites* ramifications. The "unfavorable" conditions displayed by the iron-rich boundary layer evidently did not impede colonization by tracemakers. This important colonization event was related to a repertoire of producer behaviors that was not dependent on substrate features. *Zoophycos* and *Chondrites* tracemakers constructed open, or at least partly ventilated, burrows that accommodated various substrate features, and this was followed by further infaunal colonization of sediment poor in oxygenated pore waters and food (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2008).

By way of analogy, a recent environmental disaster occurred at Doñana National Park in southern Spain that was caused by the failure of a tailings pond adjacent a pyrite mine at Aznalcóllar, near Sevilla (Rodríguez-Tovar and Martín-Peinado 2009). The sedimentary wedge resulting from the outflow of sedimentary mine waste from the tailings pond, replete with elevated concentrations of pollutants and toxic elements, was colonized within 10 years by the ghost ant, *Tapinoma nigerrima*. *Tapinoma nigerrima* is characterized by aggressive life habits and opportunistic behavior. Notably, the colonized mine-waste substrate was enriched in various pollutants that included mercury, arsenic, lead, thallium, antimony, and iridium, and was characterized by locally elevated heavy elemental concentrations. A comparison of the leaked element abundances from Aznalcóllar with K-Pg boundary sections revealed that in several cases, such as iridium, the values obtained in the polluted soil of Aznalcóllar are higher than those recorded for the K-Pg rusty brown boundary layer (Rodríguez-Tovar and Martín-Peinado 2009). Nests of *T. nigerrima* occurred throughout the tailings layers, and an ant-fashioned biofabric was created from particles within the polluted soil, providing evidence for the irrelevance of substrate structure in determining the ant-generated biofabric in the polluted substrate. The particular response of *T. nigerrima* to the Aznalcóllar disaster is relevant to interpretation of ichnofaunal colonization of the K-Pg boundary event, at least for sections from Spain and France. This relevance is based on similarities between Aznalcóllar soils and the K-Pg boundary layer, such as the presence of strongly anomalous, life-destroying chemical elements.

A similar example recently has been studied in the contaminated marsh area of the Tinto River near Huelva, in southwestern Spain, This marsh is characterized by high soil concentrations of toxic elements, such as copper, zinc, and arsenic (Rodríguez-Tovar and Martín-Peinado 2014). An ichnological analysis revealed the presence of biogenic structures produced by the activity of the earthworm *Lumbricus terrestris* and the beetle *Platystethus*. Colonization of this polluted substrate is possible due to the particular features of the tracemakers: *Lumbricus terrestris* shows a great resistance to elevated concentrations of a number of contaminating elements, whereas *Platystethus* produces traces that are relatively independent of substrate features. These patterns indicate that substrate colonization at Huelva could be comparable to that of *Planolites* and *Thalassinoides* tracemakers immediately after the K-Pg boundary event (Rodríguez-Tovar and Martín-Peinado 2014).

12.4.4 A Relatively Rapid Recovery

Based on observations on microfaunal assemblages, calibrations of the initial recovery of the marine biota associated with the K-Pg boundary were estimated in the range of thousands of years (kyr). The initial recovery of planktic foraminifera was estimated at about 230 kyr (Keller and Barrera 1990), and the early pioneer, calcareous nannoflora appeared approximately 25 kyr after the K-Pg mass extinction event (Lamolda et al. 2005). Approximately ten kyr is proposed for the time involved in restoration of food webs and restructuring of marine ecosystems, a process occurring after the oceans were repopulated by planktonic species with high turnover rates. After an initial, comparatively low occurrence of post-event benthic foraminifera, a subsequent and rapid recovery was found, as complex trophic webs reappeared approximately seven kyr after the K-Pg boundary. During the early phase of the recovery interval, the presence of an epifauna tolerant of low oxygen occurred from 600 to 1200 years after the event (Coccioni and Galeotti 1994).

Two significant observations are important for understanding the response of the macrobenthic tracemaker community to the K-Pg boundary event and their subsequent, comparatively rapid recovery. First is the presence of iron oxide spherules in *Thalassinoides* burrow infillings (Rodríguez-Tovar 2005). A second consideration is physical disturbance resulting from bioturbation of the K-Pg boundary layer (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2008). Stereomicroscopic and field-emission SEM analyses of *Thalassinoides* at the K-Pg boundary layer from Agost display numerous iron oxide spherules in the infilling material. In addition, the composition, internal texture, morphology, and size of the infilling were similar to the ichnofabric that was confined to other sections of the 2–3 mm-thick, rusty, K-Pg boundary layer (Martínez-Ruiz et al. 1997, 1999). These observations, in conjunction with the homogeneity of the infilling material and the absence of erosional surfaces capping *Thalassinoides* burrows, were interpreted as evidence of rapid colonization by *Thalassinoides* tracemakers, occurring almost contemporaneously with the spherule layer deposit (Rodríguez-Tovar 2005) and by a smaller-bodied species revealed by data from the Gulf of Mexico (Wiest et al. 2015). Subsequently, a detailed analysis of the dark boundary layer from the Caravaca section revealed discrete bioturbation that commenced about 14 mm from the rusty-boundary layer, immediately above the first laminated interval (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2008). Recently, high-resolution geochemical analyses from the K-Pg boundary at the Caravaca section support the conclusion that the recovery to pre-impact levels of oxygenation was almost instantaneous, with absolute values in the order of 10^2 yr (Sosa-Montes de Oca et al. 2013).

12.4.5 Iterative and Continuous Colonization after the Mass Extinction

The absence of a clear color differentiation between burrow infillings of the earliest Danian ichnoassemblage and the dark, marly, lower Danian host sediments from the K-Pg boundary sections of Spain and France prevented, at least initially, conclusive identification of the colonized stratal horizons and possible assessment of the recovery's initiation. In this context, the analysis of carbon isotope composition of the infill from passively filled burrows became a useful tool (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2002, 2004, 2006). A comparison of the $\delta^{13}C$ data from infilled Danian trace fossils in the uppermost Cretaceous sediments in the Agost section allowed for identification and assessment of the relative timing of the macrobenthic colonization phases. This examination distinguished Cretaceous from Danian trace fossils based on isotopic composition, and revealed that different isotopic values from the dark-infilling material could be correlated with those obtained in particular horizons within the Danian marly interval. This analysis provided evidence for different phases of colonization, deployed in succession across the K-Pg boundary interval (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2002, 2004, 2006).

A subsequent, detailed ichnofabric analysis of the 7–10 cm-thick, dark Danian boundary layer at the Caravaca section allowed for identification of two bioturbated horizons, separated by two laminated, unbioturbated layers (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2006). The first laminated layer, 14 mm thick, rests just above the rusty boundary layer. It is overlain by a 26 mm thick, bioturbated horizon, which is covered by a 36 mm thick layer that exhibits convolute lamination. Above, the sediment is again bioturbated (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2008). From the bioturbated horizons in the dark boundary layer, trace fossils pipe downward continuously to the uppermost horizons of lighter-hued, Maastrichtian sediments. These ichnofossils cross-cut the rusty boundary layer, penetrating up to 90 cm below into Maastrichtian marls. *Zoophycos* and *Chondrites* penetrate up to 90 cm and 35 cm, respectively, below the rusty boundary layer (Rodríguez-Tovar and Uchman 2006, 2008). These data suggest multiple, post-event colonization events.

12.5 Can Trace-Fossil Records Address Biologic Effects of the K-Pg Event?

Although several advantages of trace-fossil data over body-fossil data previously have been discussed (Labandeira 2007), the following eight issues, derived from studies in this contribution, represent utilitarian, recent approaches toward understanding ecological and environmental issues in the deep-time fossil record. These approaches can be applied to both continental and marine trace-fossil records.

12.5.1 Previously Unapplied Analytic Techniques

Trace-fossil data are as eminently amenable to quantification and analysis by a variety of statistical techniques, as are body-fossil data. The quantification of abundant trace-fossil data can be seen as a departure from studies of single, or at most a few specimens of ichnological taxa in previous studies. As well, carbon isotopic analysis, heavy element analysis, and SEM field emission studies provide detailed documentation at local to regional scales of organism–environment relationships before, at, and after the K-Pg boundary. The analytic techniques developed for characterizing plant–insect interactions of entire floras and for understanding the substrate relationships of organisms expand the applicability of trace-fossil approaches to new areas of inquiry.

12.5.2 A Multitude of Data

Plant–insect associational studies of bulk floras or biotas require hundreds to (tens of) thousands of specimens. Such studies also capture data from a multitudinous array of specimens, plant morphotypes, insect damage types, localities, stratal levels, and habitats. As a result, data from plant–insect interactions become ideally suited for examinations of time series originating from bulk-collected floras from multiple stratal horizons. Such data are concordant with modern ecological techniques for examining trends in space, but importantly, the fossil data uniquely offer the opportunity for examining temporal patterns. For example, the effects of the K-Pg event in macroinfaunal habitats of the offshore marine realm in Spain and France took approximately 10^2–10^3 yr, according to recent high-resolution geochemical information (Sosa-Montes de Oca et al. 2013). By contrast, in terrestrial, angiosperm-dominated communities of North Dakota the recovery time was 10^7 yr (Wilf et al. 2006), a difference of approximately 4–5 orders of magnitude.

12.5.3 Unique Ecological Data

The analyses of plant–insect interaction trace fossils are the most successful way of capturing large datasets of trophic data in the fossil record. Because of the absence of interpretable insect body-fossil data in most deposits, plant–insect interactional data can provide trophic data that otherwise would be unavailable. These paleoecological data also can be used as raw input in other approaches recently used in the fossil record, such as the construction of site-specific food webs (Wilf 2008; Dunne et al. 2012), and studies of niche conservatism through time (Solé et al. 2002). Similarly, unique ecological data such as detailed ichnofabric analysis from polished microscopic sections can reveal a variety of specific organism–substrate relationships that are unavailable from more traditional, more macroscopically based ichnological approaches.

12.5.4 Ability to Test and Generate Hypotheses

Because of typically large datasets, trace-fossil data can provide the type and amount of data that are available to test hypotheses established by modern plant–insect interaction theory. Alternatively, trace-fossil data also can generate hypotheses from deep-time trends of plant–insect interactions that are testable using modern data. Specific examples of fossil plant–insect associational data, such as lag times involved in post-event occupation of ecospace, increasingly are becoming important for evaluating hypotheses and concepts that are derived from modern theories. Likewise, in the shallow marine realm, hypotheses regarding the phases of post-event organism colonization of sediment and hardrock substrates can provide evidence for or against the geochronologically instantaneous establishment of burrowing or whether a more prolonged colonization process is involved.

12.5.5 Employing Data from Both the Preserved and "Nonpreserved" Sedimentary Record

An analysis of the material in passively infilled, earliest Danian burrows supports other significant types of data that have been gathered from the sedimentary record for the post-K-Pg recovery event. Collectively, these data provide inferences indicating the prevalent environmental conditions at that time. In some cases, there is recognition of a laterally extensive horizon of colonization if the original layering in sediment was preserved. However, if the initial sediment is not preserved, burrows store the lost sedimentary record, and provide some portion of information. Such information can be used to characterize different phases of colonization and provide an evaluation of the relative time to recovery.

In the terrestrial plant–insect associational record, relevant data can be found in more distant basins. Such basins can provide quantifiable insect damage data that may be closer to the major event boundary of interest. In both the marine and continental records, regionally extensive strata should be intensively explored for collection of data that are unavailable at historically more intensively explored but very local stratigraphic sections.

12.5.6 Data with Enhanced Biostratigraphic Resolution

A consequence of the impact of the K-Pg boundary event on microplankton is the near-complete absence of these groups in the first few centimeters immediately above the K-Pg boundary. The K-Pg event strongly affected diatoms, calcareous nannoplankton, phytoplankton, and planktic foraminifera. Depauperate microplanktic biotas impede a high-resolution biostratigraphy, resulting in doubts about completeness of the sedimentary record or the existence of hiatuses that are biostratigraphically unresolvable. However, in the Agost section, there is the initial appearance of Paleogene planktonic foraminifera located a few centimeters above the K-Pg boundary (Arenillas et al. 2004), calibrated to ~5.7–6.7 kyr later in the K-Pg boundary. The high-resolution (intrasubzone), stable isotope data that were obtained from infill material of trace fossils in the Agost section show a close correspondence with those from the upper Maastrichtian and lower Danian sediments. These data provide evidence for completeness, and the absence of hiatuses within biostratigraphic resolution (intrasubzone) (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2006). On land, a similar exploration of the thin and locally present FU0 layer in the Williston Basin, for example, can reveal illuminating patterns of plant–insect interactions at the K-Pg boundary that could be different from the subjacent latest Maastrichtian and superjacent earliest Paleocene strata (Labandeira et al. 2002b).

12.5.7 A Major Role in the Debate on Catastrophic vs. Gradual Extinction

The perennial debate about how catastrophic was the end-Cretaceous mass extinction, include two, highly differentiated and opposite positions of catastrophic versus gradual perspectives (e.g., Smit 1990 vs. Keller et al. 1995, respectively). Catastrophism versus gradualism perspectives still represent an unsolved flash point regarding the biologic consequences of the end-Cretaceous event. This issue, in part, can be related to the presence/absence of several species of microfossils, principally planktic foraminiferans and calcareous nannofossils, immediately below and above the K-Pg boundary, data that has been perceived to support both positions. Maastrichtian taxa found in Danian sediments are considered as totally or partially reworked (e.g., Smit 1990; Pospichal 1994; Henriksson 1996; Molina et al. 1998; Tantawy 2003; Gallala et al. 2009), or as taxa that survived the disaster, but rapidly disappear during the earliest Danian (e.g., Perch-Nielsen et al. 1982; Keller 1988; Keller et al. 1995; Gardin and Monechi 1998; Gardin 2002; Bown 2005).

Within this debate, the sedimentological context of trace fossils is important. For example, the redistribution of microfossils by tracemakers, even immediately below the K-Pg boundary, remains a possibility that has been considered minimally and currently lacks deeper analyses by micropaleontologists and paleoecologists (Thierstein and Okada 1979; Thierstein 1981; Smit and Romein 1985; Pospichal and Wise 1990; Pospichal et al. 1990; Henriksson 1996; Pospichal 1996; Romein et al. 1996; Mai et al. 2003; Bown 2005; Lamolda et al. 2005). Recently, detailed analyses focusing on calcareous nannofossils from the burrow fillings of *Zoophycos*, *Thalassinoides*, *Chondrites,* and their surrounding sediments across the K-Pg boundary transition at the Bidart (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2010), and Caravaca (Kędzierski et al. 2011) sections, revealed Danian calcareous nannofossils in lightly-hued Maastrichtian sediments. In these boundary sedimentary sequences, it was only the dark infillings of Danian burrows that piped down across the K-Pg boundary, and conversely, Cretaceous nannoplankton occurred above the boundary layer that was conveyed up onto the seafloor by earliest Danian tracemakers such as *Thalassinoides* through burrow excavation (Rodríguez-Tovar et al. 2010; Kędzierski et al. 2011).

The response of generalized to specialized insect herbivores to their plant-host spectrum after the end-Cretaceous event can provide a terrestrial perspective. Although the terrestrial stratigraphic record is poorer than the marine record at this time, the considerable delay in the recovery of associational diversity and specialization levels to that of the latest Maastrichtian is significant. The presence of lag times from 10^4 to 10^5 orders of magnitude between the rapid response of the marine realm, versus the much more prolonged terrestrial recovery, may hint at differences in ecological structure. The ecological recovery potential and flexibility of the shallow marine realm evidently is considerably greater than that of the terrestrial realm.

12.5.8 Understanding Ecologic and Evolutionary Response to Future Environmental Crises

Uncertainties regarding the effect of the K-Pg mass extinction event on evolutionary and ecological aspects of the biota can be addressed by analogy to the response of modern organisms soon after recent disasters. Although a comparison of paleoenvironmental events with recent examples of environmental crises is rarely applied, nevertheless it is a useful tool (Kuhnt et al. 2005) to understand biotic response to dramatic past, recent, and future environmental change. The response of tracemakers after the K-Pg boundary event as well as those recorded after a drastic environmental disaster occurring at Doñana National Park in southern Spain (Rodríguez-Tovar and Martín-Peinado 2009; Martín-Peinado and Rodríguez-Tovar 2010) – and a parallel crisis associated with the Tinto river marsh at Huelva (Rodríguez-Tovar and Martín-Peinado 2014), in southwestern Spain—indicate that high concentrations of heavy metals accumulated in soils and sediments can be dispersed at geologically ephemeral time scales (Rodríguez-Tovar and Martín-Peinado 2011). These two, recent incidents reveal that a better understanding of significant paleoenvironmental change, either abrupt or extended in time, can have profound consequences for the biota, their lag recovery times, and colonization of previously “uninhabitable” habitats.

Though not discussed in this contribution, related studies relevant to the recovery of plant–insect interactions have been done in real time in defaunation experiments of small, mangrove islands in Florida Bay. These studies have recorded the lag times of recolonization of major plant and insect groups and their associations following complete island defaunation (Simberloff and Wilson 1969). The pattern of the re-establishment of major trophic groups (Simberloff 1976), including generalized and specialized associations of a local biota is relevant to issues such as the return of plant–insect associations after the K-Pg event.

12.6 Conclusions

Based on the results of studies from the terrestrial and marine realm that are detailed in this contribution, there are several major applications of ichnological data, some of which cannot be replicated solely by examination of body-fossil data. For a better understanding of the consequences of major crises in the history of life, such as the K-Pg ecological crisis, the combination of ichnological data with body-fossil and physical data is essential, such as analyses of the diversity and abundance of insect damage on plant hosts in conjunction with various sedimentological and geochemical studies. Integration of such data provides a realistic assessment of organismic response that takes into account all of the major, relevant parameters involved. These features are: (1) the environment in the broadest sense of the term; (2) the organisms themselves; (3) organismic behavior and organism interactions with one another and their environment; and (4) and the temporal dimension that includes event durations and times to recovery. Application of all four aspects of the data provides a more integrative and complete approach toward understanding environment–organism interactions during crucial ecologic crises in the fossil and associated sedimentological record. Moreover, understanding organism response to such events can be put to practical use in approaching similar catastrophes for the future.

Acknowledgments We extend our gratitude to Gabriela Mángano and Luis Buatois for inviting us to provide this contribution to the volume. Reviewers Karen Chin and Charles Savrda provided critical remarks that improved the paper. We thank Finnegan Marsh for producing Figs. 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, and 12.4. Research by Rodríguez-Tovar was carried out with financial support of the Research Projects CGL2008-03007, and CGL2012-33281 (Ministerio de Economía y Competitividad), P08-RNM-03715 and the Research Group RNM-178 (Junta de Andalucía). A. Uchman received additional support from the Jagiellonian University (DS funds). This is contribution 260 of the Evolution of Terrestrial Ecosystems consortium at the National Museum of Natural History, in Washington, D.C.

References

Alvarez LW, Alvarez W, Asaro F, Michel H (1980) Extraterrestrial cause of the Cretaceous–Tertiary extinction. Science 208:1095–1108

Alvarez LW, Alvarez W, Asaro F, Michel H (1984) The end of the Cretaceous: sharp boundary or gradual transition? Science 223:1183–1186

Archibald JD, Bryant LJ (1990) Differential Cretaceous–Tertiary extinction of nonmarine vertebrates: evidence from northeastern Montana. In: Sharpton VL, Ward PD (eds) Global catastrophes in earth history: an interdisciplinary conference on impacts, volcanic and mass mortality. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 257:549–562

Arenillas I, Arz JA, Molina E (2004) A new high-resolution planktic foraminiferal zonation and subzonation for the lower Danian. Lethaia 37:79–95

Arenillas I, Arz JA, Molina E, Dupuis C (2000) An independent test of planktic foraminiferal turnover across the Cretaceous/Paleogene (K/P) boundary at El Kef, Tunisia: catastrophic mass extinction and possible survivorship. Micropaleontology 46:31–49

Arthur MA, Zachos JC (1987) Primary productivity and the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary event. Cretaceous Res 8:43–54

Arz JA, Arenillas I, Molina E, Sepulveda R (2000) La estabilidad evolutiva de los foraminíferos planctónicos en el Maastrichtiense Superior y su extinción en el límite Cretácico/Terciario de Caravaca, España. Rev Geol Chile 27:27–47

Askin RA, Jacobson S (1996) Palynological change across the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary on Seymour Island, Antarctica: environmental and depositional factors. In: Keller G, MacLeod N (eds) Cretaceous–Tertiary mass extinctions: biotic and environmental changes. Norton, New York, pp 7–26

Auezova G, Brushko Z, Kubykin R (1990) Feeding of biting midges (Leptoconopidae) on reptiles. In: Weismann L, Orságh I, Pont AC (eds) Proceedings of the second international congress of dipterology. SPB Academic Publishers, Amsterdam, p 12

Barron EJ, Peterson WH (1991) The Cenozoic circulation based on ocean general circulation model results. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 83:1–28

Becerra JA (2003) Synchronous coadaptation in an ancient case of herbivory. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:12804–12807

Beerling DJ, Lomax BH, Royer DL, Upchurch GR Jr, Kump LR (2002) An atmospheric $p\mathrm{CO}_2$ reconstruction across the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary from leaf megafossils. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:7836–7840

Bininda-Emonds ORP, Cardillo M, Jones KE, MacPhee RDE, Beck RMD, Grenyer R, Price SA, Vos RA, Gittleman JL, Purvis A (2007) The delayed rise of present-day mammals. Nature 446:507–512

Borkent A (1995) Biting midges in the Cretaceous amber of North America (Diptera: Ceratopogonidae). Backhuys Publishers, Leiden

Bown P (2005) Selective calcareous nannoplankton survivorship at the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary. Geology 33:653–656

Braverman Y, Hulley PE (1979) The relationship between the numbers and distribution of some antennal and palpal sense organs and host preference in some *Culicoides* (Diptera: Ceratopogonidae) from southern Africa. J Med Entomol 15:419–424

Brochu C (2004) Calibration age and quartet divergence date estimation. Evolution 58:1375–1382

Bromley R, Buatois LA, Genise J, Mángano MG, Melchor R (eds) (2007) Sediment–organism interactions: a multifaceted ichnology. Soc Econ Paleontol Mineral Spec Publ no. 88. Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists, Tulsa, Oklahoma

Brouwers EM, De Deckker P (1993) Late Maastrichtian and Danian ostracods faunas from Northern Alaska: reconstructions of environment and paleogeography. Palaios 8:140–154

Chin K, Gill BD (1996) Dinosaurs, dung beetles and conifers: participants in a Cretaceous food web. Palaios 11:280–285

Chin K, Pearson D, Ekdale AA (2013) Fossil worm burrows reveal very early terrestrial animal activity and shed light on trophic resources after the end-Cretaceous mass extinction. PLoS One 8(8):e70920

Coccioni R, Galeotti S (1994) K–T boundary extinction: geologically instantaneous or gradual event? Evidence from deep-sea benthic foraminifera. Geology 22:779–782

Colles A, Liow LH, Prinzing A (2009) Are specialists at risk under environmental change? Neoecological, paleoecological and phylogenetic approaches. Ecol Lett 12:849–863

Connor EF, Taverner MP (1997) The evolution and adaptive significance of the leaf-mining habit. Oikos 79:6–25

Cooper A, Penney D (1997) Mass survival of birds across the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary: molecular evidence. Science 275:1109–1113

Currano ED, Jacobs BF, Pan AD, Tabor NJ (2011) Inferring ecological disturbance in the fossil record: a case study from the late Oligocene of Ethiopia. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 309:242–252

Currano ED, Labandeira CC, Wilf P (2010) Fossilized insect folivory tracks temperature for six million years. Ecol Monogr 80:547–567

Currano ED, Wilf P, Wing SL, Labandeira CC, Lovelock EC, Royer D (2008) Sharply increased insect herbivory during the Paleocene–Eocene thermal maximum. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:1960–1964

DiMichele WA, Behrensmeyer AK, Olzewski TD, Labandeira CC, Pandolfi JM, Wing SL, Bobe R (2004) Long-term stasis in ecological assemblages: evidence from the fossil record. Annu Rev Ecol Evol Syst 35:285–322

D'Hondt S (2005) Consequences of the Cretaceous/Paleocene mass extinction for marine ecosystems. Annu Rev Ecol Syst 36:295–317

Donovan M, Wilf P, Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Peppe DJ (2014) Novel insect leaf-mining after the end-Cretaceous extinction and the demise of Cretaceous leaf miners, Great Plains, USA. PLoS One 9(7):e103542

Dunne J, Labandeira CC, Williams R (2012) Highly resolved middle Eocene food webs have similar network structure to extant ecosystems. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 281:20133280

Ekdale AA, Bromley RG (1984a) Sedimentology and ichnology of the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary in Denmark: implications for the causes of the terminal Cretaceous extinction. J Sediment Petrol 54:681–703

Ekdale AA, Bromley RG (1984b) Comparative ichnology of shelf-sea and deep-sea chalk. J Paleontol 58:322–332

Ekdale AA, Stinnesbeck W (1998) Trace fossils in Cretaceous–Tertiary (KT) boundary beds in northeastern Mexico: implications for sedimentation during the K/T boundary event. Palaios 13:593–602

Erwin DH (1998) The end and beginning: recoveries from mass extinctions. Trends Ecol Evol 13:344–349

Erwin DH (2001) Lessons from the past: biotic recoveries from mass extinctions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:5399–5403

Forister ML, Dyer LA, Singer MS, Stireman JO III, Lill JT (2012) Revisiting the evolution of ecological specialization, with emphasis on insect–plant interactions. Ecology 93:981–991

Frederiksen NO (1989) Changes in floral diversities, floral turnover rates, and climate in Campanian and Maastrichtian time, North Slope of Alaska. Cretaceous Res 10:249–266

Friedman M (2009) Ecomorphological selectivity among marine teleost fishes during the end-Cretaceous extinction. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:5218–5223

Friedman M (2010) Explosive morphological diversification of spiny-finned teleost fishes in the aftermath of the end-Cretaceous extinction. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci 277:1675–1683

Gale J, Rachmilevitch S, Reuveni J, Volokita M (2001) The high oxygen atmosphere toward the end-Cretaceous: a possible contributing factor to the K/T boundary extinctions and to the emergence of C_4 species. J Exp Bot 52:801–809

Gallala N, Zaghbib-Turki D, Arenillas I, Arz JA, Molina E (2009) Catastrophic mass extinction and assemblage evolution in planktic foraminifera across the Cretaceous/Paleogene (K/Pg) boundary at Bidart (SW France). Mar Micropaleontol 72:196–209

Gardin S (2002) Late Maastrichtian to early Danian calcareous nannofossils at Elles (Northwest Tunisia). A tale of one million years across the K-T boundary. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 178:211–231

Gardin S, Monechi S (1998) Palaeoecological change in middle to low latitude calcareous nannoplankton at the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary. Bull Soc Géol Fr 169:709–723

Gedl P (2004) Dinoflagellate cyst record of the deep-sea Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary at Uzgruň, Carpathian Mountains, Czech Republic. Geol Soc Lond Spec Publ 230:257–373

Gelfo JN, Pascual R (2001) *Peligrotherium tropicalis* (Mammalia, Dryolestoidea) from the early Paleocene of Patagonia, a survival from a Mesozoic Gondwanan radiation. Geodiversitas 23:369–379

Genise JF, Sarzetti LC (2011) Fossil cocoons associated with a dinosaur egg from Patagonia, Argentina. Palaeontology 54:815–823

Hardy N, Cook LG (2010) Gall-induction in insects: evolutionary dead-end or specialized driver? BMC Evol Biol 10:257.

Hartman JH (1998) The biostratigraphy and paleontology of latest Cretaceous and Paleocene freshwater bivalves from the western Williston Basin, Montana, USA. In: Johnston PA, Haggart JW (eds) An eon of evolution: paleobiological studies honoring Norman D. Newell. University of Calgary Press, Calgary, pp 317–345

Hartman JH, Bingle M, Scholz H, Bajpai S, Sharma R (2009) Cretaceous–Paleogene boundary issues and continental molluscs in India and North America: fine-tuned timing and other issues critical to interpreting large scale events on benthic critters. Geol Soc Am Abstr Prog 47(7):240 [abstract]

Henriksson AS (1996) Calcareous nannoplankton productivity and succession across the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary in the Pacific (DSDP Site 465) and Atlantic (DSDP Site 527) Oceans. Cretaceous Res 17:451–477

Hickey LJ (1981) Land plant evidence compatible with gradual, not catastrophic, change at the end of the Cretaceous. Nature 292:529–531

Hildebrand AR, Penfield GT, Kring DA, Pilkington M, Zanoguera AC, Jacobsen SB, Boynton WM (1991) Chicxulub Crater, a possible Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary impact crater on the Yucatan Peninsula, Mexico. Geology 19:867–871

Hou L, Martin M, Zhou Z, Feduccia A (1996) Early adaptive radiation of birds: evidence from fossils from northeastern China. Science 274:1164–1167

Husson D, Galbrun B, Gardin S, Thibault N (2014) Tempo and duration of short-term environmental perturbations across the Cretaceous-Paleogene boundary. Stratigraphy 11:159–171

Jablonski D (1989) The biology of mass extinction: a palaeontological view. Philos Tran R Soc B Biol Sci 325:357–368

Jablonski D (2001) Lessons from the past: evolutionary impacts of mass extinctions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:5393–5398

Jablonski D (2002) Survival without recovery after mass extinctions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:8139–8144

Jablonski D (2005) Mass extinctions and macroevolution. Paleobiology 31:192–210

Jablonski D, Raup DM (1995) Selectivity of end-Cretaceous marine bivalve extinctions. Science 268:389–391

Jarvis ED, Mirarab S, Aberer AJ, Li B, Honde P, Li C, Ho SYW, Faircloth BC, Nabholz B, Howard JT, Suh A, Weber CC, da Fonseca RR, Li J, Zhang F, Li H, Zhou L, Narula N, Liu L, Ganapathy G, Bossau B, Md SB, Zavidovych V, Subramanian S, Gabaldón T, Capella-Gutiérrez S, Huerta-Cepas J, Rekepalli B, Munch K, Schierup M, Lindow B, Warren WC, Ray D, Green RE, Brufford MW, Zhan X, Dixon A, Li S, Li N, Huang Y, Derryberry EP, Bertelsen MF, Sheldon FH, Brumfeld RT, Mello CV, Lovell PV, Wirthlin M, Schneider MPC, Prosdocimi F, Samaniego JA, Velazquez AMV, Alfaro-Nuñez A, Campos PF, Petersen B, Sicheritz-Ponten T, Pas A, Bailey T, Scofield P, Bunce M, Lambert DM, Zhou Q, Perelman P, Driskell AC, Shapiro B, Xiong Z, Zeng Y, Liu S, Li Z, Liu B, Wu K, Xiao J, Yinqi X, Zheng Q, Zhang Y, Yang H, Wang J, Smeds L, Rheindt FE, Braun M, Fjeldsa J, Orlando L, Barker FK, Jønsson KA, Johnson W, Koepfli K-P, O'Brien S, Haussler D, Ryder OA, Rahbek C, Willerslev E, Graves GR, Glenn TC, McCormack J, Burt D, Ellegren H, Alström P, Edwards SV, Stamatakis A, Mindell DP, Cracraft J, Braun EL, Warnow T, Jun W, Gilbert MTP, Zhang G (2014) Whole-genome analyses resolve early branches in the tree of life of modern birds. Science 346:1320–1331

Jeffrey CH (2001) Heart urchins at the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary: a tale of two clades. Paleobiology 27:140–158

Johnson KR (2002) Megaflora of the Hell Creek and lower Fort Union formations in the western Dakotas: vegetational response to climate change, the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary event, and rapid marine transgression. In: Hartman JH, Johnson KR, Nichols DJ (eds) The Hell Creek Formation and the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary in the northern Great Plains——an integrated continental record at the end of the Cretaceous. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 361:329–391

Kędzierski M, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A (2011) Vertical displacement and taphonomic filtering of nannofossils by bioturbation in the Cretaceous-Palaeogene boundary section at Caravaca, SE Spain. Lethaia 44:321–328

Keller G (1988) Extinction, survivorship and evolution of planktic foraminifera across the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary at El Kef, Tunisia. Mar Micropaleontol 13:239–263

Keller G, Barrera E (1990) The Cretaceous⁄Tertiary boundary impact hypothesis and the paleontological record. In: Sharpton VL, Ward PD (eds) Global catastrophes in earth history: an interdisciplinary conference on impacts, volcanism, and mass mortality. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 247:563–575

Keller G, Li L, Macleod N (1995) The Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary stratotype section at El Kef, Tunisia: how catastrophic was the mass extinction? Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 119:221–254

Keller G, Stinnesbeck W, Lopez-Oliva JG (1994) Age, deposition and biotic effects of the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary event al Mimbral, NE Mexico. Palaios 9:144–157

Kelley ST, Farrell B (1998) Is specialization a dead end? The phylogeny of host use in *Dendroctonus* bark beetles (Scolytidae). Evolution 52:1731–1743

Kirchner JW, Weil A (2000) Delayed biological recovery from extinctions throughout the fossil record. Nature 404:177–180

Kitchell JA, Clark DL, Gombos AM (1986) Biological selectivity of extinction: a link between background and mass extinction. Palaios 1:504–511

Kölsch G, Pedersen BV (2008) Molecular phylogeny of reed beetles (Col., Chrysomelidae, Donaciinae): the signature of ecological specialization and geographical isolation. Mol Phylogenet Evol 48:936–952

Krug AZ, Jablonski D (2012) Long-term origination rates are reset only at mass extinctions. Geology 40:731–734

Krug AZ, Jablonski D, Valentine JW (2009) Signature of the end-Cretaceous mass extinction in the modern biota. Science 323:767–771

Kuhnt W, Collins ES (1996) Cretaceous to Paleogene benthic foraminifers from the Iberia abyssal plain. Proc Ocean Drill Program Sci Results 149:203–216

Kuhnt W, Hess S, Holbourn A, Paulsen H, Salomon B (2005) The impact of the 1991 Mt. Pinatubo eruption on deep-sea foraminiferal communities: a model for the Cretaceous–Tertiary (K⁄T) boundary? Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 224:83–107

Labandeira CC (2005) The fossil record of insect extinction: new approaches and future directions. Am Entomol 51:14–29

Labandeira CC (2007) Assessing the fossil record of plant–insect associations: ichnodata versus body-fossil data. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Mángano G, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment–organism interactions: a multifaceted ichnology. Soc Econ Paleontol Mineral Spec Publ 88:9–26

Labandeira CC, Currano ED (2013) Plant–insect dynamics in the fossil record. Annu Rev Earth Planet Sci 41:287–311

Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Wilf P (2002a) Impact of the terminal Cretaceous event on plant–insect associations. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:2061–2066

Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Lang P (2002b) A preliminary assessment of insect herbivory across the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary: Extinction and minimal rebound. In: Hartman JH, Johnson KR, Nichols DJ (eds) The Hell Creek Formation and the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary in the northern Great Plains——an integrated continental record at the end of the Cretaceous. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 361:297–327

Labandeira C, Prevec R (2014) Plant paleopathology and the roles of insects. Int J Paleopathol 4:1–16

Labandeira CC, Sepkoski JJ Jr (1993) Insect diversity in the fossil record. Science 261:310–315

Labandeira CC, Wilf P, Johnson KR, Marsh F (2007) Guide to insect (and other) damage types on compressed plant fossils. Version 3.0—Spring, 2007. Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC. http://paleobiology.si.edu/pdfs/InsectDamageGuide3.01.pdf

Lamolda MA, Melinte MC, Kaiho K (2005) Nannofloral extinction and survivors across the K/T boundary at Caravaca, southeastern Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 224:27–52

Larsson SG (1975) Palaeobiology and mode of burial of the insects of the lower Eocene Mo-clay of Denmark. Bull Geol Soc Denmark 24:193–209

Lehane MJ (1991) Biology of blood-sucking insects. Harper Collins, London

Levinton JS (1996) Trophic group and the end-Cretaceous extinction: did deposit feeders have it made in the shade? Paleobiology 22:104–112

Lockwood R (2003) Abundance not linked to survival across the end-Cretaceous mass extinction: patterns in North American bivalves. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:2478–2482

Lopez-Vaamonde C, Godfray HCJ, Cook JM (2003) Evolutionary dynamics of host-plant use in a genus of leaf-mining moths. Evolution 57:1804–1821

Lopez-Vaamonde C, Wikström N, Labandeira CC, Goodman S, Godfray HCJ, Cook JM (2006) Fossil-calibrated molecular phylogenies reveal that leaf-mining moths radiated millions of years after their host plants. J Evol Biol 19:1314–1326

MacLeod N (1998) Impacts and marine invertebrate extinctions. Geol Soc London Spec Publ 140:217–246

MacLeod N (2005) End-Cretaceous extinctions. In: Cocks LRM, Plimer I (eds) Encyclopedia of geology. Academic, London, pp 372–386

MacLeod N, Rawson PF, Forey PL, Banner F, Boudagher-Fadel MK, Bown PR, Burnett JA, Chambers P, Culver S, Evans SE, Jeffrey C, Kaminski MA, Lord AR, Milner AC, Milner AR, Morris N, Owen E, Rosen BR, Smith AB, Taylor PD, Urquhart E, Young JR (1997) The Cretaceous–Tertiary biotic transition. J Geol Soc 154:265–292

Mai H, Speijer RP, Schulte P (2003) Calcareous index nannofossils (coccoliths) of the lowermost Paleocene originated in the late Maastrichtian. Micropaleontology 49:189–195

Marshall CR, Ward PD (1996) Sudden and gradual molluscan extinctions in the latest Cretaceous of western European Tethys. Science 274:1360–1363

Martín-Peinado F, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ (2010) Mobility of iridium in terrestrial environments: implications for the interpretation of impact-related mass-extinctions. Geochim Cosmochim Acta 74:4531–4542

Martínez-Ruiz F, Huertas MO, Palomo I, Acquafredda P (1997) Quench textures in altered spherules from the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary layer at Agost and Caravaca, SE Spain. Sediment Geol 113:137–147

Martínez-Ruiz F, Huertas MO, Palomo I (1999) Positive Eu anomaly development during diagenesis of the K/T boundary ejecta layer at Agost section: implications for trace-element remobilization. Terra Nova 11:290–296

McElwain JC, Punyasena SW (2007) Mass extinction events and the plant fossil record. Trends Ecol Evol 22:548–557

McIver EE, Sweet AR, Basinger JF (1991) Sixty-five-million-year-old flowers bearing pollen of the extinct triprojectate complex——a Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary survivor. Rev Palaeobot Palynol 70:77–88

McKenna DD, Farrell BD (2006) Tropical forests are both evolutionary cradles and museums of leaf beetle diversity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:10947–10951

Molina E (2015) Evidence and causes of the main extinction events in the Paleogene based on extinction and survival patterns of foraminifera. Earth-Sci Rev 140:166–181

Molina E, Arenillas I, Arz JA (1998) Mass extinction in planktic foraminifera at the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary in subtropical and temperate latitudes. Bull Soc Géol Fr 169:351–363

Morrow JR, Hasiotis ST (2007) Endobenthic response through mass-extinction episodes: predictive models and observed patterns. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 575–598

Nichols DJ (2002) Palynology and palynostratigraphy of the Hell Creek Formation in North Dakota: a microfossil record of plants at the end of Cretaceous time. In: Hartman JH, Johnson KR, Nichols DJ (eds) The Hell Creek Formation and the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary in the northern Great Plains——an integrated continental record at the end of the Cretaceous. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 361:393–456

Novacek MJ (1999) 100 million years of land vertebrate evolution: the Cretaceous–early Tertiary transition. Ann Missouri Bot Gard 86:230–258

Nyman T, Linder HP, Peña C, Malm T, Wahlberg N (2012) Climate-driven diversity dynamics in plants and plant-feeding insects. Ecol Lett 15:889–898

O'Keefe F (2001) A cladistic analysis and taxonomic revision of the Plesiosauria (Reptilia: Sauropterygia). Acta Zool Fenn 213:1–63

Penney D (2003) Does the fossil record of spiders track that of their principal prey, the insects? Trans R Soc Edin Earth Sci 94:275–281

Penney D, Wheater CP, Selden PA (2003) Resistance of spiders to Cretaceous–Tertiary extinction events. Evolution 57:2599–2607

Penny D, Phillips MJ (2004) The rise of birds and mammals: are microevolutionary processes sufficient for macroevolution? Trends Ecol Evol 19:516–522

Perch-Nielsen K, McKenzie J, He Q (1982) Biostratigraphy and isotope stratigraphy and the catastrophic extinction of calcareous nannoplankton at the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary. In: Silver LT, Schultz PH (eds) Geological implications of impacts of large asteroids and comets on the earth. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 190:353–371

Pike EM (1994) Historical changes in insect community structure as indicated by hexapods of Upper Cretaceous Alberta (Grassy Lake) amber. Can Entomol 126:695–702

Pospichal JJ (1994) Calcareous nannofossils at the K-T boundary El Kef: no evidence for stepwise, gradual, or sequential extinctions. Geology 22:99–102

Pospichal JJ, Wise SW (1990) Calcareous nannofossils across the K/T boundary, ODP Hole 690C, Maud Rise, Weddell Sea. Proc Ocean Drill Program Sci Results 113:515–532

Pospichal JJ, Wise SW, Asaro F, Hamilton N (1990) The effects of bioturbation across a biostratigraphically complete, high southern latitude Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 247:497–507

Ramírez SR, Gravendeel B, Singer RB, Marshall C, Pierce NE (2007) Dating the origin of the Orchidaceae from a fossil orchid with its pollinator. Nature 448:1042–1045

Raup DM, Jablonski D (1993) Geography of end-Cretaceous marine bivalve extinctions. Science 260:971–973

Retallack GJ (2004) End-Cretaceous acid rain as a selective extinction mechanism between birds and dinosaurs. In: Currie PJ, Koppelhus EB, Shugar MA, Wright JL (eds) Feathered dragons: studies on the transition from dinosaurs to birds. Indiana University Press, Bloomington and Indianapolis, pp 35–64

Roberts EM, Rogers RR, Foreman BZ (2007) Continental insect borings in dinosaur bone: examples from the Late Cretaceous of Madagascar and Utah. J Paleontol 81:201–208

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ (2005) Fe-oxide spherules infilling *Thalassinoides* burrows at the Cretaceous–Paleogene (K–P) boundary: evidence of a near-contemporaneous macrobenthic colonization during the K–P event. Geology 33:585–588

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Martín-Peinado FJ (2009) The environmental disaster of Aznancóllar (southern Spain) as an approach to the Cretaceous–Paleogene mass extinction event. Geobiology 7:533–543

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Martín-Peinado FJ (2011) Colonization of contaminated sediments: Implications in recovery of mass extinction events. Mineralogical Magazine, Goldschmidt conference abstracts, 1742

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Martín-Peinado FJ (2014) Lateral and vertical variations in contaminated sediments from the Tinto River area (Huelva, SW Spain): incidence on tracemaker activity and implications of the palaeontological approach. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 414:426–437

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Martínez-Ruíz F, Bernasconi SM (2002) Carbon isotope composition of bioturbation infills as indication of the macrobenthic-colonization timing across the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary (Agost section, SE Spain). Geochim Cosmochim Acta, Spec Suppl 66:A644

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Martínez-Ruíz F, Bernasconi SM (2004) Carbon isotope evidence of the Cretaceous-Palaeogene macrobenthic colonization at the Agost section (southeast Spain). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 203:65–72

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Martínez-Ruíz F, Bernasconi SM (2006) Use of high-resolution ichnological and stable isotope data for assessing completeness of a K–P boundary section, Agost, Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 237:137–146

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A (2004a) Trace fossils after the K–T boundary event from the Agost section, SE Spain. Geol Mag 141:429–440

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A (2004b) Ichnotaxonomic analysis of the Cretaceous/Palaeogene boundary interval in the Agost section, south-east Spain. Cretaceous Res 25:635–647

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A (2006) Ichnological analysis of the Cretaceous–Palaeogene boundary interval at the Caravaca section, SE Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 242:313–325

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A (2008) Bioturbational disturbance of the Cretaceous– Palaeogene (K–Pg) boundary layer: implications for the interpretation of the K–Pg boundary impact event. Geobios 41:661–667

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A, Molina E, Monechi S (2010) Bioturbational redistribution of Danian calcareous nannofossils in the uppermost Maastrichtian across the K-Pg boundary at Bidart, SW France. Geobios 43:569–579

Rodríguez-Tovar FJ, Uchman A, Orue-Etxebarria X, Apellaniz E, Baceta JI (2011) Ichnological analysis of the Bidart and Sopelana Cretaceous/Paleogene (K/Pg) boundary sections (Basque Basin, W Pyrenees): refining eco-sedimentary environment. Sediment Geol 234:42–55

Rogers RR (1992) Non-marine borings in dinosaur bones from the Upper Cretaceous Two Medicine Formation, northwestern Montana. J Vert Paleontol 12:528–531

Romein AJT, Willems H, Mai H (1996) Calcareous nannoplankton of the Geulhemmerberg K/T boundary section, Maastrichtian type area, the Netherlands. Geol Mijn 75:231–238

Rosen BR, Turnšek D (1989) Extinction patterns and biogeography of scleractinian corals across the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary. Proceedings of the fifth international symposium on fossil Cnidaria including Archaeocyatha and Spongiomorphs. Memoirs of the Association of Australasian Paleontology 8:355–370. Brisbane, Australia

Rosenzweig ML (1995) Species diversity in space and time. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK

Rowley WA, Cornford M (1972) Scanning electron microscopy of the pit of the maxillary palp of selected species of *Culicoides*. Can J Zool 50:1207–1210

Roy K, Hunt G, Jablonski D (2009) Phylogenetic conservatism of extinctions in marine bivalves. Science 325:733–737

Savrda CE (1993) Ichnosedimentologic evidence for a noncatastrophic origin of Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary sands in Alabama. Geology 21:1075–1078

Schoene B, Samperton KM, Eddy MP, Keller G, Adatte T, Bowring SA, Khadri SFR, Gertsch B (2015) U-Pb geochronology of the Deccan Traps and relation to the end-Cretaceous mass extinction. Science 347:182–184

Schulte P, Alegeret L, Arenillas I, Arz JA, Barton PJ, Bown PR, Bralower TJ, Christeson GL, Claeys P, Cockell CS, Collins GS, Deutsch A, Goldin TJ, Goto K, Grajales-Nishimura JM, Grieve RAF, Gulick SPS, Johnson KR, Kiessling W, Koeberl C, Kring DA, MacLeod KG, Matsui T, Melosh J, Montanari A, Morgan JV, Neal CR, Nichols DJ, Norris RD, Pierazzo E, Ravizza G, Rebolledo-Vieyra M, Reimold WU, Robin E, Salge T, Speijer RP, Sweet AR, Urrutia-Fucugauchi J, Vajda V, Whalen MT, Willumsen PS (2010) The Chicxulub asteroid impact and mass extinction at the Cretaceous-Paleogene boundary. Science 327:1214–1218

Sereno PC (1999) The evolution of dinosaurs. Science 284:2137–2147

Sheehan PM, Fastovsky D, Baretto C, Hoffman G (2000) Dinosaur abundance was not declining in a “3 m gap” at the top of the Hell creek Formation, Montana and North Dakota. Geology 28:523–526

Sheehan PM, Hansen TA (1986) Detritus feeding as a buffer to extinction at the end of the Cretaceous. Geology 14:868–870

Simberloff DS (1976) Trophic structure determination and equilibrium in an arthropod community. Ecology 57:395–398

Simberloff DS, Wilson EO (1969) Experimental zoogeography of islands: the colonization of empty islands. Ecology 50:278–296

Smit J (1990) Meteorite impact, extinctions and the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary. Geol Mijn 69:187–204

Smit J, Romein AJT (1985) A sequence of events across the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary. Earth Planet Sci Lett 74:155–170

Solé RV, Montoya JM, Erwin DH (2002) Recovery after mass extinction: evolutionary assembly in large-scale biosphere dynamics. Philos Trans R Soc B Biol Sci 357:697–707

Sosa-Montes de Oca C, Martínez-Ruiz F, Rodríguez-Tovar FJ (2013) Bottom-water conditions in a marine basin after the Cretaceous–Paleogene impact event: timing the recovery of oxygen levels and productivity. PLoS One 8(12):e82241,

Stinnesbeck W, Keller G, Adatte T, Lopez-Oliva JG, MacLeod N (1996) Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary clastic deposits in northeastern Mexico: impact tsunami or sea-level lowstand? In: MacLeod N, Keller G (eds) Cretaceous-Tertiary Mass Extinctions: Biotic and Environmental Changes. Norton & Company, New York, pp 471–517

Stinnesbeck W, Barbarin JM, Keller G, Lopez-Oliva JG, Pivnik DA, Lyons JB, Officer CB, Adatte T, Graup G, Rocchia R, Robin E (1993) Deposition of channel deposits near the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary in northeastern Mexico: catastrophic or "normal" sedimentary deposits? Geology 21:797–800

Sweet AR, Braman DR (2001) Cretaceous–Tertiary palynofloral perturbations and extinctions within the *Aquilapollenites* Phytogeographic Province. Can J Earth Sci 38:249–269

Tantawy AA (2003) Calcareous nannofossil biostratigraphy and paleoecology of the Cretaceous–Tertiary transition in the central eastern desert of Egypt. Mar Micropaleontol 47:323–356

Thierstein HR (1981) Late Cretaceous nannoplankton and the change at the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary. Soc Econ Paleontol Miner Spec Publ 32:355–394

Thierstein HR, Okada H (1979) The Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary event in the North Atlantic. Initial Rep Deep Sea Drill Project 43:601–616

Thompson JN (2013) Relentless evolution. University of Chicago Press, Chicago

Twichett RJ (2006) The palaeoclimatology, palaeoecology and palaeoenvironmental analysis of mass extinction events. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 232:190–213

Uchman A (2003) Trends in diversity, frequency and complexity of graphoglyptid trace fossils: evolutionary and palaeoenvironmental aspects. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 192: 123–142

Uchman A (2004) Phanerozoic history of deep-sea trace fossils. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geol Soc Lond Spec Publ 228:125–139

Uchman A (2007) Deep-sea ichnology: development of major concepts. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils: concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 248–267

Uchman A, Bubík M, Mikuláš R (2005) The ichnological record across the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary in turbiditic sediments at Uzgruň (Moravia, Czech Republic). Geol Carpathica 56:57–65

Vandenberghe N, Hilgen FJ, Speijer RP (2012) The Paleogene Period. In: Gradstein FM, Ogg JG, Schmitz M, Ogg G (eds) The geologic time scale 2012. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 855–921

Wahlberg N, Leneveu J, Kodandaramaiah U, Peña C, Nylin S, Freitas AVL, Bower AVZ (2009) Nymphalid butterflies diversify following near demise at the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci 276:4295–4302

Wappler T, Currano ED, Wilf P, Rust J, Labandeira CC (2009) No post-Cretaceous ecosystem depression in European forests? Rich insect-feeding damage on diverse middle Palaeocene plants, Menat, France. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci 276:4271–4277

Wappler T, Labandeira CC, Rust J, Frankenhäuser H, Wilde V (2012) Testing for the effects and consequences of mid Paleogene climate change on insect herbivory. PLoS One 7:e40744

Ward PD, Kennedy WJ, MacLeod KG, Mount JF (1991) Ammonite and inoceramid bivalve extinction patterns in Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary sections of the Biscay Region (southwestern France, northern Spain). Geology 19:1181–1184

Wiest LA, Buynevich IV, Grandstaff DE, Terry DO Jr, Maza ZA (2015) Trace fossil evidence suggests widespread dwarfism in response to the end-Cretaceous mass extinction: Braggs, Alabama and Brazos River, Texas. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 417:105–111

Wilf P (2008) Insect-damaged fossil leaves record food web response to ancient climate change and extinction. New Phytol 178:486–502

Wilf P, Johnson KR (2004) Land plant extinction at the end of the Cretaceous: a quantitative analysis of the North Dakotan megafloral record. Paleobiology 30:347–368

Wilf P, Labandeira CC (1999) Response of plant–insect associations to Paleocene–Eocene warming. Science 284:2153–2156

Wilf P, Labandeira CC, Kress JW, Staines C, Windsor DM, Allen AL, Johnson KR (2000) Timing the radiations of leaf beetles: hispines on gingers from latest Cretaceous to Recent. Science 289:291–294

Wilf P, Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Coley PD, Cutter AD (2001) Insect herbivory, plant defense, and early Cenozoic climate change. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:6221–6226

Wilf P, Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Cúneo NR (2005) Richness of plant–insect associations in Eocene Patagonia: a legacy for South American biodiversity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:8944–8948

Wilf P, Labandeira CC, Johnson KR, Ellis B (2006) Decoupled plant and insect diversity after the end-Cretaceous extinction. Science 313:1112–1115

Wing SL, Herrera F, Jaramillo C, Gómez C, Wilf P, Labandeira CC (2009) Late Paleocene fossils from the Cerrejón Formation, Colombia, are the earliest record of Neotropical rainforest. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:18627–18632

Winkler IS, Labandeira CC, Wappler T, Wilf P (2010) Diptera (Agromyzidae) leaf mines from the Paleogene of North America and Germany: implications for host use evolution and an early origin for the Agromyzidae. J Paleontol 84:935–954

Wirth WW, Hubert AA (1962) The species of *Culicoides* related to *piliferus* Root and Hoffman in eastern North America (Diptera, Ceratopogonidae). Ann Entomol Soc Am 55:182–165

Wolbach WW, Lewis RS, Anders E (1985) Cretaceous extinctions: evidence for wildfires and search for meteoritic material. Science 230:167–170

Zvereva EI, Kozlov MV, Hilker M (2010) Evolutionary variations on a theme: host plant specialization in five geographic populations of the leaf beetle *Chrysomela lapponica*. Pop Ecol 52:389–396

Chapter 13
The Phanerozoic Four Revolutions and Evolution of Paleosol Ichnofacies

Jorge F. Genise, Emilio Bedatou, Eduardo S. Bellosi, Laura C. Sarzetti, M. Victoria Sánchez, and J. Marcelo Krause

13.1 Introduction

Which is the appropriate scale to analyze how paleosol ichnology reflects major evolutionary events in the history of life? Surely, the scale of the ichnofacies model, which arises from the most elementary aspect of scientific reasoning: to recognize recurrent patterns. Repetitive ichnoassemblages are typical of different periods in the history of life and that they can be grouped in major categories: Seilacherian ichnofacies. Ichnofacies are recurrent associations of trace fossils in time and space, and it is their recurrence that grants the essential, broad scale, data for this evolutionary analysis. Mesozoic ichnoassemblages include or are dominated by crayfish and earthworm trace fossils, whereas insect trace fossils dominate most Cenozoic assemblages (Genise 2016). To ignore these patterns would result minimally in an unacceptable loss of scientific information.

Life on Earth has been evolving since its beginning during the Archean. Accordingly, paleosol ichnofacies, as a reflection of behaviors and ecologic preferences of soil-inhabiting organisms, should also have evolved. As pointed out by MacEachern et al. (2007, 2012), the *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies cannot be older

---

J.F. Genise (✉) • E.S. Bellosi • L.C. Sarzetti • M.V. Sánchez
CONICET, División Icnología, Museo Argentino de Ciencias Naturales,
Av. Ángel Gallardo 470, 1405 Buenos Aires, Argentina
e-mail: jgenise@macn.gov.ar

E. Bedatou
CONICET, INCITAP, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas y Naturales, Universidad
Nacional de La Pampa, Av. Uruguay 151, 6300 Santa Rosa, La Pampa, Argentina

J.M. Krause
CONICET, Museo Paleontológico Egidio Feruglio, Av. Fontana 140,
9100 Trelew, Chubut, Argentina

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_13

than the Paleogene when grass-dominated communities appear. What happened, then, with paleosol ichnofacies prior to the Cenozoic? How did ichnofacies evolve? It is impossible to think in static ichnoassemblages from the oldest paleosols-bearing rhizoliths recorded in the Early Devonian to the youngest ones in the Holocene. Alternatively, tracking ichnofacies evolution, an uncommon approach in theoretical ichnology, should allow us a better understanding of evolution of life itself and it would represent a significant contribution of ichnology for its delayed integration with other paleontological disciplines. The idea of major evolutionary changes characterizing the history of life has been designed mostly from data and interpretations provided by paleontological disciplines other than ichnology. Can ichnology, and particularly paleosol ichnology, with its own major evolutionary steps, offer a parallel exploration to the history of life?

On the other hand, which is the influence of soil types on the evolution of paleosol ichnofacies? Much of the major events in life history, such as the end-Permian crisis, the advent of angiosperms during the mid-Cretaceous, or the end-Cretaceous mass extinction, produced no significant changes in the nature of soils. In contrast, it is clear that the increasing complexity of terrestrial ecosystems, from early microbial habitats to the development of complex plant communities, triggered the appearance of the different soil types. Retallack (1992a) proposed that the principal changes of land environments were deployed in a stepwise mode following the origin of different plant formations, from microbial earths to grasslands. Is it possible to use paleosol ichnofacies to test this hypothesis?

In this chapter, we will travel along a two-way road looking at the consequences, if any, that major evolutionary changes had on paleosol ichnofaunas, and vice versa. As a result, we expect to unveil the big picture of the evolution of paleosol ichnofacies accompanying major evolutionary changes in the history of life.

13.2 The Rhizolith Revolution: The Paleozoic Shy Beginning of Paleosol Trace Fossils

The Paleozoic was a very innovative period for history of life (see Chaps. 3–7). It includes the appearance of the first soils bearing subaerial trace fossils (Tables 13.1 and 13.2; Figs. 13.1 and 13.3). Before that, different paleosol features produced mostly by chemical and physical weathering have been recognized in Archean and Proterozoic rocks (Retallack 2001a). These characters would include microbial borings, soil horizons, peds, illuviation argillans, cryogenic cracks, slickensides, nodules, and sepic-plasmic clay microfabrics (Retallack 1992b). These paleosols older than 1 Ga would include Entisols, Inceptisols, Aridisols, Gelisols, Andisols, Vertisols, and Oxisols, whereas "green clays" would have formed in a reducing atmosphere older than 2.2 Ga (Retallack 2001a). Microbial earths would have developed also in terrestrial environments during the Precambrian (Driese et al. 1997).

For various reasons, including the absence of most groups of soil invertebrates that produce preservable traces, paleosol trace fossils are scarce during the Paleozoic.

Table 13.1 Recorded cases of root and invertebrate trace fossils in paleosols

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Yemen, Ma'rib	Unnamed	Holocene	Root traces	Pietsch and Kühn (2012)
South Africa, Clanwillam	Unnamed	Holocene	Termite earth mounds	Moore and Picker (1991)
South Africa, Western cape	Unnamed	Holocene	Root casts	Cramer and Hawkins (2009)
Sultanate of Oman, Wahiba Sand Sea	Unnamed	Holocene	*Celliforma* *Coprinisphaera* *Rosellichnus* Termite nests	Radies et al. (2005)
USA, San Miguel Island	Unnamed	Holocene	Rhizoconcretions	Stewart and Thorson (1994)
New Zealand, Karikari, and Aupouri Peninsulas	Unnamed	Quaternary (Holocene and Pleistocene)	*Cladichnus* *Planolites* *Skolithos* *Taenidium* Insect burrows Root traces	Gregory et al. (2004)
Spain, Canary Islands	Unnamed	Quaternary (Holocene and Pleistocene)	*Rebuffoichnus guanche* *Rebuffoichnus casamiquelai* *Tombownichnus parabolicus* *Tombownichnus plenus* *Palmiraichnus castellanosi* "Acridian ootheca" Rhizoliths	Alonso-Zarza and Silva (2002), Mikúlaš and Genise (2003), Genise and Edwards (2003), Alonso-Zarza et al. (2008), Meco et al. (2010, 2011), La Roche et al. (2014), Genise et al. (2013a)
Australia	Unnamed	Quaternary (Holocene and Pleistocene)	*Rebuffoichnus casamiquelai*	Lea (1925)
Argentina, Quequén	Unnamed	Late Pleistocene-Holocene	Root traces	Tonello et al. (2002)
Uruguay	Sopas	Late Pleistocene	*Castrichnus incolumis* *Coprinisphaera* *Taenidium serpentinum* Meniscate burrows Rhizoliths	Ubilla (1996), Verde et al. (2007)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Argentina, Santa Fé	Tezanos Pinto	Late Pleistocene	*Coprinisphaera* Ant nests Root traces	Iriondo and Krohling (1996), Kröhling (1999)
Argentina, Buenos Aires	Buenos Aires	Late Pleistocene	*Barberichnus bonaerensis* *Coprinisphaera* Termite nests	Laza (1995, 2006a), Genise et al. (2000)
Argentina, Buenos Aires and Santa Fé	Luján	Late Pleistocene	*Coprinisphaera* Ant nests	Laza (1995, 1997), Genise et al. (2000)
Namibia	Homeb Silt	Late Pleistocene	*Taenidium* *Termitichnus* Pelletal burrows and chambers	Smith et al. (1993)
Namibia	Sossus Sand (Khommabes Carbonates)	Late Pleistocene	*Taenidium* *Termitichnus* *Digitichnus*	Smith and Mason (1998)
Argentina, Tucumán	Tafí del Valle	Late Pleistocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Fontaine et al. (1995)
South Africa, Still Bay	Waenhuiskrans	Middle and Late Pleistocene	Rhizoliths	Roberts et al. (2008)
Italy, Santo Stefano Island	Villa Giuli	Pleistocene	cf. *Rebuffoichnus* or cf. *Fictovichnus*	Sacchi and Petti (2008)
Canada, Ontario	Pleistocene sands	Pleistocene	Rhizoconcretions	Kindle (1923)
USA, Sapelo Island	Unnamed	Pleistocene	*Taenidium* Root traces	Gregory et al. (2004)
New Zealand, Northland	Unnamed	Pleistocene	Ant burrows Bee burrows Bee cells “*Phoebichnus* look-alike” root system	Gregory and Campbell (2003), Gregory et al. (2009)
Australia	Bridgewater	Pleistocene	*Palmiraichnus*	Zeuner and Manning (1976), Houston (1987)

USA, Washington	Washtucna Soil	Pleistocene	Cicada burrows Root traces	O’Geen and Busacca (2001), Blinnikov et al. (2002)
Ecuador, Quito	Cangahua	Pleistocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Sauer (1955), Clapperton and Vera (1986), Laza (2006b), Sánchez et al (2013)
Brazil, Osorio	Chuí	Pleistocene	*Celliforma* *Coprinisphaera* *Krausichnus* *?Monesichnus* *Palmiraichnus* *Taenidium barretti* *Termitichnus* *Vondrichnus* Rhizoliths Wasp cocoons	Netto et al. (2007)
British West Indies, Cayman Brac	Ironshore	Pleistocene	Rhizoliths	Jones and Ng (1988)
Spain, Mallorca	Unnamed	Pleistocene	Rhizoconcretions	Calvet Rovira et al. (1975), Klappa (1980)
Spain, Ibiza	Unnamed	Pleistocene	Rhizoliths	Klappa (1980)
Kenya, East Turkana	Koobi Fora	Pleistocene	Root traces Root casts	Cohen (1982), Mount and Cohen (1984)
USA, Louisiana	Citronelle	Early Pleistocene	Tree casts	Mossa and Schumacher (1993)
South Africa, Namaqualand	Unnamed	Early Pleistocene	*Planolites* *Skolithos* *Taenidium* *Termitichnus namibiensis* Vertical rhizoconcretions	Miller and Mason (2000)
Tanzania, Olduvai Gorge	Olduvai	Early Pleistocene	Meniscate burrows Rhizoliths Termite and ant traces	Ashley and Driese (2000)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Argentina, Entre Ríos and Santa Fé	Ensenada	Early Pleistocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Frenguelli (1938)
Spain, Mallorca	Unamed	Pliocene-Early Pleistocene	*Rebuffoichnus*	Mas and Ripoll (2010)
India, Punjab	Boulder	Pliocene-Pleistocene	*Termitichnus* Meniscate burrows	Tandon and Naug (1984)
Argentina, Buenos Aires	San Andrés	Late Pliocene-Early Pleistocene	*Barberichnus bonaerensis* *Coprinisphaera*	Laza (1995, 2006a), Cantil et al. (2013)
Kenya and Tanzania	Laetoli	Late Pliocene	*Coprinisphaera* *Celliforma* *Lazaichnus amplus* Wasp cocoons Termite nests Burrows Root traces	Sands (1987), Ritchie (1987), Darlington (2005), Krell and Schawaller (2011), Darlington (2011)
Argentina, Buenos Aires	Chapadmalal	Late Pliocene	*Coprinisphaera* Ant nests Termite nests	Laza (1995)
Argentina, Buenos Aires	Barranca de los Lobos	Late Pliocene	*Tacuruichnus farinai*	Genise (1997)
Argentina, Jujuy	Maimará	Early Pliocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Laza (2006b)
Argentina, Salta and Jujuy	Piquete	Early Pliocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Alonso et al. (1982)
United Arab Emirates, Abu Dhabi	Unnamed	Early Pliocene	*Rosellichnus arabicus* Ant nests	Genise and Bown (1996)
Argentina, Buenos Aires	Monte Hermoso	Late Miocene-Early Pliocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Laza (1986b)
United Arab Emirates, Abu Dhabi	Baynunah	Late Miocene	*Rosellichnus arabicus* Termite nests	Bown and Genise (1993)
Pakistan	Dhok Pathan	Late Miocene	*Coprinisphaera*-like traces	Retallack (1991a)

Argentina, Neuquén, Río Negro, Chubut and Santa Cruz	Collón-Curá	Late Miocene	*Celliforma* *Coprinisphaera* *Lazaichnus fistulosus* *Fictovichnus sciuttoi* *Rosellichnus patagonicus* *Teisseirei barattinia* Burrows	Frenguelli (1939), Genise and Bown (1996), Laza (1986b), Villafañe et al. (2008), Bedatou (2010), Sarzetti et al (2014)
Argentina, San Luis	Paso de Las Carretas	Late Miocene	*Celliforma* *Coprinisphaera*	Pascual and Bondesio (1981)
Argentina, San Juan	Las Flores	Late Miocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Contreras (1996)
Argentina, Catamarca	Andalhualá	Late Miocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Genise et al. (2000)
Argentina, La Pampa and Buenos Aires	Cerro Azul	Late Miocene	*Attaichnus kuenzelii* *Coprinisphaera* *Quirogaichnus coniunctnus*	Laza (1982, 2006b), Genise et al. (2013b)
Chad	Chad Basin	Late Miocene	*Coatonichnus globosus* *Microfavichnus alveolatus* *Quirogaichnus* *Termitichnus schneideri* *Vondrichnus planoglobus* Root traces	Duringer et al. (2006, 2007)
USA, Oregon	Rattlesnake	Late Miocene	Insect burrows Root traces Root systems	Retallack et al. (2002a)
Perú, Loreto	Pebas	Late Miocene	*Planolites* *Taenidium* Root traces	Rebata et al. (2006)
Spain, Teruel	Unit II	Late Miocene	Cf. *Cellifroma* Root traces	Alonso-Zarza et al. (2012)
USA, Kansas	Ogallala	Middle Miocene-Early Pliocene	*Daimoniobarax nephroides* *Daimoniobarax tschinkeli* Possible dung beetle burrows Root traces	Martin and Bennett (1977), Gobetz and Martin (2006), Yelinek and Chin (2007), Smith et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Kenya	Maboko	Middle Miocene	Root traces	Retallack et al. (2002b)
USA, Colorado	Pawnee Creek	Miocene	*Beaconites kytosichnus* *B. knestosichnus* *Parowanichnus perirhizaterion* Rhizoliths	Hembree and Hasiotis (2008)
Spain	"Gypsum and grey shales"	Miocene	*Celliforma* *Cellicalichnus* aff. *habari* *Rosellichnus* cf. *arabicus* *Spongeliomorpha* *Labyrintichnus terrerensis* *Taenidium barretti* *Beaconites filiformis* *Polykladichnus aragonensis*	Uchman and Alvaro (2000)
Kenya	Hiwegi (Kibanga Mb.)	Miocene	*Cellicalichnus habari* Root traces Burrows Wasp cocoons	Thackray (1994), Genise (2000)
Kenya	Hiwegi (Fossil Bed Mb.)	Miocene	Root traces Cocoons	Retallack et al. (1995)
Honduras, Tegucigalpa	El Periodista (Member)	Miocene	*Palmiraichnus*	Domínguez-Alonso and Coca-Abia (1998)
Argentina, Santa Cruz	Pinturas	Early Miocene	*Coprinisphaera* *Palmiraichnus* *Skolithos* *Syntermesichnus fontanai* *Taenidium barretti* Burrows Earthworm diffuse boxwork Rhizoliths Root traces	Bown et al. (1988), Bown and Laza (1990), Genise and Bown (1994a), Genise and Hazeldine (1998a), Kramarz and Bellosi (2005), Cosarinsky et al. (2005), Laza (2006b), Bedatou et al. (2007, 2008b), Genise et al. (2008b), Bedatou (2010)

Argentina, Santa Cruz	Santa Cruz	Early Miocene	*Celliforma* *Coprinisphaera* Ant nests	Genise and Bown (1994a), Tauber (1996)
USA, Florida	Tampa	Early Miocene	*Celliforma nuda*	Brown (1935), Genise (2000)
Ethiopia	Bakate	Early Miocene	Termite nests	Bown and Genise (1993)
Germany	Unnamed	Early Miocene	*Celliforma*	Sauer and Schremmer (1969)
Argentina, Neuquén	Puesto Burgos	Late Oligocene-Early Miocene	*Coprinisphaera* Bee cells	Pazos (2011)
USA, Oregon	John Day	Late Oligocene-Early Miocene	*Pallichnus dakotensis* *Edaphichnium lumbricatum* *Taenidium* *Scaphichnium* *Termitichnus* Root traces	Retallack et al. (2000), Retallack (2004)
Spain, Aragón	Sariñena and Uncastillo	Oligocene–Early Miocene	*Coprinisphaera* *Scolicia* Ant nests Bee cells Dung beetle burrows Dung beetle nests and boli Horizontal crawling traces of arthropods Rhizoliths Spider burrows	Hamer et al. (2007)
Spain, Ebro	Solsona	Oligocene	*Taenidium* Vertical ornamented burrows	de Gibert and Sáez (2009)
Germany	Unnamed	Oligocene	*Celliforma*	Schütze (1907)
Argentina, Chubut	Deseado	Oligocene	*Coprinisphaera* *Teisseirei*	Frenguelli (1938), Laza (1986a)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
USA, South Dakota	Brule	Oligocene	*Cellicalichnus ficoides* *Celliforma* *Pallichnus dakotensis* Root traces	Retallack (1983, 1984), Genise (2000)
Argentina, Mendoza	Rodados lustrosos	Oligocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Genise et al. (2000)
Egypt, El Fayum	Jebel Qatrani	Oligocene	*Fleaglellius pagodus* *Krausichnus trompitus* *Macanopsis* *Masrichnus issawii* *Scaphichnium hamatum* *Termitichnus qatrani* *Termitichnus simplicidens* *Vondrichnus obovatus* Crayfish? burrows Rhizoliths	Bown (1982), Genise and Bown (1994b)
Czech Republic	Doupov Mountains	Early Oligocene	*Cf. Celliforma* and/or *Rebuffoichnus*	Fejfar and Kaiser (2005)
USA, Colorado	White River	Early Oligocene	*Cellicalichnus ficoides* *Edaphichnium* *Fictovichnus* isp. *Macanopsis* *Pallichnus dakotensis* *Parowanichnus* *Planolites* Backfilled burrows Rhizoliths Wasp cocoons	Retallack (1983), Hembree and Hasiotis (2007)

USA, Montana	Renova	Late Eocene-Early Oligocene	*Steinichnus* *Taenidium* Root traces Wasp cocoons	Sheldon and Tabor (2009), Sheldon and Hamer (2010)
USA, Wyoming	Bridger	Late Eocene	*Celliforma spirifer*	Brown (1934), Genise (2000)
Antarctica, Seymour Island	La Meseta	Late Eocene	*Coprinisphaera*	Laza and Reguero (1990), Laza (2006b)
France	Unnamed	Late Eocene	*Celliforma arvernensis*	Ducreux et al. (1988)
England, Isle of Wight	Bembridge Limestone	Late Eocene	*Fictovichnus sciuttoi*	Edwards et al. (1998), Armenteros and Daley (1998), Genise et al. (2007)
Argentina, Salta	Lumbrera	Middle–Late Eocene	Root traces	Del Papa (2006)
Uruguay	Queguay	Middle Eocene–Middle Oligocene	*Celliforma germanica* *C. spirifer* *C. rosellii* *Fictovichnus gobiensis* *Fictovichnus sciuttoi* *Rosellichnus isp.* Bee nests “Agapostemonini cluster” Rhizoliths	Martínez et al. (1997, 2001), Verde and Genise (2007), Alonso-Zarza et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Argentina, Chubut	Sarmiento	Middle Eocene–Early Miocene	*Chubutolithes gaimanensis* *Coprinisphaera lazai* *Coprinisphaera murguiai* *Coprinisphaera kraglievichi* *Coprinisphaera kheprii* *Coprinisphaera tonnii* *Feoichnus challa* *Lazaichnus fistulosus* *Pallichnus* *Taenidium* *Teisseirei barattinia* *Tombownichnus pepei* *Tombownichnus parabolicus* Burrows Earthworm diffuse boxwork Root marks Meniscate burrows Pedotubules Rhizoliths Rhizoconcretions	Andreis (1972), Laza (1986a), Bown and Ratcliffe (1988), Genise and Bown (1990), Bellosi et al. (2001, 2002a, 2010), Mikúlaš and Genise (2003), Bellosi and Genise (2004), Genise and Cladera (2004), Genise et al. (2004, 2008b), Krause and Genise (2004), Cosarinsky et al. (2005), Laza (2006b), Bedatou et al. (2007, 2008b). Krause et al. (2008, 2010), Sánchez and Genise (2009), Sánchez et al. (2010b), Bellosi and González (2010), Bedatou (2010)
France, Bouxwiller	Unnamed	Eocene	Cf. *Fictovichnus gobiensis* Cf. *Fictovichnus sciuttoi*	Kuntz (2010, 2012)
USA, Utah	Uinta	Eocene	*Edaphichnium* Ant nests Meniscate burrows Wasp cocoons	Sandau (2005)
Argentina, Chubut	Koluel Kaike	Early–Middle Eocene	*Coprinisphaera* *Feoichnus challa* Root traces	Laza (2006b), Krause and Bellosi (2006), Krause et al. (2008)

Uruguay, Nueva Palmira	Asencio	Early Eocene	*Celliforma* *Coprinisphaera murguiai* *Coprinisphaera kraglievichi* *Corimbatichnus fernandezi* *Elipsoideichnus meyeri* *Krausichnus* *Guerraichnus poligibbus* *Lazaichnus fistulosus* *Monesichnus ameghinoi* *Palmiraichnus castellanosi* *Rebuffoichnus barattinia* *Teisseirei* *Tombownichnus plenus* *Tombownichnus parabolicus* *Uruguay auroranormae* *Uruguay rivasi* Meniscate burrows Root traces Termite nests	Roselli (1987), Genise and Laza (1998), Genise et al. (1998), González (1999), Genise and Verde (2000), Genise and Zelich (2001), Mikúlaš and Genise (2003), Genise et al. (2004, 2008b), Cosarinsky et al. (2005), Laza (2006b), Verde and Genise (2010), Tófalo and Pazos (2010), Bellosi et al. (2016)
USA, Wyoming	Wasatch	Early Eocene	*Camborygma eumekenomos* *Celliforma* *Eatonichnus* *Planolites* *Skolithos* Root traces	Zonneveld et al. (2006), Bohacs et al. (2007), Hasiotis and Honey (2000)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Argentina, La Pampa	Gran Salitral	Early Eocene	*Celliforma germanica* *Celliforma rosellii* *Rosellichnus isp.* *Rebuffoichnus* *Skolithos linearis* *Taenidium barretti* *Teisseirei barattinia* Ornamented burrow fillings Plant traces Rhizoliths	Melchor (2002), Melchor et al. (2002)
Argentina, Jujuy	Maíz Gordo	Late Paleocene–Early Eocene	*Krausichnus trompitus* Root traces	DeCelles et al. (2011)
USA, Wyoming	Willwood	Late Paleocene–Early Eocene	*Camborygma litonomos* *Cylindricum* *Edaphichnium lumbricatum* *Ichnogyrus* *Macanopsis* *Naktodemasis bowni* *Planolites* *Scaphichnium hamatum* *Steinichnus* Cocoon traces Meniscate burrows Pedogenically modified *Camborygma litonomos* Rhizoliths Root traces	Bown and Kraus (1983, 1987), Hasiotis et al. (1993a), Kraus and Hasiotis (2006), Smith et al. (2008a, b, c, 2009)

USA, Utah	Claron	Paleocene-Eocene	*Camborygma eumekenomos* *Camborygma litonomos* *Celliforma* *Eatonichnus uthaensis* *Eatonichnus claronensis* *Fictovichnus* *Parowanichnus formicoides* Wasp cocoons	Bown et al. (1997), Hasiotis and Bown (1996)
USA, Wyoming	Hanna	Late Paleocene	*Camborygma eumekenomos* Root traces	Hasiotis and Honey (1995, 2000)
Argentina, Rocas Coloradas	Peñas Coloradas	Late Paleocene	*Eatonichnus*	Genise et al. (2001a, 2008b)
USA, Wyoming	Unnamed Upper Paleocene unit	Late Paleocene	*Camborygma* Root traces	Hasiotis and Honey (1995)
USA, Wyoming	Fort Union	Late Paleocene	*Camborygma symplokonomos* *Camborygma eumekenomos* *Camborygma litonomos* Root traces Rhizoconcretions	Hasiotis and Honey (2000), Kraus and Hasiotis (2006), Adams et al (2011)
Slovenia	Trstelj	Late Paleocene	Rhizoconcretions	Kosir (2004)
USA, North Dakota	Fort Union, Sentinel Butte Member	Early Paleocene	Undetermined burrows Root traces Stumps	Fastovsky and McSweeney (1991)
USA, Montana	Hell Creek	Late Cretaceous	Root traces	Fastovsky et al. (1989)
Brazil, Bauru Basin	Adamantina	Late Cretaceous	*Coprinisphaera*	Souza Carvalho et al. (2009)
USA, Montana	Two Medicine	Late Cretaceous	*Celliforma* *Fictovichnus sciuttoi* *Skolithos* *Teisseirei* *Tombownichnus*	Martin and Varricchio (2011)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Romania, Southern Carpathian Mountains	Sânpetru	Late Cretaceous	Burrows Crayfish? burrows Root traces	Therrien et al. (2009)
Romania, Tuştea	Densuş-Ciula	Late Cretaceous	Burrows Root traces	Therrien (2005)
Romania, Vurpăr	Red Continental Strata	Late Cretaceous	Burrows Root traces	Therrien (2005)
Argentina, Rio Negro	Allen	Late Cretaceous	*Fictovichnus sciuttoi*	Genise and Sarzetti (2011)
Argentina, Chubut	Laguna Palacios	Late Cretaceous	*Beaconites* *Cellicalichnus meniscatus* *Cellicalichnus chubutensis* *Loloichnus baqueroensis* *Rebuffoichnus casamiquelai* *Skolithos* *Taenidium* *Tombownichnus plenus* Earthworm diffuse boxwork Insect nests Root traces	Sciutto (1995), Sciutto and Martínez (1996), González (1999), Genise (2000), Bellosi and Sciutto (2002), Bellosi et al. (2002b), Genise et al. (2002a, 2004, 2007, 2008a, b), Mikúlaš and Genise (2003); Genise and Bellosi (2004), Bedatou et al. (2005, 2007, 2008a, b), Bedatou (2010)
Argentina, Chubut	Bajo Barreal	Late Cretaceous	*Pallichnus dakotensis* *Fictovichnus sciuttoi* Earthworms Ichnofabrics Insect traces Meniscate burrows Rhizoconcretions Root moulds	Sciutto and Martínez (1996), Bellosi et al. (2002b), Genise et al. (2007, 2008b), Umazano et al. (2008), Bedatou et al. (2008b), Bellosi et al. (2010), Bedatou (2010)

USA, Alaska	Prince Creek	Late Cretaceous	Root traces	Spicer and Parrish (1987)
France, Albas	Aquitaine Basin	Late Cretaceous	Root traces	Wright et al. (1995)
Gobi Desert, Mongolia	Djadokhta	Late Cretaceous	*Fictovichnus gobiensis* Rhizoliths	Johnston et al. (1996), Loope and Dingus (1999)
USA, Utah	Kaiparowits	Late Cretaceous	*Socialites tumulus* Burrows Root traces	Roberts and Tapanila (2006)
USA, Alabama	Tuscaloosa	Late Cretaceous	*Taenidium serpentinum* Root traces	Savrda et al. (2000)
USA, Arizona	Dakota	Late Cretaceous	*Cellicalichnus dakotensis*	Elliott and Nations (1998), Genise (2000)
Uruguay	Mercedes	Late Cretaceous	*Celliforma spirifer* *Celliforma germanica* *Fictovichnus gobiensis* Bee nests Rhizoliths Wasp cocoons	Veroslavsky and Martinez (1996), Veroslavsky et al. (1997), Tófalo and Pazos (2010), Alonso-Zarza et al. (2011)
Argentina, Santa Cruz	Mata Amarilla	Late Cretaceous	Rhizoliths Stumps	Varela et al. (2012)
South Korea, Kyongsangnamdo	Jinju	Cretaceous	Rhizoconcretions	Kim et al. (2002)
Argentina, Chubut	Castillo	Early Cretaceous	Root traces	Sciutto (1981); Bellosi et al. (2002b)
Argentina, Chubut	Cerro Barcino	Early Cretaceous	Rhizolith balls	Genise et al. (2010a)
Argentina, Chubut	Matasiete	Early Cretaceous	*Palaeophycus* *Planolites* *Taenidium* Root traces	Bellosi et al. (2002b), Paredes et al. (2003, 2007)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Argentina, Santa Cruz	Bajo Tigre	Early Cretaceous	*Beaconites* *Castrichnus incolumis* *Dagnichnus titoi* *Loloichnus baqueroensis* *Taenidium* Earthworm diffuse boxwork Root traces	Genise (2001), Cladera et al. (2002), Bedatou et al. (2006, 2007, 2008a, b, 2009), Genise et al. (2008a, b), Bedatou (2010)
Argentina, Santa Cruz	Punta del Barco	Early Cretaceous	*Beaconites* *Castrichnus incolumis* *Cellicalichnus meniscatus* *Dagnichnus titoi* *Loloichnus baqueroensis* *Taenidium* Earthworm diffuse boxwork Root traces	Cladera et al. (2002), Bedatou et al. (2006, 2007, 2008a, b, 2009), Genise et al. (2008a, b), Bedatou (2010)
Spain, Soria	Tierra de Lara Group	Late Jurassic-Early Cretaceous	Root traces	Wright et al. (1995)
Argentina, Santa Cruz	Bajo Grande	Late Jurassic	*Beaconites* *Loloichnus baqueroensis* *Taenidium* Earthworm diffuse boxwork Root traces	Cladera et al. (2002), Bedatou et al. (2007, 2008a, b, 2009), Bedatou (2010)

USA, Colorado	Morrison	Late Jurassic	cf. *Ancorichnus* isp. *Camborygma litonomos* *Camborygma eumekenomos* *Camborygma airiokados* *Celliforma* *Coprinisphaera* cf. *Cylindrichum* cf. *Rosellichnus* isp. *Naktodemasis bowni* *Scoyenia* isp. *Steinichnus* "Ant nests" "Bee nests" "Beetle burrows" Cocoons Crayfish burrows Horizontal striated burrow Plant and root traces Quasi-vertical striated burrow Rhizoliths "Termite nests" Vertical burrows Vertical striated burrows	Hasiotis (1993, 1999, 2004), Hasiotis and Demko (1996, 1998), Hasiotis and Kirkland (1997), Hasiotis et al. (1998, 2004), Fiorillo (1999), Demko et al. (2004), Parrish et al. (2004), Bromley et al. (2007)
Iran, Binalud Mountains	Aghounj	Early-Middle Jurassic	*Cellicalichnus antiquus*	Fürsich et al. (2010)
South Africa	Elliot/Clarens	Early Jurassic	*Taenidium* "Termite nests" Root traces	Smith and Kitching (1997), Bordy (2008), Bordy et al. (2004, 2005, 2009), Genise et al. (2005)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
Poland, Holy Cross Mountains	Unnamed	Early Jurassic	*Planolites* *Scoyenia* Arthropod burrows Chambered insect nests Earthworm burrows Radial chambers	Pieńkowski and Niedźwiezki (2008)
Canada	McCoy Brook	Early Jurassic	*Planolites* Burrows Root traces	Tanner (1996)
USA	East Berlin	Early Jurassic	*Palaeophycus striatus*	Gierlowski-Kordesch (1991)
Poland	Zajage	Early Jurassic	*Scoyenia* *Spongeliomorpha* Root traces	Gierlinski et al (2004)
USA, Arizona	Owl Rock	Late Triassic	Crayfish burrows Root traces	Tanner (2000)
USA, Arizona	Chinle	Late Triassic	*Archeoentomichnus metapolypholeos* *Camborygma symplokonomos* *Camborygma eumekenomos* *Camborygma litonomos* *Camborygma araioklados* *Taenidium* *Taenidium serpentinum* *Skolithos* *Naktodemasis bowni* “Bee cells” “Beetle burrows” Inclined burrows J-shaped burrows Rhizoconcretions Root traces	Hasiotis and Mitchell (1993), Hasiotis (1993), Hasiotis et al. (1993b, 2004), Hasiotis and Dubiel (1993a, b, 1994, 1995), Kowaleski et al. (1998), Therrien and Fastovsky (2000), Cleveland et al. (2008), Lucas et al. (2010), Tanner and Lucas (2012)

Argentina, La Rioja	Ischigualasto	Late Triassic	*Taenidium* *Skolithos* Rhizoliths	Melchor et al. (2001), Genise et al. (2001b, 2004)
Antarctica	Lashly	Middle Triassic	Fossil roots Insect? burrows	Retallack and Alonso-Zarza (1998)
Antarctica, Kitching Ridge	Fremeouw	Early Triassic	Burrows Crustacean burrows Root traces	Miller and Collinson (1994), Miller and Smail (1996), Retallack et al. (1996a), Babcock et al. (1998), Miller et al (2001)
Australia, New South Wales	Narrabeen Group	Early Triassic	*Skolithos* Crayfish burrows Earthworm burrows Insect burrows Root traces	Retallack (1976, 1997a)
South Africa	Katberg	Late Permian–Early Triassic	*Katbergia carltonichnus* *Macanopsis* *Scoyenia* *Skolithos* Root traces	Retallack et al. (2003), Gastaldo and Rolerson (2008)
China, Xinjiang Uyghur	Turpan Basin	Late Permian–Early Triassic	Root traces Rhizoliths	Thomas et al. (2011)
Russia, Arkhangelsk Oblast	Salarevo	Late Permian	Root traces	Yakimenko et al. (2000)
Russia, Tetyushi	Urzhumskii, Severodvinskii, and Vyatskii horizons	Late Permian	Root traces	Inozemtsev et al. (2011)
Antarctica, Transantarctic Mountains	Buckley	Late Permian	Root traces	Retallack et al. (1996a)

(continued)

Table 13.1 (continued)

Locality	Formation	Age	Trace fossils	References
USA, New Mexico	Abo	Late Permian	*Scoyenia* Adhesive meniscate burrows Rhizoconcretions	Kessler et al. (2001), Mack et al. (2003)
Antarctica, Victoria Land	Beacon Supergroup	Permian-Triassic	*Skolithos* Root traces	Retallack et al. (1995, 1997)
Antarctica, Prydz Bay	Unnamed	Permian-Triassic	Root traces	Turner (1993)
USA, Kansas	Speiser Shale	Early Permian	Rhizoliths	Hembree et al. (2005)
China, Ghizou	Liangshan	Early Permian	Root traces	Wang et al. (2013)
USA, Nebraska	Lansing-Kansas City Groups	Late Carboniferous	Root traces	Prather (1985)
Russia	Moscow and Mezen Continental-Platform Basins	Late Carboniferous	Root traces	Kabanov et al. (2010)
USA, Pennsylvania	Pottsville	Late Carboniferous	Root traces	Gill and Yemane (1996),Wnuk and Pfefferkorn (1987)
USA, Missouri	Fort Scott	Late Carboniferous	Root mats Root traces	Retallack and Germán-Heins (1994)
USA, Ohio	Glenshaw and Casselman	Late Carboniferous	Millipede burrows Burrows with chambers Root traces	Hembree (2009), Hembree and Nadon (2011)
Australia, New South wales	Seaham	Middle Carboniferous	*Skolithos* Root traces	Retallack (1999a)
England, Bristol	Clifton Down Mudstone	Early Carboniferous	Root traces	Vanstone (1991)
USA, New York	Walton	Late Devonian	Burrows Root traces	Retallack (1985)

USA, Pennsylvania and New York	Catskill	Middle–Late Devonian	Plant and root traces	Driese et al. (1997)
USA, New York	Oneonta	Middle Devonian	Meniscate burrows Rhizoliths	Dunagan and Driese (1999)
UK, Wales	Old Red Sandstone	Middle Devonian	*Beaconites antarcticus* *Taenidium barretti* Root traces	Morrissey and Braddy (2004), Morrissey et al. (2012), Hillier et al. (2008)
Antarctica, Victoria Land	Aztec Siltstone	Middle Devonian	Rhizoconcretions	Retallack (1997b)
Canada, Quebec	Malbaie	Middle Devonian	Plant and root traces	Driese and Mora (2001)
USA, Gilboa	Unnamed	Middle Devonian	Plant and root traces	Driese and Mora (2001)
Norway (Spitsbergen Is.)	Wood Bay	Early Devonian	*Skolithos helicoidalis* Burrows	Blomeier et al. (2003), Volohonsky et al. (2008)
Canada, Gaspé Bay	Battery Point	Early Devonian	Plant and root traces	Driese and Mora (2001), Elick et al. (1998)

Ichnotaxonomy and affinities are included as published, regardless of its reliability. In a few cases, ichnotaxonomy was updated according to recent revisions. Invertebrate cases in the table intended to be all recorded, whereas in the case of root traces is not an exhaustive list

Table 13.2 Paleosol ichnofacies showing trace fossil composition, typical sedimentary environments, and associated plant formations

Ichnofacies	Description	Dominant trace fossils	Sedimentary environments	Vegetation
Scoyenia	Dominated by meniscate structures (feeding and locomotion) both trackways and continuous trails. There is a mix of invertebrate, vertebrate, and plant traces. Invertebrates are mainly detritus-feeders, deposit-feeders, or predators. Vertebrates are predators or herbivorous. Vertebrate traces in this ichnofacies are mainly mammalian and bird tracks. Ichnodiversity of invertebrate traces is usually low, but individual traces can be abundant. Vertebrate footprints may be diverse and abundant.	*Scoyenia*, *Taenidium*, *Beaconites*, *Diplichnites*, *Diplopodichnus*, *Spongeliomorpha*, *Skolithos*, *Fuersichnus*, vertebrate tracks.	Continental low energy deposits with sediments ranging from sandy to argillaceous. Both slightly submerged sediments with periodical exposition to air and subaerial sediments periodically submerged can be represented. Typically transitions between fluvial and lacustrine environments, including floodplains, ponds, lake margins, ephemeral lakes, and humid interdunes.	Little or no vegetation cover. Semi-aquatic vegetation may be present.
Coprinisphaera	Dominant breeding structures of beetles and bees, but traces of other insects such as ants, termites, cicadas, and moths may be present. Meniscate tubes, mammal caves, and rhizoliths can be present. Most common vertebrate structures are rodent burrows. Moderate to relatively high ichnodiversity and abundance	*Coprinisphaera*, *Celliforma*, *Teisseirei*, *Monesichnus*, *Uruguay*, *Palmiraichnus*, *Feoichnus*, *Tombownichnus*, *Lazaichnus*, rhizoliths, vertebrate burrows	Paleosols associated to ecosystems of open herbaceous communities, from dry and cold to humid and warm climate. Paleosols formed in different sedimentary environments including alluvial plains, desiccated floodplains, abandoned fluvial bars, crevasse splays, levees, and vegetated aeolian deposits.	Open herbaceous communities. Mostly grass-dominated habitats.
Celliforma	Dominance of chambers and chambered trace fossils assigned to bees and wasps. Other associated components are rhizoliths, vertebrate coprolites, and large vertebrate burrows. Moderate ichnodiversity, high abundance.	*Celliforma*, *Rebuffoichnus*, *Fictovichnus*, *Pallichnus*, rhizoliths.	Calcretes formed under semiarid (and seasonal) to arid climate. Palustrine carbonates.	Scrubs and woodlands from arid to semiarid environments. Palustrine vegetation or bare soils due to frequent flooding.

Termitichnus	Dominance of chambers and chambered trace fossils attributed to termites. Other components are J-shaped burrows, rhizoliths, large vertebrate burrows, and pelleted burrow fillings. Low to moderately ichnodiversity and abundance.	*Termitichnus*, *Krausichnus*, *Vondrichnus*, *Fleaglellius*, rhizoliths, large vertebrate burrows.	Paleosols of closed forests developed under warm and humid conditions. Moderately developed paleosols on channel-belt deposits.	Closed forests of warm and humid climates.
Camborygma	Dominated by ichnogenera attributed to crayfishes and earthworms. The former are vertical to subvertical burrows, commonly Y-branched, in some cases connected by horizontal burrows, with or without chambers. Rarely breeding structures are present. Earthworm trace fossils are diffuse boxworks, in some cases meniscate, or connected to chambers. Cross-cuttings are very common. Low ichnodiversity, high abundance.	*Camborygma*, *Loloichnus,* *Dagnichnus*, *Cellicalichnus meniscatus*, *Edaphichnium*, diffuse boxworks, rhizoliths.	Paleosols with evidence for a high and fluctuating water table, mostly under warm climates. Paleosols can be formed on different deposits (channel, floodplain, overbank, levee-crevasse splay, gravity flows, loessic, ponds, etc.) and on almost any lithology.	Local marshes, bogs, swamps, or wetlands as a subset of forest, scrub, and open herbaceous communities
Rhizoliths	Associations composed almost exclusively of plant traces, including stumps and any kind of rhizoliths. Usually low ichnodiversity and abundance commonly high.	Root traces, rhizoliths, paleorhizospheres, stump casts.	Different types of paleosols formed on any kind of sedimentary deposit. Indicative of subaerial exposure.	Diverse. Not related to any particular plant formation

Modified from Genise et al. (2000), Buatois and Mángano (2007, 2011) and Melchor et al. (2012)

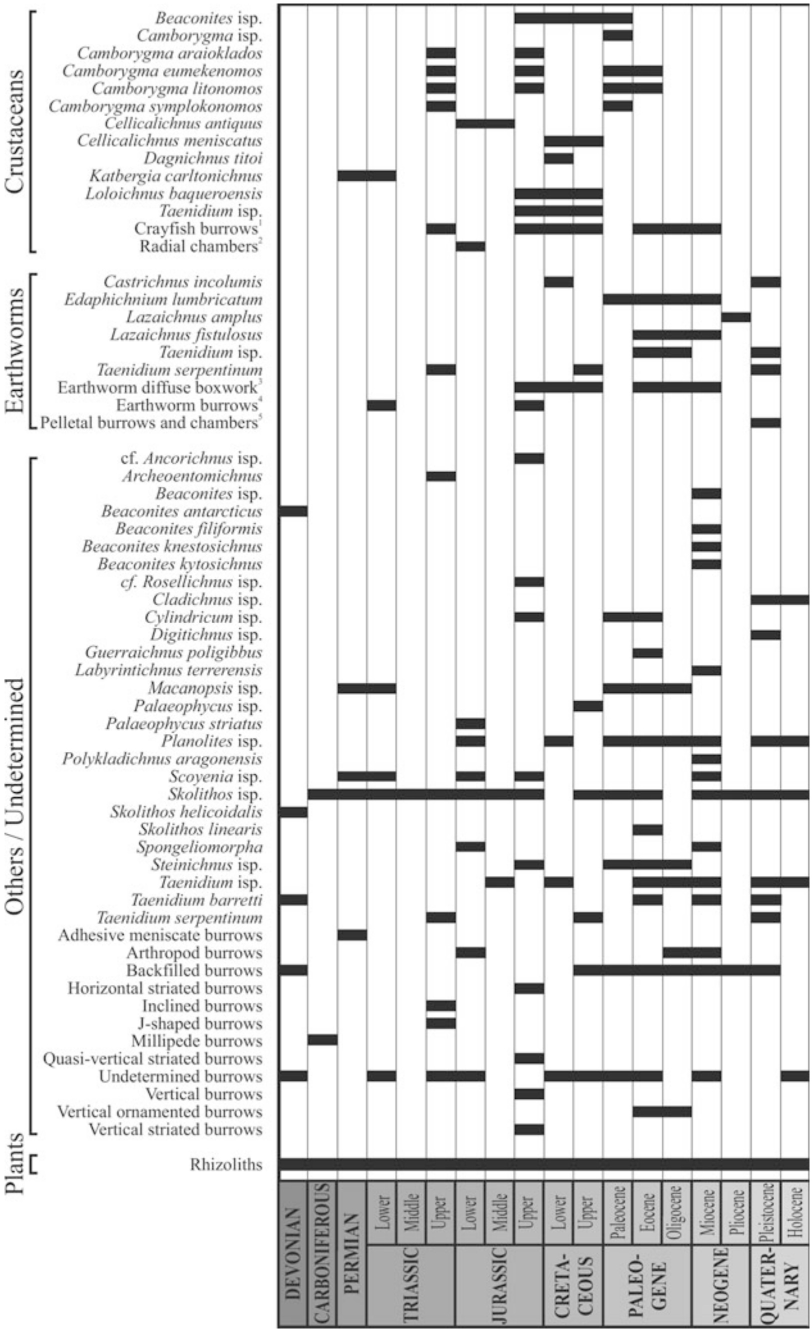


Fig. 13.1 Stratigraphic ranges of crustacean, earthworm, plant, and undetermined trace fossils in paleosols. Figure starts in the Devonian when the first rizholiths are recognized in paleosols. Only reliable attributions to producers in each group are included, whereas trace fossils with nonreliable attributions are included in the group of trace fossils with undetermined affinities. *Numbers* in unnamed trace fossils with reliable attributions indicate consulted references: (1) Bown (1982), Fiorillo (1999), Hasiotis (1993, 1999, 2004), Hasiotis and Demko (1996, 1998), Hasiotis and Kirkland (1997), Retallack (1997a), Tanner (2000), Therrien et al. (2009); (2) Pieńkowski and Niedźwiezki (2008); (3) Bedatou et al. (2005, 2006, 2007, 2008a, b), Bedatou (2010); (4) Pieńkowski and Niedźwiezki (2008), Retallack (1976, 1997a); (5) Smith et al. (1993)

A possible oldest evidence of subaerial trace fossils are drab haloes attributed to filaments of biological soil crusts produced by microorganisms and lichens from the Early Cambrian Flinders Ranges, Australia (Retallack 2008). The Cambrian-Ordovician Grindstone Range Sandstone of Australia shows trackways and resting traces of arthropods (*Diplichnites*, *Selenichnites*), which are interpreted as being produced on the surface of thin and weakly developed paleosols (Retallack 2009). Since Middle–Late Ordovician, soils included liverwort plants, representing low-biomass, high soil-respiration ecosystems (Retallack 1997b). Examples of these conditions would be the red, well-drained, weakly calcareous paleosol of Nova Scotia, which displays small reduction haloes assigned to mold colonies (Boucot et al. 1974), and the Aridisol of the Late Ordovician Juniata Formation from Pennsylvania (Retallack and Feakes 1987; Feakes and Retallack 1988; Retallack 1993, 2001b). However, this evidence was recently criticized based on the depositional environment, evidence for liverworts, and the nature of *S. beerboweri* and its producer, among other issues (Davies et al. 2010) (see Chap. 5).

Undisputed subaerial meniscate trace fossils are younger. They come from the upper Silurian-Middle Devonian Old Red Sandstone of Wales (Morrissey and Braddy 2004; Hillier et al. 2008; Morrissey et al. 2012), the Middle Devonian Oneonta Formation of the USA (Dunagan and Driese 1999), and the Late Permian Abo Formation of the USA (Mack et al. 2003). Also recorded are *Skolithos* from the Early Devonian Wood Bay Formation of Norway (Volohonsky et al. 2008) and the Middle Carboniferous Seaham Formation of Australia (Retallack 1999a). Absence of true assemblages and the paucity of data hamper a more definite inclusion of these assemblages in the ichnofacies model. However, they would be considered herein tentatively as the oldest examples of the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies. Usually this ichnofacies, indicative of alternative subaerial and subaquatic conditions (Fig. 13.4a), is not recognized as a paleosol one. However, during subaerial exposure the substrate may develop a temporal plant cover producing roots and traces of soil organisms (Genise et al. 2010b; Melchor et al. 2012). Its mention herein responds to its record as the only Paleozoic one indicative of subaerial exposure bearing invertebrate trace fossils. However, for practical purposes, the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies will not be treated further in this chapter (neither included in Table 13.1), as it has a very different background and approach from the other ichnofacies that occur in post-Paleozoic paleosols (see Chaps. 5, 6 and 12).

Apart from the 9 undisputed cases of Paleozoic paleosols bearing invertebrate trace fossils, other 17 examples show different types of rhizoliths as exclusive trace fossils (Table 13.1, Fig. 13.1). The first assemblage composed only of rhizoliths is Early Devonian (Driese and Mora 2001), in correspondence with the first plant origination event, marked by the advent of lycophytes and sphenophytes, and the first large adaptive radiation of plants (Cascales et al. 2010). This assemblage is recognized herein as the first ichnologic revolution in paleosols (Fig. 13.3). These exclusive rhizolith assemblages, assuming the diversity of different types of rhizoliths is underestimated, are considered herein for practical purposes as cases of a Rhizolith Ichnofacies, a proposal similar to that of Melchor et al. (2012). Its name refers to the initial appearance of rhizoliths, the “Cinderella” of paleosol trace fossils, considering that root traces are largely understudied and unnamed in comparison with animal traces. After future and badly needed research on different root systems and rhizolith branching patterns, the paleoenvironmental meaning of this ichnofacies could be extended greatly. For instance, rhizoliths and root systems constitute indicators of subaerial exposure or vegetation type, but also of drainage conditions in soils and paleosols (Sarjeant 1975; Jenik 1978; Retallack 1988; 2001a). The study of iron oxide-depleted zones around root trace fossils also assists to define several specific categories of drainage conditions in paleosols (Kraus and Hasiotis 2006). In addition, further analyses on the reasons for the absence of associated invertebrate trace fossils in these assemblages will also increase its value. There are about 38 cases of the Rhizolith Ichnofacies occurring along different intervals of the Phanerozoic, even though Table 13.1 is not an exhaustive compendium of all cases recorded from the literature.

Late Silurian and Devonian soils vegetated by the first herbaceous and rhizomatous plants (xeromorphic rhyniophytes), called “brakeland” formations, were represented by stronger developed, well-drained paleosols showing complicated bioturbation patterns (Retallack 1992a, 2001a). By the Early Devonian, root systems of primitive vascular plants were large and stout, reaching 1 m deep (Elick et al. 1998). Rhizome trace fossils in these Entisols consist of dichotomous and fibrous casts and molds presumably produced by trimerophytes. In addition, expansion of swampy vegetation in permanently waterlogged terrains gave way to peaty soils or Histosols (Rice et al. 1995). An old Inceptisol showing large root trace fossils, leaf litter, and spodic attributes was recognized in the Late Devonian of the USA (Retallack 1985). The advent of forested soils represented a change in weathering of soil minerals, and also a renewed step in stability and reduced erosion of landscapes due to deeper penetration of tree roots. Decaying vegetation of these more complex ecosystems probably favored the recycling of nutrients, thus originating new subsurface soil horizons that resulted in the illuviated clay accumulations of Alfisols and Ultisols, or in the iron and organic matter concentrations of Spodosols (Retallack 2001a). The most ancient forest ecosystems are recorded in Middle Devonian reddish Alfisols of Antarctica. These well-drained paleosols bear calcareous rhizoconcretions, ferruginized concretions, and deep and robust root trace fossils surrounded by large drab-haloes, attributed to highly seasonal, warm subhumid environments (Retallack 1997b). Diversity in vegetation communities since the Middle Paleozoic increased weathering rates, which consequently reduced the stability of minerals through the exportation of ions from soil waters and acidizing the rhizosphere (Knoll and James 1987). Root structures diversified anatomically in the Mississipian with the expansion of various forest types (Pfefferkorn and Fuchs 1991). Gill and Yemane (1996) described an ancient Ultisol from the lower Pennsylvanian of the USA, containing deep carbonaceous root trace fossils. A more ancient sandy soil enriched in iron and organic matter (Spodosol) exhibits stout woody root trace fossils probably of conifers (Vanstone 1991). Pennsylvanian calcic Vertisols, Inceptisols, and Alfisols formed in alluvial floodplains of the Appalachian basin bear different root trace fossils (rhizohaloes, rhizocretions, rhizotubules) that vary in depth, representing fluctuating water tables (Hembree and Nadon 2011). Tropical rain forests dominated by large-leaved seed ferns (pteridosperms), are recorded since the

Pennsylvanian (USA), and are represented by kaolinitic Oxisols showing large root trace fossils (Retallack and Germán-Heins 1994).

In sum, the most important soil types were already developed by the Devonian–Carboniferous, as well as most types of plant formations from different environments, from arid herbaceous communities to swampy or forested habitats developed under humid climates. Thus, the paucity of data on paleosol ichnofaunas should respond to other causes, such as the still relatively scarce record of Paleozoic paleosols or to the scarcity of soil inhabiting organisms capable of leaving preservable traces. The latter will be a recurrent issue along this chapter. Most of the recognizable tracemakers of Mesozoic and Cenozoic ichnoassemblages, such as earthworms and crayfishes, have no body fossil record for the Paleozoic, whereas the first holometabolous insects appear at the Mississippian–Pennsylvanian transition (Nel et al. 2007; Béthoux 2008; Wiegmann et al. 2009; Labandeira 2011). In turn, most Paleozoic invertebrate trace fossils in paleosols have been attributed to millipedes (Retallack 1999a, 2001b; Morrissey and Braddy 2004; Hembree 2009). Voigt (2007) analyzed the possible occurrence of insect trace fossils in Permo-Carboniferous basins of North America and Europe.

The Paleozoic records the appearance of the first paleosols bearing subaerial trace fossils. Paleozoic assemblages are composed only of rhizoliths (the Rhizolith Ichnofacies) or in some cases dominated by invertebrate burrows and trackways (the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies) (Table 13.1). The largest floral extinction, occurred at the end of the Carboniferous (Cascales et al. 2010) is not reflected in changes in paleosols or trace fossil assemblages. This stasis is only interrupted after the end-Permian mass extinction event. The assemblages containing only rhizoliths, which dominate the Paleozoic, are grouped in the Rhizolith Ichnofacies that is recorded extensively from the Devonian along the rest of the Phanerozoic (Table 13.1, Figs. 13.1, and 13.3). The Rhizolith Ichnofacies is a practical concept, to be explored considering three points: (1) the recurrency of paleosols showing only root traces, (2) the dominance of these assemblages in Paleozoic paleosols, and (3) the potential paleoenvironmental significance of different rhizolith morphologies.

13.3 The *Camborygma* Revolution: The Triassic Appearance of Crayfish and Earthworm Trace Fossils

The Late Permian catastrophic loss of plant biodiversity (Ward et al. 2000; Michaelson 2002; Arche and López-Gómez 2005) had an uncommonly long period of recovery in the Triassic. The modification in terrestrial ecosystems was represented by a global change in vegetation corresponding to the appearance and expansion of seed plants and the culmination of widespread coal accumulation (Faure et al. 1995; Retallack et al. 1996b).

In the Southern Hemisphere, this biotic crisis on land is documented in few paleosols from high latitudes that cross the Paleozoic-Mesozoic boundary (Smith 1995; Retallack 1999b; Retallack and Krull 1999). According to Retallack

(2001a), Late Permian–Early Triassic paleosols from Antarctica, South Africa, and Australia record abrupt environmental (e.g., acidification, biological productivity) and paleontological changes, also reflected in the replacement of paleosol types (e.g., Histosols to ferruginized paleosols). In several localities of Antarctica, Late Permian carbonaceous root traces (*Vertebraria*) were replaced by silica or clayey infilled roots (Retallack et al. 2005). Mid-latitude paleosols from China show similar climate controlled, long-term changes, from gleyed, organic-matter rich paleosols indicative of humid conditions, to paleosols with calcic and gypsic concentrations formed in unstable, semiarid environments, through the Permian-Triassic boundary (Thomas et al. 2011). Rhizoliths, root haloes, and root moulds were the only trace fossils observed in these paleosols.

Advanced cone-bearing and seed-producing gymnosperms, along with free-sporing lycopsids and ferns, became the dominant groups in early Mesozoic floras (Niklas et al. 1985; Visscher et al. 2004; Retallack et al. 2011). The major radiation of conifer families (Cephalotaxaceae, Pinnaceae, Taxaceae, Araucariaceae, Podocarpaceae, and Cheirolepidiaceae) occurred during the Triassic in a global scenario of increasing temperature and seasonality (Archibold 1995; Willis and McElwain 2002). By the early Jurassic, the expansion of Cycadales, Bennettitales, and Ginkgoales resulted in a new floristic change at global scale. Eighty percent of plant species were Gymnosperms by the Middle Jurassic (Hallan 1994; Brenchley and Harper 1998).

In spite of the mentioned large-scale vegetational changes, new or particular types of paleosols were not observed in Mesozoic strata. The flora preserved in the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation illustrates an environment that supported giant sauropods under warm, semiarid to subhumid, seasonal conditions. Floodplains had an herbaceous groundcover mixed with low-growing woody shrubs (ferns, seed ferns, ginkgos, horsetails) adapted to severe droughts (Parrish et al. 2004). Watercourses and lake margins show riparian open-forests of conifers with an herbaceous and shrubby understory (Turner and Peterson 2004; Engelmann et al. 2004). Calcic Vertisols, Aridisols, and Alfisols developed in such scenario with fluctuating water tables (Retallack 1997c; Demko et al. 2004).

The Early Triassic shows the appearance of the first assemblages of paleosol trace fossils that display a moderate diversity of ichnotaxa and trace makers (Table 13.1; Figs. 13.1 and 13.3). Crayfish, earthworm, and other invertebrate burrows, probably some of them produced by insects made their appearance in the geologic record. Nevertheless, the attribution of Early Triassic trace fossils to particular groups of animals was mostly tentative or weakly supported in the different study cases. Retallack (1976, 1997a) mentioned crayfish, insect, and earthworm burrows from the Narrabeen Group of Australia. Among them, earthworm traces, containing fecal pellets, are the most reliable identified ones (Retallack 1976). The body-fossil record of earthworms, as of other soft-bodied organisms, is fragmentary and probably very incomplete to be used as control for the trace-fossil record. Some tentative body fossils of oligochaetes were recorded earlier during the Middle Ordovician (Conway Morris et al. 1982). However, these identifications are uncertain and have been disputed (Humphreys 2003). Unquestionable evidence was presented by Pierce et al. (1990), who described a fossil earthworm embryo

(Oligochaeta: Lumbricidae) preserved with part of its cocoon from beneath a Holocene midden at Potterne, UK. The earliest evidence is not body fossils but rather clitellate cocoons, parataxonomically named *Burejospermum*, *Dictyothylakos*, and *Pilothylakos*, attributed either to Hirudinea or Oligochaeta. These cocoons are diverse and were recorded worldwide from the Late Triassic to the Neogene (Manum et al. 1991; Jansson et al. 2008; Tosolini and Pole 2010). The earliest specimens were described from the Upper Triassic of Greenland (Harris and Rest 1966) and Sweden (Manum et al. 1991). Other records were documented in the Jurassic of Norway (Manum et al. 1991), England (Harris 1961), and Australia (Jansson et al. 2008). Cretaceous cocoons were described from Greenland (Manum et al. 1991), Germany (Manum et al. 1991), Australia, and New Zealand (Tosolini and Pole 2010). Younger material comes from Holocene (post-glacial) deposits from Ontario, Canada (Schwert 1979).

The body-fossil record of crayfishes is more complete. Miller et al. (2001) discussed the difficulties in separating burrows of crayfish from those of small tetrapods in the Lower Triassic Fremeuow Formation of Antarctica. By contrast, Retallack et al. (2003) and Gastaldo and Rolerson (2008) attributed very tentatively, *Macanopsis* and *Katbergia* respectively, from the upper Permian–Lower Triassic interval of the Karoo Basin from South Africa, to crustaceans. The oldest body fossil of Parastacidae is *Palaeochinastacus australianus* (Martin et al. 2008), recorded from the Lower Cretaceous of the Otway Group in Australia. Other body fossil records from the Southern Hemisphere are younger (Sokol 1987; Aguirre-Urreta 1992; Feldmann and Pole 1994). In a recent molecular phylogeny of the Parastacidae calibrated by body fossils, Toon et al. (2010) estimated that the Parastacidae originated around 185 Ma during the Early Jurassic. The oldest Astacidae comes from the Lower Cretaceous of Spain (Garassino 1997). The oldest body-fossil record of possible Cambaridae comes from the Upper Triassic Chinle Formation of USA (Hasiotis and Mitchell 1993; Crandall et al. 2000). Although this particular attribution has been disputed (Rode and Babcock 2003), well documented, reliable crayfish trace fossils included in the ichnogenus *Camborygma*, are recorded from this formation (Hasiotis and Mitchell 1993; Hasiotis et al. 1993b). These trace fossils undoubtedly share with modern crayfish burrows the typical Y branching, longitudinal connecting tunnels, chambers, wall surface texture, and dependence on the water table (Hasiotis and Mitchell 1993; Hasiotis et al. 1993b).

In contrast, the attribution of Late Triassic and Late Jurassic trace fossils from the Chinle and Morrison formations of the USA (Hasiotis 2000, 2003, 2004) to particular groups of insects, such as bees, dung beetles, ants, and termites, among others, and of Early Jurassic trace fossils from the Elliot and Clarens formations of South Africa to termites (Bordy et al. 2004), has been disputed and mostly unaccepted (Engel 2001; Genise et al. 2004, 2005; Grimaldi and Engel 2005; Bromley et al. 2007; Alonso-Zarza et al. 2008; Lucas et al. 2010; Tapanila and Roberts 2012). Undoubtedly, insects would have been conspicuous inhabitants of the Triassic and Jurassic soils and probably many of the simple vertical, inclined, J-shaped, meniscate, or chambered burrows of the Chinle or Morrison Formations belong to them. However, it is hard to unequivocally attribute any trace fossil in a paleosol from these units to a particular group of insects because most of these simple trace fossils lack diagnostic characters. The Chinle and Morrison formations are exceptional in that preserve diverse ichnofaunas, which would contribute significantly to our understanding of ichnofacies evolution and the ichnofacies model. Unfortunately, the lack of ichnotaxonomic treatment of these trace fossils and the brief and poorly documented descriptions reflected in the poor understanding of their affinities and paleoenvironmental significance allow us only a tentative inclusion of these associations in the ichnofacies paradigm (Bromley et al. 2007). The end-Triassic mass extinction event seems to have had little effect on diversity of paleosol ichnofaunas judging by their increase in diversity between the Early and Late Triassic, represented in the Chinle Formation, and the comparable ichnodiversity between the Chinle and Morrison formations (Hasiotis 2000, 2004).

Genise et al. (2008a) proposed that terrestrial crayfishes could be capable of constructing nests, which basically showed two architectures: necked cells attached to parental burrows (*Cellicalichnus meniscatus*) and central chambers surrounded by radiating, short, meniscate tunnels (*Dagnichnus titoi*). The attribution of these structures from the Upper Jurassic and Lower Cretaceous of Argentina to crayfishes were based on their occurrence in the same beds, with abundant crayfish trace fossils (*Loloichnus baqueroensis*) (Bedatou et al. 2008a), and in the case of *Cellicalichnus meniscatus* because its cells are connected to tunnels indistinguishable from the former. In addition, *Dagnichnus* resembles the *bauplan* of thalassinidean calichnia (i.e., small cells or tunnels connected with large chambers or tunnels). There are two outstanding and well described trace fossils from Lower Jurassic paleosols of Poland and Iran that deserve special comment (Pieńkowski and Niedźwiezki 2008; Fürsich et al. 2010). Are these trace fossils the pioneer expressions of larval parental care? Do they represent a major step in the evolution of paleosol ichnofaunas? Pieńkowski and Niedźwiezki (2008) described a trace fossil composed of a central chamber surrounded by radiating cells, resembling the *bauplan* of *Dagnichnus,* from the Lower Jurassic of Sołtyków in Poland. Fürsich et al. (2010) described *Cellicalichnus antiquus*, a trace fossil composed of horizontal tunnels bearing opposite pairs of side branches that are considered breeding cells, from the Lower Jurassic Aghounj Formation of Iran. These authors made a well supported analysis of the affinities of these trace fossils, evaluating the possibilities of bees or bee ancestors, and crayfishes (Genise et al. 2008a; Genise and Verde 2010) as putative producers. They concluded that an insect origin was more likely because its morphology was more similar to that of insect nests than of extant crayfish traces. These cases, which probably have counterparts in the Chinle or Morrison formations, may represent a major acquisition in soil invertebrate behavior, the construction of cells in soils for larval development, regardless their crustacean or insect affinities (Genise 2016; Genise et al. 2008a; Genise and Verde 2010).

The Upper Jurassic and Lower Cretaceous formations of Patagonia, where the most diverse ichnoassemblages are recorded, are clearly dominated by earthworm and crayfish trace fossils (Bedatou et al. 2008a; Bedatou 2010), whereas other ichnoassemblages elsewhere are less diverse. At present, burrowing crayfishes are found in a diversity of soils and vegetation supporting periodical waterlogging.

In South America, crayfishes inhabit swamp, marshes, and mossy bogs occurring in evergreen forests and grasslands (Rudolph 1997; Rudolph and Crandall 2005; Buckup 2003; Noro 2007) (Fig. 13.4b). In North America they live in wet prairies with emergent sedges and grasses, marshes, and swamps (Grow 1981; Huner and Barr 1991; Jordan et al. 2000), whereas in Oceania they inhabit marshes, swamp, peatlands, and wetlands, occurring in grasslands, low shrublands, scrubs, and forests (Lake and Newcombe 1975; Suter and Richardson 1977; Horwitz and Knott 1983, 1991; Richardson 1983; Horwitz et al. 1985; Growns and Richardson 1988; Hamr and Richardson 1994; Richardson and Wong 1995; Whitmore et al. 2000). Accordingly, the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies would be indicative of local marshes, bogs, swamps, or wetlands as a subset of forest, scrub, and open herbaceous communities (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974).

In sum, Triassic, Jurassic, and most Cretaceous trace-fossil associations recorded from paleosols of Australia, USA, South America, and Europe include or are dominated by earthworm, crayfish, root, and/or undetermined trace fossils, which in some cases could be produced by unidentified groups of insects (Tables 13.1 and 13.2; Figs. 13.1, 13.2, and 13.3). The Mesozoic record of trace fossils in paleosols is greater than that of the Paleozoic, but it contains fewer and less studied occurrences than those of the Cenozoic. The lack of formally defined Mesozoic paleosol ichnofacies until now reflects this scenario. A new ichnofacies dominated by crayfish and earthworm trace fossils, indicative of paleosols with fluctuating, high water tables and distinctive of wetlands and swamps, may be defined at least tentatively with the database presented herein. This ichnofacies is called the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies, honoring the first ichnogenus named after crayfishes and also the oldest record of crayfishes (Hasiotis and Mitchell 1993; Hasiotis et al. 1993b). The *Camborygma* and Rhizolith Ichnofacies are the dominant paleosol ichnofacies from the Early Triassic to the Early Cretaceous, and represent stasis until the advent of new ichnotaxa and ichnofacies by the Late Cretaceous, the next revolution.

13.4 The *Celliforma* Revolution: The Late Cretaceous Advent of Recognizable Insect Trace Fossils in Paleosols and New Ichnofacies

By the Cretaceous, the Triassic–Jurassic scenario began to change slowly because of the appearance and early diversification of different groups of holometabolous insects capable of constructing preservable and distinct traces in soils (Genise and Bown 1994a). This already “old” observation, put forward almost 20 years ago, is still in force. Ants, bees, some groups of beetles, wasps, and termites that construct preservable and recognizable traces in soils, probably favored by the diversification of flowering plants, appeared by the Cretaceous when their first trace fossils are also recorded (Genise 2016).

The body-fossil record of these distantly related groups of insects began in the Cretaceous, even though there are abundant and impressive Triassic and Jurassic

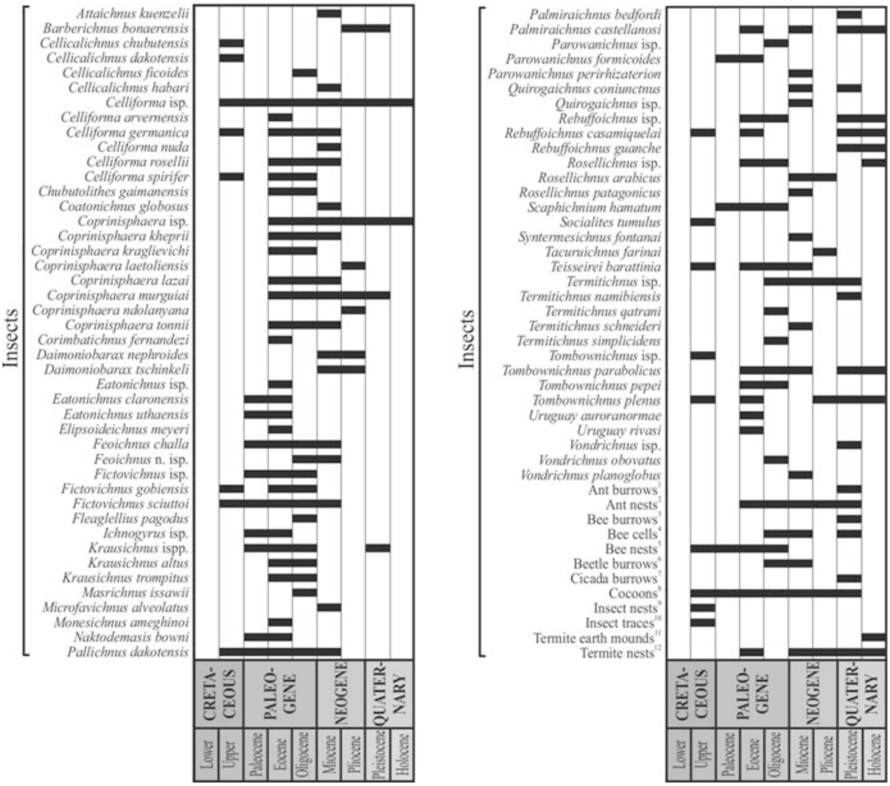


Fig. 13.2 Stratigraphic ranges of insect trace fossils in paleosols. Only reliable attributions to insects are included. *Numbers* in unnamed trace fossils with reliable attributions indicate consulted references: (1) Gregory et al. (2009); (2) Genise and Bown (1994a, 1996), Hamer et al. (2007), Iriondo and Krohling (1996), Kröhling (1999), Laza (1982, 1995, 1997), Sandau (2005), Tauber (1996); (3) Gregory et al. (2009); (4) Hamer et al. (2007), Gregory et al. (2009); (5) Genise and Verde (unpubl.), Verde and Genise (2007), Veroslavsky and Martínez (1996), Veroslavsky et al. (1997); (6) Hamer et al. (2007), Yelinek and Chin (2007); (7) O'Geen and Busacca (2001); (8) Hasiotis and Bown (1996), Hembree and Hasiotis (2007), Netto et al. (2007), Retallack et al. (1995), Sandau (2005), Sheldon and Hamer (2010), Thackray (1994); (9) González (1999), Sciutto and Martínez (1996); (10) Sciutto and Martínez (1996); (11) Moore and Picker (1991); (12) Bown and Genise (1993), Darlington (2005, 2011), Genise et al. (2000), Krell and Schawaller (2011), Laza (1995, 2006a), Radies et al. (2005)

localities bearing fossil insects worldwide (Grimaldi and Engel 2005). Here, it is provided a brief summary of the body-fossil record of common insect producers of trace fossils in Cretaceous–Cenozoic paleosols. The records of Dynastinae (Scarabaeidae) are from the Cenozoic of the USA and Germany, the oldest one of which is *Oryctoantiquus borealis* from the Middle Eocene of the USA (Ratcliffe et al. 2005). There are records of Melolonthinae (Scarabaeidae) from the Cenozoic of Russia, Germany, Czech Republic, and the USA, but the oldest records are from the Lower Cretaceous of Russia: *Cretoserica latitibialis* Nikolajev (1998) and three species of *Lithanomala* Nikolajev (1993) (Krell 2007). The oldest weevils, mostly from the families Nemonychidae and Belidae, come from Late Jurassic deposits of Karatau in South Kazakhstan (Gratshev and Zherikhin 2003; Oberprieler et al. 2007; McKenna et al. 2009; Legalov 2010). The oldest Curculionidae is *Arariperhinus monnei* from the Santana Formation, Brazil (Lower Cretaceous, Aptian-Albian) (Fernandes de Aquino Santos et al. 2011). Other Early Cretaceous weevil fossils come from Sierra del Montsec (Spain), Yixian (China), Bon-Tsagan, (Mongolia), Khetana and Ulya River (Russia), and Santana (Brazil); most of these are members of the Nemonychidae (Gromov et al. 1993; Oberprieler et al. 2007; Fernandes de Aquino Santos et al. 2011). Most families of extant weevils arose by the end of the Cretaceous (McKenna et al. 2009). The oldest termite body fossils are *Baissatermes lapideus* Rasnitsyn (2008) from the Lower Cretaceous (Barremian) of Baissa, Siberia (Engel et al. 2007, 2009) and *Morazatermes krishnai* Engel and Delclòs (2010) from the Lower Cretaceous (Albian) of Spain. Other termites, also recorded from the same deposits but presently known only from the forewings are *Cantabritermes simplex* Engel and Delclòs (2010) and *Aragonitermes teruelensis* Engel and Delclòs (2010) in amber from Teruel, Spain. The oldest undisputed bee is *Cretotrigona prisca* from New Jersey amber, which is closely related to the extant stingless bees (Michener and Grimaldi 1988a; Engel 2000). The precise age of *C. prisca* is still unclear since it was considered initially to be 80 My (Michener and Grimaldi 1988a, b) but later estimated in 70 My (Grimaldi 1999), and still later in 65 My (Engel 2000). Poinar and Danforth (2006) described *Melittosphex burmensis* from the Lower Cretaceous Burmese amber (Myanmar), which was originally considered as a transitional form between crabronid wasps and extant bees. More recently, Danforth and Poinar (2011) proposed that *M. burmensis* was a pollen-collector and accordingly the oldest bee.

The oldest ants are recorded from the Early Cretaceous (Dlussky 1996; Nel et al. 2004; Ward 2007; Perrichot et al. 2008), and are unexpectedly diversified with several distinct genera assigned minimally to two subfamilies (Perrichot et al. 2008). The oldest body-fossil records are *Haidomyrmodes mammuthus* (Sphecomyrminae) (Perrichot et al. 2007) and *Gerontoformica cretacica* (uncertain subfamily) (Nel et al. 2004) from the Lower Cretaceous (Upper Albian) of Charente-Maritime locality (France), and *Haidomyrmex cerberus* (Dlussky 1996), *Sphecomyrmodes orientalis*, *Sphecomyrma* sp. (both Sphecomyrminae), *Burmomyrma rossi*, and *Myanmyrma gracilis* (both uncertain subfamily) from the Lower Cretaceous (Upper Albian) of the Myanmar locality in Burma (France) (Dlussky 1996, Engel and Grimaldi 2006, Ward 2007; Perrichot et al. 2008). Finally, the oldest Aculeata is from the Upper Jurassic of Karatau in Kazakahstan (Central Asia) and was placed in the extinct family Bethylonymidae (Rasnitsyn 1975, 2002). This family probably represents the closest relative and gave rise to all modern aculeates (Rasnitsyn 2002; Brady et al. 2009). Many modern vespoid families diverged in the Late Jurassic and throughout the Early Cretaceous, although few families, including Pompilidae, Mutiliidae, and Sapygidae, may have originated considerably more recently (Brady et al. 2009). The earliest specimens of Sphecidae (Angarosphecidae) appeared during the Early Cretaceous and these were recorded from many localities

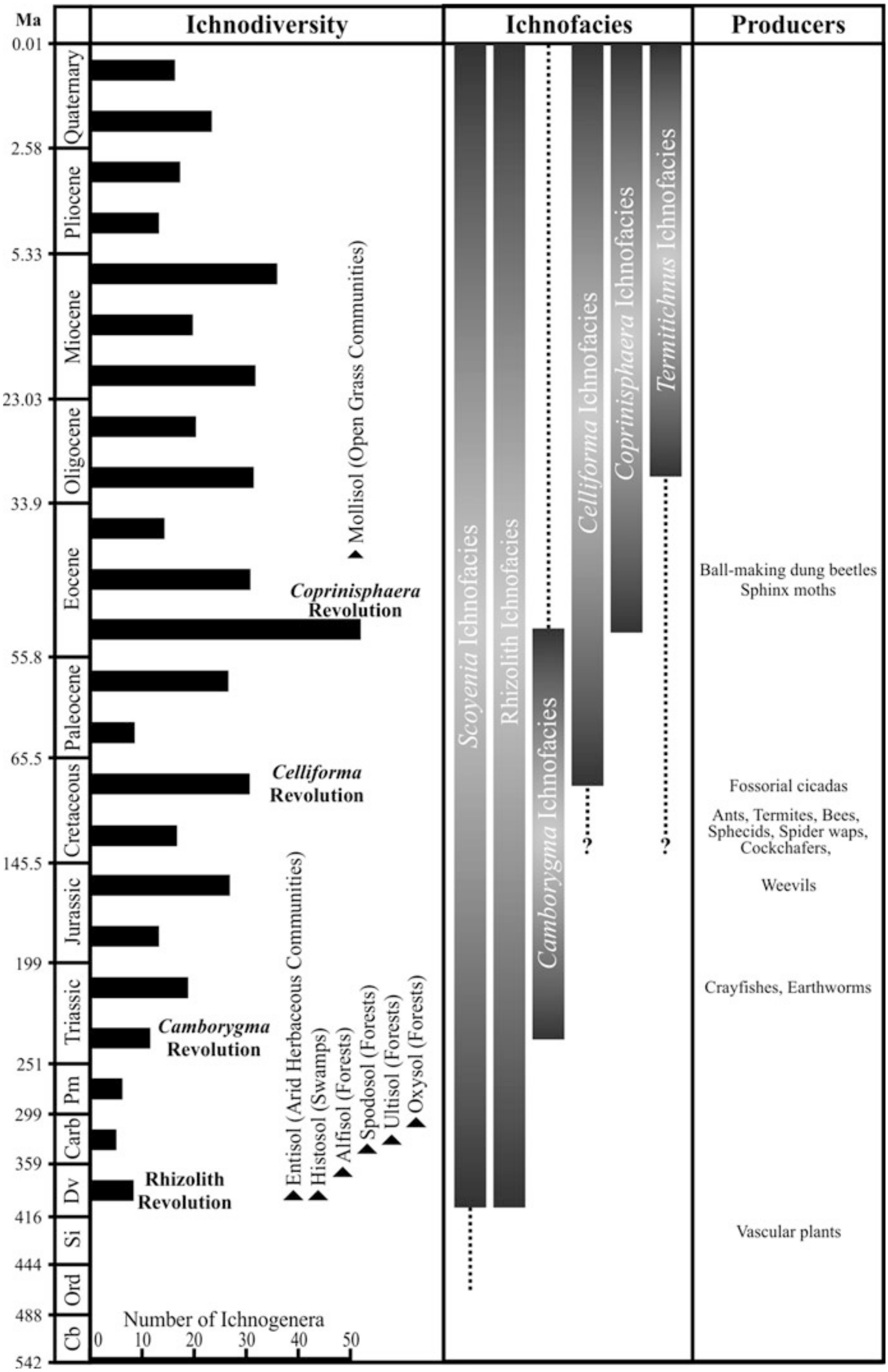


Fig. 13.3 Ichnodiversity of trace fossils in paleosols through the Phanerozoic. To emphasize changes in ichnodiversity, all trace fossils in Table 13.1 are included, independently of the reliability of their ichnotaxonomy and affinities. The *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies is depicted only for the Paleozoic to emphasize that its examples are one of the oldest ichnologic evidence of subaerial exposure and

principally in Eurasia (Spain, Burma, Mongolia, China, Russia, UK, and Transbaikalia) (Evans 1969; Rasnitsyn 1975, 1980, 2000; Darling and Sharkey 1990; Rasnitsyn et al. 1998, 1999; Rasnitsyn and Ansorge 2000; Rasnitsyn and Martinez-Delclòs 2000). The oldest Pompilidae is *Bryopompilus interfector* (tribe Bryopompilini) from the Lower Cretaceous (Albian) amber of Myanmar (Burma) (Engel and Grimaldi 2006).

These phylogenetically unrelated groups of insects, the most common producers of trace fossils in paleosol since the Cretaceous, share a similar behavioral trait. Representatives of these taxa line or construct different parts of their nests, cocoons, or pupation chambers, which are not mere excavations, increasing significantly the potential of preservation (Genise and Bown 1994a). Analogously, insects reinvented several millions of years later, two behavioral acquisitions of Jurassic crayfishes: linings for reinforcing walls and chambers for rearing larvae (Genise et al. 2008a). The need of Jurassic and Cretaceous crayfishes to maintain water for breathing inside their burrows probably favored the acquisition of pelletal linings to increase isolation from soil and retain water within the burrows (Bedatou et al. 2008a). Similar behavioral acquisitions, such as pelletal and fluidized linings, and other features exclusive of insects, such as free-standing walls and organic linings, occur for the first time in Late Cretaceous paleosol trace fossils, such as cocoons, pupation chambers, and nests, which can be attributable to insects. These behavioral traits are recorded for the first time in a few deposits worldwide (Table 13.1; Figs. 13.2 and 13.3).

The advent of flowering plants by the Early Cretaceous was probably one of the greatest innovations, together with the radiation of Triassic seed plant lineages, for Mesozoic continental environments. Examples of paleosols related to primitive angiosperms are known from North and South America. Paleosols of Barremian age are related to the earliest angiosperms in the eastern USA and correspond to Entisols, pink clayey Inceptisols, and coaly Histosols covered by conifers (Retallack and Dilcher 1986; Retallack 2001a). In southern Patagonia

Fig. 13.3 (continued) because they constitute about half of the Paleozoic cases. The *dotted line* indicates that it is recorded up to the Holocene, but these post-Paleozoic cases are not treated herein. The first case of a paleosol bearing only rhizoliths, the rhizolith revolution, took place during the Early Devonian. The Rhizolith Ichnofacies is later extensively recorded along the Phanerozoic. The *Camborygma* revolution, during the Early Triassic, indicates the advent of assemblages dominated or including earthworm and crayfish trace fossils (*Camborygma* Ichnofacies). The last record of this ichnofacies is from the Eocene, but *dotted line* indicates that extant equivalent examples exist. The *Celliforma* revolution, during the Late Cretaceous, is indicated by a rise in the ichnodiversity, which includes records of the first recognizable insect trace fossils in paleosols and the oldest records of the *Celliforma* Ichnofacies. The *Coprinisphaera* revolution, by the early Eocene, is envinced by another rise in the ichnodiversity triggered by the EECO, the appearance and spreading of grass-dominated habitats, and of the oldest cases of the *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies. The *Termitichnus* Ichnofacies appeared by the Oligocene in closed forest paleoenvironments. The *Celliforma* and *Termitichnus* ichnofacies could have been originated by the Early Cretaceous due the diversification of its producers by that time. Accordingly, its possible origin is prolonged by a *dotted line*, although there is no record of trace fossils attributable to soil termites, bees, or wasps

(Argentina), the first Barremian–Aptian angiosperms occupied wetlands that were affected by recurrent volcanic ashfalls. They grew on andic and kaolinitic Entisols that supported diverse conifers (Cheirolepidaceae, Podocarpaceae and subordinate Araucareaceae, Cupressaceae), along with Bennettitales, Cycadales, some Ginkgoales, ferns, lycopods, and bryophytes (Cladera et al. 2002; Del Fueyo et al. 2007). Similar, poorly-drained, Aptian environments of the central USA were also occupied by angiosperms, growing on Entisols and Histosols of lowlands and coastal-marine settings (Retallack and Dilcher 1981). Apparently, Early and mid Cretaceous angiosperms were early-successional colonizers (Retallack and Dilcher 1986). Detailed sedimentologic and ichnologic information from Upper Jurassic–Lower Cretaceous continental successions of southern Patagonia (Argentina) indicates that terrestrial environments, paleosols and associated trace fossils show no changes with the appearance of angiosperms. Lithofacies association and paleosol types of the pre-angiosperm Late Jurassic Bajo Grande Formation are similar to those of the post-angiosperm Aptian Bajo Tigre Formation (Cladera et al. 2002; Bedatou et al. 2009).

According to Retallack (1986, 1991b) the significant modification on the weathering pattern produced by the expansion of angiosperms since the Cretaceous (Knoll and James 1987) had no consequences on soils since Jurassic paleosols are similar to those of the early Paleogene. However, the diversification of termites, related to the radiation of angiosperms, may have caused a change in Oxisols (Schaefer 2001) through the incorporation of oval pellets rich in gibbsite, Fe-oxides, and charcoal, along with elongate burrows filled with these microaggregates (Eschenbrenner 1986; Schaefer 2001). Thus, it is probable that proliferation of termites introduced a modification of soils in tropical ecosystems. Nevertheless, most of middle and Late Cretaceous examples of new insect trace fossils suggest no comparable changes in paleosols in temperate regions. In any case, the appearance of flowering plants had little effect on soil types, which remained mostly the same since the Carboniferous.

The record of the third revolution, mostly Late Cretaceous in timing (Table 13.1; Figs. 13.2 and 13.3), includes *Fictovichnus gobiensis* from the Djadokhta Formation of Mongolia (Johnston et al. 1996); *Cellicalichnus dakotensis* from the Dakota Formation of the USA (Elliot and Nations 1998); *Pallichnus dakotensis* and *Fictovichnus sciuttoi* from the Bajo Barreal Formation of Argentina (Genise et al. 2007); *Cellicalichnus chubutensis* and *Rebuffoichnus casamiquelai* from the Laguna Palacios Formation of Argentina (Genise et al. 2002a), and *Fictovichnus sciuttoi* from the Allen Formation of Argentina (Genise and Sarzetti 2011). Particularly interesting are the first records of assemblages of the *Celliforma* Ichnofacies in the Mercedes Formation of Uruguay (Alonso-Zarza et al. 2011) and the Two Medicine Formation of the USA (Martin and Varricchio 2011). The former assemblage is composed of *Celliforma spirifer*, *C. germanica*, *Fictovichnus gobiensis*, and rhizoliths, whereas the latter is composed of *Fictovichnus sciuttoi*, *Rebuffoichnus* isp, and *Skolithos* isp. It is possible that other cases mentioned previously also may represent examples of the *Celliforma* Ichnofacies, such as that of the Allen Formation (Genise and Sarzetti 2011). However the lack of recorded assemblages composed of different ichnotaxa or carbonate-rich paleosols preclude their inclusion until more evidence is recovered to understand the complete paleoenvironmental significance of this ichnofacies. Even when some of these ichnogenera, such as *Fictovichnus*, *Pallichnus,* or *Rebuffoichnus,* are also representatives of the *Coprinisphaera* or *Celliforma* Ichnofacies (Genise et al. 2000, 2010b), when they do occur in associations dominated by earthworm or crayfish traces (i.e., Laguna Palacios Formation), they can be considered more likely as secondary participants of the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies, rather than indicators of Cretaceous examples of the *Coprinisphaera* or *Celliforma* Ichnofacies. The same is true for North American formations, like Claron and Willwood, in which insect trace fossils like *Parowanichnus*, *Eatonichnus*, *Celliforma*, *Naktodemasis*, and wasp cocoons are associated with crayfish and earthworm traces (Bown and Kraus 1983, 1987; Bown et al. 1997; Hasiotis and Bown 1996). The *Celliforma* ichnofacies is indicative of calcretes developed under arid or semiarid conditions and palustrine carbonates (Fig. 13.4c, d).

The presence of the *Termitichnus* Ichnofacies during the Cretaceous is a possibility considering that termites were already diversified by this period. However, there are no cases recorded of associations of termite nests for the Mesozoic, with the exception of those structures described by Bordy et al. (2004) from the Jurassic of the Karoo Basin, which probably deserve a different interpretation (Genise et al. 2005; Alonso-Zarza et al. 2008). Two cases of trace fossils attributed to social insects, including termites, require a brief analysis. Genise et al. (2010a) described rhizolith balls from the Lower Cretaceous Cerro Barcino Formation of Argentina, and discussed their affinities, such as self-induced and localized overgrowth of secondary and tertiary rootlets, crayfish feeding chambers, and termite or ant chambers for agricultural purposes. Tentatively, they were assigned to ant fungus gardens, the oldest evidence of insect agriculture, which would represent an important element of the Cretaceous revolution. The other case, *Socialites tumulus*, described by Roberts and Tapanila (2006) from the Upper Cretaceous Kaiparowits Formation of the USA, was interpreted as an ant or termite nest. However, the morphology may also resemble bioturbated stump casts or megarhizoliths. In any case, both records do not qualify as Cretaceous examples of the *Termitichnus* Ichnofacies.

In sum, bee cells and nests, putative ant and termite nests, coleopteran pupation chambers, and wasp cocoons are the Late Cretaceous pioneer trace fossils that signal another great change that would undergo paleosol ichnofaunas during the Eocene, the fourth revolution (Tables 13.1 and 13.2; Figs 13.2 and 13.3). The increase of ichnodiversity; the appearance of the first recognizable, constructed or lined, insect trace fossils in paleosols included as secondary components of the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies; and the first record of the *Celliforma* Ichnofacies, also are keystones of the third revolution in paleosol ichnofaunas. The possibility of the oldest physical evidence of sociality and insect agriculture is equally significant from an evolutionary viewpoint. According to the body-fossil record, Early–mid Cretaceous records of the *Celliforma* Ichnofacies could be expectable. The lack of them could be an artifact or it could correspond to the absence of some behaviors related to wall construction in the earliest representatives of the involved groups.

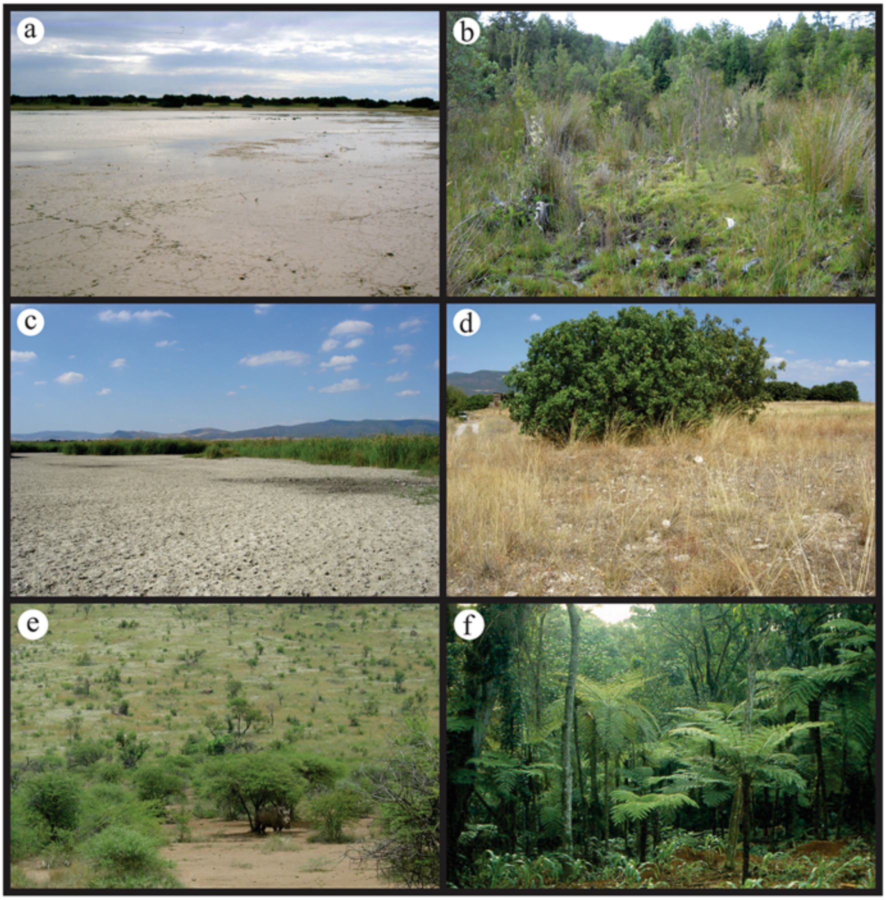


Fig. 13.4 Modern analogous environments of the six paleosol ichnofacies. (**a**) *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies. Drying ephemeral lake deprived of vegetation in Bajo de los Huesos, Chubut, Argentina. Note several vertebrate trackways in the foreground, and some dessiccation cracks in the lower right corner; (**b**) *Camborygma* Ichnofacies. Wetland in a glade of an evergreen forest at Rucapihuel, Chile. Note the soil flooded by the rise of water table in the *center* of the figure. (**c**) and (**d**) *Celliforma* ichnofacies at Las Tablas de Daimiel, Spain. Bare soil in a palustrine environment rich in carbonate (**c**), and carbonate rich soil supporting sparse vegetation. The calcrete was broken and exposed to the surface by plowing. (**e**) *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies. Savanna dominated by grasses at the Pilanesberg National Park, South Africa. Bare soil produced by trampling of the rhino (at the *center*) and other large mammals is optimal for bee nesting. Large size herbivores like this provide dung for coleopteran brood balls. (**f**) *Termitichnus* Ichnofacies. Closed forest of warm and humid climate in Misiones, Argentina. Tall trees, with interlocking crowns and understory of tree ferns

13.5 The *Coprinisphaera* Revolution: The Paleogene Explosion of Insect Trace Fossils Related To Grass-Dominated Habitats

The end Cretaceous mass extinction event seems to have had little effect on paleosol ichnofaunas (Fig. 13.3), although the Paleocene record is comparatively scarce for an accurate evaluation. One of the most significant floristic changes related to this biotic crisis was the extinction of several species of evergreen angiosperms and the subsequent predominance of conifers and deciduous angiosperms in the early Paleogene vegetation (Retallack 2001a).

In South America, particularly in Central Patagonia, the Late Cretaceous successions end with a clear dominance of earthworm and crayfish trace fossils, as in most Mesozoic units, and with the appearance of a few insect trace fossils (Genise et al. 2002a, 2004; Bedatou et al. 2008a). For the same region, the Paleocene–Eocene Rio Chico Group shows scarce trace fossils, including the appearance of the first trace fossil attributable to cicadas, *Feoichnus challa*, in the Koluel Kaike Formation of Patagonia (Krause et al. 2008, 2010). The earliest body fossils of true cicadas (Cicadoidea) are from the Triassic of Russia, France, and Australia (Shcherbakov 2008). These specimens are included in the family Tettigarctidae (hairy cicadas). However, the distinct fossorial forelegs of Cicadoidea nymphs apparently were present only by the mid Cretaceous, in amber from New Jersey (Grimaldi and Engel 2005). In South America, body fossils of hairy cicadas also are known from the Lower Cretaceous of Brazil (Lefebvre et al. 1998; Shcherbakov 2008). The earliest record of the family Cicadidae is from the Paleocene (ca. 60 Ma) of North America (Cooper 1941). Another ichnogenus, *Eatonichnus*, attributable to dung beetles (Bown et al. 1997; Krause et al. 2007; Sánchez et al. 2010a), is recorded for the first time from the Peñas Coloradas Formation in Patagonia (Genise et al. 2001a) and the Claron and Colter formations in the USA (Bown et al. 1997). Few recognizable earthworm burrows and doubtful crayfish trace fossils are recorded from the Rio Chico Group (Krause et al. 2007; unpub. data).

In contrast, in North America, crayfish burrows (*Camborygma*) are still abundant in Upper Paleocene–Lower Eocene units of Wyoming (Hasiotis and Honey 1995, 2000; Smith et al. 2008b) and Utah (Hasiotis and Bown 1996). The most diverse Paleocene assemblage is from the Willwood Formation (Bown and Kraus 1983, 1987; Hasiotis et al. 1993a; Smith et al. 2008a, b, c, 2009) and from the Paleocene–Eocene Claron Formation (Hasiotis and Bown 1996; Bown et al. 1997), both of which are Cenozoic cases of the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies. The evidence that supports this assumption is: (1) the abundance of *Camborygma* and *Edaphichnium* in the former deposits, (2) the abundance of *Camborygma* in the latter deposits, and (3) the paleosols exhibiting fluctuating water tables. In those assemblages, recognizable insect trace fossils are associated with crayfish and earthworm ones, as in the Upper Cretaceous deposits of Patagonia. The Paleocene–Eocene Thermal Maximum (PETM) produced the reduction in size and an increase in diversity of trace fossils in the Willwood Formation of USA (Smith et al. 2009).

In both Patagonia and the Western Interior of the USA, crayfish trace fossils are mostly absent in younger deposits. In South America, soil crayfishes are at present restricted to humid environments of Chile and Brazil (Bedatou et al. 2008a). Earthworm trace fossils, although less recorded, are similarly present in Cenozoic trace-fossil assemblages from younger units. Earthworms and crayfishes inhabit modern South and North American soils, indicating that at a global scale the end Cretaceous mass extinction had little direct effect on these organisms (Figs.13.1 and 13.3), even though regionally they displayed changes in their geographic distribution (Bedatou et al. 2008a). In sum, the end Cretaceous mass extinction (see Chap. 14), a major event in the history of life, was less important for paleosol ichnofaunas than previous events, as the rising and diversification of angiosperms during the Early Cretaceous, and later events, such as the origin and diversification of grass-dominated habitats during the Middle-Late Eocene cooling trend after the EECO. The fossorial habit of invertebrate soil organisms could have favored its survival in critical episodes, such as proposed for fossorial vertebrates (Archibald and Bryant 1990; Sheehan and Fastovsky 1992; MacLeod et al. 1997; Robertson et al. 2004; Longrich et al. 2012).

The last major step in the evolution of plant communities and soils took place during the middle Paleogene–early Neogene with the expansion of new, fast-growing monocot plants: the grasses. Grass-dominated habitats (Fig. 13.4e) are high-productivity ecosystems associated with dry or nonhumid habitats (subhumid to semiarid) of different continents, currently occupying 40 % of global land surface (Anderson 2006). However, grasses can also grow in less favorable conditions and environments, such as highly seasonal and tropical, cool temperate, high-mountain prairies, salt marshes, and are successional after periodic fires. Grass-dominated habitat expansion promoted significant changes in biota, favoring development of large vertebrates (grazers) on ground and diverse soil invertebrates, despite of the development as a defensive strategy of chemically harmful effects on mammals, insects, mites, and fungi (Retallack 2001a). As a consequence of changes in their rooting system and soil biota, grassland soils acquired particular characteristics in their soil aggregates, such as coarse granular or near-mollic to very fine-granular or crumb ped structure. Other diagnostic character of these new soils is a dark surface horizon rich in nutrients (mollic epipedon), displaying evidence of intense activity of burrowing invertebrates, such as fecal pellets of earthworms (Retallack 2001a). These features defined a new type of soil: the Mollisol. The appearance of a granular surface horizon in Oligocene-Miocene paleosols of the USA was considered a proxy for grasslands, which replaced and displaced wooded shrublands and dry woodlands (Retallack 1990). Fossil Mollisols present abundant, short and fine root traces. Desert grasslands, bunch grasslands, and rangelands developed in the latest Eocene–early Oligocene in NW and central USA (Retallack 2001a, 2009). The first short (sod) grassland Mollisols with fine crumb peds and dense and fine rhizoliths appeared by the early Miocene (19 Ma) in the USA and Kenya. Both examples occurred in dry climates based on the presence of shallow, calcic horizons (Retallack 2004; Retallack et al. 1995).

Twenty millions years before, a set of particular factors converged in Central Patagonia (Argentina) to trigger the formation of more ancient grass-dominated habitats. Main factors were probably a wetter climate and soils formed in fresh volcanic ashes. In addition, the effect of herbivorous mammals and associated dung beetles would also have contributed to the spread of these habitats. Paleosols of the Sarmiento Formation formed in pyroclastic mudstones composed of dacitic–rhyolitic glass shards (61–99 %) and andesine plagioclase (Bellosi 2010). The distinctive properties of this acid, low bulk-density volcaniclastic material benefited plant growth and rooting by providing high fertility, rapid weathering, a high moisture-holding capacity, and elevated macroporosity resulting in an appropriate medium for the extension of root hairs in a well-aerated medium (Nanzyo 2002). The appearance of the oldest grass-dominated habitats and grasslands is matter of debate and controversial evidence (Genise 2016). The first documented grass-dominated habitats for South America are middle Eocene (39 Ma) and occur at Gran Barranca in the middle Eocene-lower Miocene Sarmiento Formation of Patagonia. This proposal is supported by paleosols and loessic deposits (Bellosi and González 2010), phytoliths (Zucol et al. 2010; Sánchez et al. 2010c) and density and diversity of dung beetle brood balls (Sánchez et al. 2010b). The only thorough and comparative phytolith analysis of *Coprinisphaera* and bearing paleosols (Sánchez et al. 2010c) showed that grasses were the second dominant group after palms, as expectable for grassy savannahs with palms or palm groves (Cabrera 1971). The oldest dung beetles attributable to ball-making species are Eocene (Krell 2007). Morphology and behavior of dung beetles reflect a strong adaptation to exploit mammal excrement in open-grass habitats (Halffter and Edmonds 1982; Hanski and Cambefort 1991). African savannahs show the greatest diversity of dung beetles, whereas South American forests show a large diversity because of the Quaternary extinction of large mammals (Halffter 1991). Trace fossils of the Sarmiento Formation are clear examples of the *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies, indicating open-herbaceous communities (Genise et al. 2000). High density (40–100 balls/m^2), abundance and diversity in sizes and ichnospecies of *Coprinisphaera*, indicating a large number and diversity of dung beetles (Sánchez et al. 2010b), reflect the middle Eocene appearance of open-grass habitats (Bellosi et al. 2010), coincident with the increase of diversity and size of mammals (Woodburne et al. 2014). Probably the appearance of grass-dominated habitats was diachonous in different continents through the middle Paleogene–early Neogene. Those of Gran Barranca were probably similar to the present Chaco landscapes of northern Argentina (Cabrera 1971), represented by a mosaic vegetation composed of grassy savannahs with palms and palm groves, and forest in patches and riverbanks. Such a paleolandscape is concordant with all sedimentologic, pedologic, paleontologic, and ichnologic evidence for Gran Barranca.

A possible still older evidence for a wooded grass-dominated habitat, developed at lower latitudes, is represented in the renowned lower Eocene Asencio Formation of Uruguay. The precise age of this unit is unknown because of the lack of datable organisms or rocks. However, the lateritic character of the soils triggered by the Early Eocene Climatic Optimum, the presence of abundant large *Coprinisphaera* that can be only related with large mammals, and the age of the underlying and overlying formations, indicate that this formation is early Eocene in age (Genise et al. 2004; Bellosi et al. 2004, 2016). The Asencio Formation represents not only the oldest example of the *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies, but also one of its best examples because of the diversity of the ichnoassemblage. The presence of a grass-dominated habitat is indicated by the extraordinary development of the *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies and the record of Ultisols (González 1999), developed under a warm and seasonal-humid climate. When analyzed with more resolution, the Asencio Formation comprises two alternating ichnoassemblages which correspond to the different ichnofabrics recognized either in the duricrusts or in nodular beds Bellosi et al. (2016). The duricrusts, representing drier periods and shallower layers of the soil, bear ichnoassemblages dominated by *Palmiraichnus*, *Teisseirei*, and secondarily *Rebuffoichnus*. In turn, the nodular beds, representing wetter periods and deeper layers of the soil, bear more diverse ichnoassemblages including all ichnotaxa recorded for the formation. Previous and current research shows that the Asencio ichnofauna is composed of traces of cicadas (*Monesichnus*), dung beetles (*Coprinisphaera*), bees (*Palmiraichnus*, *Elipsoideichnus*, *Uruguay*, *Corimbatichnus*, *Celliforma*), sphinx moths (*Teisseirei*), termites (*Krausichnus*), beetles (*Rebuffoichnus*), crayfish (*Loloichnus*), and cleptoparasites and detritivores (*Tombownichnus*, *Lazaichnus*) (Genise and Bown 1996; Genise and Hazeldine 1998a, b; Genise and Laza 1998; Genise 2000; Genise et al. 2002b, 2013c; Genise and Verde 2000; Mikúlaš and Genise 2003; Sánchez and Genise 2009; Verde and Genise 2010). The extraordinary diversity of this trace-fossil assemblage reveals in turn a higher diversity of insects inhabiting lateritic soils that may be the direct consequence of the high temperatures and precipitation related to the EECO in this grass-dominated habitat. This and the contemporaneous assemblage from the Gran Salitral Formation of La Pampa (Melchor et al. 2002) record the first appearance of *Teisseirei barattinia*, the only paleosol trace fossil attributed to sphinx moths Genise et al (2013c). The oldest records of Sphingidae recognized by Sohn et al. (2012) are an adult from the middle Eocene Baltic Amber (Kusnezov 1941), and a caterpillar from the early Miocene of Baden-Wüttemberg, Esslinger, Germany (Zeuner 1927). Other early body fossil Sphingidae is *Mioclanis shanwangiana* from the middle Miocene (~15–17 My) of Shanwang, Shandong, China (Zhang et al. 1994). Other species named *Sphinx snelleni* was described by Weyenbergh (1869) as a sphingid from the Upper Jurassic Solenhofen Limestone deposits in Bavaria, Germany. However, it has later proved to be a wood wasp of the hymenopteran family Siricidae (Kitching and Sadler 2011). Skalski (1990) recorded also a Sphingidae from the Baltic amber, but Ross (1996) considered this claim to be unsubstantiated.

Other outstanding assemblages belonging to the *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies are those from different stratigraphic levels of the middle Eocene–lower Miocene Sarmiento Formation of Argentina (Genise 2016; Genise et al. 2004; Bellosi et al. 2010; Sánchez et al. 2010b). Previous and current research demonstrates that the Sarmiento ichnofauna is composed of trace fossils of cicadas (*Feoichnus*), dung beetles (*Coprinisphaera*, *Chubutolithes*, *Eatonichnus*, *Pallichnus*), sphinx moths (*Teisseirei*), bees (*Celliforma*), earthworms (*Lazaichnus*, *Castrichnus*, diffuse boxworks), and cleptoparasites (*Tombownichnus*) (Krause and Genise 2004; Krause et al. 2008; Bellosi et al. 2010; Sánchez and Genise 2009; Sánchez et al. 2010b). In this case, several paleolatitudinal degrees southwards and about 10 million years later, the extraordinary diversity of dung beetle trace fossils (Sánchez et al. 2010b) cannot be attributed directly to the EECO, but to the establishment of extended grass-dominated habitats, bearing abundant large mammals, which provided the dung for beetle brood masses. The high-resolution ichnostratigraphy of *Coprinisphaera* at the locality of Gran Barranca records important paleoenvironmental changes in those former grass-dominated habitats, including an increase in mammal size by the late Oligocene (Sánchez et al. 2010b).

The major evolutionary event during the Eocene, which represents the appearance and establishment of grass-dominated habitats, produced the appearance of larger mammals and abundant dung, which in turn promoted the evolution of coprophagy in dung beetles. Ichnology can reconstruct partially this history (Genise 2016). The first ichnologic evidence of dung-beetle coprophagy is probably recorded by trace fossils found in dinosaur coprolites from the Upper Cretaceous Two Medicine Formation of Montana (Chin and Gill 1996) (but see Arillo and Ortuño 2008). Theoretically, in the early stages of coprophage evolution, dung beetles produced meniscate burrows inside the dung pads and underneath in the soil substrate. In more derived behavioral stages, dung beetles construct, and bury in the soil, brood balls for rearing their larvae, which are preserved as trace fossils and recognized as specimens of *Coprinisphaera*. Which is the oldest record of *Coprinisphaera* and accordingly of brood ball construction? Halffter and Edmonds (1982) and Krell (2006) hypothesized about ball-making dung beetles utilizing the abundant dung of dinosaurs, whereas Arillo and Ortuño (2008) disregarded dinosaurs as dung providers. Arillo and Ortuño (2008) based their conclusions first, on the mixture of reptilian feces with excretory products; and second, on the poor attraction of extant dung beetles to those feces. With the only exception of a single putative specimen of *Coprinisphaera* found in the Cretaceous of Brazil (Souza Carvalho et al. 2009), there are no reliable records older than Eocene. Which is the ichnologic record of the evolution of coprophagy between the Cretaceous burrows of the Two Medicine Formation and the Eocene brood balls of South America? Sánchez et al. (2010a) described a pupation chamber of extant dung beetles, which matches the morphology of *Eatonichnus* (and partially *Chubutolithes*), trace fossils that are found in Paleocene–early Eocene deposits of Argentina and the USA (Bown et al. 1997; Genise et al. 2001a; Krause and Genise 2004; Krause et al. 2007), predating the appearance of *Coprinisphaera*. These Paleocene trace fossils probably reflect the life habit of Paleocene dung beetles that exhibit similar behaviors to extant species of Eucranini (Scarabaeinae), which provision their nests with fecal pellets of small mammals, as those recorded for the Paleocene. Mature larvae construct a helical pupation chamber composed of pellets similar to *Eatonichnus* (Sánchez et al. 2010a).

Can the body-fossil record of dung beetles corroborate this evolutionary history proposed by ichnology? Regrettably, the body-fossil record of American dung beetles is young. The oldest body fossils identified as Scarabaeinae are *Prionocephale deplanate* Lin (1980) from the Upper Cretaceous of China and *Cretonitis copripes*

Nikolajev (2007) from the Lower Cretaceous of Russia (Krell 2007). However, among those genera whose species are recognized ball makers, the oldest is *Gymnopleurus eocaenicus* Meunier (1921) (Gymnopleurini) from the Eocene of Germany (Krell 2007). The fossil record of other ball makers is still younger. The oldest Dichotomiini are *Heliocopris antiquus* Fujiyama (1968) from the Miocene of Noto, Japan, and *Anachalcos mfwangani* Paulian (1976) from the Miocene of Lake Victoria, Kenya. The oldest Phanaeini are *Phanaeus antiquus* Horn (1876) from the Pleistocene of the Port Kennedy caves, in the USA, and *Palaeocopris labreae* Pierce (1946) from the Pleistocene of Rancho La Brea, USA. Finally, the oldest Canthonini are *Copris leakeyorum* Paulian (1976) and *Metacatharsius rusingae* Paulian (1976) from the Miocene of Lake Victoria, Kenya.

By the Eocene, there are also diverse assemblages belonging to the *Celliforma* Ichnofacies from palustrine carbonates. The Gran Salitral Formation of Argentina (early Eocene) probably was influenced by the elevated temperatures of the EECO, but in drier conditions than those recorded for the Asencio Formation. The assemblage is represented by *Celliforma* ispp., *Teisseirei*, *Rosellichnus*, *Skolithos*, *Taenidium*, and *Fictovichnus* (Melchor et al. 2002). Another assemblage of possible late Eocene age occurs in the Queguay Formation of Uruguay, and is represented by *Celliforma spirifer*, *C. germanica*, *C. rosellii*, *Fictovichnus gobiensis*, *Fictovichnus sciuttoi*, and rhizoliths (Alonso-Zarza et al. 2011).

After the Eocene, few diverse ichnoassemblages in paleosols can be recognized. The youngest paleosol ichnofacies appeared by the Oligocene in the Jebel Qatrani Formation of Egypt. Paleosols of closed-forest paleoenvironments (Fig. 13.4f) preserved in this unit include the first assemblage dominated by termite and ant trace fossils (*Termitichnus*, *Fleaglellius*, *Vondrichnus*, *Krausichnus*) (Genise and Bown 1994b), composing the *Termitichnus* Ichnofacies (Tables 13.1 and 13.2; Figs. 13.2 and 13.3). This incipient ichnofacies has another potential example in some paleosols of the Chui Formation in Brazil (Netto et al. 2007). Even when diverse ichnoassemblages may be expected in closed-forest soils, the geologic record of these associations is very scarce. The lateritization process involves the destruction and incorporation of old termite nests to the soils (e.g., Eschenbrenner 1986; Schaefer 2001), probably reducing the probability of tropical termite nests to cross the taphonomic barrier.

Other diverse trace-fossil assemblages in paleosols are recorded in the lower Oligocene White River Formation of the USA (Hembree and Hasiotis 2007); the upper Oligocene–lower Miocene John Day Formation of the USA (Retallack 2004); the lower Miocene Pinturas Formation of Argentina (Genise and Bown 1994a; Bedatou 2010); Miocene gypsum and gray shales of Spain (Uchman and Alvaro 2000); the Miocene Pawnee Creek Formation of the USA (Hembree and Hasiotis 2008); the upper Miocene Collon Cura Formation of Argentina (Bedatou 2010); and the upper Miocene of the northern African Chad Basin (Duringer et al. 2007). The remaining Miocene, Pleistocene, and Holocene record is composed mostly of descriptions or citations of single or a few trace fossils of the above mentioned groups of insects from different formations, which can be included in the *Coprinisphaera* and *Celliforma* Ichnofacies. The peaks shown by Fig. 13.3 for the

Neogene, even when comparable with older ones, correspond to no particular evolutionary events, but rather to more extensive research mostly carried out in Pliocene and Pleistocene deposits of Argentina and Africa.

13.6 Conclusions

Our analysis of a database composed of 166 cases of invertebrate and plant trace fossils in paleosols resulted in the recognition of four major evolutionary steps from the first paleosols-bearing rhizoliths preserved in Early Devonian rocks to those of the Holocene. Each step constitutes a revolution for paleosol ichnofaunas, which triggered the appearance of a new ichnofacies. These events reflect some of the major changes in the history of life. Other historical events, such as the Cretaceous–Paleocene event, have no reflection in paleosol ichnofaunas or alternatively the data is too scarce for detection.

The first revolution is associated with the appearance and expansion of vascular plants, and took place in the Early Devonian with the first paleosols showing only ichnoassemblages composed of rhizoliths, which constitute half the cases of the Paleozoic and are recorded up to the Holocene. The appearance of vascular plants by the late Silurian resulted in the Early Devonian appearance of several types of paleosols (i.e., Histosols, Spodosols, Alfisols, and Ultisols) linked to the development of new ecosystems. These rhizolith assemblages compose an archetypal ichnofacies, the Rhizolith Ichnofacies, which would be indicative of subaerial exposure and the presence of different types of vegetation. Depending on needed and pending studies on rooting patterns, in the future this ichnofacies can yield more precise and significative paleoenvironmental data. Also, the absence of invertebrate trace fossils may be a clue to interpret better the paleoenvironment. Other Paleozoic ichnofaunas, composed of scarce invertebrate trace fossils, some of them meniscate, are considered herein as representative of the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies, reflecting the periodical subaerial exposure of the deposits.

These ichnoassemblages are the only recorded for the rest of the Paleozoic until the second revolution, after the end-Permian mass extinction occured, with the appearance of trace-fossil assemblages dominated by earthworm (*Edaphichnium*, *Castrichnus*, diffuse boxworks) and crayfish (*Camborygma*, *Loloichnus*, *Dagnichnus*, *Cellicalichnus*, *Katbergia*) trace fossils. These ichnoassemblages, indicative of paleosols with high fluctuating water tables and representative of local marshes, bogs, swamps, and wetlands, may be grouped into a new archetypal ichnofacies: the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies, which should be defined more completely in the future, when better-documented cases are available.

The third revolution occurred in the Late Cretaceous. By that time, the diversification of flowering plants triggered the diversification of certain soil-inhabiting insects, such as ants, termites, bees, wasps, and some beetles, which were capable of constructing linings and free-standing walls for their chambers and nests that consequently acquired a high preservation potential. By the Late Cretaceous, the first recognizable insect trace fossils in paleosols occurred, either as isolated examples, as part of the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies, or in a new one: the *Celliforma* Ichnofacies. The end Cretaceous mass extinction shows no global changes in paleosol ichnofaunas, although the Paleocene record is scarce for a thorough evaluation. In southern South America, the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies, which was dominant since the Late Jurassic, dissapeared. In North America the *Camborygma* Ichnofacies remains dominant in Paleocene–Early Eocene deposits, bearing recognizable insect trace fossils, resembling those assemblages of the South American Late Cretaceous.

The fourth and most important revolution for ichnodiversity took place in the middle Eocene, influenced by the advent and expansion of grass-dominated habitats. Other favorable conditions that promoted this ichnofacies were the early Eocene Climatic Optimum, and the establishment of modern insect groups. These conditions also lead to the appearance of a new soil type, the Mollisols, displaying granular or crumb peds. Trace fossils of cicadas (*Feoichnus*, *Monesichnus*, *Naktodemasis*), dung beetles (*Coprinisphaera*, *Eatonichnus*, *Chubutolithes*), bees (*Palmiraichnus*, *Elipsoideichnus*, *Uruguay*, *Corimbatichnus*, *Rosellichnus*), sphinx moths (*Teisseirei*), ants (*Attaichnus*), termites (*Krausichnus*), and cleptoparasites and detritivores (*Tombownichnus*, *Lazaichnus*) appeared or diversified during this revolution that led to the establishment of the *Coprinisphaera* Ichnofacies. By the Oligocene, in closed-forest environments, also appears the first assemblage dominated by termite and ant trace fossils (*Termitichnus*, *Fleaglellius*, *Vondrichnus*, *Krausichnus*), comprising the *Termitichnus* Ichnofacies. The *Coprinisphaera* revolution is followed during the Neogene by stasis that was interrupted by the occasional appearance of new trace fossils of the same, previously mentioned groups of insects. In contrast with older ichnofacies (*Scoyenia* and *Camborygma*), which are recorded in flooded or high water table paleosols, the younger ichnofacies (*Celliforma*, *Coprinisphaera*, and *Termitichnus*) reflect paleosols with lower water tables. It is as if the terrestrial ichnofaunas would have shift to drier environments, favored by morphological and behavioral adaptations of their producers.

The ichnofacies model for paleosols is an ongoing approach that still has weak points, all of which arise in the present incompleteness of the trace-fossil record. For developing a stronger foundation, additional documentation will be required, and surely it will be a future task of ichnologists to complete and strengthen the models. There are about 166 case studies (25 for the Paleozoic, 39 for the Mesozoic, and 102 for the Cenozoic), many of which are understudied or involve few trace fossils that presently are insufficient to resolve the entire scenario. Despite this, the model is a very promising one, and currently allows us to recognize within the fog of incompleteness, the silhouettes of five paleosol ichnofacies, each one including a number of ichnoassemblages that show sharply or broadly defined paleoenvironmental significance. After the novel approach presented in this chapter, the paleosol ichnofacies model also provides an evolutionary scenario to track the major changes in the history of terrestrial life.

Acknowledgements We thank Conrad Labandeira and Nicholas Minter for improving the original manuscript, and Gabriela Mángano and Luis Buatois for fruitful comments and also for inviting us to contribute to this book. The present research was supported by grant PICT 07/1972 and 2012/022 of the FONCYT of Argentina to J.F.G.

References

Adams JS, Kraus MJ, Wing SL (2011) Evaluating the use of weathering indices for determining mean annual precipitation in the ancient stratigraphic record. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 309:358–366

Aguirre-Urreta MB (1992) Tertiary freshwater decapod (Crustacea: Parastacidae) from the Ñirihuau Basin, Patagonia, Argentina. J Palontol 66:817–825

Alonso RN, González CE, Pelayes HA (1982) Hallazgo de roedores y nidos de escarabeidos en el Terciario Superior de la Sierra de Vaqueros, Salta, República Argentina. Rev Inst Cienc Geol 5:1–3

Alonso-Zarza AM, Silva PG (2002) Quaternary laminar calcretes with bee nests: evidences of small-scale climatic fluctuations, Eastern Canary Islands, Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 178:119–135

Alonso-Zarza AM, Genise JF, Cabrera MC, Mangas J, Martín-Pérez A, Valdeolmillos A, Dorado-Valiño M (2008) Megarhizoliths in Pleistocene aeolian deposits from Gran Canaria (Spain): ichnological and palaeoenvironmental significance. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 265:39–51

Alonso-Zarza AM, Genise JF, Verde M (2011) Sedimentology, diagenesis and ichnology of Cretaceous and Palaeogene calcretes and palustrine carbonates from Uruguay. Sediment Geol 236:45–61

Alonso-Zarza AM, Meléndez A, Martín-García R, Herrero MJ, Martín-Pérez A (2012) Discriminating between tectonism and climate signatures in palustrine deposits: lessons from the Miocene of the Teruel Graben, NE Spain. Earth-Sci Rev 113:141–160

Anderson RC (2006) Evolution and origin of the Central Grassland of North America: climate, fire, and mammalian grazers. J Torrey Bot Soc 133:626–647

Andreis R (1972) Paleosuelos de la Formación Musters (Eoceno Medio), Laguna del Mate, Prov. de Chubut, Rep. Argentina. Rev Asoc Arg Min Petr Sed 3:91–97

Arche A, López-Gómez J (2005) Sudden changes in fluvial style across the Permian-Triassic boundary in the eastern Iberian Ranges, Spain: Analysis of possible causes. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 222:104–126

Archibald JD, Bryant LJ (1990) Differential Cretaceous/Tertiary extinctions of nonmarine vertebrates; evidence from northeastern Montana. Geol Soc Am Spec Pap 247:549–562

Archibold O (1995) Ecology of world vegetation. Chapman and Hall, London, 510 p

Arillo A, Ortuño VM (2008) Did dinosaurs have any relation with dung beetles? (The origin of coprophagy). J Nat Hist 42:1405–1408

Armenteros I, Daley B (1998) Pedogenic modification and structure evolution in palustrine facies as exemplified by the Bembridge Limestone (Late Eocene) of the Isle of Wight, southern England. Sediment Geol 119:275–295

Ashley GM, Driese SG (2000) Paleopedology and paleohydrology of a volcaniclastic paleosol interval: implications for Early Pleistocene stratigraphy and paleoclimate record, Olduvai Gorge, Tanzania. J Sed Res 70:1065–1080

Babcock LE, Miller MF, Isbell JL, Collinson JW, Hasiotis ST (1998) Paleozoic-Mesozoic crayfish from Antarctica: earliest evidence of freshwater decapod crustaceans. Geology 26:539–542

Bedatou E (2010) Icnofábricas continentales complejas de Patagonia Central: significado y potenciales aplicaciones. Tesis doctoral, Univ Nac San Luis. 255 pp

Bedatou E, Melchor RN, Bellosi E, Genise JF (2005) Icnofábricas continentales complejas de Patagonia Central. Ameghiniana 42:14R

Bedatou E, Melchor RN, Bellosi E, Genise JF (2006) Trázas fósiles de decápodos continentales en el Jurásico y Cretácico de Santa Cruz, Argentina. In: Veiga G, Limarino CO, Rossetti DF (eds) Resúmenes de la XI Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología y IV Congreso Latinoamericano de Sedimentología, Bariloche. p 54

Bedatou E, Melchor RN, Bellosi E, Genise JF (2007) Evolución de la icnofauna terrestre de la Patagonia central I. El Cretácico, el reinado de los crustáceos. In: Resúmenes de la V Reunión Argentina de Icnología y III Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Ushuaia. p 37

Bedatou E, Melchor RN, Bellosi E, Genise JF (2008a) Crayfish burrows from Late Jurassic-Late Cretaceous continental deposits of Patagonia: Argentina. Their palaeoecological, palaeoclimatic and palaeobiogeographical significance. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 257:169–184

Bedatou E, Melchor RN, Bellosi E, Genise JF (2008b) Icnofábricas complejas dominadas por trazas de crustáceos terrestres (crayfishes) y lombrices en paleosuelos de Patagonia, Argentina. In: Resúmenes de la XII Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología, Buenos Aires. p 40

Bedatou E, Melchor RN, Genise JF (2009) Complex palaeosol ichnofabrics from Late Jurassic-Early Cretaceous volcaniclastic successions of Central Patagonia, Argentina. Sediment Geol 218:74–102

Bellosi ES (2010) Loessic and fluvial sedimentation in Sarmiento Formation pyroclastics, middle Cenozoic of Central Patagonia. In: Madden R, Carlini A, Vucetich M, Kay R (eds) The paleontology of Gran Barranca: evolution and environmental change through the Middle Cenozoic of Patagonia. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 278–292

Bellosi ES, Genise JF (2004) Insect trace fossils from paleosols of the Sarmiento Formation (Middle Eocene - Lower Miocene) at Gran Barranca (Chubut Province). In: Bellosi ES, Melchor RN (eds) Ichnia 2004, Fieldtrip Guidebook. Museo Paleontológico Egidio Feruglio, Trelew. pp 15–29

Bellosi ES, González M (2010) Paleosols of the Middle Cenozoic Sarmiento formation, Central Patagonia. In: Madden R, Carlini A, Vucetich M, Kay R (eds) The paleontology of Gran Barranca: evolution and environmental change through the Middle Cenozoic of Patagonia. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 293–305

Bellosi ES, Sciutto JC (2002) Laguna Palacios formation (San Jorge basin, Argentina): an upper cretaceous loess-paleosol sequence from Central Patagonia. Actas de la IX Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología, Córdoba, p 15

Bellosi ES, Laza J, González M (2001) Icnofaunas en paleosuelos de la Formación Sarmiento (Eoceno-Mioceno), Patagonia Central. Resúmenes de la IV Reunión Argentina de Icnología y II Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Tucumán, p 31

Bellosi ES, Miquel SE, Kay R, Madden R (2002a) Un paleosuelo mustersense con microgastrópodos terrestres (Charopidae) de la Formación Sarmiento, Eoceno de Patagonia central: significado paleoclimático. Ameghiniana 39:465–477

Bellosi ES, González M, Genise JF (2002b) Paleosuelos y sedimentación Cretácica de la Cuenca San Jorge (Grupo Chubut) en la Sierra de San Bernardo, Patagonia Central. Actas del XV Congreso Geológico Argentino, El Calafate. CD-ROM

Bellosi ES, Genise JF, González M (2004) Origen y desmantelamiento de lateritas paleógenas del sudoeste del Uruguay (Formación Asencio). Rev Mus Argentino Cienc Nat 6:25–40

Bellosi ES, Laza JH, Sánchez MV, Genise JF (2010) Ichnofacial analysis of the Sarmiento Formation (Middle Eocene-Lower Miocene) at Gran Barranca, Central Patagonia. In: Madden R, Carlini A, Vucetich M, Kay R (eds) The paleontology of Gran Barranca: evolution and environmental change through the Middle Cenozoic of Patagonia. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 306–316

Bellosi ES, Genise JF, González M, Verde M (2016) Paleogene laterites bearing the highest insect ichnodiversity in paleosols. Geology 44:119–122

Béthoux O (2008) The earliest beetle identified. J Paleontol 83:931–937

Blinnikov M, Busacca A, Whitlock C (2002) Reconstruction of the late Pleistocene grassland of the Columbia basin, Washington, USA, based on phytolith records in loess. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 177:77–101

Blomeier D, Wisshak M, Joachimski M, Freiwald A, Volohonsky E (2003) Calcareous, alluvial and lacustrine deposits in the Old Red Sandstone of central north Spitsbergen (Wood Bay Formation, Early Devonian). Norweg J Geol 83:281–298

Bohacs KM, Hasiotis ST, Demko TD (2007) Continental ichnofossils of the Green River and Wasatch Formations, Eocene, Wyoming: a preliminary survey and proposed relation to lake-basin type. Mountain Geol 44:79–108

Bordy EM (2008) Enigmatic trace fossils from the aeolian Lower Jurassic Clarens Formation, Southern Africa. Palaeont Electr 11:16a–16p.

Bordy EM, Bumby AJ, Catuneanu O, Eriksson PG (2004) Advanced Early Jurassic termite (Insecta: Isoptera) nests: evidence from the Clarens Formation in the Tuli Basin, Southern Africa. Palaios 19:68–78

Bordy EM, Bumby AJ, Catuneanu O, Eriksson PG (2005) Reply. Palaios 20:308–312

Bordy EM, Bumby AJ, Catuneanu O, Eriksson PG (2009) Possible trace fossils of putative termite origin in the Lower Jurassic (Karoo Supergroup) of South Africa and Lesotho. S Afr J Sci 105:356–362

Boucot AJ, Dewey JF, Dineley DL, Fletcher R, Fyson WK, Griffin JG, Hickox CF, McKerrow WS, Ziegler AM (1974) Geology of the Arisaig area, Antigonish County, Nova Scotia. Geol Soc Am Spec Paper 139:1–191

Bown TM (1982) Ichnofossils and rhizoliths of the nearshore fluvial Jebel Qatrani Formation (Oligocene), Fayum Province, Egypt. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 40:255–309

Bown TM, Genise JF (1993) Fossil nests and gallery systems of termites (Isoptera) and ants (Formicidae) from the Early Miocene of Southern Ethiopia and the Late Miocene of Abu Dhabi Emirate, U.A.E. In: Geol Soc Am. Abstracts with Programs, Rocky Mountains Section 25, p 58

Bown TM, Kraus MJ (1983) Ichnofossils of the alluvial Willwood Formation (Lower Eocene), Bighorn Basin, Northwestern Wyoming, U.S.A. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 43:95–128

Bown TM, Kraus MJ (1987) Integration of channel and flood plain suites in aggrading fluvial systems. 1. Developmental sequence and lateral relations of lower Eocene alluvial palaeosols, Willwood Formation, Bighorn Basin, Wyoming. J Sed Petr 57:587–601

Bown TM, Laza JH (1990) A Miocene fossil termite nest from southern Argentina and its paleoclimatological implications. Ichnos 1:73–79

Bown TM, Ratcliffe BC (1988) The origin of *Chubutolithes* Ihering, ichnofossils from the Eocene and Oligocene of Chubut Province, Argentina. J Paleont 62:163–167

Bown TM, Larriestra CN, Powers DW (1988) Análisis paleoambiental de la Fm. Pinturas (Mioceno Inferior), Provincia de Santa Cruz. Actas de la II Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología, Buenos Aires. pp 31–35

Bown TM, Hasiotis ST, Genise JF, Maldonado F, Brouwers EM (1997) Trace fossils of Hymenoptera and other insects and paleoenvironments of the Claron Formation (Paleocene and Eocene), Southwestern Utah. U S Geol Surv Bull 2153:42–58

Brady SG, Larkin L, Danforth BN (2009) Bees, ants and stinging wasp (Aculeata). In: Hedges SB, Kumar S (eds) The timetree of life. Oxford University Press, New York, pp 264–269

Brenchley P, Harper D (1998) Palaeoecology, ecosystems, environments and evolution. Chapman & Hall, London, 402 pp

Bromley RG, Buatois LA, Genise JF, Labandeira CC, Mángano MG, Melchor RN, Schlirf M, Uchman A (2007) Comments on the paper "Reconnaissance of Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation ichnofossils, Rocky Mountain Region, USA: paleoenvironmental, stratigraphic, and paleoclimatic significance of terrestrial and freshwater ichnocoenoses" by Stephen T. Hasiotis. Sediment Geol 200:141–150

Brown RW (1934) *Celliforma spirifer* the fossil larval chambers of mining bees. J Wash Acad Sci 24:532–539

Brown RW (1935) Further notes on fossil larval chambers of mining bees. J Wash Acad Sci 25:526–528

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2007) Chapter 17—invertebrate ichnology of continental freshwater environments. In: William M III (ed) Trace fossils. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 285–323

Buatois LA, Mangano MG (2011) Ichnology: organism-substrate interations in space and time. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 358 pp

Buckup L (2003) Familia Parastacidae. In: Melo GAS (ed) Manual de identificação dos Crustacea Decapoda de água doce do Brasil. Loyola, São Paulo, pp 317–398

Cabrera A (1971) Fitogeografía de la República Argentina. Bol Soc Arg Bot 14:1–42

Calvet Rovira F, Pomar Gomá L, Esteban Cerdá M (1975) Las rizoconcreciones del Pleistoceno de Mallorca. Instituto de Investigaciones Geológicas, Universidad de Barcelona 30:35–60

Cantil LF, Sánchez MV, Bellosi ES, González MG, Sarzetti LC, Genise JF (2013) *Coprinisphaera akatanka* isp. nov.: the first fossil brood ball attributable to necrophagous dung beetles associated with an Early Pleistocene environmental stress in the Pampean region (Argentina). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 386:541–554

Cascales-Minana B, Muñoz-Beromeu J, Ros R, Segura J (2010) Trends and patterns in the evolution of vascular plants: macroevolutionary implications of a multilevel taxonomic analysis. Lethaia 43:545–557

Chin K, Gill BD (1996) Dinosaurs, dung beetles, and conifers: participants in a Cretaceous food web. Palaios 11:280–285

Cladera G, Andreis R, Archangelsky S, Cúneo R (2002) Estratigrafía del Grupo Baqueró, Patagonia (provincia de Santa Cruz, Argentina). Ameghiniana 39:3–20

Clapperton CM, Vera R (1986) The Quaternary glacial sequence in Ecuador: a reinterpretation of the work of Walter Sauer. J Quat Sci 1:45–56

Cleveland DM, Nordt LC, Atchley SC (2008) Paleosols, trace fossils, and precipitation estimates of the uppermost Triassic strata in northern New Mexico. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 257:421–444

Cohen AS (1982) Paleoenvironments of root casts from the Koobi Fora Formation, Kenya. J Sed Petr 52:401–414

Contreras VH (1996) Paleontología, paleoecología y cronoestratigrafía del Neógeno de Puchuzum, Provincia de San Juan, Argentina. Ameghiniana 33:462

Conway Morris S, Pickerill RK, Harland TL (1982) A possible annelid from the Trenton Limestone (Ordovician) of Quebec, with a review of fossil oligochaetes and other annulate worms. Can J Earth Sci 19:2150–2157

Cooper KW (1941) *Davispia bearcreekensis* Cooper a new cicada from the Paleocene, with a brief review of the fossil Cicacidae. Am J Sci 239:286–304

Cosarinsky MI, Bellosi ES, Genise JF (2005) Micromorphology of modern epigean termite nests and possible termite ichnofossils: a comparative analysis (Isoptera). Sociobiology 45:745–778

Cramer MD, Hawkins HJ (2009) A physiological mechanism for the formation of root casts. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 274:125–133

Crandall KA, Harris DJ, Fetzner JW (2000) The monophyletic origin of freshwater crayfish estimated from nuclear and mitochondrial DNA sequences. Proc R Soc Lond B 2000:1679–1686

Danforth BD, Poinar GO (2011) Morphology, classification and antiquity of *Melittosphex burmensis* (Apoidea: Melittosphecidae) and implications for early bee evolution. J Paleontol 85:882–891

Darling DC, Sharkey MJ (1990) Order Hymenoptera. Bull Am Mus Nat Hist 195:124–129

Darlington JP (2005) Distinctive fossilized termite nests at Laetoli, Tanzania. Insect Soc 52:408–409

Darlington JP (2011) Trace fossils interpreted in relation to the extant termite fauna at Laetoli, Tanzania. In: Harrison T (ed) Paleontology and geology of Laetoli: human evolution in context. Springer, New York, pp 555–565

Davies NS, Rygel MC, Gibling MR (2010) Marine influence in the Upper Ordovician Juniata Formation (Potters Mills, Pennsylvania): implications for the history of life on land. Palaios 25:527–539

Decelles PG, Carrapa B, Horton BK, Gehrels GE (2011) Cenozoic foreland basin system in the central Andes of northwestern Argentina: implications for Andean geodynamics and modes of deformation. Tectonics 30, TC6013

De Gibert JM, Sáez A (2009) Paleohydrological significance of trace fossil distribution in Oligocene fluvial-fan-to-lacustrine systems of the Ebro Basin, Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 272:162–175

Del Fueyo G, Seoane L, Archangelsky A, Guler V, Llorens M, Archangelsky S, Gamerro J, Musacchio E, Passalia M, Barreda V (2007) Biodiversidad de las paleofloras de Patagonia austral durante el Cretacico Inferior. Publ Esp Asoc Paleont Argent 11:101–122

Del Papa CE (2006) Estratigrafía y paleoambientes de la Formación Lumbrera, Grupo Salta, noroeste argentino. Rev Asoc Geol Argent 61:313–327

Demko TM, Currie BS, Nicoll KA (2004) Regional paleoclimatic and stratigraphic implications of paleosols and fluvial/overbank architecture in the Morrison Formation (Upper Jurassic), Western Interior, USA. Sed Geol 167:115–135

Dlussky GM (1996) Ants (Hymenoptera: Formicidae) from Burmese amber. Paleontol J 30:449–454

Domínguez-Alonso P, Coca-Abia MM (1998) Nidos de avispas minadoras en el Mioceno de Tegucigalpa (Honduras, América Central). Coloq Paleontol 49:93–114

Driese SG, Mora CI (2001) Evolution and diversification of Siluro-Devonian root traces: influence on paleosol morphology and estimates of paleoatmospheric CO2 levels. In: Gensel PG, Edwards D (eds) Early land plants and their environments. Columbia University Press, New York, pp 237–253

Driese SG, Mora CI, Elick JM (1997) Morphology and taphonomy of root and stump casts of the earliest trees (Middle to Late Devonian), Pennsylvania and New York, U.S.A. Palaios 12:524–537

Ducreux JL, Billaud Y, Truc G (1988) Traces fossiles d'insectes dans les paleosols rouges de l'Eocene superieur du nordest du Massif central Francais: *Celliforma arvernensis* ichnosp. nov. Bull Soc Geol Fr 8:167–173

Dunagan SP, Driese SG (1999) Control of terrestrial stabilization on Late Devonian palustrine carbonate deposition, Catskill Magnafacies, New York, U.S.A. J Sed Res 69:772–783

Duringer P, Schuster M, Genise JF, Likius A, Mackaye H, Vignaud P, Brunet M (2006) The first fossil fungus gardens of Isoptera: oldest evidence of symbiotic termite fungiculture (Miocene, Chad basin). Naturwissenschaften 93:610–615

Duringer P, Schuster M, Genise JF, Mackaye HT, Vignaud P, Brunet M (2007) New termite trace fossils: galleries, nests and fungus combs from the Chad basin of Africa (Upper Miocene-Lower Pliocene). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 251:323–353

Edwards N, Jarzembowski EA, Pain T, Daley B (1998) Cocoon-like trace fossils from the lacustrine-palustrine Bembridge Limestone Formation (Late Eocene), Southern England. Proc Geol Assoc 109:25–32

Elick JM, Driese SG, Mora CI (1998) Very large plant and root traces from the Early to Middle Devonian: implications for early terrestrial ecosystems and atmospheric p(CO2). Geology 26:143–146

Elliott DK, Nations JD (1998) Bee burrows in the Late Cretaceous (Late Cenomanian) Dakota Formation, northeastern Arizona. Ichnos 5:243–253

Engel MS (2000) A new interpretation of the oldest fossil bee (Hymenoptera: Apidae). Am Mus Nov 3296:1–11

Engel MS (2001) A monograph of the Baltic bees and evolution of the Apoidea (Hymenoptera). Bull Am Mus Nat Hist 259:1–192

Engel MS, Delclòs X (2010) Primitive termites in Cretaceous amber from Spain and Canada (Isoptera). J Kans Entom Soc 83:111–128

Engel MS, Grimaldi DA (2006) The first Cretaceous spider wasp (Hymenoptera: Pompilidae). J Kans Entom Soc 79:359–368

Engel MS, Grimaldi DA, Krishna K (2007) Primitive termites from the Early Cretaceous of Asia (Isoptera). Stutt Beitr Nat B 371:1–32

Engel MS, Grimaldi DA, Krishna K (2009) Termites (Isoptera): Their phylogeny, classification, and rise to ecologic dominance. Am Mus Nov 3485:1–23

Engelmann G, Chure D, Fiorillo A (2004) The implications of a dry climate for the paleoecology of the fauna of the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation. Sediment Geol 167:297–308

Eschenbrenner V (1986) Contribution des termites a la micro-agragation des sols tropicaux. Cahier ORSTOM Série Pedologie 22:397–408

Evans HE (1969) Three new Cretaceous aculeate wasps (Hymenoptera). Psyche 76:251–261

Fastovsky DE, Mcsweeney K (1991) Paleocene paleosols of the petrified forests of Theodore Roosevelt National Park, North Dakota; a natural experiment in compound pedogenesis. Palaios 6:67–80

Fastovsky DE, Mcsweeney K, Norton LD (1989) Pedogenic development at the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary, Garfield County, Montana. J Sediment Res 59:758–767

Faure K, de Wit MJ, Willis JP (1995) Late Permian global coal hiatus linked to 13C-depleted CO_2 flux into the atmosphere during the final consolidation of Pangea. Geology 23:507–510

Feakes CR, Retallack GJ (1988) Recognition and chemical characterization of fossil soils developed on alluvium: a Late Ordovician example. In: Reinhardt J, Sigleo WR (eds) Paleosols and weathering through geologic time: principles and applications. Geol Soc Amer Spec Pap 216:5–48

Fejfar O, Kaiser TM (2005) Insect bone-modification and paleoecoloy of Oligocene mammal-bearing sites in the Doupov Mountains, Northwestern Bohemia. Palaeont Electr 8:1–11, http://palaeoelectronica.org/2005_1/fejfar8/issue1_05.htm

Feldmann RM, Pole M (1994) A new species of *Paranephrops* White, 1842: a fossil crayfish (Decapoda: Parastacidae) from the Manuherikia Group (Miocene), Central Otago, New Zealand. N Z J Geol Geophys 37:163–167

Fernandes de Aquino Santos M, Mermudes JRM, Medina Da Fonseca VM (2011) A specimen of Curculioninae (Curculionidae, Coleoptera) from the Lower Cretaceous, Araripe Basin, north-eastern Brazil. Palaeontology 54:807–814

Fiorillo AR (1999) Non-marine trace fossils from the Morrison Formation (Jurassic) of Curecanti National Recreation Area, Colorado. In: Santucci VL, McCleland L (eds) National Park Service, Paleontological Research volume, Technical report NPS/NRGRD/GRDTR-99/03. pp 42–46

Fontaine J, Ballesteros JM, Powell JE (1995) Artefactos del comportamiento de escarabajos (Coleoptera, Scarabaeidae) como evidencias paleoclimáticas y paleoambientales en el Cuaternario (Pleistoceno Superior) del Valle del Tafí, Provincia de Tucumán, Argentina. Resúmenes de la V Reunión Nacional de la Asociación Argentina de Ciencias del Comportamiento, San Miguel de Tucumán. p 12

Frenguelli J (1938) Bolas de escarabeidos y nidos de véspidos fósiles. Physis 12:348–352

Frenguelli J (1939) Nidos fósiles de insectos en el Terciario del Neuquén y Río Negro. Notas Mus La Plata (Paleont) 4:379–402

Fujiyama I (1968) A Miocene fossil of tropical dung beetle from Noto, Japan (Tertiary Insect Fauna of Japan, 2). Bull Nat Sci Mus Tokyo 11:201–210

Fürsich FT, Wilmsen M, Taheri J (2010) *Cellicalichnus antiquus* isp. nov., an Early Middle Jurassic arthropod brood structure from the Shemshak Group of north-eastern Iran. Neues Jahr Geol Palaeont Abhand 256:61–68

Garassino A (1997) The macuran decapod crustaceans of the Lower Cretaceous (Lower Barremian) of Las Hoyas (Cuenca, Spain). Atti Soc Ital Sci Nat Mus Civ di Stor Nat Mil 137:101–126

Gastaldo RA, Rolerson MW (2008) *Katbergia* gen. gov., a new trace fossil from Upper Permian and Lower Triassic rocks of the Karoo Basin: implications for palaeoenvironmental conditions at the P/Tr extinction event. Palaeontology 51:215–229

Genise JF (1997) A fossil termite nest from the Marplatan stage (Late Pliocene) of Argentina: paleoclimatic indicator. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 136:139–144

Genise JF (2000) The ichnofamily Celliformidae for *Celliforma* and allied ichnogenera. Ichnos 7:267–282

Genise JF (2001) Una nueva traza meniscada en paleosuelos de la Formación Bajo Tigre (Cretácico Inferior) de Santa Cruz (Argentina). In: Resúmenes de la IV Reunión Argentina de Icnología y II Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Tucumán. p 43

Genise JF (2016) Ichnoentomology. Insect traces in soils and paleosols. Topics in Geobiology 37. Springer

Genise JF, Bellosi E (2004) Continental trace fossils of the Laguna Palacios Formation (Upper Cretaceous) from the San Bernardo range (Chubut province). In: Bellosi E, Melchor RN (eds) Ichnia 2004, First international congress on ichnology, fieldtrip guidebook, Trelew. pp 33–43

Genise JF, Bown TM (1990) The constructor of the ichnofossil *Chubutolithes*. J Paleontol 64:482–483

Genise JF, Bown TM (1994a) New Miocene scarabeid and hymenopterous nests and Early Miocene (Santacrucian) paleoenvironments, Patagonian Argentina. Ichnos 3:107–117

Genise JF, Bown TM (1994b) New trace fossils of termites (Insecta: Isoptera) from the Late Eocene-Early Miocene of Egypt, and the reconstruction of ancient isopteran social behavior. Ichnos 3:155–183

Genise JF, Bown TM (1996) *Uruguay* Roselli 1938 and *Rosellichnus*, n. ichnogenus: two ichnogenera for cluster of fossil bee cells. Ichnos 4:199–217

Genise JF, Cladera G (2004) *Chubutolithes gaimanensis* and other wasp trace fossils: breaking through the taphonomic barrier. J Kans Entom Soc 77:626–638

Genise JF, Edwards N (2003) Ichnotaxonomy, origin, and paleoenvironment of Quaternary insect cells from Fuerteventura, Canary Islands, Spain. J Kans Entom Soc 76:320–327

Genise JF, Hazeldine PL (1998a) The ichnogenus *Palmiraichnus* Roselli for fossil bee cells. Ichnos 6:151–166

Genise JF, Hazeldine PL (1998b) 3D-reconstruction of insect trace fossils: *Ellipsoideichnus meyeri* Roselli. Ichnos 5:167–175

Genise JF, Laza JH (1998) *Monesichnus ameghinoi* Roselli: a complex insect trace fossil produced by two distinct trace makers. Ichnos 5:213–223

Genise JF, Sarzetti LC (2011) Fossil cocoons associated with a dinosaur egg from Patagonia, Argentina. Palaeontology 54:815–823

Genise JF, Verde M (2000) *Corimbatichnus fernandezi:* a cluster of fossil bee cells from the Late Cretaceous-early tertiary of Uruguay. Ichnos 7:115–125

Genise JF, Verde M (2010) Crustacean calichnia. In: Abstract book of the workshop on Crustacean bioturbation. Lepe, España, pp 33–37

Genise JF, Zelich MR (2001) Trazas fósiles de insectos de la Formación Puerto Unzué (Cretácico Superior-Paleógeno) de Entre Ríos. In: Resúmenes de la IV Reunión Argentina de Icnología y II Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Tucumán. p 44

Genise JF, Pazos PJ, González MG, Tófalo RO, Verde M (1998) Hallazgo de termiteros y tubos meniscados en la Formación Asencio (Cretácico Superior-Terciario Inferior) R.O. del Uruguay. In: Resúmenes de la III Reunión Argentina de Icnología y I Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Mar del Plata. pp 12–13

Genise JF, Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Laza JH, Verde M (2000) Insect trace fossil associations in paleosols: the *Coprinisphaera* ichnofacies. Palaios 15:49–64

Genise JF, Cladera G, Tancoff S (2001a) La presencia de *Eatonichnus claronensis* en el Paleoceno del Chubut (Argentina). In: Resúmenes de la IV Reunión Argentina de Icnología y II Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Tucumán. p 45

Genise JF, Contreras VH, Cilla G (2001b) Trazas de Equisetales en paleosuelos de la Formación Ischigualasto (Triásico) de San Juan. In: Resúmenes de la IV Reunión Argentina de Icnología y II Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Tucumán. p 46

Genise JF, Sciutto JC, Laza JH, González MG, Bellosi ES (2002a) Fossil bee nests, coleopteran pupal chambers and tuffaceous paleosols from the Late Cretaceous Laguna Palacios Formation, Central Patagonia (Argentina). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 177:215–235

Genise JF, Laza JH, Fernández W, Frogoni J (2002b) Cámaras pupales fósiles de coleópteros: el icnogénero *Rebuffoichnus* Roselli. Rev Mus Argent Cienc Nat 4:159–165

Genise JF, Bellosi ES, González, MG (2004) An approach to the description and interpretation of ichnofabrics in paleosols. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Spec Publ Geol Soc Lond 228:355–382

Genise JF, Bellosi ES, Melchor RN, Cosarinsky MI (2005) Comment—advanced early Jurassic Termite (Insecta: Isoptera) nests: evidence from the Clarens formation in the Tuli Basin, Southern Africa (Bordy et al., 2004). Palaios 20:303–308

Genise JF, Melchor RN, Bellosi ES, González MG, Krause JM (2007) New insect pupation chambers (Pupichnia) from the Upper Cretaceous of Patagonia, Argentina. Cretaceous Res 28:545–559

Genise JF, Bedatou E, Melchor RN (2008a) Terrestrial crustacean breeding trace fossils from the Cretaceous of Patagonia (Argentina): palaeobiological and evolutionary significance. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 264:128–139

Genise JF, Melchor RN, Bellosi ES, Sánchez MV, Krause JM, Sarzetti LC, Verde M, Bedatou E (2008b) Evolution of Mesozoic-Cenozoic terrestrial ichnofaunas from Southern South America. In: Abstracts of the Second International Congress on Ichnology, Ichnia 2008, Kracow. p 41

Genise JF, Alonso-Zarza AM, Krause JM, Sánchez MV, Sarzetti LC, Farina JL, González MG, Cosarinsky M, Bellosi ES (2010a) Rhizolith balls from the Lower Cretaceous of Patagonia: just roots or the oldest evidence of insect agriculture? Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 287:128–142

Genise JF, Melchor RN, Bellosi ES, Verde M (2010b) Invertebrate and vertebrate trace fossils in carbonates. In: Alonso-Zarza AM, Tanner L (eds) Carbonates in Continental Settings. Developments in Sedimentology 61, Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp 319–369

Genise JF, Alonso-Zarza AM, Verde M, Meléndez A (2013a) Insect trace fossils in aeolian deposits and calcretes from the Canary Islands: their ichnotaxonomy, producers, and palaeoenvironmental significance. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 377:110–124

Genise JF, Melchor RN, Sánchez MV, González MG (2013b) *Attaichnus kuenzelii* revisited: A Miocene record of fungus-growing ants from Argentina. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 386:349–363

Genise JF, Farina JL, Verde M (2013c) *Teisseirei barattinia* Roselli 1939: the first sphinx moth trace fossil from palaeosols and its distinct type of wall. Lethaia 46:480–489

Gierliński G, Pieńkowski G, Niedźwiedzki G (2004) Tetrapod track assemblage in the Hettangian of Soltyków, Poland, and its paleoenvironmental background. Ichnos 11:195–213

Gierlowski-Kordesch E (1991) Ichnology of an ephemeral lacustrine/alluvial plain system: Jurassic East Berlin Formation, Hartford Basin, USA. Ichnos 1:221–232

Gill S, Yemane K (1996) Implications of a Lower Pennsylvanian Ultisol for equatorial Pangean climates and early, oligotrophic, forest ecosystems. Geology 24:905–908

Gobetz KE, Martin LD (2006) Burrows of a gopher-like rodent, possibly *Gregorymys* (Geomyoidea: Geomyidae: Entoptychtinae), from the early Miocene Harrison Formation, Nebraska. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 237:305–314

González M (1999) Los paleosuelos de la Formación Laguna Palacios (Cretácico Superior) de Patagonia y la Formación Asencio (Cretácico Superior—Terciario Inferior) de Uruguay. In: Boletim do 5° Simposio sobre o Cretáceo do Brasil, San Pablo. pp 65–70

Gratshev VG, Zherikhin VV (2003) The fossil record of weevils and related beetle families. In: Krzeminska E, Krzeminski W (eds) Proceedings of the 2nd congress on palaeoentomology (Krakow, Poland). Acta Zool Cracov 46:129–138

Gregory MR, Campbell KA (2003) A "*Phoebichnus* look-alike": a fossilised root system from Quaternary coastal dune sediments, New Zealand. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 192:247–258

Gregory MR, Martin AJ, Campbell KA (2004) Compound trace fossils formed by plant and animal interactions: quaternary of New Zealand and Sapelo Island, Georgia (USA). Foss Str 51:88–105

Gregory MR, Campbell KA, Alfaro AC, Hudson N (2009) Bee and ant burrows in Quaternary "coffee rock" and Holocene sand dunes, Kowhai Bay, Northland, New Zealand. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 273:102–110

Grimaldi DA (1999) The co-radiations of pollinating insects and angiosperms in the Cretaceous. Ann MO Bot Gard 86:373–406

Grimaldi DA, Engel MS (2005) Evolution of the insects. Cambridge University Press, New York, 755 pp

Gromov VV, Dimitriev V, Zherikhin VV, Lebedev EL, Ponomarenko AG, Rasnitsyn AP, Sukatsheva ID (1993) Cretaceous insect faunas of the Ulya River Basin, West Okhotsk Region. In: Ponomarenko AG (ed) Mesozoiskie Nasekomye i Ostracody Azii. Trudy Paleontol Inst Ross Akad Nauk 252:5–60

Grow L (1981) Burrowing behaviour in the crayfish *Cambarus diogenes diogenes* Girard. Anim Behav 29:351–356

Growns IO, Richardson AMM (1988) Diet and burrowing habitat of the freshwater crayfish, *Parastacoides tasmanicus tasmanicus* Clark (Decapoda: Parastacidae). Aust J Mar Freshwat Res 39:525–534

Halffter G, Edmonds WD (1982) The nesting behavior of dung beetles. An ecological and evolutive approach. Publ Inst Ecol México 10:1–176

Hallan A (1994) An outline of Phanerozoic biogeography. Oxford Univ. Press, Oxford, 246 pp

Hamer JMM, Sheldon ND, Nichols GJ, Collinson ME (2007) Late Oligocene–early Miocene paleosols of distal fluvial systems, Ebro Basin, Spain. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 247:220–235

Hamr P, Richardson A (1994) Life history of *Parastacoides tasmanicus tasmanicus* Clark, a burrowing freshwater crayfish from south-western Tasmania. Mar Freshwat Res 45:455–470

Hanski I, Cambefort Y (1991) Dung beetle ecology. Princeton University Press, New Jersey, 481 p

Harris TM (1961) The Yorkshire Jurassic Flora I. Thallophyta-Pteridophyta. British Museum Natural History, London

Harris TM, Rest JA (1966) The flora of the Brora Coal. Geol Mag 103:101–109

Hasiotis ST (1993) Ichnology of Triassic and Holocene cambarid of North America: an overview of burrowing behaviour and morphology as reflected by their morphologies in the geological record. Fresh Cray 9:407–418

Hasiotis ST (1999) Continental ichnofossils from the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation, Western Interior, USA: what organism behavior tell us about Jurassic environments and climates. In: Santucci VL, McCleland L (eds) National Park Service, Paleontological Research. pp 121–125

Hasiotis ST (2000) The invertebrate invasion and evolution of Mesozoic soil ecosystems: the ichnofossil record of ecological innovations. In: Gastaldo RA, DiMichele WA (eds) Phanerozoic Terrestrial Ecosystems. Paleont Soc Pap 6:141–169

Hasiotis ST (2003) Complex ichnofossils of solitary to social soil organisms: understanding their evolution and roles in terrestrial paleoecosystems. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 192:259–320

Hasiotis ST (2004) Reconnaissance of Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation ichnofossils, Rocky Mountain Region, USA: paleoenvironmental, stratigraphic, and paleoclimatic significance of terrestrial and freshwater ichnocoenoses. Sediment Geol 167:177–268

Hasiotis ST, Bown TM (1996) A short note about crayfish burrows from the Paleocene-Eocene Claron Formation, southwestern Utah, USA. Fresh Cray 11:121–129

Hasiotis ST, Demko T (1996) Terrestrial and freshwater trace fossils, Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation, Colorado Plateau. In: Morales M (ed) The Continental Jurassic. Mus North Ariz Bull 60:355–370

Hasiotis ST, Demko T (1998) Ichnofossils from Garden Park Paleontological Area, Colorado: implications for paleoecologic and paleoclimatic reconstructions of the Upper Jurassic. Modern Geol 22:461–479

Hasiotis ST, Dubiel RF (1993a) Trace fossil assemblages in Chinle Formation alluvial deposits at The Teepes, Petrified Forest National Park. In: Lucas SG, Morales M (eds) The Nonmarine Triassic. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 3:G42–G43

Hasiotis ST, Dubiel RF (1993b) Crayfish burrows and their paleohydrologic significance—upper Triassic Chinle Formation, Ft. Wingate, New Mexico. In: Lucas SG, Morales M (eds) The nonmarine Triassic. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 3:G24–G26

Hasiotis ST, Dubiel RF (1994) Ichnofossil tiering in Triassic alluvial paleosols: implications for Pangean continental rocks and paleoclimate. Mem Can Soc Petrol Geol 17:311–317

Hasiotis ST, Dubiel RF (1995) Termite (Insecta: Isoptera) nest ichnofossils from the Upper Triassic Chinle Formation, Petrified Forest National Park, Arizona. Ichnos 4:119–130

Hasiotis ST, Honey JG (1995) Crayfish burrows and their paleohydrologic significance in Paleocene continental deposits, Washakie, great Divide, and Hanna Basins, Wyoming, USA. Fresh Cray 10:105–117

Hasiotis ST, Honey JG (2000) Paleohydrologic and stratigraphic significance of crayfish burrows in continental deposits: examples from several Paleocene Laramide Basins in the Rocky Mountains. J Sediment Res 70:127–139

Hasiotis ST, Kirkland JI (1997) Crayfish fossils and burrows (Decapoda: Cambaridae), Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation, Colorado Plateau, USA. Fresh Cray 11:106–120

Hasiotis ST, Mitchell CE (1993) A comparison of crayfish burrow morphologies: Triassic and Holocene fossil, paleo- and neo-ichnological evidence, and the identification of their burrowing signatures. Ichnos 2:291–314

Hasiotis ST, Aslan A, Bown TM (1993a) Origin, architecture, and paleoecology of the Early Eocene continental ichnofossils *Scaphichnium hamatum*, integration of ichnology and paleopedology. Ichnos 3:1–9

Hasiotis ST, Mitchell CE, Dubiel RF (1993b) Application of morphologic burrow interpretations to discern continental burrow architects: lungfish or crayfish? Ichnos 2:315–333

Hasiotis ST, Kirkland JI, Callison G (1998) Crayfish fossils and burrows from the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation of Western Colorado. Modern Geol 22:481–491

Hasiotis ST, Wellner RW, Martin AJ, Demko TM (2004) Vertebrate burrows from Triassic and Jurassic continental deposits of North America and Antarctica: their paleoenvironmental and paleoecological significance. Ichnos 11:103–124

Hembree DI (2009) Neoichnology of burrowing millipedes: Linking modern burrow morphology, organism behavior, and sediment properties to interpret continental ichnofossils. Palaios 24:425–439

Hembree DI, Hasiotis ST (2007) Paleosols and ichnofossils of the White River Formation of Colorado: insight into soil ecosystems of the North American Midcontinent during the Eocene-Oligocene transition. Palaios 22:123–142

Hembree DI, Hasiotis ST (2008) Miocene vertebrate and invertebrate burrows defining compound paleosols in the Pawnee Creek Formation, Colorado, U.S.A. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 270:349–365

Hembree DI, Nadon GC (2011) A paleopedologic and ichnologic perspective of the terrestrial Pennsylvanian landscape in the distal Appalachian Basin, U.S.A. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 312:138–166

Hembree DI, Hasiotis ST, Martin LD (2005) *Torridorefugium eskridgensis* (new ichnogenus and ichnospecies): amphibian aestivation burrows from the Lower Permian Speiser Shale of Kansas. J Paleontol 79:583–593

Hillier RD, Edwards D, Morrissey LB (2008) Sedimentological evidence for rooting structures in the Early Devonian Anglo-Welsh Basin (UK), with speculation on their producers. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 270:366–380

Horn GH (1876) Notes on some coleopterous remains from the bone cave at Port Kennedy, Penna. Trans Am Entom Soc 5:241–245

Horwitz P, Knott B (1983) The burrowing behaviour of the Koonac Cherax plebejus (Decapoda: Parastacidae). West Aust Nat 15:113–117

Horwitz P, Knott B (1991) The faunal assemblage in freshwater crayfish burrows in sedgeland and forest at Lightning Plains, Western Tasmania. Pap Proc Roy Soc Tasm 125:29–32

Horwitz P, Richardson AMM, Cramp PM (1985) Aspects of the life story of the burrowing freshwater crayfish *Engaeus leptorhyncus* at Rattrays marsh, North East Tasmania. Tasm Nat 82:1–5

Houston TF (1987) Fossil brood cells of stenotritid bee (Hymenoptera, Apoidea) from the Pleistocene of South Australia. Trans Roy Soc South Aust 3:93–97

Humphreys GS (2003) Evolution of terrestrial burrowing invertebrates. In: Roach IC (ed) Advances in Regolith. CRC LEME, Camberra, Australia, pp 211–215

Huner JV, Barr JE (1991) Red swamp crayfish: biology and exploitation. Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge

Inozemtsev SA, Naugolnykh SV, Yakimenko EY (2011) Upper Permian paleosols developed from limestone in the middle reaches of the Volga River: morphology and genesis. Eurasian Soil Sci 44:604–617

Iriondo M, Krohling DM (1996) Los sedimentos eólicos del noroeste de la llanura pampeana (Cuaternario superior). In: Actas del XIII Congreso Geológico Argentino y III Congreso de Hidrocarburos 1, Buenos Aires. pp 27–48

Jansson IM, McLoughlin S, Vajda V (2008) Early Jurassic annelid cocoons from eastern Australia. Alcheringa 32:285–296

Jenik J (1978) Roots and root systems in tropical trees. Morphologic and ecologic aspects. In: Tomlinson PB, Zimmermann MH (eds) Tropical trees as living systems. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 323–349

Johnston PA, Eberth DA, Anderson PK (1996) Alleged vertebrate eggs from Upper Cretaceous redbeds, Gobi Desert, are fossil insect (Coleoptera) pupal chambers: *Fictovichnus* new ichnogenus. Can J Earth Sci 33:511–525

Jones B, Ng KC (1988) The structure and diagenesis of rhizoliths from Cayman Brac, British West Indies. J Sediment Res 58:457–467

Jordan F, Babbitt KJ, McIvor CC, Miller SJ (2000) contrasting patterns of habitat use by prawns and crayfish in a headwater marsh of the St. Johns River, Florida. J Crustacean Biol 20:769–776

Kabanov PB, Alekseeva TV, Alekseeva VA, Alekseev AO, Gubin SV (2010) Paleosols in Late Moscovian (Carboniferous) marine carbonates of the East European Craton revealing “Great Calcimagnesian Plain” paleolandscapes. J Sediment Res 80:195–215

Kessler JLP, Soreghan GS, Wacker HJ (2001) Equatorial aridity in Western Pangea: lower Permian loessite and dolomitic paleosols in Northeastern New Mexico, U.S.A. J Sediment Res 71:817–832

Kim JY, Kim KS, Pickerill RK (2002) Cretaceous nonmarine trace fossils from the Hasandong and Jinju Formations of the Namhae Area, Kyongsangnamdo, Southeast Korea. Ichnos 9:41–60

Kindle EM (1923) A note on rhizoconcretions. J Geol 33:744

Kitching IJ, Sadler S (2011) Lepidoptera, Insecta. In: Harrison T (ed) Paleontology and geology of Laetoli: human evolution in context, vol 2, Fossil hominids and the associated fauna. Springer, Berlin, pp 549–554

Klappa CF (1980) Rhizoliths in terrestrial carbonates: classification, recognition, genesis and significance. Sedimentology 27:613–629

Knoll M, James W (1987) Effect of the advent and diversification of vascular plants on mineral weathering through geological time. Geology 15:1099–1102

Kosir A (2004) *Microcodium* revisited: root calcification products of terrestrial plants on carbonate-rich substrates. J Sediment Res 74:845–857

Kowalewski M, Demko T, Hasiotis ST, Newell D (1998) Quantitative ichnology of Triassic crayfish burrows (*Camborygma eumekenomos*): ichnofossils as linkages to population paleoecology. Ichnos 6:5–21

Kramarz AG, Bellosi ES (2005) Hystricognath rodents from the Pinturas Formation, Early-Middle Miocene of Patagonia, biostratigraphic and paleoenvironmental implications. J South Am Earth Sci 18:199–212

Kraus MJ, Hasiotis ST (2006) Significance of different modes of rhizolith preservation to interpreting paleoenvironmental and paleohydrologic settings: examples from Paleogene paleosols, Bighorn Basin, Wyoming, U.S.A. J Sediment Res 76:633–646

Krause JM, Bellosi ES (2006) Paleosols from the Koluel Kaike Formation (Lower-Middle Eocene) in south-central Chubut, Argentina: a preliminary análisis. In: Resúmenes del IV Congreso Latinoamericano de Sedimentología y XI Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología, Bariloche. p 125

Krause JM, Genise JF (2004) *Chubutolithes* Ihering en Bahía Solano, Comodoro Rivadavia, Chubut, Argentina. Consideraciones sedimentológicas e icnológicas. In: Resúmenes de la X Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología, San Luis. pp 84–85

Krause JM, Bellosi ES, Genise JF (2007) Evolución de la icnofauna terrestre de la Patagonia Central II. El Grupo Río Chico: desde el K-T hasta la explosión del Eoceno Medio. In: Resúmenes de la V Reunión Argentina de Icnología y III Reunión de Icnología del MERCOSUR, Ushuaia. p 38

Krause JM, Bown TM, Bellosi ES, Genise JF (2008) Trace fossils of cicadas in the Cenozoic of Central Patagonia, Argentina. Palaeontology 51:405–418

Krause JM, Genise JF, Puerta P (2010). New trace fossils of cicadas from the Middle Cenozoic of Chubut, Argentina. In: Resúmenes del Primer Simposio Latinoamericano de Icnología, São Leopoldo, Brazil. p 42

Krell FT (2006) Fossil record and evolution of Scarabaeoidea (Coleoptera, Polyphaga). Coleopt Soc Monogr 5:120–143

Krell FT (2007) Catalogue of fossil Scarabaeoidea (Coleoptera, Polyphaga) of the Mesozoic and Tertiary. Denver Mus Nat Sci Tech Rep 2007–8:1–79

Krell FT, Schawaller W (2011) Beetles (Insecta: Coleoptera). In: Harrison T (ed) Paleontology and Geology of Laetoli: Human Evolution in Context. Springer, Berlin, pp 535–548

Kröhling DM (1999) Sedimentological maps of the typical loessic units in North Pampa, Argentina. Quat Int 62:49–55

Kuntz P (2010) 30 Ans déjà! ASAM Bull 10:39–45

Kuntz P (2012) Révision des ovoïdes du Lutétien de Bouxwiller en Alsace. Gazette de la Association Strasbourgeoise des Amis de la Minéralogie. On-line. http://www.asam67.org/gazette/revision-ovoides-lutetien-bouxwiller-en-alsace

Kusnezov N (1941) A revision of Amber Lepidoptera. Paleontological Institute, USSR Academy of Sciences, Moscow & Leningrad, 135 pp

La Roche F, Genise JF, Castillo C, Quesada ML, García-Gotera CM, De la Nuez J (2014) Fossil bee cells from the Canary Islands. Ichnotaxonomy, palaeobiology and palaeoenvironments. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 409:249–264

Labandeira C (2011) Evidence for an earliest Late Carboniferous divergence time and the early larval ecology and diversification of major Holometabola lineages. Entomol Am 117:9–21

Lake PS, Newcombe KJ (1975) Observations on the ecology of the crayfish *Parastacoides tasmanicus* (Decapoda: Parastacidae) from South-Western Tasmania. Aust Zool 18:197–214

Laza JH (1982) Signos de actividad atribuibles a *Atta* (Myrmicidae, Hymenoptera), en el Mioceno de la Provincia de La Pampa, República Argentina. Significación paleozoogeográfica. Ameghiniana 19:109–124

Laza JH (1986a) Icnofósiles de paleosuelos del Cenozoico mamalífero de Argentina. I Paleógeno. Bol Asoc Pal Arg 15:19

Laza JH (1986b) Icnofósiles de paleosuelos del Cenozoico mamalífero de Argentina. II Neógeno. Bol Asoc Pal Arg 15:13

Laza JH (1995) Signos de actividad de insectos. In: Alberdi TM, Leone G, Tonni EP (eds) Evolución biológica y climática de la región pampeana durante los últimos cinco millones de años. Consejo de Investigaciones Científicas de España, Madrid, pp 347–361

Laza JH (1997) Signos de actividad atribuibles a dos especies de *Acromyrmex* (Myrmicinae, Formicidae, Hymenoptera) del Pleistoceno en la provincia de Buenos Aires. República Argentina Significado paleoambiental Geociencias 2:56–62

Laza JH (2006a) Termiteros del Plioceno y Pleistoceno de la provincia de Buenos Aires, República Argentina. Significación paleoambiental y paleozoogeográfica. Ameghiniana 43:641–648

Laza JH (2006b) Dung-beetle fossil brood balls: the ichnogenera *Coprinisphaera* Sauer and *Quirogaichnus* (Coprinisphaeridae). Ichnos 13:217–235

Laza JH, Reguero MA (1990) Extensión faunística de la antigua Región Neotropical en la Península Antártica durante el Eoceno. Ameghiniana 26:245

Lea AM (1925) Notes on some calcareous insect puparia. Rec South Aust Mus 3:35–36

Lefebvre F, Nel A, Papier F, Grauvogel-Stamm L, Gall JC (1998) The first "cicada-like Homoptera" from the Triassic of the Vosges, France. Palaeontology 41:1195–1200

Legalov AA (2010) Checklist of Mesozoic Curculionoidea (Coleoptera) with description of new taxa. Baltic J Col 10:71–101

Lin Q (1980) Fossil insects. In: Zhongguo K, Nanjing D, Gushengwu Y (eds) Fossils of Mesozoic deposits of volcanic origin in Zhejiang and Anhui. Acad Sinica Nanj Inst Geol Palaeontol, Science Press, Beijing, pp 211–244

Longrich NR, Bhullar B-AS, Gauthier JA (2012) Mass extinction of lizards and snakes at the Cretaceous–Paleogene boundary. PNAS 109:21396–21401

Loope DB, Dingus L (1999) Mud-filled *Ophiomorpha* from Upper Cretaceous continental redbeds of southern Mongolia; an ichnologic clue to the origin of detrital, grain-coating clays. Palaios 14:451–458

Lucas SG, Minter NJ, Hunt AP (2010) Re-evaluation of alleged bees' nests from the Upper Triassic of Arizona. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 286:194–201

MacEachern JA, Pemberton SG, Gingras MK, Bann KL (2007) The ichnofacies paradigm: a fifty-year retrospective. In: Miller W III (ed) Trace fossils; concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 52–77

MacEachern JA, Bann KL, Gingras MK, Zonneveld JP, Dashgardt SE, Pemberton SG (2012) The ichnofacies paradigm. In: Knaust D, Bromley R (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments, vol 64, Developments in sedimentology. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 103–138

Mack GH, Leeder M, Perez-Arlucea M, Bailey BDJ (2003) Early Permian silt-bed fluvial sedimentation in the Orogrande Basin of the Ancestral Rocky Mountains, New Mexico, USA. Sediment Geol 160:159–178

Macleod N, Rawson PF, Forey PL, Banner FT, Boudagher-Fadel MK, Bown PR, Burnett JA, Chambers P, Culver S, Evans SE, Jeffery C, Kaminski MA, Lord AR, Milner AC, Milner AR, Morris N, Owen E, Rosen BR, Smith AB, Taylor PD, Urquhart E, Young JR (1997) The cretaceous-tertiary biotic transition. J Geol Soc 154:265–292

Manum SB, Bose MN, Sawyer RT (1991) Clitellate cocoons in freshwater deposits since the Triassic. Zool Scrip 20:347–366

Martin LD, Bennett DK (1977) The burrows of the Miocene beaver *Palaeocastor*, Western Nebraska, U.S.A. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 22:173–193

Martin AJ, Rich TH, Poore GCB, Schultz MB, Autin CM, Kool L, Vickers-Rich P (2008) Fossil evidence in Australia for oldest known freshwater crayfish of Gondwana. Gond Res 14:287–296

Martin AJ, Varricchio DJ (2011) Paleoecological utility of insect trace fossils in dinosaur nesting sites of the Two Medicine Formation (Campanian), Choteau, Montana. Hist Biol 23:15–25

Martínez S, Veroslavsky G, Verde M (1997) Primer registro del Paleoceno en el Uruguay: paleosuelos calcáreos en la Cuenca de Santa Lucía. Rev Bras Geoc 27:295–302

Martínez S, Veroslavsky G, Verde M (2001) Paleoecología de los paleosuelos calcáreos fosilíferos ("Calizas del Queguay" Paleoceno) de las regiones sur y litoral del Uruguay. In: Actas del XI Congreso Latinoamericano de Geología y III Congreso Uruguayo de Geología, Montevideo. p 10

Mas G, Ripoll J (2010) Cambres de pupació d'insectes coleòpters del Pliocè—Pleistocè inferior de Mallorca (Illes Balears, Mediterrània occidental). Significació paleoambiental i cronoestratigràfica. Boll Soc Hist Nat Balears 53:91–106

McKenna DD, Sequeira AS, Marvaldi AE, Farell BD (2009) Temporal lags and overlap in the diversification of weevils and flowering plants. PNAS 106:7083–7088

Meco J, Petit-Maire N, Ballester J, Betancort JF, Ramos AJG (2010) The Acridian plagues, a new Holocene and Pleistocene palaeoclimatic indicator. Global Planet Change 72:318–320

Meco J, Muhs DR, Fontugne M, Ramos AJG, Lomoschitz A, Patterson D (2011) Late Pliocene and Quaternary Eurasian locust infestations in the Canary Archipelago. Lethaia 44:440–454

Melchor RN (2002) Depósitos continentales eocenos del sudoeste de La Pampa, Argentina. In: Cingolani CA, Linares E, López de Luchi MG, Ostera HA, Panarello HO (eds) In: Actas del XV Congreso Geológico Argentino, El Calafate. pp 694–698

Melchor RN, Bellosi ES, Genise JF, Verde M (2001) Invertebrate trace fossils from Triassic continental sequences of San Juan province, Argentina. Asoc Pal Arg Publ Esp 7:127–131

Melchor RN, Genise JF, Miquel SE (2002) Ichnology, sedimentology and paleontology of Eocene calcareous paleosols from a palustrine sequence, Argentina. Palaios 17:16–35

Melchor RN, Genise JF, Buatois LA, Umazano AM (2012) Fluvial environments. In: Knaust D, Bromley RG (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Developments in sedimentology. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 329–378

Meunier F (1921) Die Insektenreste aus dem Lutetien von Messel bei Darmstadt. Abhand Hessis Geol Land Darmstadt 7:1–16

Michaelson P (2002) Mass extinction of peat-forming plants and the effect on fluvial styles across the Permian-Triassic boundary, northern Bowen Basin, Australia. Paleogeogr Paleoclimatol Paleoecol 179:173–188

Michener CD, Grimaldi D (1988a) The oldest fossil bee: apoid history, evolutionary stasis, and antiquity of social behavior. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 85:6424–6426

Michener CD, Grimaldi D (1988b) A *Trigona* from Late Cretaceous amber of New Jersey (Hymenoptera: Apidae: Meliponinae). Am Mus Nov 2917:1–10

Mikúlaš R, Genise JF (2003) Traces within traces: holes, pits and galleries in walls and filling of insect trace fossils in paleosols. Geol Acta 1:339–348

Miller MF, Collinson JW (1994) Trace fossils from Permian and Triassic sandy braided stream deposits, central Transantarctic Mountains. Palaios 9:605–610

Miller MF, Smail SE (1996) Permian and Triassic biogenic structures, Shackleton Glacier and Mount Weaver areas, Transantarctic Mountains. Antarctic J 31:5–7

Miller WR, Mason TR (2000) *Stellavelum arborensis* igen. isp. nov., *Stellavelum uncinum* igen. isp. nov., *Termitichnus namibiensis* isp. nov., new ichnofossils from Cenozoic deposits of Namaqualand, South Africa. Ichnos 7:195–215

Miller MF, Hasiotis ST, Babcock LE, Isbell JL, Collinson JW (2001) Tetrapod and large burrows of uncertain origin in Triassic high paleolatitude floodplain deposits, Antarctica. Palaios 16:218–232

Moore JM, Picker MD (1991) *Heuweltjies* (earth mounds) in the Clanwilliam district, Cape Province, South Africa: 4000-year-old termite nests. Oecologia 86:424–432

Morrissey LB, Braddy SJ (2004) Terrestrial trace fossils from the Lower Old Red Sandstone, southwest Wales. Geol J 39:315–336

Morrissey LB, Hillier RD, Marriott SB (2012) Late Silurian and Early Devonian terrestrialisation: Ichnological insights from the Lower Old Red Sandstone of the Anglo-Welsh Basin, U.K. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 337–338:194–215

Mossa J, Schumacher BA (1993) Fossil tree casts in South Louisiana soils. J Sediment Res 63:707–713

Mount JF, Cohen AS (1984) Petrology and geochemistry of rhizoliths from Plio-Pleistocene fluvial and marginal lacustrine deposits, East Lake Turkana, Kenya. J Sed Petr 54:263–275

Mueller-Dombois D, Ellenberg H (1974) Aims and methods of vegetation ecology. Wiley, New York

Nanzyo M (2002) Unique properties of volcanic ash soils. Global Environ Res 6:83–97

Nel A, Perrault G, Perrichot V, Néraudeau D (2004) The oldest ant in the Lower Cretaceous amber of Charente-Maritime (SW France) (Insecta: Hymenoptera: Formicidae). Geol Acta 2:23–29

Nel A, Roques P, Nel P, Prokop J, Steyer JS (2007) The earliest holometabolous insect from the Carboniferous: a “crucial” innovation with delayed success (Insecta, Protomeropina, Protomeropidae). Ann Soc Entomol Fr 43:349–355

Netto RG, Tognoli FMW, De Gibert JM, De Oliveira MZ (2007) Paleosol evolution in nearshore fluviatile Pleistocene deposits of the Chuí Formation, South of Brazil. V Reunión Argentina de Icnología y Tercera Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Ushuaia, p 55

Niklas K, Tiffney B, Knoll A (1985) Patterns in vascular land plant diversification: an analysis at species level. In: Valentine JW (ed) Phanerozoic diversity patterns: profiles in macroevolution. Princeton Univ Press, Princeton, pp 97–128

Nikolajev GV (1993) Taxonomic criteria and generic composition of Mesozoic lamellicorn beetles (Coleoptera, Scarabaeidae). Paleont J 26:96–111

Nikolajev GV (1998) Pleurostict lamellicorn beetles (Coleoptera, Scarabaeidae) from the Lower Cretaceous of Transbaikalia. Paleont J 32:513–521

Nikolajev GV (2007) Mezozoiskii Etap Evolyutsii Plastinchatousykh (Insecta: Coleoptera: Scarabaeoidea). Kazak Universiteti, Almaty, 222 pp

Noro CK (2007) A historia natural de *Parastacus defossus* Faxon, 1898. Um lagostin fossorial de Brasil meridional (Crustacea, Decapoda, Parastacidae). PhD, Instituto de Biociencias. Porto Alegre, Universidade Federal do Rio Grande do Sul. 242 p

Oberprieler RG, Marvaldi AE, Anderson RS (2007) Weevils, weevils, weevils everywhere. Zootaxa 1668:491–520

O'Geen AT, Busacca AJ (2001) Faunal burrows as indicators of paleo-vegetation in eastern Washington, USA. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 169:23–37

Paredes JM, Hudecek R, Foix N, Rodríguez JF, Nillni A (2003) Análisis paleoambiental de la Formación Matasiete (Aptiano) en su área tipo, Noroeste de la Cuenca del Golfo de San Jorge. Rev Asoc Arg Sed 10:81–101

Paredes JM, Foix N, Colombo Piñol F, Nillni A, Allard JO, Marquillas RA (2007) Volcanic and climatic controls on fluvial style in a high-energy system: the Lower Cretaceous Matasiete Formation, Golfo San Jorge basin, Argentina. Sed Geol 202:96–123

Parrish JT, Peterson F, Turner CE (2004) Jurassic "savannah"—plant taphonomy and climate of the Morrison Formation (Upper Jurassic, Western USA). Sediment Geol 167:137–162

Pascual R, Bondesio P (1981) Sedimentitas Cenozoicas. In: Relatorio del VIII Congreso Geológico Argentino, San Luis. pp 117–154

Paulian R (1976) Three fossil dung beetles (Coleoptera: Scarabaeidae) from the Kenya Miocene. J East Afr Nat Hist Soc Nat Mus 31:1–4

Pazos P (2011) Icnología. In: Leanza H et al (eds) Geología y recursos naturales de la provincia del Neuquén. Relatorio del 18vo Cong Geol Arg. pp 591–598

Perrichot V, Lacau S, Néraudeau D, Nel A (2007) Fossil evidence for the early ant evolution. Naturwissenschaften 95:85–90

Perrichot V, Nel A, Néraudeau D, Lacau S, Guyot T (2008) New fossil ants in French Cretaceous amber (Hymenoptera: Formicidae). Naturwissenschaften 95:91–97

Pfefferkorn H, Fuchs K (1991) A field classification of fossil plant-substrate interactions. N Jahr Geol Pal Abhand 183:17–36

Piénkowski G, Niedźwiedzki G (2008) Invertebrate trace fossil assemblages from the Lower Hettangian of Sołtyków, Holy Cross Mountains, Poland. Vol Jurass 6:109–113

Pierce WD (1946) Descriptions of the dung beetles (Scarabaeidae) of the tar pits. Bull South Calif Acad Sci 45:119–131

Pierce TG, Oates K, Carruthers WJ (1990) A fossil earthworm embryo (Oligochaeta) from beneath a Late Bronze Age midden at Potterne, Wiltshire, UK. J Zool 220:537–542

Pietsch D, Kühn P (2012) Early Holocene paleosols at the southwestern Ramlat As-Sab'atayn desert margin: new climate proxies for southern Arabia. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 365–366:154–165

Poinar GOJ, Danforth BN (2006) A fossil bee from early Cretaceous Burmese amber. Science 314:614

Prather BE (1985) An Upper Pennsylvanian desert paleosol in the D-zone of the Lansing-Kansas City Groups, Hitchcock County, Nebraska. J Sediment Res 55:213–221

Radies D, Hasiotis ST, Preusser F, Neubert E, Matter A (2005) Paleoclimatic significance of Early Holocene faunal assemblages in wet interdune deposits of the Wahiba Sand Sea, Sultanate of Oman. J Arid Environ 62:109–125

Rasnitsyn AP (1975) Hymenoptera Apocrita of the Mesozoic. Trans Paleont Inst Acad Sci USSR 147:1–134

Rasnitsyn AP (1980) Origin and evolution of Hymenoptera. Trans Paleont Inst Acad Sci USSR 174:1–192

Rasnitsyn AP (2000) New genus and two new species of the Lower Cretaceous digger wasps from Spain (Hymenoptera: Sphecidae, Angarosphecinae). Acta Geol Hisp 35:55–58

Rasnitsyn AP (2002) Superorder Vespidea Laicharting, 1781. Order Hymenoptera Linné, 1758 (=Vespida Laicharting, 1781). In: Rasnitsyn AP, Quicke DLJ (eds) History of insects. Kluwer Academic Publications, Dordrecht, pp 242–254

Rasnitsyn AP (2008) New Hymenopteran Insects (Insecta: Vespida) from the Lower or Middle Jurassic of India. Paleont J 42:81–85

Rasnitsyn AP, Ansorge J (2000) Two new Lower Cretaceous hymenopterous insects (Insecta: Hymenoptera) from Sierra del Montsec (Spain). Acta Geol Hisp 35:59–64

Rasnitsyn AP, Martinez-Delclòs X (2000) Wasps (Insecta: Vespida = Hymenoptera) from the Early Cretaceous of Spain. Acta Geol Hisp 35:65–95

Rasnitsyn AP, Jarzembowski EA, Ross AJ (1998) Wasps (Insecta: Vespida = Hymenoptera) from the Purbeck and Wealden (Lower Cretaceous) of southern England and their biostratigraphical and palaeoenvironmental significance. Cret Res 19:329–391

Rasnitsyn AP, Pulawski WJ, Martínez-Delclòs X (1999) Cretaceous digger wasps of the new genus *Bestiola* Pulawski and Rasnitsyn (Hymenoptera: Sphecidae, Angarosphecinae). J Hym Res 8:23–34

Ratcliffe BC, Smith DM, Erwin D (2005) *Oryctoantiquus borealis*, new genus and species from the Eocene of Oregon, U.S.A., the world's oldest fossil dynastine and largest fossil scarabaeid (Coleoptera: Scarabaeidae: Dynastinae). Coleop Bull 59:127–135

Rebata HLA, Räsänen ME, Gingras MK, Vieira JV, Barberi M, Irion G (2006) Sedimentology and ichnology of tide-influenced Late Miocene successions in western Amazonia: the gradational transition between the Pebas and Nauta formations. J South Am Earth Sci 21:96–119

Retallack GJ (1976) Triassic palaeosols in the Upper Narrabeen Group of New South Wales. Part I: Features of the palaeosols. J Geol Soc Aust 23:383–399

Retallack GJ (1983) A paleopedological approach to the interpretation of terrestrial sedimentary rocks: the mid-Tertiary fossil soils of Badlands National Park, South Dakota. Geol Soc Am Bull 94:823–840

Retallack GJ (1984) Trace fossils of burrowing beetles and bees in an Oligocene paleosol, Badlands National Park, South Dakota. J Paleont 58:571–592

Retallack GJ (1985) Fossil soils as grounds for interpreting the advent of large plants and animals on land. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B 309:105–142

Retallack GJ (1986) The fossil record of soils. In: Wright V (ed) Paleosols: their recognition and interpretation. Blackwell, Oxford, pp 1–57

Retallack GJ (1988) Field recognition of paleosols. In: Reinhardt J, Sigleo WR (eds) Paleosols and weathering through geologic time: techniques and applications. Geol Soc Am Spec Papers 216:l–20

Retallack GJ (1990) Soils of the pasts, 1st edn. Unwin Hyman, Boston, 520 pp

Retallack GJ (1991a) Miocene paleosols and ape habitats of Pakistan and Kenya. Oxford University Press, New York, 346 pp

Retallack GJ (1991b) The early evolution of plant life of South-western Australia: comment. J Roy Soc West Aust 73:77–78

Retallack GJ (1992a) Paleozoic paleosols. In: Martini IP, Chesworth W (eds) Weathering, soil and paleosols. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 543–564

Retallack GJ (1992b) How to find a Precambrian paleosol. In: Schidlowski M, Golubic S, Kimberley MM, McKirdy DM, Trudinger PA (eds) Early organic evolution and mineral and energy resources. Springer, Berlin, pp 16–30

Retallack GJ (1993) Late Ordovician paleosols of the Juniata Formation near Potters Mills, PA. In: Driese SG (ed) Paleosols, paleoclimate and paleoatmospheric CO_2: paleozoic paleosols of Pennsylvania, vol 22, Univ Tennessee Stud Geol., pp 33–49

Retallack GJ (1997a) Palaeosols in the Upper Narrabeen group of New South Wales as evidence of Early Triassic palaeoenvironments without exact modern analogues. Aust J Earth Sci 44:185–201

Retallack GJ (1997b) Early forest soils and their role in Devonian global change. Science 276:583–585

Retallack GJ (1997c) Dinosaurs and dirt. In: Wolberg DL, Stump E, Rosenberg GD (eds) Dinofest international. Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, pp 345–359

Retallack GJ (1999a) Carboniferous fossil plants and soils of an early tundra ecosystem. Palaios 14:324–336

Retallack GJ (1999b) Post-apocalyptic greenhouse paleoclimate revealed by earliest Triassic paleosols in the Sydney Basin, Australia. Geol Soc Am Bull 111:52–70

Retallack GJ (2001a) Soils of the past. An introduction to paleopedology. Blackwell Science, Oxford, 404 pp

Retallack GJ (2001b) *Scoyenia* burrows from Ordovician palaeosols of the Juniata Formation in Pennsylvania. Palaeontology 44:209–235

Retallack GJ (2004) Late Oligocene bunch grassland and early Miocene sod grassland paleosols from central Oregon, USA. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 207:203–237

Retallack GJ (2008) Cambrian paleosols and landscapes of South Australia. Aust J Earth Sci 55:1083–1106

Retallack GJ (2009) Cambrian-Ordovician non-marine fossils from South Australia. Alcheringa 33:355–391

Retallack GJ, Alonso-Zarza AM (1998) Middle Triassic paleosols and paleoclimate of Antarctica. J Sediment Res 68:169–184

Retallack GJ, Dilcher D (1981) A coastal hypothesis for the dispersal and rise to dominance of flowering plants. In: Niklas K (ed) Paleobotany, paleoecology and evolution 2. Praeger, New York, pp 27–77

Retallack GJ, Dilcher D (1986) Cretaceous angiosperm invasion of North America. Cret Res 7:227–252

Retallack GJ, Feakes CJ (1987) Trace fossil evidence for Late Ordovician animals on land. Science 235:61–63

Retallack GJ, Germán-Heins J (1994) Evidence from paleosols for the geological antiquity of rain forests. Science 265:499–502

Retallack GJ, Krull ES (1999) Ecosystem shift at the Permian-Triassic boundary in Antarctica. Aust J Earth Sci 46:785–812

Retallack GJ, Bestland EA, Dugas DP (1995) Miocene paleosols and habitats of Proconsul on Rusinga Island, Kenya. J Human Evol 29:53–91

Retallack GJ, Krull ES, Robinson SE (1996a) Permian and Triassic paleosols and paleoenvironments of the central Transantarctic Mountains, Antarctica. Antarctic J 31:29–32

Retallack GJ, Veevers JJ, Morante R (1996b) Global early Triassic coal gap between Late Permian extinction and MiddleTriassic recovery of peat-forming plants. Geol Soc Am Bull 108:195–207

Retallack GJ, Krull ES, Robinson SE (1997) Permian and Triassic paleosols and paleoenvironments of southern Victoria Land, Antarctica. Antarctic J 33:33–36

Retallack GJ, Bestland EA, Fremd TJ (2000) Eocene and Oligocene paleosols of Central Oregon and environmental change in central Oregon. Spec Pap Geol Soc Am 344:1–192

Retallack GJ, Tanaka S, Tate T (2002a) Late Miocene advent of tall grassland paleosols in Oregon. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 183:329–354

Retallack GJ, Wynn JG, Benefit BR, McCrossin ML (2002b) Paleosols and paleoenvironments of the middle Miocene, Maboko Formation, Kenya. J Hum Evol 42:659–703

Retallack GJ, Smith RMH, Ward PD (2003) Vertebrate extinction across Permian–Triassic boundary in Karoo Basin, South Africa. Geol Soc Am Bull 115:1133–1152

Retallack GJ, Jahren A, Sheldon N, Chakrabarti R, Metzger CA, Smith R (2005) The Permian–Triassic boundary in Antarctica. Antarctic Sci 17:241–258

Retallack GJ, Sheldon N, Carr P, Fanning M, Thompson C, Williams M, Jones B, Hutton A (2011) Multiple Early Triassic greenhouse crises impeded recovery from Late Permian mass extinction. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 308:233–251

Rice C, Ashcroft W, Batten D, Boyce AJ, Caulfield JBD, Fallick AE, Hole MJ, Jones E, Pearson MJ, Rogers G, Saxton JM, Stuart FM, Trewin NH, Turner G (1995) A Devonian auriferous hot spring system, Rhynie, Scotland. J Geol Soc Lond 152:229–250

Richardson AMM (1983) The effect of the burrows of a crayfish on the respiration of the surrounding soil. Soil Biol Biochem 15:239–242

Richardson AMM, Wong V (1995) The effect of a burrowing rcayfish, *Parastacoides* sp., on the vegetation of Tasmanian wet heathlands. Fresh Crayf 10:174–182

Ritchie JM (1987) Trace fossils of burrowing Hymenoptera from Laetoli. In: Leakey MD, Harris JM (eds) Laetoli, a Pliocene Site in Northern Tanzania. Oxford Science Publications, New York, pp 433–438

Roberts EM, Tapanila L (2006) A new social insect nest from the Upper Cretaceous Kaiparowits Formation of southern Utah. J Paleont 80:768–774

Roberts DL, Bateman MD, Murray-Wallace CV, Carr AS, Holmes PJ (2008) Last interglacial fossil elephant trackways dated by OSL/AAR in coastal aeolianites, Still Bay, South Africa. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 257:261–279

Robertson DS, McKenna MC, Toon OB, Hope S, Lillegraven JA (2004) Survival in the first hours of the Cenozoic. Geol Soc Am Bull 116:760–768

Rode AL, Babcock LE (2003) Phylogeny of fossil and extant freshwater crayfish and some closely related nephropid lobsters. J Crust Biol 23:418–435

Roselli FL (1987) Paleoicnología. Nidos de insectos fósiles de la cubertura Mesozoica del Uruguay. Publ Mus Mun Nueva Palmira 1:1–56

Ross A (1996) Chasing hawkmoths. J Biogeogr 23:265–267

Rudolph EH (1997) Aspectos fisicoquímicos del hábitat y morfología de las galerías del camarón excavador Parastacus nicoleti (Philippi, 1882) (Decapoda: Parastacidae) en el sur de Chile. Gayana 61:97–108

Rudolph EH, Crandall KA (2005) A new species of burrowing crayfish, Virilastacus rucapihuelensis (Crustacea: Decapoda: Parastacidae), from southern Chile. Proc Biol Soc Wash 118:765–776

Sacchi E, Petti M (2008) Insect pupation chambers from the Pleistocene paleosols of Santo Stefano Island (Pontine Archipelago, Central Italy). Stud Trent Sci Nat Acta Geol 83:205–210

Sánchez MV, Genise JF (2009) Cleptoparasitism and detritivory in dung beetle fossil brood balls from Patagonia, Argentina. Palaeontology 52:837–848

Sánchez MV, Krause JM, González MG, Dinghi PA, Genise JF (2010a) The pupation chamber of dung beetles (Coleoptera: Scarabaeidae: Scarabaeinae). Coleop Bull 64:277–284

Sánchez MV, Laza JH, Bellosi ES, Genise JF (2010b) Ichnostratigraphy of middle Cenozoic *Coprinisphaera* from central Patagonia: Insights into the evolution of dung beetles, herbivores and grass-dominated habitats. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 297:633–648

Sánchez MV, González MG, Genise JF (2010c) Phytolith analysis of *Coprinisphaera*, unlocking dung beetle behaviour, herbivore diets and palaeoenvironments along de Middle Eocene-Early Miocene of Patagonia. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 285:224–236

Sánchez MV, Genise JF, Bellosi ES, Román-Carrión JL, Cantil LF (2013) Dung beetle brood balls from the Pleistocene highland palaeosols of Andean Ecuador: A reassessment of Sauer's *Coprinisphaera* and their palaeoenvironments. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 386: 257–274

Sandau SD (2005) The paleoclimate and paleoecology of a Uintan (late middle Eocene) flora and fauna from the Uinta basin, Utah. Unpublished MSc thesis, Brigham Young University, 106 pp

Sands WS (1987) Ichnocoenoses of probable termite origin from Laetoli. In: Leakey MD, Harris JM (eds) Laetoli, a Pliocene Site in Northern Tanzania. Oxford Science Publications, New York, pp 409–433

Sarjeant WAS (1975) Plant trace fossils. In: Frey RW (ed) The study of trace fossils. Springer, New York, pp 163–179

Sarzetti LC, Dinghi P, Genise JF, Bedatou E, Verde M (2014) Curved fossil bee cells as tools for reconstructing the evolutionary history and geographic palaeodistribution of Diphaglossinae (Apoidea, Colletidae). Palaeontology 57:447–455

Sauer W (1955) *Coprinisphaera ecuadoriensis*, un fósil singular del Pleistoceno. Bol Inst Cienc Nat 1:123–132

Sauer E, Schremmer F (1969) Fossil Insekten-Bauten aus dem Tertiar des Hegaus (S-Deutschland). Senckenberg Leth 50:1–19

Savrda CE, Blanton-Hooks AD, Collier JW, Drake RA, Graves RL, Hall AG, Nelson AI, Slone JC, Williams DD, Wood HA (2000) *Taenidium* and associated ichnofossils in fluvial deposits, Cretaceous Tuscaloosa Formation, Eastern Alabama, Southeastern U.S.A. Ichnos 7:227–242

Schaefer C (2001) Brazilian latosols and their B horizon microstructure as long-term biotic constructs. Aust J Soil Res 39:909–926

Schütze E (1907) Die Lagerungsverhalttenisse Bunter Breccie an der Bahnlinie Donaukworth-Trreuchtlingen und ihre Bedeutung fur das Riesproblem. In: Branca W, Fraas E (eds) Physilakische Abhandlungen der Koniglich Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften Berlin 2. pp 25–26

Schwert DP (1979) Description and significance of a fossil earthworm (Oligochaeta: Lumbricidae) cocoon from postglacial sediments in southern Ontario. Can J Zool 57:1402–1405

Sciutto JC (1981) Geología del Codo del Senguerr, Chubut, Argentina. In: Actas del VII Congreso Geológico Argentino, San Luis. pp 203–219

Sciutto JC (1995) Estratigrafía y paleoecología del lote 37, norte de Sarmiento, Chubut, Argentina. Nat Patagonica (Cienc Tierra) 3:45–55

Sciutto JC, Martínez RD (1996) El Grupo Chubut en el anticlinal Sierra Nevada, Chubut, Argentina. In: Actas del XIII Congreso Geológico Argentino y III Congreso de Exploración de Hidrocarburos 1. pp 67–75

Shcherbakov CD (2008) Review of the fossil and extant genera of the cicada family Tettigarctidae (Hemiptera: Cicadoidea). Russian Ent J 17:343–348

Sheehan PM, De F (1992) Major extinctions of land-dwelling vertebrates at the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary, eastern Montana. Geology 20:556–560

Sheldon ND, Tabor NJ (2009) Quantitative paleoenvironmental and paleoclimatic reconstruction using paleosols. Earth-Sci Rev 95:1–52

Sheldon ND, Hamer JMM (2010) Evidence for an Early Sagebrush Ecosystem in the Latest Eocene of Montana. J Geol 118:435–445

Skalski AW (1990) Lepidoptera in fossil resins with emphasis on new investigations. Prace Muz Ziemi 41:163–164

Smith RMH (1995) Changing fluvial environments across the Permian-Triassic boundary in the Karoo Basin, South Africa, and possible causes of tetrapod extinctions. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 117:81–104

Smith RMH, Kitching J (1997) Sedimentology and vertebrate taphonomy of the *Tritylodon* Acme Zone: a reworked palaeosol in the Lower Jurassic Elliot Formation, Karoo Supergroup, South Africa. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 131:29–50

Smith RMH, Mason TR (1998) Sedimentary environments and trace fossils of tertiary oasis deposits in the central Namib Desert, Namibia. Palaios 13:547–559

Smith RMH, Mason TR, Ward JD (1993) Flash-flood sediments and ichnofacies of the Late Pleistocene Homeb Silts, Kuiseb River, Namibia. Sediment Geol 85:579–599

Smith JJ, Hasiotis ST, Kraus MJ, Woody DT (2008a) *Naktodemasis bowni*: new ichnogenus and ichnospecies for adhesive meniscate burrows (AMB), paleoenvironmental implications, Paleogene Willwood Formation, Bighorn Basin, Wyoming. J Paleontol 82:267–278

Smith JJ, Hasiotis ST, Kraus MJ, Woody DT (2008b) Relationship of floodplain ichnocoenoses to paleopedology, paleohydrology, and paleoclimate in the Willwood Formation, Wyoming, during the Paleocene-Eocene Thermal Maximum. Palaios 23:683–699

Smith JJ, Hasiotis ST, Woody DT, Kraus MJ (2008c) Paleoclimatic implications of crayfish-mediated prismatic structures in paleosols of the Paleogene Willwood Formation, Bighorn Basin, Wyoming, U.S.A. J Sediment Res 78:323–334

Smith JJ, Hasiotis ST, Kraus MJ, Woody DT (2009) Transient dwarfism of soil fauna during the Paleocene-eocene thermal maximum. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:17655–17660

Smith JJ, Platt BF, Ludvigson GA, Thomasson JR (2011) Ant-nest ichnofossils in honeycomb calcretes, Neogene Ogallala Formation, High Plains region of western Kansas, U.S.A. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 308:383–394

Sohn JC, Labandeira CC, Davis D, Mitter CM (2012) An annotated catalog of fossil and subfossil Lepidoptera (Insecta: Holometabola) of the world. Zootaxa 3286:1–132

Sokol A (1987) A note on the existence of pre-Pleistocene fossils of parastacid crayfish. Victorian Nat 104:81–82

Souza Carvalho I, Gracioso DE, Sequeira Fernandes AC (2009) Uma câmara de coleóptero (*Coprinisphaera*) do Cretáceo Superior, Bacia Bauru. Rev Bras Geociências 39:679–684

Spicer RA, Parrish JT (1987) Plant megafossils, vertebrate remains, and paleoclimate of the Kogosukruk Tongue (Late Cretaceous), North Slope, Alaska. Accomplishments in Alaska. US Geol Surv Circ 988:47–48

Stewart BS, Thorson PH (1994) Natural erosion of fossil root concretions in the Caliche Forest, San Miguel Island, California, 1984–1991. In: Halvorson WL, Maender GJ (eds) The Fourth California Islands Symposium: update on the status of resources. Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History, Santa Barbara, CA, pp 303–310

Suter PJ, Richardson AMM (1977) The biology of two species of *Engaeus* (Decapoda: Parastacidae) in Tasmania. III. Habitat, food, associated fauna and distribution. Mar Freshwat Res 28:95–103

Tandon SK, Naug B (1984) Facies-trace fossil relationships in a Plio-Pleistocene fluvial sequence, the Upper Siwalik Subgroup, Punjab Sub-Himalaya, India. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 47:277–299

Tanner LH (1996) Pedogenic record of Early Jurassic climate in the Fundy Rift Basin, Eastern Canada. In: Morales M (ed) The Continental Jurassic. Museum of Northern Arizona, Flagstaff, AZ, pp 565–574

Tanner LH (2000) Palustrine-lacustrine and alluvial facies of the (Norian) Owl Rock Formation (Chinle Group), Four Corners Region, Southwestern U.S.A: implications for Late Triassic Paleoclimate. J Sediment Res 70:1280–1289

Tanner LH, Lucas SG (2012) Carbonate facies of the Upper Triassic Ojo Huelos Member, San Pedro Arroyo Formation (Chinle Group), southern New Mexico: paleoclimatic implications. Sediment Geol 273–274:73–90

Tapanila L, Roberts EN (2012) The earliest evidence of holometabolan insect pupation in conifer wood. PLoS One 7(2):e3166

Tauber AA (1996) Los representantes del género *Protypotherium* (Mam. Notoungulata, Interatheridae) del Mioceno Temprano del sudoeste de la provincia de Santa Cruz. Misc Acad Nac Cienc Córdoba 95:3–29

Thackray GD (1994) Fossil nest of sweat bees (Halictinae) from a Miocene paleosol, Rusinga Island, Western Kenya. J Paleont 68:795–800

Therrien F (2005) Palaeoenvironments of the latest Cretaceous (Maastrichtian) dinosaurs of Romania: insights from fluvial deposits and paleosols of the Transylvanian and Hateg basins. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 218:15–56

Therrien F, Fastovsky DE (2000) Paleoenvironments of Early Theropods, Chinle Formation (Late Triassic), Petrified Forest National Park, Arizona. Palaios 15:194–211

Therrien F, Zelenitsky DK, Weishampel DB (2009) Palaeoenvironmental reconstruction of the Late Cretaceous Sânpetru Formation (Hateg Basin, Romania) using paleosols and implications for the "disappearance" of dinosaurs. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 272:37–52

Thomas SG, Tabor NJ, Yang W, Myers TS, Yang Y, Wang D (2011) Palaeosol stratigraphy across the Permian-Triassic boundary, Bogda Mountains, NW China: implications for palaeoenvironmental transition through earth's largest mass extinction. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 308:41–64

Tófalo OR, Pazos PJ (2010) Paleoclimatic implications (Late Cretaceous-Paleogene) from micromorphology of calcretes, palustrine limestones and silcretes, southern Paraná Basin, Uruguay. J South Am Earth Sci 29:665–675

Tonello MS, Zárate M, Mancini MV (2002) Trazas radicales ferrosas en una secuencia aluvial del río Quequén Grande (Buenos Aires): implicancias estratigráficas y ambientales. Ameghiniana 39:163–174

Toon A, Pérez-Losada M, Schweitzer CE, Feldmann RM, Carlson M, Crandall KA (2010) Gondwanan radiation of the Southern Hemisphere crayfishes (Decapoda: Parastacidae): evidence from fossils and molecules. J Biogeogr 37:2275–2290

Tosolini AMP, Pole M (2010) Insect and clitellate annelid traces in mesofossil assemblages from the Cretaceous of Australasia. Alcheringa 34:397–419

Turner BR (1993) Paleosols in Permo-Triassic continental sediments from Prydz Bay, East Antarctica. J Sed Res 63:694–706

Turner CE, Peterson F (2004) Reconstruction of the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation extinct ecosystem—a synthesis. Sediment Geol 167:309–355

Ubilla M (1996) Paleozoología del Cuaternario continental de la Cuenca Norte del Uruguay: biogeografía, cronología y aspectos climático-ambientales. Tesis doctoral, Universidad de la República, Montevideo, 232 pp

Uchman A, Alvaro JJ (2000) Non-marine invertebrate trace fossils from the Tertiary Calatayud-Teruel Basin, NE Spain. Rev Esp Paleont 15:203–218

Umazano AM, Bellosi ES, Visconti G, Melchor RN (2008) Mechanisms of aggradation in fluvial systems influenced by explosive volcanism: an example from the Upper Cretaceous Bajo Barreal Formation, San Jorge Basin, Argentina. Sediment Geol 203:213–228

Vanstone SD (1991) Early Carboniferous (Mississippian) paleosols from Southwest Britain, influence of climatic change on soil development. J Sediment Res 61:445–457

Varela AN, Veiga GD, Poiré DG (2012) Sequence stratigraphic analysis of Cenomanian greenhouse palaeosols: a case study from southern Patagonia, Argentina. Sediment Geol 271–272:67–82

Verde M, Genise JF (2007) Un nuevo icnotaxón de nidos de abejas en las "Calizas del Queguay", Paleoceno-Eoceno, Uruguay. In: Resúmenes de la V reunión Argentina de Icnología y III Reunión de Icnología del Mercosur, Ushuaia. p 59

Verde M, Genise JF (2010) *Elipsoideichnus meyeri* Roselli 1987, a fossil bee nest from the Eocene of Uruguay. In: Resúmenes del Primer Simposio Latinoamericano de Icnología, São Leopoldo, Brasil. p 66

Verde M, Ubilla M, Jimenez JJ, Genise JF (2007) A new earthworm trace fossil from paleosols: aestivation chambers from the Late Pleistocene Sopas Formation of Uruguay. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 243:339–347

Veroslavsky G, Martinez S (1996) Registros no depositacionales del Paleoceno-Eoceno del Uruguay: nuevo enfoque para viejos problemas. Rev Univ Guarulhos Geociencias 1:32–41

Veroslavsky G, Martinez S, De Santa AH (1997) Calcretas de aguas subterráneas y pedogénicas: génesis de los depósitos carbonáticos de la Cuenca de Santa Lucía, sur del Uruguay (Cretácico Superior?-Paleógeno). Rev Asoc Arg Sed 4:25–35

Villafañe A, Pérez ME, Abello A, Bedatou E, Bond M (2008) Nueva localidad fosilífera del Mioceno Medio en el noroeste de la provincia del Chubut. In: Resumenes del III Congreso Latinoamericano de Paleontología de Vertebrados, Neuquén, Argentina. p 265

Visscher H, Looy C, Collinson M, Brinkhuis H, van Konijnenburg-van Cittert J, Kürschner W, Sephton M (2004) Environmental mutagenesis during the end-Permian ecological crisis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:12952–12956

Voigt S (2007) Tunnel-and-chamber burrows: evidence for fossorial behavior of insects in Permo-Carboniferous alluvial-plain deposits? In: Bromley RG, Buatois LM, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment-organism interactions: a multifaceted ichnology. SEPM Special Publications, Kansas, pp 361–371

Volohonsky E, Wisshak M, Blomeier D, Seilacher A, Snigirevsky S (2008) A new helical trace fossil from the Lower Devonian of Spitsbergen (Svalbard) and its palaeoenvironmental significance. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimat Palaeoecol 267:17–20

Wang Y, Edwards D, Bassett M, Xu H-H, Xiao J, Jiang Q, Zhang X (2013) Enigmatic occurrence of Permian plant roots in lower Silurian rocks, Guizhou Province, China. Palaeontology 56:679–683

Ward PS (2007) Phylogeny, classification, and species-level taxonomy of ants (Hymenoptera: Formicidae). Zootaxa 1668:549–563

Ward PD, Montgomery DR, Smith R (2000) Altered river morphology in South Africa related to the Permian-Triassic extinction. Science 289:1740

Weyenbergh H (1869) Sur les insectes fossiles du calcaire lithographique de la Bavière, qui se trouvent au Musée Teyler. Arch Mus Teyler 2:247–294

Whitmore N, Huryn AD, Arbuckle CJ, Jansma F (2000) Ecology and distribution of the freshwater crayfish *Paranephrops zealandicus* in Otago. Implications for conservation. Sci Conserv 148:42

Wiegmann BM, Trautwein MD, Kim J, Cassel BK, Bertone MA, Winterton SL, Yeates DK (2009) Single-copy nuclear genes resolve the phylogeny of the holometabolous insects. BMC Biol 7:1–16

Willis K, McElwain J (2002) The evolution of plants. Oxford Univ Press, Oxford, 378 pp

Wnuk C, Pfefferkorn HW (1987) A Pennsylvanian-age terrestrial storm deposit; using plant fossils to characterize the history and process of sediment accumulation. J Sediment Res 57:212–221

Wright VP, Platt NH, Marriott SB, Beck VH (1995) A classification of rhizogenic (root-formed) calcretes, with examples from the Upper Jurassic-Lower Cretaceous of Spain and Upper Cretaceous of southern France. Sediment Geol 100:143–158

Woodburne M, Goin F, Bond M, Carlini A, Gelfo J, López G, Iglesias A, Zimicz A (2014) Paleogene land mammal faunas of South America; a response to global climatic changes and indigenous floral diversity. J Mamm Evol 21:1–73

Yakimenko E, Targul'yan V, Chumakov N, Arefev M, Inozemtsev S (2000) Paleosols in upper permian sedimentary rocks, Sukhona river (Severnaya Dvina basin). Lithol Min Resour 35:331–344

Yelinek K, Chin K (2007) Probable dung beetle burrows associated with *Daemonelix*, beaver burrows in the Miocene Harrison Formation, Nebraska, U.S.A. In: Bromley RG, Buatois LM, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Melchor RN (eds) Sediment-organism interactions: a multifaceted ichnology. SEPM Special Publications, Kansas, pp 343–350

Zeuner FE (1927) Eine Sphingidenraupe aus dem Obermiozän von Böttingen. Palaeont Zeit 8:321–326

Zeuner FE, Manning FJ (1976) A monograph on fossil bees (Hymenoptera, Apoidea). Bull Br Mus Nat Hist (Geol) 27:149–268

Zhang JF, Sun B, Zhang X (1994) Miocene insects and spiders from Shanwang, Shandong. Science Press, Beijing, China, 298 pp

Zonneveld JP, Lavigne JM, Bartels WS, Gunnell GF (2006) *Lunulichnus tuberosus* ichnogen. and ichnosp. nov. from the Early Eocene Wasatch Formation, Fossil Butte National Monument, Wyoming: an arthropod-constructed trace fossil associated with alluvial firmgrounds. Ichnos 13:87–94

Zucol A, Brea M, Bellosi ES (2010) Phytolith analysis in Gran Barranca (central Patagonia): the middle-late Eocene. In: Madden R, Carlini A, Vucetich M, Kay R (eds) The paleontology of Gran Barranca: evolution and environmental change through the Middle Cenozoic of Patagonia. Cambridge University Press, New York, pp 317–340

Chapter 14
The Cenozoic Radiation of Mammals

Verónica Krapovickas and Sergio Vizcaíno

14.1 Introduction

Mammals are at present among the most successful vertebrates on Earth. On land they inhabit almost all the habitats from the desert to the poles and have diverse locomotor and dietary niches and size ranges. The Mesozoic record of mammals spans about 155 Ma (the earliest mammals are known from the Late Triassic), more than twice the duration of the entire Cenozoic Era (Luo 2007). Even though their fossil record is relatively scarce, Mesozoic mammals were diverse and had assorted biologic roles (Luo 2007). The end-Cretaceous mass extinction event that eliminated non-avian dinosaurs and many other mostly marine taxa has been proposed to having triggered the evolutionary radiation of Cenozoic mammals (Archibald and Deutschman 2001). Following e.g. Alroy (1999), Benton (1995), and Foote et al. (1999), among others, most mammalian orders originated and diversified in a short period of time (10 Mya) soon after the Cretaceous/Tertiary (K/T) boundary. Studies based on molecular data introduced two other models for the diversification on mammals: the long-fuse and the short-fuse models. The first model postulated an extended lag for the radiation of mammals as orders originated in the Cretaceous but diversified after the K/T transition (e.g. Springer et al. 2003). The second model proposed that the origin of orders and their diversification occurred

V. Krapovickas (✉)
IDEAN-CONICET, Departamento de Ciencias Geológicas, FCEN, Universidad de Buenos Aires, Ciudad Universitaria, Pabellón 2, Ciudad Autónoma de Buenos Aires C1428EHA, Argentina
e-mail: vkrapovickas@gl.fcen.uba.ar

S. Vizcaíno
CONICET, División Paleontología Vertebrados, Museo de La Plata, Unidades de Investigación Anexo Museo, FCNyM-UNLP, 60 y 122, B1900FWA LA Plata, Argentina

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_14

well back into the Cretaceous (e.g. Springer 1997; Kumar and Hedges 1998). Recent studies integrating morphologic and molecular data proposed that the origin of extant orders of mammals occurred during the Late Cretaceous and major diversification occurred during and after the early Eocene, remaining the diversification rates unchanged after the K/T transition (Bininda-Emonds et al. 2007). Up to now, fossil evidence supporting the previous models was restricted to body fossils. However, although even more sparse, the Mesozoic footprint record of early mammals may provide further evidence.

In this contribution we briefly summarize the Mesozoic and Cenozoic record of footprints attributed to mammals worldwide. Also, we address in more detail the evolutionary implications of the Cenozoic ichnologic record of South American mammals. Regarding the latter, we will first analyze chronologic and geographic changes in the composition of the mammalian ichnofaunas and compare them with those of body fossils. Second, we will consider the paleoenvironmental distribution of mammalian footprints and their paleoecological significance.

14.1.1 Mammalian Ichnology Before the K/T Transition

The Mesozoic record of mammals is mostly composed of isolated teeth; postcranial skeletons and skulls are rare (Kielan–Jaworowska et al. 2004). This fact complicates in-depth evaluation of morphologic variations of footprints produced by distinct early mammalian lineages, making the assignment to putative producers of footprints vague. Distinguishing footprints assignable to mammals from other taxa of the mammalian evolutionary line as nonmammalian cynodonts and even basal synapsids is problematic (e.g. Schultz-Pittman et al. 1996; Lockley et al. 2004).

One of the most remarkable footprints known from the Mesozoic is *Ameghinichnus patagonicus*, from the Middle Jurassic La Matilde Formation of Santa Cruz Province, Argentina. They are one of the unquestioned examples of footprints attributed to early mammals. Casamiquela (1964) proposed a mammalian trackmaker due to the morphology of the *manus* and *pes* prints and the galloping and hopping gaits evidenced on the trackways. This author inferred that the trackmaker was a quadrupedal animal with similarly-shaped, pentadactyl *manus* and *pes*, with the *manus* being slightly smaller than the *pes*. The impressions of manual and pedal digits II–IV are of similar length, and those of digits I and V are slightly shorter. The metacarpal/tarsal and phalangeal pads are well preserved, and there are no claw marks (Casamiquela 1964). The trackways record a walking gait, with the manus-pes sets in an alternate position in relation to the midline. In contrast, hopping trackways have manus-pes sets grouped at relatively the same position in relation to the midline (Casamiquela 1964). Most authors supported Casamiquela's (1964) identification of the *Ameghinichnus* trackmaker as an early mammal (e.g. Leonardi and de Oliveira 1990; Leonardi 1994; Rainforth and Lockley 1996; Martin and Rauhut 2005; Rougier et al. 2007a, b). Casamiquela (1964) proposed "pantotheres" as the mammalian producer, whereas Kielan-Jaworowska and Gambaryan (1994) attributed *Ameghinichnus* to multituberculates.

Similar tracks from other ichnofossiliferous localities worldwide have been referred to *Ameghinichnus*, as it is the best defined ichnotaxa assigned to an early mammal. Olsen (1980) described a series of ichnofossils from the Lower Jurassic Newark Supergroup, later recognized as representing several species of *Ameghinichnus*, which he ascribed to nonmammalian cynodonts, possibly tritheledontids (Olsen et al. 2002). Footprints with hair impressions have been recorded in the Triassic Stomberg group in Lesotho and inferred to have been produced by nonmammalian cynodonts or early mammals (Ellenberger 1972, 1974, 1975). De Valais (2009) recognized the ichnotaxa *Eopentapodiscus* to be the only synonymous with *Ameghinichnus*, after reviewing numerous icnotaxa (*Acropentapodiscus*, *Amphibiopodiscus*, *Aristopentapodiscus*, *Dinopentapodiscus*, *Eoameghinichnus*, *Grypopentapodiscus*, and *Pseudameghinichnus*) once attributed to the ichnogenus from the Upper Triassic-Lower Jurassic Elliot Formation of Lesotho (Ellenberger 1970), and accepted the assignment to *Ameghinichnus* given by other authors to materials from the Towaco Formation (Lower Jurassic) of the Newark basin, USA (Olsen and Rainforth 2001), and the Lower Jurassic of Sołtyków, Poland (Gierliński et al. 2004).

Another ichnotaxon, *Brasilichnium elusivum*, attributed to Mesozoic early mammals is recorded in numerous localities. This ichnotaxon was originally described from the Botucatu Formation (Upper Jurassic-Lower Cretaceous) of Brazil and interpreted as corresponding to small-sized mammals (Leonardi 1980, 1981; Fernandes and Carvalho 2008). Later, it was recorded in classical Lower Jurassic outcrops of USA, including the Navajo Sandstone and the Moenave Formation, and reinterpreted as possibly produced by advanced therapsids or early mammals (Lockley and Hunt 1995; Lockley et al. 1998; Rainforth and Lockley 1996; Loope 2006). Other Cretaceous footprints of mammals have been reposted from the Gate Formation (Late Cretaceous) of Alberta, Canada, and ascribed to several mammalian trackmakers (Sarjeant 2000; McCrea and Sarjeant 2001).

At present, there is just one example of footprints attributed to marsupial mammals, *Duquettichnus kooli*, described by Sarjeant and Thulborn (1986) from the Lower Cretaceous of the Peace River Canyon, British Columbia. The footprints record syndactyly of pedal digits II and III, supporting a marsupial origin.

Some of the most significant and better preserved ichnologic records of Mesozoic mammals are from Gondwana, despite their relatively scarce body-fossil record (e.g., Kota Formation, India; Yadagiri 1984). This differs from the body-fossil record in boreal landmasses, where Mesozoic mammalian diversity and abundance is much higher (Bonaparte 1986, 1990, 1995; Bonaparte and Kielan-Jaworowska 1987; Luo et al. 2002; Kielan–Jaworowska et al. 2004).

14.1.2 Mammalian Ichnology After the K/T Transition

The global ichnologic record of mammals is poor for the Paleogene, most likely representing less than 17 % of the record for the entire Cenozoic (McDonald et al. 2007). Paleocene footprints are extremely rare, with just a few tracksites reported worldwide (Hunt and Lucas 2007), all of them in North America (e.g. Peabody 1954; Johnson 1986; Lockley and Meyer 2000).

The only confirmed tracksite that contain Paleocene mammal footprints is from Alberta, Canada. It corresponds to a trackway preserved on a fallen block from strata belonging to the Porcupine Hills Formation at Calgary (McCrea et al. 2004). The footprints were ascribed to *Sarjeantipes whitea* and interpreted as produced by creodont mammals. In 1928, Rutherford and Russell unveiled Paleocene footprints found near Red Deer, Alberta, attributed to a mammalian track maker (Rutherford and Russell 1928; Russell 1930). McCrea et al. (2004) re-studied the material suggesting a crocodilian track maker. It is notable that, even apparently depauperate, the Paleocene tetrapod footprints have scarce mammals represented and is mostly composed by amphibian, reptiles, and birds, in contrast with mammal footprints represented during the rest of the Cenozoic (Hunt and Lucas 2008) that became more frequent through the Eocene and Oligocene.

The most diverse and well-studied Eocene mammalian ichnofauna is from the late Eocene of Texas (Sarjeant and Langston 1994). It records footprints attributed to insectivoran, creodont, carnivore, mesonychian, rodent, perissodactyl, and artiodactyl trackmakers. The trans-Peco ichnofauna is one of the best recorded examples of a Paleogene ichnofauna globally, even though it could be enlightening to reevaluate this ichnassemblage in the light of new discoveries. Another remarkable ichnofauna is from the Chuckanut Formation of Northern Washington, USA (Mustoe 2002). This ichnofauna is mainly composed of multiple bird tracks and also record remarkable mammal footprints attributed to extinct lineages, such as Pantodonta or Dinocerata and early equids or tapiroids. Other records are from Europe (e.g. Desnoyers 1859; Ellenberger 1980), Asia (West et al. 1983; Abbassi and Lockley 2004; Ataabadi and Khazaee 2004), North America (e.g. Greben and Lockley 1992; Lockley and Hunt 1995; Moussa 1968), and South America (e.g. Noblet et al. 1995).

One of the best preserved and abundant mammalian footprints corresponds to the lower Oligocene of southeastern France (Demathieu et al. 1984; Costeur et al. 2009). It records abundant perissodactyl (early Rhinocerotids) and artiodactyl (Lophiomerycids and/or Entelodonts) track and trackways and a footprint attributed to a mustelid-like carnivore. Some other examples are recorded from additional localities of Europe (e.g. Tobein 1952; Casanovas-Cladellas and Santafé-Llopis 1982; Astibia et al. 1994; Prats and López 1995; Murelaga et al. 2000; Uchman et al. 2004), North America (e.g. Nixon 1991; Lockley and Hunt 1995; Terry and Wells 1995), and South America (e.g. Noblet et al. 1995).

For the Neogene the number of recorded tracksites grows exponentially (for more detail, see McDonald et al. 2007). Herein, we briefly highlight some of the classic outcrops documenting relevant mammal footprints. The research performed in these localities has documented a wide variety of mammal footprints and established the most used ichnotaxonomy of Cenozoic tracks and trackways. This is the case of the work of Vyalov (1965, 1966) who reported numerous bird and mammal footprints from the Miocene of Ukraine. The mammalian footprints were ascribed to numerous ichnotaxa assigned to canids (*Bestiopeda gracilis*), felids

(*Bestiopeda bestia*, *Bestiopeda sanguinolenta*), artiodactyls (*Pecoripeda amalphaea*, *Pecoripeda dicrocervoides*, *Pecoripeda djali*, *Pecoripeda gazelle*, *Pecoripeda satyri*), and perissodactyls (*Hippipeda aurelianis*). The Miocene of the Romanian Carpathians records also a diverse and excellent preserved avian and mammalian ichnofauna (Panin and Avram 1962; Panin 1965). Mammals are represented by canids (*Canipeda longigriffa*), felids (*Felipeda felis*, *Felipeda lynxi*), artiodactyl (*Pecoripeda gazelle*), and proboscidean (*Proboscipeda enigmatica*) footprints. Other significant records are known from Europe (e.g. Pérez-Lorente et al. 1999; Astibia et al. 2007; Fornós et al. 2002), North America (e.g. Robertson and Sternberg 1942; Scrivner and Bottjer 1986; Lockley and Hunt 1995; McNeil et al. 1999; Lucas 2007), Oceania (e.g Carey et al. 2011), Africa (e.g. Leakey and Harris 1987; Robert et al. 2008; Scott et al. 2009), and South America (e.g. Aramayo and Manera de Bianco 1987a, b). Globally, the Neogene mammalian record is dominated by ungulate footprints as perissodactyls, artiodactyls, and proboscideans, followed by carnivores as felids and canids.

Reviews of Cenozoic vertebrate ichnology are scarce. The contributions of Leonardi (1994), McDonald et al. (2007), Hunt and Lucas (2007), and Lucas (2007) are the starting point to deeper ichnologic analyses, not only compiling bibliography, but also evaluating the biologic, ethologic, and ecologic information provided by footprints in the framework of the evolutionary history of their producers. Hopefully, identifying the problems and promises of the mammalian paleoichnologic record of each continent will help to develop a research program that will permit global comparisons.

14.2 The South American Case Study

The geologic history of the main continental land masses has influenced the evolution and dispersal of their mammal faunas, resulting in radical differences among them. Thus, from many aspects, direct comparisons of mammalian communities between continents are a difficult task. For instance, the magnitude of the disparity achieved is so that the faunas are not used for global age correlations and particular land-mammal-age systems are used for different continental land masses (see Woodburne 2006 for North America; Lindsay 1997 for Eurasia; Megirian et al. 2010 for Australia; and Flynn and Swisher 1995 for South America).

The long-term isolation of the South American continent for the greater part of the Cenozoic produced a highly peculiar terrestrial biota, of which one of the best-known components is its endemic mammalian fauna; probably the best fossil record of mammals among southern hemisphere continents (Croft 2012). Several of the main groups discussed below became partially or fully extinct and/or developed morphologies many times outlying the shape ranges of their living closest relatives (e.g., carnivorous marsupials, glyptodonts, and sloths among xenarthrans, native ungulate groups). As a consequence, inferences about their paleobiology cannot rely on simplistic actualistic reference to the biology of their living closest relatives.

In the last two decades, some effort has been made to overcome this situation through the application of morphofunctional, biomechanical, and ecomorphologic approaches. Overviews on this issue with respect to carnivorous marsupials are available in Prevosti et al. (2012), on xenarthrans in Vizcaíno et al. (2008), Bargo et al. (2012) and Vizcaíno et al. (2012b), and on ungulates in Cassini et al. (2012).

In a strict sense, the inferences resulting from those approaches are in many instances difficult to verify. However, occasionally direct evidence comes to our aid. This is the case when trace fossils, such as footprints attributable to these groups, offer a tool to test functionally based hypotheses about locomotion and/or use of the substrate, and to generate new hypotheses providing valuable paleobiologic information on gait style and particular behavior (e.g., digging, scratching), which may serve as proxies for the size of the putative trackmaker.

In most cases, footprints and bones are not associated in the same stratigraphic units or facies, so then tracks become the primary source for recording the presence of the producer at those levels. As they are normally preserved in situ in the facies where they were produced, fossil footprints involve small temporal and spatial error spans for the analysis of faunal taxonomic composition and distribution and imply a close relationship between the footprints and the environments inhabited by the producers. Thus, fossil footprints emerge as useful tools for paleocommunity analysis and paleoenvironmental interpretations.

Fossil footprints in South America have been reported from different localities and ages, including ichnologic associations preserved on a single surface or several stratigraphically closely related surfaces. Leonardi (1994) summarized the ichnologic fossil record in South America known two decades ago, including that of Cenozoic mammals. In the present state of knowledge, the already mentioned peculiarities of the South American mammalian fauna preclude general comparisons of its paleoichnologic record with that from other continents.

In the second part of this chapter we endeavor to identify the problems and promises of the mammalian paleoichnology record of South America. In doing so, we update the information provided by Leonardi (1994) with new findings, reconsidering the ages according to new chronologic information and reviewing the potential producers. We also analyze chronologic and geographic changes in the composition of the mammalian faunas expressed by the ichnologic record in comparison with that of body fossils. Finally, we evaluate the paleoenvironmental distribution of mammalian footprints and their paleoecologic significance.

14.3 Faunistic Content Through the Cenozoic

Based mostly on the fossil record from Argentine lowland, high-latitude sites, different authors, such as Ameghino, Simpson, Reig, Ortiz-Jaureguizar, and Pascual, among others (for a complete account, see Goin et al. 2012), have stressed the episodic nature of the Cenozoic evolution of South American mammals, probably as a consequence of several important temporal gaps in the knowledge of these successions. The increasing amount of information collected in the last decades from new high-latitude sites and in many other areas of South America, especially the notable faunas uncovered from the Andes, produced at least two different and complementary effects. At a broader regional scale, as the biochronologic sequence of Neogene mammalian associations of southern South America became better known, cycles or phases characterized by faunal turnovers and a distinctive taxonomic composition were recognized, and paleoclimate and tectonics were identified as major driving forces in addition to the intrinsic evolutionary patterns of each mammalian lineage (Goin et al. 2012). At a continental scale, the actual patterns are far more complex, with Cenozoic mammal faunas responding also to biogeographic, sea level, ecologic, and environmental changes (Flynn et al. 2012).

Three of the five successive phases in South American mammalian evolution recognized by Goin et al. (2012) involved the Cenozoic: the Early South American (?latest Cretaceous-latest Eocene), characterized by major radiations within Metatheria and Eutheria; the Late South American (early Oligocene-middle Pliocene), with standardization of relatively few lineages among metatherians and marked radiation of hypsodont types among South American native ungulates; and the Inter-American (late Pliocene-Recent), produced by the mixture of North and South American therian lineages, with progressive decline of native faunas. According to these authors, the events that triggered these phases include global cooling, full development of the Circumpolar Antarctic Current, and arrival of platyrrhine primates and caviomorph rodents between the Early and Late South American phases. The transition from the Late South American and the Inter-American phases is marked by the Panamanian connection between the Americas and the beginning of the Great American Biotic Interchange (GABI).

During the Cenozoic part of the Early South American phase, marsupials, xenarthrans, and native ungulates underwent their first Cenozoic main radiation. Marsupials exploited a variety of adaptive zones and diets, including several small to medium granivorous, insectivorous, and insectivorous–frugivorous groups (polydolopimorphian; didelphimorphian and paucituberculates; Abello et al. 2012) and medium to large carnivorous and carnivorous–omnivorous (i.e., sparassodonts).

Xenarthrans include the Cingulata and the Pilosa. The Cingulata are exemplified by armadillos and glyptodonts, noted for the armor covering the head, body, and tail. The Pilosa are composed of the Vermilingua—the anteaters—and the Tardigrada or Folivora—living tree sloths and a much larger diversity of fossil sloths, including the gigantic ground sloths. The scarce early record of xenarthrans suggests that most of them inhabited regions not yet yielding fossils, an explanation widely accepted by paleontologists, and consistent with the high diversity of xenarthrans in the modern tropics and the correspondingly poor early Cenozoic record of that region (Flynn et al. 2012).

According to Cifelli (1985, 1993), the ungulate groups endemic to South America and the modern Ungulata (Perissodactyla and Cetartiodactyla) share a most recent common ancestor or even form a single clade themselves (Cifelli 1985, 1993). However, a recent phenomic approach split endemic South American ungulates between Pan-Euungulata and Afrotheria (O'Leary et al. 2013). Endemic South

American ungulates fall into five groups: the astrapotheres, pyrotheres, notoungulates, litopterns, and xenungulates (Simpson 1980; Marshall and Muizon 1988). Astrapotheres (including trigonostylopids) were rhinoceros-like mammals (Cifelli 1985) found in deposits of Paleocene to Miocene age. Pyrotheres were elephant-like, with tusks and bilophodont cheek teeth, and were never as diverse nor did they cover as great a span of time as the astrapotheres. They are known only from the middle Eocene through the late Oligocene. Notoungulates are by far the most diverse and abundant lineage of South American ungulates (nearly 140 species in 13 families; Croft 1999), and include animals similar to rhinoceroses, hippopotamuses, rabbits, and rodents; others do not closely resemble any living mammal. Litopterns were the second most successful group of South American ungulates in terms of diversity and longevity, spanning from the late Paleocene to the late Pleistocene (Marshall and Cifelli 1990). They include forms similar to antelopes, horses, and camels. Xenungulates are primitive, poorly known, tapir-like mammals, restricted to the Paleocene deposits of Brazil and Argentina (Gelfo et al. 2008).

The taxonomic and ecologic shift that marked the passage to the Late South American phase (Goin et al. 2012) included the arrival of caviomorph rodents and platyrrhine primates in South America, the last records of marsupials sensitive to low temperatures, the beginning of a rapid diversification of the “shrew opossums” (Paucituberculata), the radiation of large modern borhyaenoids (Sparassodonta), and the origins of the Argyrolagoidea. Among native ungulates, the diversity of hypsodont notoungulates increased after the early Oligocene, and low-crowned, bunodont ungulate types became restricted to the lower latitudes; Astrapotheria and Pyrotheria developed their larger forms during the Oligocene-Miocene (Vizcaíno et al. 2012a), disappeared by the middle late Miocene, and, by the Miocene, some lineages developed limb specialization convergent on that of equids (e.g., in proterotheriid Litopterna).

According to the most recent findings (Antoine et al. 2012), the oldest records of caviomorph rodent come from the late middle Eocene of Perú. Caviomorphs are among the most abundant taxa in every post-Oligocene fauna and soon after their arrival they radiated in a series of lineages that persist up to the present day, evolving some fossil forms that weigh in excess of a hundred kilograms (Vizcaíno et al. 2012a). The oldest record of a platyrrhine primate in South America is *Branisella* from the late Oligocene of Salla, Bolivia (Kay et al. 1998). Fossil South American primates are rare arboreal forms, mostly no larger than 10 kg, but at least one taxon reached 20 kg (Halenar 2011).

Goin et al. (2012) described the Inter-American phase as a series of pulses of the so called Great American Biotic Interchange (Stehli and Webb 1985), possibly reflecting glacial versus interglacial conditions in the Northern Hemisphere. The first North American forms to arrive in South America included cricetid rodents, procyonid, and mustelid carnivorans, and tayassuid artiodactyls. During the early Pleistocene gomphotheriids (proboscideans), camelids and cervids (artiodactyls), equids and tapirids (perissodactyls) are recorded in South America for the first time, in addition to several carnivoran lineages (felids, canids, and ursids).

As mentioned above, there is a significant biogeographic differentiation at a continental scale that was considered recently by Goin et al. (2012) and Flynn et al. (2012). Both contributions stressed the significance of the evidence provided by sites of different ages along the Andes, especially during Goin's et al. earlier phases of the Cenozoic. For instance, the latest Eocene-early Oligocene faunas of central Chile and Patagonia differ in taxonomic representation: the Chilean Tinguiririca fauna lacks hegetotheres but possesses rodents, and a number of species are distinct between the two areas (Croft et al. 2008; Flynn et al. 2003; Flynn et al. 2012). Also, the middle Miocene fauna of Quebrada Honda in southernmost Bolivia is more similar to the slightly older high-latitude fauna of Collón-Curá in Patagonia than to the contemporaneous low-latitude fauna of La Venta of Colombia (Croft 2007; Goin et al. 2012). However, there is also evidence of some late biogeographic differences during the Inter-American phase, such as the differential distributions within ground sloths (e.g. *Eremotherium* and *Megatherium*; Cartelle and De Iuliis 1995) and proboscideans (*Cuvieronius* and *Notiomastodon*; Mothé et al. 2012 and references therein), among others.

14.4 Methods

To analyze the composition of the Cenozoic South American mammal paleocommunities, we compiled incidence (=presence/absence) data for ichnologic assemblages containing diverse footprints and dismissed those represented only by one ichnologic morphotype. We conducted a cluster analysis to explore trace-fossil assemblage groupings (Q.mode) and used the Jaccard similarity index for binary data. The analysis was performed in the statistical package PAST (Hammer et al. 2001).

In the second analysis we compiled a dataset of environments of footprint preservation by age, for all assemblages with information available in the literature. The environmental data were classified in seven categories: (1) floodplain, (2) exposed sandbar, (3) marginal lacustrine, (4) wet interdune, (5) dune, (6) salt flat, and (7) marginal marine. The number of occurrences of each category per age was plotted in histograms.

14.5 The Cenozoic Track Record of South American Mammals

14.5.1 The Footprints of the San Jeronimo Group, Peru

The San Jerónimo Group (early Eocene-early Oligocene) of Peru (Carlotto 2006) holds relevant ichnologic assemblages misinterpreted for nearly a century as dinosaurian in origin, and consequently their stratigraphic levels were taken as Cretaceous in age.

Fig. 14.1 Map indicating mammal-bearing fossil footprint localities in South America

Originally, Gregory (1916) described fossil footprints from the Cuzco valley, Peru, preserved near the base of the "Couches Rouges" (San Jerónimo Group). Later, Noblet et al. (1987, 1995) described other footprint assemblages from three localities, two near Cuzco city (Kayra and Paruro) and the third at Langui near the city of Sicuani (Fig. 14.1). During the past decade, the age of the San Jerónimo Group was established as early Eocene to early Oligocene by stratigraphic studies and analysis of volcanic tuff and fission tracks (Carlotto 1998, 2002, 2006; Carlotto et al. 1995, 2005; Fornari et al. 2002). Subsequently, the producers of the footprints described by Noblet et al. (1987, 1995) were reinterpreted by Lockley et al. (1999) as notoungulates or litopterns and by Carlotto (2011) as birds, although the material was never examined in detail. The material first studied by Noblet was illustrated by Leonardi (1994) and is that discussed herein.

The San Jerónimo Group is divided in two units, both preserving fossil footprints. The footprints from Paruro occur in the lower-middle Eocene Kayra Formation (lower unit). The upper Eocene-lower Oligocene Soncco Formation (upper unit) records two different assemblages, one at Kayra and the other at Langui, near Sicuani (Fig. 14.1).

14.5.1.1 Paruro Footprints

The footprint assemblage comprises three morphotypes preserved on a single surface. The best preserved morphotype consists on homopod tridactyl footprints of a rodent-like mammal of small size (approximately 6 cm long and 3 cm wide), with long pointed digits and a plantar pad of at least one third of the total length of the footprint (Fig. 14.2c) (see plate XXXIV, Fig. 4 in Leonardi 1994). The second footprint morphotype has a poorly defined morphology and is not well illustrated. It consists of at least a tetradactyl footprint of an apparently homopod quadruped (see plate XXXIV, Fig. 2 in Leonardi 1994). The footprints are approximately 7 cm long and 7 cm wide. The material corresponds to three trackways and an isolated footprint. Leonardi (1994) described it as footprints of the size of a cat or a small dog. One poorly defined trackway of a bipedal and at least tridactyl animal represents the third morphotype preserved at Paruro (Fig. 14.2a and b) (see plate XXXIV, Figs. 1 and 3 in Leonardi 1994). It has marked toe drags that gave the impression to Noblet and Leonardi that it was produced by a sick or very old individual.

14.5.1.2 Kayra Footprints

The ichnologic record of Kayra involves an isolated tridactyl footprint, 13 cm long. It represents the impression of a mesaxonic foot with three digits directed forward. The central digit is wider and longer than the lateral digits, though it is incomplete, and lateral digits are pointed (Fig. 14.2e). The plantar pad is wide and is as long as the central digit. The footprints are interpreted here as produced by a toxodontid notoungulate.

14.5.1.3 Langui Footprints

The footprints of Langui are preserved on a single sub-vertical surface with at least three different morphologic types. An unclassifiable fourth morphotype was mentioned by Leonardi (1994). Unfortunately, there is no illustration of the footprint and for this reason we won't consider it here. The largest morphotype is represented by one trackway with two tridactyl footprints, approximately 20 cm long with a central digit longer than the lateral digits, possibly attributable to phorusrhacids (see plate XXXV, Figs. 4 and 1 in Leonardi 1994). The second morphotype consists of one trackway with seven tridactyl footprints, 10–13 cm long, of a quadruped homopod mammal with hoof-like toes (Fig. 14.2d) (see plate XXXV, Figs. 1, 2 and 6 in Leonardi 1994). The footprints are assigned to *Macrauchenichnus* isp. and

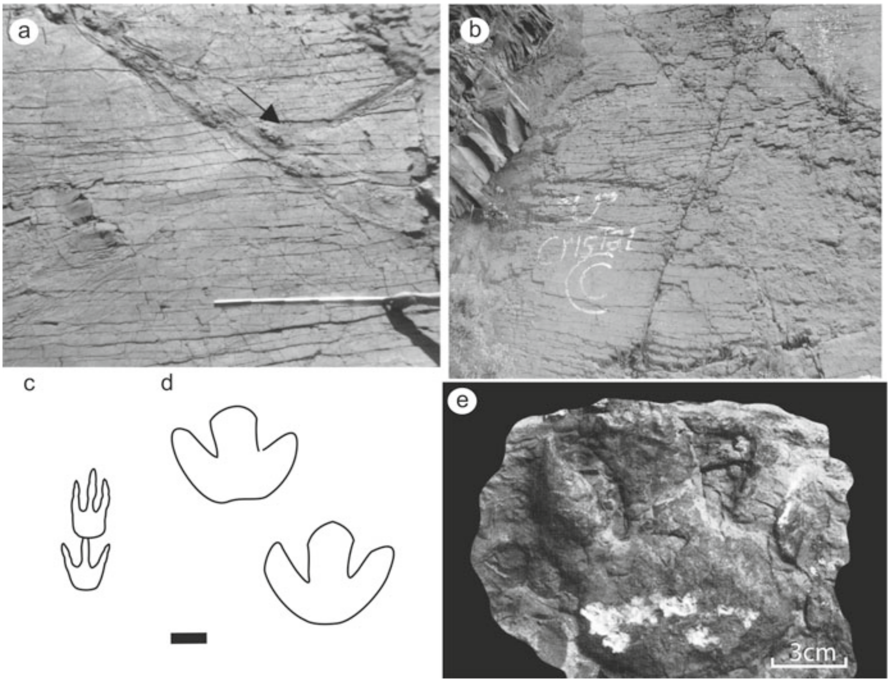


Fig. 14.2 Footprints of the San Jeronimo Group, Peru. Paruro tracksite photographed by Noblet (**a**) and the tracksite today (**b**); (**c**) homopod tridactyl footprints, Paruro. Scale bar = 3 cm; (**d**) Tridactyl quadruped homopod footprint, Langui; (**e**) isolated tridactyl footprint, Kayra

interpreted as possibly produced by toxodontid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns. The morphotype III consists of a trackway of a quadrupedal, rodent-like mammal. The manus footprints are overprinted by the well-defined pes footprints. Pes footprints are tridactyl with elongated digits and a plantar pad (see plate XXXV, Figs. 1 and 3 in Leonardi 1994). The footprints are approximately 7 cm long, and the morphology of the pes footprint and the trackway pattern are highly comparable with those of the small heteropod footprints described by Krapovickas et al. (2009a, b, c; see below), suggesting that they were produced by a rodent-like typothere notoungulate or a caviid rodent.

14.5.2 The Footprints of the Vinchina Basin, Argentina

The Vinchina Basin of La Rioja Province, northwestern Argentina (Fig. 14.1), is a thick continental succession deposited under a wide variety of depositional systems (i.e., fluvial, lacustrine, and eolian) that bears diverse and exceptionally well-preserved trace-fossil assemblages. Recent interpretations of the stratigraphy of the basin (Ciccioli et al. 2010, 2014; Limarino et al. 2010) divided the sedimentary succession into five formations, from bottom to top, Puesto La Flecha (Eocene), Vallecito (Oligocene-early Miocene), Vinchina (early Miocene), Toro Negro (late Miocene-Pliocene), and El Corral formations (Pliocene). The body-fossil record for these units (e.g., Turner 1964; Ramos 1970; De Iuliis et al. 2004; Rodríguez Brizuela and Tauber 2006) is fragmentary and scarce. Conversely, fluvial and lacustrine facies of the basin host a rich invertebrate and vertebrate ichnofauna (Frenguelli 1950; Bonaparte 1965; Tripaldi et al. 2001; Krapovickas et al. 2009a; Melchor et al. 2010, 2012; Krapovickas and Nasif 2011). The most remarkable assemblages of mammal footprints are recorded in the Vinchina Formation, at Quebrada de la Troya (lower portion) and Quebrada del Yeso, and Toro Negro Formation at Quebrada de la Troya (upper portion) (Fig. 14.1).

14.5.2.1 Lower Quebrada de la Troya Footprints

The footprints of Quebrada de la Troya, nearby the town of San José de Vinchina, are preserved in floodplain deposits of meandering fluvial systems of the Vinchina Formation. One of the most peculiar footprints is *Tacheria troyana*, approximately 10 cm long, produced by tetradactyl homopod quadrupeds with long digits and well developed plantar pads (Fig. 14.3f). The trackmaker was interpreted by Krapovickas and Nasif (2011) as a dinomyid caviomorph rodent or a close relative. There are also preserved small tridactyl footprints of a homopod rodent-like mammal, possibly a caviomorph rodent or typothere notoungulate (Fig. 14.3h); tridactyl homopod footprints with short broad digits and blunt tips assigned to *Macrauchenichnus* isp. and interpreted as toxodontid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns (Fig. 14.3b and d); large tridactyl footprints of rheiformes; footprints of shorebirds assigned to *Gruipeda* isp.; and a small tridactyl to tetradactyl footprint with pronounced scratch marks (Krapovickas et al. 2009b, c)

14.5.2.2 Quebrada del Yeso Footprints

In 1950 Frenguelli mentioned a fossil footprint assemblage preserved in a continental succession at Quebrada del Yeso, between the towns Villa Castelli and Jagüe, La Rioja Province, Argentina. He described *Venatoripes riojanus*, a trackway of large manus-pes sets interpreted originally as produced by a large-size reptile, since the bearing levels were considered early Permian in age (see Fig. 2 in Frenguelli 1950). Later, the succession was interpreted as deposited during the Miocene–Pliocene and the tracks were reinterpreted as produced by xenarthran megatheroids (Turner 1960; Bonaparte 1965). Recently, the outcrops were relocated as close to the top of the Vinchina Formation, suggesting an early-middle Miocene age for the footprint assemblage (Limarino, C.O. pers. comm.). Other elements of the assemblage were documented by Bonaparte (1965), interpreting them as produced by several avian and mammalian taxa, such as rheiformes, charadriiformes, ralliformes, and macraucheniid litopterns (see Fig. 1 in Bonaparte 1965).

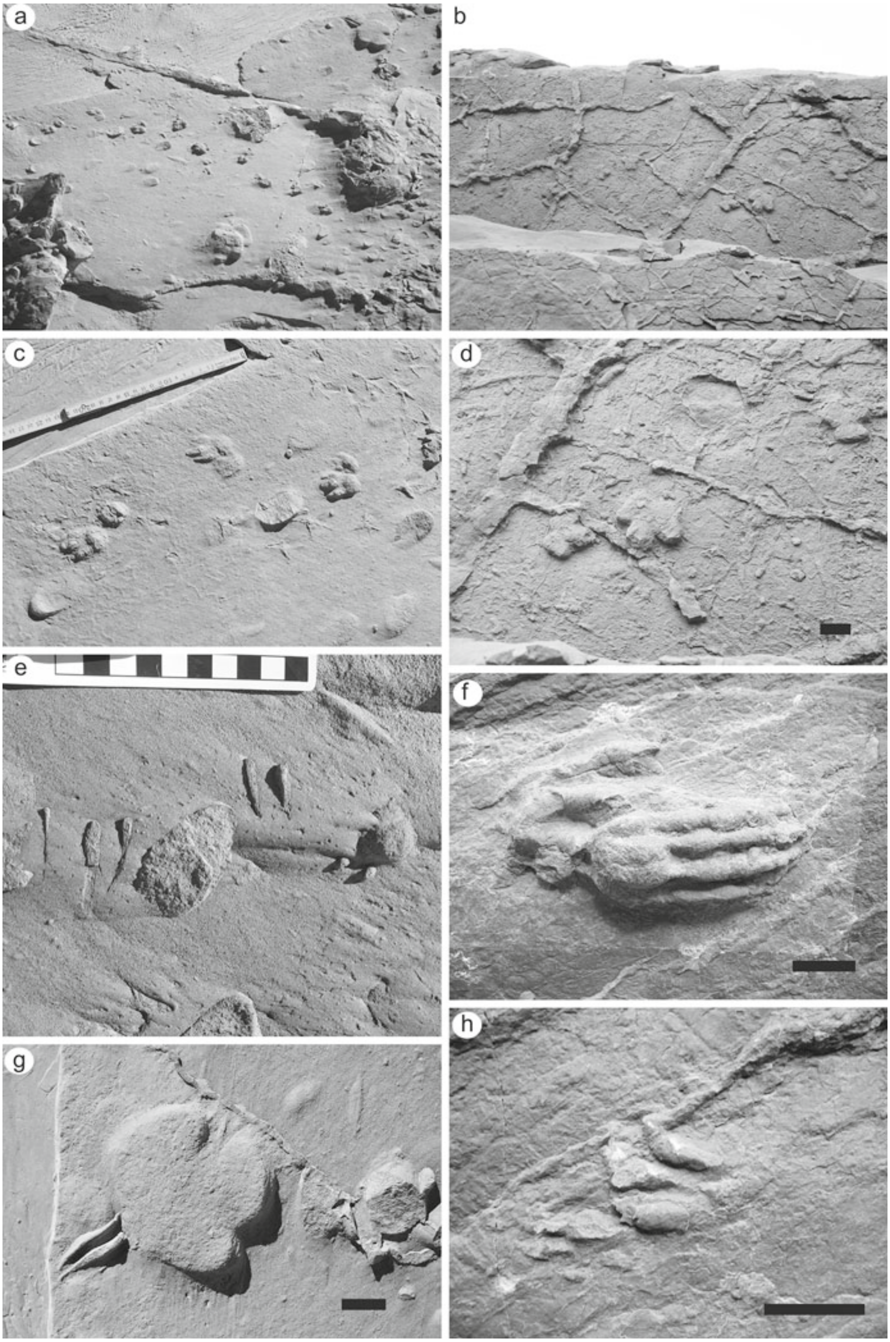


Fig. 14.3 Footprints of the Vinchina Basin, Argentina. (**a**) General view of the main tracking surface of Toro Negro; (**b**) General view of the main tracking surface of Lower Vinchina; (**c**) Small heteropod footprints, Toro Negro; (**d**) *Macrauchenichnus* isp. Scale bar = 3 cm, Lower Vinchina; (**e**) Oval impressions, Toro Negro; (**f**) *Tacheria troyana*, Lower Vinchina. Scale bar = 3 cm; (**g**) *Macrauchenichnus rector*, Toro Negro; (**h**) Small tridactyl footprints, Lower Vinchina. Scale bar = 3 cm

14.5.2.3 Upper Quebrada de la Troya Footprints

The Miocene deposits of the Toro Negro Formation at Quebrada de la Troya, La Rioja Province, Argentina, host a rich vertebrate and invertebrate ichnofauna documented by Krapovickas et al. (2009a, b, c). The trace fossils are recorded from the lower part of the Lower Member of the Toro Negro Formation. The vertebrate ichnofauna is the most diverse of the three ichnologic assemblages preserved in the Vinchina basin and includes avian and mammalian footprints (Fig. 14.3a). The mammalian footprints ascribed to *Macrauchenichnus rector* are interpreted as produced by medium sized macraucheniid litopterns (Fig. 14.3a and g), cf. *Venatoripes riojanus* as large tardigrade mammals (Fig. 14.3a), kidney-like footprints as medium to small tardigrades, oval impressions as proterotheriid litopterns (Fig. 14.3e), and small heteropod footprint originally interpreted as hegetotheriid typotheres or caviomorph rodents and herein as caviid caviomorph rodents (Fig. 14.3c). The avian footprints (e.g., *Fuscinapeda sirin*) are interpreted as produced by shorebirds, incumbent footprint as a large cursorial bird like rheiformes or phororhacids, and slender anisodactyl footprints as perching birds. The tetrapod footprints and rare *Palaeophycus* and *Helminthopsis* are preserved on the top of exposed sandbars of anastomosing fluvial systems developed under a semi-arid climate. Crevasse-splay deposits preserve abundant meniscate trace fossils and dwelling tubes as *Taenidium*, *Scoyenia,* and *Palaeophycus* ascribed to the *Scoyenia* Ichnofacies.

14.5.3 The Footprints of the Santa Cruz Formation, Argentina

The Santa Cruz Formation (late early Miocene) is a continental succession exposed from the Andean Precordillera to the Atlantic coast of southern Patagonia (Matheos and Raigemborn 2012). Along the Atlantic coast, between the Río Coyle and Río Gallegos, Tauber (1997) defined two members, from base to top, the Estancia La Costa and the Estancia La Angelina members. The basal portion of the Estancia la Angelina Member records undetermined mammalian fossils footprints in the present-day intertidal zone (Figs. 14.1 and 14.4d) (Raigemborn et al. 2012). These beds represent distal-floodplain environments with the development of moderately well-drained paleosols due to seasonal shifts between subhumid and semiarid climatic conditions (Krapovickas 2012).

14.5.4 The Footprints of the Mariño Formation, Argentina

The Mariño Formation (Miocene) records a trackway exposed on the margins of the Provincial Road 17 at Cacheuta, Mendoza Province, western Argentina (Fig. 14.1). The footprints consist of a single trackway with oval footprints, approximately 3 cm long, preserved in eolian strata deposited under arid to semi-arid climatic conditions

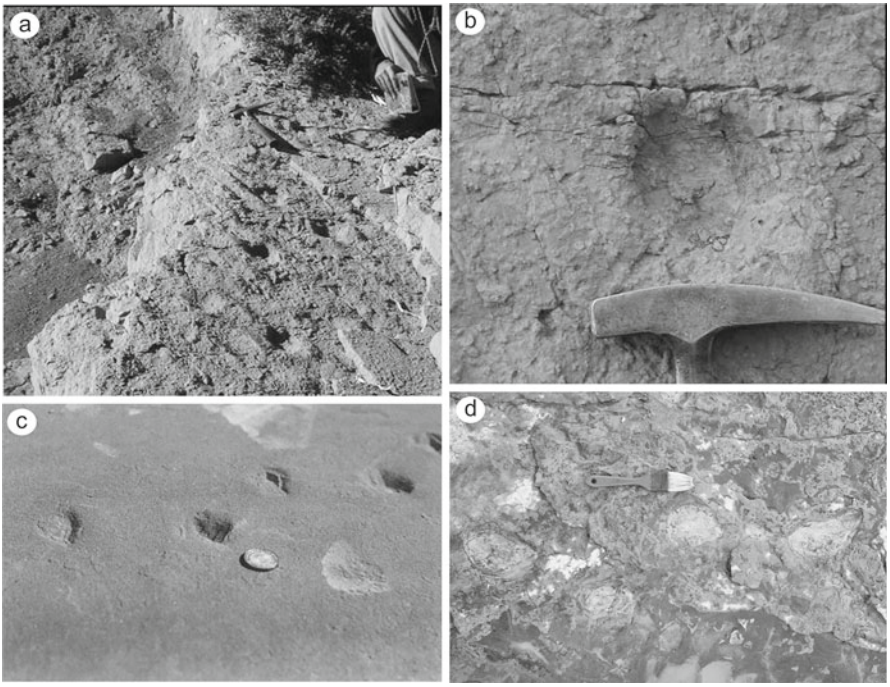


Fig. 14.4 Footprints of the Mariño and Santa Cruz formations, Argentina. (**a**) Tridactyl footprints on fluvial wave-rippled fine-grained sandstone strata, Salagasta; (**b**) detail of the tridactyl footprints; (**c**) Oval footprints, Cacheuta; (**d**) undetermined mammalian footprints, Santa Cruz

(Zavattieri et al. 2001). The footprints correspond to a quadruped monodactyl homopod trackmaker, most-likely a proteroteriid litoptern (Fig. 14.4c). Other exposures of the Mariño Formation at Salagasta, Mendoza Province (Fig. 14.1), record tridactyl footprints on fluvial wave-rippled fine-grained sandstone strata (Ahumada 2004). The footprints were most-likely produced by toxodontiid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns (Fig. 14.4a and b).

14.5.5 The Footprints of Las Flores Formation, Argentina

At Puchuzun at the Calingasta valley, San Juan Province, western Argentina (Fig. 14.1), the Las Flores Formation of late Miocene age holds a diverse ichnologic assemblage representing mostly footprints of aquatic and terrestrial birds and a few morphotypes of medium and large size mammals. They consist on bird footprints of Anseriformes, Charadriformes, and Phoenicopteriformes, in addition to footprints of hegetotheriid notoungulates and a large ground sloth preserved in marginal lacustrine facies (Contreras 1996, 2006; Contreras and Peralta 2011).

14.5.6 The Footprint of Quebrada del Jarillal Formation, Argentina

The Cenozoic succession exposed at Sierra de Mogna, San Juan Province, Argentina (Fig. 14.1) records a set of manus-pes footprints preserved on levels of the Quebrada del Jarillal Formation (middle-upper Miocene). The footprints were originally described and illustrated by Casamiquela in Cuerda et al. (1984) (see Plate XV, Fig. 2 and Plate XVI, Figs. 1 and 2 in Cuerda et al. 1984) and later also documented by Leonardi (1994, plate XIX, Fig. 11). Krapovickas and Nasif (2011) assigned the material to *Tacheria troyana* and interpreted it as produced by a dinomyid caviomorph rodent or a close relative.

14.5.7 The Footprints of the Tertiary of the Puna, Argentina

Near the border between the provinces of Salta and Jujuy, Argentina, at Catua (Fig. 14.1), in 1980 R.N. Alonso found mammalian footprints, possibly rodents, on eolian dune cross-beds of possible Miocene age (Leonardi 1994). In addition, R.N. Alonso also discovered a small isolated footprint cast of a mammalian trackmaker, probably a rodent, preserved on salt flats deposits at Salar del Rincón, Salta Province, Argentina (Fig. 14.1). The bearing levels possibly correspond to the Pliocene Trinchera Formation (Leonardi 1994).

14.5.8 The Footprints from the Río Negro Formation

Extensive sea cliffs of northeast Patagonia, Río Negro Province, expose an upper Miocene-lower Pliocene succession corresponding to the Río Negro Formation (Fig. 14.1). The succession corresponds to a complete suite of eolian and eolian-related sub-environments (Zavala and Freije 2001). The Río Negro ichnologic record from the margins of the Río Negro River at Carmen de Patagones was originally described by Casamiquela (1974), who identified novel ground sloth bipedal footprints assigned to *Megatherichnum oportoi* and interpreted as produced by a megatheriid close to *Megatherium*. Later, Angulo and Casamiquela (1982) studied the footprint record of the strata cropping out at the cliffts of the San Matías Gulf at several localities. The most diverse ichnologic assemblage is the one recorded at Balneario El Cóndor, including footprints of megatheriid ground sloths of large and medium size assigned to *Megatherichnum oportoi* and *Falsatorichnum calceocannabius*, respectively (see Plate II in Angulo and Casamiquela 1982); *Porcellusignum consulcator*, corresponding to heteropod footprints with a tetradactyl manus and tridactyl pes most-likely produced by capybaras (see Plate II in Angulo and Casamiquela 1982); *Macrauchenichnus rector* that consist of tridactyl blunt

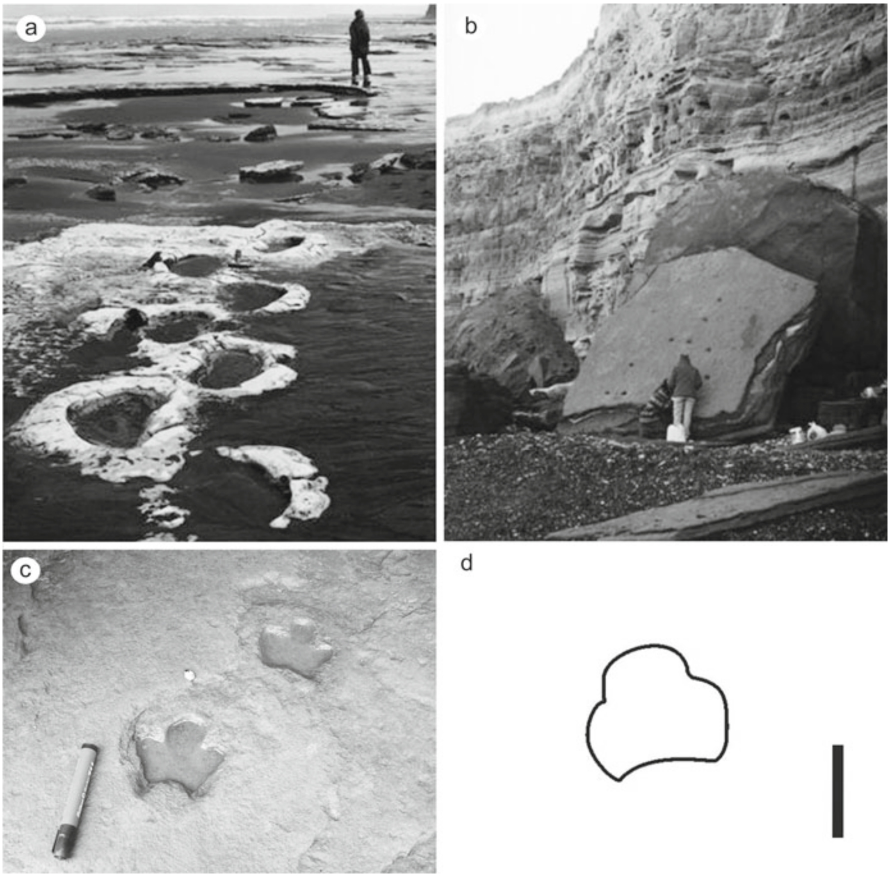


Fig. 14.5 Footprints of the Río Negro Formation. (**a**) *Megatherichnum oportoi*; (**b**) Large slab containing footprints of marsupial saber-toothed tiger; (**c**) *Macrauchenichnus* isp.; (**d**) Schematic drawing of *Macrauchenichnus rector*, scale bar = 10 cm

footprints produced by macraucheniid litopterns (Fig. 14.5d) (see Plate VIII, IX, and X in Angulo and Casamiquela 1982); and *Caballichnus impersonalis*, subcircular footpritns of monodactyl trackmakers interpreted as equids (see Plate V, VI, VII in Angulo and Casamiquela 1982). These authors also mentioned the presence of *Macrauchenichnus rector* in other localities in the studied area (Balneario La Lobería, Balneario La Boca, and Pozo Salado). Because of the poor quality of preservation of the material used to erect *Falsatorichnum calceocannabius* and *Caballichnus impersonalis*, the validity of both ichnotaxa has been questioned (e.g., Melchor 2009). Moreover, the extremely simple morphology (subcircular outline) together with the lack of preservational details expressed on *C.*

impersonalis make its assignation to equids questionable. This would imply extending the record of equids in South America to the late Miocene prior to the GABI. Aramayo et al. (2004, 2007) recorded additional material from the area. These authors reported footprints of ground sloths of large size assigned to *Megatherichnum oportoi* (Fig. 14.5a) and of medium size assigned to cf. *Milodontidichnum* isp., similar in size and shape to *Falsatorichnum calceocannabius*, but interpreted as a mylodonthid . Other material corresponds to capybara footprints (cf. *Porcellusignum* isp.), two ungulate footprints of proteroteriid litopterns and undetermined ungulates, pentadactyl footprints with claw marks most-likely produced by the marsupial saber-toothed tiger (Fig. 14.5b), tridactyl footprints of large size produced by phorusrhacids, and two types of tridactyl bird footprints, ones of shorebirds and the others are webbed footprints of flamingos. Aditional material has been recently documented by Carmona (pers. com., 2012; Fig. 5c). The tridactyl footprints highly resemble *Macrauchenichnus* isp. from the Vinchina Formation (Fig. 14.3d).

14.5.9 The Footprints of Antofagasta, Chile

Plio-Pleistocene marine strata that bear fossil footprints preserved in coastal dunes facies are exposed near Antofagasta, Chile, 3 km from the recent marine coast (Fig. 14.1) (Casamiquela and Chong Diaz 1975). The footprints correspond to a quadruped monodactyl mammal of medium size. The impression of forefoot and hind foot are sub-equal and oval and are more deeply impressed on the anterior margin. Casamiquela and Chong Diaz (1975) interpreted that the footprints were made by equids, although the morphology of the footprints does not correspond exactly with recent equids.

14.5.10 The Footprints of Claromecó, Argentina

In the present-day intertidal zone of the Caracolero beach at Claromecó, Buenos Aires, Argentina (Fig. 14.1), deposits of late Pleistocene age record fossil footprints most likely produced by a large sized mylodontid ground sloth (Azcuy et al. 2011). The footprints have a very different outline and differ from other footprints interpreted as produced by large ground sloth (e.g. *Venatoripes riojanus*, *Megatherichnum oportoi*, *Neomegatherichnum pehuencoensis*). They consist of a plantigrade *pes* track with a general oval outline, with four digits and a prominent sole print. The tracks are approximately 60 cm long and 40 cm wide. The digit III impression is the longest and has a prominent claw mark, the lateral digits (II and IV) are subequal in length and show a sharp ending, and laterally to digit IV is the small impression of digit V.

14.5.11 The Footprints of Monte Hermoso, Argentina

Casamiquela (1983) described ground sloth footprints from fluvial plain deposits of late Pleistocene age on the Atlantic coast at Monte Hermoso, Buenos Aires. Argentina (Fig. 14.1). The footprints correspond to *Iribarnichnum megamericanum* and *Acunaichnus dorregoensis*, interpreted as megatheriids and mylodontid ground sloths, respectively.

14.5.12 The Footprints of Pehuen-Có, Argentina

The continental succession exposed on the Atlantic coast of southern Buenos Aires Province, Pehuen-Có (Fig. 14.1), records the most diverse association of Cenozoic mammalian footprints from South America (Aramayo and Manera de Bianco 1987a; b; 1996; 2009). The footprints are preserved in the present-day intertidal zone in strata of late Pleistocene age and represent a wide variety of mammals, such as large ground sloths (Fig. 14.6a, b and e) (the megatheriid *Neomegatherichnum pehuencoensis* interpreted as produced by *Megatherium* and the mylodontid *Milodontichnum rosalensis*), macraucheniid litopterns (Fig. 14.6c) (*Eumacrauchenichnus patachonicus*), gomphotheres (*Stegomastodonichnum australis*), carnivorans (*Pumaeichnum biancoi*, *Pehuencoichnus gracilis*, *Mustelidichnum enigmaticum*), camelids (Fig. 14.6d) (*Lamaichnum guanicoe* and *Megalamaichnum tulipensis*), cervids (*Odocoileinichnum commune*), equids (*Hippipeda* isp.), glyptodonts (Fig. 14.6f), bears, and caviomorph rodents, along with birds, such as phoenicopteriforms (*Phoenicopterichnum rector*), tinamiforms, anseriforms, rheiforms, and shorebirds. The trackway-bearing levels correspond to floodplain deposits where most of the footprints are preserved on mudstone intervals with desiccation cracks and ripple marks (Manera de Bianco and Aramayo 2004).

14.6 Faunistic and Biogeographic Similarity of Footprints Assemblages

The cluster analysis of the mammalian taxa represented by the fossil footprint record in South America shows a clearly identifiable change in diversity since the Eocene to the Pleistocene. The main dichotomy separates the Eocene to Miocene ichnologic assemblages from the Pliocene-Pleistocene ones. These branches separate the assemblages in which the producers belong to lineages that underwent diversification and ecologic specialization in isolation from other continents, from other assemblages including also representatives of North American lineages (Fig. 14.7a).

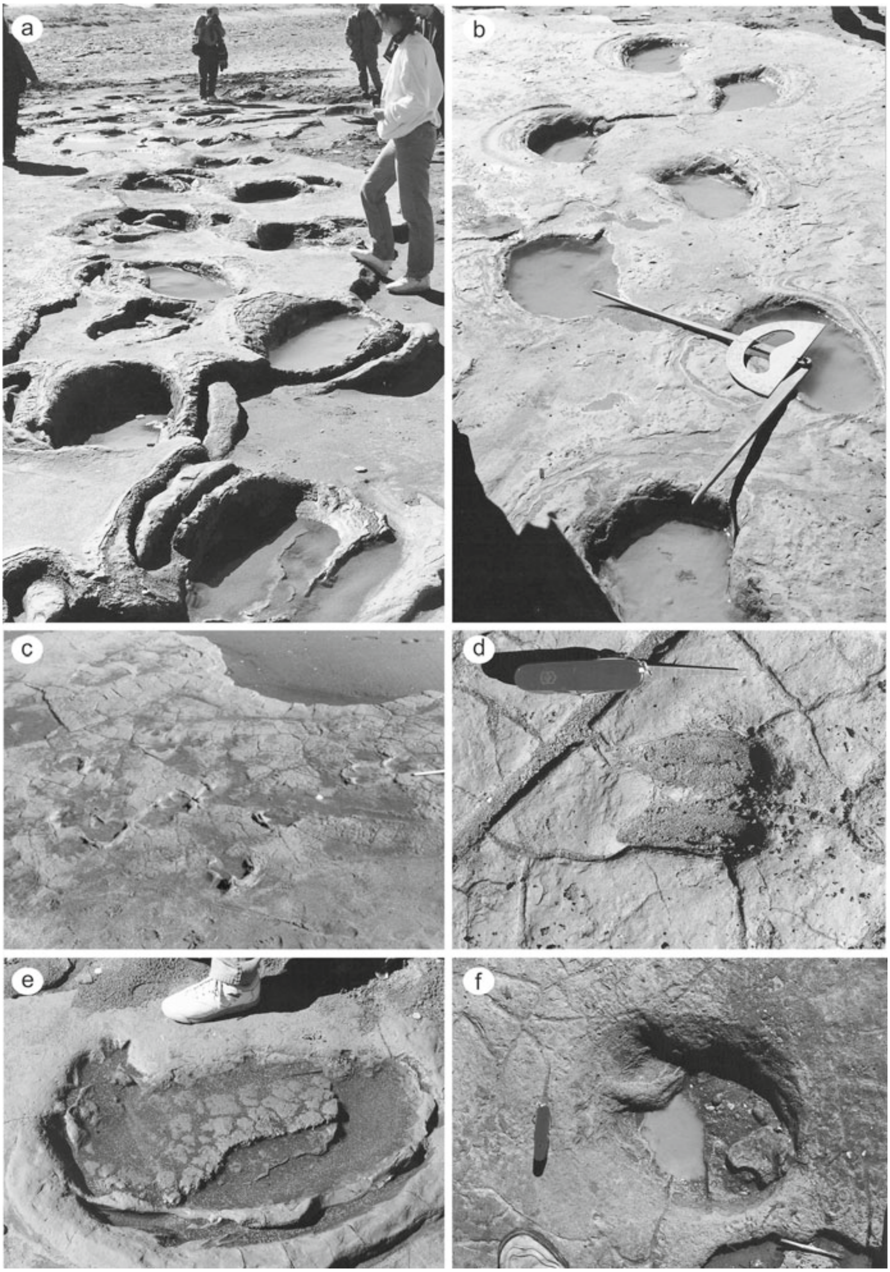


Fig. 14.6 The footprints of Pehuen-Có, Argentina. (**a**) *Neomegatherichnum pehuencoensis* trackways; (**b**) *Milodontichnum rosalensis* trackways; (**c**) Tracking surface with numerous impressions of *Eumacrauchenichnus patachonicus;* (**d**) *Lamaichnum guanicoe*; (**e**) Detail of the pes of *Neomegatherichnum pehuencoensis;* (**f**) Isolated footprint of glyptodont

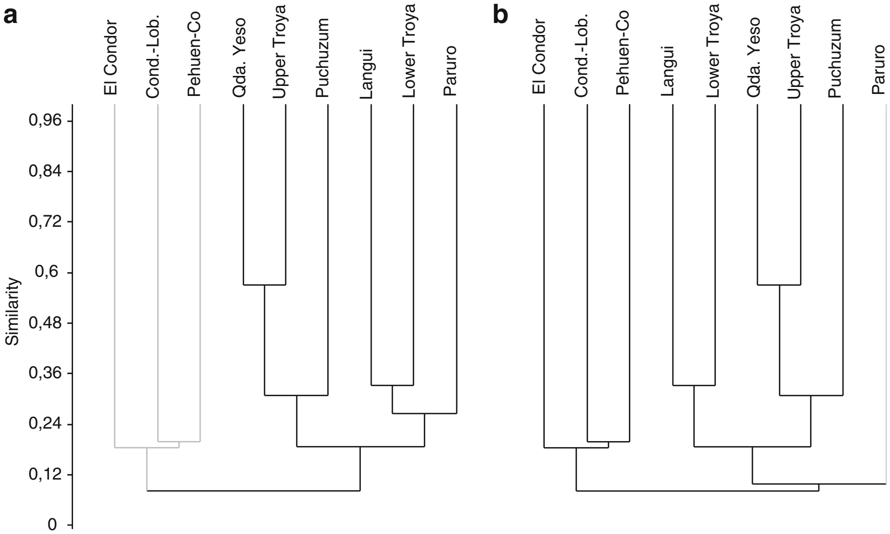


Fig. 14.7 Dendogram with the results of the cluster analysis, including the principal Cenozoic mammalian ichnofaunas

The Eocene-early Miocene ichnologic assemblages mostly represent forms of uncertain affinity. This is the case of rodent-like footprints identified as produced by small caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates and footprints assigned to small toxodontid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns. Also represented are footprints of large dinomyids caviomorph rodents, large undetermined notoungulates, and medium-size footprints of undetermined tetradactyl mammals (Fig. 14.8).

The rodent-like footprints of the Paruro assemblage may be highly significant. This assemblage comes from the Kayra Formation. The base of this formation is placed near the Paleocene-Eocene boundary and its limit with the unconformably overlying Soncco Formation is at about 43 Ma (Carlotto 2006), constraining the chronologic span of the formation to the early-middle Eocene. The recent discovery of rodents in the middle Eocene of the Peruvian Amazonia (Antoine et al. 2012) renders plausible a caviomorph affinity of the Paruro rodent-like footprints and could reinforce the recent hypothesis of Antoine et al. (2012) about the southward expansion of the earliest caviomorphs during the late middle Eocene–early Oligocene period, from low (Peruvian Amazonia) to middle (central Chile) and then to high latitudes (Patagonian Argentina). However, the stratigraphic information provided in the report of the footprints (Noblet et al. 1995) indicates that they come from the lower levels of the section, suggesting an early Eocene age. If this were true, and further careful analysis confirms its caviomorph affinity, these footprints would expand the early record of rodents in South America to the early Eocene.

There is a marked resemblance between the early Oligocene Langui ichnoassemblage of Peru and the early Miocene Lower Vinchina ichnoassemblage of northwestern Argentina (Fig. 14.7). The fact that the Lower Vinchina record is more

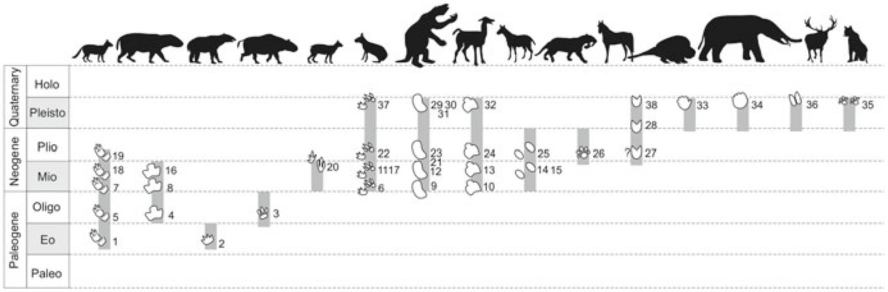


Fig. 14.8 Paruro footprints: (*1*) caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates, (*2*) undetermined tetradactyl mammals. Kayra footprints, (*3*) toxodontid notoungulates. Langui footprints: (*4*) toxodontid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns, (*5*) caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates. Lower Quebrada de la Troya footprints, (*6*) *Tacheria troyana*, (*7*) caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates, (*8*) *Macrauchenichnus* isp. Quebrada del Yeso footprints, (*9*) *Venatoripes riojanus*, (*10*) macraucheniid litopterns. Upper Quebrada de la Troya footprints, (*11*) caviomorph rodents, (*12*) cf. *Venatoripes riojanus*, (*13*) *Macrauchenichnus rector*, (*14*) proterotheriid litopterns. Cacheuta footprints, (*15*) proterotheriid litopterns. Salagasta footprints, (*16*) toxodontiid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns. Sierra de Mogna, (*17*) *Tacheria troyana*. Catua footprints, (*18*) caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates. Salar del Rincón footprints, (*19*) caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates. Puchuzun footprints (*20*) hegetotheriid notoungulates, (*21*) ground sloth. Río Negro footprints, (*22*) *Porcellusignum consulcator*, cf. *Porcellusignum* isp., (*23*) *Megatherichnum oportoi*, *Falsatorichnum calceocannabius*, cf. *Milodontidichnum* isp., (*24*) *Macrauchenichnus rector*, (*25*) proteroteriid litopterns, (*26*) marsupial saber-toothed tiger, (*27*) *Caballichnus impersonalis*. Antofagasta footprints, (*28*) equids. Claromecó footprints, (*29*) ground sloth. Monte Hermoso footprints: (*30*) *Iribarnichnum megamericanum* and *Acunaichnus dorregoensis*. Pehuen-Có footprints, (*31*) *Neomegatherichnum pehuencoensis*, *Milodontichnum rosalensis*, (*32*) *Eumacrauchenichnus patachonicus*, (*33*) glyptodonts, (*34*) *Stegomastodonichnum australis*, (*35*) *Pumaeichnum biancoi*, *Pehuencoichnus gracilis*, *Mustelidichnum enigmaticum*, Bear footprints, (*36*) *Lamaichnum guanicoe*, *Megalamaichnum tulipensis*, *Odocoileinichnum commune*, (*37*) caviomorph rodents, (*38*) *Hippipeda* isp.

similar to an older assemblage located to the north (Langui), rather than younger assemblages (middle-late Miocene) located in the same geographic area (Upper Vinchina and Toro Negro), suggests that at least during the earliest Miocene these areas were biogeographically connected and an isolation mechanism potentially operated from the early Miocene onwards. These could be the result of similar climatic conditions and the prevalence of similar faunas. However, it is not possible yet to contrast the similarities of the Lower Vinchina ichnoassemblage with any other ichnologic assemblage of the same age elsewhere.

Among the Miocene assemblages footprints assigned to ground sloth, macraucheniiid and proterotheriid litopterns, caviomorph rodents and rodent-like caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates are well represented; footprints assigned to toxodontid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns were also present (Fig. 14.8).

Not surprisingly, the major similitudes between ichnoassemblages are among those from the same age (middle-late Miocene) and geographic area (northwestern Argentina), as is the case of the Upper Vinchina and Toro Negro ichnoassemblages (Fig. 14.7).

During this period, footprints of large mammals, such as ground sloths and macraucheniids, are present for the first time, though they did not achieve the major sizes reached during the Plio-Pleistocene. Proteroteriid footprints are also present for the first time (Fig. 14.8). The middle Miocene ichnofaunas, as well as the osteodentary faunas, mark the peak of known diversification achieved by mammals after the arrival of primates and rodents but before the arrival of North American immigrants (Marshall and Cifelli 1990).

The late Miocene-Pliocene and late Pleistocene assemblages include footprints of both native South American mammals and North American taxa arrived during the GABI, recording a variety of ground sloths (Megatheriidae and Milodontidae), macraucheniid and proteroteriid litopterns, hydrochoerid caviomorph rodents and North American equids in both assemblages (Fig. 14.8). Footprints of other taxa are recorded in a single assemblage; a carnivorous marsupial (Thylacosmilidae) is recorded in outcrops of late Miocene-early Pliocene age of Río Negro, Argentina, and glyptodonts, gomphotheriids (proboscideans), camelids, and cervids (artiodactyls), and several carnivoran lineages (felids, ursids, mustelids, and bears) are represented in the late Pleistocene ichnoassemblages of Pehuen-có, Buenos Aires, Argentina (Fig. 14.8).

Comparing our results with the faunal evolutionary phases proposed by Goin et al. (2012) described above, the two major clusters roughly separate the faunas corresponding to the Early and Late South American phases from the Interamerican phase (Fig. 14.7). The dichotomy recorded within the first cluster described does not fit with the separations between the Early and Late South American phases, but there are several factors that may be affecting the results. First, only one lower Eocene locality may represent the Early South American phase; however, this Eocene locality clusters with the Oligocene and Miocene localities of the Late South American phase. The main problem is the ambiguous affinity of the rodent-like footprints (typothere/caviomorph), because the incorporation of caviomorph rodents to the South American record was taken as one of the events that triggered the Late South American Phase. When this footprint is removed from the analysis (Fig. 14.7b), the Eocene locality remains separated from a cluster constituted by the Oligocene and Miocene localities (Late South American phase). However, if the potential affinity of the Paruro footprints is established by a powerful method of trackmaker identification to caviomorphs, it would bring the beginning of the Late South American phase backward to the early Eocene, even earlier than the earliest record of body fossils (Antoine et al. 2012).

14.7 The Paleoenvironmental Distribution of Mammalian Ichnofossils

South American fossil footprints are mostly recorded in fully continental sedimentary systems, with just one example to date, recorded from marginal marine systems corresponding to Plio-Pleistocene outcrops of Antofagasta, Chile (Fig. 14.9).

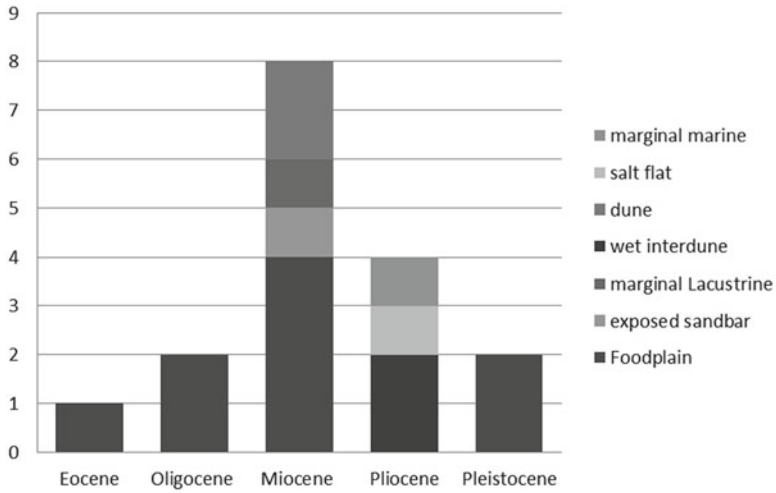


Fig. 14.9 Environmental distribution of Cenozoic mammalian footprints

Among the continental sedimentary systems preserving fossil footprints there are fluvial, lacustrine, and eolian deposits. Fossil footprints are mostly preserved in fluvial deposits, particularly on floodplains with just one example preserved on exposed fluvial sandbars (Fig. 14.9). There are scarce data about fluvial styles preserving fossil footprints in meandering fluvial systems from the lower Miocene Vinchina Formation (Lower Vinchina ichnoassemblage) and anastomosing fluvial systems from the upper Miocene Toro Negro Formation (Toro Negro ichnoassemblage). Lacustrine deposits preserving fossils footprints involve uniquely marginal-lacustrine facies and are only mentioned for the upper Miocene Puchuzun ichnoassemblages (Fig. 14.9). Fossil footprints in eolian deposits are common in Miocene and Pliocene outcrops, preserved mostly on dune and wet interdune facies (footprints of Cacheuta, Catua, and Río Negro). Footprints are also recorded on Pliocene salt flats of the Argentinean Puna (Fig. 14.9).

There is a broad relationship between the facies bearing footprints and biotic and abiotic conditions prevailing at different moments during the Cenozoic in South America. During the Eocene-Oligocene, relatively homogenous conditions were present across the entire continent. Forested areas were widespread together with tropical climate conditions that reached the summit during the early Eocene Climatic Optimun (Zachos et al. 2001; Flynn et al 2012). During this time, mammal footprints are recorded only in floodplain facies (Fig. 14.9).

Large-scale faunal provinciality reflecting latitudinal and altitudinal environmental gradients appear to be present by the early middle Miocene or late Oligocene of South America (Flynn et al. 2012). There are also environmental mosaics at specific areas within these gradients, as reflected by the lower Miocene of Santa Cruz in Patagonia (Kay et al. 2012), the upper Miocene of Toro Negro in northwestern Argentina (Krapovickas et al. 2009a, b, c) and the middle Miocene of La Venta in Colombia (Kay and Madden 1997).

Miocene deposits involving mammalian footprints are recorded in subhumid, semiarid, and arid climates (Fig. 14.9). Examples are distal overbank areas of high-latitude settings (Santa Cruz) with moderately well-drained paleosols due to seasonal shifts between subhumid and semiarid climatic; exposed sandbars of anastomosing fluvial systems under semi-arid climates of mid-latitude areas at northwestern Argentina (Toro Negro) and in arid climates from mid-latitude areas of central western Argentina (Mariño) and northwestern Argentina (Puna). Among these, Toro Negro is the richest assemblage. In this unit, inter-channel areas of anastomosed fluvial systems, under a semi-arid climatic regime, have a high preservation potential for tracks due to seasonal flooding events, which rapidly bury and protect the footprints, preventing rapid degradation of exposed tracks (Krapovickas et al. 2009a, b, c). In comparison, the distal overbank areas of low-sinuosity rivers (Raigemborn et al. 2012) with low rates of deposition and high subaerial exposure result in lower preservation potential for footprints.

Glacial and interglacial oscillations occurred during the Pliocene and Pleistocene, involving increased aridity. Late Miocene-Pliocene deposits bearing mammalian footprints are mostly developed in arid climates of high- (Rio Negro; late Miocene-Pliocene) and mid-latitude (Puna; Pliocene) settings. For most of the middle and late Pleistocene, dry and cold climate caused open areas to predominate in South America (Cione et al. 2009). Pleistocene floodplain facies of the Pampean region bear one of the most impressive footprint assemblages worldwide.

14.8 South American Mammal Tracks and Implications for Paleoecology

In ichnology, as well as in other paleontologic disciplines, paleoecology may be seen from two different complementary perspectives (Kay et al. 2012). The most frequent approach is to reconstruct environmental parameters, such as substrate consistency, climate, food supply, topography (e.g., coastlines, exposed fluvial bars), water saturation, water energy, salinity, oxygenation, rate of sedimentation, light, and temperature, among others. The other approach is to understand aspects of the paleoecology of individual species based upon their adaptive characteristics such as body size, diet, locomotion, and substrate preference (paleoautecology), and to build from this the overall niche characteristics of the fauna as a whole (paleosynecology) (e.g., Gastaldo et al. 1996; Falcon-Lang et al. 2007; Krapovickas et al. 2009a, b, c; Minter and Braddy 2009; Wilson et al. 2009; Kubo 2011). Both approaches have been scarcely applied to the study of South American mammalian ichnoassemblages.

Krapovickas et al. (2009a, b, c) used fossil footprints to infer characteristics of ancient environments. The tetrapod fauna of the lower interval of the Toro Negro Formation revealed by footprints suggested an open environment, possibly related with a seasonal arid or semiarid climate, associated with nearby forested areas (Fig. 14.10).

Fig. 14.10 Reconstruction of the Miocene Vinchina anastomosed fluvial system with exposed sandbars and the putative vertebrate and invertebrate producers

Manera de Bianco and Aramayo (2004) studied the taphonomy of the Pehuen- Có tracksite, considering footprint association, preservation quality, producers, and substrate. They found that mudstones without desiccation cracks or ripple marks display the best preservation quality, reflecting a differential preservation potential related to the proximity to the floodplain water body.

Most of the paloeautoecologic studies are qualitative or biomechanical analysis of the locomotion style or use of the substrate by the producers. Casamiquela (1974) analyzed *Megatherichnum oportoi*, concluding that the absence of hand prints reflects a bipedal locomotion, in accordance to many features of the skeleton of the megatheres. This claim resulted controversial and has been reevaluated in detail by numerous authors. Casinos (1996) studied the biomechanics of locomotion of Pleistocene *Megatherium americanum* by means of the estimation of body mass and using measurements of several trackways originally assigned to megatheres (Frenguelli 1950; Bonaparte 1965; Casamiquela 1974, 1983; Aramayo and Manera de Bianco 1987a, b). Casinos (1996) calculated different mechanical parameters such as speed, Froude number, indicators of athletic abilities, and bending and resistance movements of the vertebrate column calculated in both bipedal and quadrupedal conditions. He concluded that it was not possible to determine whether *Megatherium* was better adapted to bipedal or quadrupedal locomotion. Either bipedal or quadrupedal, in all cases the results indicated a walking mode of locomotion. Studying *Neomegatherichnum pehuencoensis*, Blanco and Czerwonogora (2003) reassessed the locomotory abilities of the Pleistocene *Megatherium americanum*. In doing so, they developed a geometric model to calculate the percentage of body weight supported by each pair of limbs to estimate the pressure they should have exerted on the ground and calculated the speed of locomotion after Alexander (1976). Their conclusion was that *Megatherium* walked roughly as a strategy to minimize the costs of transport and to better withstand big lateral bending moments that appear in bipedal walk. McDonald (2007) inferred the locomotion of *Paramylodon harlani* integrating morphologic and ichnologic data of ground sloth tracks of the Nevada state Prison, Carson City, USA, assigned to *Paramylodon*. He concluded that the known studies of the anatomy of ground sloth and their tracks have not been conclusive about their capacity of bipedal locomotion. He also concluded that the evidence suggests a quadrupedal primary mode of locomotion and that the support for bipedal locomotion has been based on the general absence of manus impressions.

In terms of paleosinecology, Krapovickas et al. (2009a, b, c) analyzed the preservation potential of mammal tracks to estimate the magnitude of time passed on the formation of the Toro Negro tracking surface in order to analyze the footprint assemblage as a partial sample of the original tetrapod community that inhabited western Argentina during the early Miocene. To characterize the paleocommunity structure, these authors identified the number of trackmakers and the relative abundance of footprints. The latter was interpreted as a measure of the activity of the producers and not necessarily as an indicator of the number of individuals involved. Krapovickas et al. (2009a, b, c) measured the relative abundance of footprints by counting the number of footprints and developed an index that records the percentage of the tracking surface which is bioturbated by each ichnotaxa, the Relative Bioturbated Area index.

The study of ichnofossils of the Toro Negro Formation expanded the knowledge of its tetrapod paleocommunity in three main ways: by reinforcing the presence of certain taxa as indicated by body fossils (large and medium-size ground sloths, proterotheriid litopterns, caviid rodents, and birds), by refining the level of identification of certain taxa (shorebirds, perching birds, and large cursorial birds), and by adding taxa that would otherwise be unknown by body fossils (macraucheniid litopterns) (Fig. 14.11).

14.9 Future Directions

Despite the fact that first studies began almost a hundred years ago, the ichnologic knowledge of South American mammals is still in its infancy. As mentioned above, in this chapter we attempt to to identify problems and promises of the South American record hoping to contribute to develop a major research program in mammalian paleoichnology that will permit global comparisons.

To begin with, there are extensive areas of South America where the Cenozoic ichnologic content is still unknown, revealing the necessity of intensive field work: there are no specific reports for Bolivia, Brazil, Colombia, Ecuador, French Guiana, Guiana, Paraguay, Surinam, Uruguay, and Venezuela.

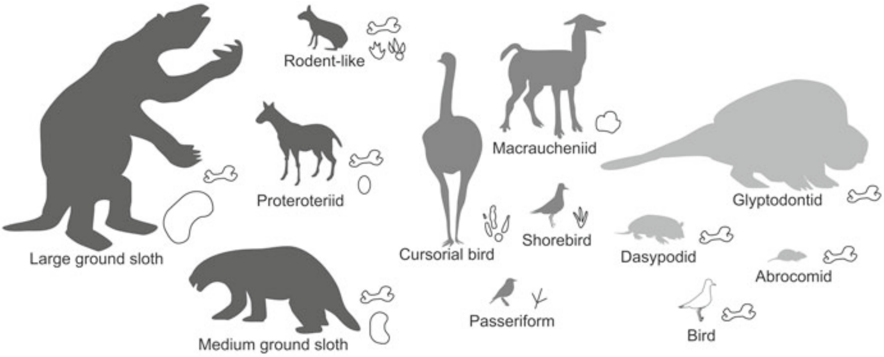


Fig. 14.11 Comparison of the tetrapod ichnological and osteological evidence from the Toro Negro Formation at Quebrada de La Troya, Argentina. *Black outline silhouette*: indeterminate bones. *Black silhouette*: material represented by both evidences. *Light gray silhouette*: material represented by osteological evidence. *Blue silhouette* (medium gray): material represented by the ichnological evidence. Modified from Krapovickas et al. (2009a, b, c)

Most ichnologic studies on Cenozoic South American mammals do not include detailed analyses of the paleoenvironmental context and the bearing facies, and only general aspects are mentioned. Much more analyses on ancient environments and its prevalent climates need to be done to understand under which conditions inhabited the mammalian trackmakers.

From a systematic point of view, at present, there are numerous ichnotaxa erected to name very similar forms produced most likely by related trackmakers. There is a strong need of a comprehensive and updated ichnotaxonomic revision of the existing ichnotaxa in accordance with morphologic and paleobiologic characteristics of the trackmakers. Moreover, in order to provide novel evolutionary, locomotory, and distributional information, the attribution of footprints to body fossils groups needs to be independent from the known body fossil spatial and temporal distribution. Currently, ichnologists analyze putative trackmakers based on anatomic features of the postcranial skeleton that are transcribed to the footprint morphology and trackway pattern. In order to use footprints as an independent source of evidence, when analyzing footprint producers, it is preferable to establish osteologic synapomorphies that could be identified in the fossil footprints (Carrano and Wilson 2001). Unfortunately, until now, phylogenetic studies of South American mammals do not include characters of the distal autopodium in their analyses. The study of trackmakers on the light of the cladistic method of trackmaker identification is still a pending task on the ichnologic agenda.

In terms of trackmaker function, there is scarce information about the range of functional capabilities revealed in South American mammal trackways; it is necessary to conduct deep analysis of the locomotory modes expressed in trackways and analyze how this range compares to that of living mammals. The estimation of the body mass of the footprint producers is another pending issue.

Finally, mammalian fossil footprints are barely used for habitat reconstruction analysis. Both taxon dependent and taxon-free analysis based on the footprint record could result in useful tools for habitat reconstruction.

These are the major problems and promises we were able to identify for South America so far. We understand that reviewing all the available evidence from other continents would identify particular and common problems and promises, contributing to develop a global paleoichnologic mammalian research program.

14.10 Conclusions

Globally, some of the most significant and better preserved ichnologic records of Mesozoic mammals are from Gondwana, including *Ameghinichnus*, *Brasilichnium*, and *Duquettichnus*, in contrast to its meager body-fossil record. In boreal landmasses, the diversity and abundance of the Mesozoic mammalian body-fossil record are much higher, and their footprint record is not as well known.

The Paleocene tetrapod footprint record, albeit apparently depauperate, has scarce mammals represented and is mostly composed by amphibian, reptiles, and birds. In contrast, mammal footprints become more common during the Eocene and Oligocene. The Neogene mammalian record is dominated by ungulate footprints, such as perissodactyls, artiodactyls, and proboscideans, followed in abundance by carnivores as felids and canids.

Presently there are more than 20 known localities that record footprints of South American mammals. Two main ichnologic assemblages are distinguished: (1) those in which the producers belong to lineages that underwent diversification and ecologic specialization in isolation from other continents, and (2) those including also representatives of North American lineages.

The Eocene and Oligocene ichnologic assemblages mostly represent forms of uncertain affinity up to now, including small caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates, large undetermined notoungulates, medium-size undetermined tetradactyl mammals, *Macrauchenichnus* isp. assigned to small toxodontid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns. Among the Miocene assemblages there are footprints assigned to ground sloths (e.g. *Venatoripes riojanus*, cf. *Venatoripes riojanus*, kidney-like footprints), macrauchenids (e.g. *Macrauchenichnus rector*) and proterotheriid litopterns, rodent-like caviomorph rodents or typothere notoungulates, hegetotheriid notoungulates, and toxodontid notoungulates or macraucheniid litopterns (e.g. *Macrauchenichnus* isp.), and *Tacheria troyana* assigned to a large dinomyid caviomorph rodent.

The late Miocene-Pliocene and late Pleistocene assemblages include footprints of both native South American mammals and North American taxa that arrived during the GABI. The native South American lineages consist of a variety of ground sloths (e.g., *Megatherichnum oportoi*, *Falsatorichnum calceocannabius*) including megatheriids (e.g., *Iribarnichnum megamericanum*, *Neomegatherichnum pehuencoensis*) and mylodontids (e.g., *Acunaichnus dorregoensis*, *Milodontichnum* *rosalensis*), glyptodonts, macraucheniid (e.g., *Macrauchenichnus rector*, *Eumacrauchenichnus patachonicus*) and proterotheriid litopterns, hydrochoerid caviomorph rodents (e.g., *Porcellusignum consulcator*), undetermined ungulates, and carnivorous marsupials. The North American examples are equids (e.g., *Caballichnus impersonalis*, *Ichnhippus cotaposi*, *Hippipeda* isp.), gomphotheriids (e.g., *Stegomastodonichnum australis*), camelids (e.g., *Lamaichnum guanicoe*, *Megalamaichnum tulipensis*), cervids (e.g., *Odocoileinichnum commune*), and several carnivoran lineages as felids and mustelids (e.g., *Pumaeichnum biancoi*, *Pehuencoichnus gracilis*, *Mustelidichnum enigmaticum*).

The cluster analysis of the mammalian taxa represented by the fossil footprint record of South America, compared with the faunal evolutionary phases proposed by Goin et al. (2012), shows two major clusters that roughly separate the faunas corresponding to the Early and Late South American phases from the Interamerican phase.

The early Eocene rodent-like footprints of Paruro are of great importance for the understanding of the early evolution of caviomorph rodents. If future careful analysis confirms the caviomorph affinity of the Paruro footprints, they could reinforce the recent hypothesis of Antoine et al. (2012) about the southward expansion of the earliest caviomorphs during the late middle Eocene–early Oligocene period. Moreover, the footprints would expand the early record of rodents in South America to the early Eocene.

Footprints were uniquely preserved on floodplain facies during the Eocene, Oligocene, and Pleistocene. The record of mammalian fossil footprints in deserts of South America occur in a variety of sub-environments (dunes, wet interdunes, and salt flats), involving semi-arid and arid climates, during the Miocene and Pliocene.

Both approaches, the reconstruction of environmental parameters and the study of the paleoecology of individual species and communities, have been scarcely applied to South American mammalian ichnoassemblages.

Acknowledgments We thank D. Croft and S. Lucas for reviewing the paper. E. Ahumada, S. Aramayo, S. Bargo, V. Carlotto, E. Cerdeño, V. Contreras, T. Manera de Bianco, and A. Zavattieri for the photographs and information that gently shared with us. Funding for this research was provided by UBACyT—X728 and PICT-2011-2334 (V.K.). This is the contribution R-100 of the Instituto de Estudios Andinos Don Pablo Groeber.

References

Abbassi N, Lockley MG (2004) Eocene bird and mammal tracks from the Karaj Formation, Tarom Mountains, Northwestern Iran. Ichnos 11:349–356

Abello MA, Ortiz-Jaureguizar E, Candela AM (2012) Paleoecology of the Paucituberculata and Microbiotheria (Mammalia, Marsupialia) from the late Early Miocene of Patagonia. In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Early Miocene Paleobiology in Patagonia: high-latitude paleocommunities of the Santa Cruz Formation. Cambridge University Press, New York

Ahumada EA (2004) Geología y estructura del extremo Sur de la Sierra de Las Peñas, Provincia de Mendoza. Dissertation, Universidad Nacional de San Luis

Alexander RMN (1976) Estimates of speeds of dinosaurs. Nature 261:129–130

Alroy J (1999) The fossil record of North American mammals: evidence for a Paleocene evolutionary radiation. Syst Biol 48:107–118

Angulo RJ, Casamiquela RM (1982) Estudio estratigráfico de las unidades aflorantes en los acantilados de la costa norte del Golfo San Matías (Río Negro y extremo austral de Buenos Aires) entre los meridianos 62°30′ y 64°30′ W. Mundo Ameghiniano 2:20–73

Antoine PO, Marivaux L, Croft DA et al (2012) Middle Eocene rodents from Peruvian Amazonia reveal the pattern and timing of caviomorph origins and biogeography. Proc R Soc B 279:1319–1326

Aramayo SA (2007) Neogene vertebrate palaeoichnology of the north atlantic coast of the Río Negro Province, Argentina. Arq Mus Nac (Rio J) 65:573–584

Aramayo SA, Manera de Bianco T (1996) Edad y nuevos hallazgos de icnitas de mamíferos y aves en el yacimiento paleoicnológico de Pehuen-Có (Pleistoceno Tardío), Provincia de Buenos Aires, Argentina. Asoc Paleontol Argent, Publicación especial 4:47–57

Aramayo SA, Manera de Bianco T (2009) Late Quaternary palaeoichnological sites from the southern Atlantic coast of Buenos Aires Province, Argentina: mammal, bird and hominid evidence. Ichnos 16:25–32

Aramayo SA, Manera de Bianco T (1987a) Hallazgo de una icnofauna continental (Pleistoceno Tardío) en la localidad de Pehuén-Có (partido de Coronel Rosales) provincia de BuenosAires,Argentina. Parte I: Edentata, Litopterna, Prosboscidea. Paper presented at the IV Congreso Latinoamericano de Paleontología, Santa Cruz de la Sierra, Bolivia. Actas 1, July 27–30, 1987, pp 516–531

Aramayo SA, Manera de Bianco T (1987b) Hallazgo de una icnofauna continental (Pleistoceno Tardío) en la localidad de Pehuén-Có (partido de Coronel Rosales) provincia de BuenosAires, Argentina. Parte II: Carnivora, Artiodactyla y Aves. Paper presented at the IV Congreso Latinoamericano de Paleontología, Santa Cruz de la Sierra, Bolivia. Actas 1, July 27–30, 1987, pp 532–547

Aramayo SA, Barros M, Candel C, Vechhi L (2004) Mammals and bird footprints at Rio Negro Formation (Late Miocene-Early Pliocene), Rio Negro Province, Argentina. Paper presented at Ichnia First International Congress on Ichnology, Museo Paleontologico Egidio Feruglio, Trelew, Patagonica, Argentina. Abstract Book: 14, April 19–23, 2004

Archibald JD, Deutschman DH (2001) Quantitative analysis of the timing of the origin and diversification of extant placental orders. J Mamm Evol 8:107–124

Astibia H, del Valle de Lersundi J, Murelaga X (1994) Icnitas de artiodactylos (Mammalia) del Paleogene de Olcoz (Depresion del Ebro, Navarra). Estud Geolog 50:119–196

Astibia H, Suberbiola XP, Payros A, Murelaga X, Berreteaga A, Ignacio J (2007) Bird and mammal footprints from the Tertiary of Navarre (Western Pyrenees). Ichnos 14:175–184

Ataabadi MM, Khazaee A (2004) New Eocene mammal and bird footprints from Birjand Area, Eastern Iran. Ichnos 11:363–370

Azcuy C, Acevedo D, Amenábar C et al. (2011) Datos paleontológicos, huellas y petrografía en los alrededores del caracolero de Claromecó, Provincia de Buenos Aires, Argentina. Paper presented at the XVIII Congreso Geológico Argentino, Actas, Neuquen, 2–6 May 2011, pp 252–253

Bargo MS, Toledo N, Vizcaíno SF (2012) Paleobiology of the Santacrucian sloths and anteaters (Xenarthra, Pilosa). In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Early Miocene Paleobiology in Patagonia: high-latitude paleocommunities of the Santa Cruz Formation. Cambridge University Press, New York

Benton MJ (1995) Diversification and extinction in the history of life. Science 268:52–58

Bininda-Emonds ORP, Cardillo M, Jones KE, MacPhee RDE, Beck RMD, Grenyer R, Price SA, Vos RA, Gittleman JL, Purvis A (2007) The delayed rise of present-day mammals. Nature 446:507–512

Blanco RE, Czerwonogora A (2003) The gait of *Megatherium*. Sneck Biol 83:61–68

Bonaparte JF (1965) Nuevas icnitas de la Quebrada del Yeso (La Rioja) y consideraciones acerca de la edad de los afloramientos. Acta Geol Lill 7:5–16

Bonaparte JF (1986) Sobre *Mesungulatum houssayi* y nuevos mamíferos Cretácicos de Patagonia, Argentina. Actas IV Congreso Argentino de Paleontología y Bioestratigrafía 2:48–61

Bonaparte JF (1990) New Late Cretaceous mammals from the Los Alamitos Formation, northern Patagonia. Natl Geogr Res 6:63–93

Bonaparte JF (1995) Mesozoic vertebrates of South America. In: Sixth symposium on Mesozoic terrestrial ecosystems and biota, pp 89–90

Bonaparte JF, Kielan-Jaworowska Z (1987) Late Cretaceous dinosaur and mammal faunas of Laurasia and Gondwana. In: Fourth symposium on Mesozoic terrestrial ecosystems and biota, pp 24–29

Carey SP, Camens AB, Cupper ML, Grün R, Hellstrom JC, McKnight SW, Mclennan I, Pickering DA, Trusler P, Aubert M (2011) A diverse Pleistocene marsupial trackway assemblage from the Victorian Volcanic Plains, Australia. Quat Sci Rev 30:591–610

Carlotto V (1998) Evolution Andine et Raccourcissement au Niveau de Cusco (13–6°S) Perou. Enregistrement sedimentaire, chronologie, controles paleogeographiques, evolution cinematique. Ph.D. Dissertation, Universidad de Grenoble, Francia

Carlotto V (2002) Évolution Andine et Raccourcissement au Niveau de Cusco (13–6°S), Pérou. Geologie Alpine, Memoire H S 39, Grenoble-Francia

Carlotto V (2006) Dataciones por trazas de fisión en los depósitos continentales terciarios de la región de cusco. Paper presented at the XIII Congreso Peruano de Geología. Lima, Peru. Resúmenes Extendidos. Sociedad Geológica del Perú, 17–20 Oct 2006, pp 521–524

Carlotto V, Carlier G, Cárdenas J (1995) La edad de las Capas Rojas del Grupo San Jerónimo (Región de Cusco y su significado geológico). Res. Seminario Taller: Evolución de la litosfera en los Andes Peruanos y sus márgenes, Lima

Carlotto V, Jaillard E, Carlier G, Cardenas J, Cerpa L, Flores T, Latorre O, Ibarra I (2005) Las Cuencas Terciarias sinorogénicas en el Altiplano y la Cordillera Occidental del Sur del Perú. Boletín Especial Nro 6 Alberto Giesecke Matto. Sociedad Geológica del Perú

Carlotto, V., Cardénas, J. & Carlier, G. (2011) - Geología del Cuadrángulo de Cusco 28-s - 1:50 000. INGEMMET. Boletín, Serie A: Carta Geológica Nacional, 138, 255 p., 6 mapas

Carrano MT, Wilson JA (2001) Taxon distributions and the tetrapod track record. Paleobiology 27:564–582

Cartelle C, De Iuliis G (1995) *Eremotherium laurillardi*: the Panamerican late Pleistocene megatheriid sloth. J Vertebr Paleontol 15:830–841

Casamiquela RM (1964) Estudios icnológicos. Problemas y métodos de la icnología con aplicación al estudio de pisadas mesozoicas (Reptilia, Mammalia) de la Patagonia. Colegio Industrial Pío IX, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Casamiquela RM (1974) El bipedismo de los megaterioideos. Estudio de pisadas fósiles en la Formación Río Negro típica. Ameghiniana 11:249–282

Casamiquela R (1983) Pisadas del Pleistoceno (Superior?) del balneario Monte Hermoso, Buenos Aires. La confirmación del andar bipedal en los Megaterioide. Cuadernos del Instituto Superior Juan XXIII" 4:1–15

Casamiquela RM, Chong Diaz G (1975) Icnitas (Mammalia, Equidae?) en rocas del Plio-Plesitoceno de la costa Prov. de Antofagasta, Chile. Presented at the Congreso Argentino de Paleontología y Bioestratigrafía, Tucumán, Argentina, Actas, vol 1, 12–16 Agost 1974, pp 87–103

Casanovas-Cladellas L, Santafé-Llopis JV (1982) Icnofauna oligocena de Agramunt (Lérida, España). Acta Geol Hisp 17:113–119

Casinos A (1996) Bipedalism and quadrupedalism in Megatherium: an attempt at biomechanical reconstruction. Lethaia 29:87–96

Cassini GH, Cerdeño ME, Villafañe AL, Muñoz NA (2012) Paleobiology of Santacrucian native ungulates (Meridiungulata: Astrapotheria, Litopterna and Notoungulata). In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Early Miocene Paleobiology in Patagonia: high-latitude paleocommunities of the Santa Cruz Formation. Cambridge University Press, New York

Ciccioli PL, Limarino CO, Marenssi SA, Tedesco AM, Tripaldi A (2010) Estratigrafía de la Cuenca de Vinchina (Terciario), Sierras Pampeanas, provincia de La Rioja. Rev Asoc Geol Arg 66:146–155

Ciccioli PL, Limarino CO, Friedman R, Marenssi SA (2014) New high precision U-Pb ages for the Vinchina Formation: Implications for the stratigraphy of the Bermejo Andean foreland basin (La Rioja province, western Argentina). J S Am Earth Sci 56:200–213

Cifelli RL (1985) South American ungulate evolution and extinction. In: Stehli FG, Webb SD (eds) The Great American Interchange. Plenum, New York

Cifelli RL (1993) The phylogeny of the native South American ungulates. In: Szalay FS, Novacek ML, McKenna MC (eds) Mammal phylogeny, vol 2. Springer, Berlin

Cione AL, Tonni EP, Soibelzon L (2009) Did humans cause the Late Pleistocene-Early Holocene mammalian extinctions in South America in a context of shrinking open areas? In: Haynes G (ed) American megafaunal extinctions at the end of the Pleistocene. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York

Contreras VH (1996) Paleontología, paleoecología y cronoestratigrafía del Neógeno de Puchuzum, Provincia de San Juan, Argentina. XI Jornadas Argentinas de Paleontología de Vertebrados. Ameghiniana 33, 462R

Contreras VH (2006) Huellas de un mamífero notoungulado hegetotherio en el Neógeno de San Juan. XXI Jornadas Argentinas de Paleontología de Vertebrados, Plaza Huincul, Argentina, 4–6 May 2005. Ameghiniana 43, 32R

Contreras VH, Peralta SH (2011) Taxonomía y paleoecología de la icnofauna de vertebrados neógenos de Puchuzum, San Juan, oeste de Argentina. IV Congreso latinoamericano de Paleontología de Vertebrados, San Juan, Argentina, 21–24 September 2011

Costeur L, Balme C, Legal S (2009) Early Oligocene mammal tracks from Southeastern France. Ichnos 16:257–267

Croft DA (1999) Placentals: endemic South American ungulates. In: Singer R (ed) The encyclopedia of paleontology. Fitzroy-Dearborn Publishers, Chicago

Croft DA (2007) The Middle Miocene (Laventan) Quebrada Honda fauna, southern Bolivia and a description of its notoungulates. Palaeontology 50:277–303

Croft DA (2012) Punctuated isolation: the making and mixing of South America's mammals. In: Patterson BD, Costa LP (eds) Bones, clones, and biomes: the history and geography of recent neotropical mammals. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago, pp 9–19

Croft DA, Flynn JJ, Wyss AR (2008) The Tinguiririca Fauna of Chile and the early stages of 'modernization' of South American mammal fauna. Arq Mus Nac (Rio J) 66:1–21

Cuerda AJ, Cingolani CA, Varela R, Schauer OC (1984) Descripción geológica de la Hoja 19d Mogna. Servicio Geológico Nacional, Boletín 192, Buenos Aires

De Iuliis G, Ré GH, Vizcaíno SF (2004) The Toro Negro Megatheriine (Mammalia, Xenarthra): a new species of *Pyramiodontherium* and a review of *Plesiomegatherium*. J Vertebr Paleontol 24:214–227

de Valais S (2009) Ichnotaxonomic review of *Ameghinichnus*, a mammal ichnogenus from the La Matilde Formation (Middle Jurassic), Santa Cruz province, Argentina. Zootaxa 2203:1–21

Demathieu G, Ginsburg L, Guerin C, True G (1984) Etude paléontologique, ichnologique et paléoecologique du gisement Oligocène de Saignon (Bassin d'Apt, Valcluse). Bull Mus Nat Hist Nat 6:15–183

Desnoyers MJ (1859) Sur des empreintes de pas d'animaux dans le Gypse des environs de Paris, et particulièrement de la vallée de Mont-Morency. Bull Soc Geol Fr 16:936–944

Ellenberger P (1970) Les niveaux paleontologiques de premiere apparition des mammiferes primordiaux en Afrique du Sud et leur ichnologie. Establissement de zones stratigraphiques detaillees dans le Stormberg du Lesotho (Afrique du Sud) (Trias superieur a Jurassique). Abstracts 2 Gondwana Symposium, South Africa, pp 343–370

Ellenberger P (1972) Contribution à la classification des pistes de vertébrés du Trias: les types du Stomberg d´Afrique du Sud (I). Palaeovertebrata, Memoire Extraordinaire, Montpellier

Ellenberger P (1974) Contribution à la classification des pistes de vertébrés du Trias: les types du Stomberg d´Afrique du Sud (II). Palaeovertebrata, Memoire Extraordinaire, Montpellier

Ellenberger P (1975) L´explosion démographique des petits quadrupèdes a allure de mammifères dans le Stormberg supérieur (Trias) d´Afrique du sud aperçu sur leur origine au Permien

(France et Karoo). Colloque international cu centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 218. Problèmes actuaels de Paléontologie (Évolution des vertébrés), pp 409–439

Ellenberger P (1980) Sur les empreintes de pas de gros mammifères de l'Eocène supérieur de Garrigues-Ste.-Eulalie (Gard): Palaeovertebrata, Mémoire Jubilaire R. Lavocat, pp 37–77

Falcon-Lang HJ, Benton MJ, Stimson M (2007) Ecology of earliest reptiles inferred from basal Pennsylvanian trackways. J Geol Soc Lond 164:1113–1118

Fernandes MA, Carvalho I (2008) Revisão diagnóstica para a icnoespécie de tetrápode Mesozóico *Brasilichnium elusivum* (Leonardi, 1981) (Mammalia) da Formação Botucatu, Bacia do Paraná, Brasil. Ameghiniana 45:167–173

Flynn JJ, Swisher III CC (1995) Cenozoic South American land mammal ages: correlation to global chronologies. In Berggren WA, Kent DV, Aubry MP, and Hardenbol J (eds) Geochronology, time-scales and global stratigraphic correlations: a unified framework for an historical geology. Society of Stratigraphic Geology, Tulsa, Oklahoma, Special Publication 54, pp 317–333

Flynn JJ, Wyss AR, Croft DA, Charrier R (2003) The Tinguiririca Fauna, Chile: biochronology, paleoecology, biogeography, and a new earliest Oligocene South American Land Mammal 'Age'. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 195:229–259

Flynn JJ, Charrier R, Croft DA, Wyss AR (2012) Cenozoic Andean faunas shedding new light on South American mammal evolution, biogeography, environments, and tectonics. In: Patterson BD, Costa LP (eds) Bones, clones, and biomes: the history and geography of recent neotropical mammals. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago, pp 51–75

Foote M, Hunter JP, Janis CM, Sepkoski JJ Jr (1999) Evolutionary and preservational constraints on origins of biologic groups: divergence times of eutherian mammals. Science 283:1310–1314

Fornari M, Madani M, Ibarra I, Carlier G (2002) Datación del Período Volcánico "Tacaza" en el Altiplano de Perú y Bolivia. Paper presented at the XI Congreso Peruano de Geología, Lima, Perú, September 2002, pp 25–28

Fornós JJ, Bromley RG, Clemmensen RB, Rodriguez-Perea A (2002) Tracks and trackways of *Myotragus balearicus* Bate (Artiodactyla, Caprinae) in Pleistocene aeolianites from Mallorca (Balearic Islands, western Mediterranean). Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 180: 277–313

Frenguelli J (1950) Ichnites del Paleozoico Superior del oeste argentino. Rev Asoc Geol Arg 5:136–148

Gastaldo RA, Savrda C, Lewis RD (1996) Deciphering Earth history: a laboratory manual with internet exercises. Contemporary Publishing Company, Raleigh, NC

Gelfo JN, López GM, Bond M (2008) A new Xenungulata (Mammalia) from the Paleocene of Patagonia, Argentina. J Paleontol 82:329–335

Gierliński G, Pienkowski G, Niedźwiedzki G (2004) Tetrapod track assemblage in the Hettangian of Sołtyków, Poland, and its paleoenvironmental background. Ichnos 11:195–213

Goin FJ, Gelfo JN, Chornogubsky L, Woodburne MO, Martin T (2012) Origins, radiations, and distribution of South American mammals: from greenhouse to icehouse worlds. In: Patterson BD, Costa LP (eds) Bones, clones, and biomes: the history and geography of recent neotropical mammals. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago, pp 20–50

Greben R, Lockley MG (1992) Vertebrate tracks in the Green River Formation, eastern Utah: implications for paleoecology. Geol Soc Am Abstr Progr 24:16

Gregory HE (1916) Geological reconnaissance of the Cuzco Valley, Peru. Am J Sci, 4th Serie, XlI, 241:1–121

Halenar LB (2011) Reconstructing the locomotor repertoire of *Protopithecus brasiliensis*: I. Body size. Anat Rec 294:2024–2047

Hammer Ø, Harper DAT, Ryan PD (2001) PAST: paleontological statistics software package for education and data analysis. Palaeontol Electron 4(1). http://palaeo-electronica.org/2001_1/past/issue1_01.htm

Hunt AP, Lucas SG (2007) Cenozoic vertebrate trace fossils of North America: ichnofaunas, ichnofacies, and biocronology. New Mex Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:17–42

Johnson KR (1986) Paleocene bird and amphibian tracks from the Fort Union Formation, Bighorn Basin, Wyoming. Contrib Geol Univ Wyoming 24:1–10

Kay RF, Madden RH (1997) Paleogeography and paleoecology. In: Kay RF, Madden RH, Cifelli RL, Flynn JJ (eds) Mammalian evolution in the neotropics. Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, DC

Kay RF, MacFadden BJ, Madden RH, Sandeman H, Anaya F (1998) Revised age of the Salla beds, Bolivia, and its bearing on the age of the Deseadan South American Land Mammal 'Age'. J Vert Paleontol 18:189–199

Kay RF, Vizcaíno SF, Bargo MS (2012) A review of the paleoenvironment and paleoecology of the Miocene Santa Cruz Formation. In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Reconstructing a high-latitude paleocommunity in the Early Miocene climatic optimum. Cambridge University Press, New York

Kielan-Jaworowska Z, Gambaryan PP (1994) Postcranial anatomy and habits of Asian multituberculate mammals. Fossils Strata 36:1–92

Kielan–Jaworowska Z, Cifelli RL, Luo ZX (2004) Mammals from the age of Dinosaurs origins, evolution, and structure. Columbia University Press, New York

Krapovickas V (2012) Ichnology of distal overbank deposits of the Santa Cruz Formation (late Early Miocene): paleohydrologic and paleoclimatic significance. In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Early Miocene Paleobiology in Patagonia: high-latitude paleocommunities of the Santa Cruz Formation. Cambridge University Press, New York

Krapovickas V, Nasif N (2011) Large caviomorph rodent footprints of the Late Oligocene Vinchina Formation, Argentina. Palaeontol Electron 14:12A

Krapovickas V, Marsicano CA, Mángano MG (2009a) Paleobiology of avian and mammalian fossil footprints from the south of South America. J Vertebr Paleontol 29:129

Krapovickas V, Mángano MG, Marsicano CA (2009b) Cenozoic tetrapod footprints from the Vinchina Basin, La Rioja, Argentina. Ameghiniana 46:33R

Krapovickas V, Ciccioli PL, Mángano MG, Marsicano CA, Limarino CO (2009c) Paleobiology and paleoecology of an arid-semiarid Miocene South American ichnofauna in anastomosed fluvial deposits. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 284:129–152

Kubo T (2011) Estimating body weight from footprints: application to pterosaurs. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 299:197–199

Kumar S, Hedges SB (1998) A molecular timescale for vertebrate evolution. Nature 392:917–920

Leakey MD, Harris JM (1987) Laetoli, a Pliocene site in Northern Tanzania. Clarendon, Oxford

Leonardi G (1980) On the discovery of an abundant ichno-fauna (vertebrates and invertebrates) in the Botucatu Formation s.s. in Araraquara, São Paulo, Brazil. An Acad Bras Cienc 52:559–567

Leonardi G (1981) Novo Ichnogênero de Tetrápode Mesozóico da Formação Botucatu, Araraquara, SP. An Acad Bras Cienc 53:793–805

Leonardi G (1994) Annotated atlas of South America tetrapod footprints (Devonian to Holocene). Publication of the Companhia dePesquisa de Recursos Minerais, Brasilia

Leonardi, G. & de Oliveira Lima, F.H. (1990) A revision of the Triassic and Jurassic tetrapod footprints of Argentina and a new approach on the age and meaning of the Botucatu Formation footprints (Brazil). Revista Brasileira de Geociências, 20, 216–229

Limarino CO, Ciccioli PL, Marenssi SA (2010) Análisis del contacto entre las formaciones Vinchina y Toro Negro (Sierra de Los Colorados, Provincia de La Rioja, Argentina), sus implicancias tectónicas. Lat Am J Sedimentol Basin Anal 17:113–132

Lindsay E (1997) Eurasian mammal biochronology: an overview. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 133:117–128

Lockley MG, Hunt AP (1995) Dinosaur tracks and other fossil footprints of the western United States. Columbia University Press, New York

Lockley MG, Meyer CA (2000) Dinosaur tracks and other fossil footprints of Europe. Columbia University Press, New York

Lockley MG, Hunt AP, Meyer CA, Rainforthd EC, Schultz RJ (1998) A survey of fossil footprint sites at Glen Canyon National Recreation Area (Western USA): a case study in documentation of trace fossil resources at a national preserve. Ichnos 5:177–211

Lockley MC, Ritts BD, Leonardi G (1999) Mammal track assemblages from the Early Tertiary of China, Peru, Europe and North America. Palaios 14:398–404

Lockley MG, Spencer G. Lucas , Adrian P. Hunt & Robert Gaston (2004) Ichnofaunas from the Triassic-Jurassic Boundary Sequences of the Gateway area, Western Colorado: Implications for Faunal Composition and Correlations with Other Areas, Ichnos: An International Journal for Plant and Animal Traces, 11:1–2, 89–102, DOI:10.1080/10420940490442331

Loope DB (2006) Dry-season tracks in dinosaur-triggered grainflows. Palaios 21:132–142

Lucas SG (2007) Cenozoic mammal footprint biostratigraphy and biochronology. New Mex Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:103–111

Luo Z-X (2007) Transformation and diversification in early mammal evolution. Nature 450:1011–1019

Luo Z-X, Kielan-Jaworowska Z, Cifelli RL (2002) In quest for a phylogeny of Mesozoic mammals. Acta Palaeontol Pol 47:1–78

Manera de Bianco T, Aramayo SA (2004) Taphonomic features of Puhuen-Co palaeoichnological site (Late Pleistocene), Buenos Aires Province, Argentina. In: Abstract of the Ichnia first international congress on ichnology, Museo Paleontologico Egidio Feruglio, Trelew, Argentina, 19–23 April 2004

Marshall LG, Cifelli RL (1990) Analysis of changing diversity patterns in Cenozoic Land mammal age faunas, South America. Palaeovertebrata 19:169–210

Marshall LG, Muizon C (1988) The dawn of the age of mammals in South America. Nat Geogr Res 4:23–55

Martin T, Rauhut OWM (2005) Mandible and dentition of *Asfaltomylos patagonicus* (Australosphenida, Mammalia) and the Evolution of tribosphenic teeth. J Vertebr Paleontol 25:414–425

Matheos SD, Raigemborn MS (2012) Sedimentology and paleoenvironment of the Santa Cruz Formation. In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Early Miocene Paleobiology in Patagonia: high-latitude paleocommunities of the Santa Cruz Formation. Cambridge University Press, New York

McCrea RT, Sarjeant WAS (2001) New ichnotaxa of bird and mammal footprints from the Lower Cretaceous (Albian) Gates Formation of Alberta. In: Tanke DH, Carpenter K, Skrepnick MW (eds) Mesozoic vertebrate life. Indiana University Press, Bloomington, Indianapolis

McCrea R, Pemberton S, Currie P (2004) New ichnotaxa of mammal and reptile tracks from the Upper Paleocene of Alberta. Ichnos 11:323–339

McDonald HG (2007) Biomechanical inferences of locomotion in ground sloths: integrating morphological and track data. New Mex Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:201–208

McDonald HG, White RS, Lockley MG, Mustoe GE (2007) An indexed bibliography of Cenozoic vertebrate tracks. New Mex Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:275–302

McNeil PE, Hills LV, Kooyman B, Tolman S (1999) First reported Canadian proboscidean trackway, probably mammoth, from the St. Mary Reservoir, Alberta, Canada. In: McCracken AD (ed) Canadian paleontology conference program and abstracts CPC-IX. University of Calgary, Alberta, Canada, 19p

Megirian D, Prideaux GJ, Murray PF, Smith N (2010) An Australian land mammal age biochronological scheme. Paleobiology 36:658–671

Melchor RN (2009) Bird tracks preserved in fluvial channel facies of the Río Negro Formation (Neogene), La Pampa Province, Argentina. Ameghiniana 46:209–214

Melchor RN, Genise JF, Farina JL, Sánchez MV, Sarzetti L, Visconti G (2010) Large striated burrows from fluvial deposits of the Neogene Vinchina Formation, La Rioja, Argentina: a crab origin suggested by neoichnology and sedimentology. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 291:400–418

Melchor RN, Cardonatto MC, Visconti G (2012) Palaeonvironmental and palaeoecological significance of flamingo-like footprints in shallow-lacustrine rocks: an example from the Oligocene–Miocene Vinchina Formation, Argentina. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeocol 315–316:181–198

Minter NJ, Braddy SJ (2009) Ichnology of an Early Permian tidal flat: the Robledo Mountains Formation of the Robledo Mountains, Southern New Mexico, USA. Spec Pap Palaeontol 82:1–107

Mothé D, Avilla LS, Cozzuol M, Winck GR (2012) Taxonomic revision of the Quaternary gomphotheres (Mammalia: Proboscidea: Gomphotheriidae) from the South American lowlands. Quat Int 276–277:2–7

Moussa MT (1968) Fossil tracks from the Green River Formation (Eocene) near Soldier Summit, Utah. J Paleontol 42:1433–1438

Murelaga X, Baceta JL, Astibia H, Badiola A, Suberbiola P (2000) Icnitas de perisodactylos en el Oligoceno de Navarra: posicion estratigrafica y sistematica. Geogaceta 27:15–17

Mustoe GE (2002) Eocene bird, reptile and mammal tracks from the Chuckanut Formation, northwest Washington. Palaios 17:403–413

Nixon DA (1991) The presence of mammalian and avian trackways in the Oligocene Toadstool Park channel sandstones in northern Sioux County, Nebraska. In: Proceedings of the 101st annual meeting of the Nebraska Academy of Sciences, pp 60–61

Noblet C, Marocco R, Deflaud J (1987) Analyse sédimentologique des “Couches Rouges” du bassin intramontagneux de Sicuani (sud du Pérou). Bull Inst Francaise Etud Andines XVI(1–2):55–78

O’Leary MA, Bloch JI, Flynn JJ, Gaudin TJ, Giallombardo A, Giannini NP, Goldberg SL, Kraatz BP, Luo ZX, Meng J, Ni X (2013) The placental mammal ancestor and the post-K-Pg radiation of placentals. Science 339:662–667

Olsen PE (1980) Fossil great lakes of the Newark supergroup in New Jersey. In: Manspeizer W (ed) Field studies of New Jersey geology and guide to field trips. State Geological Association, New York, pp 352–398

Olsen, P.E. & Rainforth, E.C. (2001) The “Age of Dinosaurs” in the Newark Basin, with special reference to the Lower Hudson Valley. New York State Geological Association Guidebook, pp. 59–176

Olsen PE, Kent DV, Sues HD, Koeberl C, Huber H, Montanari A, Rainforth EC, Fowell SJ, Szajna MJ, Hartline BW (2002) Ascent of dinosaurs linked to an iridium anomaly at the Triassic-Jurassic boundary. Science 296:1305–1307

Panin K (1965) Coexistence de traces des vertèbres et de mécanoglyphes dan la molasse Miocène des Carpathes orientales. Rev Roum Geol Geophys Geogr 7:141–163

Panin N, Avram E (1962) Nouvelles empreintes de vertebres dans le Miocene de la zone subcarpathique roumaine. Stud Cercet Geol 7:455–484

Peabody FH (1954) Trackways of an ambystomid salamander from the Paleocene of Montana. J Paleontol 28:79–83

Pérez-Lorente F, Serrano F, Rodríguez T et al (1999) Pisadas fósiles de mamíferos en el Mioceno superior de La Hoya de la Sima (Jumilla, Murcia, España). Bol Soc Esp Paleontol 14:257–267

Prats M, López G (1995) Sintesis de la ichnofauna del Sinclinal d’Aramunt, entre Meridia d’Aramunt I el riu Segre (Prov. De Lleida). Paleontol Evol 28–29:247–267

Prevosti FJ, Forasiepi AM, Ercoli MD, Turazzini GF (2012) Paleoecology of the mammalian carnivores (Metatheria, Sparassodonta) of the Santa Cruz Formation (late Early Miocene). In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Early Miocene Paleobiology in Patagonia: high-latitude paleocommunities of the Santa Cruz Formation. Cambridge University Press, New York

Raigemborn MS, Krapovickas V, Matheos S, Vizcaíno S, Bargo MS, Zapata L (2012) Condiciones paleoambientales de facies edafizadas de la Formación Santa Cruz, Neógeno Temprano de Patagonia Austral, Argentina. Paper presented at the XIII Reunión Argentina de Sedimentología. Salta, Argentina, 16–19 May 2012

Rainforth EC, Lockley MG (1996) Tracks of diminutive dinosaurs and hopping mammals from the Jurassic of North and South America. In: Morales M (ed) The continental Jurassic. Mus N Ariz Bull 60:265–269

Ramos VA (1970) Estratigrafía y estructura del Terciario en la Sierra de Los Colorados (provincia de La Rioja), República Argentina. Rev Asoc Geol Arg 25:359–382

Robertson GM, Sternberg GF (1942) Fossil mammal tracks in Graham County, Kansas. Trans Kans Acad Sci 45:258–261

Roberts, D.L., Bateman M.D., Murray-Wallace C.V., Carr A.S., Holmes P.J., 2008. Last Interglacial fossil elephant trackways dated by OSL/AAR in coastal aeolianites, Still Bay, South Africa. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 257, 261–279

Rodríguez Brizuela R, Tauber A (2006) Estratigrafía y mamíferos fósiles de la Formación Toro Negro (Neógeno), Departamento de Vinchina, Noroeste de la Provincia de La Rioja, Argentina. Ameghiniana 43:257–272

Rougier GW, Martinelli AG, Forasiepi AM, Novacek MJ (2007a) New Jurassic mammals from Patagonia, Argentina: a reappraisal of australosphenidan morphology and interrelationships. Am Mus Novit 3566:1–54

Rougier GW, Garrido A, Gaetano L et al (2007b) First Jurassic Triconodon't from South America. Am Mus Novit 3580:1–17

Russell LS (1930) Early Tertiary mammal tracks from Alberta. Trans R Can Inst 17:217–221

Rutherford RL, Russell LS (1928) Mammal tracks from the Paskpoo beds of Alberta. Am J Sci 15:262–264

Sarjeant WAS (2000) The Mesozoic mammal footprint record reconsidered: with an account of newdiscoveries in the Cretaceous of northwestern Alberta, Canada. Paleontol Soc Korea Spec Pub 4:153–168

Sarjeant WAS, Langston Jr W (1994) Vertebrate footprints and invertebrate traces from the Chadronian (late Eocene) of Trans-Pecos, Texas. Texas Mem Mus Bull 36:1–86

Sarjeant WAS, Thulborn RA (1986) Probable marsupial footprints from the Cretaceous sediments of British Columbia. Can J Earth Sci 23:1223–1227

Schultz-Pittman J, Lockley M, Gaston R (1996) First reports of synapsid tracks from the Wingate and Moenave Formations, Colorado Plateau region. In: Morales M (ed) Continental Jurassic symposium volume. Museum of Northern Arizona, Flagstaff, pp 271–273

Scott JJ, Renaut RW, Buatois LA, Owen RB (2009) Trace fossils in exhumed surfaces around saline lakes: an example from Lake Bogoria, Kenya Rift Valley. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 272:176–198

Scrivner PJ, Bottjer DJ (1986) Neogene avian and mammalian tracks from Death Valley National Monument, California: their context, classification and preservation. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 57:285–331

Simpson GG (1980) Splendid isolation. The curious history of South American mammals. Yale University Press, New Haven and London

Springer MS (1997) Molecular clocks and the timing of the placental and marsupial radiations in relation to the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary. J Mamm Evol 4:285–302

Springer MS, Murphy WJ, Eizirik E, O'Brien SJ (2003) Placental mammal diversification and the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:1056–1061

Stehli FG, Webb SD (1985) The Great American Biotic Interchange. Plenum Press, New York

Tauber AA (1997) Bioestratigrafía de la formación Santa Cruz (Mioceno inferior) en el extremo sudeste de la Patagonia. Ameghiniana 34:413–426

Terry Jr DO, Wells WB (1995) The White River Group revisited: vertebrate trackways, ecosystems, and lithostratigraphic revision, redefinition, and redescription. In: Diffendal RF, Flowerday CA (eds) Geologic field trips in Nebraska and adjacent parts of Kansas and South Dakota. University of Nebraska-Lincoln Conservation and Survey Division Guidebook 10:43–57

Tobein H (1952) Uber die Function der Seitenzehen tridactyler Equiden. Neues Jahrb Geol P-A 96:137–171

Tripaldi A, Net L, Limarino C, Marenssi S, Ré G, Caselli A (2001) Paleoambientes sedimentarios y procedencia de la Formación Vinchina, Mioceno, Noroeste de la Provincia de La Rioja. Rev Asoc Geol Arg 56:443–465

Turner JCM (1960) Estratigrafía del tramo medio de la Sierra del Famatina y adyacencias (La Rioja). Bol Acad Nac Ci 42, 1 Córdoba

Turner JCM (1964) Descripción geológica de la Hoja 15c, Vinchina, provincia de La Rioja. Bol Dir Nac Geol Min 100:81

Uchman A, Pika-Biolzi M, Hochuli PA (2004) Oligocene trace fossils from temporary fluvial plain ponds: an example from the Freshwater Molasse of Switzerland. Eclogae Geol Helv 97:133–148

Vizcaíno SF, Bargo MS, Fariña RA (2008) Form, function and paleobiology in xenarthrans. In: Vizcaíno SF, Loughry WJ (eds) The biology of the xenarthra. University Press of Florida, Gainsville

Vizcaíno SF, Cassini GH, Toledo N, Bargo MS (2012a) On the evolution of large size in mammalian herbivores of Cenozoic faunas of Southern South America. In: Patterson BD, Costa LP (eds) Bones, clones, and biomes: the history and geography of recent neotropical mammals. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago

Vizcaíno SF, Fernicola JC, Bargo MS (2012b) Paleobiology of Santacrucian glyptodonts and armadillos (Xenarthra, Cingulata). In: Vizcaíno S, Kay R, Bargo S (eds) Early Miocene Paleobiology in Patagonia: high-latitude paleocommunities of the Santa Cruz Formation. Cambridge University Press, New York

Vyalov OS (1965) Sztratigrafija neogenovüh molassez Predkarpatszkovo progiva. Akademiya Nauk Ukainskoy SSR Institut Geologii Geokhimii Goryuchikh Iskopayemykh. Naukova Dumka, Kiev

Vyalov OS (1966) Sledy zhiznedeyatelnosti organizmov i ikh paleontologicheskoe znachenie. Akademiya Nauk Ukrainskoy SSR Institut Geologii Geokhimii Goryuchikh Iskopayemykh. Naukova Dumka, Kiev

West RM, Pamt TR, Hutchison JR, Conroy GC (1983) Fossil mammal footprints from the Siwaliks of south-central Asia. Curr Sci 52:12–16

Wilson J, Marsicano C, Smith RMH (2009) Dynamic locomotor capabilities revealed by early dinosaur trackmakers from southern Africa. PLoS One 4(10):e7331

Woodburne MO (2006) Mammal ages. Stratigraphy 3:229–261

Yadagiri P (1984) New symmetrodonts from Kota Formation (Early Jurassic), India. J Geol Soc India 25:514–621

Zachos JC et al (2001) Trends, rhythms, and aberrations in global climate 65 Ma to present. Science 292:686–693

Zavala C, Freije H (2001) Estratigrafía secuencial del Terciario superior marino de Patagonia. Un equivalente de la "crisis del Mesiniano"? Geotemas 1:217–221

Zavattieri AM, Cerdeño E, Bottero R, Londero S (2001) Estudio, prospección y propuesta de rescate y protección de yacimientos paleontológicos en el área de Potrerillos y zonas aledañas (Mendoza). Informes parciales y final para el Ministerio de Ambiente y Obras Públicas de Mendoza, Argentina

Noblet C, Leonardi G, Taquet P, Marocco R, Cordova E (1995) Nouvelle découverte d'empreintes laissées par des dinosaures dans la Formation des é (bassin de Cuzco-Sicuani, Sud du Perou): Conséquences stratigraphiques et tectoniques. C R Acad Sci 320(II):785–791

Chapter 15
Major Events in Hominin Evolution

Martin Lockley, Jeff Meldrum, and Jeong Yul Kim

15.1 Introduction

Until recently (reviewed in Kim et al. 2008a, b; Lockley et al. 2007a, b, 2008a, b; Lockley and Roberts 2004), the study of fossil hominin tracks had been largely neglected by ichnologists, paleontologists, and anthropologists, with the exception of the famous Laetoli hominin trackways in east Africa. While it may be speculative to consider why this has been so, the study of hominin footprints, like the study of hominins in general, is of potential mutual interest to several disciplines (paleontology, ichnology, anthropology, archeology), and so has not been claimed as the exclusive province of any one of these. The distinction between hominids and hominins is sometimes confusing to nonspecialists. Here we use the term hominin, in reference to the tribe Hominini, to include representatives of the "australopiths" and the "hominans", as outlined by Wood (2005), and Wood and Richmond (2000).

With a few notable exceptions (Hay and Leakey 1982; Leakey and Harris 1987; Pales 1976) there were almost no hominin footprint-bearing sites that had been subjected to any sort of comprehensive analysis, prior to 2000. Even though a spate of publications in 2004 through 2009 (Meldrum 2004a, b; Lockley et al. 2007a, b, 2008a, b; Meldrum et al. 2010, 2011) marked a re-awakening of interest, most of the few dozen publications to emerge at this time could best be classified as preliminary

M. Lockley (✉)
University of Colorado Denver, CB172, PO Box 173364, Denver, CO 80217-3364, USA
e-mail: Martin.Lockley@UCDenber.edu

J. Meldrum
Department of Biological Sciences, Idaho State University,
921 S. 8th Ave., Stop 8007, Pocatello, ID 83209-8007, USA

J.Y. Kim
Department of Earth Science Education, Korea National University of Education,
Cheongwon, Chungbuk 361-892, Korea

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_15

site reports, some dealing with sites that had been known for decades but never studied. Nevertheless, since the publication of two special volumes in *Ichnos* (vol. 15 (3–4) for 2008, and vol. 16 (1–2) for 2009), under the title *Hominid Ichnology*, interest in the subject has been sustained, and a number of papers have emerged dealing both with the oldest African sites, and with other younger more widely distributed sites (e.g., Bennet and Morse 2014). In accordance with the theme of this volume, we herein review the hominin track record from the perspective of the role of trace fossils (primarily fossil footprints) in highlighting major events in hominin evolution, including emphasis on new studies and perspectives not discussed in previous summaries (Lockley et al. 2007a, b, 2008a, b).

While the focus of this contribution is on fossil footprints and their interpretation, the renaissance in "Hominid Ichnology", represented in part by the *Ichnos* volumes, has been accompanied by independent, but simultaneous, interest in redefining the scope of hominid ichnology (Hasiotis et al. 2007; Baucon et al. 2008; Kim et al. 2008a, b). In short, the authors of these articles, as well as those of the present article (Kim et al. 2004, 2008a, b), simultaneously proposed that hominid ichnology should include the study of a wide variety of traces, in addition to footprints. These traces include, but are not limited to, tool marks and artifacts made by modifying (flaking, engraving, sculpting, excavating), of wood, bone, rock, and earth (soil) substrates, as well as various forms of painting and writing, also on a wide range of substrates. While recently made popular in Crime Scene Investigation (CSI) dramas, involving detection of all manner of traces on diverse substrates (Lockley 1999), such facets of hominid ichnology were already evident during the so called Late Paleolithic Cultural Revolution (discussed below) and raise fundamental questions about the importance of ichnology in understanding and reflecting complex cultural behavior during one of the most debated "major events in evolution"—the emergence of modern humans. Hominid ichnology bridges the gap between tetrapod ichnology and what Baucon et al. (2008) appropriately identified as the important subdiscipline of ichnoarcheology. The etymology of words like *ichnos* and *trace*, discussed below, underscore the deep relationships between trace fossils and writing. Without such 'ichnologic' representations of the behavior of modern humans and their ancestors, this volume and all its predecessors would not be possible.

15.2 Early Hominin Bipedalism: Laetoli Revisited

Even the non-paleontologist and non-anthropologist is likely aware of the famous footprints from Laetoli in Tanzania discovered by the Mary Leakey team in 1976 (Leakey and Hay 1979; Hay and Leakey 1982; Leakey and Harris 1987). They ostensibly indicate a group, possibly a family unit, of three individuals, one of which was slightly smaller (creating trackway G-1) walking to the left-hand side of the other two (creating trackways G2/3), which appeared to be two individuals stepping in each other's footprints (Fig. 15.1). Trackmaker height estimates are about 1.10–1.15 m for G-1 and 1.32–1.52 m for G-2/3 (White and Suwa 1987). As noted below, despite this group-of-three scenario, and the many analyses of the trackways that

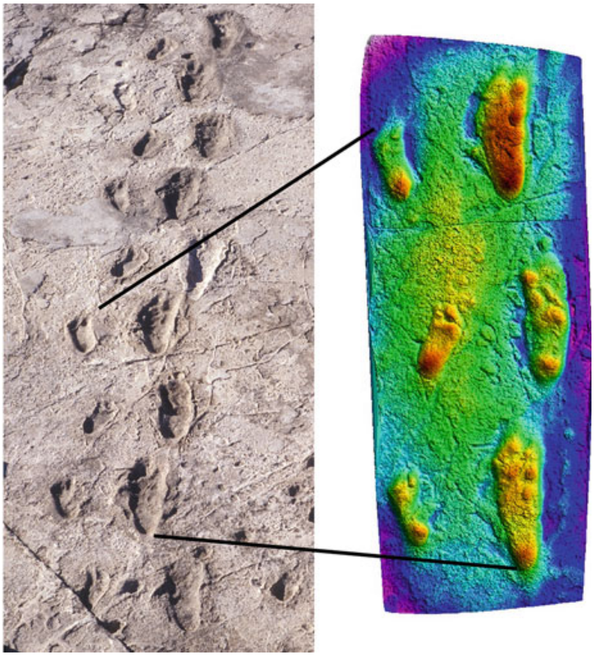


Fig. 15.1 Pliocene hominin trackway from Laetoli (*left*) include the G-1 trackway (*left*) and the overprinted, "double" G-2/3 trackways, possibly open to interpretation as a twice-overprinted, "treble" G-2/3/4 trackway. Photogrammetric image (*right*) after Kim et al. (2008b) shows three consecutive tracks (a stride) and highlights the multiple hallux (big toe) traces in the G-2/3 trackways

have been published since 1976 (e.g., Charteris et al. 1981; Tuttle 1990; Tuttle et al. 1990; White and Suwa 1987; Meldrum 2004a, b; 2007a; Meldrum et al. 2011), this interpretation has recently been challenged, and it has been claimed that there are in fact three trackmakers represented by the overlapping series not two (Musiba et al. 2011; Matthews et al. 2011). This observation implies a G-1 + G-2/3/4 scenario.

Clearly, the most significant implication of the Laetoli trackways and the one on which most researchers agree, is that they provide direct evidence of a ~3.6 Ma old hominin that was capable of walking upright. As almost every anthropologic text proclaims, the transition to a fully upright gait was a major event in hominin evolution, perhaps the seminal adaptation of this radiation. Moreover, given the fragmentary state of many body fossils of this age, trackways arguably provide the best evidence that hominin bipedalism was established by 3.6 Ma. Mary Leakey proclaimed this "the most remarkable find I have made in my whole career" (Lewin 1982, p. 220).

A few other facts may be inferred from the Laetoli tracks and their broader geologic and paleontologic context. First, they form part of a huge trackway assemblage dominated by the tracks of non-hominin mammals and birds, including some that evidently represent extinct species (Leakey and Harris 1987). We may also assert that the body fossil record shows that representatives of genus *Australopithecus* were extant at the time when the tracks were made. Lastly, we may note that the tracks were recently given the name *Praehominipes laetoliensis* (Meldrum et al. 2011). The formal name and diagnosis distinguish them from the previously erected ichnotaxon *Hominipes modernus* (Kim et al. 2009), the latter being the formal name applied to fossil footprints unequivocally attributed to *Homo sapiens* (and possibly *H. neanderthalensis*).

Beyond these *facts* there is far less agreement about the interpretation of the trackway evidence, though Kim et al. (2007) discussed their paleontologic, stratigraphic, and sedimentologic significance. As we have seen, even the number of individuals producing a trackway has recently been disputed (Musiba et al. 2011). In addition, there is disagreement as to whether the tracks were made by a trackmaker with a foot architecture manifestly distinct, in its mosaic and/or intermediate nature (Stern and Susman 1983; Susman et al. 1984; Deloison 1991, 1992; Clarke 1999; Meldrum 2000, 2002; 2004; Berge et al. 2006; Meldrum and Chapman 2007; Bennett et al. 2009; Hatala 2014) or an as yet unrecognized relatively derived hominin (e.g., Day and Wickens 1980; Charteris et al. 1981; Alexander 1984; Suwa 1984; Lovejoy 1988; Tuttle 1985, 1996; Tuttle et al. 1990, 1991; Schmid 2004; Sellers et al. 2005; Harcourt-Smith and Hilton 2005; Kimbel and Delezene 2009; Raichlen et al. 2010; Tuttle 2014). Closely intertwined with this debate is the question of whether the footprints are essentially indistinguishable from arched modern hominin tracks (Tuttle 1990; Tuttle et al. 1990; Crompton et al. 2012) or whether they show evidence of primitive features, including a midtarsal break (*sensu* Meldrum et al. 2011), which would imply that the trackmaker's foot morphology, and dynamic footprint registration differed from that known for modern humans.

It is perhaps surprising that such basic evidence as the number of individual trackways is in dispute. However, it should be remembered that after the initial excavation, molding, and analysis, which included some 3D imaging using 1980s technology, the tracks were reburied and most researchers had to rely on studying planimetric figures or fiberglass replicas representing only a short segment of the G1 and G2/3 trackways (Lockley and Matthews 2007; Meldrum 2007a). Even after the tracks were exhumed by the Getty Conservation Institute (Demas and Agnew 1996) in order to assess disturbances resulting from the reburial, they were again reburied in order to conserve them. It was only in 2011 that they were exhumed for a second time and subjected to high resolution photogrammetric analysis (Musiba et al. 2011; Matthews et al. 2011). These results suggest an assemblage of four, rather than three trackways, in which a group of three rather than two have overlapping footsteps. While popular inference has been tempted to interpret the "group-of-three" scenario as possible evidence for a "family" unit consisting of two larger adults and a smaller juvenile offspring, the new interpretation casts doubt on such a "nuclear family" scenario. Meldrum (2007a), after a careful analysis of two sets of stereophotographs of the G2/3 trackway, determined that the lengths of the G2/3 footprints were approximately 25 cm (G2-25) and 20 cm (G3-9), respectively. The more recent evidence (Musiba et al. 2011; Matthews et al. 2011) calls for a careful reanalysis of the size of the overlapping footprints, which may revise these size estimates. What might the number and size composition imply about the trackmaker demographics and behavior? What induced three trackmakers to follow closely in line, with the two followers stepping repeatedly in the footprints of the leading individual? An unfamiliar substrate? Given the uncertainty surrounding the overstepped footprints (G2/3 or G2/3/4), we can only note that the G1 trail has footprints ~18 cm long and ~8 cm wide with a step of 41–44 cm, indicating a trackmaker with a stature of ~1.32 m (cf. White and Suwa 1987).

As noted by Lockley et al. (2008a, p. 107), the non-hominin Laetoli track assemblages allows a census that ostensibly attributes most trackmakers to "extant species, or species that are indistinguishable from modern species (or generic, and higher categories) on the basis of tracks. The only exceptions are the identification of extinct chalicothere and *Hipparion* tracks, the latter studied by Renders (1984). The census clearly shows that rabbits (or other lagomorphs) were abundant in the area, numerically constituting 88.8 % of the non-hominin vertebrate tracks." Thus, based on rabbit abundance, Laetoli was "the Watership Down" of the ichnologic world (Lockley 1999, p. 241)! However, as this census is based on individual prints—not trackways—it is not a reliable measure of biomass, although potentially useful as a general indicator of ecology and the activity of faunal components.

Lastly, we may note that the Laetoli tracks are preserved in reworked volcaniclastic sediments, which allow for inferences about runoff and seasonal climatic regimes (Hay and Leakey 1982; Houck et al. 2009). In conclusion, therefore, the Laetoli tracks offer us valuable evidence of a major evolutionary event; the emergence and nature of early hominin bipedalism. They also form part of a rich assemblage that has attracted wide scientific interest. However, disparate interpretations of the trackmakers and their behavior continue to be debated, and access to the entire trackways, rather than partial replicas, remains restricted by the need to keep them covered in order to preserve them.

15.3 Walking Erect Phase II: In and Out of Africa

15.3.1 On the Shores of Lake Turkana

There is a huge temporal gap in the hominin track record between the ~3.6 Ma Laetoli occurrence and two ~1.5 Ma track sites recorded in the Koobi Fora Formation on the eastern shore of Lake Turkana. As noted by Behrensmeyer and Laporte (1981, p. 3), the first discovery of Koobi Fora footprints (from a site known as GaJi10) contributed "a reference point on hominin foot morphology, locomotion behavior, and ecology 2 Myr younger than the Laetoli occurrences and ~1 Myr older than the Late Pleistocene human footprints in Europe." Unlike the Laetoli tracks, which are unequivocally Pliocene in age, the Koobi Fora tracks can be assigned to the Lower Pleistocene, which spans the interval between ~1.8 and ~0.8 Ma.

At the time of the first discovery, Behrensmeyer and Laporte (1981) inferred that the Koobi Fora tracks may have been produced by a *Homo erectus* (*H. ergaster*) individual ~1.5–1.6 Ma. This date is more or less confirmed by Bennett et al. (2009), who stated that the track layer is just below a tuff dated at 1.435 Ma. The decided lack of details of morphology in the tracks provides no evidence of significant changes in the hominin foot since the Laetoli trackway.

Behrensmeyer and Laporte (1981) reported tracks visible in a single trackway at site GaJi120, but Bennett et al. (2009) reported that two more tracks were excavated at the site. According to Behrensmeyer and Laporte (1981), the tracks range in length from 25 to 32 cm and the mean foot size dimensions are estimated at 26 cm long and 10 cm wide, suggesting an individual 1.6–1.8 m in height. In addition to some isolated tracks at the Ileret site, Bennett et al. (2009) reported at least four trackway segments, one from the lower level, and three from the upper level, and they estimated the height of the track makers as between 1.75 and 1.78 m (±0.26 m), with a possible subadult print from the lower level representing an individual only 0.92 m (±0.13 m).

Bennett et al. (2009) reported another site at Ileret, Kenya, about 45 km north of the GaJi10 site that reveals two hominin track-bearing layers, ~5 m apart stratigraphically, dated at ~1.53 Ma. The Ileret site reveals tracks which have better preservation than the GaJi10 site footprints as they reveal individual digital pad impressions. Dingwall et al. (2013) concluded that some or all of the footprints found on three levels could be either *Homo erectus* (*H. ergaster*) or *Paranthropus boisei*. Bennett et al. (2009) concluded that the footprints provide "the oldest evidence of an essentially modern human-like foot anatomy, with a relatively adducted hallux, medial longitudinal arch, and medial weight transfer before push-off." We find support for only one of these three points (i.e. a relatively adducted hallux). We find no evidence to support the consistent presence of a longitudinal arch or for a medial weight transfer. The suggestions of a medial longitudinal arch in the clearest examples (such as depicted on the cover of *Science*; Bennett et al. 2009) are the result of distortions caused by secondary impressions with extrusion left by passing ungulates, which obscure the medial margin of the hominin footprints (Fig. 15.2). In other instances, the preservation is so poor that the actual topography of the medial contact surface is indiscernible. A number of the published examples show a clear lack of medial weight transfer. Although differences of substrate properties may influence the general appearance of individual footprints as demonstrated by Morse et al. (2013), we observe consistent distinctions to the specific appearance of modern human footprints, regardless of substrate. Therefore, we maintain that *Homo erectus* (*H. ergaster*) had neither a fixed longitudinal arch (*sensu* Mauch et al. 2008) nor a modern toe-off mechanism, in concordance with analysis of the hallucal metatarsal KNM BK-63 (Meldrum et al. 2010), or that of the Dmanisi hominin post crania (*contra* Lordkipanidze et al. 2007; Pontzer et al. 2010).

15.3.2 Out of Africa

The phrase "Out of Africa" has become synonymous with the now entrenched view that our hominin ancestors originated in Africa, an opinion that can be traced back at least to Darwin's *Descent of Man* (Darwin 1872). Certainly there is little or no evidence to refute the idea that australopithecines and early *Homo* had their origins in Africa and may never have left that continent (although interpretations of *Homo floresiensis* from Indonesia, as potentially a relict late australopith/early *Homo* sp. raises the possibility of earlier dispersal out of Africa). Likewise, it has traditionally

Fig. 15.2 Tracks attributed to *Homo erectus* (*H. ergaster*) at Ileret, Kenya (after Bennett et al. 2009)

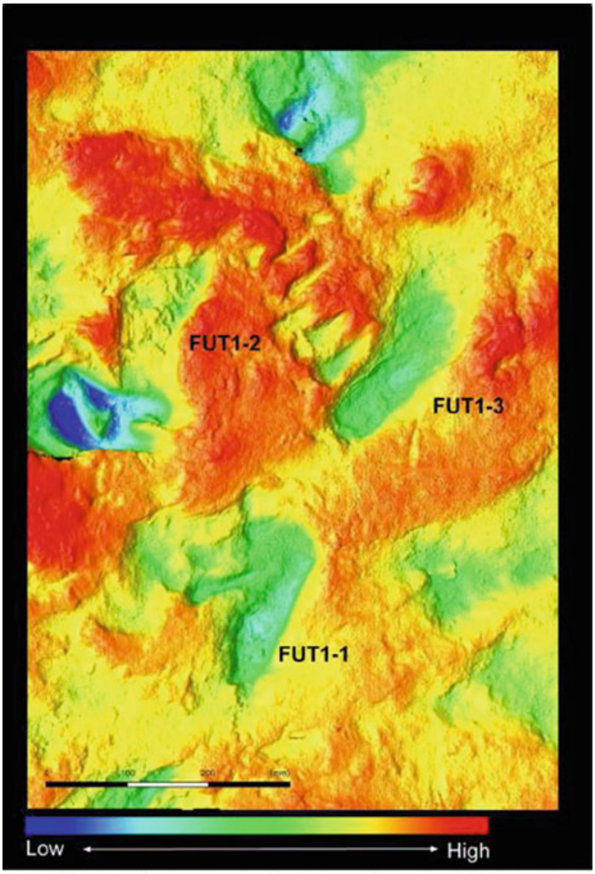


Figure S7. Mosaic of scans viewed vertically showing potential hominin prints FUT1-1 to FUT1-3. The surface has been color rendered in to 5 mm vertical isopleths.

been assumed that *Homo erectus* (*H. ergaster*), a species that existed from ~2.0 to 0.2 Ma, with little pronounced morphologic change, originated in Africa, even though primitive representatives of this species dispersed across the old world at an early date. For example, remains are reported from Dmanisi, Georgia as early as ~1.8 Ma, raising the possibility of an Asian origin for *H. erectus* (Ferring et al. 2011).

Following the hominin footprint trail from the early Pleistocene sites east of Lake Turkana, the next youngest reports are from three European sites, one dated to the Early Pleistocene, between 1.0 and 0.78 Ma, and the other two dated to the Middle Pleistocene. The oldest site, recently reported by Ashton et al. (2014), is associated with estuarine sediments of the Cromer Forest-bed Formation at the Happisburgh site in east Anglia, England. The footprints identified at this site occur in parallel-laminated silts, but are not very well preserved. In fact, only one footprint shows toe impressions and none preserve clear evidence of a medial arch. However, although the footprints are susceptible to destruction by marine erosion soon after they are exhumed, about 50 elongate footprints (length 14–25 cm, width

6–11 cm) were nevertheless identified in an area of about 12 m^2. Ashton et al. (2005, p. 7) argued that "the shape of the footprints suggests that they were most likely made by hominins and none of the prints are consistent with those formed by other mammals." Moreover, Parfitt et al. (2005) have established that flint tools made by hominins occur in this same formation.

Prior to the reports from Happisburgh, the oldest, best-dated, and best-studied footprint site was the Middle Pleistocene Roccamonfina Volcano site in Italy, reported by Mietto et al. (2003) and Avanzini et al. (2004, 2008), dated between ~385,000 and ~325,000 yBP. The trackways occur in a volcanic ash deposited on the slopes of the Rocamonfina volcanic complex and, due to the slope, one trackway of 27 footprints has a zig-zag configuration, indicating an individual switch-backing. Another trackway of 19 prints follows a gently curved course, with a few hand- or palm-prints where the trackmaker put his/her hand on the ground. A third trackway of ten prints forms a straight line. The footprint details are quite indistinct and not very well-preserved. Most lack clear toe impressions, even though faint traces of the hallux are recognized in some cases, even indicating a gap between digits I and II typical of habitually unshod individuals. The tracks are generally flat, but show possible inconsistent traces of a transient medial longitudinal arch in some cases. They are described as short and broad (~20–24 cm long and ~10–12 cm wide), suggesting a stature for the trackmaker of ~1.56 m. Based on age, these tracks likely represent a pre-*sapiens* or pre-*neanderthalensis* species such as *H. heidlebergensis*, or possibly late *Homo erectus* (*H. ergaster*) (Scaillet et al. 2008).

A second mid-Pleistocene footprint from Terra Amata, in southern France, has been tentatively dated at ~300,000–400,000 YYBP (De Lumley 1966, 1967; Miskovski 1967; Meldrum 2006, p. 246; De Lumley et al. 2011). The site only reveals one track, but it clearly shows a diagnostic hominin big toe (hallux) trace. However, like the Rocamonfina tracks, there is little evidence of a well-defined medial longitudinal arch (Meldrum 2004a, b). It is interesting that the lack of a well-defined arch is noted in both the Italian and French tracks. This is presumably open to several possible interpretations. For example: (1) the lack of a discernible arch could be due to poor footprint preservation, resulting from suboptimal substrate conditions at the time of registration, or post-track-making or post-exhumation weathering of the footprints, (2) the trackmaker may have been an individual or a member of a species in which arches were not well-defined, or inconspicuous as the result of having robust fleshy feet, or (3) hominins exhibit a mosaic pattern in evolution of features of the foot and stability of the foot's medial column was still lacking at this stage of hominin evolution.

Barnaby (1975) noted that hominin footprints from a volcanic ash near Demirköprü, Turkey were assigned an age of 250,000 yBP, suggesting they represent a pre-*sapiens* species (Ozansoy 1969). However, subsequent thermoluminescence dating of associated tuffs in the area gave much younger dates on the order of 65 ± 7 ka and 49 ± 9 ka (Westaway et al. 2003, 2004, 2006). These dates have been amended, yet again, to suggest dates as young as 12 ka (Tekkaya 1976; see Lockley et al. 2008a, b for summary). Some 50 pairs of footprints have been removed and are stored at the MTA Museum (Ocakoglu, personal communication). They measure ~29 cm in length and 11 cm wide, and show a robust hallux impression and well-developed ball, heel pad, and medial longitudinal arch, suggesting the footprint of a fully modern foot.

15.4 Tracking the Dawn of *H. sapiens* in Africa

The fossil footprint record in Southern Africa is important for understanding Middle-Late Pleistocene transitions, which were more or less temporally coincident with the emergence of modern *Homo sapiens*. Roberts (2008) reported the two important tracksites: one at Nahoon Point, near East London (Deacon 1966; Mountain 1966), now dated at about 127,000 ± 8000, and another in the Langebaan Lagoon area, 130 km south of Cape Town, dated to about 117,000 YYBP (Gore 1997; Roberts and Berger 1997; Roberts 2008). Thus, both track sites represent the last interglacial period that coincides with the sub-Series boundary between Middle and Late Pleistocene (Gibbard 2003). The Nahoon Point tracks are better preserved, showing well-preserved toe impressions and a footprint length of ~19 cm, and are associated with poorly preserved mammal and bird tracks. The Langebaan lagoon tracks are larger (~23 cm long), but less well-defined. They are associated with probable hyena tracks (Roberts 2008). Hatala et al. (2011), Richmond et al. (2011) and Zimmer et al. (2012) reported an assemblage of about 350 tracks comprising 18 trackways from Lake Natron, Tanzania dated at about 120,000 YYBP (Wong 2011). Charles Helm (personal communication 2012) reports a number of other mammal and bird track sites along the South African coast.

15.5 The Late Pleistocene: *H. sapiens* Produces a New Type of Ichnologic Record

The ichnologic record of *Homo sapiens* in the Late Pleistocene contains evidence of an evolutionary event that can only be characterized as “revolutionary.” Simply put, this is because humans changed the fundamental nature of the ichnologic record. Whereas they had previously created footprints, and a few butcher marks on bone, only inadvertently, by as early as 30,000–35,000 years ago they were deliberately producing artifacts and artwork, which most anthropologists acknowledge as an unprecedented “creative revolution.” Before proceeding any further we need to explore the justification for including human creations, such as art work and other traces produced by the growth of civilization, under the broad umbrella of vertebrate ichnology. The word *ichnos* derives from the Greek meaning footprint or trace. In this regard the English word “trace” has deep etymologic roots connecting it with the words, draw, drag, and trace. So, for example, a draw horse, drags or draws a plow leaving a furrow or trace (see Smith and Hall 1914 or Harper 2012, for Latin translation of “to drag” as *traho*).

On the one hand, one might argue that it would be simpler and more consistent with our account of the pre-Late Pleistocene record, to confine our discussion of hominin ichnology to footprints left "inadvertently" by humans, or human ancestors, and therefore to "avoid" discussion of a plethora of traces created deliberately by humans, leaving it to be dealt with in the fields of archeology and anthropology (Kim et al. 2008a; Baucon et al. 2008). On the other hand, it can be persuasively argued that it is entirely arbitrary to draw a line between human traces produced inadvertently and those produced deliberately. A bird builds a nest deliberately, not inadvertently, and the same goes for animals that dig burrows. One might also argue that avoiding the problem is the lazy way out, because it fails to address the question of what is legitimately classified as a hominin trace fossil. The separation or avoidance approach would in effect treat humans as a "special" species, somehow outside the evolutionary continuum, creating a charge of unwarranted bias, contrary to much contemporary scientific philosophy. Moreover it is difficult if not impossible to draw an arbitrary dividing line between the cultural artifacts and traces produced by *H. sapiens* and non-*H. sapiens* species. Pre- or non-*sapiens* species were already producing trace fossils, such as butcher marks on bone and knapping marks on flint long before the first *sapiens* cultural revolution was underway in the Late Paleolithic.

As noted in Sect. 15.1, there is also scientific precedent, for including many diverse *sapiens* artifacts as an integral part of hominin ichnology (Hasiotis et al. 2007; Baucon et al. 2008). Kim et al. (2008a) presented some of the aforementioned rationale in arguing for four categories of hominin trace fossils, including (1) Pliocene through Holocene footprints, (2) Pleistocene through Holocene butcher marks (feeding traces), (3) Early and Mid Pleistocene stone tools, and (4) Late Pleistocene multimedia technology (including art, dwelling traces, etc.). Examples of traces in the latter two categories can be found through to the present time. In a similar, but more detailed evolutionary scheme, Rothschild and Lister (2003), in a standard textbook on evolution, listed ten major events in hominin evolution, occurring in the last 5 million years. Among these, a majority leave a trace fossil record, notably (1) bipedal locomotion, (2) utilization of new food resources, (3) stone tool manufacture, (4) control of fire, (6) symbolic communication, (9), and complex cultural and technologic diversification (10). Hasiotis et al. (2007) proposed a classification of hominid trace fossils that is somewhat different from the fourfold classification of Kim et al. (2008a). Their classification includes "features, biofacts/ecofacts and artifacts" which are further divided into multiple categories, including almost all manufactured items or creations including structural remains, lithic, ceramic, and metal items. However, in general, the two classifications are similar in so far as they recognize almost all human creations that leave physical traces as some category of trace fossil. As noted above, this discussion has been enlarged by Baucon et al. (2008) in their definitions of the broad scope of ichnoarcheology.

For convenience, in the sections that follow, we discriminate between artifacts themselves and the traces left by their creation. For example, stones are not trace fossils, but worked stone tools, and especially flake scars are trace fossils. Likewise, a fire is an artifact in a different category from the charred hearth left behind as the trace of the fire. In the same way a shelter or building is not in the same category as the post holes or foundation ditches created during their construction.

In any event, from a philosophic and methodologic perspective, we arrive at the following conclusions. There is no scientific justification for confining discussion of hominin ichnology only to footprints (produced inadvertently or otherwise). Thus, we may include such diverse traces as flaked stone tools, fire traces, cave painting, ditches, and foundations. While these trace fossil categories are commonly different from those associated with animal activity during most of the Phanerozoic, they are nevertheless unequivocal evidence of behavior and activity. Like other trace fossils, evidence of activity of organisms (Mcllroy 2004) or work of organisms (ICZN 1999), hominin traces are significant in paleontology, stratigraphy, and sedimentology, but unlike other trace fossils, however, hominin traces can uniquely contribute to understanding the work or activities of our ancestors (Kim et al. 2007). Since it is we humans who attempt to evaluate "differences" between traces produced by different species, some subjectivity is perhaps inevitable, and the question arises as to whether these are "differences of kind or differences of degree." These issues are further discussed below. It is also worth noting that while the creation of a diverse suite of new hominin trace fossils in the Late Pleistocene is a considered a revolutionary leap forward in cultural terms (Diamond 1999; Mellars 2006) appearing as a major ichnologic event in the trace fossil record (Hasiotis et al. 2007; Kim et al. 2008a), it is not necessarily an anomalous evolutionary event. Rather it can be viewed as an example of a "punctuated evolution" scenario, or a change in the tempo of cultural evolution following a long Early–Middle Paleolithic period of relative stasis.

15.5.1 Breaking New Ground: Prelude to the Late Pleistocene Cultural Revolution

The geologically defined Late Pleistocene age extends from ~130,000 to 10,000 yBP. However, in comparison with the rapid developments of human cultural development in the later part of the Late Pleistocene, which falls within the range of ^{14}C dating techniques, the early part of this age (before ~50,000) has, until recently, produced comparatively little evidence of any major evolutionary events. There are no Late Pleistocene hominin tracksites dated with confidence in the first half of this interval (between ~130,000 and ~65,000). By contrast the latter part of the Late Pleistocene saw the worldwide spread of *Homo sapiens*. Unequivocal evidence, including footprints, establishes the presence of modern humans (*H. sapiens*) in both Australia and the Americas, as well as in ostensibly remote regions such as the Tibetan Plateau and Jeju island, Korea (Zhang and Li 2002; Kim et al. 2009). Along the way there may have been interactions with, even gene flow between, other late-*Homo* species—Neanderthals, Denisovans, and Red Deer Cave hominins (Meldrum 2012b). Tracks left by any of these species would likely be fully modern in appearance, albeit robust in proportions. In contrast, the persistence of more archaic hominins into this period—*Homo heidlebergensis*, even *Homo erectus* (Swisher et al. 1996) and the enigmatic and as yet very restricted species *H. floresiensis* (Morwood et al. 2005) raises the possibility of additional footprint morphotypes. Given the perennial interest in the relationship of Neanderthals to modern humans, their inferred extinction as recently as ~25–30,000 yBP is generally considered a major event in hominin evolutionary history (Delson and Harvati 2006 and refs. therein). However, despite a footprint record spanning this time interval, it is not sufficient to shed useful light on the timing of this or other similar events.

However, before accepting that the so called Late Paleolithic cultural revolution or "great leap forward" into modernity (Diamond 1999; Mellars 2006) occurred quite abruptly ~50,000 yBP, perhaps coincident with, or in some way related to, the extinction of the Neanderthals it is important to note that this is a rather Eurocentric view that has been challenged by McBrearty and Brooks (2000). These authors show that many technologic advances, considered typical of European cultures existing between ~10,000 and ~50,000 yBP, have been identified significantly earlier in Africa on the order of >100,000 yBP.

Lockley et al. (2009) reported a total sample of 19 Late Pleistocene hominin tracksites from diverse localities around the world. Such geographically widespread occurrences demonstrate that the hominin track record is consistent with that obtained from archeologic evidence. In comparison with the important Pliocene through earliest Late Pleistocene track record in Africa, the record from most of the Late Pleistocene of Africa is sparse. Scott et al. (2008a, b) reported an isolated and poorly preserved track from the Lake Bogoria area of the Kenyan Rift valley. The track is ~20 cm long and 8.5 cm wide, and occurs in association with the footprints of bovids, suids, and birds.

Turning to Europe, we find some of the earliest of the Late Pleistocene track records associated with caves. Based on published dates, the oldest Late Pleistocene human footprints are those reported from Vârtop Cave, Romania (Onac et al. 2005) and assigned an age of ~62,000 yBP. Three footprints, one with a well-defined outline (22 cm long and 10.6 cm wide), are preserved. However, details are obscured by infill of soda straws and moonmilk. Of note was a distinctive gap (1.6 cm) between the first and second digits (Fig. 15.3). According to these authors, the Vârtop Cave tracks may be the only footprint sample unequivocally attributable to Neanderthals.

Human footprints were reported from a "deep Middle Paleolithic layer" at Theopetra Cave in Thessaly, Central Greece (Facorellis et al. 2001). This cave was evidently occupied from the Middle Paleolithic until the post Neolithic, with minimal ^{14}C dates of ~48,000 yBP obtained for the oldest layers with which the footprints are associated.

15.5.2 The Hominin Track Record Goes Underground

Many Late Pleistocene hominin footprint sites are associated with Late Paleolithic cultural evidence found in subterranean cave sites in southern France, Spain, and Italy. The region is perhaps most famous for cave paintings, but though less often reported in detail, many sites contain tracks and other evidence of Late Paleolithic

Fig. 15.3 Purported Neanderthal footprints, Vârtop Cave, Romania. Note growth of cave calcite, obscuring track morphology

activity. Tracks are documented from Lascaux (Berriere and Sahly 1964) and the Niaux cave system (Pales 1976). Tracks from the Niaux caves have been described and illustrated in detail by Pales (1976), and apparently include patterned arrangements of footprints that have been interpreted as deliberate activity of children at play (Lockley and Meyer 2000) (Fig. 15.4). Here the issue of intention is raised, reminding us that by the Late Paleolithic not all human tracks were made as the result of purely unintentional passage of individuals through a particular area. Indeed, it is generally assumed, if not explicitly stated, that humans entered underground caves deliberately, even if the motives, other than creating artwork, are not clear. In a similar vein, human tracks from Grotte de Cabrerets or "Pech Merle" cave famously reveal traces indicating an individual using a walking stick (Begouen 1927; Vallois 1927, 1931).

In other cases, the interpretations put on tracks are more ambiguous. Tracks from Grotte Aldène assigned an age of ~15,000 yBP by Casteret (1948), but assigned and age of ~8000 yBP by Ambert et al. (2000), are associated with charcoal, hyena tracks, and cave bear nests, but the behavior of the track maker, in relation to other animal and human traces is unclear. In Fontanet Cave, footprints suggest a child may have followed a puppy or fox into a cave, but this inference can hardly be confirmed or denied on the basis of available analysis (Bahn and Vertut 1988). As noted

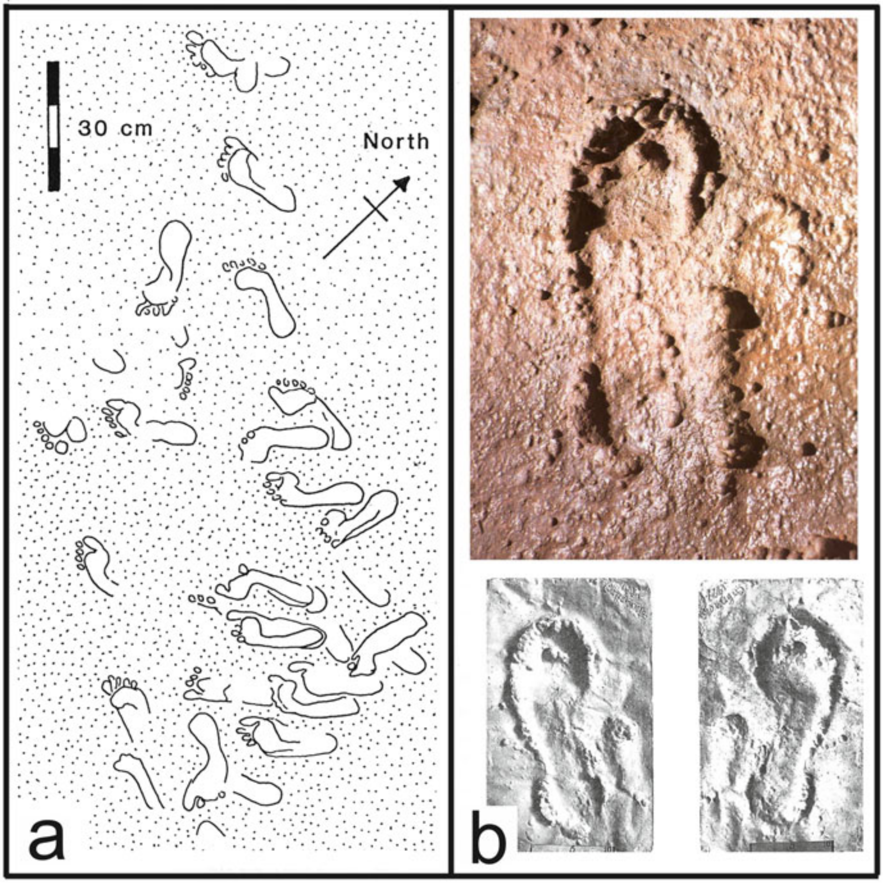


Fig. 15.4 (**a**) Tracks in a patterned arrangement from Niaux cave, suggest children at play (after Pales 1976 and Lockley and Meyer 2000, Fig. 10.12). (**b**) Track from Peche Merle cave

elsewhere (Lockley et al. 2007a; 2009), the footprints of children appear as common components of the track record of Paleolithic caves. For example, in Chauvet Cave near Vallon-Pont-d'Arc in southern France, a trail of footprints claimed to represent those of a young boy, about 8 years old and about 1.5 m tall, are possibly the oldest European footprints of *Homo sapiens*, perhaps as old as 35,000 yBP. At Ariège three trackways of children are recorded (Bahn and Vertut 1988). The footprints extend for about 50 m across the cave floor and may be between 20,000 and 30,000 years old (Harrington 1999; García 1999, 2001). Many other Late Paleolithic caves with hominin tracks have been mentioned or illustrated without detailed descriptions (Kuhn 1955; Marshack 1972; Vialou 1986; Bahn and Vertut 1988). As already implied, in many cases these sites reveal evidence that other animals, evidently all mammalian carnivores, shared these cave habitats, at least on some occasions (Lockley et al. 2007a, b; 2009).

Tana della Basura cave near Toirano, Northern Italy is here mentioned separately due to the intriguing but controversial suggestion that the "human tracks" reported by Chiapella (1952) are attributable to Neanderthals (Pales 1954, 1960). At present, despite the skeletal evidence that may be available from various sites to help distinguish *H. sapiens* from *H. neaderthalensis*, we have no reliable criteria for identifying isolated Neanderthal footprints. As pointed out by Molleson et al. (1972) and by Onac et al. (2005), the date of this site may be as young as 12,000 yBP, in which case the Neanderthal claim is questionable. Its morphology certainly does not distinguish it from a *H. sapiens* (Fig. 15.5).

The abundance of human tracks at cave sites is perhaps surprising, especially given the lack of detailed description of many sites. For example, in Ojo Guareña, a cave near Burgos, Spain, hundreds of footprints are reported, but the site is illustrated by only two photographs (Marcos 2001). Dates of 15,600 yBP, suggesting a Late Pleistocene age, were obtained from carbonized wood. As noted by Lockley et al. (2008a, b), a "light patina of carbonate" gives the tracks "a very ancient appearance" (translation of phrases from Marcos 2001, p. 35).

This type of discrepancy between abundance and documentation is understandable when considering the problems of access, and the dangers of disturbing the footprints by walking on them, or otherwise causing damage. Likewise, dating of the cave site tracks is often difficult due to the lack of suitable materials in the

Fig. 15.5 Footprint from Tana della Basura cave near Toirano, Northern Italy

substrate, the likely differences in age between substrate and tracks, and the preference for dating other materials such as charcoal which may or may not be contemporaneous with the tracks. For example, footprints from Tempranas Cave, near Niembro in the Llanes region of Asturias Spain (Noval Fonseca 2007) remain undated at the present time.

Despite the problems involved in obtaining accurate dates, tracks in caves have good preservation potential and, as noted above, tracks are apparently more abundant, at least at some sites, than the literature might suggest. However, another factor must be considered—that is the attraction of cave paintings. On the positive side, efforts to date cave paintings make it possible to infer the age of footprints, assuming there is no strong evidence to suggest that paintings and footprints represent different phases of activity. On the negative side, paintings distract attention from other features, such as footprints and charcoal. Obviously, paintings indicate that caves were frequented by people on foot, even if footprints are not found. Footprints may occur in caves without paintings or other evidence of human habitation (see below), but it is impossible to speculate on how common tracks are in caves lacking other human-produced evidence.

For all the problems and ambiguities that surround the discovery, documentation, dating, and interpretation of cave site footprints, cave tracks indicate a certain type of behavior and ecology. For whatever reason, modern humans (*H. sapiens*) and perhaps close relatives (e.g. *H. neanderthalensis*) began to frequent caves sometime in the Late Pleistocene. This can be considered a significant event in hominin evolution and, in the most general terms, the evidence seems to suggest a human impulse to colonize new habitats. This was just one example of the geographic spread of humans to colonize new regions, such as Australia and the Americas. In ecologic terms, as explicitly noted by Lockley et al. (2007a, b; 2008a, b), the nonhuman footprints reported from Late Pleistocene caves are almost exclusively those of carnivores (including bear, hyena, and fox), and stand in contrast to open-air hominin track sites, where tracks of ungulates and birds are typically dominant. The aforementioned cave-dwelling carnivores had evidently inhabited caves long before their habitations were invaded by modern humans. Thus, human cave-colonization behavior precipitated new "ecologic" interactions between humans and cave dwelling mammals. While the co-occurrence of footprints of both groups is tangible evidence of such cohabitation, even more evocative evidence of interaction is found in the archeologic record of paintings and supposed shrines indicative of "cave bear cults" (a once-popular notion, especially for the Middle Paleolithic, but long discredited by taphonomic studies [Bahn 2012]).

15.5.3 Vertebrate Ichnology Investigates Cave Paintings

Lockley and Meyer (2000) and Kim et al. (2008a) noted that cave art (or the more neutral term "painting") is itself a type of hominin ichnology, as is any type of engraving. Likewise, as noted by Lockley et al. (2008a, p. 113), "[b] ecause tracks are a type of symbol or signature of the trackmaker, their artistic renderings have sometimes been the subject of debate.” Indeed, as noted above, many human creations can be considered as ichnologic phenomena, including most forms of sculpture and writing. However, in order to constrain the discussion to the realm of prehistory, we confine our discussion to the implications of Late Pleistocene evidence, which sheds light on evolutionary events. For example, just as footprints indicate the co-occurrence of modern humans and Late Pleistocene carnivores in caves, so cave art provides direct evidence of the interaction of humans with the Pleistocene megafauna. The interest for vertebrate ichnology is compounded when Paleolithic hominins also depicted the footprints of the animals they were tracking, observing, or hunting (Mithen 1988). In this regard, it could be inferred that just as tracks are potentially useful as a census of animals in a particular area (Lockley 1991), so cave art is also potentially a census of animals in a given area in the past. For example, at Closquier cave, in southern France, there are depictions of what is interpreted as the now-extinct great auk, “a seabird that could only live in a cold biotope” (Clottes and Courtir 1996, p. 128). Just as these authors at first found it difficult to interpret the depiction of the great auk, so too footprints depicted by Late Paleolithic artists have proved difficult to interpret. As noted by Lockley et al. (2009, p. 113), a particularly “interesting episode in the annals of anthropology was a debate over whether certain symbols represented tracks or were representations of female genitalia (Bahn 1986).”

European Cave art, especially from France and Spain, has been the subject of endless debate. For example, do animal depictions indicate hunting activity, sympathetic magic, or other shamanistic symbolism? Likewise, one can argue endlessly as to whether animal and track depictions are realistic or stylized, the result of superior or inferior artistic ability. Possibly the most significant depictions from an ichnologic view point are these that show the co-occurrence of animals and the tracks they made. One famous example is the bovids depicted at Altimira, Spain, where the animals are seen in profile, but their feet are shown in “plan view” appearing as cloven hoofed tracks stuck on the end of the legs. While it is obvious from such examples that Late Paleolithic humans could correlate between animals and their tracks, this is still a highly significant record from the “dawn of vertebrate ichnology” essentially no different from that produced by contemporary vertebrate ichnologists who correlate between tracks and track makers. Thus, our Paleolithic ancestors deserve full credit for being the authors of the first the vertebrate track field guides (Seilacher 2007). Whether, we can infer that they only interpreted the track-track maker correlation in causal terms, the way we do, remains an open question, and we have to consider the possibility that tracks had other significance in various Paleolithic cultures (Lockley 1999); see Baucon et al. (2008) for discussion of podomorphs (footprint representations) and “ichnohierophanies” (traces of religious or spiritual significance).

15.6 New Intercontinental Travel Frontiers

Archeology and anthropology regard the colonization of Australia and the Americas by *Homo sapiens* (if not earlier *Homo* species), as evidence of the ability of modern humans to permanently expand their ranges into previously “uninhabited” territory, by undertaking what we can describe as intercontinental travel. Exactly when and where the first emigrants broke out of the “old world” to set foot in Australia and America is unknown. However, these expansions of range seem to have been part of a pattern that was first manifest with the spread of human ancestors “out of Africa” into Europe and Asia, including inaccessible regions, such as present day Tibet (Zhang and Li. 2002) and various islands of the Indonesia archipelago (Morwood et al. 2005).

15.6.1 Into Australia

The colonization of Australia is considered (Bowler et al. 2003) a major event in hominin evolution, reflecting an ever-increasing ability of humans to colonize new continents. Humans probably first colonized Australia around 50,000 yBP, showing their ability to cross the famous Wallace line which separates the marsupial-dominated faunas of Australia from the placental-dominated faunas of southeast Asia (Oppenheimer 2009). Webb et al. (2006) and Webb (2007) reported tracks that have been optically dated to between ~19,000 and 23,000 yBP in the Willandra Lakes region of southeastern Australia. This is evidently one of the world’s largest collection of Pleistocene human footprints, with at least 123 footprints, and the site is part of a property nominated for World Heritage status. The largest tracks measure 29 cm in length by 10 cm wide. The tracks for which close-up photos have been published (Fig. 15.6) present an unusual and less than fully modern morphology: quite flat, exceptionally broad heel, deep and long toe impressions (up to 7 cm) and a large robust hallux, but lack any clear medial arch and ball impressions (Webb et al. 2006, Fig. 4).

15.6.2 The Trail to the New World

According to controversial footprint evidence, modern humans may have first set foot in the New World as early as ~40,000 yBP (Gonzalez et al. 2006a; Huddart et al. 2008). According to the initial claims of these authors, footprints from a Late Pleistocene site from Toluquilla Quarry, at Valsequillo, near Puebla Mexico, indicate this reliable 40,000 yBP date for the presence of *Homo sapiens* in the New World. However, while the date may be credible, the features interpreted as footprints are controversial, and several of the original authors now admit that these purported tracks are of questionable origin (Morse et al. 2010). They lack clear

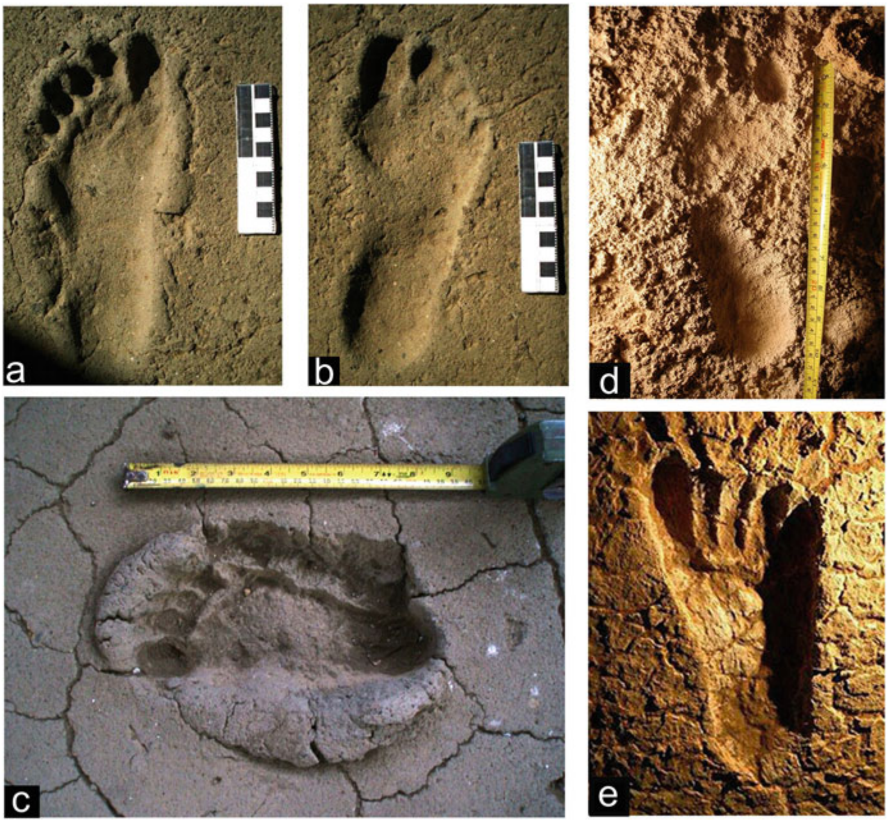


Fig. 15.6 *Homo sapiens* tracks from the New World and Australia. (**a**–**c**) tracks from the Acahualinca site Nicaragua (after Lockley et al. 2009, Fig. 10), (**d**) track from Cuatrocienegas, Mexico (after Gonzalez et al. 2009), (**e**) track from Willandra Lakes site, Australia

evidence of the big toe (hallux) impression, arch, or differentiated ball and heel traces. In short they are elongate depressions or traces that may be artifacts produced by quarry equipment. Renne et al. (2005) referred to these features as “alleged” footprints and also questioned the dates, instead inferring much older dates of 1.3 Ma, corroborated by paleomagnetic studies. However, Gonzalez et al. (2006b) and Huddart et al. (2008) held to their claim arguing that the dating of Renne et al. (2005) is incorrect.

According to evidence other than footprints humans are not proven to have been resident in the Americas prior to ~20,000 yBP (Nemecek 2000). Footprints on the western coast of Canada, dating to 12,500 yBP, may indicate a coastal route for colonization of the Americas (De Pastino 2015). Tracks from Buenos Aires Province Argentina (Aramayo and Manera de Bianco 2009), have produced dates in the range of ~12,000–16,000 yBP. Hominin tracksites reported from Monte Verde, Chile are associated with dates of 11,500–12,500 yBP (Dillehay 1999). The rediscovery of a tracksite associated with tufa deposits at

Cuatrociénegas, Coahuila, Mexico has produced tentative dates of ~10,000 yBP (Gonzalez et al. 2006c, d, 2007, 2009). Two sets of tracks from Cuatrociénegas have recently yielded U-series dates of 10.55 ± 0.03 ka and 7.24 ± 0.13 ka (Morse et al. 2010). Given the doubts about the age of the Valsequillo footprints referred to above, Morse et al. (2014) claimed that the former date represents the oldest known for any footprints from Mexico. Other tracksites reported from Mexico (Ordoñez 1945; Aveleyra Arroyo de Anda 1950; Rodríguez-de la Rosa et al. 2004) are poorly known, but likely include mostly Holocene rather than Pleistocene tracks.

Among the Holocene track sites listed by Lockley et al. (2007a, b; 2008a, b), two sites from La Olla and Monte Hermoso Argentina dated at ~7000 yBP (Bayon and Politis 1996, 1998; Aramayo and Manera de Bianco 2009; Bayón et al. 2011) are significant, and comparable in age to a site from Laguna La María (near Villa Cañás) dated to ~8000 yBP. Abundant well-preserved tracks from the footprint museum at Acahualinca, (Huellas de Acahualinca) Managua, Nicaragua (Flint 1883; Brinton 1887) have been ^{14}C-dated at 5945 ± 145 yBP (Bryan 1973), at 6500 yBP by Bice (1979), and between 2000 and 6000 yBP (Schmincke et al., 2005, 2007, 2008, 2009). The site is now the type locality for *Hominipes modernus* (Kim et al. 2008b) and preserves the trackways of at least 15 individuals, an ungulate, a possum and a bird (Lockley et al. 2007a, b; 2008a, b). Another nearby site, known as El Recreo (Williams 1952), has yielded bison and tapir tracks. Plant remains are also reported (Brown 1947). The Oro Grande Site near Victorville, southern California (Rector 1979, 1983, 1999), has given a ^{14}C date of 5070 ± 120 yBP (Rector 1983) for tracks of at least four individuals, where tracks of raccoon, coyote, and ungulates were also documented.

Haberland and Grebe (1957) reported a tracksite from El Salvador tentatively dated between ~1200 and 1800 yBP. Undated footprints were also reported from a volcanic deposit near Guaimaca, Honduras (Veliz 1978). Similarly sparse information comes from a report (Anon undated) of a cave site from Naj Tunich, Guatemala, with footprints attributed to indigenous Mayan inhabitants tentatively dated on the basis of artifacts, not footprints, between ~1450 and 1950 yBP.

To complete the New World track record, we may refer to Willey et al. (2009), who noted footprints reported from Pocket Cave in Arizona, and dated at ~1450–1500 yBP based on dendrochronology. Finally, footprints from eastern North America are associated with underground caverns, such as Jaguar Cave, Tennessee, Unknown Cave, Kentucky, third Unnamed Cave, Tennessee, Fisher Ridge Cave, Kentucky, Mud Glyph Cave, Tennessee, Sequoyah Caverns, Alabama, Footprint Cave, Virginia, and Lon Odell Memorial Cave, Missouri (Watson et al. 2005; Willey et al. 2005, 2009). Collectively, these cave sites date from between 4695 ± 85 and ~400 yBP.

15.6.3 *Other Exploratory Trails*

As summarized by Lockley et al. (2008a, b), Zhang and Li (2002) and Zhang et al. (2003) reported a series of hand and footprints associated with calcareous tufa deposits at an elevation of 4200 m on the Tibetan Plateau optically dated at about 20,000 yBP. This unusual combination of hand and footprints may be related to the site being a hot springs with a hearth, therefore presumably used as a campsite, rather than an area simply passed through.

Late Pleistocene footprints dated at about 19,000–25,000 yBP from Jeju Island, Korea (Kim and Kim 2004a, b; Kim et al. 2004, 2009, 2010) indicate that humans were exploring remote islands at about the same time that they were exploring the Tibetan Plateau. As a coastal site, Jeju provides evidence of a variety of bird and mammal tracks diverse invertebrate traces and body fossils, at multiple levels, suggesting an ecology obviously different from that found in Tibet. Nevertheless, despite the geographic and ecologic differences between these two Asian sites, they both provide striking evidence of the ability of Late Paleolithic humans to explore habitats that had not previously been frequented by hominins.

15.7 The Prelude to History

15.7.1 *Life on the Sea Shore*

Lockley et al. (2007a, b, 2008a, b) have already listed known hominin track sites that bridge the gap between unequivocally Pleistocene and prehistoric Holocene sites, to those that yield comparatively recent dates that bring us into historic time. It is not necessary to repeat detailed accounts of these sites which are already widely distributed. However, a brief summary allows us to pick out features that highlight the utility of footprints in interpreting "events" in historic time.

Among the earliest Holocene tracks to fit in our post-Pleistocene category, we can cite abundant human footprints from near the Sebkra el Azrag, Mauritania (Mafart 2006). These date from ~9000 yBP and are associated with footprints of elephants, hippopotamus, giant eland, and bovids.

Younger Holocene footprint sites are known from near Clare Bay, in South Australia (Belperio and Fotheringham 1990), estimated to be ~5000 yBP. Undocumented tracks are also reported from near Broome in western Australia (Long 1998; Baldwin personal communication 2011). Both are coastal sites. Other significant coastal hominin tracksites are known in Britain (Aldhouse-Green et al. 1995; Cowell et al. 1993; Roberts et al. 1996; Roberts 2009; Doyle 2007; Bennett et al. 2010a, b). An assemblage of exceptionally preserved footprints of between six and nine children (ranging in length from 114 to 206 mm) has been described from Walvis Bay, Namibia (Bennett and Morse 2014). They date to 1500 yBP and are preceded by the tracks of an apparent flock of domesticated sheep/goats.

Human footprints reported from Rawthey Cave, Cumbria, England (Chamberlain et al. 1997) could be as recent as the 14th century AD. Some coastal sites (Patton 1993) have only the tracks of domestic animals. Human tracks have also been reported from Holocene beach rock in Greece (Bromley et al. 2009).

The coastal situation of many Holocene track sites seems to reflect two factors. (1) Suitable environments for track preservation (e.g., estuarine and beach substrates) and (2) preferred habitats or foraging sites of humans. We know from other lines of evidence, such as shell middens, that foraging was an important activity at such sites.

15.7.2 In the Shadow of Volcanoes

Human tracks are reported from numerous agricultural sites (rice fields) in Japan, (Harada and Noto 1984) that date from ~720 to 1600 yBP. At many of these Japanese sites, volcanic ash played an important role in track preservation. Human tracks also occur at various stratigraphic levels in volcanic ashes dated at 1400 AD on Motutapu Island, New Zealand. Nichol (1982) suggested that track makers were evidently not deterred by the continuing ash falling over the area. Traces of digging sticks suggest that individuals were digging gardens.

Footprints from Hawaii Volcanoes National Park site are from two distinct footprint-bearing horizons, the younger precisely dated to a 1790 Kilauea eruption and ashfall (Meldrum 2004a, b; Moniz Nakamura 2009). The record of modern pedestrian trackways in ash of remarkably similar physical and chemical characteristics as the Laetoli ashfall, provides in the Hawaiian footprints a meaningful comparison and contrast to the Laetoli hominin footprints. This contrast highlights the diagnostic distinctions between *Praehominipes laetoliensis* and *Hominipes modernus* (Meldrum 2004a, b; Meldrum et al. 2011). Because of the drama associated with volcanic eruptions, various scenarios regarding the relationship between ash fall and track-making activity have been proposed, not only for the Hawaiian sites (Jaggar 1921, 1934; Meldrum 2004a, b; Mayor and Sarjeant 2001), but also for the aforementioned Nicaraguan site (Schmincke et al. 2005, 2007, 2008, 2009) and the New Zealand levels (Nichol 1982).

Regarding the Hawaiian sites, Moniz Nakamura (2009) suggested footprints were made in the area both before and after the eruption, thus indicating that individuals were not deterred by the ash fall and not fleeing or about to perish as a direct result of the eruption. Were indigenous populations accustomed to repeat volcanic activity, and undeterred by smaller eruptions? Possibly, but sometimes large eruptions did create truly dramatic, life-threatening scenarios as in the case of the famous 79 AD eruption of Vesuvius. Unlike this eruption, which is not associated with footprints, footprints are found in association with deposits created by the 3780 yBP eruption of Vesuvius, known as the Avellino plinian eruption, that fell on Nola, a Bronze Age village near Naples, Italy (Mastrolorenzo et al. 2006). These devastating ash falls created a remarkable footprint record NNW of Vesuvius where “thousands of footprints [are] directed

NNW away from the volcano." These "testify to an *en masse* exodus from the devastated zone" (Mastrolorenzo et al. 2006, p. 4368). Footprints registered on "all horizons in the ash bed" indicating that "the evacuation occurred during the settling of the surge cloud." "Flood and lahar deposits overlying the surge bed also include footprints and local raindrop imprints as well, thus testifying that the ongoing exodus occurred during both the ash fall and the post-eruption rainstorms and floods" (Mastrolorenzo et al. 2006, p. 4368).

From these accounts of human tracks in volcanic ashes, we can infer that, at the times indicated above, humans lived in volcanic terrains, as they do in some areas today, risking the dangers inherent in such environments. Although we do not know exactly how they reacted to localized or small eruptions, the evidence at some sites (New Zealand, Nicaragua, Hawaii) suggests they were not sufficiently deterred by the threats, to vacate these areas. Thus, on occasion they did not evacuate, or move very far from small eruptions that created small ash falls. However, as the Nola eruption indicates, humans reacted to large eruptions and ash falls by fleeing, although in this case escape was not possible and individuals literally died in their tracks.

15.8 Vertebrate Ichnology Transcends Planet Earth

One of the major events in human history was the landing of humans at six sites on the Moon (Fig. 15.7). Arguably, this is a major evolutionary event akin to the migration of a species onto a new continent on which that species had not previously set foot. Just as the fossil record, including the track record, provides evidence of such migrations, so the artifacts and tracks and traces left by humans on the Moon also provide unequivocal evidence that the range of living humans has extended from one celestial body (planet Earth) to another (its moon). In the case of the machines that humans have landed on Mars, the artifact and trace fossil evidence is slightly different, and it is intriguing to speculate as to how it might be interpreted and compared with the lunar evidence, by someone unfamiliar with human history (Lockley 1999).

While most humans regard the Moon landing as a momentous event in human history, it is perhaps too recent an event to have had its evolutionary significance evaluated in the context of deep time. In any event, the track making activity of humans on the Moon, while creating visually spectacular traces, is so distinctive as to have been treated as a special event, unrelated to the long history of hominin track making on Earth. Nevertheless, while it is legitimate to regard lunar and terrestrial tracks records as two quite separate ichnologic records, in obviously different substrates, environments, and geographic locations, they are still indisputable parts of the continuum of an expanding hominin track record (Fig. 15.6). So, what are the implications?

Humans are the only large vertebrate species to have set foot on the Moon. In this regard, they crossed a new frontier in much the same way as they did when they cross the Wallace line between Asia and Australia, or the Bering Straits between

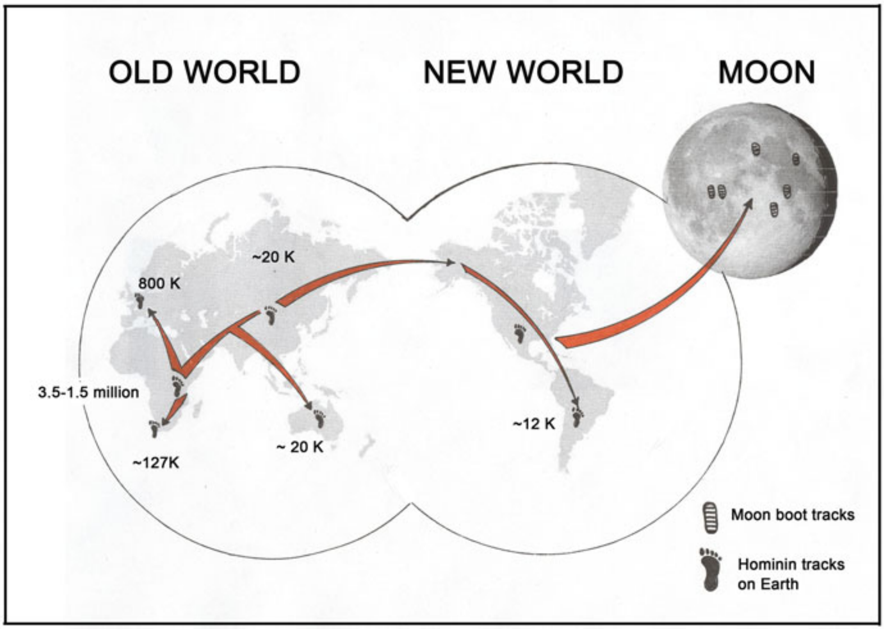


Fig. 15.7 The dispersal of hominins from the old world to the new world and Moon as demonstrated by the footprint record, is in broad agreement with the evidence obtained from the record of body fossils and artifacts

Asia and North America. The principle is succinctly stated by Morwood and Oosterzee (2007, p. 182): "Modern humans were the only large Asian animals that made the west-to-east crossing to Greater Australia on their own account." Here, these authors evidently imply that the migration into Australia was not accidental, as in the oft-cited, but speculative, explanation of dispersal of animals, rafted by accident from one land mass to another. Lockley (1999) described some of the configurations of human traces on the Moon. First, of course they are limited to a very small area, and secondly they loop out from the lunar module and back. Secondly the total census of individual trackways is known to represent only 12 individuals. An intelligent species analyzing the footprint evidence might correctly infer that very few individual track makers, of a distinctive bipedal species, had visited the Moon, but had been unable to explore very far. The track makers were not adapted to colonize extensively.

It is perhaps unduly speculative to consider how another intelligent species might interpret the trails of the lunar rover, the actual rover itself, or the trails and machines on Mars (Lockley 1999). We know that the Martian traces were made without humans being present on the planet, but would this be deduced by an intelligent species unaware of the details of an Earth-based space program? It is perhaps debatable as to whether traces left by robotic machines legitimately fall in the category of biogenic sedimentary structures. Clearly, feet and shod foot traces represent human functional anatomy and behavior, but lunar and Martian rovers represent a different type of function, only indirectly related to human movement. Since these robotic machines are tools, we argue that in principle the traces they leave are similar to those produced by other human-manufactured tools that register traces on a variety of substrates.

In conclusion, as noted below, a broad-based interpretation of hominin ichnology indicates that there have been at least four major threshold events that starkly punctuate the ichnologic record. The first was bipedalism, the second was the spread of hominins to Australia and the New World, the third was painting, sculpture, and tool making, associated with extensive cave exploration, and the fourth was the ability to set foot on other celestial bodies.

15.9 Discussion

At least 65 hominin tracksites are reported in the literature (Lockley et al. 2007a, b, 2008a, b) of which about one third (~24) are Late Pleistocene or older. Only a few (4) sites represent pre-*sapiens* track makers. The advent of erect posture and gait was clearly a major event in hominin evolution. However, the question of whether such features as midfoot morphology (flexibility vs. a fully modern arch) and separation of the big toe (digit I) from traces of digits II–V, and their different inferred lengths, constitute evidence of major evolutionary changes remains open to question, and may not be fully resolved without additions to the body and trace fossil records. Debates about the affinity of the 3.6-million-year-old Laetoli track maker are made partly on the basis of the age of the sites and contemporary body fossils. However, they are also at least partially based on footprint morphology, when correlated pedal skeletal fossils are known. Tuttle et al. (1990) inferred that the Laetoli track maker may have been an as-yet-unknown hominin indistinguishable from modern *H. sapiens*, and therefore not an australopithecine as inferred by Stern and Susman (1983; see also Suwa 1984). In contrast, Meldrum (2006, 2007a) pointed to evidence of mid-tarsal pressure ridges and extrusion fronts, in the GI trail indicating ape-like midfoot flexibility largely if not altogether absent in modern humans (but see DeSilva and Gill 2013). The distinctions in the Laetoli tracks when compared to modern unshod pedestrians are expressed in the introduction of the new ichnotaxon *Praehominipes laetoliensis* (Meldrum et al. 2011) in contrast to footprints of fully modern humans, designated as *Hominipes modernus* (Kim et al. 2008a, b). However, if we exclude the overprinted trackways (G2 and G3), and possibly a fourth (G4) according to Musiba et al. (2011), the *Praehominipes* sample of un-obscured footprints remains small consisting of only the G1 trackway (Fig. 15.1).

The inference of an *H. erectus* (*H. ergaster*) trackmaker, in the case of the poorly preserved Koobi Fora footprints (Behrensmeyer and Laporte 1981), is based on age. The Ileret footprints also exhibit insufficient detail to infer modern footprint morphology with certainty. This inference is contra Bennett et al. (2010a), who concluded that these footprints provide “the oldest evidence of an essentially modern human-like foot anatomy, with a relatively adducted hallux, medial longitudinal arch, and medial weight transfer before push-off." We find support for only one of these three points (i.e. a relatively adducted hallux). We find no evidence to support the consistent presence of a longitudinal arch or for a medial weight transfer. Preservation is poor, and the actual topography of the contact surface is indiscernible. Even in footprints as young as 300,000–400,000 years old, such as the Terra Amata footprint (De Lumley 1966, 1967; De Lumley et al. 2011), evidence of a modern arch is lacking (Meldrum 2004a, b; 2006). Likewise, tracks from the Middle Pleistocene Roccamonfina Volcano site in Italy (Mietto et al. 2003; Avanzini et al. 2004, 2008), which falls in the same age bracket as the Terra Amata footprint, are not sufficiently well-preserved to determine if a fully modern arch is present.

Thus, given the small size and quality of the pre-Late Pleistocene footprint sample, few universally accepted conclusions can be drawn regarding the possibility of diagnostic differences between tracks made by various hominin species of early to middle *Homo*. However, the strong possibility remains that much of the hominin history of bipedalism took place on flat flexible feet in contrast to the modern human foot form of relatively recent vintage, as characterized by the ichnospecies *Hominipes modernus* (Kim et al. 2009). The scarce fossil record of the distal hallucal metatarsal, a key element in the modern longitudinal arch, clearly points to this interpretation.

Distinguishing between the tracks of *Homo sapiens* and the comparatively unknown track record of *H. neanderthalensis* on the basis of footprint morphology is evidently not reliable at present, despite a few claims to the contrary (Onac et al. 2005). It stands to reason that the robusticity of the neanderthal skeleton would produce footprints with relatively larger breadth to length ratios. However, the sample of Neanderthal footprints is too meager to test this prediction.

As noted by Lockley et al. (2008a, b), although the majority of known sites have assigned ages, in many cases the dates are uncertain, and the literature indicates frequent age date revisions, such as in the case of the Turkish and Nicaraguan sites. These authors also discussed the respective proportion of outdoor or open-air sites versus cave sites as about 65 % versus 35 %. Likewise, the proportion of sites in well-documented volcaniclastic/pyroclastic rather than non-volcaniclastic substrates is discussed by Houck et al. (2009).

The study of hominid traces raises philosophic issues that deal with the controversial question of the "exclusivity" of the human species in comparison with other vertebrates. Many scientists and philosophers argue for and against the idea that humans are fundamentally different from other species (see Guldberg 2010 for discussion of both sides of this debate). The traditional argument in favor of human exclusivity is that we have language, self-awareness, and culture, not to mention the power to change the environment in ways that other species cannot. This is not to say that other microbial, plant, and animal species have not changed environments dramatically, but in different ways. We also recognize that the exclusivity argument, with respect to tool use, language, and self-awareness, has been challenged in cases were such attributes have been reported for other species (Galef 2003, 2009; Rendell and Whitehead 2001). However, detailed discussion of these debates is beyond the scope of this paper. As the foregoing discussions emphasize, an objective look at the hominin track record indicates that the ichnologic record of *H. sapiens* is unlike that of any other species, with respect to many features including, geographic distribution, diversity of traces registered, substrates on which traces are registered, and behavioral implications of traces (e.g., Hasiotis et al. 2007; Baucon et al. 2008; Kim et al. 2008a). Again, in the context of this review of footprints and other traces created by *sapiens* and pre-*sapiens* hominins, it is clear that, even though foot and hand prints may be similar among all hominins, the diversity and behavioral implications of most other *sapiens*-produced traces is different from those of pre-*sapiens* hominins and other vertebrates both in absolute and relative terms (i.e. they are both differences of "degree and kind"). Thus, the use and creation of stone, bone and wood tools, and artifacts, while not entirely unknown in pre-*sapiens* hominins or other vertebrate species, reaches a degree of complexity indicating behaviors and cultural shifts that truly represent major evolutionary advances during the *sapiens* phase of hominin prehistory. This shift in turn heralded entirely novel and ultimately historically documented additions to the anthropologic and trace fossil records, such as ceramics, metal-work, and writing which have no pre-*sapiens* precursors (Hasiotis et al. 2007; Baucon et al. 2008; Kim et al. 2008a). In short, as hominins have evolved over the last ~4 million years, their ichnologic record has become increasingly well differentiated from that of their ancestors, a process that shows its most dramatic acceleration or shift after about 30,000 yBP.

While prior to that date multiple hominin species, a half dozen or more, coexisted across the landscape at any given time it is generally inferred that since ~30 kyBP, *H. sapiens* has been the only or "exclusive" extant hominin species However, there is a growing appreciation for the bushiness of the hominin (even hominoid) tree, as well as accumulating examples of quite recent persistence of individual branches of said tree, as evidenced in the fossil record (Meldrum 2012a, b). Is it justified to simply assume we are "the last hominin standing"? Or is there a case to be made for the possible existence of "relict hominoids" today? The discovery of the extraordinarily recent remains of *Homo floresiensis*, combined with the acknowledgement of historical anecdotes of encounters with little hairy "people" in the mountain forests of Flores should have made that point clearly enough (e.g., Forth 2012).

There is considerable ichnologic evidence for the existence of relict hominoids. By far the most extensive footprint evidence is attributed to the so-called "Bigfoot" (or sasquatch) of North America, as well as reports of similar tracks in Asia (Meldrum and Gouxing 2012), where the comparatively recent existence of the giant hominoid *Gigantopithecus* is unequivocally accepted (Meldrum 2004b, 2006, 2007b and references therein). Meldrum (2007b) formally named and diagnosed the alleged sasquatch tracks as *Anthropoidipes ameriborealis*.

While it is outside the scope of the present review to explore this intriguing but controversial issue further, it is fair to say that the possible existence of relict hominoids represents a significant dimension in hominid evolution. While most anthropologists ignore or refute the existence of relict hominoids without detailed analysis of the evidence at hand, there is nevertheless an extensive literature on the subject including a number of books by *bona fide* scientists who have taken the evidence seriously (see Lockley 1999 and Meldrum 2006 for reviews). Did *Gigantopithecus* or some similar large bipedal relict hominoid (such as a form of paranthropine) cross from Asia to North America, along with *Homo sapiens*, during the Pleistocene, along with 75 % of the mammals now considered endemic to this continent? And if so, what sort of ichnologic evidence might we expect to find? Are contemporary reports of the tracks of a giant hominid in North America's remote mountain forests, or those of a diminutive "hobbit" in the jungles of southeast Asia, any more surprising than *H. sapiens* tracks on the Moon, or 25,000 year old tracks alongside pictures of Great Auks in a deep cave in the South of France, or 20,000 year old tracks on the Tibetan plateau at the height of the Ice Age?

Finally, it is relevant to consider the extent to which *Homo sapiens*' intentional behavior is affecting the track record as a whole. While large scale megalopolis construction and landscape alteration will surely leave an ichnologic footprint that dwarfs such relatively local traces as Japanese rice paddies, it will at the same time remove or diminish the track record of many other species, by erasing or modifying substrates. This process could be considered similar, or analogous, to other natural, non-human-induced, processes such as erosion, that lead to the differential preservation or destruction of trace-bearing deposits. While such human-generated traces may vastly modify natural cycles of track registration, preservation, exhumation, and destruction, humans also *intentionally* preserve the ancient track record. This is done not just by preserving fossil footprints in museums, but in the creation of a symbolic, documentary record (a type of ichnologic record: e.g., this book) of extinct species and lost cultures that would not otherwise exist without human intentionality. Thus, *Homo sapiens* has created a wide array of highly distinctive and "exclusively" human traces.

15.10 Conclusions

We conclude that the track record has significant implications for our understanding of major events in hominin evolution and can be summarized in two categories: major and minor events. Major events include the following:

1. The advent of bipedalism, confirmed by the Laetoli site, and dated not later than ~3.6 Myr.
2. The arrival of modern humans in Australia and the New World (the Americas), confirmed by footprints and other archeologic evidence 15,000–20,000 yBP. A date of ~40,000 yBP has been suggested for colonization of Australia, but in the case of the Americas such an early date, although claimed in one case, is controversial and dubious.
3. The ichnology manifest in the creation of art (painting, sculpture, etc.,) and tools in the Late Paleolithic, especially between ~30,000 and 10,000 yBP, indicates that humans underwent a "cultural revolution" at this time. They made extensive

use of underground cave sites, leaving 2D and 3D art and artifacts and, in one case, a set of footprints indicating a game or ritual.

4. The extraordinary Holocene diversification of culturally- and technologically produced large and small scale traces culminated in the arrival of track making *Homo sapiens* on the Moon, and the generation of traces on Mars by human-manipulated machines.

A common theme of events 2–4 is geographical expansion of the *Homo sapiens*, and a steady increase in the diversity and size range (both large and small) of trace fossils produced.

Other minor but significant events recorded in the hominin track record can be listed as follows:

1. Inferred significant modifications in the morphology of the hominin foot and corresponding footprints between 3.6 million and ~50,000 yBP. The extent to which these modifications are evident in the track record is debatable, but there are two distinct polar morphologies (*Praehominipes* and *Hominipes*) now documented in the ichnologic literature.
2. Morphologic distinctions between inferred *H. sapiens* and *H. neanderthalensis* footprints could be of significance, if unequivocally established, but at present, claims of inferred differences are poorly documented.
3. The movements to, or colonization of, remote sites, such as the Tibetan Plateau and remote archipelagos, such as Jeju Island, Korea, or New Zealand, are demonstrated by footprints which are as old as, or older than, other archeologic evidence. As such, these represent significant events in the history of prehistoric human exploration, at least on the regional scale.
4. The colonization and use of caves and rock shelters as art galleries, often depicting animals, represents a significant development in human–animal interactions.
5. An extraordinary diversification and complexification of human-produced trace fossils since the Late Pleistocene and Early Holocene has allowed paleontologists to expand the academic definition of vertebrate ichnology into realms traditionally considered the province of archeology and anthropology.
6. This recent complexification of the trace fossil record by *Homo sapiens* activity has profound implications for how recent, present, and future traces will be registered as dominant components of the deep time ichnological record. In this regard humans are presently creating an ichnological revolution with significant implications for debate about the global impact and exclusivity of our species.

Acknowledgements We thank Gabriela Mángano and Luis Buatois, University of Saskatchewan, for their invitation to contribute this article and their help and patience during the editing process. We also thank Neffra Matthews for the photogrammetric work done on the Laetoli tracks illustrated in Fig. 15.1, and first published in Kim et al. (2008b, Fig. 7). We particularly thank Andrea Baucon, Geology and Paleontology Office, Centro Cultural Raiano, Idanha-a-Nova, Portugal and Gustavo Politis, Facultad de Ciencias Sociales, UNCPBA, Olavarria, Argentina for their helpful reviews.

References

Alexander RM (1984) Stride lengths and speed for adults, children, and fossil hominids. Am J Phys Anthropol 63:23–27

Aldhouse-Green SHR, Whittle AWR, Allen JRL, Casaldine AE, Culver SJ, Day MH, Lundquist J, Upton D (1995) Prehistoric human footprints from the Severn Estuary at Uskmouth and Magor Paill, Gwent Wales. Arch Camb 141:14–55

Ambert P, Colomer A, Galant P (2000) Datations mésolithiques des empreintes humaines de l'étage Cathala de la grotte d'Aldène (Cesseras, Hérault). Earth Planet Sci 331:67–74

Anon (undated) The dark secrets of cave art. Univ Wis Milw Grad Sch Res Profile Mag 19(1):unpaginated

Aramayo S, Manera de Bianco T (2009) Late Quaternary palaeoichnological sites from the southern Atlantic coast of Buenos Aires Province, Argentina: mammal, bird and hominin evidence. Ichnos 16:25–32

Ashton N, Lewis SG, De Groote I, Duffy SM, Bates M, Bates R, Hoare P, Lewis M, Parfitt SA, Peglar S, Willians C, Stringer C (2014) Hominin footprints from early Pleistocene Deposits at Happisburgh, UK. PLoS One 9(2):e88329

Avanzini M, De Angelis M, Mietto P, Panarello A, Rolandi G (2004) Pleistocene human footprints preserved on a zeolite-rich pyroclastic flow (Roccamanfina, Italy). 32nd Int Geol Congr, Florence, Italy

Avanzini M, Mietto P, De Angelis M, Panarello A, Rolandi G (2008) The Devil's trails: middle Pleistocene human footprints preserved in a volcanoclastic deposit of Southern Italy. Ichnos 15:179–189

Aveleyra Arroyo de Anda L (1950) Prehistoria de Mexico. Ediciones Mexicanas, S.A., Mexico

Bahn P (1986) No sex please we're Aurignations. J Rock Art Res 3:99–120

Bahn PG, Vertut J (1988) Images of the Ice Age. Facts on file, New York

Bahn PG (2012) Religion and ritual in the Upper Palaeolithic. In: Insoll T (ed) Oxford handbook of the archaeology of ritual and religion. Oxford University Press, Oxford

Barnaby W (1975) Note without title. Nature 254:553

Baucon A, Priviteria S, Morandi Bonacossil D, Cance A, Neto de Cavalho C, Kyriazi E, Laborel J, Laborel-Deguen F, Morhange C, Marriner N (2008) Principles of ichnoarchaeology: new frontiers for studying past times. Stud Trent Sci Nat Acta Geol 83:43–72

Bayon C, Politis G (1996) Estado actual de las investigaciónes en el sitio Monte Hermoso 1 (Provincia de Buenos Aires). Arqueología 6:83–116

Bayon C, Politis G (1998) Las Huellas del pasado. Las huellas humanas prehistóricas en la costa Pampeana. Cienc Hoy 8(48):12–20

Bayon C, Manera T, Politis G, Aramayo S (2011) Following in the tracks of the first South Americans. Evol Educ Outreach 4:205–217

Begouen CM (1927) Les empreintes de pieds préhistoriques. Inst Int Anthropol III Session, Amsterdam, pp 323–327

Behrensmeyer AK, Laporte LF (1981) Footprints of Pleistocene Hominin in Northern Kenya. Nature 289:167–169

Belperio AP, Fotheringham DG (1990) Geological setting of two Quaternary footprint sites, western South Australia. Aust J Earth Sci 37:37–42

Bennett MR, Harris JWK, Richmond BG, Braun DR, Mbua E, Kiura P, Olago D, Kibunjia M, Omuombo C, Behrensmeyer AK, Huddart D, Gonzalez S (2009) Early Hominin Foot morphology based on 1.5-Million-year-old footprints from Ileret, Kenya. Science 323:1197–1201

Bennett MR, Crompton RH, Morser SA (2010a) Tracking our ancestors. Planet Earth Autumn:24–25

Bennett MR, Gonzalez S, Huddart D, Kirby J, Toole E (2010b) Probable Neolithic footprints preserved in inter-tidal peat at Kenfig, South Wales (UK). Proc Geol Assoc 121:66–76

Bennett MR, Morse SA (2014) Human footprints: fossilised locomotion? Springer, Switzerland, 216 p

Berge C, Penin X, Pelle E (2006) New interpretation of Laetoli footprints using an experimental approach and Procrustes analysis: preliminary results. C R Palevol 5:561–569

Barriere C, Sahly A (1964) Les emprientes Humaines de Lascaux. In Miscelanea en Homenaje a Abate H Breuil, Barcelona, pp 173–180

Bice DC (1979) Tephra correlation and the age of human footprints near Managua, Nicaragua. Geol Soc Am Abstr 11(7):388

Brinton DG (1887) On an ancient human footprint from Nicaragua. Proc Am Philos Soc 24(126):437–444

Bowler JM, Johnston H, Olley JM, Prescott JR, Roberts RG, Shawcross W, Spooner NA (2003) New ages for human occupation and climatic change at Lake Mungo, Australia. Nature 421(6925):837–840

Bromley RG, Uchman A, Milàn J, Hansen KS (2009) Rheotactic *Macaronichnus*, and human and cattle trackways in Holocene beachrock, Greece: reconstruction of palaeoshoreline orientation. Ichnos 16:103–117

Brown RW (1947) Fossil plants and human footprints in Nicaragua. J Paleontol 21:38–40

Bryan AL (1973) New light on Ancient Nicaraguan footprints. Archaeology 26:146–147

Casteret N (1948) The footprints of Prehistoric man: a vivid new evidence of our ancestors of fifteen thousand years ago. Illust Lond News 110:408–409

Chamberlain AT, Sellars W, Murphy P, Goddard A (1997) The Archaeology of Rawthey Cave, Sedbergh, Cumbria. Archaeol North 14:11–20

Charteris J, Wall JC, Nottrodt JW (1981) Functional reconstruction of gait from the Pliocene hominin footprints at Laetoli, Northern Tanzania. Nature 290:496–498

Chiapella VG (1952) Orsi e nomini preistorici nella grotta della 'Strega' (Genova). Rev Com A 29:22–29

Clarke RJ (1999) Discovery of complete arm and hand of the 3.3 million-year-old *Australopithecus* skeleton from Sterkfontein. S Afr J Sci 95:477–480

Clottes J, Courtir J (1996) The Cave beneath the sea: paleolithic images at Cosquer. HN Abrams, New York

Cowell RW, Milles A, Roberts G (1993) Prehistoric footprints on Formby Point Beach, Merseyside. In: Middleton R (ed) North West Wetlands survey report

Crompton RH, Pataky TC, Savage R, D'Aout KD, Bennett MR, Day MH, Bates K, Morse S, Sellers WI (2012) Human-like external function of the foot, and fully upright gait, confirmed in the 3.66 Ma Laetoli hominin footprints by topographic statistics, experimental footprint formation and computer simulation. J R Soc Int 9(69):707–719

Darwin C (1872) The descent of man, and selection in relation to sex. John Murray, London

Day MH, Wickens EH (1980) Laetoli Pliocene hominid footprints and bipedalism. Nature 286:385–387

Deacon HJ (1966) The dating of the Nahoon footprints. S Afr J Sci 62:111–113

Deloison Y (1991) Les Austalopitheques marchaient-ils comme nous? In: Coppens Y, Senut B (eds) Origine(s) de la Bipédie chez les Hominidés. Centre National de la Rechérche Scientifique, Paris, pp 177–186

Deloison Y (1992) Emprientes de pas a Laetoli (Tanzanie). Leur apport a une meillure connaissance de la locomotion des Hominides, CR Academie des Sciences Paris, Ser. II, 315–103–109

Delson E, Harvati K (2006) Return of the last Neanderthal. Nature 443(7113):762–763

De Lumley H (1966) Les fouilles de Terra Amata à Nice. Premiers résultats. Bull Mus Anthropol Prehist Monaco 13:29–51

De Lumley H (1967) Découverte d'habitats de l'Acheuléen ancien dans des dépôts mindéliens sur le site de Terra Amata. Acad Sci Paris 264:801–804

De Lumley MA, Lamy P, Mafart B, De Lumley H, Pollet G, Roussel B, Valensi P, Fauquembergue E, Garrigue N, Manaldi B, Pollet G, Thevenot O (2011) Une Empreinte de pied humain acheuleen dans la dune littorale du site de Terra Amata. In: De Lumley H (ed) Terra Amata: Nice, Alps-Maritimes, France, Tome II. CNRS Editions, Paris

De Pastino B (2015) Ancient human footprints found on Canadian island may be oldest in North America.http://westerndigs.org/ancient-human-footprints-found-on-canadian-island-may-be-oldest-in-north-america/

Demas M, Agnew N (1996) Laetoli Project: conservation of the Hominin trackway Site at Laetoli, Tanzania: report on the 1995 field season. Getty Conservation Institute, Los Angeles, CA

DeSilva JM, Gill SV (2013) Brief communication: a midtarsal (midfoot) break in the human foot. Am J Phys Anthropol 151(3):495–499

Diamond J (1999) Guns, germs, and steel: the fate of human societies. Norton, New York

Dillehay T (1999) Monte Verde under fire. Archeology

Dingwall HL, Hatala KG, Wunderlich RE et al (2013) Hominin stature, body mass, and walking speed estimates based on 1.5 million-year-old fossil footprints at Ileret, Kenya. J Hum Evol 64:556–568

Doyle KL (2007) Historian amazing find. Glamorgan Gazette

Facorellis Y, Kyparissi-Apostolika N, Maniatis Y (2001) The cave of Theopetra, Kalambaka: Radiocarbon evidence for 50,000 years of human presence. Radiocarbon 43:1029–1048

Felstead NJ, Gonzalez S, Huddart D, Noble SR, Hoffmann DL, Metcalfe SE, Leng MJ, Albert BM, Pike AW, Gonzalez-Gonzalez A, Jiménez-López JC (2014) Holocene-aged human footprints from the Cuatrociénegas Basin, NE Mexico. J Archaeol Sci 42:250–259

Ferring R, Oms O, Agustí J, Berna F, Nioradze M, et al (2011) Earliest human occupations at Dmanisi (Georgian Caucasus) dated to 1.85–1.78 Ma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 10432–10436.

Flint E (1883) Report of the Peabody Museum (not seen: cited in Vallois, 1927)

Forth G (2012) Are legendary hominoids worth looking for? Views from ethnobiology and paleoanthropology. Anthropology Today 38(2):13–16

Galef BG Jr (2003) Social learning: Promoter or inhibitor of innovation? In: Reader SM, Laland KN (eds) Animal innovation. Oxford University Press, Oxford

Galef BG Jr (2009) Strategies for social learning: tests of predictions from formal theory. Adv Study Behav 39:117–151

Garcia MA (1999) La piste de pas humains de la grotte Chauvet à Vallon-Pont d’Arc. Int Newsl Rock Art 24:1–4

Garcia MA (2001) Les empreintes et les traces humaines et animals. In: Clottes J (ed) La Grotte Chauvet: l’art des Origines. Threshold, Paris, pp 34–43

Gibbard PL (2003) Definition of the Middle-Upper Pleistocene boundary. Glob Planet Change 36:201–208

Gonzalez S, Huddart D, Bennett MR, Gonzalez-Huesca A (2006a) Human footprints in Central Mexcio older than 40,000 years. Quat Sci Rev 25:201–222

Gonzalez S, Huddart D, Bennett MR (2006b) Geoarchaeology of the Valsequillo Basin, Central Mexico: new results and controversies. In: El Hombre Temprano en America. III Simposio Internacional, Museo del Desierto, Saltillo, Mexico

Gonzalez AH, Lockley MG, Rojas C, Lopez JE (2006b) Human tracks from Holocene tufa deposits, Cuatro Cienegas, Coahuilla, Mexico. J Vert Paleontol 26:68A

Gonzalez AH, Lockley M, Rojas C, Lopez JE (2006d) Redescubrimiento de huellas de homínido del holoceno temprano en el valle de Cuatrocienegas, Coahuila, Mexico. El Hombre Temprano en America, III Simposio Internacional, Museo del Desierto, Saltillo, Mexico

Gonzalez A, Lockley MG, Rojas C, Lopez JE (2007) Notes on the re-discovery of a ‘lost’ hominin footprint site from the Cuatro Cienegas basin (Coahuila), Mexico. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:11–15

Gonzalez AH, Lockley MG, Rojas C, Lopez JE (2009) Human tracks from Holocene tufa deposits, Cuatro Cienegas Coahuilla, Mexico. Ichnos 16:12–24

Gore R (1997) The dawn of humans. Tracking the first of our kind. Natl Geogr Mag 192:92–99

Guldberg H (2010) Just another ape? Academic Imprint, Exeter, UK

Haberland W, Grebe WH (1957) Prehistoric footprints from El Salvador. Am Antiq 22:282–285

Hatala KG (2014) An experimental functional analysis of the Laetoli hominin footprints. Am J Phys Anthropol 153:138

Hatala KG, Richmond BG, Harcourt-Smith WEH, Rossi V, Metallo A, Liutkus CM, Pobiner BL, Dingwall H, Olle Moita G, Brett J (2011) Early modern human footprints from Engare Sero, Tanzania. Am J Phys Anthropol 144:158

Hasiotis ST, Platt BF, Hembree DI, Everhart M (2007) The trace-fossil record of vertebrates. In: Miller WIII (ed) Trace fossils-concepts, problems, prospects. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Harada T, Noto T (1984) Volcanic calamity season. Bull Gunma Pref Mus Hist 5:1–21

Harcourt-Smith EH, Hilton CE (2005) Did *Australopithecus afarensis* make the Laetoli footprint trails? New insights into an old problem. Am J Phys Anthropol Suppl 40:112

Harper (2012) The online etymological dictionary

Harrington SPM (1999) Human footprints at Chauvet Cave. Archaeology 52(5):18

Hay RL, Leakey MD (1982) The fossil footprints of Laetoli. Sci Am 246:50–57

Houck KJ, Lockley MG, Avanzini M (2009) A survey of tetrapod tracksites preserved in pyroclastic rocks, with special reference to footprints of hominins, other mammals and birds. Ichnos 16:76–97

Huddart D, Bennett MR, Gonzalez S, Velay X (2008) Analysis and preservation of pleistocene human and animal footprints: an example from Toluquilla, Valsequillo Basin (Central Mexico). Ichnos 15:232–245

ICZN (International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature) (1999) International code of zoological nomenclature, 4th edn. Natural History Museum, London, UK

Jaggar TJ (1921) Fossil human footprints in Kau Desert. Hawaii Volcano Observ Month Bull 9:114–118

Jaggar TA (1934) Fossil human footprints in the Kau Desert. Paradise Pac 46(5):5

Kim CB, Kim JY, Kim KS, Lim HS (2010) New age constraints for hominin footprints found on Jeju Island, South Korea. J Archaeol Sci 37:3338–3343

Kim JY (2004) Report on the preliminary study of fossil footprints site, coast of Namjeju. The Cultural Properties Administration of Korea, Korea

Kim JY, Kim KS (2004a) Hominin and other animal footprints from the Cenozoic Hamori Formation of Jeju Island. Proc 2004 Spring Mtg Korean Earth Sci Soc. pp 25–31

Kim JY, Kim KS (2004b) Mammalian and Avian footprints from the late Pleistocene Hamori formation of Jeju Island, Korea. 32nd international geological congress abstract, Florence, Italy

Kim JY, Kim KS, Lockley MG (2008a) Hominid ichnology: tracking our own origins. Ichnos 16:105–108

Kim JY, Kim KS, Kim SH, Lee CZ, Lim JD (2009) Preliminary report on hominin and other vertebrate footprints from the Late Quaternary Strata of Jeju Island, Korea. Ichnos 16:1–11

Kim JY, Kim KS, Lockley MG, Lee CZ, Lim JD, Kim CB (2007) Overview of the hominid footprints: implication for their significance. In: Kim JY, Kim KS (eds) Proceedings of 2007 International Symposium on the Conservation and Application of Hominid Footprints

Kim JY, Kim KS, Lockley MG, Matthews N (2008b) Hominid ichnology: an exploration of a neglected discipline. Ichnos 15:126–139

Kim JY, Kim KS, Park SI, Shin MK (2004) International symposium on quaternary footprints of Hominins and other vertebrates, Jeju, Korea

Kimbel WH, Delezene LK (2009) 'Lucy' Redux: a review of research on *Australopithecus afarensis*. Am J Phys Anthropol 52:2–48

Kuhn H (1955) On the track of prehistoric man. Random House, New York

Leakey MD, Harris JM (1987) Laetoli: a Pliocene site in Northern Tanzania. Clarendon, Oxford

Leakey MD, Hay RL (1979) Pliocene footprints in the Laetoli beds at Laetoli, Northern Tanzania. Nature 278:317–319

Lewin R (1982) Thread of life. Smithsonian Books, Washington

Lockley MG (1991) Tracking dinosaurs: a new look at an ancient world. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Lockley MG (1999) The Eternal Trail: a tracker looks at evolution. Perseus Books, Reading, PA

Lockley MG, Meyer CA (2000) Dinosaur tracks and other fossil footprints of Europe. Columbia University Press, New York

Lockley MG, Roberts G (2004) In the footprints of our ancestors: a brief review of the hominin track record. In: Kim JY, Kim KS, Park SI, Shin MK (eds) International symposium on quaternary footprints of Hominins and other vertebrates, Jeju, Korea

Lockley MG, Kim JY, Roberts G (2007a) The Ichnos project: a re-evaluation of the hominin track record. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:79–89

Lockley MG, Garcia-Vasquez R, Espinoza E, Lucas SG (2007b) Notes on a famous but 'forgotten' human footprint site from the Holocene of Nicaragua. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:97–102

Lockley MG, Roberts G, Kim JY (2008a) In the footprints of our ancestors: an overview of the hominid track record. Ichnos 15:106–125

Lockley MG, Lucas SG, Hunt AP, Garcia-Vasquez R, Espinoza E (2008b) Non hominin vertebrate traces from the Lower Holocene of Nicaragua. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 44: 393–397

Lockley MG, Garcia-Vasquez R, Espinoza E, Lucas SG (2009) America's most famous hominin footprints: history and context of tracks from Nicaragua. Ichnos 16:55–69

Lockley MG, Matthews N (2007) Observations on scientific documentation and preservation strategies employed at hominid and other vertebrate tracksites in the Americas and elsewhere. In: Kim JY, Kim KS (eds) Proceedings of 2007 international symposium on the conservation and application of Hominid footprints, Jeju, Japan

Long JA (1998) Dinosaurs of Australia and New Zealand and other animals of the Mesozoic era. University of New South Wales Press Ltd, Sydney, pp. 188

Lordkipanidze D, Jashashvili T, Vekua A, Ponce de León MS, Zollikofer CPE, Rightmire GP, Pontzer H, Ferring R, Oms O, Tappen M, Bukhsianidze M (2007) Postcranial evidence from early Homo from Dmanisi, Georgia. Nature 449:305–310

Lovejoy OC (1988) Evolution of human walking. Sci Am 259:82–89

Mafart B (2006) Étude anthropologique d'empreintes de pas humains Holocènes de la sebkra El Azrag (République islamique de Mauritanie). L'Anthropologie 110(5):766–787

Marcos EL (2001) El descubrimiento de las Huellas Prehistoricas. Ojo Guarena. Cubía Boletín Grupo Espeleológico Edelweiss 3:34–35

Marshack A (1972) The roots of civilization. McGraw Hill, New York

Mastrolorenzo G, Petrone P, Pappalardo L, Sheridan MF (2006) The Avellino 3780-yr-B.P. catastrophe as a worst case scenario for a future eruption at Vesuvius. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:4366–4370

Matthews N, Noble T, Musiba C, Washa J, Breithaupt B (2011) Close-range photogrammetry of partial re-excavation of the Laetoli hominin footprints, in northern Tanzania. J Vert Paleontol 31:153–154

Mauch M, Grau S, Krauss I, Maiwald C, Horstmann T (2008) Foot morphology of normal, underweight and overweight children. Int J Obes (Lond) 32:1068–1075

Mayor A, Sarjeant WAS (2001) The folklore of footprints in stone: from classical antiquity to the present. Ichnos 8:143–163

McBrearty S, Brooks A (2000) The revolution that wasn't: a new interpretation of the origin of modern human behavior. J Hum Evol 39:453–563

Mcllroy D (2004) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis: Introduction. In: Mcllroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis. Geological Society Special Publications 228, London

Meldrum DJ (2000) Footprints in the Ka'u Desert, Hawaii. Am J Phys Anthropol Suppl 30:226–227

Meldrum DJ (2002) Midfoot flexibility and the evolution of bipedalism. Am J Phys Anthropol Suppl 34:111–112

Meldrum DJ (2004a) Fossilized Hawaiian footprints compared with Laetoli Hominin footprints. In: Meldrum DJ, Hilton CE (eds) From biped to strider, the emergence of modern human walking, running, and resource transport. Kluwer Academic/Plenum, New York

Meldrum DJ (2004b) Midfoot flexibility, fossil footprints, and Sasquatch steps: new perspectives on the evolution of bipedalism. J Sci Explor 18:67–79

Meldrum DJ (2006) Sasquatch: legend meets science. Macmillan, New York

Meldrum DJ (2007a) Renewed perspective on the Laetoli trackways: the earliest hominin footprints. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:233–239

Meldrum DJ (2007b) Ichnotaxonomy of giant hominin tracks from North America. New Mexico Mus Nat Hist Sci Bull 42:225–231

Meldrum DJ (2012a) Adaptive radiations, bushy evolutionary trees, and relict hominoids. Relict Hominoid Inquiry 1:51–56

Meldrum DJ (2012b) Are other hominins (hominoids) alive today? Relict Hominoid Inquiry 1:67–71

Meldrum DJ, Chapman RE (2007) Morphometrics of the outline shape of hominid footprints. Am J Phys Anthropol Suppl 42:170

Meldrum DJ, Gouxing Z (2012) Footprint evidence of the Chinese Yeren. Relict Hominoid Inquiry 1:57–66

Meldrum DJ, Lockley MG, Lucas SG, Musiba C (2011) Ichnotaxonomy of the Laetoli trackways: the earliest hominin footprints. J Afr Earth Sci 60:1–12

Meldrum DJ, Sarmiento E, Chapman R (2010) The hallucal metatarsal sesamoid complex in the evolution of hominin gait. Am J Phys Anthropol Suppl 50

Mellars P (2006) Why did modern human populations disperse from Africa ca. 60,000 years ago? A new model. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:9381–9386

Mietto P, Avanzini M, Rolandi G (2003) Human footprints in a Pleistocene Volcanic ash. Nature 422:133

Miskovski JC (1967) Les paleosols Mindel-Riss et Riss-Wurm de Terra Amata. Etude Sédimentol Acad Sci Paris 264:2361–2363

Mithen S (1988) Looking and learning: Upper Paleolithic art and information gathering. World Archaeol 9:297–327

Molleson TI, Oakley KP, Vogel JC (1972) The antiquity of the human footprints of Tanna della Basura. J Hum Evol 1:467–471

Moniz Nakamura JJ (2009) Hominin footprints in Recent volcanic ash: new interpretations from Hawaii Volcanoes National Park. Ichnos 16:118–123

Morse SA, Bennett MR, Gonzalez S, Huddart D (2010) Techniques for verifying human footprints: reappraisal of pre-Clovis footprints in Central Mexico. Quat Sci Rev 29:2571–2578

Morse SA, Bennett MR, Liutkus-Pierce C, Thackeray F, McClymont J, Savage R, Crompton RH (2013) Holocene footprints in Namibia: the influence of substrate on footprint variability. Am J Phys Anthropol 151:265–279

Morwood M, van Oosterzee P (2007) A new human. Smithsonian Books, New York

Morwood M, Sutikna T, Roberts R (2005) World of the little people. Natl Geogr April:2–15

Mountain ED (1966) Footprints in calcareous sandstone at Nahoon Point. S Afr J Sci 62:103–111

Musiba C, Matthews N, Noble T, Kim JY, Dominguez-Rodrigo M (2011) How many individuals left their footprints at Laetoli? Reinterpretation of the trackways based on recently acquired 3d data. J Vert Paleontol 31:164

Nemecek S (2000) Who were the first Americans? Sci Am September:80–87

Nichol R (1982) Fossilised human footprints in Rangitoto Ash on Motutapu Island. Geol Soc N Z Newsl 51:11–13

Noval Fonseca MA (2007) Cuevas tempranas (Posada, Llanes): Fragil Rastro del Pasado. Excavaciones Arqueologicos en Asturias 1999-2002, Gobierno del Principado de Asturias. Servicio de Publicaciones, Oviedo

Onac BP, Viehmann I, Lundberg J, Lauritzen SE, Stringer C, Popiţă V (2005) U-Th ages constraining the Neanderthal footprint at Vârtop Cave, Romania. Quat Sci Rev 24:1151–1157

Oppenheimer S (2009) The great arc of dispersal of modern humans: Africa to Australia. Quat Int 202:2–13

Ordoñez E (1945) "Las huellas de pisadas humanas en Rincón de Guadalupe, Amanalco de becerra, Estado de Mexico". (Manuscript "en Mimeógrafo." Biblioteca del Instituto de Geología, Mexico, D. F.)

Ozansoy F (1969) Pleistocene human footprints in Turkey. Univ Ankatra Bull Miner Res Explor Inst Turk 72:146–150

Pales L (1954) Les empreintes de pieds humains de la "Tana della Basura" (Toriano). Revista di Studi Liguri 20:5–12

Pales L (1960) Les empreintes de pieds humains de la “Grotta della Basura” (Toriano). Revue des études ligures 26:25–90

Pales L (1976) Les empreintes de pieds Humains dans les cavernes. Arch l’Inst Paléontol Hum 36:1–166

Parfitt SA, Barendregt RW, Breda M, Candy I, Collins MJ, Coope GR, Durbidge P, Field MH, Lee JR, Lister AM, Mutch R, Penkman KEH, Preece RC, Rose J, Stringer CB, Symmons R, Whittaker JE, Wymer JJ, Stuart AJ (2005) The earliest record of human activity in northern Europe. Nature 438:1008–1012

Patton MA (1993) Neolithic and later archaeology. In: Keen D (ed) Quaternary of Jersey: field guide. Quaternary Research Association, London

Pontzer H, Rolian C, Rightmire GP, Jashashvili T, Ponce de León MS, Lordkipanidze D, Zollikofer CP (2010) Locomotor anatomy and biomechanics of the Dmanisi hominins. J Hum Evol 58:492–504

Raichlen DA, Gordon AD, Harcourt-Smith WEH, Foster AD, Haas WR Jr (2010) Laetoli footprints preserve earliest direct evidence of human-like bipedal biomechanics. PLoS One 5(3):e9769

Rector CH (1979) 5,000-year-old footprints on the Mojave River, California, USA. Antiquity 54:149–150

Rector CH (1983) Appendix B. Ancient human and animal trackway. In: Rector CH, Swenson JD, Wilke PJ (eds) Archaeological Studies at Oro Grande, Mohave Desert, California. San Bernardino County Museum Association, Redlands, CA

Rector CH (1999) Human and animal trackway at Oro Grande. San Bernardino Cty Mus Assoc Q 46:53–55

Rendell L, Whitehead H (2001) Culture in whales and dolphins. Behav Brain Sci 24:309–324

Renders E (1984) The gait of *Hipparion* sp., from fossil footprints in Laeotoli, Tanzania. Nature 308:179–181

Renne PR, Feinberg JM, Waters MR, Arroyo-Cabrales J, Ochoa-Castillo P, Perez-Campa M, Knight KB (2005) Age of Mexican Ash with alleged ‘footprints’. Nature 438:E7–E8

Richmond BG, Hatala KG, Harcourt-Smith WEH, Rossi V, Metallo A et al (2011) Early modern human footprint assemblage from Engare Sero, Tanzania. PaleoAnthropology 2011:29

Roberts D (2008) Last interglacial Hominin and associated vertebrate fossil Trackways in coastal Eolianites, South Africa. Ichnos 15:190–207

Roberts G (2009) Ephemeral, subfossil mammalian, avian and hominin footprints within Flandrian sediment exposures at Formby Point, Sefton Coast, North West England. Ichnos 16:33–48

Roberts D, Berger LR (1997) Last Interglacial (c. 117 Kr) human footprints from South Africa. S Afr J Sci 93:349–350

Roberts G, Gonzalez S, Huddart D (1996) Intertidal Holocene footprints and their archaeological significance. Antiquity 70:647–651

Rodríguez-de la Rosa RA, Aguillón-Martínez MC, López-Espinoza J, Eberth DA (2004) The fossil record of vertebrate tracks in Mexico. Ichnos 11:27–38

Rothschild LJ, Lister AM (2003) Evolution on planet earth. Academic, London

Scaillet S, Vita-Scaillet G, Guillou H (2008) Oldest human footprints dated by Ar/Ar. Earth Planet Sci Lett 275:320–325

Schmid P (2004) Functional interpretation of the Laetoli footprints. In: Meldrum DJ, Hilton C (eds) From biped to strider: The emergence of modern human walking, running, and resource transport. Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishing, New York, pp. 49–61

Schmincke HU, Freundt A, Kutterolf S, Perez W (2005) Escaping from a powerful eruption-the 6000 year old human footprints at Acahualinca (Nicaragua). 19th Colloquium on Latin Americas Geosciences, Potsdam

Schmincke HU, Rausch J, Kutterolf S, Freundt A (2007) Acahualinca revisited. Lat Am Colloq 2007 Abstr. pp 210–211

Schmincke HU, Kutterolf S, Perez W, Rausch J, Freundt A, Strauch W (2008) Walking through volcanic mud: the 2,100 year-old Acahualinca footprints (Nicaragua). I: stratigraphy, lithology, volcanology and age of the Acahualinca section. Bull Volcanol 51(5):479–493

Schmincke HU, Rausch J, Kutteroff S, Freundt A (2009) Walking through volcanic mud: the 2100 year-old Acahualinca footprints (Nicaragua) II: the Acahualinca people, environmental conditions and motivation. Int J Earth Sci 99(1):279–292

Scott JJ, Renaut RW, Owen RB (2008a) Preservation and paleoenvironmental significance of a footprinted surface on the Sandai Plain, Lake Bogoria, Kenya Rift Valley. Ichnos 15:208–231

Scott JJ, Renaut RW, Owen RB, Sarjeant WAS (2008b) Biogenic activity, trace formation, and trace taphonomy in the marginal sediments of saline, alkaline Lake Bogoria, Kenya Rift Valley. In: Bromley R, Buatois LA, Genise J, Mángano MG, Melchor R (eds) Ichnology at the crossroads: a multidimensional approach to the science of organism-substrate interactions. SEPM Spec Pub 88, Tulsa, OK

Seilacher A (2007) Trace fossil analysis. Springer, Berlin

Sellers W, Cain G, Wang W, Crompton RH (2005) Stride length, speed and energy costs in walking of Australopithecus afarensis using evolutionary robotics to predict locomotion of early human ancestors. J Roy Soc Interface 2:431–441

Smith W, Hall TD (1914) A smaller Latin dictionary. John Murray, London

Stern JT Jr, Susman RL (1983) The locomotor anatomy of Australipithecus afarensis. Am J Phys Anthropol 60:279–317

Susman RL, Stern JT, Jugers WL (1984) Arboreality and bipedality in Hadar hominids. Folia Paleontol 43:113–156

Suwa G (1984) Could *Australopithecus afarensis* have made the hominin tracks at Laetoli. J Phys Anthropol 963:224–225

Swisher CC III, Rink WJ, Anton SC, Schwarcz HP, Curtis GH, Widiasmoro AS (1996) Latest Homo erectus, in Java: potential contemporaneity with Homo sapiens in Southeast Asia. Science 274:1870–1874

Tekkaya I (1976) Insanlara ait fosil ayak izleri: yeryuvavari ve insane [Human fossil footprints: the prints and the person]. Cografya 1:8–10

Tuttle RH (1985) Ape footprints and Laetoli impressions, a response to the SUNY claims. In: Tobias PV (ed) Hominid evolution: past, present, and future. Alan R. Riss Inc., New York

Tuttle RH (1990) The pitted pattern of Laetoli feet. Nat Hist 99(3):61–66

Tuttle RH (1996) The Laetoli hominid G footprints. Where do they stand today? Kaupia 6:97–102

Tuttle RH (2014) Apes and human evolution. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA

Tuttle RH, Webb D, Weidi E, Baksh M (1990) Further progress on the Laetoli trails. J Archeol Sci 17:347–362

Tuttle RH, Webb D, Tuttle NI (1991) Laetoli footprint trails and the evolution of hominid bipedalism. In: Coppens Y, Senut B (eds) Origine(s) de la bipedie chez les hominides. Cahiers de Paleoanthropologie, Editions du CNRS, Paris

Vallois HV (1927) Etude des empreintes de pieds humains de Tuc d'Audoubert, de Cabrerets, de Ganties. Inst Int Anthropol III Sess. pp 328–338

Vallois HV (1931) Empreintes de pieds humains des Grottes préhistorique du midi de la France. Paleobiologica 4:79–98

Veliz V (1978) Huellas Humanas en Guaimaca, Honduras. Yaxkin Instituto Honureno de Antropologia e Histoiria Tegucigalpa 2(4):263–269

Vialou D (1986) L'art des grottes en Ariège Magdalénienne. (XXIIe Supplément à Gallia Préhistoire). CNRS Editions, Paris

Watson PJ, Kennedy MC, Willey P, Robbins L, Wilson RC (2005) Prehistoric footprints in Jaguar Cave, Tennessee. J Field Archaeol 30:25–43

Webb S (2007) Further research of the Willandra Lakes fossil footprint site, southeastern Australia. J Hum Evol 52:711–715

Webb S, Cupper ML, Robins R (2006) Pleistocene human footprints from the Willandra lakes, southeastern Australia. J Hum Evol 50:405–413

Westaway R, Pringle M, Yurtmen S, Demir T, Bridgeland D, Rowbotham G, Maddy D (2003) Pliocene and Quaternary surface uplift of Western Turkey revealed by long term river terrace sequences. Curr Sci 84:1090–1101

Westaway R, Pringle M, Yurtmen S, Demir T, Demir T, Bridgeland D, Rowbotham G, Maddy D (2004) Pliocene and Quaternary regional uplift in Western Turkey: the Gediz River terrace staircase and the volcanism at Kula. Tectonophysics 391:121–169

Westaway R, Guillou H, Yurtmen S, Beck A, Bridgeland D, Demir T, Scaillet S, Rowbotham G (2006) Late Cenozoic uplift of Western Turkey: improved dating of the Kula Quaternary Volcanic field and Numerical modeling of the Gediz River terrace staircase. Glob Planet Change 51:131–171

White TD, Suwa G (1987) Hominin footprints at Laetoli, facts and interpretations. Am J Phys Anthropol 72:485–514

Willey P, Stolen J, Crothers G, Watson PJ (2005) Preservation of prehistoric footprints in Jaguar Cave, Tennessee. J Cave Karst Stud 67:61–68

Willey P, Watson PJ, Crothers G, Stolen J (2009) Holocene human footprints in North America. Ichnos 16:70–75

Williams H (1952) Geological observations on the ancient human footprints near Managua. Contrib Am Anthropol Hist 52:1–31

Wong K (2011) Fossil footprints of early modern humans found in Tanzania. Scientific American Blog, April 4, 2011

Wood B (2005) Human evolution. Oxford University Press, Oxford

Wood B, Richmond BG (2000) Human evolution: taxonomy and paleobiology. J Anat 196:19–60

Zhang DD, Li SH (2002) Optical dating of Tibetan human hand and footprints: an implication for the paleoenvironment of the last glaciation of the Tibetan Plateau. Geophys Res Lett 29:161–163

Zhang DD, Li SH, He QE, Li BS (2003) Human settlement of the last glaciation on the Tibetan plateau. Curr Sci 84:701–704

Zimmer B, Liutkus C, Carmichael S, Richmond B, Hewitt S, et al (2012) A snapshot in time: Determining the age, environment, and social structures of early *Homo* sapiens using trace fossils in volcaniclastic rocks at the Engare Sero footprint site, Lake Natron, Tanzania. Geological Soc of America abstracts of 108th annual meeting 44. p 13

Chapter 16
Recurrent Patterns and Processes: The Significance of Ichnology in Evolutionary Paleoecology

Luis A. Buatois and M. Gabriela Mángano

16.1 Introduction

Gould (1980) established a distinction between idiographic and nomothetic paleobiology. Whereas the former deals with individual evolutionary events, the latter attempts to find regularities in the history of life. This book is rooted in an idiographic approach because most chapters review a single major evolutionary event. However, after gathering such a wealth of information on specific events, it is worth to close the book with a brief attempt at exploring the nomothetic perspective by trying to find recurrent patterns and processes in evolutionary paleoecology using ichnologic data. In fact, as noted by Gould (1980) himself regarding J. J. Sepkoski's (1978, 1979, 1984) kinetic model of diversification, the approach employed here attempts to reach a balance between nomothetics and idiographics by producing a nomothetic model which is empirically grounded (see D. Sepkoski 2012 for an insightful review). Therefore, this chapter compares several evolutionary events, searching for common themes. In order to do so, we will compare organism-substrate interactions during evolutionary radiations, benthic fauna response to mass extinctions, patterns of ecospace colonization, and environmental shifts through time.

L.A. Buatois (✉) • M.G. Mángano
Department of Geological Sciences, University of Saskatchewan,
114 Science Place, Saskatoon, SK, Canada
e-mail: luis.buatois@usask.ca

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5_16

16.2 Evolutionary Radiations

Evolutionary radiations are dramatic proliferations of taxa within clades (Erwin 1992; Simões et al. 2016). From an ichnologic perspective, three major events in marine settings are compared in this book and are, therefore, addressed in this chapter, the Cambrian Explosion (see Chap. 3), the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event (see Chap. 4) and the Mesozoic Marine Revolution (see Chap. 9). Figures 16.1 and 16.2 summarize changes in ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity through time, respectively. Only invertebrate trace fossils were considered. Ichnogeneric occurrences were compiled on a case-by-case basis, therefore summarizing actual occurrences. However, the curves were plotted as “range-through” data, and therefore they are based on lower and upper appearances for each ichnogenus/category of architectural design and then extrapolating their presence through any intervening gap in the continuity of its record. This allows eliminating the noise generated by small-scale fluctuations in ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity that may result from the uneven number of studies for each time span. However, a disadvantage of this approach is that it is not particularly useful to detect potential drops in ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity as a result of mass extinctions (see Sect. 16.3).

Compilation of ichnogeneric diversity through geologic time indicates that the Cambrian Explosion, the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event and the Mesozoic Marine Revolution, all evolutionary radiations established based on body fossils, are associated with increases in ichnodiversity (Fig. 16.1). This pattern shows a remarkable consistency with our knowledge derived from the analysis of diversity based on the body-fossil record. In fact, similarities between the curve of

Fig. 16.1 (continued) were compiled at the ichnogenus level because the taxonomy is more firmly established than for ichnospecies. Total number of ichnogenera is 523 ichnogenera (417 for bioturbation structures and 106 for bioerosion structures). Synonymies have been checked to make ichnotaxonomy consistent. Individual curves were constructed for continental, shallow-marine and deep-marine bioturbation ichnotaxa, and marine and continental bioerosion. In turn, separate ichnodiversity curves were compiled for all marine bioturbation ichnogenera, all marine ichnogenera (bioerosion plus bioturbation), and all continental ichnogenera (bioerosion plus bioturbation). In order to differentiate between shallow marine, deep marine and continental occurrences, original paleoenvironmental interpretations in the literature, as well as personal data, were considered. Curves plotted as “range-through” data, and therefore based on lower and upper appearances for each ichnogenus, extrapolating their presence through any intervening gap in the continuity of its record. Temporal resolution is at Epoch rank. Because there are no formal subdivisions for the Ediacaran Period, this bin has been further divided using the informal subdivision of Vendian (560–550 Ma) and Namibian (550–541 Ma) (*sensu* Jensen et al. 2006). Biogenic structures recorded in modern sediments have been included in the Holocene. Although it occurs in both hardgrounds and firmgrounds, *Gastrochaenolites* was considered under bioerosion. The record of mirobioerosion ichnotaxa extends further into the Precambrian with *Granulohyalichnus* and *Tubulohyalichnus* ranging into 3.5 Ga (Furnes et al. 2004, 2007; Banerjee et al. 2006, 2007; McLoughlin et al. 2009), representing in fact the oldest trace fossils. Because these two ichnogenera are produced by microbial activity and our analysis is centered on invertebrates, they have not been considered in the discussion presented in the text

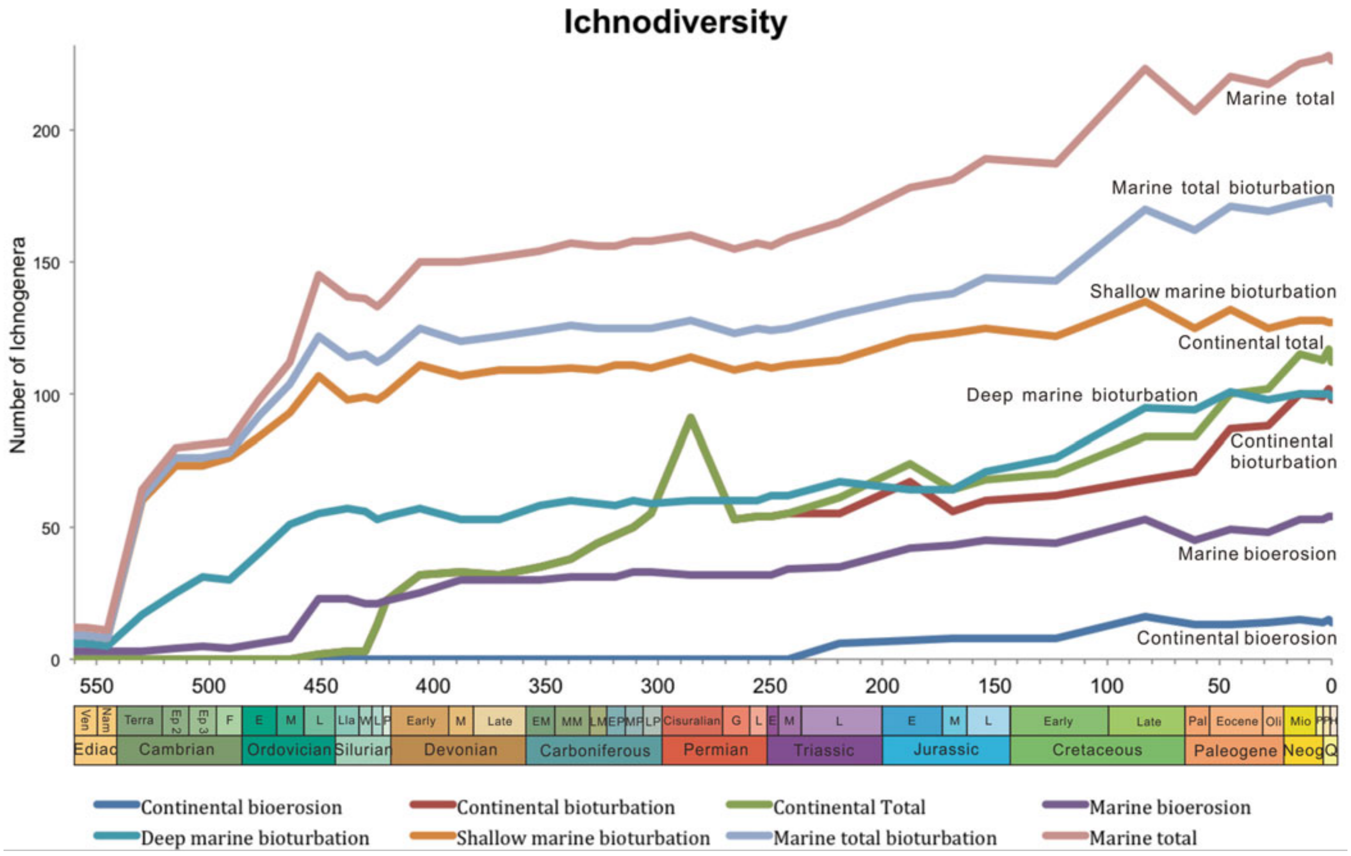
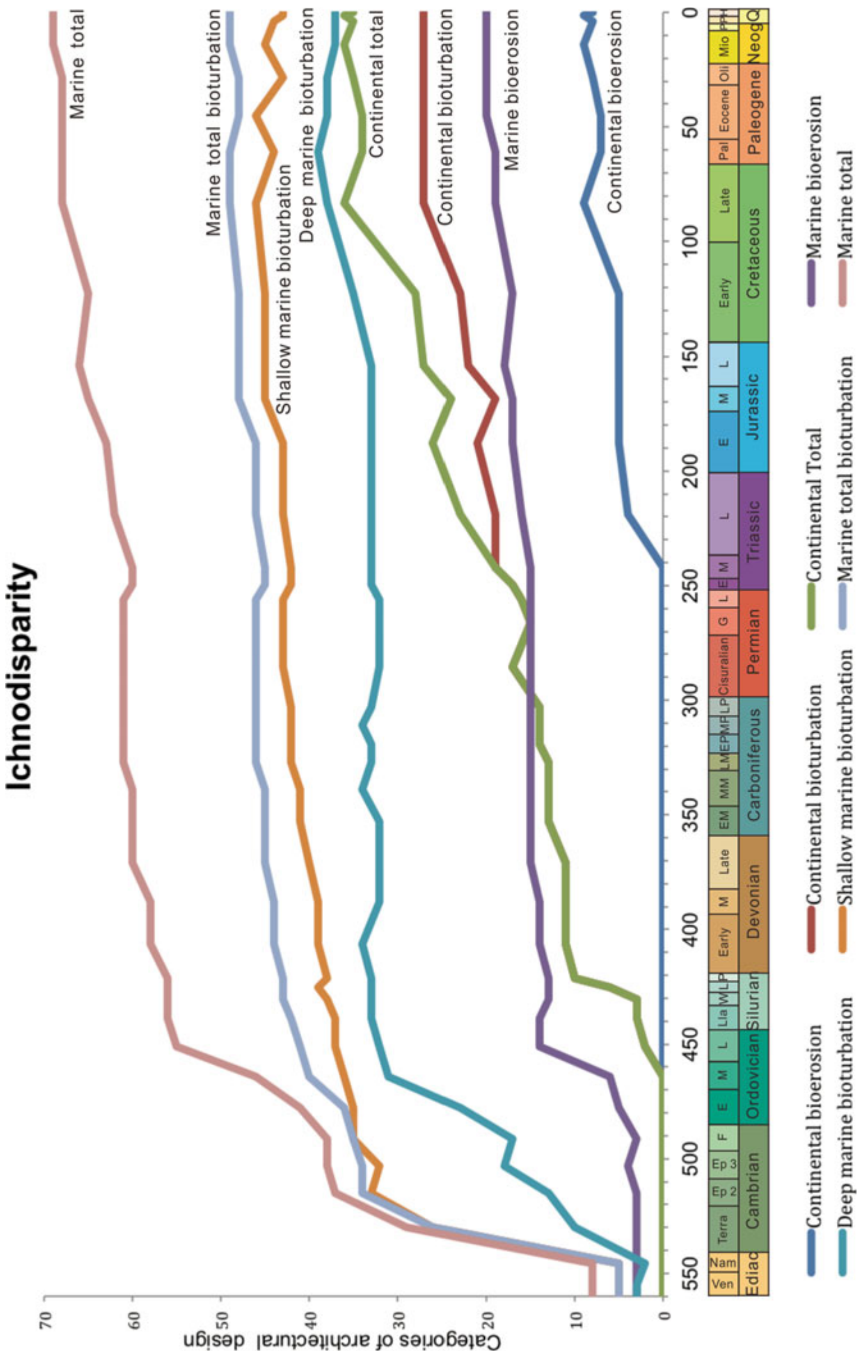


Fig. 16.1 Ichnodiversity changes through geologic time. Compilation based on literature and personal data. The main literature sources used to compile the ichnogeneric list were the Treatise volume on trace fossils (Häntzschel 1975) and the more recent revision by Knaust (2012). In addition, we have checked each ichnogenus by consulting the original ichnologic literature and pertinent reviews in order to revise its validity and potential synonyms. The ichnodiversity curves


Ichnodisparity
Categories of architectural design
0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
550
500
450
400
350
300
250
200
150
100
50
0
Marine total
Marine total bioturbation
Shallow marine bioturbation
Deep marine bioturbation
Continental total
Continental bioturbation
Marine bioerosion
Continental bioerosion
Ven
Nam
Ediac
Terra
Ep 2
Ep 3
F
Cambrian
E
M
L
Ordovician
Lla
W
L
P
Silurian
Early
M
Late
Devonian
EM
MM
LM
EP
MP
LP
Carboniferous
Cisuralian
G
L
Permian
E
M
L
Triassic
E
M
L
Jurassic
Early
Late
Cretaceous
Pal
Eocene
Oli
Paleogene
Mio
P
P
H
Neog
Q
Continental bioerosion
Deep marine bioturbation
Continental bioturbation
Shallow marine bioturbation
Continental Total
Marine total bioturbation
Marine bioerosion
Marine total

marine ichnodiversity and that of marine animal genera produced by Sepkoski (1997) are striking with regards to the Cambrian Explosion and the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event (Buatois et al. 2016a). A 433 % increase in ichnodiversity took place in marine environments during the Terraneuvian (12 and 64 ichnogenera in the Ediacaran and Terraneuvian, respectively), whereas a 77 % occurred as a result of the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event (82 ichnogenera in the Furongian and 145 ichnogenera by the Late Ordovician). Whereas the Cambrian Explosion is essentially restricted to bioturbation structures, the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event is expressed by bioerosion structures as well, an event that has been referred to as the Ordovician bioerosion revolution (Wilson and Palmer 2006). Ichnogeneric compilations show that the explosion in bioerosion took place approximately 80 my after the Cambrian Explosion in bioturbation (Buatois et al. 2016a). The explosive diversification of the early Cambrian supports an exponential model for the early phases of diversification as advocated originally by Sepkoski (1978) based on shelly fossils. Despite these similarities, two main differences are apparent. First, trace-fossil data indicate that the rapid diversification took place in the early Cambrian, rather than in the late early Cambrian as indicated by shelly fossils, suggesting that the Fortunian may be regarded as part of the phylogenetic fuse (Mángano and Buatois 2014; see Chap. 3). Second, marine animal genera show minor diversity fluctuations during the middle to late Cambrian, but ichnodiversity reached a plateau that spanned from the middle Cambrian to the onset of the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event (Buatois et al. 2016a).

The ichnodiversity curve for marine trace fossils shows another, but more modest, increase in the Early Jurassic (8 %; 165 and 178 ichnogenera in the Late Triassic and Early Jurassic, respectively) and a more important one in the Late Cretaceous (19 %; 187 and 223 ichnogenera in the Early and Late Cretaceous, respectively) (Fig. 16.1). A more limited, but constant, increase took place between the Early Jurassic and Early Cretaceous. These changes in ichnodiversity are expressed by both bioerosion and bioturbation structures. This increase is undoubtedly a reflection of the Mesozoic Marine Revolution. Comparing ichnodiversity levels between the Late Triassic (164 ichnogenera) and the Late Cretaceous (223 ichnogenera) reveals a total 35 % ichnodiversity increase that is attributed to this evolutionary radiation. Ichnologic data indicate that the Early Jurassic experienced a change in ichnotaxonomic composition and the complexity of infaunal tiering, which is consistent with the timing of the Mesozoic Marine Revolution as revealed by our compilations (see Chap. 9).

Fig. 16.2 Ichnodisparity changes through geologic time. Compilation based on literature and personal data. Total number of categories of architectural designs is 79 (58 for bioturbation structures and 21 for bioerosion structures). Curves were constructed for ichnodisparity following the same environmental subdivision used for ichnodiversity. Curves plotted as "range-through" data, and therefore based on lower and upper appearances for each category of architectural design, extrapolating their presence through any intervening gap in the continuity of its record. Ichnodisparity was compiled following the approach of Buatois and Mángano (2013; see also Chap. 1) and categories of architectural designs summarized by Buatois et al. (2016b). Table 16.1 summarizes the different categories and the ichnogenera included. For further information, see caption of Fig. 16.1

Table 16.1 Categories of architectural designs and their ichnotaxa in alphabetical order (after Buatois et al. 2016b)

Architectural designs	Ichnogenera
1-Simple horizontal trails	*Archaeonassa, Circulichnis, Cochlichnus, Gordia, Helminthoidichnites, Helminthopsis, Herpystezoum, Mermia, Talitrichnus*
2-Trilobate flattened trails	*Curvolithus, Trisulcus*
3-Chevronate trails	*Protovirgularia, Rhadhostium*
4-Trails with undulating transverse bars and furrows	*Climactichnites, Steinsfjordichnus*
5-Bilobate trails and paired grooves	*Carpatichnis, Cruziana, Davichnia, Didymaulichnus, Diplopodichnus, Taphrhelminthoides, Tumblagoodichnus*
6-Trackways and scratch imprints	*Acanthichnus, Acripes, Allocotichnus, Angulichnus, Arachnomorphichnus, Arcichnus, Asaphoidichnus, Biformites, Bifurcatichnus, Bifurculapes, Climacodichnus, Coenobichnus, Conopsoides, Copeza, Danstairia, Dendroidichnites, Dimorphichnus, Diplichnites, Etterwindichnus, Euproopichnus, Foersterichnus, Glasbachichnium, Glaciichnium, Hamipes, Harpepus, Harpichnus, Heftebergichnus, Heteropodichnus, Heterotripodichnus, Hexapodichnus, Homopodichnus, Irichnus, Ixalichnus, Kalnaichnus, Keircalia, Kivanichnus, Konbergichnium, Kouphichnium, Lineatichnus, Lithographus, Lusatichnium, Maculichna, Megapodichnus, Merostomichnites, Mirandaichnium, Mitchellichnus, Monomorphichnus, Multipodichnus, Octopodichnus, Oklahomaichnus, Oniscoidichnus, Orchesteropus, Paleohelcura, Palmichnium, Parahamipes, Pentapodichnus, Petalichnus, Pirandikus, Protichnites, Pterichnus, Punctichnium, Siskemia, Stiallia, Stiaria, Striatichnium, Tambia, Tarichnus, Tarsichnus, Taslerella, Tasmanadia, Telsonichnus, Teratichnus, Terricolichnus, Tortilichnus, Trachomatichnus, Umfolozia, Vadichnites, Warvichnium*
7-Bilaterally symmetrical short, scratched imprints	*Avolatichnium, Arborichnus, Chagrinichnites, Cheliceratichnus, Gluckstadella, Huilmuichnus, Kingella, Orbiculichnus, Pollichianum, Ramosichnus, Rotterodichnium, Solusichnium, Surculichnus, Tonganoxichnus, Tripartichnus*

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

8-Bilaterally symmetrical short, scratched impressions and burrows	*Aglaspidichnus, Alph, Cardioichnus, Cheiichnus, Craticulichnum, Crescentichnus, Faciemichnus, Limulicubichnus, Raaschichnus, Rusophycus, Selenichnites, Svalbardichnus*
9-Fan-shaped to radiating scratched imprints	*Kimberichnus, Radichnus*
10-Passively filled horizontal burrows	*Didymaulyponomos, Palaeophycus*
11-Simple actively filled (massive) horizontal to oblique structures	*Furculosus, Macaronichnus, Nenoxites, Planolites, Sericichnus, Torrowangea,*
12-Simple actively filled (meniscate) horizontal to oblique structures	*Ancorichnus, Beaconites, Compaginatichnus, Entradichnus, Imponoglyphus, Jamesonichnites, Scoyenia, Squamichnus, Taenidium*
13-Simple, actively filled (pelletoidal) horizontal burrows	*Alcyonidiopsis, Castrichnus, Edaphichnium, Quebecichnus, Sphaerapus, Tubotomaculum, Tubularina*
14-Complex actively filled horizontal structures	*Bichordites, Bolonia, Nereites, Paramargaritichnus, Parataenidium, Psammichnites, Rutichnus, Scolecocoprus, Scolicia, Tylichnus*
15-Armored burrows	*Crininicaminus, Diopatrichnus, Ereipichnus, Ichnospongiella, Lepidenteron, Nummipera*
16-Horizontal branching burrow systems	*Agrichnium, Arachnostega, Korymbichnus, Labyrintichnus, Multina, Paracanthorhaphe, Pilichnus, Saportia, Shanwangichnus, Taotieichnus, Vagorichnus, Virgaichnus*
17-Horizontal burrows with horizontal to vertical branches	*Arthrophycus, Caugichnus, Ctenopholeus, Intexalvichnus, Microspherichnus, Phycodes, Phymatoderma, Polykampton, Saerichnites, Streptichnus, Treptichnus, Tuberculichnus, Vitichnus*
18-Surface-coverage branching burrows	*Oldhamia*
19-Radial to rosetted structures	*Arenituba, Asterichnites, Asterichnus, Bifasciculus, Capodistria, Cladichnus, Clematischnia, Cycloichnus, Dactyloidites, Dactylophycus, Guanshanichnus, Gyrophyllites, Haentzschelinia, Hartsellea, Heliochone, Monocraterion, Parahaentzschelinia, Phoebichnus, Radiichnus, Rotamedusa, Scotolithus, Sphaerichnus, Stelloglyphus, Taxichnites, Volkichnium*
20-Sheaf burrow of thickly lined tubes	*Bornichnus, Schaubcylindrichnus*
21-Horizontal burrows with serial chambers	*Halimedides, Omanichnus, Sidichnus, Solanichnium, Strobilorhaphe*
22-Horizontal burrows with simple vertically oriented spreiten	*Halopoa, Teichichnus, Trichophycus*
23-Horizontal spiral burrows	*Multilaqueichnus, Pramollichnus, Spiralites, Spirodesmos, Spirophycus*
24-Horizontal helicoidal burrows	*Augerinoichnus, Avetoichnus, Helicodromites*

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

25-Burrows with complex vertically oriented spreiten	*Caridolites, Daedalus, Dictyodora, Euflabella, Gyrochorte, Heimdallia, Paradictyodora, Stellavelum, Syringomorpha, Tursia*
26-Burrows with horizontal spreiten	*Criophycus, Falcichnites, Fuersichnus, Hydrancylus, Lamellaeichnus, Lobichnus, Lophoctenium, Multilamella, Phycosiphon, Rhizocorallium*
27-Burrows with helicoidal spreiten	*Echinospira, Spirophyton, Zoophycos*
28-Basal axial tubes with feather-like and spreite-like structures	*Hillichnus*
29-Mound-shaped structures	*Amanitichnus, Chomatichnus, Trusheimichnus*
30-Isolated and serial oval to almond-shaped burrows	*Calceoformites, Lockeia, Oravaichnium, Ptychoplasma*
31-Pentameral-shaped imprints and burrows	*Asteriacites, Pentichnus*
32-Oval-shaped imprints	*Astacimorphichnus, Corpusculichnus, Epibaion, Ichnocumulus, Musculopodus*
33-Dumbbell- and arrow-shaped burrows	*Arthraria, Bifungites, Monofungites*
34-Vertical plug-shaped burrows	*Amphorichnus, Astropolichnus, Bergaueria, Conichnus, Conostichus, Lithoplaision, Mammillichnis, Metaichna, Solicyclus*
35-Vertical unbranched burrows	*Altichnus, Bathichnus, Caletichnus, Cylindricum, Digitichnus, Felderichnus, Funalichnus, Guerraichnus, Laevicyclus, Lingulichnus, Lunatubichnus, Oikobesalon, Pustulichnus, Scalichnus, Siphonichnus, Skolithos*
36-Vertical single U- and Y-shaped burrows	*Arenicolites, Balanoglossites, Catenichnus, Diplocraterion, Glyphichnus, Liholites, Loloichnus, Paratisoa, Parmaichnus, Pholeus, Polarichnus, Psilonichnus, Solemyatuba, Tisoa*
37-Vertical multiple U- and Y-shaped burrows	*Kauriichnus, Lanicoidichna, Polykladichnus*
38-Vertical simple J-shaped burrows	*Artichnus, Keilorites, Naviculichnium*
39-Burrows with vertical tubes and stacked discs	*Tasselia*
40-Vertical helicoidal burrows	*Gyrolithes, Lapispira*
41-Burrows with shaft or bunch with downwards radiating probes	*Chondrites, Fascifodina, Lennea, Pragichnus, Saronichnus, Skolichnus, Trichichnus*
42-Vertical concentrically filled burrows	*Cylindrichnus, Rosselia*
43-Horizontal, branched concentrically filled burrows	*Asterosoma, Patagonichnus*
44-Spiral graphoglyptids	*Spirorhaphe*
45-Guided meandering graphoglyptids	*Cosmorhaphe, Helminthorhaphe, Spirocosmorhaphe*
46-Uniramous meandering graphoglyptids	*Belocosmorhaphe, Belorhaphe, Dendrotichnium, Helicolithus, Helicorhaphe, Punctorhaphe, Ubinia, Urohelminthoida*

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

47-Radial graphoglyptids	*Arabesca, Chondrorhaphe, Dendrorhaphe, Estrellichnus, Fascisichnium, Glockerichnus, Lorenzinia, Persichnus, Tuapseichnium, Yakutatia*
48-Biramous meandering graphoglyptids	*Desmograpton, Oscillorhaphe, Paleomeandron*
49-Regular to irregular network graphoglyptids	*Acanthorhaphe, Megagrapton, Paleodictyon, Protopaleodictyon*
50-Maze and boxwork burrows	*Ardelia, Ophiomorpha, Sinusichnus, Spongeliomorpha, Thalassinoides*
51-Vertical to oblique simple ornamented burrows	*Capayanichnus, Liticuniculatus, Lunulichnus, Spirographites*
52-Simple to complex burrows with terminal chambers	*Camborygma, Egbellichnus, Katbergia, Macanopsis, Platicytes*
53-Chambers surrounded by burrows	*Maiakarichnus, Dagnichnus*
54-Isolated, clustered or interconnected cells	*Cellicalichnus, Celliforma, Corimbatichnus, Elipsoideichnus, Palmiraichnus, Rosellichnus, Uruguay*
55-Chambers with discrete thick linings	*Chubutolithes, Coprinisphaera, Eatonichnus, Feoichnus, Monesichnus, Quirogaichnus, Rebuffoichnus, Teisseirei*
56-Excavated chambers with thin linings undetachable from rock matrix	*Fictovichnus, Pallichnus, Scaphichnium*
57-Interconnected chambers and boxworks	*Attaichnus, Barberichnus, Coatonichnus, Daimoniobarax, Fleaglellius, Krausichnus, Masrichnus, Microfavichnus, Parowanichnus, Socialites, Syntermesichnus, Tacuruichnus, Termitichnus, Vondrichnus*
58-Holes, pits and galleries in walls and fillings	*Lazaichnus, Tombownichnus*
59-Cylindrical vertical to oblique borings	*Carporichnus, Flagrichnus, Linkichnus, Pecinolites, Stipitichnus, Trypanites, Tubulohyalichnus*
60-Borings with elliptical to sub-rectangular cross sections	*Osprioneides, Xylonichnus*
61-Winding borings	*Lapispecus, Maeandropolydora*
62-U-shaped borings	*Canaliparva, Caulostrepsis, Diorygma, Pseudopolydorites, Sertaterebrites*
63- Circular holes and pit-shaped borings	*Circolites, Curvichnus, Dipatulichnus, Lamniporichnus, Oichnus, Planavolites, Polydorichnus, Stellatichnus, Tremichnus*
64-Globular to spherical borings	*Granulohyalichnus, Planobola*
65-Pouch borings	*Asthenopodichnium, Aurimorpha, Bascomella, Cuenulites, Cubiculum, Petroxestes, Rogerella, Umbichnus*
66-Clavate-shaped borings	*Cavernula, Cylindricavus, Gastrochaenolites, Palaeosabella, Phrixichnus, Ramosulcichnus, Sanctum, Teredolites, Xylokrypta*

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

67-Fracture-shaped bioerosion traces	*Belichnus, Bicrescomanducator, Caedichnus, Mandibulichnus*
68-Branched tubular borings	*Calciroda, Clionoides, Cunctichnus, Dekosichnus, Ichnoreticulina, Paleobuprestis, Paleoipidus, Paleoscolytus, Runia, Scolecia, Talpina*
69-Non-camerate network borings	*Anobichnium, Filuroda, Orthogonum, Rodocanalis*
70-Camerate network borings	*Feldmannia, Haimeina, Ichnogutta, Iramena, Pennatichnus, Pinaceocladichnus, Rhopalia, Saccomorpha*
71-Non-camerate boxwork borings	*Chaetophorites, Cycalichnus, Eurygonum*
72-Camerate boxwork borings	*Entobia, Unellichnus*
73-Spiral borings	*Helicotaphrichnus, Spirichnus*
74-Radial borings	*Fascichnus, Polyactina*
75-Dendritic and rosetted borings	*Abeliella, Calcideletrix, Clionolithes, Dendrina, Dictyoporus, Megascolytinus, Nododendrina, Pyrodendrina, Scolytolarvariumichnus*
76-Single circular to tear-shaped attachment bioerosion traces	*Anellusichnus, Centrichnus, Kardopomorphos, Lacrimichnus, Ophthalmichnus*
77-Multiple attachment bioerosion traces	*Finichnus, Flosculichnus, Podichnus*
78-Elongate or branched attachment bioerosion traces	*Camarichnus, Canalichnus, Renichnus, Stellichnus, Sulcichnus*
79-Groove bioerosion traces	*Ericichnus, Gnathichnus, Osteocallis, Radulichnus*

Analysis of ichnodiversity changes from the Ediacaran to the Holocene supports the three-phase kinetic model of Sepkoski (1984) based on analysis of marine body fossils. According to this model, the three main evolutionary radiations in the marine biosphere display an early exponential growth followed by subsequent slowing of growth. In the case of the Cambrian and Ordovician radiations there was very rapid growth of diversity in their initial stages until a plateau was reached later, whereas diversity rose slowly during the onset of the Mesozoic Marine Revolution and continues to do so. Controversies regarding this model have essentially revolved around potential geologic and paleontologic biases, such as increased exposure of sedimentary rocks, uneven number of studies per interval, and increased ease of fossil extraction (Raup 1976; Peters and Foote 2001; Alroy et al. 2008; Alroy 2010). For our interest here, the most serious controversy is the one on the diversity levels attained in the post-Paleozoic world. It has been argued that standardized curves show a final diversity only slightly higher than the Paleozoic maximum (e.g., Alroy et al. 2008; Alroy 2010, 2014) in sharp contrast with the much higher diversity levels shown by Sepkoski's curves (see also Bambach et al. 2004). However, new standardized curves show that Cenozoic diversity doubles Paleozoic values, supporting sustained marine diversification during the Mesozoic–Cenozoic (Bush and Bambach 2015), a pattern more consistent with the original Sepkoski's curves.

In particular, one of the potential biases affecting estimation of post-Paleozoic diversity levels is the so-called Pull of the Recent (Raup 1979). This effect operates in two ways. First, there is an increase in the volume of Cenozoic (and to a lesser extent Mesozoic) outcrops. Second, because the modern is much better sampled that the rest of the fossil record, taxa that occur in just one stratigraphic interval and have a modern representative will be plotted as occurring through the whole interval, resulting in an inflation of diversity levels in post-Paleozoic strata. Interestingly, the trace-fossil record is not biased in the same way. Certainly, neoichnologic studies are instrumental in recognizing some biogenic structures in the modern, helping to extend the stratigraphic range of some ichnotaxa. However, at the same time, modern counterparts of some trace fossils are lacking not because these behaviors have gone extinct, but because identification of modern traces is typically much more difficult than with fossil material, particularly in the case of bioturbation structures (Bromley 1996; Buatois and Mángano 2011a). Trace fossils tend to be enhanced by diagenetic processes that assist in their recognition (Magwood 1992) and many biogenic structures are cumulative structures, which consist of both abandoned and active components (Bromley and Frey 1974); casts of modern representatives of cumulative structures would only reflect the morphology of the open components occupied by the producer, resulting in a simpler morphology than the actual overall architecture, making identification of the ichnotaxon virtually impossible (Frey 1975; Frey and Seilacher 1980; Magwood 1992). The practical result of this would be an artificial drop in ichnodiversity in the modern. This more complex pattern exhibited by the trace-fossil record is referred herein as the Push and Pull of the Recent. To avoid this problem, we have plotted in the final curves together the Holocene and the modern.

Similar to Sepkoski's curves, ichnologic data show a phase of exponential growth in ichnodiversity followed by an equilibrium stage during the Cambrian Explosion and the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event. Identical to body fossils, the Mesozoic Marine Revolution is associated with a slower increase in ichnodiversity. The overall coincidence between Sepkoski's curves and those presented in this chapter indicates similar diversity trajectories for animal diversity and their behaviors. However, in the case of post-Paleozoic faunas, whereas the curve for marine animals does not show any evidence of a plateau, ichnologic information seems to suggest that a plateau may have been reached for both marine bioturbation and bioerosion.

In contrast, trends in ichnodisparity reveal a more complicated picture (Fig. 16.2). Whereas the Cambrian Explosion is associated with an increase in both ichnodisparity and ichnodiversity (Mángano and Buatois 2014; see Chap. 3), the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event and the Mesozoic Marine Revolution display different trends. A 263 % increase in ichnodisparity took place during the Terraneuvian as a result of the Cambrian Explosion (8 and 29 categories of architectural designs in the Ediacaran and Terraneuvian, respectively), but only a 45 % is associated with the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event (38 categories of architectural design in the Furongian and 55 by the Late Ordovician). In addition, if bioturbation and bioerosion structures are considered separately, it is clear that bioerosion is responsible for the overall increase (17 % increase in ichnodisparity for bioturbation structures and 367 % for bioerosion structures). Whereas the Cambrian Explosion was the main event in the Phanerozoic for large-scale innovations in animal-sediment interactions, it is the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event that played this role regarding bioerosion (Buatois et al. 2016a). If bioturbation structures are considered separately for shallow- and deep-marine environments, it is apparent that ichnodisparity in shallow-marine settings remained very close to Cambrian levels, whereas an increase took place in the deep sea (88 %; 17 categories of architectural design in the Furongian and 32 by the Late Ordovician). In the same fashion that broad innovations in bioerosion lagged behind those in bioturbation, the establishment of the main types of animal-sediment interactions in the deep sea took place later than in shallow-marine settings, as originally envisaged in models of deep-sea colonization (e.g., Uchman 2004). Because approximately half of the architectural categories that typify Ordovician deep-sea ichnofaunas first occurred in shallow-marine settings during the Cambrian, the overall impact of Ordovician deep-sea categories in global marine ichnodisparity levels is limited (Buatois et al. 2016a).

In turn, although an increase in ichnodisparity is apparent as a result of the Mesozoic Marine Revolution, distinguishing between bioturbation and bioerosion structures shows that the increase is restricted to the latter (19 % increase between the Late Triassic and the Late Cretaceous). Ichnodisparity of bioturbation structures in both shallow- and deep-marine settings does not display any significant increase in connection to the Mesozoic Marine Revolution.

A main conclusion of our analysis of secular changes in ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity during the Cambrian Explosion, the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event and the Mesozoic Marine Revolution is that, although increases in ichnodiversity are invariably linked to evolutionary radiations, these are necessary but not sufficient conditions for ichnodisparity increases. In order to further explore the links between ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity and the possible underlying causes for increases in the latter, it is now useful to analyze the results of our compilations regarding continental environments.

Ichnodiversity compilations for continental environments show a more protracted process of colonization through the whole Phanerozoic as revealed by bioturbation structures (Fig. 16.1). Although the process of invasion of the continents seems to have been slow and gradual, an initial rapid increase took place by the Silurian-Devonian transition (see Chap. 6), with an impressive 967 % increase in ichnodiversity between the Wenlock and the Early Devonian (3 and 32 ichnogenera in the Wenlock and Early Devonian, respectively). As in the case of the Cambrian Explosion, this rapid diversification in continental settings is consistent with Sepkoski's (1978) exponential model for early diversification. Subsequent to that increase a plateau until the Early Mississippian is apparent. However, this may be in part simply an artifact due to the scarcity of continental outcrops of Late Devonian age (see Chap. 6). Subsequently, a slow but constant increase in ichnodiversity took place until the early Permian (Cisuralian), which displays an unusual peak (65 %, 91 ichnogenera). This peak has been noted in earlier studies and deemed controversial (Buatois et al. 1998).

It reflects the presence of a wide variety of arthropod trackways in overbank deposits, which at least in part results from a marked tendency towards oversplitting in trackway taxonomy. In particular, many arthropod are only known from the Permian of Germany (e.g., Holub and Kozur 1981; Walter 1983); many of these are considered doubtful (see Chap. 6). After a plateau that lasted the whole Triassic, another more modest peak is apparent in the Early Jurassic. This is, at least in part, a monographic effect (Raup 1976) resulting from the high number of new arthropod trackway genera introduced by Hitchcock (1858, 1865) based on his analysis of continental trace fossils from the Connecticut Valley. Many of these have never been recorded elsewhere and are now regarded as doubtful (Rainforth 2005), so they have been omitted in our compilation. However, even leaving aside these doubtful ichnotaxa and only retaining those regarded as valid, the Early Jurassic ichnodiversity peak still persists (21 %; 61 and 74 ichnogenera in the Late Triassic and Early Jurassic, respectively). Since the Middle Jurassic onwards, ichnodiversity experienced a relatively constant increase.

Bioerosion in continental environments experienced a much later development than bioturbation. Although wood borings were mentioned for the early Permian (von Kušta 1880), the earliest convincing evidence of bioerosion in continental environments is from the Late Triassic, with the recording of six ichnotaxa representing wood bioerosion (Tapanila and Roberts 2012). Notably, this record predates the earliest record of marine bioerosion in wood, which is Early Jurassic (Villegas-Martín et al. 2012). In turn, the earliest record of bioerosion in bone is from the Early Jurassic (undetermined ichnotaxon), with the ichnogenus *Cubiculum* being recorded for the first time in the Late Jurassic (Xing et al. 2015). This was followed by a plateau until the Late Cretaceous with the addition of ten new ichnogenera. Since then, ichnodiversity of bioerosion structures reached a plateau that continues until the Holocene.

After the initial rapid increase in ichnodiversity of bioturbation structures by the Silurian-Devonian transition, colonization of freshwater settings was apparently quite gradual. It has been suggested that this slow pace may have resulted from the need to develop innovative styles of reproduction and dispersal, as well as complex osmoregulatory systems (Miller and Labandeira 2002). The fact that no plateau indicating an equilibrium stage in diversification is apparent for bioturbation structures may suggest that the invasion of terrestrial environments is a still ongoing process. This is consistent with the fact that the utilization of freshwater infaunal ecospace seems to have been less complete than in their marine counterparts (Miller and Labandeira 2002). Continental bioerosion ichnogenera seem to have reached a plateau by the end of the Mesozoic, but their ichnotaxonomy is still in its infancy and it is not unexpected that this trend will change with further studies.

As with ichnodiversity, ichnodisparity in continental environments reflects the process of protracted colonization (Fig. 16.2). Ichnodisparity curves of bioturbation structures reveal a rapid increase with the onset of widespread colonization by the Silurian-Devonian transition (see Chap. 6), with a 267 % increase in ichnodisparity between the Wenlock and the Early Devonian (3 and 11 categories of architectural designs in the Wenlock and Early Devonian, respectively). This was followed by a very slow increase until the Late Cretaceous that records a hike (29 %; 28 categories of architectural design in the Early Cretaceous and 36 in the Late Cretaceous), albeit limited, reaching ichnodisparity levels that persist until the Recent. The Late Cretaceous ichnodisparity peak is also expressed by bioerosion structures. However, it should be noted that all categories of architectural designs in freshwater subaqueous environments and transitional terrestrial to subaqueous settings originated in marine environments and only subsequently occurred in continental settings. In contrast, there are six categories that are exclusive of terrestrial settings (see Chap. 11). In other words, the main innovations required to invade freshwater were already present in the marine realm, but the only true behavioral innovations in continental environments were those required to colonize subaerially exposed settings. These are mostly the architectural designs developed by insects nesting in paleosols (see Chap. 13).

To summarize, our analysis shows that the key factor in building up ichnodisparity is not the existence of an evolutionary radiation *per se*, but the colonization of empty ecospace. The Cambrian Explosion records the colonization of empty ecospace and, therefore, displayed an increase in both ichnodisparity and ichnodiversity. A similar situation is expressed by bioerosion during the Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event in connection with the colonization of hard substrates. A third increase in ichnodisparity is revealed by the colonization of paleosols which experienced dramatic evolutionary innovations by the end of the Mesozoic. Finally, the cradle of evolutionary innovations is in shallow-marine settings (see Sect. 16.5). This is revealed by the appearance in shallow seas of all the architectural designs that subsequently expanded into freshwater and a substantial number of those that later bloomed in the deep sea. In almost all these cases, the ichnodisparity increase is followed by a subsequent further increase in ichnodiversity, as it is illustrated, by the diversification of insect nesting structures during the Cenozoic, following the establishment of the basic architectural designs in the Late Cretaceous. This pattern supports analysis based on body fossils that indicates a "first disparity, then diversity" scenario (Foote 1993, 1997; Erwin 2007; see Chap. 6).

Finally, the limitations of ichnodiversity analysis to unravel evolutionary trends need to be addressed (see Buatois and Mángano 2013 for a detailed analysis). As stated many times, the fact that ichnodiversity cannot be equated with the actual diversity of organisms represents a cautionary note (Ekdale 1985). Behavioral convergence resulting in different organisms being able to produce the same ichnotaxon may mask evolutionary trends. The opposite case, the one of several ichnotaxa resulting from the work of a single producer, also undoubtedly introduced a bias in ichnodiversity analysis through geologic time. Because of this, the different chapters exploring the ichnologic blueprints of evolutionary radiations use a plurality of conceptual and methodological tools rather than being restricted to an analysis of the number of ichnogenera or architectural designs. For example, it is clear that burrows produced by decapod crustaceans represent one of the most, if not the most, archetypal biogenic structures of the Mesozoic Marine Revolution. However, because some of its most characteristic structures, namely burrow systems included in *Thalassinoides*, are produced not only by decapod crustaceans, but by other organisms with a stratigraphic range that extends well before the Mesozoic, the importance of crustacean burrows remains undetected if only ichnodiversity is considered. In other words, the long stratigraphic range of *Thalassinoides* is misleading with respect to its key role during the Mesozoic Marine Revolution. A clearer picture emerges when, for example, abundance is considered as well (Carmona et al. 2004; see Chap. 9).

Also, in part as a result of behavioral convergence, ichnogeneric extinction rates are remarkably low. It has been noted that increases in diversity within clades may be produced from a drop in extinction rate rather that diversification *per se*, resulting in the so-called “pseudoradiations” (Simões et al. 2016). In the case of trace-fossil data, extinction rates can be regarded not only as low but also as constant, the latter at least since the Ordovician. Because of the impossibility of equating biological diversity and ichnodiversity, the trace-fossil expression of evolutionary radiations is not primarily of a phylogenetic nature, but rather reflects behavioral innovations.

Other problems are evident while dealing with ichnodiversity changes in specific environments through the Phanerozoic. Because there is a trend to increased infaunalization through time, the colonization of deeper tiers is conducive to obliteration of the more shallowly emplaced structures, which in many cases represent a substantial contribution to ichnodiversity. As a result, a decrease in ichnodiversity through time rather than an increase, has been noted in the case of tidal flats (Mángano et al. 2002; Mángano and Buatois 2015) and lakes (see Chap. 11). These cases underscore the importance of careful evaluation of taphonomic overprints.

Also, using ichnodiversity at ichnogeneric level may preclude detection of other patterns. Ichnospecies reflect minor behavioral variations and, therefore, they may help to detect more subtle trends in behavioral innovations (see Chap. 3). A large number of ichnogenera that have their first occurrence early in the Paleozoic seem to have displayed an increase in the number of ichnospecies through the Phanerozoic (see Chaps. 3 and 9). Exploring patterns of ichnospecies distribution through time is a promising line of research, although this would imply in-depth critical reevaluation of trace-fossil taxonomy at this rank, something beyond the scope of the present study.

Regardless of potential shortcomings, our review indicates that ichnologic information (including both ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity) is highly useful as an independent line of evidence to understand paleobiologic trends through geologic time.

16.3 Benthic Fauna Response to Mass Extinctions

Ichnologic information typically reveals a set of common responses to the three mass extinctions analyzed in this book, the end-Permian (see Chap. 7), the end-Triassic (see Chap. 8), and the end-Cretaceous (see Chap. 12). Most of these extinction events are characterized by a reduction in ichnodiversity, decrease in degree of bioturbation, reduction of bioturbation depth, size reduction, dominance of simple trace fossils in post-extinction strata, preferential survival of ichnotaxa produced by deposit feeders, and selective extinction in shallow-marine ecosystems. How pronounced were these effects seems to depend on the severity of the mass extinction event, with the end-Permian mass extinction clearly showing the most severe impact from an ichnologic standpoint, showing consistency with body-fossil data. In turn, this is reflected in the pattern of recovery after the extinction, with longer recovery times involved in the end-Permian mass extinction in comparison with the end-Cretaceous event. Ichnologic information on the other two major events, the end-Ordovician and late Devonian extinctions is patchy, with only a few studies available (McCann 1990; Herringshaw and Davies 2008; Buatois et al. 2013) and, therefore, any generalization remains premature.

Although these extinctions are associated to a decrease in ichnodiversity, actual extinction of invertebrate ichnotaxa is quite rare. On the contrary, ichnotaxa that disappeared after the mass extinctions for the most part reappeared during the recovery time, representing Lazarus ichnotaxa (Gibert 2003). As noted previously, trace-fossil extinction rates tend to be very low, a fact that, at least in the case of relatively simple behaviors, results from behavioral convergence. Some ichnotaxa (e.g., the undermat miner *Oldhamia*, the large trail *Climactichnites*), however, seem to reflect behaviors that have apparently disappeared by the end of the Cambrian, together with their producers.

Because the curves illustrated in Figs. 16.1 and 16.2 have been compiled as range through data, they are of limited use to detect changes in ichnodiversity as a result of mass extinctions. For example, whereas a significant drop in ichnodiversity is associated with the end-Permian mass extinction (see Chap. 7), this is not reflected by the ichnodiversity curves. Similarly, the end-Triassic mass extinction resulted in a decrease in ichnodiversity, albeit more modest (see Chap. 8), which is not recorded in our ichnodiversity curves. The absence of an ichnodiversity drop in these curves is simply an artifact resulting from the methodology employed in their construction. It is therefore surprising that a 7 % decrease in total marine ichnodiversity (5 % for bioturbation structures and 15 % for bioerosion structures) is revealed by these curves in connection with the end-Cretaceous mass extinction. The Late Cretaceous peak and subsequent drop in ichnodiversity are also present in the curves that were plotted eliminating the occurrence of singletons.

Decrease in the degree of bioturbation has been noted in connection with many mass extinction events. Although comparative analysis of mass extinctions from a trace-fossil perspective are still in their infancy, available information seems to suggest that the extent of this decrease in intensity of bioturbation tends to reflect how profound was the impact of the event. This is illustrated by the end-Permian mass extinction, which shows a collapse of the mixed layer (see Chap. 7 and Sect. 16.4; Buatois and Mángano 2011b; Hofmann et al. 2015). A similar situation has not been recorded so far associated with any of the other mass extinction events. In fact, intense bioturbation has been noted in Danian post-extinction deposits (see Chap. 12).

Reduction in the size of trace fossils has been detected in connection with many mass extinction events, most notably the end-Permian (see Chap. 7) and end-Triassic (see Chap. 8). In other cases, such as the end-Cretaceous, this trend is not apparent (see Chap. 12, although see Wiest et al. 2015 for documentation of trace-fossil size reduction in the aftermath of the end-Cretaceous mass extinction). The so-called Lilliput effect has been noted in the paleobiologic literature to explain the sharp decrease in body size, based on both the body fossil and trace-fossil records, in the aftermath of mass extinctions (Urbanek 1993; Twitchett 2007). Explanations for this size reduction are still unclear, with both externalist and internalist causes being involved. Limited oxygen and food have been invoked as likely candidates for the former (Twitchett 2007), whereas survival of small taxa; the dwarfing of larger lineages and the evolutionary miniaturization from larger ancestral stocks fall among the later (Harries and Knorr 2009).

Dominance of simple trace fossils is another typical feature in post-extinction strata. For example, simple trace fossils attributed to *Planolites* are the first in reappearing after the end-Permian mass extinction (see Chap. 7). Simple forms, such as *Planolites* and *Palaeophycus*, seem to be common in Lower Jurassic post-extinction deposits as well (see Chap. 8). The prevalence of these simple morphologies overall reflect very simple feeding behaviors, most likely reflecting opportunistic population strategies in the aftermath of mass extinctions (Fraiser and Bottjer 2009).

It has long been noted that organisms are differentially affected during extinctions according to trophic type (Jablonski and Raup 1995; Smith and Jeffrey 1998; Hansen et al. 2004; Twitchett 2006). In particular, suspension feeders tend to have been more affected than deposit feeders during mass extinctions. In this regard, it has been concluded that both selective deposit feeding and omnivory significantly enhance survivability during mass extinction events (Twitchett 2006). This is clearly illustrated by the overwhelming dominance of deposit-feeding traces in Danian post-extinction deposits (see Chap. 12). Also, post-extinction late Devonian ichnofaunas are dominated by structures produced by selective deposit feeders, whereas suspension-feeding burrows are absent (Buatois et al. 2013).

Ichnofaunas from shallow-marine environments tend to be more strongly affected than those in marginal-marine and deep-marine settings. Marginal-marine, brackish-water faunas typically consist of opportunistic animals that flourish under extreme conditions. Therefore, they are able to rapidly colonize environments after a major disturbance, such as mass extinctions. Of the five colonization phases recognized for brackish-water settings by Buatois et al. (2005), only the end of the first (Ediacaran–Ordovician) and the third (Permian–Triassic) coincide with mass extinctions (the Late Ordovician and Late Triassic mass extinctions, respectively). The remaining three of the "Big Five", the late Devonian, end-Permian, and end-Cretaceous mass extinctions, does not show any impact in marginal-marine biotas. In the same vein, ichnofaunas from deep-water settings do not seem to have been strongly affected by mass extinctions (Uchman 2004). No major crisis has been associated with any of the "Big Five" in the deep sea, other than a reduction in the diversity and abundance of graphoglyptids in the case of the end-Ordovician and end-Cretaceous mass extinctions (Uchman 2003).

16.4 Patterns of Ecospace Colonization

Having established that there are some recurrent ichnologic patterns involving evolutionary radiations and mass extinctions, we may now explore if recurrent motifs can be established in connection with colonization of empty or underutilized ecospace. In other words, is it possible to detect trace-fossil assemblages that recur through geologic time not as a response to environmental constrains (as is the case of ichnofacies), but driven by large-scale evolutionary controls instead? We have attempted to address this question in a previous paper, referring to this particular recurrence of ichnoassemblages revealing common strategies in ecospace colonization as "the Déjà vu effect" (Buatois and Mángano 2011b). In this chapter, we argue that three main types of trace-fossil assemblages can be recognized in connection with exploitation of empty or underutilized ecospace.

The first of these assemblages consists of very small grazing trails (e.g., *Helminthopsis*, *Helminthoidichnites*, *Gordia*) produced by epifaunal or very shallow infaunal vermiform animals, very shallow-tier feeding structures (e.g., *Treptichnus*, *Oldhamia*, *Pilichnus*) of infaunal vermiform organisms, and (in some cases) trackways (e.g., *Diplichnites*, *Stiaria*) of epifaunal arthropods (Buatois and Mángano 2011b). Almost invariably trace fossils occur in association with structures suggestive of microbial stabilization, such as wrinkle marks, palimpsest ripples, and old elephant skin (Noffke 2010; Buatois and Mángano 2012a). The associated primary sedimentary fabric and bedding-plane physical sedimentary structures are superbly preserved (e.g., Buatois et al. 1997). Ichnofaunas reveal superficial and shallow-tier grazing and mining of microbial mats in the absence of substantial infaunal bioturbation. The presence of microbial mats allows preservation of minute trace fossils, displaying delicate fine morphologic features (Buatois and Mángano 2011b). These trace-fossil assemblages occur across a wide range of environmental settings, such as Ediacaran-lower Cambrian shallow-marine (e.g., Gehling 1999; Buatois et al. 2014), Cambrian deep-marine (e.g., Buatois and Mángano 2003), and late Paleozoic continental to fluvio-estuarine (Buatois et al. 1997; Mángano et al. 1997) settings, invariably in connection with empty or underutilized ecospace.

The second assemblage is characterized by shallow-tier burrows (*Spongeliomorpha*, *Halopoa*), trails (*Cruziana*), and resting traces (*Rusophycus*) with well-developed ornamentation, typically bioglyphs. Very shallow-tier burrows and trackways may be present as well. The occurrence of well-preserved bioglyphs and the sharp burrow boundaries suggest emplacement in sediment that was firm at or close to the sea bottom. These trace-fossil assemblages are associated with widespread firm substrates and the virtual absence of a mixed layer (Droser et al. 2004; Jensen et al. 2005; Buatois and Mángano 2011b; Mángano et al. 2013; Hofmann et al. 2015). This is illustrated by two apparently unrelated ichnofaunas: those in Cambrian–Ordovician and Lower Triassic shallow-marine environments. Both deposits are characterized by preferential preservation of epifaunal and very shallow-tier infaunal trace fossils; paucity of mid- and deep-tier trace fossils; absence of mottled bioturbation textures; and dominance of cohesive substrates in open-marine environments (Hofmann et al. 2015). In the case of lower Paleozoic strata, the mixed layer was still incipient and poorly developed (Droser et al. 2004; Jensen et al. 2005; Callow and Brasier 2009; Mángano et al. 2013), whereas in the Lower Triassic the mixed layer may have collapsed as a result of the end-Permian extinction (Buatois and Mángano 2011b; Hofmann et al. 2015; see Chap. 9). The ichnologic responses in both situations were essentially identical.

The third assemblage is characterized by the presence of horizontal branched burrow systems (e.g., *Multina*, *Vagorichnus*) at the base of event sandstone beds (Buatois and Mángano 2011b). These burrow systems are preserved along lithologic interfaces creating virtually no disturbance in the primary sedimentary fabric. *Multina* is common at the base of lower Paleozoic marine tempestites and turbidites, where it records post-event colonization (e.g., Buatois and Mángano 2004, 2012b; Buatois et al. 2009). *Vagorichnus* has been recorded at the base of Jurassic lacustrine turbidites (Buatois et al. 1995, 1996). Although these occurrences are from disparate environments and from rocks of different ages, they are all associated with an increase in burrowing depth reflecting initial exploitation of the infaunal ecospace (Buatois and Mángano 2011b). From an evolutionary standpoint, this incipient colonization of the infaunal ecospace preceded the onset of more intense bioturbation and the establishment of a well-developed mixed layer.

The recurrent presence of these three types of trace-fossil assemblages in rocks of different ages and formed under a wide variety of environmental settings can only be understood under the light of the evolutionary prism. These assemblages reveal a limited repertoire of behavioral strategies that allow benthic faunas to colonize empty or underutilized ecospace. Fossilization of these behavioral strategies in the form of biogenic structures is mediated by a set of preservational conditions resulting from the recurrent opening of a taphonomic window. This window was responsible for the preservation of surface and shallow-tier structures which typically are obliterated by deeper-tier and more intense bioturbation (Bromley 1996).

16.5 Environmental Shifts Through Time

A number of studies published for the most part in the eighties and nineties revealed that the fossil record can be characterized by a recurrent pattern of onshore origination of evolutionary innovations and their subsequent expansion to deeper water, resulting in the proposal of the so-called "onshore–offshore model" (e.g., Jablonski et al. 1983; Sepkoski and Miller 1985; Jablonski and Bottjer 1990; Sepkoski 1991; Sepkoski and Sheehan 1983). In fact, it has been argued that an onshore–offshore pattern is displayed by Sepkoski's evolutionary faunas themselves, as illustrated by the replacement of trilobite-rich communities by mollusk-rich communities in shallow-water niches throughout the Paleozoic (Sepkoski and Miller 1985).

The trace-fossil record provides further empirical support to this model across a broad range of scales. First, an onshore–offshore pattern is evident from individual ichnotaxa, showing either evidence of expansion or retreat. In the first case, an ichnogenus occurring for the first time in shallow water subsequently extends its environmental range into deeper-marine settings without loss of onshore representatives. In the second case, migration into deeper water occurs together with loss of onshore representatives (Bottjer et al. 1988; Stanley and Pickerill 1993). Examples of expansion include *Ophiomorpha* (Bottjer et al. 1988; Tchoumatchenco and Uchman 2001), *Scolicia* (Seilacher 1986) and *Rhizocorallium commune* (Knaust 2013). An example of retreat is *Zoophycos* (Bottjer et al. 1988).

Second, entire groups of trace fossils may display the onshore–offshore pattern. The best example is graphoglyptids, which in the early Cambrian occur in shallow water, but subsequently migrated to the deep sea (Crimes and Anderson 1985; Jensen and Mens 1999), where they became the core component of the *Nereites* Ichnofacies.

Third, the onshore–offshore pattern is also displayed by ichnofabrics. For example, it has been argued that in carbonate settings intense bioturbation first took place in shallow-water settings and only later seaward (Droser and Bottjer 1989). This pattern may reflect the fact that niche partitioning within the substrate first developed in shallow water and subsequently expanded into deeper water.

Fourth, and at a larger scale, the onshore–offshore pattern is displayed in connection with the colonization of empty or underutilized ecospace. This is shown by trace-fossil evidence of original colonization of shallow-marine settings and the progressive subsequent expansion into the deep sea, marginal-marine environments and continental settings. Also, this pattern is apparent within continental environments themselves, as demonstrated by the initial colonization of lake-margin settings and later expansion into subaqueous lacustrine settings (Buatois and Mangano 1993; Buatois et al. 1998; see Chaps. 5 and 6). This is certainly analogous to the migration of plants from upland areas to the lowlands during the Carboniferous-Permian transition (DiMichele and Aronson 1992) and the origination of aquatic insects in running water and subsequent expansion into lacustrine habitats (Wooton 1988).

16.6 Conclusions

Comparative analysis of the ichnologic record of major evolutionary events allows detecting recurrent patterns that may help to further increase our understanding of the underlying evolutionary dynamics of animal-substrate interactions through geologic time. In particular, we have detected recurrent patterns of organism-substrate interactions during evolutionary radiations, benthic fauna response to mass extinctions, strategies of ecospace colonization, and environmental shifts through time. Evolutionary radiations are invariably associated with an ichnodiversity increase, whereas increases in ichnodisparity are linked to the colonization of empty ecospace. Evaluation of mass extinction events suggests common responses from the perspective of animal-substrate interactions, namely a reduction in ichnodiversity, decrease in degree of bioturbation, reduction of bioturbation depth, size reduction, dominance of simple trace fossils in post-extinction strata, preferential survival of ichnotaxa produced by deposit feeders, and selective extinction in shallow-marine ecosystems. The recurrent presence of certain trace-fossil assemblages in rocks of different ages and formed under a wide variety of environmental settings seems to suggest a limited repertoire of behavioral strategies for colonization of empty or underutilized ecospace. The trace-fossil record provides further empirical support to the onshore–offshore model across a broad range of scales.

Acknowledgments We thank José Carlos Garcia Ramos, Jorge Genise, Verónica Krapovickas, Conrad Labandeira, Marisa Lopez-Cabrera, Radek Mikuláš, Nic Minter, Eduardo Olivero, Laura Piñuela, Cecilia Pirrone, Eric Roberts, Alfred Uchman, Mark Wilson, and Max Wisshak for generously providing highly useful advice and information at different stages of the compilation. Eduardo Olivero and Roy Plotnick reviewed the chapter providing highly useful feedback. Kai Zhou assisted us with plotting the information in tables and charts.

References

Alroy J (2010) The shifting balance of diversity among major marine animal groups. Science 329:1191–1194

Alroy J (2014) Accurate and precise estimates of origination and extinction rates. Paleobiology 40:374–397

Alroy J, Aberhan M, Bottjer DJ, Foote M, Fürsich FT, Harries PJ, Hendy AJW, Holland SM, Ivany LC, Kiessling W, Kosnik MA, Marshall CR, McGowan AJ, Miller AI, Olszewski TD, Patzkowsky ME, Peters SE, Villier L, Wagner PJ, Bonuso N, Borkow PS, Brenneis B, Clapham ME, Fall LM, Ferguson CA, Hanson VL, Krug AZ, Layou KM, Leckey EH, Nürnberg S, Powers CM, Sessa JA, Simpson C, Tomaovch A, Visaggi CC (2008) Phanerozoic trends in the global diversity of marine invertebrates. Science 321:97–100

Bambach RK, Knoll AH, Wang SC (2004) Origination, extinction, and mass depletions of marine diversity. Paleobiology 30:522–542

Banerjee NR, Furnes H, Muehlenbachs K, Staudigel H, de Wit M (2006) Preservation of ~3.4–3.5 Ga microbial biomarkers in pillow lavas and hyaloclastites from the Barberton Greenstone Belt, South Africa. Earth Planet Sci Lett 241:707–722

Banerjee NR, Simonetti A, Furnes H, Muehlenbachs K, Staudigel H, Heaman L, Van Kranendonk MJ (2007) Direct dating of Archean microbial ichnofossils. Geology 35:487–490

Bottjer DJ, Droser ML, Jablonski D (1988) Palaeoenvironmental trends in the history of trace fossils. Nature 333:252–255

Bromley RG (1996) Trace fossils: biology, taphonomy and applications. Chapman & Hall, London

Bromley RG, Frey RW (1974) Redescription of the trace fossil *Gyrolithes* and taxonomic evaluation of *Thalassinoides*, *Ophiomorpha* and *Spongeliomorpha*. Bull Geol Soc Den 23:311–335

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Wilson MA, Wisshak M (in review) Categories of architectural designs in trace fossils: a measure of ichnodisparity. Earth Sci Rev

Buatois LA, Mangano MG (1993) Ecospace utilization, paleoenvironmental trends and the evolution of early nonmarine biotas. Geology 21:595–598

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2003) Early colonization of the deep sea: ichnologic evidence of deep-marine benthic ecology from the Early Cambrian of northwest Argentina. Palaios 18:572–581

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2004) Terminal Proterozoic–Early Cambrian ecosystems: Ichnology of the Puncoviscana Formation, Northwest Argentina. In: Webby BD, Mángano MG, Buatois LA (eds) Trace Fossils in evolutionary palaeoecology. Fossils & Strata 51:1–16

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2011a) Ichnology: organism–substrate interactions in space and time. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2011b) The déjà vu effect: recurrent patterns in exploitation of ecospace, establishment of the mixed layer, and distribution of matgrounds. Geology 39:1163–1166

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2012a) The trace-fossil record of organism-matground interactions in space and time. In: Noffke N, Chafetz H (eds) Microbial mats in siliciclastic depositional systems through time, vol 101. SEPM Spec Publ, Tulsa

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2012b) An early Cambrian shallow-marine ichnofauna from the Puncoviscana Formation of northwest Argentina: the interplay between sophisticated feeding behaviors, matgrounds and sea-level changes. J Paleontol 86:7–18

Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2013) Ichnodiversity and ichnodisparity: significance and caveats. Lethaia 46:281–292

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Wu X, Zhang G (1995) *Vagorichnus*, a new ichnogenus for feeding burrow systems and its occurrence as discrete and compound ichnotaxa in Jurassic lacuslrine turbidites of central China. Ichnos 3:265–272

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Wu X, Zhang G (1996) Trace fossils from Jurassic lacuslrine turbidites of the Anyao Formation (central China) and their environmental and evolutionary significance. Ichnos 4:287–303

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Maples CG, Lanier WP (1997) The paradox of nonmarine ichnofaunas in tidal rhythmites: integrating sedimentologic and ichnologic data from the Late Carboniferous of eastern Kansas, USA. Palaios 12:467–481

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Genise JF, Taylor TN (1998) The ichnologic record of the invertebrate invasion of nonmarine ecosystems: evolutionary trends in ecospace utilization, environmental expansion, and behavioral complexity. Palaios 13:217–240

Buatois LA, Gingras MK, MacEachern J, Mángano MG, Zonneveld JP, Pemberton SG, Netto RG, Martin AJ (2005) Colonization of brackish-water systems through time: evidence from the trace-fossil record. Palaios 20:321–347

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Brussa E, Benedetto JL, Pompei J (2009) The changing face of the deep: colonization of the Early Ordovician deep-sea floor, Puna, Northwest Argentina. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 280:291–299

Buatois LA, Angulo S, Mángano MG (2013) Onshore expansion of benthic communities after the Late Devonian mass extinction. Lethaia 46:251–261

Buatois LA, Narbonne GM, Mángano MG, Carmona NB, Myrow P (2014) Ediacaran matground ecology persisted into the earliest Cambrian. Nat Commun 5:3544

Buatois LA, Mángano MG, Olea RA, Wilson MA (2016a) Decoupled evolution of soft and hard substrate communities during the Cambrian Explosion and Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event. PNAS 113:6945–6948

Buatois LA, Wisshak M, Wilson MA, Mángano MG (2016b) Categories of architectural designs in trace fossils: A measure of ichnodisparity. Earth Sc Rev (in press)

Bush AM, Bambach RK (2015) Sustained Mesozoic-Cenozoic diversification of marine Metazoa: a consistent signal from the fossil record. Geology 43:979–982

Callow RHT, Brasier MD (2009) Remarkable preservation of microbial mats in Neoproterozoic siliciclastic settings: implications for Ediacaran taphonomic models. Earth Sci Rev 96:207–219

Carmona NB, Buatois LA, Mángano MG (2004) The trace fossil record of burrowing decapod crustaceans: evaluating evolutionary radiations and behavioural convergence. In: Webby BD, Mángano MG, Buatois LA (eds) Trace fossils in evolutionary palaeoecology. Fossils & Strata 51:141–153

Crimes TP, Anderson MM (1985) Trace fossils from Late Precambrian-Early Cambrian strata of southeastern Newfoundland (Canada): temporal and environmental implications. J Paleontol 59:310–343

DiMichele WA, Aronson RB (1992) The Pennsylvanian-Permian vegetational transition: a terrestrial analogue to the onshore-offshore hypothesis. Evolution 46:807–824

Droser ML, Bottjer DJ (1989) Ordovician increase in extend and depth of bioturbation: implications for understanding Early Paleozoic ecospace utilization. Geology 17:850–852

Droser ML, Jensen S, Gehling JG (2004) Development of early Palaeozoic ichnofabrics: evidence from shallow marine siliciclastics. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis, vol 228. Geol Soc Spec Publ, London

Ekdale AA (1985) Paleoecology of the marine endobenthos. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 50:63–81

Erwin DH (1992) A preliminary classification of evolutionary radiations. Hist Biol 6:133–147

Erwin DH (2007) Disparity: morphological pattern and developmental context. Palaeontology 50:57–73

Foote M (1993) Contributions of individual taxa to overall morphological disparity. Paleobiology 19:403–419

Foote M (1997) Evolution of morphological diversity. Annu Rev Ecol Syst 28:129–152

Fraiser ML, Bottjer DJ (2009) Opportunistic behaviour of invertebrate marine tracemakers during the Early Triassic aftermath of the end-Permian mass extinction. Aust J Earth Sci 56:841–857

Frey RW (1975) The realm of ichnology, its strengths and limitations. In: Frey RW (ed) The study of trace fossils: a synthesis of principles, problems, and procedures in ichnology. Springer, New York

Frey RW, Seilacher A (1980) Uniformity in marine invertebrate ichnology. Lethaia 13:183–207

Furnes H, Banerjee NR, Muehlenbachs K, Staudigel H, de Wit M (2004) Early life recorded in Archean pillow lavas. Science 304:578–581

Furnes H, Banerjee NR, Staudigel H, Muehlenbachs K, de Wit M, McLoughlin N, Van Kranendonk M (2007) Bioalteration textures in recent to mesoarchean pillow lavas: a petrographic signature of subsurface life in oceanic igneous rocks. Precambrian Res 158:156–176

Gehling JG (1999) Microbial mats in terminal Proterozoic siliciclastics: Ediacaran death masks. Palaios 14:40–57

Genise JF (2000) The ichnofamily Celliformidae for *Celliforma* and allied ichnogenera. Ichnos 7:267–282

Genise JF (2004) Ichnotaxonomy and ichnostratigraphy of chambered trace fossils in palaeosols attributed to coleopterans, ants and termites. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis, vol 228. Geol Soc Spec Publ, London

Gibert JM de (2003) Criterios icnológicos para reconocer comportamientos homólogos y homoplásticos en el registro fósil. In: Buatois LA, Mángano MG (eds) Icnología: hacia una convergencia entre geología y biología. Argent Assoc Paleontol Spec Publ 9:9–15

Gould SJ (1980) The promise of paleobiology as a nomothetic, evolutionary discipline. Paleobiology 6:96–118

Hansen TA, Kelley PH, Haasl DM (2004) Paleoecological pattern in molluscan extinctions and recoveries: comparison of the Cretaceous–Paleogene and Eocene–Oligocene extinctions in North America. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 214:233–242

Häntzschel W (1975) Trace fossils and problematica. In: Teichert C (ed) Treatise on Invertebrate Paleontology, Part W, Miscellanea, Supplement 1. Geological Society of America and University of Kansas Press, Lawrence

Harries PJ, Knorr PO (2009) What does the “Lilliput effect” mean? Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 284:4–10

Herringshaw LG, Davies NS (2008) Bioturbation levels during the end-Ordovician extinction event: a case study of shallow marine strata from the Welsh Basin. Aquat Biol 2:279–287

Hitchcock E (1858) Ichnology of New England: a report on the sandstone of the Connecticut Valley, especially its fossil footmarks. W. White, Boston

Hitchcock E (1865) Supplement to the ichnology of New England. Commonwealth of Massachusetts, Boston

Hofmann R, Buatois LA, MacNaughton RB, Mángano MG (2015) Loss of the sedimentary mixed layer as a result of the end-Permian extinction. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 428:1–11

Holub V, Kozur H (1981) Arthropodenfährten aus dem Rotliegenden der CSSR. Geol Paläont Mitt Innsbruck 11:95–148

Jablonski D, Bottjer DJ (1990) The ecology of evolutionary innovation: the fossil record. In: Nitecki MH (ed) Evolutionary innovations. University of Chicago Press, Chicago

Jablonski D, Raup DM (1995) Selectivity of end-Cretaceous marine bivalve extinctions. Science 268:389–391

Jablonski D, Sepkoski JJ Jr, Bottjer DJ, Sheehan PM (1983) Onshore-offshore patterns in the evolution of Phanerozoic shelf communities. Science 222:1123–1125

Jensen S, Mens K (1999) A Lower Cambrian shallow-water occurrence of the branching “deep-water” type trace fossil *Dendrorhaphe* from the Lontova Formation, Eastern Latvia. Paläontol Z 73:187–193

Jensen S, Droser ML, Gehling JG (2005) Trace fossil preservation and the early evolution of animals. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 220:19–29

Jensen S, Droser ML, Gehling JG (2006) A critical look at the Ediacaran trace fossil record. In: Kaufman J, Xiao, S (eds) Neoproterozoic Geobiology and Paleobiology. Topics in Geobiology 27:115–157

Knaust D (2012) Trace fossil systematics. In: Knaust D, Bromley, RG (eds) Trace fossils as indicators of sedimentary environments. Developments in Sedimentology 64:79–101

Knaust D (2013) The ichnogenus *Rhizocorallium*: classification, trace makers, palaeoenvironments and evolution. Earth Sci Rev 126:1–47

Magwood JPA (1992) Ichnotaxonomy: a burrow by any other name? In: Maples CG, West RR (eds) Trace Fossils. Short Courses in Paleontology 5:15–33

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2014) Decoupling of body-plan diversification and ecological structuring during the Ediacaran–Cambrian transition: evolutionary and geobiological feedbacks. Proc R Soc B 281:20140038

Mángano MG, Buatois LA (2015) The trace fossil record of tidal flats through the Phanerozoic: Evolutionary innovations and faunal turnover. In: Mcllroy D (ed) Ichnology: papers from Ichnia III. Geol Assoc Canada Misc Publ 9:157–177

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Maples CG, Lanier WP (1997) *Tonganoxichnus*, a new insect trace fossil from the Upper Carboniferous of eastern Kansas, USA. Lethaia 30:113–125

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, West RR, Maples CG (2002) Ichnology of an equatorial tidal flat: the Stull Shale Member at Waverly, eastern Kansas. Bull Kans Geol Surv 245:1–130

Mángano MG, Buatois LA, Hofmann R, Elicki O, Shinaq R (2013) Exploring the aftermath of the Cambrian explosion: the evolutionary significance of marginal to shallow marine ichnofaunas of Jordan. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 374:1–15

McCann T (1990) Distribution of Ordovician-Silurian ichnofossil assemblages in Wales: implications for Phanerozoic ichnofaunas. Lethaia 23:243–255

McLoughlin N, Furnes H, Banerjee NR, Muehlenbachs K, Staudigel H (2009) Ichnotaxonomy of microbial trace fossils in volcanic glass. J Geol Soc London 166:159–169

Miller MF, Labandeira CC (2002) Slow crawl across the salinity divide: delayed colonization of freshwater ecosystems by invertebrates. Geol Soc Am Today 12:4–10

Noffke N (2010) Geobiology: microbial mats in sandy deposits from the Archaean Era to Today. Springer, Berlin

Peters SE, Foote M (2001) Biodiversity in the Phanerozoic: a reinterpretation. Paleobiology 27:583–601

Rainforth EC (2005) Ichnotaxonomy of the fossil footprints of the Connecticut Valley (Early Jurassic, Newark Supergroup, Connecticut and Massachusetts). Columbia University, New York

Raup DM (1976) Species diversity in the Phanerozoic: an interpretation. Paleobiology 2:289–297

Raup DM (1979) Size of the Permo-Triassic bottleneck and its evolutionary implications. Science 206:217–218

Seilacher A (1977) Pattern analysis of *Paleodictyon* and related trace fossils. In: Crimes TP, Harper JC (eds) Trace fossils 2. Geol J Spec Issue 9:289–334. Seel House Press, Liverpool

Seilacher A (1986) Evolution of behavior as expressed in marine trace fossils. In: Kitchell JA, Nitecki MH (eds) Evolution of animal behavior: paleontological and field approaches. Oxford University Press, New York

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1978) A kinetic model of Phanerozoic taxonomic diversity I. Analysis of marine orders. Paleobiology 4:223–251

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1979) A kinetic model of Phanerozoic taxonomic diversity II. Early Phanerozoic families and multiple equilibria. Paleobiology 5:222–251

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1984) A kinetic model of Phanerozoic taxonomic diversity III. Post-Paleozoic families and mass extinctions. Paleobiology 10:246–267

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1991) A model of onshore–offshore change in faunal diversity. Paleobiology 17:58–77

Sepkoski JJ Jr (1997) Biodiversity: past, present, and future. J Paleontol 71:533–539

Sepkoski D (2012) Rereading the fossil record: the growth of paleobiology as an evolutionary discipline. University of Chicago Press, Chicago

Sepkoski JJ Jr, Sheehan PM (1983) Diversification, faunal change, and community replacement during the Ordovician radiations. In: Tevesz MJS, McCall PL (eds) Biotic Interactions in Recent and Fossil Benthic Communities, Plenum, New York

Sepkoski JJ Jr, Miller AI (1985) Evolutionary faunas and the distribution of Paleozoic benthic communities in space and time. In: Valentine JW (ed) Phanerozoic diversity patterns: profiles in macroevolution. Princeton University Press, Princeton

Simões M, Breitkreuz L, Alvarado M, Baca S, Cooper JC, Heins L, Herzog K, Lieberman BS (2016) The evolving theory of evolutionary radiations. Trends Ecol Evol 31:27–34

Smith AB, Jeffrey CH (1998) Selectivity of extinction among sea urchins at the end of the Cretaceous period. Nature 392:69–71

Stanley DCA, Pickerill RK (1993) Shallow marine *Paleodictyon* from the Upper Ordovician Georgian Bay Formation of southern Ontario. Atlantic Geol 29:115–119

Tapanila L, Roberts EM (2012) The earliest evidence of holometabolan insect pupation in conifer wood. PLoS One 7(2):e31668

Tchoumatchenco P, Uchman A (2001) The oldest deep-sea *Ophiomorpha* and *Scolicia* and associated trace fossils from the Upper Jurassic-Lower Cretaceous deep-water turbidite deposits of SW Bulgaria. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 169:85–99

Twitchett RJ (2006) The palaeoclimatology, palaeoecology and palaeoenvironmental analysis of mass extinction events. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 232:190–213

Twitchett RJ (2007) The Lilliput effect in the aftermath of the end-Permian extinction event. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 252:132–144

Uchman A (1995) Taxonomy and paleoecology of flysch trace fossils: the Marnoso-arenacea Formation and associated facies (Miocene, Northern Apennines, Italy). Beringeria 15:1–115

Uchman A (1998) Taxonomy and ethology of flysch trace fossils: revision of the Marian Ksiazkiewicz collection and studies of complementary material. Ann Soc Geol Poloniae 68:105–218

Uchman A (2003) Trends in diversity, frequency and complexity of graphoglyptid trace fossils: evolutionary and palaeoenvironmental aspects. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 192:123–142

Uchman A (2004) Phanerozoic history of deep-sea trace fossils. In: McIlroy D (ed) The application of ichnology to palaeoenvironmental and stratigraphic analysis, vol 228. Geol Soc Spec Pub, London

Urbanek A (1993) Biotic crises in the history of Upper Silurian graptoloids: a palaeobiological model. Hist Biol 7:29–50

Villegas-Martín J, de Gibert JM, Rojas-Consuegra R, Belaústegui Z (2012) Jurassic *Teredolites* from Cuba: new trace fossil evidence of early wood-boring behavior in bivalves. J S Am Earth Sci 38:123–128

von Kušta J (1880) Bohrgänge von insecten in einen verkieselten Araucarite von Bránov bei Pürglitz. Sitzunsberg Böhmisch Gesel Wiss Math Naturwiss Cl 1880:202–203

Walter H (1983) Zur taxonomie, ökologie und biostratigraphie der ichnia limnisch-terrestrischer arthropoden des mitteleuropaischen Jungpaläozoikums. Freiberg Forschungsh C 382: 146–193

Wiest LA, Buynevich IV, Grandstaff DE, Terry DO, Maza ZA (2015) Trace fossil evidence suggests widespread dwarfism in response to the end-Cretaceous mass extinction: Braggs, Alabama and Brazos River, Texas. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 417:105–111

Wilson MA, Palmer TJ (2006) Patterns and processes in the Ordovician bioerosion revolution. Ichnos 13:109–112

Wooton RJ (1988) The historical ecology of aquatic insects: an overview. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 62:477–492

Xing L, Parkinson AH, Ran H, Pirrone CA, Roberts EM, Zhang J, Burns ME, Wang T, Choiniere J (2015) The earliest fossil evidence of bone boring by terrestrial invertebrates, examples from China and South Africa. Hist Biol. doi:10.1080/08912963.2015.1111884

Index

M.G. Mángano, L.A. Buatois (eds.), *The Trace-Fossil Record of Major Evolutionary Events*, Topics in Geobiology 40,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-9597-5